Kitabistan's
NEW COLLEGE COMPOSITION

INTRODUCTION

CHAPTER I

1. **The Command of Language.** The passage of time has invested with still greater importance Bacon's oft-quoted advice on studies in which he says: "Reading maketh a *full* man; conference a *ready* man; and writing an *exact* man." To have a command of at least one language so as to be able to couch one's ideas in it *clearly and vigorously* is an absolute necessity. We pity the fate of dumb people who are incapable of expressing themselves except through clumsy movements of their hands and body. We pity them for their inability to communicate their thoughts to others, beyond giving expression to certain simple needs. We pity them because we find them no better than the brutes. But seldom do we think of the pitiable plight of a person who, though gifted with the power of speech, lacks felicity of expression. Seldom do we realise that he is not on a much higher plane than a dumb person; for even with him language is in no way more than a medium of expressing simple needs, a medium which can never express lofty ideas or even deep emotions. The lack of his command of any language leaves him no better than the brutes or the dumb persons whom he has learnt to pity.

2. **The Importance of English.** We must have a command of some language if we would rise above the level of animals and assert our personality among our fellow human beings. The language that lays the greatest claim to our attention in the present-day *world is* English, for luckily or unluckily it has assumed, and continues to hold, the position of the most important international language. Pakistan cannot afford to ignore this position of the English language, or brush aside its claims to inclusion in the school and college curricula for its youth. Feeble as it already is, her voice in international circles would completely be muffled if she is not in a position to give wide publicity to her viewpoint through the medium of English. This necessitates a thorough study of the English language together with long and intelligent practice in speaking and writing it correctly and gracefully.

3. **The Gift of Graceful Speech and Diction.** A perfect command of English points to the heights attained by Shakespeare, Milton, Coleridge, Eliot, Shaw and Joyce. There is no denying the fact that everybody cannot attain to those heights, and

should not live in a fool's paradise in the fond hope to rival the galaxy of great writers from Shakespeare to Joyce. But for every Joyce that changes the current of literary tastes and ushers in an epoch of new values in that field, there are thousands of persons in that age who write so well as to live successfully by the fruits of their pen. No less is the number of those who so mastered the vagaries of the English pronunciation as to live comfortably by the word of their mouth. It is to such persons that the doors of respectable professions like journalism and broadcasting are thrown wide open. Higher up in the scale, they set themselves up as reputable authors or distinguished orators. They can see for themselves how a command of the English language has given them both pelf and power.

4. **Arduous Task** From these men we learn that the way to success does not lie through wishful thinking. They toiled day and night to achieve what success they did. It was an arduous task. It was all an uphill march allowing them no respite. It rather kept on goading them to further endeavours. Nevertheless it brought them great gifts with every effort they made. These coveted gifts it promises even to you, provided you are prepared to put in hard work, and provided, again, you are willing to work on the right lines.

5. **Philology and Grammar**. Hard work is the prerequisite to success in every walk of life. But it will all be a waste effort if it is on the right lines. To achieve even a reasonab amount of success in the field of literary expression we mu study the texture of the language we choose for our mediu and must have a grasp of the fundamental way in which its wa and woof are woven together. This involves a study of philolo and grammar. As far as the study of the English language is co cerned, the following contain the best and simplest practica exposition of these two subjects :

Philology : (1) *The Making of English* by Henry Bradley (Macmillan)

(2) *The English Language* by Logan Pearsall-Smith (Home University Library)

(3) *Our Language* by Simeon Potter (Pelican)

Grammar : (1) *The Essentials of English* by Pritchard (Harrap.)

(2) *The King's English* by H. W. and F. G. Fowle (Oxford)

6. **Pronunciation and Intonation**. English pronunciation cannot be learnt at second hand. The ways in which Pakistani students can attain efficiency in it have be detailed at some length in Part I of this book. The practic guidance contained in that part and the lists of surnames in Pa II will be found to be of great help. For a theoretical study of th

subject the student will be well-advised to read Firth's treatise on *Phonetics*. Wilson-Whitaker's *English Pronounced* and Jones's *Pronouning Dictionary*.

7. **Clear Thinking**. However sound our knowledge of grammatical rules and however correct our pronunciation, we will still be a long way from speaking or writing correct English until we learn to think clearly. Clear thinking is the basic factor leading to one's command of a language. This habit can be formed with practice. There is not much to learn about this art from books, though there is a spate of such literature in every language. But if one must have a book, the best course would be to go in for the famous correspondence course known as *Pelmanism*. A few guineas spent on enrolment for it are perhaps the best investment one could ever hope to make, provided one is willing to put into practice the wise counsel which the pages of its small grey pamphlets contain.

8. **Thinking for Oneself**. This course of practical psychology will teach you not only how to think clearly but also how to think for yourself. This would be a great asset to you. Thinking for oneself does not mean that one should be the possessor of entirely unpremeditated views on all subjects. Such a thing has not been possible even for the greatest of the world's creative thinkers. What *it does imply* is that you should inculcate the habit of viewing everything in the light of your own experiences. This habit will always stand you in good stead and you will never have to grope for ideas when you are called upon to write on some topic. Thinking for yourself would enable you to write with ease even on the most unfamiliar subject in the world. It is so because even if you are not in a position to write an expository essay, you will still be able to write a good reflective essay.

9. **Reading Habit**. You cannot hope to be an interesting speaker or exquisite writer without being a voracious reader. In order to express yourself lucidly, fluently, gracefully and vigorously, you must continually read good authors. All great writers of the world have had recourse to this device. But you must be on your guard against reading that which is not good literature. We shall not attempt a definition of good literature, for even the best of definitions is vague as compared to an example that will speak for itself. Here, then, are a few pieces of English prose literature which have proved their value by surviving the ravages of time. We purposely refrain from quoting passages of poetry, since the students handling this book have only the ability to write good English prose as their immediate objective.

I. Job's Grief

And Job spake, and said : "Let the day perish wherin I was born, and the night in which it was said, 'There is a man child conceived.' Let that day be darkness ; let not God regard it from above, neither let the light shine upon it. Let darkness and

the shadow of death stain it; let a cloud dwell upon it; let the blackness of day terrify it. As for night, let darkness seize upon it; let it not be joined unto the days of the year, let it not come into the number of the months. Lo, let that night be solitary, let no joyful voice come therein. Let them curse it that curse the day, who are ready to raise up their mourning. Let the stars of twilight thereof be dark; let it look for light, but have none; neither let it see the dawning of the day: because it shut not up the doors of my mother's womb, nor hid sorrow from mine eyes."

—*The Holy Bible*.

2. An Anonymous Love-Letter

If this fall into thy hand, revolve. In my stars I am above thee; but be not afraid of greatness: some are born great, some achieve greatness, and some have greatness thrust upon 'em. Thy Fates open their hands; let thy blood and spirit embrace them; and, to inure thyself to what thou art like to be, cast thy humble slough and appear fresh. Be opposite with a kinsman, surly with servants; let thy tongue tang arguments of state; put thyself into the trick of singularity: she thus advises thee that sighs for thee. Remember who commended thy yellow stockings, and wished to see thee ever cross-gartered: I say, remember. Go to, thou art made, if thou desirest to be so; if not let me see thee a steward still, the fellow of servants, and not worthy to touch Fortune's fingers. Farewell.

"She that would alter services with thee,
The Fortunate-Unhappy." —Shakespeare: *Twelfth Night*.

3. Of Studies

Studies serve for delight, for ornament, and for ability. Their chief use for delight is in privateness and retiring: for ornament, is in discourse; and for ability, is in the judgment and disposition of business. For expert men can execute, and perhaps judge of particulars, one by one; but the general counsels, and the plots and marshalling of affairs come best from those that are learned. To spend too much time in studies is sloth: to use them too much for ornament is affectation; to make judgment wholly by their rules is the humour of a scholar. They perfect nature, and are perfected by experience: for natural abilities are like natural plants that need *pruning* by study; and studies themselves do give forth directions too much at large, except they be bounded in by experience. Crafty men contemn studies, simple men admire them, and wise men use them; for they teach not their own use; but that is a wisdom without them, and above them, won by observation. Read not to contradict and confute; not to believe and take for granted; not to find talk and discourse; but to weigh and consider. Some books are to be tasted, others to be swallowed, and some few to be chewed and

digested; that is, some books are to be read only in parts; others to be read, but not curiously; and some few to be read wholly, and with diligence and attention. Some books also may be read by deputy, and extracts made of them by others; but that would be only in the less important arguments, and the meaner sort of books; else distilled books are like common distilled waters, flashy things. Reading maketh a full man; conference a ready man; and writing an exact man. And, therefore, if a man write little, he had need have a great memory; if he confer little, he had need have a present wit; and if he read little he had need have much cunning, to seem to know that he doth not. Histories make men wise; poets, witty; the mathematics, subtle; natural philosophy, deep; moral, grave; logic and rhetoric, able to contend. *Abeunt studia in mores.* (The studies pass into the manners.) Nay there is no *stond* or impediment in the wit, but may be wrought out by fit studies; like as diseases of the body may have appropriate exercises. Bowling is good for the stone and reins; shooting for the lungs and breast; gentle walking for the stomach; riding for the head; and the like. So if a man's wit be wandering, let him study the mathematics; for in demonstrations, if his wit be called away never so little, he must begin again. If his wit be not apt to distinguish or find differences, let him study the school men; for they are *cyminisectores* (splitters of hairs). If he be not apt to beat over matters, and to call up one thing to prove and illustrate another, let him study the lawyer's cases. So every defect of the mind may have a special receipt.

—Bacon.

4. Death

O, eloquent, just, and mighty Death! whom none could advise, thou hast persuaded; what none hath dared, thou hast done; and whom all the world hath flattered, thou only hast cast out of the world and despised; thou hast drawn together all the far-stretched greatness, all the pride, cruelty, and ambition of man, and covered it all over with these two narrow words, *Hic jacet!*

—Sir Walter Raleigh.

5. Felicity

Court not felicity too far, and weary not the favourable hand of fortune. Glorious actions have their times, extent, and *non ultras.* To put no end unto attempts were to make prescription of successes, and to bespeak unhappiness at the last: for the line of our lives is drawn with white and black vicissitudes, wherein the extremes hold seldom one complexion. That Pompey should obtain the surname of Great at twenty-five years, that men in their young and active days should be fortunate and perform notable things, is no observation of deep wonder; they having the strength of their fates before them, nor yet acted their parts in the world for which they were brought into it; whereas men of years, matured for counsels and designs, seem to be beyond the vigour of their active fortune grow faint, and feeling its declination, have timely withdrawn themselves

from great attempts, and so escaped the ends of mighty men, disproportionable to their beginnings. But magnanimous thoughts have so dimmed the eyes of many, that forgetting the very essence of fortune, and the vicissitude of good and evil, they apprehend no bottom in felicity ; and so have been still tempted on unto mighty actions, reserved for their destructions. For fortune lays the plot of our adversities in the foundation of our felicities, blessing us in the first quadrate, to blast us more sharply in the last. And since in the highest felicities there lieth a capacity of the lowest miseries, she hath this advantage from our happiness to make us truly miserable ; for to become acutely miserable we are to be first happy. Affliction smarts most in the most happy state, as having somewhat in it of Belisarius of beggar's bush, or Bajazet in the grate. And this the fallen angels severely understand ; who have acted their first part in heaven, are made sharply miserable by transition, and more afflictively feel the contrary state of hell.

—Sir Thomas Browne : *Christian Morals*

6. PATIENCE

Now we suppose the man entering upon his scene of sorrows and *passive graces*. It may be he went yesterday to a wedding, merry and brisk, and there he felt his sentence, that he must return home and die (for men very commonly enter into the snare *singing*, and consider not whither their fate leads them) : nor feared that the angel was to strike his stroke, till his knees kissed the earth, and his head trembled with the weight of the rod which God put into the hand of an exterminating angel. But, whatsoever the ingress was when the man feels his blood boil or his bones weary, or his flesh diseased with a load of a dispersed and disordered humour or, his head to ache, or his faculties discomposed ; then he must consider that all those discourses he hath heard, concerning patience and resignation, and conformity to Christ's sufferings, and the melancholic lectures of the Cross, must all of them now be reduced to practice, and pass from an ineffective contemplation to such an exercise as will really try whether we were true disciples of the Cross, or only believed the doctrines of religion when we were at ease, and that they never passed through the ear to the heart, and dwelt not in our spirits. But every man should consider God does nothing in vain ; that He would not to no purpose send us preachers, and give us rules, and furnish us with discourse, and lend us books, and provide sermons, and make examples, and promise His Spirit, and describe the blessedness of holy sufferings, and prepare us with daily alarms, if He did not really purpose to order our affairs so that we should need all this, and use it all. There were no such things as the grace of Patience, if we were not to feel a sickness, or enter into a state of sufferings.

—Jermey Taylor : *Holy Dying*

7. EDUCATION

I call therefore a complete and generous education that which fits a man to perform justly, skilfully, and magnanimously all the offices, both private and public, of peace and war. And how all this may be done between twelve and one-and-twenty, less time than is now bestowed in pure trifling at grammar and sophistry, is to be thus ordered.

First, to find out a spacious house and ground about it fit for an academy, and big enough to lodge a hundred and fifty persons, whereof twenty or thereabout may be attendants, all under the government of one who shall be thought of desert sufficient, and *ability* either to do all, or wisely to direct and oversee it done. This place should be at once both school and university, not needing a remove to any other house of scholarship except it be some peculiar college of law or physic, where they mean to be practitioners; but as for those general studies which take up all our time they should be absolute. After the pattern, as many edifices may be converted to this use as shall be needful in every city throughout this land, which would tend much to the increase of learning and civility everywhere . . . .

For their studies; first they should begin with the chief and necessary rules of some good grammar, either that now used, or any better; and while this is doing, their speech is to be fashioned to a distinct and clear pronunciation as near as may be to the Italian, especially in the vowels. For we Englishmen, being far northerly, do not open our mouths in the cold air wide enough to grace a southern tongue; but are observed by all other nations to speak exceeding close and inward, so that to smatter Latin with an English mouth is as ill a hearing as L w French. Next, to make them expert in the usefullest points of grammar, and withal to season them and win them early to the love of virtue and true labour, ere any flattering reducement or vain principle seize them wandering, some easy and delightful book of education would be read to them, whereof the Greeks have stores, as Cebes, Plutarch, and other Socratic discourses. But in Latin we have none of classic authority extant, except the two or three first books of Quintilian, and some select pieces elsewhere.

But there the main skill and groundwork will be to temper them with such lectures and explanations upon every opportunity, as may lead and draw them in willing obedience, inflamed with the study of learning and the admiration of virtue; stirred up with high hopes of living to be brave men, and worthy patriots, dear to God and famous to all ages; that they may despise and scorn all their childish and ill-taught qualities, to delight in manly and liberal exercises, which he who hath the art and proper eloquence to catch them with, what with mild and effectual persuasion, and what with the intimation of some fear, if need be, but chiefly by his own example, might in a

short space gain them to an incredible diligence and courage, infusing into their young breasts such an ingenuous and noble ardour, as would not fail to make many of them renowned and matchless men. At the same time, some other hour of the day, might be taught them the rules of arithmetic; and soon after the elements of geometry, even playing, as the old manner was. After evening repast, till bed time their thoughts would be best taken up in the easy grounds of religion, and the story of scripture.

—Milton.

8. Letter To Lord Chesterfield

7th February, 1755.

My Lord—I have been lately informed, by the proprietor of "The World" that two papers, in which my Dictionary is recommended to the public, were written by your Lordship. To be so distinguished is an honour, which, being very little accustomed to favours from the great, I know not well how to receive, or in what terms to acknowledge.

When, upon some slight encouragement, I first visited your Lordship, I was overpowered, like the rest of mankind, by the enchantment of your address, and could not forbear to wish that I might boast myself *Le Vaingeur du vainqueur de la terre*;—that I might obtain that regard for which I saw the world contending; but I found my attendance so little encouraged, that neither pride not modesty would suffer me to continue it. When I had once addressed your Lordship in public, I had exhausted all the art of pleasing which a retired and uncourtly scholar can possess. I had done all that I could; and no man is well pleased to have his all neglected, be it ever so little.

Seven years, my lord, have now past, since I waited in your outward rooms, or was repulsed from your door; during which time I have been pushing on my work through difficulties, of which it is useless to complain, and have brought it, at last, to the verge of publication, without one act of assistance, one word of encouragement, or one smile of favour. Such treatment I did not expect, for I never had a patron before.

The shepherd in Virgil grew at last acquainted with Love, and found him a native of the rocks.

Is not a patron, my lord, one who looks with unconcern on a man struggling for life in the water, and, when he has reached ground, encumbers him with help? The notice which you have been pleased to take of my labours, had it been early, had been kind; but it has been delayed till I am indifferent and cannot enjoy it; till I am solitary, and cannot impart it; till I am known, and do not want it. I hope it is no very cynical asperity not to confess obligations where no benefit has been received, or to be unwilling that the public should consider me as owing that to a patron, which Providence has enabled me to do for myself.

Having carried on my work thus far with so little obligation to any favourer of learning, I shall not be disappointed though I should conclude it, if less be possible, with less ; for I have been long wakened from that dream of hope, in which I once boasted myself with so much exultation.

My Lord,

Your Lordship's most humble, most obedient servant,

Sam. Johnson.

9. The Extinguished Glory

It is now sixteen or seventeen years since I saw the Queen of France, then the Dauphiness, at Versailles, and surely never lighted on this orb, which she hardly seemed to touch, a more delightful vision. I saw her just above the horizon, decorating and cheering the devoted sphere she just began to move in ; glittering like the morning star, full of life, and splendour, and joy. Oh! what a revolution ! and what a heart must I have to contemplate without emotion that elevation and that fall ! Little did I dream when she added titles of veneration to those of enthusiastic, distant, respectful love that she should ever be obliged to carry the sharp antidote against disgrace concealed in that bosom ; little did I dream that I should have lived to see such disasters fallen upon her in a nation of gallant men, in a nation of men of honour and of cavaliers. I thought ten thousand swords must have leaped from their scabbards to avenge even a look that threatened her with insult. But the age of chivalry is gone. That of sophisters, economists, and calculators, has succeeded ; and the glory of Europe is extinguished for ever. Never, never more, shall we behold that generous loyalty to rank and sex, that proud submission, that dignified obedience ; that subordination of the heart, which kept alive, even in servitude itself, the spirit of an exalted freedom. The unbought grace of life, the cheap defence of nations, the nurse of manly sentiments and heroic enterprise is gone ! It is gone that sensibility of principle, that chastity of honour, which felt a stain like a wound, which inspired courage whilst it mitigated ferocity, which ennobled whatever it touched, and under which vice itself lost half its evil, by losing all its grossness.

—Edmund Burke : *Reflections on Revolution in France.*

10. The Evening Of Life

The present is a fleeting moment, the past is no more ; and our prospect of futurity is dark and doubtful. This day may possibly be my last ; but the laws of probability, so true in general, so fallacious in particular, still allow me about fifteen years. I shall soon enter into the period which, as the most agreeable of his long life, was selected by the judgment and experience of the sage Fontenelle. His choice is approved by the eloquent historian of nature, who fixes our moral happiness to the mature

season in which our passions are supposed to have calmed, our duties fulfilled, our amibition satisfied, our fame and fortune established on a solid basis. In private conversation, that great and amiable man added the weight of his own experience; and this autumnal felicity might be exemplified in the lives of Voltaire, Hume, and many other men of letters. I am far more inclined to embrace than to dispute this comfortable doctrine. I will not suppose any premature decay of the mind or body; but I must reluctantly observe that two causes, the abbreviation of time and the failure of hope, will always tinge with a browner shade the evening of life. —Edward Gibbon : *The Autobiography*.

11. Dream Children

Then I told how for seven long years, in hope sometimes, sometimes in despair, yet persisting ever, I courted the fair Alice W——n; and, as much as children could understand, I explained to them what coyness, and difficulty, and denial meant in maidens—when suddenly, turning to Alice, the soul of the first Alice looked out at her eyes with such a reality of re-presentment, that I became in doubt which of them stood there before me, or whose that bright hair was; and while I stood gazing, both the children gradually grew fainter to my view, receding, and still receding, till nothing at last but two mournful features were seen in the uttermost distance, which, without speech, strangely impressed upon me effects of speech: "We are not of Alice, nor of thee, nor are we children at all. The children of Alice call Bartrum father. We are nothing; less than nothing, and dreams. We are only what might have been, and must wait upon the tedious shores of Lethe millions of ages before we have existence, and a name"—and immediately awaking, I found myself quietly seated in my bachelor armchair, where I had fallen asleep, with the faithful Bridget unchanged by my side —but John L—(or James Elia) was gone for ever.

—Lamb : *Essays of Elia*

12. My Father

I call him a natural man, singularly free from all manner of affectation; he was among the last of the true men which Scotland on the old system produced, a man healthy in body and mind, fearing God, and diligently working on God's earth with contentment, hope, and unwearied resolution. He was never visited with doubt. The old theorem of the universe was sufficient for him; and he worked well in it and in all senses successfully and wisely—as few can do. So quick is the motion of transition becoming, the new generation almost to a man must make their belly their God, and alas, find even that an empty one. Thus, curiously enough and blessedly, *he* stood a true man on the verge of the old, while his son stands here lovingly surveying him on the verge of the new, and sees the possibility of also being true there. God make the possibility, blessed possibility, into a reality. —Carlyle.

13. The Thirst For Gold

And a sudden horror came over Schwartz, he knew not why; but the thirst for gold prevailed over his fear, and he rushed on. And the bank of black cloud rose to the zenith, and out of it came bursts of spiry lightning, and waves of darkness seemed to heave and float, between their flashes, over the whole heavens. And the sky where the sun was setting was all level and like a lake of blood; and a strong wind came out of that sky, tearing its crimson clouds into fragments, and scattering them far into the darkness. And when Schwartz stood by the brink of the Golden River its waves were black, like thunderclouds, but their foam was like fire; and the roar of the waters below and the thunder above met as he cast the flask into the stream. And as he did so the lightning glared in his eyes, and the earth gave way beneath him, and the waters closed over his cry. And the moaning of the river rose wildly into the night as it gushed over the two black stones.

—Ruskin.

14. The Curiosity Of Lionardo

The movement of the fifteenth century was twofold: partly the Renaissance, partly also the coming of what is called the modern spirit, with its realism, its appeal to experience; it comprehended a return to antiquity, and a return to nature. Raffaelle represents the return to antiquity, and Lionardo the return to nature. In this return to nature he was seeking to satisfy a boundless curiosity by her purpetual surprises, a microscopic sense of finish by her finesse or delicacy of operation, that *subtilitas naturoe* which Bacon notices. So we find him often in intimate relations with men of science, with Fra Luca Paccioli, the mathematician, and the anatomist Marc Antonie della Torre. His observations and experiments fill thirteen volumes of manuscript; and those who can judge describe him as anticipating long before, by rapid intuition, the later ideas of science. He explained the obscure light of the unilluminated part of the moon, knew that the sea had once covered the mountains which contain shells, and the gathering of the equatorial waters above the polar.

He who thus penetrated into the most secret parts of nature preferred always the more to the less remote, what, seeming exceptional, was an instance of law more refined, the construction about things of peculiar atmosphere and mixed lights. He paints flowers with such curious felicity that writers have attributed to him a fondness for particular flowers, as Clement the cyclamen, and Rio the jasmine; while at Venice there is a stray leaf from his portfolio dotted all over with studies of violets and the wild rose. In him first appears the taste for what is *bizarre* or *recherche* in landscape; hollow places full of the green shadow of bituminous rocks, ridged reefs of trap rock which cut the water into quaint sheets of light .... their exact antitype is in our own western seas; all solemn effects of moving water; you may follow

it springing from its distant source among rocks on the heath of the "Madonna of the Balances," the passing as a little fall into the treacherous calm of the "Madonna of the Lake," next, as a goodly river below the cliffs of the "Madonna of the Rocks," washing the white walls of its distant villages, stealing out in a network of divided streams in "La Gioconda" to the sea-shore of the "Saint Anne". . . . that delicate place where the wind passed like the hand of some fine etcher over the surface, and the untorn shells lie thick upon the sand, and the tops of the rocks, to which the waves never rise, are green with grass grown fine as hair. It is the landscape, not of dreams or of fancy, but of places, far withdrawn and hours selected from a thousand with a miracle of finesse. Through his strange veil of sight things reach him so; in no ordinary night or day, but as in faint light of eclipse, or in some brief interval of falling rain at daybreak, or through deep water.

And not into nature only; but he plunged also into human personality and became above all a painter of portraits; faces of a modelling more skilful than has been before or since, embodied with a reality which almost amounts to illusion on dark air. To take a character as it was, and delicately sound its stops, suited one so curious in observation, curious in invention. So he painted the portraits of Ludovico's mistresses, Lucretia Crivelli and Cecilia Galerani the poetess, of Ludovico himself, and the Duchess Beatrice. The portrait of Cecilia Galerani is lost, but that of Lucretia Crivelli has been identified with "La Belle Feronniere" of the Louvre, and Ludovico's pale anxious face still remains in the Ambrosian. Opposite is the portrait of Beatrice d'Este, in whom Lionardo seems to have caught some presentiment of early death, painting her precise and grave, full of the refinement of the dead, in sad earth-coloured raiment, set with pale stones.

—Walter H. Pater.

15. THE CONQUEROR'S MESSAGE

With malice towards none, with charity for all, let us finish the work we are in, to bind up the nation's wounds, to care for him who shall have borne the burden of the day, and for his widow and orphans. —Abraham Lincoln.

16. BERNARD SHAW

I am sorry for Mr. Shaw. Joan at least had to wait some centuries before she was canonised, but Mr. Shaw is in peril of being canonised while he still walks the earth. He is already as respectable as a Minor Canon. Deans have been known to invite him to their garden parties, and Archbishops are not unfavourably disposed towards him. The critics, worn out with years of vain effort to suppress so pestilent a fellow, have swung round to the view that he must, after all, be a man of genius. They no longer laugh when they mention him in connection with Shakespeare. They are beginning to be apprehensive lest the

future should discover that they were dunces who did not know a great man when they saw him and who were incapable of understanding what he was talking about and what he was driving at. He is a best-seller in the book world, and the public flock to his plays and come out with a shine in their eyes and discuss his meanings. He has already become a classic, and there is a dim but unmistakable gleam of an aura about his brow. If I do not mistake the symptoms, he is on the way to the calendar of saints. He has passed the threshold of his seventieth year, and though the fiery red beard has turned white, he still "treads the ling like a buck in spring, and looks like a lance in rest." He may quite well become one of his own Ancients and live to see himself in stained glass windows as the St. Bernard of a new dispensation.

—A. G. Gardiner

17. Knowledge and Religious Experience

What is the character and general structure of the universe in which we live? Is there a permanent element in the constitution of this universe? How are we related to it? What place do we occupy in it, and what is the kind of conduct that befits the place we occupy? These questions are common to religion, philosophy, and higher poetry. But the kind of knowledge that poetic inspiration brings is essentially individual in its character; it is figurative, vague, and indefinite. Religion, in its more advanced forms, rises higher than poetry. It moves from individual to society. In its attitude towards the ultimate reality it is opposed to the limitations of man; it enlarges his claims and holds out the prospect of nothing less than a direct vision of Reality. Is is then possible to apply the purely rational method of philosophy to religion? The spirit of philosophy is one of free inquiry. It suspects all authority Its function is to trace the uncritical assumptions of human thought to their hiding places, and in this pursuit it may finally end in denial or a frank admission of the incapacity of pure reason to reach the ultimate reality. The essence of religion, on the other hand, is faith; and faith, like the bird, sees its 'trackless way, unattended by intellect which, in the words of the great mystic poet of Islam, 'only waylays the living heart of man and robs it of the invisible wealth of life that lies within.' Yet it cannot be denied that faith is more than mere feeling. It has something like a cognitive content, and the existence of rival parties—scholastics and mystics— in the history of religion shows that idea is a vital element in religion. Apart from this, religion on its doctrinal side, as defined by Professor Whitehead, is a system of general truths which have the effect of transforming character when they are sincerely held and vividly apprehended.' Now, since the transformation and guidance of man's inner and outer life is the essential aim of religion, it is obvious that the general truths which it embodies must not remain unsettled. No one would hazard action on the basis of a doubtful principle of conduct. Indeed, in view of its function, religion stands in greater need of a rational foundation of its ultimate principle than even the dogmas of science. Science

may ignore a rational metaphysics ; indeed, it has ignored it so far. Religion can hardly afford to ignore the search for a reconciliation of the oppositions of experience and a justification of the environment in which humanity finds itself. That is why Professor Whitehead has acutely remarked that ' the ages of faith are the ages of rationalism.' But to rationalize faith is not to admit the superiority of philosophy over religion. Philosophy, no doubt, has jurisdiction to judge religion, but what is to be judged is of such a nature that it will not submit to the jurisdiction of philosophy except on its own terms. While sitting in judgment on religion, philosphy cannot give religion an inferior place among its data. Religion is not a departmental affair ; it is neither mere thought, nor mere feeling, nor mere action ; it is an expression of the whole man. Thus, in the evaluation of religion, philosophy must recognize the central position of religion and has no other alternative but to admit it as something focal in the process of reflective synthesis.

—Iqbal : *The Reconstruction of Religious Thought in Islam*

18. Quaid-i-Azam On Mr. Gandhi

Mr. Gandhi has, unfortunately, initiated his propaganda in right royal style, contrary to our joint statement. Apart from challenging the representative and authoritative status of the Muslim League he is inciting Musalmans against me, and he keeps on repeating the assertion throughout his statement that he has met the essence of the Lahore Resolution by what he now calls his offer or offers in the shape of the Gandhi-Rajaji formula and his own proposals which he put forth at the eleventh hour. Any intelligent man can now see that in substance there is no difference between the two. What he calls his own offer came after he had rejected all the essentials of the Lahore Resolution, and the Gandhi-Rajaji formula was shunted from the very commencement. Now that the matter is subject to public discussion, and as Mr. Gandhi is making statement after statement and giving interviews which are so misleading, I am compelled to deal with what he calls his offer. Let us examine at least the main points.

(*a*) Immediate grant of Independence to India as one single national unit.

(*b*) Immediate setting up of a national provisional interim government of his conception, as defined by him in his letter of September 15, which is as follows : A provisional interim government which will be responsible to the elected members of the present Assembly or a newly elected one. It will have all the powers less those of the Commander-in-Chief during the war, and full powers thereafter. It will be the authority to give effect to the agreement that may be arrived at between the Congress and the League. By the by, it does not only recognise the existence of a third party, but hands over to him all the powers of the Commander-in-Chief during the war, and the Defence, which is the most vital and overpowering Department. This clearly means the establish-

ment immediately of a Central unitary or Federal government in charge of the entire civil administration with an over-whelming majority of Hindus in the Legislature, which will be not less than 75 per cent., to which the Cabinet will be responsible.

(*c*) That when such a government is established it will be for this Government, so established, to frame the constitution of free India or it will set up an authority which will frame the constitution after the British Power is withdrawn.

(*d*) That this National Government will draft the treaty and agreements as regards the administration of matters of common interest as now made clear in what he calls his own offer, namely, in matters such as foreign affairs, defence, internal communications, customs, commerce and the like which he maintains must necessarily continue to be matters of common interest under an efficient and satisfactory administration of a Central authority or government. This can only mean that all these vital matters which constitute the lifeblood of a State will remain vested in the national federal government proposed by him, to which finally full powers and responsibility for the government of India will be transferred. It is, therefore, clear that the National Government will be brought into full being, established, and well in the saddle, according to these terms, with an overwhelming and solid majority of Hindus, which virtually would be a Hindu raj.

(*e*) Then we are asked to agree to the most tortuous terms and accept the principle upon which areas are to be demarcated, namely district-wise, wherein the Muslim population is in an absolute majority, which according to Mr. Gandhi means that only that district will be recognized in which the Muslims have something like 75 per cent. of Muslim population; for he says that by absolute majority he means as in Sind, Baluchistan or the North West Frontier Province, but according to Mr. Rajagopalachari, an absolute majority means as understood in legal parlance. Apart from the fact that the joint authors already differ, I find from the dictionary meaning that it means "a majority of all members of a body (including those voting and those not voting)."

(*f*) That in areas thus demarcated, there will be a promiscuous plebiscite on the basis of adult suffrage or other practicable franchise, and the form and the franchise will be decided again by the National Government referred to above, unless we can agree upon it beforehand.

It is when we have agreed to all these terms then, alone, comes the question of separation of those mutilated, broken areas again subject to further conditions: (1) This matter can only be considered after the termination of the war, and (2) after the transfer of full power and responsibility for the government of India to this National Government, and it will be then that this National Government will set up a Commission for demarcating contiguous

districts as stated above, and complete its work of sheer vandalism especially in the Punjab, Bengal, and Assam and then its findings will be given effect to by this National Government and if these poor areas so paralyzed desire to sever or separate from the all-India united, federal government, fully and firmly established, then they must submit to and go through a promiscuous plebiscite, and if the verdict is in favour of the Muslims even then all matters of vital importance, such as foreign affairs, defence, internal communications, customs, commerce and the like shall remain vested in and continue to be administered by a Central authority or Government.

This is what Mr. Gandhi calls a partition or division between two brothers, and it is really amazing that he should repeat *ad nauseum* that he has by his offer satisfied the essence or substance of the Lahore Resolution. It would be difficult to conceive of a more disingenuous, tortuous and crooked assertion, which he keeps on repeating naively.

What is the use of misleading people and making confusion worse confounded ? If we accept these terms, which present us with a veritable trap and a slough of death, it means the burial of Pakistan. But I see some ray of hope still when he says, "If Rajaji and I have stultified the Lahore Resolution, we should be educated."

I tried to do so, as far as Mr. Gandhi was concerned, for three weeks, but his ailment is so long-standing and so chronic that it is beyond the reach of a physician.

I hope that his appeal to the press and the public to educate him will not fall on deaf ears. But when he was asked, what next, he was pleased to say, "I shall act as the inner voice tells." For an ordinary mortal like me there is no room in the presence of his "inner voice."

Mr. Gandhi may sincerely believe that he has complied with the essentials of the Lahore Resolution by his own offer or by the Gandhi-Rajaji formula, but it is pure imagination and a delusion. The language and the terms of both, as clarified by Mr. Gandhi, show they are like the Siamese Twins, and it is impossible to maintain that either of them satisfies any of the essentials embodied in the Lahore Resolution.

His contradictions and inconsistencies even in a single letter, however short, are beyond measure, and the sum total of all that has happened during the past four weeks presents one with a Chinese puzzle. I will give one instance amongst many :

"Where there is an obvious Muslim majority, they should have the fullest right to constitute themselves into a separate State. But if it means utterly independent sovereignty so that there is nothing in common between the two, I hold it is an impossible proposition. Then it means a fight to the knife."

Here is an apostle and a devotee of non-violence threatening us with a fight to the knife, and according to him the talks have only been adjourned *sine die*. But apart from that, what kind of separate States does he then concede to the obvious Muslim majority in their national homelands ?

Mr. Gandhi, perhaps under provocation, again asserted that he has never admitted the claim of the Muslim League as the only authoritative organization of the Muslims, and darkly hinted that there are other Muslim organizations with a large body of Muslim opinion behind them who do not see eye to eye with the League and do not support the two-nation theory. Thereby he has again made an attempt to discredit the Muslim League and disrupt the Mussalmans, for he knows that that is not true. Of course, no nation can attain absolute and complete unanimity, cent. per cent.

In one breath Mr. Gandhi agrees to the principle of division, and in the next he makes proposals which go to destroy the very foundations on which the division is claimed by Muslim India. On the one hand he wants a League-Congress agreement, and on the other he denies its representative character and authority to speak on behalf of the Mussalmans of India. Mr. Gandhi is an enigma.

—Quaid-e-Azam.

10. **Bad Models**. These are all very good specimens of English, the like of which the student should avidly read. But there are others which, though valuable in themselves, are not good models for the foreigner who is not very much advanced in his study of English. These bad models are either old and full of archaic and even obsolete words, or modern but replete with dialect or colloquialisms. The student should avoid imitating both the types if he is not consciously aiming at humorous effects. He will only make himself ridiculous if he uses any of the following italicized phrases from Shakespeare in one of his own essays :

Falstaff : '*Sblood*, you starveling, you *elf-skin*, you *dried neat's tongue*, you *bull's pizzle*, you stock-fish ! O for breath to utter what is like thee ! you *tailor's-yard*, you sheath, you bow-case, you vile standing tuck. —*King Henry IV, Part I*.

And he will fare no better if he imitates modern colloquialisms as in the following extract :

You know I rather think I agree with those poet-and-philosopher *Johnnies* who insist that a *fellow* ought to be *devilish* pleased if he has a bit of trouble. *All that stuff* about being refined, you know. Suffering does give *a chap* a sort of broader and more sympathetic outlook. —P. G. Wodehouse.

11. **Suggested Books**. What particular books should then the student read ? Well, the answer is : his text-books for intensive study, and the following for a general, rapid reading. The lists

given below are by no means exhaustive. Nor is it intended that everyone should necessarily read all the books listed here. The best course would be to read at least one book by every author mentioned here till the student finds some particular author fascinating him. It would then be advisable for him to read as many of that author's works as he can easily lay hands on. The next step should be the study of his favourite author's detailed biography and of a critical evaluation of his work. It is further recommended that he should read as much of modern authors as possible.

THE BOARD STUDENT'S LIBRARY

A. POETRY

1.	F. T. Palgrave ...	*A Golden Treasury of English Songs and Lyrics with Addition Poems* (Worlds Classics)
2.	Alexander Pope ...	*The Rape of the Lock.* *Essay on Criticism.* *Esssay on Man.*
3.	Thomas Gray ...	*Elegy Written in a Country Church-yard.*
4.	Sir Walter Scott ...	*Marmion.* *Lady of the Lake.* *Lay of the Last Minstrel.*
5.	William Wordsworth ...	*The Prelude*: Selections. (Macmillan).
6.	S. T. Coleridge ...	*The Ancient Mariner.* *Christabel.*
7.	Byron ...	*The Prisoner of Chillon.* *The Bride of Abydos.*
8.	John Keats ...	*Selections* (Macmillan).
9.	Lord Tennyson ...	*Selections* (Macmillan).
10.	Matthew Arnold ...	*Sohrab and Rustum.*
11.	Rudyard Kipling ...	*The Barrack Room Ballads*
12.	T. S. Eliot ...	*The Love Song of J. Alfred Prufrock.*

B. DRAMA

1.	Charles and Mary Lamb...	*Tales from Shakespeare* (plays (retold in prose)
2.	Oliver Goldsmith ...	*She Stoops to Conquer.*
3.	George Bernard Shaw ...	*Saint Joan.* *Arms of the Man.* *The Doctor's Dilemma.*
4.	Sir James Barrie ...	*Peter Pan.* *The Admirable Crichton.*

5. John Galsworthy ... *Strife.*
Justice.
6. W. B. Yeats ... *The Land of Heart's Desire.*

C. NOVELS

1. Sir Walter Scott ... *Ivanhoe.*
Kenilworth.
2. Charles Dickens ... *Oliver Twist.*
A Tale of Two Cities.
3. W. M. Thackeray ... *Vanity Fair.*
4. George Eliot ... *Silas Marner.*
5. Mrs. Gaskell ... *Cranford.*
6. Miss Mitford ... *Our Village.*
7. Charles Reade ... *The Cloister and the Hearth.*
8. Charles Kingsley ... *Westward Ho!*
9. Blackmore ... *Lorna Doone.*
10. R. L. Stevenson ... *Kidnapped.*
Treasure Island.
Dr. Jekyll and Mr. Hyde.
11. Joseph Conrad ... *Typhoon.*
12. Rudyard Kipling ... *Kim.*
Stalky and Co.
13. P. G. Wodehouse ... *Something Fresh.*
The Inimitable Jeeves.
Leave it to P. Smith.

D. SHORT STORY

1. R. L. Stevenson ... *The New Arabian Nights.*
2. Francis Bret Harte ... *Short Stories.*
3. Washington Irving ... *Tales.*
4. Nathaniel Hawthorne ... *Twice Told Tales.*
5. Edgar Allan Poe ... *Tales of Mystery and Imagination. I and II.*
6. H. G. Wells ... *Collected Short Stories.*
7. W. W. Jacobs ... *Light Freights.*
8. A. Conan-Doyle ... *The Adventures of Sherlock Holmes.*
9. Edgar Wallace ... *Short Stories.*
10. G. K. Chesterton ... *Tales of the Long Bow.*
... *The Innocence of Father Brown.*
11. Kipling *The Jungle Book, I and II.*
12. Trollope ... *Tales of All Countries.*

E. ESSAYS AND CRITICISM

1. Bacon ... *Essays* (Selections).
2. Addison ... *The Spectator* (Selections).
3. Charles Lamb ... *Essays of Elia, I.*
4. Macaulay ... *Essays* (Literary and historical).
5. Emerson ... *Essays.*
6. Ruskin ... *Sesame and Lilies.*
   The Crown of Wild Olive.
7. Matthew Arnold ... *Essays in Criticism, Vol. II.*
8. R. L. Stevenson ... *Virginibus Puerisque.*
9. Lord Avebury ... *The Pleasures of Life, I.*
10. Smiles ... *Self-Help.*
    Duty
11. E. V. Lucas ... *Old Lamps for New.*
12. A. G. Gardiner ... *Prophets, Priests and Kings.*

F. MISCELLANEOUS

1. *The Bible* ... (Portions).
2. Cowper ... *Letters.*
3. Carlyle ... *The French Revolution I and II.*
4. Mark Twain ... *The New Pilgrim's Progress.*
   The Innocents Abroad.
5. Jerome K. Jerome ... *Three Men in a Boat.*

THE UNIVERSITY STUDENT'S LIBRARY

The following books in addition to those suggested for the Board student's library.

A. POETRY

1. John Milton ... *Paradise Lost.*
2. Shelley ... *Selections* (MacMillan).
3. Browning ... *Selections* (Pitt Press).
4. Matthew Arnold ... *Poems* (Penguin).
5. Hardy ... *Satires of Circumstance.*
   Winter Words.
6. Swinburne ... *Selections.*
7. Kipling ... *Collected verse of Rudyard Kipling.*
8. John Masefield ... *The Salt Water Ballads.*
9. Robert Bridges ... *The Testament of Beauty.*
10. T. S. Eliot ... *The Waste-Land.*
11. *Fifteen Poets* (Oxford)

B. DRAMA

1. Marlowe	...	*Dr. Faustus.*
	...	*Edward II.*
2. Shakespeare	...	*Much Ado About Nothing.* *As you Like It.* *Twelfth Night.* *Romeo and Juliet.* *Hamlet.* *Macbeth.* *King Lear.* *Othello.*
3. Sheridan	...	*The School for Scandal.*
4. Oscar Wilde	...	*The Importance of Being Earnest.*
5. G. B. Shaw	...	*Candida.* *Man and Superman.* *The Apple Cart.*
6. Galsworthy	...	*The Mob.* *The Skin Game.* *Loyalties.*
7. W. B. Yeats	...	*The Countess Cathleen.*
8. J. M. Synge	...	*Deidre of the Sorrows.* *The Playboy of the Western World.*
9. Granville Barker	...	*Waste.*
10. J. M. Barrie	...	*Dear Brutus.*
11. John Masefield	...	*The Tragedy of Nan.*
12. Noel Coward	...	*Hay Fever.*
13. R. C. Sheriff	...	*The Journey's End.*
14. Eugene O'Neill	...	*The Dreamy Lad.*

C. NOVELS

1. Fielding	...	*Joseph Andrews.*
2. Jane Austen	...	*Pride and Prejudice.*
3. Dickens	...	*Pickwick Papers, I and II.* *David Copperfield.* *Martin Chuzzlewit.*
4. Thackeray	...	*Vanity Fair.*
5. George Eliot	...	*The Mill on the Floss.* *Romola.*
6. George Meredith	...	*Diana of the Crossways*
7. Thomas Hardy	...	*Jude the Obscure.* *Tess of the D'Urbervilles* *The Trumpet Major.* *Under the Greenwood Tree.* *The Mayor of Casterbridge.*

8. H. G. Wells. ... *Love and Mr. Lewisham.*
Kipps.
The History of Mr. Polly.
The Food of the Gods.
The War of the Worlds.
The World of William Clissold.
9. Arnold Benett ... *Anna of the Five Towns.*
The Old Wives' Tale.
Riceyman Steps.
10. John Galsworthy ... *The Forsyte Saga*
11. Joseph Conrad ... *The Nigger of the 'Narcisuss.'*
Lord Jim.
Chance.
12. D. H. Lawrence ... *Sons and Lovers.*
13. Hugh Walpole ... *Fortitude.*
14. Hilaire Belloc ... *The Post Master General.*
15. G. K. Chesterton ... *The Napoleon of the Notting Hill.*
The Return of Don Quixote.
The Flying Inn.
16. Kipling ... *The City of Dreadful Night.*
17. P. G. Wodehouse ... *Uneasy Money.*
Very Good, Jeeves.
Right Ho, Jeeves.
18. Aldous Huxley ... *Crome Yellow.*
Point Counter Point.
Brave New World.
19. James Joyce ... *The Portrait of an Artist as a Young Man.*
Ulysses.
20. Ernest Hemingway ... *For Whom the Bell Tolls.*

D. SHORT STORIES

1. W. W. Jacobs ... *Many Cargoes.*
Odd Craft.
2. Kipling ... *Plain Tales from the Hills.*
3. G. K. Chesterton ... *The Wisdom of Father Brown.*
4. Joseph Conrad ... *'Twixt Land and Sea.*
5. Galsworthy ... *Caravan.*
6. Hardy ... *Wessex Tales.*
Life's Little Ironies.
7. Aldous Huxley ... *Mortal Coils.*
8. *English Short Stories* ... Three series (World's Cassics.)

E. ESSAYS AND CRITICISM

1. Charles Lamb ... *The Last Essays of Elia.*
2. W. Hazlitt ... *Sketches and Essays.*

3. W. S. Landor ... *Imaginary Conversations* (Portions).
4. Carlye ... *On Heroes and Hero-Worship.*
5. Emerson ... *Essays* (Two Series).
6. Washington Irving ... *The Sketch Book.*
7. Ruskin ... *Ethics of the Dust.*
   Unto This Last.
   The Crown of Wild Olive.
   Modern Painters. Vol. I.
8. Matthew Arnold ... *Essays in Criticism. Vol. I.*
   Culture and Anarchy.
9. R. L. Stevenson ... *Familiar Studies of Men and Books.*
   Across the Plains.
10. Thoreau ... *Walden.*
11. Jerome K. Jerome ... *Idle Thoughts of an Idle Man.*
12. G. K. Chesterton ... *Alarms and Discursions.*
13. A. G. Gardiner ... *Pebbles on the Shore.*
    Leaves in the Wind.
14. Dean Inge ... *Outspoken Essays. I and II.*
15. *English Critical Essays* (3 Volumes) (World's Classics).

F. MISCELLANEOUS

1. De Quincey ... *Confessions of an Opium Eater.*
2. George Barrow ... *The Bible in Spain.*
3. Samuel Butler ... *Erewhon.*
4. H. G. Wells ... *A Modern Utopia.*
   Work, Wealth and Happiness of Mankind.
   The Shape of Things to Come.
   An Outline of History.
5. Bernard Shaw ... *The Prefaces.*
   An Intelligent Woman's Guide to Socialism and Capitalism.
6. Lytton Strachey ... *Queen Victoria.*
7. Aldous Huxley ... *The Jesting Pilate.*
8. Bertrand Russell ... *Sceptical Essays.*
9. *English Letters.* (Fifteenth to Nineteenth Centuries) (World's Classics).
10. Hudson ... *An Introduction to the Study of Literature.*
11. L. Abercrombie ... *Principles of Literary Criticism.*
12. B. Ifor Evans ... *A Short History of English Literature.*

12. **How to Read.** It is not enough to read a book without understanding it. You may not be able to explain every word or phrase used in it, but you must at least get the hang of its contents. Failing this, the time and labour spent by you on reading it will have gone waste. In order to judge how far you have developed the capacity to understand English, you must pose simple questions regarding the particular passage you have been reading, and then try to answer those questions. Take, for example, the following two extracts from Kipling, and try to answer the simple questions printed in italics at the end of each extract:

1. The custom of most Indian villages is for a few boys to take the cattle and buffaloes out to graze in the early morning, and bring them back at night; and the very cattle that would trample a white man to death allow themselves to be banged and bullied and shouted at by children that hardly come up to their noses. So long as the boys keep with the herds they are safe, for not even the tiger will charge a mob of cattle. But if they straggle to pick flowers or hunt lizards, they are sometimes carried off. Mowgli went through the village street in the dawn, sitting on the back of Rama, the great bull; and the slaty-blue buffaloes, with their long, backward, sweeping horns and savage eyes, rose out of their byres, one by one and followed him, and Mowgli made it very clear to the children with him that he was the master. He beat the buffaloes with a long, polished bamboo, and told Kamya, one of the boys, to graze the cattle by themselves, while he went on with the buffaloes, and to be very careful not to stray away from the herd.

Q. *What do the boys do in villagesin this sub-continent?*

Q. *How are the boys protected from the wild animals?*

Q. *What did Mowgli do?*

2. Then Mowgli picked out a shady place, and lay down and slept while the buffaloes grazed round him Herding in India is one of the laziest things in the world. The cattle move and crunch, and lie down and move on again and they do not even low. They only grunt, and the buffaloes very seldom say anything, but get down into the muddy pools one after another, and work their way into the mud till only their noses and staring china blue eyes show above the surface, and then they lie like logs. The sun makes the rocks dance in the heat, and the herd-children hear one kite (never any more) whistling almost out of sight overhead, and they know that if they died, or a cow died, that kite would sweep down and the next kite miles away would see him drop and follow, and the next, and the next, and almost before they were dead there would be a score of hungry kites come out of nowhere. Then they sleep and wake and sleep again and weave little baskets of dried grass and put grass-hoppers in them or catch two praying mantises and make them fight, or string a necklace of red and black jungle-nuts or watch a lizard basking on a rock, or a snake hunting a frog near the wallows. Then they sing long, long songs with old native

quavers at the end of them and the day seems longer than most people's whole lives, and perhaps they make a mud castle with mud figures of men and horses and buffaloes, and put reeds into the men's hands and pretend that they are kings and the figures are their armies, or that they are gods to be worshipped. Then evening comes and the children call, and the buffaloes lumber up out of the sticky mud with noises like gunshots going off one after the other, and they all string across the gray plain back to the twinkling village lights.

Q. *How is grazing done in this sub-continent ?*

Q. *Describe noon in summer in this sub continent.*

Q. *How do the herd-boys pass their time ?*

13. **Note-taking**. The best method of ensuring the comprehension of what you have been reading and its retention in the memory is to take down notes on that book as you read it. The importance and technique of note-taking has been admirably described by Lord Bryce in his lecture entitled *Some Hints on Reading*. Here is the relevant extract :

"If the book be one you wish to know with absolute thoroughness, as students at Oxford University were in my time expected to know Aristotle's *Ethics* and the history of Thucydides for our degree examination, you will find it a good plan to read over every day all that you read the day before. At first this is irksome, but it fixes things in your mind and is a saving in the long run. Everybody has his own devices for recording what he deems best in what he reads. but I can recommend that of making short notes, or references, on the fly leaf (or leaves) at the end and beginning of a volume of the most important facts or views it contains, noting the page on which each occurs, so that one can refer promptly to the things which struck one at the time. Where a work is either of exceptional merit for its fertility in suggestion, or specially rich in out-of-the-way facts, it may be worth while to bind in additional fly leaves. Should the book be not one's own but borrowed from a friend or a library, one must of course make the notes or references in a MS. note-book, and in that case, since the treatise will not be at hand to refer to, it becomes necessary to make a somewhat fuller abstract of the facts it is desired to remember. The advantage of either method is that the process of compressing the fact or view into the fewest possible words help to fix it in the memory. I remember cases in which eight or ten entries represented the total results of reading a book of four hundred octavo pages, yet those entries might serve to make some dark things clear.

"The late Lord Acton, the most learned man I ever knew, was in the habit of copying out on slips of paper passages or sentences which he thought valuable from all the volumes he perused. He had hundreds of card-board boxes filled with these slips, the boxes

being labelled with the titles of their subjects ; and he seemed to know how to lay his hand upon any extract he wanted...

"There are those who keep note-books in which they enter the most remarkable facts or aphorisms or statements of doctrine and opinion which they encounter in the course of their reading. For persons fortunate enough to have formed methodical habits this may be a good plan."

14. **Analysis**. The notes will prove very useful if they comprise an analysis of the piece under study. An analysis is not just a summary of the book but a chapterwise or stanzawise synopsis ot the whole work. It is very much detailed in the case of poems and plays than in that of novels, short stories, etc. Given below are the analyses of two poems, two plays and two novels. The first on the list is Coleridge's *Ancient Mariner* which has been analysed by the poet himself.

(A) TWO POEMS

1. THE ANCIENT MARINER

(*S. T. Coleridge*)

PART I

Stanzas 1—3. An ancient Mariner meeteth three Gallants bidden to a wedding feast, and detaineth one.

Stanzas 4—5. The Wedding-Guest is spell bound by the eye of the old seafaring man, and constrained to hear his tale.

Stanzas 6—8. The Mariner tells how the ship sailed southward with a good wind and fair weather, till it reached the line.

Stanzas 9—10. The Wedding-Guest heareth the bridal music ; but the Mariner continueth his tale.

Stanzas 11—13. The ship is driven by a storm toward the south pole.

Stanzas 14—15. The land of ice, and of fearful sounds where no living thing was to be seen.

Stanzas 16—17. Till a great sea-bird, called the Albatross, came through the snow-fog, and was received with great joy and hospitality.

Stanzas 18—19. And lo ! the Albatross proveth a bird of good omen, and followeth the ship as it returned northward through fog and floating ice.

Stanza 20. The ancient Mariner inhospitably killeth the pious bird of good omen.

PART II

Stanzas 1—3. His shipmates cry out against the ancient Mariner, for killing the bird of good luck.

Stanza 4. But when the fog cleared off, they justify the same, and thus make themselves accomplices in the crime.

Stanzas 5—8. The fair breeze continues; the ship enters the Pacific Ocean, and sails northward, even till it reaches the Line. The ship hath been suddenly becalmed.

Stanzas 9—11. And the Albatross begins to be avenged.

Stanzas 12—13. A Spirit had followed them; one of the invisible inhabitants of this planet, neither departed souls nor angels; concerning whom the learned Jew, Josephus, and the Platonic Constantinopolitan, Michael Psellus, may be consulted. They are very numerous, and there is no climate or element without one or more.

Stanza 14. The shipmates in their sore distress, would fain throw the whole guilt on the ancient Mariner: in sign whereof they hang the dead sea-bird round his neck.

PART III

Stanzas 1—3. The ancient Mariner beholdeth a sign in the element afar off.

Stanza 4. At its nearer approach, it seemeth him to be a ship; and at a dear ransom he freeth his speech from the bonds of thirst.

Stanzas 5—7. A flash of joy; and horror follows. For can it be a ship that comes onward without wind or tide?

Stanzas 8—9. It seemeth him but the skeleton of a ship.

Stanza 10. And its ribs are seen as bars on the face of the setting Sun. The Spectre-Woman and her Deathmate, and no other on board the skeleton ship.

Stanza 11. Like vessel, like crew!

Stanza 12. Death and Life-in-Death have diced for the ship's crew, and she (the latter) winneth the ancient Mariner.

Stanza 13. No twilight within the courts of the Sun.

Stanzas 14—16. At the rising of the Moon one after another, his shipmates drop down dead.

Stanza 17. But Life-in-Death begins her work on the ancient Mariner.

PART IV

Stanzas 1-3. The Wedding-Guest feareth that a Spirit is talking to him; but the ancient Mariner assureth him of his bodily life, and proceedeth to relate his horrible penance.

Stanza 4. He despiseth the creatures of the calm.

Stanzas 5—7. And envieth that they should live, and so many lie dead.

Stanzas 8—9. But the curse liveth for him in the eye of the dead men.

Stanzas 10—11. In his loneliness and fixedness he yearneth to-

wards the journeying Moon, and the stars that still sojourn, yet still move onward ; and everywhere the blue sky belongs to them, and is their appointed rest, and their native country and their own natural homes, which they enter unannounced, as lords that are certainly expected and yet there is a silent joy at their arrival.

Stanzas 12—13. By the light of the Moon he beholdeth God's creatures of the great calm.

Stanza 14. Their beauty and their happiness. He blesseth them in his heart.

Stanza 15. The spell begins to break.

PART V

Stanzas 1—4. By grace of the holy Mother, the ancient Mariner is refreshed with rain.

Stanzas 5—8. He heareth sounds and seeth strange sights and commotions in the sky and the element.

Stanzas 9—12. The bodies of the ship's crew are inspired and the ship moves on ;

Stanzas 13—19. But not by the souls of the men, nor by daemons of earth or middle air; but by a blessed troop of angelic spirits, sent down by the invocation of the guardian saint.

Stanzas 20—23. The lonesome Spirit from the south-pole carries on the ship as far as the Line, in obedience to the angelic troop, but still requireth vengeance.

Stanzas 24—27. The Polar Spirit's fellow-daemons, the invisible inhabitants of the element, take part in his wrong ; and two of them relate, one to the other, that penance long and heavy for the ancient Mariner hath been accorded to the Polar Spirit, who returneth southward.

PART VI

Stanzas 1—5. The Mariner hath been cast into a trance ; for the angelic power causeth the vessel to drive northward faster than human life could endure.

Stanzas 6—8. The supernatural motion is retarded ; the Mariner awakes, and his penance begins anew.

Stanzas 9—13. The curse is finally expiated.

Stanzas 14—17. And the ancient Mariner beholdeth his native country.

Stanzas 18—25. The angelic spirits leave the dead bodies, and appear in their own forms of light.

PART VII

Stanzas 1—3. The Hermit of the Wood.

Stanzas 4—7. Approacheth the ship with wonder.

Stanza 8. The ship suddenly sinketh.

Stanzas 9—13. The ancient Mariner is saved in the Pilot's boat.

Stanzas 14—15. The ancient Mariner earnestly entreateth the Hermit to shrieve him ; and the penance of life falls on him.

Stanzas 16—25. And ever and anon throughout his future life an agony constraineth him to travel from land to land ; and to teach, by his own example, love and reverence to all things that God made and loveth.

2. ENDYMION

John Keats

Keats's *Endymion* is a well-known but rather formless poem. Below we are reproducing the excellent analysis of the poem given by Dr. Bridges in his *Essay on Keats.*

Book I. *On the Earth.*

1. Author's prologue, 1—62.
2. Festival of Pan on Latmos, 63—406.
   (Endymion enters, 168 ; Ode to Pan, 232—306)
3. Peona takes E to her bower, 407—515.
   (Address to sleep, 453—463)

E tells of his vision of an unknown goddess among the poppies—he dreamt he was asleap, 516—710.

Peona rallies him on his love, 710—768.

E replies with his argument on the meaning of Love, 769—857, and gives an account of a second, 893, and third, 963, meeting with the same vision, to end of the book.

Book II. *Wanderings under the Earth.*

1. Prologue on supremacy of love above heroism, etc., 1—43.
2. E, while enjoying the pleasure of nature, reads message on a butterfly's wings, 43—63.

The butterfly leads him to a nymph, who foretells his wanderings and ultimate success, 64—130.

E meditates on the disappointment of desire, and prays to Cynthia as his especial goddess, but not recognised as his visitant ; and receives answer bidding him descend into the silent mysteries of earth, 131—214.

He obeys, 218.

Description of an underworld of gems, 219—280.

E feels horror of solitude, and wishes to return to the earth He comes to a temple of Diana, his goddess, and prays Diana to deliver him from the underworld, 281—332.

Flowers springing out of the marble, 333—350.

He goes on to soft music, 351—363.

Is tortured by the music, 364—375.
Comes to a lightsome wood of myrtles, 376—386.

3. Description of Adonis, 387—427.
The waking of Adonis, 428—533.
Venus encourages Endymion, and enjoins secrecy 534—587.

4. Endymion follows a diamond balustrade through water-works to a gloom where he sees Cybele, 588—649.
Balustrade breaks off, and he goes on an eagle to a jasmine bower, where he soliloquises, 649—706.
Cynthia comes unknown to him in bower, 707—827.
And leaves him asleep, —853.

5. E wakes to melancholy thought, and strays to a grotto where he sees Alpheus and Arethusa,—he prays for them, 854—1017.
He goes altogether under the sea. —1023.

Book III. *Under the Sea.*

1. Prologue on regalities and supremacy of the Moon, 1—71.
2. A moonbeam reaches E under sea, 72—102, and shines on him till morning, 102—119. (Description of sea-floor, 119—141. Address to the Moon, 142—187.)
3. He meets with Glaucus and Scylla, 187—1027.
Neptune's hall, 866—887.
Venus cheers E, 887—923.
Neptune's feast, 927—937.
Hymn to Neptune, 943—990.
Nereids carry off E, 1005—1018.
E hears a heavenly voice promising to take him up, 1019—1027.
4. E finds himself back on the earth, 1028—1032.

Book IV. *In the Air.*

1. Prologue to English Muse, 1—29.
2. E finds a beautiful Indian maid bewailing her loneliness
He falls in love with her, 30—330.
And accompanies her in the air on flying horses, 330.
E and Indian sleep on the sleeping horses, 398.
Cynthia appears to E as the moon, 430.
The Indian disappears, 512.
Cave of quietude described, 512—562.
Diana's feast and hymn to D, 563—611.

3. In midst of hymn E is borne to Latmos again and finds there and addresses the Indian lady, 611—797. (The poet speaks 770—780).
4. Peona reappears and by the identification of the Moon Cynthia, and the Indian lady as one, the tale concludes, 1003.

(B) TWO PLAYS

1. JUSTICE

(*John Galsworthy*)

Here is a critic's analysis of Galsworthy's *Justice*.

Type, Period, Scenes : Tragedy ; contemporary England : lawyer's office, court-room, prison.

Theme : The injustice of justice as administered (note irony of title).

Plot : A clerk in a lawyer's office forges a cheque in order to save the woman he loves from a drunken husband, by taking her and her children away from England. He is detected and tried and serves his term in prison. Returning, he finds it impossible to be restored to his former condition in life and commits suicide.

Principal Characters : Falder and Ruth Honeywill, the lovers, commonplace, good young people, not able to deal with the circumstances of their lives ; James and Walter, two lawyers of the cold and new schools ; Cokeson, their tender-hearted chief clerk and Sweedle, the office boy, who gives a touch of humour. The lawyers, prison officials, and other characters are merely types needed for the machinery of the play.

Structure : All the action is contained in Acts I and IV. Acts II and III are purely expository ; II, of the procedure of a trial ; III, of the prison life. But it is exposition for which the play really exists and the dramatic climax is in the scene in which Falder beats against the walls of his cell in desperation (III. iii).

Although the play is social in its purpose, the humanitarian and art elements are so blended that there is no irrelevant material.

Style : Much use of description in stage directions ; dialogue economical to the last degree ; the most emotional scene is without a word.

Interpretive comment : A "closet" play to be read as well as seen. Galsworthy, a lawyer by training, and humanitarian by temperament. The play brought about prison reform.

Present Judgment : Remarkable for close-knit structure, economy of style, and social passion.

2. THE MERCHANT OF VENICE

(*William Shakespeare*)

The importance of Shakespeare's plays calls for a very detailed analysis. Here is how a commentator analyses *The Merchant of Venice* :

There are three plots in the play woven together to form one action. These are (1) the Bond story, (2) the Caskets story. and (3) the Lorenzo-Jessica story. In our analysis of the play we shall try to show how these plots are developed, how they interact and are brought together at the end.

ACT I. This act has to do with the two main plots—the Bond story and the Caskets story. We are shown how the former arises out of the latter. Bassanio has fallen in love with Portia. He wants to pay court to her. For this he needs money. He approaches his rich friend Antonio, who is not, just then, in a position to help him. But Antonio offers to act as Bassanio's security. Bassanio approaches Shylock. Shylock agrees to advance the money provided Antonio signs the terrible bond, agreeing to forfeit a pound of flesh in case the loan is not paid off by the date fixed. Thus the Bond story arises out of the Caskets story.

Scene 1. *Venice.* The mysterious sadness of Antonio whose ships are all at sea is discussed by his friends. Bassanio arrives and tells Antonio all about Portia and his need of money. Antonio readily agrees to act as Bassanio's security, as he has no money of his own at the moment.

Scene 2. *Belmont.* Portia, the rich heiress, who, according to her father's will, is to marry the man who chooses the right Casket, talks of her lovers with her confidante and maid-servant Nerissa. Portia does not like any of the wooers who are in the running When, however, she is reminded of the Venetian scholar and soldier Bassanio, who once paid her a visit, Potia expresses her approval of him. Just then the arrival of another wooer, the Prince of Morocco, is announced.

Scene 3. *Venice.* Bassanio meets Shylock and asks for a loan of three thousand ducats for three months on the security of Antonio. Shylock who hates Antonio shows a good deal of reluctance at first. Antonio arrives. Shylock protests against his insulting treatment of him. He agrees to lend the sum if Antonio signs a bond forfeiting a pound of his flesh if the money is not returned by the date fixed. Antonio, who is confident of the safe return of his ships within two months, agrees to sign the bond.

ACT II. This Act introduces the third plot, the Lorenzo-Jessica story, clears the stage of unsuccessful wooers of Portia and prepares for the successful choice of Bassanio, and hints at

the loss of a ship of Antonio, and thus furthers the development of the Bond story.

Scene 1. *Belmont.* The Prince of Morocco is welcomed by Portia. The Prince makes a courteous speech, and asks Portia not to think ill of him because of his complexion. Portia assures him on this point. The Prince wants to be led to the Caskets without delay.

Scene 2. *Venice.* A comic scene which does not serve any important dramatic purpose, Launcelot Gobbo, the servant of Shylock, wants to change the Jew for Bassanio as his master. But he has a conscience, and he cannot make up his mind. He befools his old father, and when Bassanio enters, applies for and accepts his livery. Gratiano, a merry friend of Bassanio, obtains the latter's consent to journey with him to Belmont.

Scene 3. *Venice.* Jessica is sad that Launcelot is going away and gives him a letter for Lorenzo with whom she is planning to elope.

Scene 4. *Venice.* Lorenzo receives Jessica's letter and unfolds the plan of elopement before his friends.

Scene 5. *Venice.* Shylock, after asking Jessica to be very careful, leaves his house to attend the dinner given by Bassanio.

Scene 6. *Venice.* Jessica, dressed as a boy, elopes with Lorenzo carrying with her some precious stones and a good many ducats. Antonio comes to inform Gratiano that Bassanio is leaving for Belmont at once, as the wind is favourable.

Scene 7. *Belmont.* The Prince af Morocco makes his choice. He chooses the golden Casket, finds that he is unsuccessful, and departs.

Scene 8. *Venice.* Two friends of Antonio's, Salarino and Salanio, discuss the running away of Jessica with Lorenzo, and make fun of the Jew's grief. They feel that this will incense the Jew all the more against Antonio. They have heard of Antonio losing a ship.

Scene 9. *Belmont.* The Prince of Arragon arrives. He makes his choice, wrongly selects the silver Casket, and goes away. [In this way Shakespeare indicates that the leaden Casket is the right one, and that it is likely that Bassanio will choose it.]

ACT III. This Act brings the Bond story to a climax. It sees the happy consummation of Bassanio's courting of Portia. It brings the Lorenzo-Jessica plot close to the other two plots. Jessica's running away with a friend of Antonio's makes the Jew all the more resolved to have his revenge. But just as the Bond story arose out of the Caskets story, we see in this act how the chief character of the Caskets story, Portia, is planning to rescue

Antonio, the victim of the Bond story. Thus the three plots are closely interrelated.

Scene 1. *Venice.* Salanio and Salarino talk of Antonio's losses. As Shylock approaches they make fun of his grief at the double loss—that of his daughter and that of the ducats. Tubal, another Jew whom Shylock had sent after Jessica, tells him that he traced the lovers to Genoa but could not meet them. But Shylock's grief soon gives way to a grim joy when he hears of Antonio's losses. He feels that Antonio is in his clutches and cannot escape. His own losses make him all the more determined to destroy Antonio.

Scene 2. *Belmont.* Bassanio is impatient to try his luck, although Portia, who is almost in love with him, requests him not to take the risk too soon. Bassanio, however, proceeds to the trial, and chooses the right casket. Portia gives her ring to Bassanio who swears to keep it on his finger always. Gratiano also asks for and obtains the hand of Nerissa. Just then Lorenzo and Jessica arrive with Salanio. They bring the news of the impending ruin of Antonio. Portia asks Bassanio to hurry to Venice at once with all the money he needs.

Scene 3. *Venice.* Antonio is out for a walk with his gaoler. Shylock asks the officer to be very careful, and turns a deaf ear to all the appeals of Antonio.

Scene 4. *Belmont.* Portia makes over the charge of her household to Lorenzo and Jessica and expresses her desire to stay at a monastery with Jessica until Bassanio returns. But secretly she sends a man to her cousin Bellario, a famous lawyer, at Padua, asking for his opinion on Antonio's case, and also for a lawyer's outfit.

Scene 5. *Belmont.* Not an important scene. Launcelot, Jessica and Lorenzo indulge in jokes of all kinds. Theirs is a happy life.

ACT IV. This act forms the climax of the play. The Bond story reaches its crisis. When all seems to be over with Antonio, Portia saves him. Thus she pays off the debt she and Bassanio owe to Antonio. Shylock is forced to make a will in favour of Jessica, and thus the third plot also reaches a happy conclusion.

Scene 1. *Venice.* This is the Trial scene, the most dramatic and the longest scene in the play. Shylock is resolved to have his pound of flesh, nothing will move him. Portia comes disguised as a young lawyer with strong recommendations from Dr. Bellario. She examines the bond, says that Shylock's position is quite sound, and makes a fine appeal for mercy. But Shylock pays no attention to it. Then Portia points out that he must forfeit his life if he sheds Antonio's blood or takes more or less than a pound of Antonio's flesh. She also mentions a law of Venice which lays down that any one plotting against the life of a citizen must forfeit all his property

his life must be at the mercy of the Duke. The Duke forgives and Antonio too is prepared to forgive him if he turns a Christian makes a will in favour of Jessica. Shylock has no other choice. the end of the trial, the lawyer does not accept any fees but asks for the ring that Bassanio wears. This Bassanio does not want to part with.

Scene 2. *Venice.* Gratiano runs after Portia and gives her the ng of Bassanio. Nerissa also wants, in this way, to obtain the ring Gratiano.

ACT V. A short act which consists of one scene only. It is all happiness. We find Lorenzo and Jessica, happy in their love, enjoying the moonlight before Portia's house at Belmont. Portia and Nerissa arrive before others. When Bassanio, Gratiano and Antonio arrive, they are welcomed by Portia. A good deal of pleasant comedy is made out of the missing rings. After keeping Bassanio and Gratiano in ...ase for a while, Portia explains everything to them. She also informs Antonio that three of his ships have come home safely. Thus all the three plots—the Bond story, the Caskets story, and the Lorenzo-Jessica story—are brought to a happy close.

(C) TWO NOVELS

Reproduced below are the analyses of two novels as given in *The Oxford Companion to English Literature.* Of novels as they are, they lack the detail of the analyses of the various poems and plays in the foregoing pages.

1. TREASURE ISLAND

(*R. L. Stevenson*)

Treasure Island, a romance by R. L. Stevenson, was ...hed in book form in 1883. It had previously appeared as a serial in *Young Folks* from late in 1881 under the title *The Sea Cook or Treasure Island*.

The narrator is the lad, Jim Hawkins, whose mother keeps the 'Admiral Benbow' somewhere on the coast in the west of England, in the eigteenth century. An old buccaneer takes up his quarters at the inn. He has in his chest information, in the shape of a manuscript map, as to the whereabouts of Captain Flint's treasure. Of this his former confederates are determined to obtain possession, and a body of them, led by the sinister blind pirate, Pew, make a descent on the inn. But Jim Hawkins outwits them, secures the map, and delivers it to Squire Trelawney. The Squire and his friend Dr. Livesey set off for Treasure Island in the *Hispaniola* schooner, taking Jim with them. Some of the crew are the Squire's faithful dependants, but the majority are old buccaneers recruited by the plausible one-legged villain, Long John Silver. Their design to seize the ship and kill the Squire's party is discovered by Jim, and after a series of thrilling

fights and adventures is completely thwarted ; and the Squire, with the help of the marooned pirate, Ben Gunn, secures the treasure.

2. THE MOONSTONE

(*Wilkie Collins*)

The Moonstone, a novel by Wilkie Collins, was published in 1868.

The moonstone is an enormous diamond that had once been set in the forehead of an image of the Indian moon-god. At the siege of Seringapatam it had come into the possession of an English officer, John Herncastle, who had killed its three Brahmin guards. It proved a dangerous acquisition, for other Brahmins set to work, with the utmost determination, to recover it. The moonstone is handed to Miss Verinder, in accordance with a testamentary disposition, on her eighteenth birthday, and mysteriously disappears the same night. Suspicion falls on three Indian jugglers who have been seen in the neighbourhood of the house. It has in fact been taken from Miss Verinder's cabinet, unconsciously, by her lover Franklin Blake, while under the influence of opium, and he has been seen to take it by Miss Verinder, who consequently breaks off relations with him, though determined to screen him from detection. From Franklin Blake, while still unconscious, the villain Godfrey Ablewhite, Franklin's rival for the hand of Miss Verinder, has obtained it ; and the story is occupied with the contest of cunning between Godfrey and the three Indians, ending in the murder of the former, the recovery of the diamond by the latter, and the revelation of the mystery. Sergeant Cuff, one of the first detectives in English fiction, figures in the story.

15. Constant Practice. Finally, you must bear in mind that you can learn to speak and write correct English only by constant practice in speaking and writing it, and not by indulging in wishful thinking that fluency in it will come to you by itself. Remember that you can learn to read a language only by reading it, learn to write in it only by writing in it, and learn to speak it only by speaking it. And that is not all. You must see that every new effort by you is a conscious improvement on the efforts you made previously. Ceaseless efforts are the *sine qua non* of success in every walk of life. So you will be well-advised not to let slip any opportunity of expressing yourself in English by pen or by word of mouth. Make friends with those who can speak English fluently.

Do not rest content with just the passive role of a listener. Shake off that timidity and nervousness which makes you tongue-tied in that company. Be at your ease and do as much of the talking yourself as is consistent with the demands of the occasion. And watch against the tendency to let your talk drop into the local dialect, if you are to learn the way to speak English.

As to the written word, make up your mind to write something every day. It is indeed a hard job save for the initiate. "The familiar jest," says Brewster, "that a man prepares to write by chewing the end of his pencil, is based on the tradition that writing is a very difficult art." But you can obviate this difficulty by a firm resolve to write at least a page or two every day in the most polished manner that you can. Macaulay, the great writer that he was, continued to experience this difficulty throughout his life. But it could never shake his resolve to write a few pages every day. Unless there is firm resolve to practice and unless you make a point of implementing that resolve, success will always evade you. You will never learn to speak and write correct English without a regular, lifelong practice. Remember that this book can help you only if you make up your mind to have constant practice in the speaking and writing of English. If you lack that resolve, we had better part company. Burn the book, sell it or give it away, for it is no use pretending to learn without making any effort to do so.

PART I

LEARN THE LIVING LANGUAGE

CHAPTER II

THE PREREQUISITES

1. Generally speaking, our pronunciation of English sounds funny to an Englishman as his pronunciation of our nation languages would sound to us. We realize perfectly well that h faulty pronunciation debars him from the full enjoyment of Ur or Bengali literature, because he can hardly appreciate the force the spoken word of one of these languages, and is thus unable have a first-hand intimacy with them even through the medium screen and radio. But seldom do we realize how we ourselves a handicapped in the study of English literature by our faulty pro nunciation of the language we try hard to learn for years on en without much success.

2. That average Pakistani students are hardly able to follow V. O. A. or B. B. C. broadcast, or an English picture, is an incon trovertible fact which few of them would have the courage to admit They would rather continue in their pitiable ignorance, than injur their false sense of honour by a frank admission of their drawbacks Nevertheless, since progress is impossible of achievement withou such a self-appraisal, they never can hope to have a command o English so long as they do not change their attitude towards the method of its study.

3. You must have all heard, if not read, the *Arabian Nights'* enchanting tale of Ali Baba. 'Open Sesame' was the incantation which threw open to this brave youth the gates of the robbers' cave and made him the master of all their wealth, but a mispronunciation of these very words proved a booby-trap for his jealous brother. Beware then of the grave dangers lying in wait for mispronunciation of English words. The gates of its rich literature will never be thrown open to you unless you are familiar with correct English pronunciation. You will not understand the full force of the spoken word. You will not be able to appreciate the true power of words latent in the written symbol.

4. You must, therefore, often go to see English pictures, and make a point of tuning in the V. O. A. (Voice of America) or the B. B. C. (British Broadcasting Corporation) English programmes as often as you can, with a view to breeding familiarity with English as a living language. This will be the first step. But it cannot take you a long way on the road to achieving a facile expression in English if you stop short of this aural exercise. Verbal and visual aids should follow, or else you will never assimilate what has flowed into your ears. You must make an attempt to reproduce both in writing and by word of mouth, a part at least of what you have been listening in to. This will sound a bit difficult at first, but all difficulties will whittle away before constant practice. Here is Dr. Johnson telling you what perseverance can do :

"All the performances of human art, at which we look with praise or wonder, are instances of the resistless force of perseverance. It is by this that the quarry becomes a pyramid, and that distant countries are united with canals. If a man was to compare the effect of a single stroke of the pick-axe, or of one impression of the spade with the general design and last result, he would be overwhelmed by the sense of their disproportion. Yet those petty operations, incessantly continued, in time surmount the greatest difficulties, and mountains are levelled, and oceans bounded, by the slender force of human beings."

CHAPTER III

CORRECT PRONUNCIATION

1. "Speak the speech, I pray you, as I pronounced it to you, trippingly on the tongue : but if you mouth it, as many of your players do, I had as lief the town-crier spoke my lines"—(Shakespeare : *Hamlet*)

"By *trippingly on the tongue*, the poet means the bounding from accent to accent ; tripping along from word to word, without resting on syllables by the way. And by *mouthing* is meant dwelling upon syllables that have no accent, and ought, therefore, to be uttered as quickly as is consistent with distinct articulation ; or prolonging the sounds of the accented syllables beyond their due proportion of time."—(Sheridan)

2. Shakespeare's advice to actors in the tragedy of *Hamlet*, and the famous eighteenth century orator-playwright Sheridan's interpretation of it, stress the need of correct pronunciation for producing the desired effect by bringing out the full force of words employed to convey a particular meaning. The advice has two parts. The negative part, or that which asks us to avoid mannerisms, depreciates *mouthing* which means wrong or undue stress upon a syllable. This is the major fault with foreigners. In an attempt to pronounce the words distinctly, they either accent even their *the's*, *for's* and *from's*, or accent the words on the wrong syllables pronouncing, for instance, **acumen** as *ak*-you-men (and not correctly as a-*kew*-men), or **comparable** as kum-*pair*-abl (as not correctly as *kum*-par-abl). In order to obviate such mistakes we have to look up the pronunciation of each and every word in the dictionary where the stressed syllables are either printed in distinct type or are followed by the mark of accent (′), thus indicating the accent in the word **enlist** either as en-*list* or as en-list′.

3. A syllable, it should be noted, is a group of consonants centring round one vowel sound, as *of*, *for*, *from*, *firth*, *friend*, etc. It must be borne in mind that it is not a single vowel, but a *single vowel sound* (comprising one or more vowels, as *a*, *ai*, *an*, *ae*, etc.). which forms the nucleus of a syllable.

4. The positive part of Shakespeare's advice stresses the need of fluency in speech. If we speak in a halting voice, we display either our ignorance which is disgraceful, or our affectation which is in bad taste. So we ought to avoid both, and speak "trippingly on the tongue," as he says.

5. There is still another difficulty experienced by a majority of foreigners speaking English. It relates to the correct pronunciation of the various letters of the English alphabet. **Alphabet** (a, b, c,... ......etc.) is the name of the written symbols which represent the simple sounds of speech. The word is composed of the first two letters of the Greek alphabet, *alpha* (a or ا) and *beta* (b or ب).

The modern English alphabet is borrowed from the Roman. It is quite different from the Old English alphabet which was used up to the eleventh century of the Christian era, and is called *Runic* or *Futhorc* from the names of its first six letters *f, u, th, o, r, c*.

6. Phonetic Alphabet. The modern English, or Roman, alphabet is far from being an ideal medium for committing speech sounds to writing. It has **five** vowels (a, e, i, o, u) to represent **thirteen** vowel sounds. An ideal script is the International Phonetic Alphabet, with 87 letters, 46 of which can adequately represent English sounds. Here are the symbols followed by two small paragraphs transcribed in this script :

Vowels

[i:] as in *see, sea* [si:]
[i] as in *city* [síti], *goodness* [ɡudnis]
[e] as in *get* [ɡet]
[æ] as in *man* [mæn]
[ɑ:] as in *calm* [kɑ:m], *father* [fɑ́:ðə], *farm* [fɑ:m]
[ɔ] as in *hot* [hɔt]
[ɔ:] as in *saw* [sɔ:]
[o] as in *obey* [obéi], *November* [novémbə]
[u] as in *book* [buk], *put* [put]
[u:] as in *too, two* [tu:]
[ʌ] as in *cup* [kʌp]
[ə:] as in *burn* [bə:n], *world* [wə:ld]
[ə] as in *ago* [əɡóu], China [tʃáinə]

Diphthongs

[ei] as in *they* [ðei], *day* [dei]
[ou] as in *go* [ɡou], *know* [nou]
[ai] as in *my* [mai], high [hai]
[au] as in *how* [hau]
[ɔi] as in *boy* [bɔi]
[iə] as in *here* [hiə], *idea* [aidíə]
[ɛə] as in *there* [ðɛə], *fair* [fɛə]
[ɔə] as in *more* [mɔə], *four* [fɔə]
[uə] as in *tour* [tuə], *moor* [muə]

Semi-vowels

[w] as in *will* [wil]
[j] as n *yet* [jet]

Consonants

[b] as in *bed* [bed]
[d] as in *dog* [dɔɡ]
[f] as in *fat* [fæt]
[ɡ] as in *go* [ɡou]
[h] as in *hat* [hæt]
[k] as in *cow* [kau], *kill* [kil], *quick* [kwik]
[l] as in *leg* [leɡ]
[m] as in *man* [mæn]
[n] as in *not* [nɔt], *sun* [sʌn]
[p] as in *pen* [pen]
[r] as in *red* [red]
[s] as in *see* [si:]
[t] as in *ten* [ten]
[v] as in *very* [véri]
[z] as in *zone* [zoun], *is* [iz]
[ŋ] as in *singer* [síŋə], *finger* [fiŋɡə], *thinker* [θiŋkə]
[ʃ] as in *ship* [ʃip], *mission* [míʃən]
[tʃ] as in *church* [tʃə:tʃ]
[ʒ] as in *measure* [méʒə]
[dʒ] as in *judge* [dʒʌdʒ]
[θ] as in *thin* [θin]
[ð] as in *then* [ðen], *the* [ðə]

Non-English Sounds

[ɑ̃] as in (Fr.) *en route* [ɑ̃:(n)ru:t], *centime* [sɑ̃.(n)ti:m]
[ɛ̃] as in (Fr.) *lingerie* [lɛ̃:(n)ʒəri], *doyen* [dwaiɛ̃(ŋ)]
[ɔ̃] as in (Fr.) *raison d'être* [réizɔ̃ déitr]
[ø] as in (Fr.) *messieurs* [mɛsjø]
[y] as in (Fr.) *revue* [rəvy]
[x] as in (Scotch) *loch* [lɔx]
[ç] as in (G.) *Reich* [raiç]

A specimen of English in the International Phonetic Alphabet.

ðə sʌn sɛz, mai neim iz sʌn. ai m vɛre brait. ai raiz in ðə iːst, ən hwɛn ai raiz, it s dei. ai luk in ət joɹ windo wið mai brait, gouldn ai, ən tɛl ju hwɛn it s taim tə gɛt ʌp; ənd ai sei, slʌgəɹd, gɛt ʌp; ai dount ʃain fəɹ ju tə lai in bɛd ən sliːp, bət ai ʃain fəɹ ju tə gɛt ʌp ən wʌɹk, ən riːd, ən wɔːk əbaut.

ai m ə greit travləɹ; ai travl ɔːl ouvəɹ ðə skai; ai nɛvəɹ stɔp, ənd ai m nɛvəɹ taiɹd. ai hav ə kraun on mai hɛd, ə kraun əv brait reiz, ənd ai sɛnd aut mai reiz ɛvrehwɛɹ. ai ʃain ɔn ðə triːz, ən ðə hauzez, ən ðə wɔːtəɹ; ənd ɛvreθiŋ luks spɑɹkliŋ ən bjuːtefl hwɛn ai ʃain ɔn it.

In the current English script, these paragraphs will be thus printed :

The sun says : "My name is Sun. I'am very bright. I rise in the east, and when I rise it's day. I look in at your window with my bright, golden eye, and tell you when it is time to get up ; and I say, 'sluggard, get up ; I don't shine for you to lie in bed and sleep, but I shine for you to get up and work, and read and walk about.'

"I am a great traveller ; I travel all over the sky, and I'm never tired. I have a crown on my head, a crown of bright rays, and I send out my rays everywhere. I shine on the trees, and the houses, and the water ; and everything looks sparkling and beautiful when I shine on it."

7. So long as this script is not adopted we have to work our way through the labyrinth of the English script as it is, trying to know which sound in a particular word is represented by *c*, *g*, *s*, etc. In this arduous task guidance may be sought from some practical rules, like giving the soft sounds to **c** (س) and **g** (ج) when they precede **e** or **i**. But the rules are not infallible and sometimes even the very first test would smash them to smithereens. And it is more puzzling when we come to vowel sounds. Nevertheless, a few hints given below would not be out of place.

8. The English alphabet has 26 letters with their names indicated against each in italics :

(1) **a**	*ay*	(14) **n**	*en*
(2) **b**	*bee*	(15) **o**	*oh*
(3) **c**	*see*	(16) **p**	*pee*
(4) **d**	*dee*	(17) **q**	*kew*
(5) **e**	*ee*	(18) **r**	*ah*
(6) **f**	*ef*	(19) **s**	*es*
(7) **g**	*jee*	(20) **t**	*tee*
(8) **h**	*aych*	(21) **u**	*yew*
(9) **i**	*eye*	(22) **v**	*vee*
(10) **j**	*jay*	(23) **w**	*double yew*
(11) **k**	*kay*	(24) **x**	*ex*
(12) **l**	*el*	(25) **y**	*wy*
(13) **m**	*em*	(26) **z**	*zed*

9. With the exception of the **vowels** *a, e, i, o, u,* (and occasionally *w* and *y*) all other letters are called **consonants**. The consonants **f** (ف), **j** (ج), **l** (ل), **m** (م), **n** (ن), **v** (و), and **z** (ز) have exactly the same sounds as the corresponding letters of the Urdu alphabet given here along with them in parentheses. The letter **r** is trilled (or pronounced like our ر) in all parts of the English-speaking world except Southern England where it is slurred or pronounced indistinctly when it precedes another consonant or occurs at the end of a word (provided, again, the following word does not begin with a vowel.) Thus people in Southern England (which, by the way, includes London) will pronounce the world **far** as *fah*. When used alone, but when preceding a word beginning with a vowel, they will trill it. The sentence

How far is it from here ?

will be pronounced by them as

How fah riz it from hee ?

10. The letter **q** is always followed by *u*, and is pronounced as *kw* ; but towards the end of a word where it may stand alone or be followed by *u* or *ue*, it is pronounced as *k*.

The letters **c** and **g** have usually a soft sound (س ، ج) when preceding *e* or *i*, as in *certain, cistern, gesture, gist* ; but a hard sound otherwise, as in *crevice, grade*, etc.

The letter **x** has the sound of *z* when beginning a word, as in xylophone ; of *sh* in the terminal *xion*, as in inflexion ; and of *ks* or *gz* otherwise.

The letter **v** is pronounced like our و, with the lower lip pressed against the bottom of the upper teeth. But the letter **w** is pronounced in a different way with pouting lips, as if the speaker were about to whistle.

11. The pronunciation of the pairs **p** and **b**, **k** and **g**, **t** and **d** should be carefully learnt, the first letter of each pair having a *sharp* and the second a *flat* sound. The second letters of the pairs represent exactly the same sounds as the corresponding Urdu letters ب for **b**, گ for **g** and ڈ for **d**. But the first letters are by far more sharp than their Urdu counterparts. In fact, to our ears they sound more like پھ than پ for **p**, more like کھ than ک for **k**, and more like ٹھ than ٹ for **t**. This difference is very important to note. Letters **d** and **t** before *u* sound rather like ج and چ than like ڈ and ٹ.

☞ *Do not pronounce* **p, k** *and* **t** *like the Urdu* پ ، ک *and* ٹ : *but also be on your guard against switching over to the other extreme and pronouncing them like the Urdu* پھ ، کھ *and* ٹھ. *The correct sounds lie between* پ *and* پھ ، ک *and* کھ ، ٹ *and* ٹھ *and are very*

sharp. Listen to them in some English broadcasts and then imitate them consciously.

12. The letter **s** in such combinations as *pleasure* and *treasure* is pronounced somewhat like the Persian ژ. It is represented by *zh* in English pronunciation and can be learnt only by carefully imitating good speakers.

13. The double consonant **sh** is pronounced like our ش, and **ch** either like our چ or English *k*. The double consonant **th** has two sounds. When soft, it is pronounced exactly like the Arabic ث; when hard, like the Arabic ذ. Since these Arabic sounds themselves are so unfamiliar to us, you should bear in mind that *th* soft has a sound in between those of Urdu س and تھ, and *th* hard has a sound in between those of Urdu ز and دھ. To practise their correct pronunciation force the air out of your mouth with the tip of the tongue pressed for *th* soft against the top back of the upper teath; and for *th* hard, against the edge of the upper set of teeth.

14. Vowels may be used singly or in combination with other vowels. In the latter case they are called *diphthongs.*

Following are certain important observations on the pronunciation of vowels and consonants in various words :

A

When **a** is followed by *nc*, *nd* or *nt*, it is pronounced as *ah* (or *open a*) in England. But the older pronunciation *any* (or *long a*) is retained in such cases in the States (which is the popular name of the United States of America) and some other parts of the English-speaking world.

The words **cant, pant, land and stand** are pronounced with a long *a* even in England.

The words **command and demand** were always pronounced with an open *a.*

It is words like **chance**, **glance**, **lance**, **prance**, **slander**, **grant**, **plant** which are pronounced with an open *a* which is heard in comm*a*nd.

Aye (always) is pronounced as *ay*, but **ay** (yes) is pronounced as *eye*.

E

The vowel **e** has the short sound of *i* in **England**, **yes** and *pretty*.

In **Berkeley**, **Derby**, **clerk** and **sergeant** it has the sound of open *a* (*ah*).

Words with **ea** like **hear**, **dear** are pronounced as if they were spelt with **ee**.

In the poetic contractions, **e'en** is pronounced as *een*, but **e'er** and **ne'er** are pronounced as *ayr* and *nayr*.

The poetic word **ere** (before) is also pronounced as *ayr*.

The is pronounced with a short *e* before consonants, with an *i* before vowels and with a long *e* (ee) when emphasis is needed.

There in phrases like *there was a man* is pronounced as *ther*; otherwise as *thayr*.

I

When long, this vowel should be pronounced like *eye*, and too much of *ay* sound should not be given to it. Be careful with your pronunciation of **i** in words like *child*, *find*, *time*, *society*, *ambiguity*, *feasible*, *fertility*, *horrible*, *quality*, *sensible*, *unity*, *vanity*.

Before *r* in the same syllable, **i** generally has the short *u* (but) sound as in *girl*, *firm*, *skirt*, *squirt*.

O

The vowel **o** has the short *u* sound in **among**, **borough, constable**, **dove**, **front**, **none**, **nothing**, **once**, **one**, **pomegranate**, **thorough**, **tongue**. So has the *o* in **Sovereign** occasionally.

Worcester is pronounced *Wooster*.

U

The vowel **u** has the full *u* (put) sound in **cushion**, **cuckoo**, **full**, **puss**, **pussy**, **hussar**, **pullet**.

It has the long **u** (*ewe*) sound in **lieu**, **flue**, in past tenses ending in *ew* like **blew**, **flew**, **slew**, in **regular**, **singular**, **particular**, **figurative assume**, **presume**, **resume**, **consume**, **lute**, **illume**, **superficial**, **superstition**, **supercilious**.

It has a short *u* (but) sound in **pus** (as distinct from *puss*) **puddle**, **pulverize**, **pub**, **publican**, **sully**.

It is preferable to give it the *oo* (and not the *ewe*) sound when **u** or **ew** is preceded by *r*, as in **rumour**, **ruby**, **rue**, **crude**, **crew**, **brew**, **rule**.

W

It has two sounds when occurring at the end of a word after *o*. Mark that **bow** (bend) and **bough** are pronounced like *how*, but **bow** (کمان) is pronounced *boh* (*h* only lengthens the sound here) similarly **lower** (more low) is pronounced *loher*, but **lower** (to appear gloomy) is pronounced *lowr*.

Y

In **My Lord**, *y* is pronounced as short **i**.

Final **y** when forming a consonant should be pronounced *ee* and not *ay*, as in **glory**, **hypocrisy**, **vanity**.

It has a short **i** sound in *prophecy* (n) but a long **i** sound in *prophesy* (v).

AI

Plait rhymes with *mat*, and **plaid** with *mad*.

AO

Gaol rhymes with *mail* and is the original spelling of *jail*.

AU

This diphthong sounds like *a* in *all* or *aw* in *brawl.*

AY

Quay is pronounced *kee* to rhyme with *fee.*

EI

In **counterfeit**, the diphthong *ei* is pronounced like short *i*, but in **nonpareil** it is pronounced like short *e*.

EO

Pigeon is pronounced like *pijn*, **luncheon** like *lunchn*, **truncheon** like *trunchn*, and **dungeon** like *dunjn*. But it is different with words in which **e** belongs to a different syllable, as in **neon** which is pronounced *nee-on.*

IO

When the accent is on the first of these vowels, they form two distinct syllables as in **violent** and *scion* which are pronounced *vy-o-lent*, and *sy-on*.

OA

It is pronounced as in **coal** and **roam**.

OO

It is pronounced like the *u* in *full* in words like **foot**; and like **moot** in words like **food** and **fool**.

OU

Words having **oul** like **would**, **should**, **could** rhyme with *good*.

Words ending in **ough** follow no rule. **Slough** (کینچلی) is pronounced *sluff*, but **slough** (marsh) is pronounced *slow* to rhyme with *now*. **Dough** rhymes with *sow* as does the word **though**. **Through** rhymes with **blue** (pronounced *bloo)*. **Cough** rhymes with *off*.

OY

Oy and **uoy** are pronounced alike as in **boy**, **coy**, **buoy**.

C

C is silent in **czar**, **czarina**, **victuals**, **indict**, **corpuscle**, **muscle**.

Yacht is pronounced *yot*.

F

F is retained in the possessive case singular, *e.g.*, **wife's jointure**, **calf's head**; and should not be pronounced as if *wives' jointure*, *calves' head*, which would be a wrong mode of writing, for these possessive nouns are plural; but a number of wives could not have the same jointure, nor a number of calves one head.

F is sharp in **if**, dull in **of**, but sharp in **often**, **off**, and the compounds of *of*, as **whereof thereof**.

G

G is silent in **apophthegm.**

H

H is aspirated in all words, except those in the following sentence and their derivatives :

The conduct of the honest hostler towards the heir and the heiress was so ridiculous that the Honourable Mrs. Staunton laughed for an hour after.

Care should be taken to aspirate the *h* after a *w*, as in **where, when, which,** etc. ; and in the middle of a word, as in abhor. In **shepherd** the middle *h* is silent.

Read the following sentences :

The *h*orse ran up the *h*igh *h*ill, and then *h*e raised *h*imself on *h*is *h*aunches to such a *h*eight, that the *h*eart of *h*is *h*eavy rider *h*eaved *h*ysterically, and *h*ad *h*e not *h*eld *h*ard *h*old of the *h*and-rein, our *h*aughty *h*ero would per*h*aps 'ave concluded *h*is *h*eroic display by doing *h*orrible and *h*umiliating *h*omage to the *h*umid earth.

W*h*y does this w*h*elp w*h*eedle so ? *H*as *h*e charge of the w*h*eat in the w*h*eelbarrow, w*h*ile the man goes to w*h*et *h*is tools and take a w*h*iff of tobacco ?

W*h*atever the cause of *h*is w*h*ining, let 'im go somew*h*ere else, w*h*ence I shall not *h*ear 'im or I shall be w*h*olly overw*h*elmed with *h*is *h*owling.

I gave it to *h*im, not to *h*er. I *h*ad not done it then, but I *h*ave done it now ; and therefore I *h*ave w*h*at I wanted.

*H*e sneered at 'er in the most disrespectful manner, and told 'er that *h*e didn't *h*ear 'er calling to 'im, and that *h*e wouldn't 'ave come if *h*e *h*ad *h*eard 'er.

"With trumpets before 'er, and troops by 'er side.
Dwarfs, negroes, and eunuchs attendant upon 'er."

"Yet, yet I would try 'im, with compliments ply 'im ;
A *h*usband well flatter'd is always a fool".

"Guards *h*er black front, and *h*isses in (h)er *h*airs."

After a few inco*h*erent remarks, the in*h*uman wretch and *h*is ad*h*erents, at *h*is ex*h*ortation, un*h*esitatingly left their in*h*ospitable in*h*eritance.

The *h* should be aspirated without interfering with the proper emphasis of the important words, and without any painful exhibition of effort.

L

L is mute is **falcon, halves**, and some others. It is mute in **psalm**, but not in **psalter**.

M

M is pronounced like *n* in **comptroller**.

N

N is mute in **kiln, hymn, limn, condemn, damn,** and some others, but in participles, and other words formed from them, it is sounded as in **hymning, condemning, condemned,** and **damned**, when they are pronounced in three syllables as in poetry.

P

P is mute in **psalm, pseudo, raspberry**, etc.

PH

These two letters are silent in **apophthegm, phthisis.** But the latter word is also pronounced as *fthisis*.

R

When followed by a vowel this letter has the rough sound. The degree of roughness should vary according to the sentiment. After some consonants like *d*, it is very slight.

Slight roughness : *R*ound the *r*ugged *r*ocks the *r*agged *r*ascals *r*an.

Stronger roughness :

With one *r*ude clash he st*r*uck the ly*r*e,
And swept with hu*rr*ied hands the st*r*ings.

A wa*r*-horse at the t*r*umpet's sound,
A lion *r*oused by heedless hound,
A ty*r*ant waked to sudden st*r*ife
By g*r*aze of ill-di*r*ected knife.

Also consult the earlier note on slurring it.

S

The sweetness of the soft *s* may be perceived by the following passage.

So fair, so calm, so softly seal'd,
The first, last look by death revealed !
Such is the aspect of this shore :
'Tis Greece, but living Greece no more
So coldly sweet, so deadly fair,
We start, for soul is wanting there. —Byron.

The whole passage is an excellent illustration of the beauty that may be expressed by a clear and pure enunciation of the consonants and vowels. This constitutes the music of poetry.

The *s* is dull in **nasal, preside, gooseberry, raspberry, lose.**

S is sharp when followed by *c*.

S is silent in **demesne, puisne, corps.** *Sans* in old writers is used as an English word.

S has the sharp sound in **ensue, pursue, supersede, dissemble,** and **loose.** It is dull in **transition** and **transitory.**

T

Nature is pronounced as if *nay-cher* ; other words similarly. But **mature**, having the accent on the last syllable, has the pure *t* sound.

Th at the beginning of words is sharp ; except in **this, that, the, thee, their, them, thence, then, there, these, they, thine, thither, those, thou, though, thus, they**.

Th at the end of words is sharp ; except in **beneath, booth with** (the preposition) and its compounds **withhold**, etc. ; and in the following verbs ; **wreathe, loathe, seethe, smooth, soothe, mouth**.

Words ending in **th** sharp make **th** dull in the plural, as **paths, baths, truths**.

Th is sometimes pronounced like simple *t*, as in **Thomas**. It is sometimes silent, as in **asthma**. **Clothes** is preferably pronounced as *klohz*.

T is silent when preceded by *s* and followed by *en* or *le* ; as in **hasten, castle, apostles, epistle.** So also in **often, soften** ; and in past participles, **beaten, eaten**, etc.

T is silent in **Christmas, chestnut, ostler, bankruptcy, mortgage**.

Clothes is pronounced **clothze or cloze**.

W

In the preposition **towards**, the *w* is dropped, and the word rhymes with **hoards**.

In the adjectives **toward, untoward**, and **forward**, and in their adverbs, the *w* is retained, and divides the words into two syllables, It should be pronounced is both syllables of **awkward**.

WH

Words beginning with **wh,** like *when, where, which*, may be pronounced in two ways. On this point, *The Concise Oxford Dictionary* says : "The **h** is silent in ordinary modern usage, but the correct sound, **hw** (and not merely **w** or **wh**) is retained by the Scottish, Irish, Welsh and northern English, and by purists in pronunciation, as well as for the nonce in unfamiliar words or such as might be confused with commoner words having no **h**, like *whet* and *wet*, *whey*, and *way*."

X

X has the sharp sound in **luxury, anxious, execution** ; but the dull sound in their derivatives, *e.g.*, **luxuriant, anxiety, executor**, etc. It is pronounced like *z* in **Xerxes** and **Xenophon**.

15. Accentuation. When the same word may be used as noun,

an adjective, or a verb, it has the accent on the last syllable as a verb, and on the first as a noun or an adjective.

Verb	**Noun**
To abstract	an abstract.
To convict	a convict.
To confine	the confines.
To desert	a desert, meaning a wilderness ; but desert, meaning merit.
To discount	discount.
To frequent	frequent (adjective).
To perfume	perfume.

The noun **assign** is sometimes accented on the second syllable. **Cement** as a noun would be pronounced *ce'ment* according to analogy ; but it is accented on the last syllable. The verb **commune** is no exception to the rule, and should not be accented as a noun. So also its participle, **communing**. There is no authority whatever for placing the accent on the first syllable of the words **acceptable** and **commendable**. To do so is difficult of utterance, unpleasant in sound, and gives the appearance of hacking the words.

Decorous is accented on the second syllable, **indecorous** oftener on the syllable *dec* ; **conversant** is accented on the first or the second syllable, but the first is perferable.

Contents is accented on the last syllable. **Revenue** has the accent on the first syllable.

A change of accent often distinguishes nouns from adjectives, as

Noun	**Adjective**
August (a month)	August (venerable).
Gallant (a suitor, often in a bad sense)	Gallant (brave, as a soldier) ; though. Gallant (civil, etc., to ladies).
Instinct (animal motive).	Instinct (animated).
Invalid (disabled).	Invalid (unsound).

The same part of speech has often a different meaning, and this is indicated by a different accent, as to **conjure'** (to entreat), but to **con'jure** (to practice magic).

Comment has the accent on the first syllable, whether noun or **verb.**

16. We give below two lists of words which are drawn up to guide students with regard to their correct pronunciation. The first and smaller list is meant for the Board students and the second and more detailed list for the students at the University stage. Constant reference to them should be made on all doubtful points till the student can pronounce all of those words correctly. As a general, but far from infallible, rule it must be remembered that English words are usually accented on the last but one syllable.

MISPRONOUNCED WORDS

A. LIST FOR BOARD STUDENTS

(1) **Accessory** : The best authorities prefer the accent on the first syllable, as *ak*-ses-sory (معاون - شریک).

(2) **Acoustic** : The usual pronunciation is a-*kows*-tik. The B.B.C. announcers, however, say a *koos*-tik (صوتی).

(3) **Acumen** : Pronounced a-*kew*-men (فراست - ذکا).

(4) **Admirable** : Pronounced with the accent on the first syllabl, *ad*-mir-abl (قابل تعریف - لائق تحسین).

(5) **Adult** : In the usual pronunciation the accent is on the second syllable, as a-*dult*. The B. B. C. announcers, however, stress the first syllable, as *a*-dult (بالغ).

(5) (*a*) **Aerated** : Pronounced with four syllables, *ay*-er-ayt-ed (ھوا سے بھرا ھوٗا).

(6) **Alias** : Pronounced *ay*-li-as. (عرف - المعروف بہ).

(7) **Alibi** : Pronounced *al*-i-by (عذر عدم موجودگی).

(8) **Ally, Allies** : Pronounced al-*ly*, al-*lyz* (حلیف).

(9) **Anaesthetist** : Pronounced *anees* the-tist (بیہوش کن).

(10) **Archieves** : Pronounced *ah*-kyvz (سرکاری دستہ ویزیں - سرکاری دستاویزوں کا محافظ خانہ).

(11) **Artisan** : The accent is on the last syllable, as ah-ti-*zan* (دستکار - کاریگر).

(12) **Aspirant** : Pronounced either *as*-pir-ant or as-*pyr*-ant (طالب - آمخاش).

(13) **Assignee** : Pronounced as-sy-*nee* (عوضی - مختار).

(14) **Attorney** : Pronounced at-*ter*-ni (مختار).

(15) **Bedizen** : Pronounced either be-*diz*-en or be-dyz-en (بے ذوق آرائش کرنا).

(16) **Calumny** : The stress is on the first syllable, as *kal*-um-ni (تہمت - بہتان).

(17) **Capitalist** : The stress is on the first syllable, as *kap*-i-tal-ist (سرمایہ دار).

(18) **Centenary** : The usual pronunciation is sen-*tee*-nari, though *sen*-ten-ari is allowable (صد سالہ برسی - صد سالہ سالگرہ).

(19) **Centrifugal** : The accent is on the second syllable. as sent-*rif*-ew-gal (مرکز گریز).

(20) **Chagrin** : According to the best dictionary authority the pronunciation is shayg-*reen*. The B. B. C. announcers, however, say *shayg*-rin for the noun, and shayg-*reen* for the verb.

(21) **Chicanery** : Pronounced shik-*ayn*-ri (لفظی هیر پهیر - بے معنی لفظی بحث - لاطائل موشگافی).

(22) **Chimera, Chimerical** : Pronounced ki-*mee*-ra, ki-mer-ri-kal (وهم - هوا - موهوم - بے بنیاد).

(23) **Chiropodist** : Pronounced ky-*rop*-o-dist (هاتھ - پاؤں - ناخن گیٹهنوں کا معالج).

(24) **Clandestine** : Pronounced klan-*des*-tin (پوشیده - خفیه - چوری چهپے).

(25) **Clientele** : This word is often given the French pronunciation, as well as the French spelling. The Oxford English Dictionary, however, gives the pronunciation kly-en-*teel*, and it is to be hoped that this will become universal. The word is now thoroughly English (موکل - گاهک).

(26) **Comment** : The accent is on the first syllable in the noun and the verb, as *kom*-ment (تبصره - تبصره کرنا).

(27) **Communal** : The accent may be on either the first or the second syllable. It is, perhaps, more common to accent the first, as kom-*mew*-nal (فرقه دارانه).

(28) **Commune** : The noun (meaning territorial division, etc.) has the accent on the first syllable. In the case of the verb (meaning to converse) the accent is allowed on either syllable stressed as kom-*mewn*.

(29) **Comparable** : The stress is on the first syllable, as *kom*-par-abl (هم مرتبه - هم پله - رو کشی).

(30) **Conjugal** : The stress is on the first syllable, as *kon*-jew-gal (ازدواجی).

(31) **Conjure** : When this word means to beseech (I conjure you not to do this great wrong) it is pronounced kon-*joor* (التجا کرنا). In its other senses (to perform *conjuring* tricks : his is a name to *conjure* with ; he did his best to *conjure* up a picture of the scene ; the witches *conjured* spirits to appear before Macbeth) it is pronounced *kun*-jer.

(32) **Connive** : Pronounced kon-*nyv* (اغماض کرنا - چشم پوشی کرنا).

(33) **Constable** : The accent is on the first syllable, as *kuns*-tabl (پولیس کا سپاهی).

(34) **Consummate** : The adjective has the accent on the second syllable, as kon-*sum*-ayt (کامل). The verb is pronounced *kon*-sum-ayt (اتمام کو پهنچانا).

(35) **Contemplative** : Pronounced with the stress on the first syllable as *kon*-temp-layt-iv. The pronunciation which gives the stress to the second syllable is often heard, but it does

not seem to be allowed by the latest dictionaries (پر انہماک-
پر استغراق).

(36) **Continue** : Pronounced kon-*tin*-ew (جاری رہنا - جاری رکھنا).

(37) **Contrary** : The accent is on the first syllable, as *kon*-tra-ri (متضاد - عکس). The word is pronounced kon-*tray*-ri, however, when it is used colloquially to mean perverse, self-willed (خود رائے - خود سر).

(38) **Coup** : Proncunced *koo* (ضرب کاری - بھرپور وار).

(39) **Courtesy** : Pronounced *kert*-si or *kort*-si (خوش خلقی - تواضع).

(40) **Culinary** : Pronounced *kew*-lin-ary (مطبخ کے متعلق).

(41) **Decade** : Pronounced *dek*-ayd (دس برس کا عرصہ).

(42) **Decadence** (زوال- انحطاط) **Decadent** : (زوال پذیر - انحطاط پذیر) Pronounced *dek*-ay-dens, *dek*-ay-dent. The B.B.C. announcers were at one time instructed to say, dek-*ay*-dens, dek-*ay*-dent, but they are now required to conform to the common accentuation.

(43) **Decorous** (مہذب - شائستہ) **Decorum** (تہذیب - شائستگی) : Dek-*oh*-rum has the accent on the second syllable, According to the dictionaries dek-*oh*-rus should also have the accent on the second syllable ; but the pronunciation *dek*-oh-rus, in which the first syllable is stressed, is very common.

(44) **Deficit** : This word should not be accented on the second syllable. The pronunciation should be either *def*-is-it or *deef*-is-it (خسارہ).

(45) **Demoniacal** : Pronounced dee-mo-*ny*-ak-al (شیطانی - ابلیسی- ظالمانہ).

(46) **Despicable** : Pronounced with the stress on the first syllable, as *des*-pi-kabl (نفرت انگیز فرو مایہ - سفلہ).

(47) **Desultory** : Pronounced *des*-ul-tari - (بے قاعدہ - بے ربط - بے ترتیب).

(48) **Diphtheria** : Pronounced dif-*thee*-ria (خناق).

(49) **Dishabille** : Pronounced *dis*-ah-beel or dis-ah-*beel* (ناکافی لباس میں - گھر کے ڈھیلے ڈھالے لباس میں).

(50) **Dissent** : Accented on the last syllable, as dis-*ent* (اختلاف رائے).

(51) **Doctrinal** : Pronounced dok-*try*-nal, (اصولی - اعتقادی-نظریاتی); but **doctrine** (مسئلہ - عقیدہ) is pronounced *dok*-trin.

(52) **Elixir** : Pronounced el-*ik*-ser (اکسیر).

(53) **Ennui** : This word retains a half-French pronunciation *on*-wee (اکتاھٹ - ملول).

(54) **Envelope** : This word has been so long established in the English language that the perpetuation of a pseudo-French

pronunciation (*on*-vel-op) in certain English circles is pointless. The pronunciation *en*-ve-lop should be generally adopted (لفافہ). But the verb **envelope** (لفافہ میں بند کرنا - ملفوف کرنا) is pronounced as en-*vel*-op.

(55) **Environs** : Pronunciation en-*vy*-ronz or *en*-vy-ronz. The B. B. C. announcers adopt the former (مضافات - گرد و نواح - قرب و جوار).

(56) **Ephemeral** : Pronounced ef-*em* er-al (ناپائدار - چند روزہ زندگی والا).

(57) **Equitable** : Pronounced with the stress on the first syllable, as *ek*-wi-tabl (منصفانہ).

(58) **Evolution** : The first syllable may be pronounced either *ee* or *e*. The B. B. C. adopts *ee* and pronounces it as ee-vo-*loo*-shun.

(59) **Exigency, Exigent** : Pronounced *ek*-si-jen-si (اشد ضرورت - نازک وقت), *ek*-si-jent (اشد ضروری).

(60) **Exquisite** : The stress is on the first syllable, as eks-kwi-zit (پاکیزہ - نہایت عمدہ).

Extempore : Pronounced with four syllables, as eks-tem-po-ree (فی البدیہہ).

(61) **Fascism, Fascist** : In the corresponding Italian words the *sc* is pronounced like *sh*. Some English speakers retain this sound. It seems better, however, to anglicize the words by giving the *sc* the sound of *s*. (فسطائیت - فسطائی).

(62) **Fauteuil** : How is this awkward French word to be pronounced ? The French pronunciation is inappropriate on most occasions. The B. B. C. has anglicized the word to *foh*-til, and this seems the best way out of the difficulty (آرام کرسی - تھیٹر کی نشست).

(63) **Fetish** : Pronunciation *feet*-ish or *fet*-ish (بے دلیل عقیدہ).

(64) **Flaccid** : Pronounced *flak*-sid ڈھیلا ڈھالا (گوشت) - جھریوں والی (کھال).

(65) **Flagrant** : Pronounced *flayg*-rant (فاحش - کھلم کھلا).

(66) **Forehead** : Some people try to pronounce this word according to the spelling. The true pronunciation is *for*-ed (ماتھا - پیشانی - جبیں).

(67) **Formidable** : The accent is on the first syllable, as *for*-mi-dabl (ھولناک).

(68) **Fragile** : The normal pronunciation is *fra*-jyl (جو آسانی سے پاش پاش ھو سکے).

(69) **Frequent** : The stress is on the first syllable (*free*-kwent)

when this word is an adjective (He makes frequent visits here); it is on the second syllable (fre-*kwent*) in the case of the verb (Only wealthy people can frequent such places).

(70) **Gala**: Pronounced *gay*-la or *gah*-la, but the first is commoner (جشن).

(71) **Garage**: Among the upper English classes who speak French, this word is generally pronounced ga-*rahzh* (the second *g* like *s* in 'measure'). The ordinary pronunciation is *ga*-rij. It has dictionary authority, and may in time oust the former (موٹر خانہ).

(72) **Gesticulate**: Pronounced jes-*tik*-ew-layt (اشارے کنائے کرنا).

(73) **Gibberish**: The initial consonant is pronounced hard (as in *gate*) (تیز اور لا یعنی گفتگو).

(74) **Gibbet**: Pronounced *jib*-et (تاحقہ دار ۔ پھانسی کا تختہ).

(75) **Heinous**: Pronounced *hay*-nus (وحشیانہ ۔ ننگ انسانیت).

(76) **Hospitable**: The first syllable should be stressed, as *hos*-pitabl (مہمان نواز).

(77) **Hotel**: Pronounced with or without the *h*, as ho-*tel* or oh-*tel*. The B.B.C. announcers sound the *h* (ھوٹل۔ سرائے ۔ مسافر خانہ).

(78) **Idyll**: The pronunciation is either *eye*-dil, or *id*-il. The B.B.C. announcers adopt the latter (دیہاتی گیت).

(79) **Illustrate**: The first syllable is stressed, as *il*-us-trayt (مثال دینا ۔ نقش و نگار سے آراستہ کرنا).

(80) **Impious**: Pronounced *im*-pi-us (ناپاک).

(81) **Inchoate**: This is pronounced *in*-koh-ayt (جس کا ابھی آغاز ھی ہؤا ھو).

(82) **Increase**: Pronounced *in*-krees (اضافہ) as noun, and in-*crees* (بڑھنا ۔ بڑھانا) as verb.

(83) **Indefinite**: It is pronounced in-*def*-in-it (غیر معین).

(84) **Indict, Indictment**: Pronounced in-*dyt* (ملزم ٹھہرانا ۔ مقدمہ چلانا) and in-*dyt*-ment.

(85) **Inexorable**. The second syllable bears the stress, as in-*ek*-sohr-abl (سخت ۔ بے مہر).

(86) **Inveigle**: The Oxford English Dictionary prefers the pronunciation in-*veegl*; but in-*vaygl* is very common. (بہکانا ۔ ورغلانا ۔ پٹی پڑھانا). However, **inveigh** (طعن و تشنیع کرنا ۔ برا بھلا کہنا) is pronounced as in-*vay*.

(87) **Inventory**: Pronounced *in*-ven-tu-ri (فہرست).

(88) **Islam**: Pronounced *iz*-lahm (اسلام).

(89) **Koran :** Pronounced *koh*-ran or koh-rahn. The B.B.C. adopts the latter (قرآن مجید).

(90) **Lichen** : Pronounced *ly*-ken ("لیچن" - کائی).

(91) **Longevity** : Pronounced lon-*jev*-iti (طویل العمری - درازی عمر).

(92) **Machination :** Pronounced mak-in-*ay*-shun (ریشہ دوانی - سازش - جوڑ توڑ).

(93) **Medieval :** Also spelt **mediaeval**. Pronounced me-di-*ee*-val (قرون وسطیٰ کا).

(94) **Mediocre :** Pronounced *mee*-di-oh-ker (یونہی سا - درمیانہ - نہ اچھا نہ برا).

(95) **Memoir :** Pronounced *mem*-war (سرگزشت - تذکرہ - تزوک).

(96) **Military :** Pronounced *mil*-it-ari (فوجی).

(97) **Mischievous :** Pronounced *mis*-chiv-us (شریر - فتنہ پرداز).

(98) **Moslem :** Pronounced *Moz*-lem (مسلمان).

(99) **Naive** : Although the original French form is *naif*, the word is generally spelt *naive* in English and is commonly pronounced nah-*eev* (بھولا بھالا - بے تصنع).

(100) **Neither** (نہ تو) : Both pronunciations *ny*-ther and *nee*-ther are admissible. Similarly **either** (یا تو) may be pronounced *ey*-ther or *ee*-ther.

(101) **Nonchalant :** Pronounced *non*-shal-ant (سرد مہر - غیر متاثر).

(102) **Obligatory :** Two pronunciations exist : (i) ob-li-*gay*-ta-ri : (ii) *do*-li.gay-ta-ri. The first is to be preferred (فرض - واجب).

(103) **Orgy :** Pronounced *or*-ji (رنگ رلیاں - عیش و طرب).

(104) **Pansy :** Pronounced *pan*-zi (رنگا رنگ پھولوں والا ایک پودہ).

(105) **Patent :** This is usually pronounced *pay*-tent. Some people say *pa*-tent in *patent office*, *letters-patent*, etc., but there is no good reason for the distinction (آشکارا - ظاہر - پیٹنٹ).

(106) **Patron :** Pronounced payt-run (سرپرست - مربی).

(107) **Peremptory :** The best authorities favour the pronunciation *per*-emp-to-ri. The B.B.C. announcers, however, say per-emp-tu-ri (قطعی - ناطق - تحکمانہ).

(108) **Pharmaceutical** : Pronounced far-ma-sew-tikal or far-ma-*kew*-ti-kal. The B.B.C. prefers the *s* to the *k* sound (متعلق دوا سازی).

(109) **Phthisis :** The older pronunciation was *thy*-sis, but *fthi*-sis. is now becoming usual (تپ دق).

(110) **Pianoforte :** The B.B.C. announcers sound the final e, pi-ah noh-*fohrt*. Pronunciation without this e is allowable, however. It is the full name for piano (پیانو).

(111) **Plebiscite** : Pronounced *pleb*-is-it (استصواب - رائے شماری).

(112) **Posthumous:** Pronounced *pos*-tew-mus (وفات کے بعد ہونے والا).

(113) **Precedence:** (اولیت), **Precedent** (نظیر). The normal present-day pronunciation of these words is *pres*-id-ense, *Pres*-id-ent. For the former, however, the B.B.C. adopts pree-see-dens.

(114) **Premier** : Pronounced either *prem*-eer or *pree*-meer. The former is preferable (وزیر اعظم - اول).

(115) **Profile**: The Oxford English Dictionary gives the pronunciations *proh*-feel and *proh*-fil. The former is probably the more common to-day. The B.B.C adopts the latter (چہرے کی یک طرفہ تصویر).

(116) **Quandary** : Pronounced kwon-*day*-ri or *kwon*-da-ri. The B.B C. adopts the former (چیستاں - گو مگو کی حالت).

(117) **Recondite** : Pronounced *rek*-un-dyt or re-*kun*-dyt. The B.B.C. adopts the latter (پوشیدہ - مخفی - معلق).

(118) **Remonstrate** : Pronounced re-*mons*-trayt. We remonstrate with a person on his conduct (اعتراض کرنا - تکرار کرنا - شکوہ کرنا).

(119) **Replica** : Pronounced *rep*-li-ca (مصور کی اصل تصویر کی ہو بہو نقل).

(120) **Reputable** : The accent is on the first syllable, as re-pewt-abl (نامور مشہور).

(121) **Rescind** : Pronounced res-*ind* (منسوخ کرنا).

(122) **Residuary** : Pronounced rez-*id*-ewri (مابقی - بقیہ).

(123. **Respite** : Pronounced *res*-pit (مہلت - فرصت).

(124) **Satire, satyr** : A **satire** (pronounced *sa*-tyr) is a composition is prose or verse which holds up vice or folly to ridicule, or attacks an individual, a class, or a system (ھجو). A **satyr** (pronounced *sa*-ter) is one of a class of Greek woodland deities in half-human, half-animal form.

(125) **Scenario** : Pronounced shay-*nah*-rio (ڈرامے کا خلاصہ - سینما فلم کی عبارت).

(126) **Sheik** : also spelt **Sheikh**. Pronounced sheek or shayk. The B.B.C. adopts the latter (شیخ - عرب قبائلی سردار).

(127) **Sinecure** : Pronounced *sy*-nee-ke-oh (بے فکری کی نوکری - پنشن).

(128) **Soviet** : Pronounced *soh*-vi-et (سوویٹ - روسی مزدور سبھا).

(129) **Stabilize** : Pronounced *stay*-bilyz or *stay*-bilyz. The B.B.C. adopts the latter (قائم کرنا - پائدار - پاؤں پر کھڑے ہونا).

(130) **Stenographer, Stenography :** Both are pronounced with the accent on the second syllable, as sten-*og*-ra-fer, sten-*og*-ra-fi (مختصر نویس - مختصر نویسی).

(131) **Suave** : Pronounced swayv (شائستہ - خوش خلق).

(132) **Subsidence** : The Oxford English Dictionary recognizes two pronunciations—sub-*sy*-dens and *sub*-si-dens—of which it prefers the first. The present-day tendency, however, is strongly in favour of the second which the B. B. C. has adopted (جوش فرو ہو جانا - بیٹھ جانا - اتار).

(133) **Sycophant :** Pronounced *sik*-oh-fant (خوشامدی - چاپلوس).

(134) **Symmetry :** Pronounced sim-et-ri (موزونیت - مناسبت) but **cemetry** (گورستان) is pronounced as *sem*-et-ri.

(135) **Trait** : The usual English pronunciation is *tray* the B. B. C. announcers, however, sound the final *t* (خصوصی رنگ - امتیازی وصف).

(136) **Tryst** : Pronounced tryst or trist. The B. B. C. adopts the former (ملاقات کا وعدہ - ملاقات کا وعدہ کرنا).

(137) **Untoward :** Pronounced un-*toh*-erd (ناگوار - بے موقع).

(138) **Vagary** : Pronounced va-*gay*-ri (من کی موج - اپج).

(139) **Vagrant :** Pronounced vayg-rant (آوارہ گرد - خانہ بدوش).

(140) **Valet** : The *t* should be sounded, as *val*-et (بیرا - کپڑے پہنانے والا - خاص خدمتگار).

(141) **Vice Versa** : It is pronounced *vy*-see-ver-sa (اس کے برعکس). Similarly, **viva voce** is pronounced as *vy*-vah-voh-see (زبانی - تقریری).

(142) **Visa** : Pronounced *vee*-zah (ویزا). **A passport** is a permission granted to a person by his country to travel out of it, whereas a **visa** is a permission which he must obtain from the country he intends to visit.

(143) **Vitamin** : Pronounced *vi*-ta-min or *vy*-ta-min. The B. B. C. has adopted the latter (حیاتین).

(144) **Zoology :** Pronounced zoh-*ol*-oh-ji (حیوانیات). But the colloquial **zoo** is pronounced *zoo* (چڑیا گھر).

B. LIST FOR UNIVERSITY STUDENTS

Abdomen : ab-*doh*-men (پیٹ).
absinth : *ab*-sinth (افسنتین).
absurd : ab-*serd* (مہمل - بے سر و پا).
accent : (verb) ak-*sent* ; (لفظ پر زور دینا) ; (noun) *ak*-sent (لفظ پر زور).
accomplice : a-*kom*-plis (شریک جرم).
accoutre : a-*koo*-ter (ملبوس کرنا).
accoutrement : a-*koo*-tri-ment (سامان آرائش).
acetic : a-*see*-tik (سرکے کا).
actual : *akt*-yew-al (واقعی).
adage : *ad*-ij (مقولہ).
addict : (noun) *ad*-ikt (عادی).
addressee : ad-dress-*ee* (مکتوب الیہ).
adept (noun) : ad-*ept* (هنر مند).
adherent . ad-*heer*-ent (حامی).
adieu : a-*dew* (خدا حافظ).
ad infinitum : ad in-fi-*ny*-tum (لا متناهی).
adj : All words beginning thus are to be pronounced without *d*, and simply as *aj* (e.g. **adjure**=a-*joor*. **adjunct**=*aj*-unkt).
ad libitum : ad-*lib*-i-tum (حسب دلخواه).
adobe : a-*doh*-bi (کچی اینٹ).
adulate : *ad*-yew-layt (خوشامد • تعلق).
advertisement : ad-*ver*-tiz-ment (اشتہار).
advisedly : ad-vy-zid-li (عمداً).
ae oe ae oe : All are pronounced *ee*, as **aegis** : (*ee*-jis). **aesthete** (*ees*-theet).

aerial : (adj. and noun), *ayer*-i-al (ہوائی - خیالی - ایریل).
affix : (verb), af-*fix* (چسپاں کرنا); (noun) *af*-fix (سابقہ یا لا حقہ).
Afrikander: af-ri-*kan*-der.(افریقی نژاد ولندیزی).
again, against : a-*gen*. a-*genst*.
agate : *ag*-at (عقیق).
aggrandize : *ag*-ran-dize (بڑھانا)
aggrandizement : a-*gran*-diz-ment (ترقی - اضافہ).
agile : *aj*-yl. (پھرتیلا).
aigret, aigrette : *ay*-gret (بگلا).
al-all: They are pronounced *awl*- in the following and their derivatives : **albeit**, **alder**, **alderman, almanac, altercate, alternate**. It is pronounced *al*- in **albino, albumen, alchemy, alcove, almoner, altimeter, altitude**.

albino : al-*bee*-noh (بھورا).
alkali : *al*-ka-li (القلی).
alkaline : *al*-ka-line (قلوی).
amateur : *am*-a-ter (غیر پیشہ ور - شائق).
ambergris . *am*-ber-grees (عنبر).
amenable : a-*mee*-na-ble (اثر پذیر اطاعت کرنے والا).
amenity : a-*men*-it-i (خوشگواری).
amoeba : a-*mee*-ba - "امیبا" "بدلو").
amok : pronounced and preferably spelt a-*muck* (دیوانہ وار).
amoral : ay-*mor*-al (خیر و شر سے بے تعلق).
amour : a-*moor* (معاشقہ۔ آشنائی).

ampersand : *am*-per-sand (&).
anaemic : a-*nee*-mik (جس میں خون کی کمی ھو).
analogous : a-*nal*-o-gus (مماثل).
anchovy : an-*chohi*-vi (سنمورہ ماہچطلی).
angina pectoris : an-*jy*-na *pec*-tor-is (درد دل - وجع القلب).
anglice (adv.) : *ang*-glis (انگریزی طریق سے).
animadvert : ani-mad-*vert* (سرزنش کرنا - طرز عمل پر اعتراض کرنا).
annex(e) : an-*nex* (both) *verb* (ملانا) and *noun* 1. ضمیمہ 2. ذیلی مکان).
annihilate : an-*ny*-il-ayt (نیست و نابود کرنا).
annunciate : a-*nun*-shi-ayt (کسی کے آنے کا اعلان کرنا) ; **annunciation** : a-nun-si-*ay*-shun (آمد کا اعلان - ورود کی بشارت).
Anthony : *An*-toh-ni (نام).
antinomy : an-*tin*-o-mi (قانونی تناقض).
antipodes : an-*tip*-o-deez (سمت القدم).
antiquary : *an*-ti-kwar-i (قدامت شناس - ماہر اثریات)
aperient : a-*peer*-i-ent (ملین).
a posteriori : ay pos-ter-i-*oh*-ry (استقرائی استدلال - معلول سے علت کی طرف استدلال).
apotheosis : a-poth-i-*oh*-sis (دیوتا بننا یا بنانا).
apparatus: ap-pa-*ray*-tus (تجربہ کا سامان)
apparent : ap-*payr*-ent (واضح - عیاں).
apostle : a-*pos*-l (1. حواری 2. رسول).
applicable : *ap*-lik-a-bl - (بر محل قابل اطلاق).
apposite : *ap*-po-zit (برجستہ - موزوں).
a priori: ay-pry-*oh*-ry (استخراجی استدلال - علت سے معمول کی طرف استدلال).
apropos : ap-roh-*poh* (بارے میں - دربارہ).
aquatic : a-*kwat*-ik (دریائی - آبی).
aquiline : *ak*-wi-lyn (عقابی).
arbitrament : ar-*bit*-ra-ment (ثالثی فیصلہ).
arbitrage : *ar*-bi-trij (ھنڈی کا بیوھار).
arch- : (meaning chief leader, greatest) is always pronounced *ark* before a vowel, as in **archiepiscopal**, **archidiaconal**, **archetype**, **archimandrite**, **architrave**. **Archaic** (meaning ancient) takes the *k* sound.
arid : *ar*-rid (خشک - سوکھا).
aristocrat : *ar* ris-toh-crat (اشراف - امارت پسند).
armistice : *ar*-mis-tis (متارکہ یا التوائے جنگ).
arrie're pense'e : ar-ri-ayr *pawn*-say (پوشیدہ غایت).
artificer : ar-*tif*-i-ser (اھل حرفہ).
artists : *ar*-tist (فنکار)
artiste : ar-*teest* (پیشہ ور مغنی یا رقاصہ).
ascetic : as-*set*-ic (زاھد مرتاض).
assignation : ass-ig-*nay*-shun (توجیہ - سپردگی).

associate : as-*soh*-shi-ayt (شریک کرنا).
association : (شرکت ۔ انجمن) as-soh-*si*-ay-shun.
attribute : (verb) at-*trib*-ewt (منسوب کرنا) ; (noun) *at*-rib-ewt (صفت ۔ خاصیت).
Augean : aw-*jee*-an (سخت گندا).
auger : *aw*-ger (سوراخ کرنے والا برما).
augur : (verb) *aw*-ger (شگون دینا).
aunt : ahnt (parent's sister or sister-in-law.
autochthons : aw-*tok*-thons (سب سے قدیم باشندے).
automaton : aw-*tom*-a-ton (خود حرکت کرنے والی کل).
automobile : aw-toh-moh-*beel* (موٹر).
avalanche : *av*-a-lahnsh (پہاڑ سے پھسلنے والا برفانی تودہ).
ave : *ah*-vi
aviation : ay-vi-*ay*-shun (ہوا بازی); **aviator** (ہوا باز) *ay*-vi-ay-ter.
avid : *av*-id (مشتاق ۔ آرزو مند).
awry : a-*ry* (ترچھا).
ayah : *eye*-a (کھلائی ۔ آیا).
azure : *azh*-ur (نیلگوں ۔ لاجوردی).
bacillus : ba-*sill*-us (جرثومہ).
backgammon : bak-*gam*-un (چوسر کی طرح کا ایک کھیل).
badinage : bad-i-*nahzh* (چھیڑ چھاڑ).
bakelite : *bay*-kel-yt (پلاسٹک بیک لفٹ مسالحہ).
baksheesh : bak-sheesh (بخشیش).
balderdash : *bawl*-der-dash (بکواس ۔ سوقیانہ گفتگو).
ballet : *bal*-lay (پیشہ وروں کا سنگت ناچ ۔ رھس).
balustrade : bal-us-*trayd* (کٹھرا).
banal : *bay*-nal (معمولی).
bas-relief : bass-re-*leef* (ابھرواں نقاشی).
bathos : *bay*-thos (ترقی معکوس).
baton : *bat*-n (سپاہی کا چھوٹا ڈنڈا).
been : been (past ple. of *to be*).
begum : *bee*-gum (بیگم).
Benedictine - been-e-*dik*-tin (راھبوں کا ایک فرقہ).
benignity : ben-*ig*-ni-ti (شفقت).
bibliophile : *bib*-li-o-fyl (کتابوں کا عاشق).
binocular : bin *ok* u-lar (دوربین)
bivouac : *biv*-oo-ak (رات بھر کھلی ھوا میں پڑاؤ کرنا).
blackguard : *blag*-ard (بد معاش ۔ بد کلام)
blanc-mange : bla-*monzh* (سفید جیلی).
bona fide : *boh*-na *fy*-de (اصل).
bosom : *booz*-m (سینہ ۔ گود).
bourgeois : (class of society) *boorzh*-wah (بورژوا) ; (type) ber-*jois* (ٹائپ کی قسم).
bourn(e) : *bo*-an (حد ۔ منزل مقصود).
bowdlerize : *boud*-ler-ize (کتابوں میں سے فحش عبارتوں کا اخراج ۔ تطہیر).
bravado : bra-*vah*-doh (دکھاوے کی بہادری).
bromine : *broh*-min (برومین).
brooch : brohch (جڑاؤ پن ۔ بروچ).

broom : broom (جھاڑو).
brougham : broom (ایک گھوڑے والی بگھی).
brusque: broosk (منہ پھٹ-اکھڑ).
buffet : *boo* - fay (sideboard برتنوں کی الماری).
bureaucracy: bu-*rok*-ra-si (دفتری حکومت).
Byzantine: be-*zan*-tyn (بازنطینی).
cabaret : *cab*-a-ray (میخانہ - ریستوران میں محفل رقص و سرود).
cacao : ka-*kay*-oh (کوکو کا درخت).
cachinnation : kak-in-*nay*-shun (قہقہہ - کھلکھلا کر ہنسنا).
caffeine *kaf*-i-een (کیفین).
caisson : *kay*-son (پل کی کوٹھی).
calends : *kal*-ends (رومن تقویم میں پہلی تاریخ).
calibre : *kal*-i-ber (حیثیت - اہلیت).
caliph : *kay*-lif (خلیفہ).
calligraphic : kal-e - *graf* - ik (خطاطی سے متعلق).
calyx : *kay*-liks (پھولوں کی سیپج).
camelopard : cam-*mel*-o-pard (زرافہ).
campanile : cam-pan-*eel*-i (گھنٹہ گھر).
canalize : *kan*-al-lize (دریا سے نہریں کاٹنا).
canard : kan-*ar* (بے پرکی - جھوٹی افواہ).
candelabra : can-de l-*ay*-b r a (جھاڑ - چھل چراغ).
cantharides : kan-*thar*-i-deez (معطر کرنے والی خشک مکھی).
cantilever : *kan*-ti-lee-ver (توڑا).
cantonment : kan - *ton* - ment (چھاؤنی).

cap-a-pie : kap-a-*pee* (از سر تا پا).
capillary : ka-*pil*-a-ri (بال کا).
carmine : *kar*-min (قرمزی).
cathedral : ka-*thee*-dral (بشپ کا گرجا).
Caucasian : kaw-*kayz*-yun (1) کوہ قاف کا (2) ہند یورپی نسل کا).
caviar : kav-i-*ahr* (1) مچھلی کا اچار (2) اچھی چیز جسے جاہل نا پسند کریں (مجازاً).
cayenne : kay-*en* (پسی ہوئی لال مرچ).
cenotaph : *sen*-oh-taf (یاد گار کے لئے فرضی قبر).
cerements : *seer*-ments (موم جامہ کا کفن).
certiorari : ser - shi - o-*rah*-ry (مسل طلب کرنے کا حکم).
Caesarean : se-*zay*-ri-an (قیصری)
Cesarevitch : sez-ar-*ay*-vitch (زار روس کا ولیعہد); but the horse-race is sez-*ar*-i-vitch.
chalcedony : kal-*sed*-on-i (سفید عقیق).
chaperon : *shap*-er-ohn (آتون - اتالیق بڑھیا).
chaplain : *chap*-lin (گھریلو گرجے کا پادری).
charabanc : *shar*-ra-bang (طویل تفریح کے لئے لمبی گاڑی).
charade : sha-*rahd* (لفظ جوڑ کر بوجھنے والی پہیلی).
charge-d'affaires : *shar*-zhay daff-*ayr* (مدارالمہام - ناظم الامور - نائب سفیر).
chauffeur : *shoh*-fur (شوفر).
chef d'oeuvre : shay *de(r)'vr* (شاہکار - اُستادانہ کام)
cherubim: *cher*-u-bim (کروبیاں).

chestnut: *ches*-nut (شاہ بلوط کا پیڑ یا پھل).
chivalry: *shiv*-al-ri (صنف نازک کے لئے فدا کاری).
cicatrice: *sik*-a-tris (زخم کا داغ).
cicerone: chi-cher-*roh*-nay (آثار قدیمہ کا رہبر).
cinchona: sin-*koh*-na (کونین کا درخت).
circuitous: ser-*kew*-it-us (چکر والا).
cirrus: *sir*-rus (اون جیسے بادل).
civilization: siv-i-liz-*ay*-shun (تہذیب ۔ ثقافت).
clematis: *klem*-at-is (ایک قسم کی بیل).
clothes: klohz (کپڑے ۔ لباس).
coadjutor: ko-*ad*-ju-tor (مدد گار ۔ حامی ۔ معاون).
cobra: *koh*-bra (ناگ ۔ کالا سانپ).
cocaine: koh-*kayn* (کوکین).
codicil: *kod*-i-sil (وصیت نامہ کا تتمہ).
codify: *koh*-dif-y (قانون مدون کرنا)
cognac: *kohn*-yak (ایک فرانسیسی شراب).
cognizance: *kog*-niz-ans (آگہی ۔ قانونی اختیار کا استعمال).
cognomen: kog-*noh*-men (لقب).
colander: *kul*-an-der (چھلنی).
collect: (verb) kol-*ekt* the (جمع کرنا); (noun) *kol*-ekt (عیسائیوں کی دعا).
collogue: kol-*lohg* (ہاں میں ہاں ملانا).
comatose: *koh*-ma-tohs (غیر طبعی طور پر غافل ۔ بے ہوش).
combat: (noun and verb) *kom*-bat (مقابلہ ۔ مبارزت)
comfit: *kum*-fit (الائچی دانہ وغیرہ).
compact: (noun) *kom*-pakt (معاہدہ); (adj. and verb) kom *pakt* (پیوستہ ۔ تہ بہ تہ کرنا).
complaisant: kum-*play* zant (خوش خلق ۔ با مروت).
complex: (noun and adj.) *kom*-plex (پیچیدہ بات).
compost: *kom*-post (مرکب کھاد).
comptroller: kon *troh*-ler (کنٹرولر).
computable: kom-*pew*-tabl (لائق شمار).
concerto: kon-*chayr*-toh (دوسرے سازوں کی آواز کے ساتھ ایک ساز پر بڑا نغمہ).
conduit: *kon*-dit (نالی).
confiscate: *kon*-fis-kayt (ضبط کرنا).
conflict: (verb) kon-*flikt* (لڑنا); (noun) *kon*-flikt (تصادم ۔ آویزش).
congeries: kon-*jee*-ri-eez (ڈھیر ۔ تودہ ۔ ذخیرہ).
connoisseur: kon-i-*ser* (مبصر ۔ نکتہ رس).
conscientious: kon-shi-*en* shus (فرض شناس ۔ با اصول).
consort: (verb) kon-*sort* (ہم نوا ہونا); (noun) *kon*-sort (میاں یا بیوی).
consummate: (verb) *kon*-sum-mayt (مکمل کرنا); (adj.) kun-*sum*-mayt (کامل).
content: kun-*tent* (قناعت); but when meaning capacity or volume (گنجائش), it is *tent*.
controversy: *kon*-tro-ver-si (بحث قیل و قال).

contumacy: *kon*-tew-mass-i (احکام عدالت سے سرتابی).
converse : (verb) kon-*vers* (باتیں کرنا); (*adj.*)*kon*-vers (الٹ۔معکوس)
convict : (verb) kon-*vikts* (مجرم قرار دینا - سزا سنانا) ; (noun) *kon*-vikt (مجرم - سزا وار).
convoy : (verb) kon-*voy* (حفاظت سے پہنچانا) ; (noun) *kon*-voy (بدرقہ - محافظ دستہ).
coruscate : *kor*-us-kayt (پھلجڑی کی طرح چمکنا).
coup d'etat : koo day-*tah* (انقلاب حکومت).
coup de grace : koo d(a). *grahs* (ضرب کاری - آخری ضرب).
courteous: *kurt*-yus (شائستہ۔خلیق)
courtesan : koht-ti-*zan* (- بیسوا طوائف).
cul-de-sac : kool-de-*sak* (خدگلی).
cuneiform : *kew*-ni-form (-پیکانی اسم الخط).
cupola : *kew*-po-la (قبہ - گنبد).
cynosure : *sin*-o-shoor (قطب تارا یا دب اصغر - لہذا مرکز نظر).
Czech : chek (چیکو سلواکیہ کا).
dahlia : *dayl*-ya (ایک قسم کا پودا)
dais . days (چبوترہ - شہ نشین).
daunt : dawnt (ہمت توڑنا).
debouch : di-*boosh* (تنگ جگہ سے نکل کر پھیلنا).
debut : di-*boo* (اداکار بن کر پہلی بار آنا).
decisive ; di-*sy*-siv (فیصلہ کن).
dedicatory : *ded*-i-kay-tor-i (انتسابی).
defile : (verb) di-*fyl* (ناپاک کرنا) ; (noun) *dee*-fyl (1) قطار (2) (گھاٹی)

demagogy : *dem*-a-gog-i (شورش انگیز مقرری).
demesne : di-*mayn* (1) جائداد (2) (قبضہ مالکانہ).
demonstrable : dem-*on*-strabl جسکا مشاہدہ یا تجربہ کرایا جا سکے).
denunciation: de-nun-si-*ay*-shun (1) معاہدہ ختم کرنے کا اعلان (2) ملامت
deposition : dep-o-*zishn* (حلفی بیان).
depreciate : de-*pree*-shi-ayt (نرخ یا وقعت گھٹانا).
Derby: *dar*-bi (سالانہ Epsom کی گھوڑ دوڑ).
descant : (verb) des-*kant* (کسی مسئلہ پر مفصل تقریر); (noun) *des*-kant (راگ).
desiccate: *des*-i-kayt (خشک کرنا).
desuetude : *dez*-wi-teud (رواج نہ رہنا).
detail : (verb) de-*tayl* (تفصیل کرنا) ; (noun) *dee*-tayl (تفصیل).
detonate ; *det*-on-ayt (دھماکے سے پھٹنا).
devil : devl (شیطان).
diabetic : dy-a-*bee*-tik (ذیابیطس کا مریض).
diaereeis : dy-*ee*-ri-sis (حرف پر ¨ نشان).
diagnose : dy-ag-*nohz* (تشخیص کرنا).
diathesis : dy-*ath*-i-sis (خلقی استعداد).
didactic : did-*ak*-tik (ناصحانہ).
digest : (verb) di-*jest* (خلاصہ کرنا - ہضم کرنا); (noun) *ay*-jest (خلاصہ).

digress : dy-*gress* (اصل موضوع سے بہٹکنا).
dilate : dy-*layt* (پھیلنا یا پھیلانا).
dilettante : dil-et-*an*-ti (فنون لطیفہ کا غیر ماہرانہ شائق).
dilute : dy-*lewt* (پانی ملا کر پتلا یا ھلکا کرنا).
diocese : *dy*-o-sis (بشپ کا تعلقہ).
diphthong : *dif*-thong (دھرا حرف علت).
discard : (verb) dis-*kard* (ترک کرنا); (noun) *dis*-kard (چھانٹا ھوا پتا).
discern : diz-*ern* (شناخت کرنا).
discount : (verb) dis-*kownt* (کمیشن کاٹنا); (noun) *dis*-kownt (کمیشن - کٹوتی).
discourse : (noun and verb) dis-*kohrs* (مقالہ - خطبہ).
discourteous : dis-*kurt*-yus (ناشائستہ).
discourtesy : dis-*kurt*-es-i (ناشائستگی - اکھڑ پن).
disfranchisement : dis-*fran*-shiz-ment (حق رائے دھی سے محروم کر دینا).
disputable: *dis*-pew-tabl (مشتبہ - محل نظر).
disreputable : dis-*rep*-u-tabl (بد نام - رسوا).
dissoluble : *dis*-sol-ewbl (گھل جانے والا).
dissolve : diz-*olv* (گھولنا).
distich : *dis*-tik (بیت - شعر)
distillate : *dis*-til ayt (متقطر عرق).
distrait : dis-*tray* (خیالوں میں کھویا ھوا).
divan : di-*van* (دیوان - تخت).
diverse : div-*erse* (مختلف).
diversion : div-*er*-shun (تفریح - دل بہلاوا).
diversity : div-*er*-sit-i (رنگارنگی - بوقلمونی).
divest : div-*est* (برھنہ یا محروم کرنا).
divulge : div-*ulj* (انکشاف کرنا).
dolorous : *dol*-er-us (دردناک).
dolour : *dol*-ur (غم و الم).
domain : doh-*mayn* (علاقہ - عملداری).
domicile : *dom*-i-syl (وطن - جائے بود و باش).
donation : doh-*nay*-shun (عطیہ - چندہ).
douche : doosh (پانی کی پچکاری).
doyen : *doy*-en (سفیر اعلیٰ).
dynamics : dy-*nam*-iks (ریاضی کا شعبہ حرکیات).
dynamite : *dy*-na-myt (ڈائنامائٹ)
dynast : *din*-ast (شاھی خاندان کا رکن).
dynasty : *din*-as-ti (شاھی خاندان)
dysentery : *disn*-ter-i (پیچش)
economic : ee-kon-*om*-ik (معاشی - اقتصادی).
ego : *eg*-oh ("انا" - "خودی").
egotist : *eg*-oh-tist (انانیت پسند)
egotism : *eg*-oh-tism (انانیت پسندی).
eleemosynary : el-i-ee-*moz*-i-nar-i (خیراتی - خیرات خور).
elegiac : el-i-*jy*-ak (الم انگیز).
elephantiasis : el-i-fan-*ty*-a-sis (فیل پا).
elision : il-*lizh*-on (حرف علت یا عبارت کا حذف).
elongate : *ee*-long-ayt (بڑھانا-تانتا)
Elysian : il-*iz*-yan (جنت یا روحانی سرور سے متعلق).

emaciate : im-*may*-shi-ayt (دبلا کرنا - مریل بنانا).
emendation : ee-men-*day*-shun (تصحیح).
emeritus : ee-*mer*-it-us (ریٹائرڈ).
employee : em-*ploy*-ee (ملازم).
empyrean : em-pi-*ree*-an (عرش).
encephalic : en-sef-*al*-ik (دماغ سے متعلق).
encore : ong-*kor* (مکرر).
encyclopaedia: en-sy-klo-*pee*-dia (دائرۃالمعارف).
enema : *en*-i-ma (حقنہ).
enervate : *en*-er-vayt (ضعیف کرنا)
England, English : *ing*-land and *ing*-lish ; not *eng*-land and *eng*-lish.
enigma : en-*ig*-ma (معما - چیستاں).
en route : on-*root* (راہ میں).
enunciation : e-nun-si-*ay* shun (1. تلفظ - 2. دعوی)
epilogue : *ep*-i-log (تمت کی تقریر).
epoch : *ee*-pok (عہد - زمانہ).
equine : *ee*-kwine (گھوڑے کا).
ermine : *er*-min (سمور).
errata : er-*rah*-ta (اغلاط نامہ).
eschscholtzia: esh-*sholt*-si-a (ایک زرد رنگ کا پھول).
escort : (verb) es-*kort* (حفاظت کے لئے ہمراہ جانا) ; (noun) *es*-kort (بدرقہ).
espionage : *es*-pi-on-ij (جاسوسی).
ex cathedra : eks-kath-*ee*-drah (مستند).
executive : eks-*ek*-u-tiv (انتظامیہ)
executor : eks-*ek*-u-tor (وصی).
exile : *eks*-yl (جلاوطن - جلاوطنی).
exotic : eks-*ot*-ik (بدیسی - پودے).
expurgate : *eks*-per-gayt (تطہیر کرنا).
extempore : eks-*tem*-por-i (فی البدیہہ).
extirpate : *eks*-tir-pay (جڑ سے اکھاڑنا).
extol : eks-*tol* (تعریف کے پل باندھنا).
extraordinary : eks-*tror*-din-ar-i (غیر معمولی).
exude : eks-*ewd* (پسینہ نکلنا).
exultation : egs-ul-*tay*-shun (خوشی سے پھولے نہ سمانا).
eyot : ayt (دریائی جزیرہ).
facade : fa-*sahd* (عمارت کا پیش).
facet : *fas*-et (ہیرے وغیرہ کا ضلع)
facile : *fas*-il (رواں - سہل).
Fahrenheit : *fa*-ren-hyt فارن ہائیٹ (تھرمامیٹر).
falchion : *fol*-shun (تیغہ - ٹیڑھی تلوار).
falcon : *fol*-kn (مادہ باز).
fanatic : fa-*nat*-ik (مذہبی جنونی).
fantasia : fan-ta-*zee*-a. The second preference is fan-*tah*-zi-a and the third preference fan-*tay*-zia (فن کی بجائے خیال آرائی والا گانا).
farrago : far-*ray*-go (گڈ مڈ - بیچ میل).
fasces : *fas*-eez (نشان اقتدار).
faux pas : fo-*pah* (عورت کی اخلاقی لغزش).
febrile : *fee*-bryl (بخار سے متعلق)
fecund : *fee*-kund (زرخیز - بار آور).
feline : *fee*-lyn (بلی کا سا).
femur : *fee*-mur (ران کی ھڈی).

fidelity : fid-*del*-it-i (وفاداری).
fiduciary : fy-*dew*-shar-i (1. زرکاغذی 2. امانت کے متعلق).
. nance : fin-*ans* (مالیات).
flaccid : *flak*-sid (ڈھیلا ڈھالا گوشت).
forbade : for-*bad* (منع کیا).
forehead : *for*-ed (پیشانی).
forte : (strong point) fort (امتیازی قابلیت); (adj. loud) *for*-tay (بلند).
fragile : *fraj*-yl. (پاش پاش ہو جانیوالا).
franchise : *fran*-chyz (حق رائے دھی).
frigate : *frig*-at (عام جنگی جہاز).
froward : *fro*-ard (اڑیل - سرکش)
funereal : few-*nee*-ri-al (افسردہ - آداس).
fungi : *fun*-ji (plural of *fungus*) (سانپ کی چھتری).
futile : *few*-tile (بے اثر لاحاصل).
gallant : (adj. brave) *gal*-ant (adj. attentive to women) gal-*lant*; (noun and verb) gal-*lant*.
garish : *gayr*-ish (زرق - برق - بھڑکیلا).
gaseous : *gay*-si-us (گیس والا).
gaunt : gawnt (دبلا پتلا۔ وحشت زدہ).
gazebo : gaz-*ee*-bo (منارہ - جہروکہ)
genealogy : jeen-i-*al*-o-ji (شجرہ نسب):
genre : zhonr (طرز - انداز).
genuine : *jen*-ew-in (اصلی - حقیقی).
germane : jer-*mayn* (موضوع کے متعلق).
gerrymander : ger-i-*man*-der (not jer-) (ناجائز سیاسی اثر ڈال کر انتخاب میں کسی فریق کو فائدہ پہنچانا).
geyser : *gay*-zer (گرم پانی کا چشمہ).
ghoul : gool (غول بیابانی).
glacier : *glas*-i-er (برف کی چٹان)
glue : gloo (سریش).
glycerine : *gliss*-er-in (گلسرین)
golf : golf or gof (گالف).
gouge : gowj (دبا کر آنکھیں نکال لینا).
greasy : *gree-zi* (چکنا).
guillotine : *gil*-o-teen (گلوٹین)
gynaecology : jy-ne-*col*-o-ji (علم امراض نسوانی).
gyrate : jy-*rate* (گردش - مرکز کے گرد گھومنا).
hagiocray : hag-i-*ok*-rasi (اولیا کی حکومت).
halfpenny : *hay*-pen-i (ٹکا).
halibut : *hal*-i-but (ھالی بٹ مچھلی).
handkerchief ; *hang*-ker-chif (رومال - دستمال).
hangar: *hang*-gar (طیاروں کا شیڈ).
harem : *hayr*-em (حرم).
haricot : *har*-i-ko (پسندے).
hasten : *hay*-sn (جلدی کرنا).
haunt : hawnt (اڈا - آنے جانے کی جگہ).
hedonism : *hee*-don-ism (لذتیت)
hegemony : *hej*-i-mon-i (بالائی نظام کی کسی ریاست کی طرف سے قیادت).
Hegira : *hej*-ira (ھجرت).
Hellenic : hel-*leen*-ik (یونانی).
Herculean : her-*kew*-li-an (ھفت خوان - مشقت طلب).

heterogeneity : het-er-o-gen-*ee*-it-i (مختلف العناصر ہونا).
hiatus : hy-*ay*-tus (خلل - خلا - گم شدہ کڑی).
hilarious : hil-*ayr*-i-us (مسرور - خوش دل).
Himalayas : him-*awl*-ay-az (ہمالیہ).
homoeopathic : ho-mi-oh-*path*-ik بالمثل (علاج).
homogeneity : hom-o-jen-*ee*-it-i (یکسانی).
hosiery : *hoh*-zher-i (موزہ بنیان کی صنعت یا تجارت).
hospitable : *hos*-pit-abl (مہمان نواز).
hostile : *hos*-tyl (معاند - معاندانہ)
hovel : hovl (تنگ و تار جھونپڑا).
hover : *hov*-er (منڈلانا).
Huguenot: *hew*-gen-ot (فرانسیسی پروٹسٹنٹ).
hygiene : *hy*-ji-een (حفظان صحت) : but **hygienic** : hy-ji-*en*-ik.
hypochondria : hy-po-*kon*-dri-a (مراق).
hypotenuse : hy-*pot*-i-newz (مثلث کا) وتر.
hypothesis : hy - *poth* - i - sis (مفروضہ).
ibid : *ib*-id (ایضاً - وہی).
ideology : eye - di - *ol* - lo - ji (نظریات).
illustrate : *il*-lus-trayt (تشریح کرنا یا نقش و نگار بنانا).
illustrative : il-*lus*-trativ (بطور تشریح و تمثیل).
illustrator : *il*-lus-tray-tor (نقش و نگار بنانے والا).

imbecile: *im*-bi-seel (ضعیف العقل).
implacable : im-*play*-kabl (ہٹیلا - سنگدل).
improvisation : im-prov-*yz*-*ay*-shun (وقت کے وقت مہیا کی ہوئی چیز) ; but **improvise** : im-pro-*vyz*.
impugn : im-*pewn* (اعتراض کرنا - گرفت کرنا - تردید کرنا).
incense : (verb) to anger (غصہ دلانا) in-*sens* : (noun) ; *in*-sens (خوشبو).
incentive : in-*sen*-tiv (مہیج).
incomparable : in-*kom*-par-abl (بے نظیر).
incondite : in-*kon*-dit (پھسپھسا اسلوب).
inculcate : *in*-kul-kayt (تعلیم دینا دلنشیں کرنا).
inculpate: *in*-kul-payt (الزام دینا).
indecorous : in-dek - *ohr* - us (ناشائستہ).
indicatory : *in*-dik-ayt-or-i (ظاہر کرنے والا).
indictable: in-*dy*-table (الزام لگنے کے لائق).
indisputable : in-*dis*-pew-tabl (غیر مشتبہ - شک و شبہ سے بالا).
indissoluble : in-*dis*-solubl (حل نا پذیر).
inexplicable : in - *eks* - plik -abl (ناقابل توجیہ).
inexpugnable : in-ex-*pug*-nabl (ناقابل تسخیر).
inextricable : in-*eks*-trik-able (بے مفر - بے حد پیچیدہ).
infantile : *in*-fan-tyl (بچوں کا).
inferable : *in*-fer-abl (لائق استنباط).

infinite : *in*-fi-nit (لا متناهی - غیر محدود).
inhospitable : in-*hos*-pit-abl (غیر مہماں نواز - بے فیض).
inlaid : *in*-laid (مرصع).
inlay: (verb) in-*lay* (جڑنا); (noun) *in*-lay (مرصع کاری).
innate - in-*nayt* (جبلی - فطری).
inopportune : in-*op*-por-tewn (بے وقت - بے موقع).
inquiry : in-*kwy*-ri (استفسار - تحقیقات).
insignia : in-*sig*-nia-a (امتیازی نشان).
insouciance : in-*soo*-si-ans (بے پروائی - بے فکری).
inspiratory : in-*spy*-ra-tor-i (دم لینے کا).
inspissate : ins-*pis*-ayt (جمانا).
insult : (verb) in-*sult* (توهین کرنا); (noun) *in*-sult (توهین).
interdict : (verb) in-ter-*dikt* (مخالفت کرنا); (noun) *in*-ter-dikt (حکم امتناعی).
interlocutor : in-ter-*lok*-u-tor (مخاطب - گفتگو کرنے والا).
internecine : in-ter-*nee*-syn (باهمی تباهی کا باعث هونے والا).
interpellate : in-ter-*pe l*-a y t التوائے بحث کے لئے تفصیل کا مطالبہ) ; but **interpellation** : in-ter-pel-*ay*-shun.
interpolate : in-*ter*-pol-ayt (کتاب وغیرہ میں اضافہ).
interstice : in-*ter*-stis (راز).
interstitial : in-ter-*stishl* (شگاف میں).
intestines : in-*test*-inz (آنتیں).
intricacy : *in*-trik-as-i (پیچیدگی).
intrigue : (verb and noun) in-*treeg* (سازش کرنا).
inundate : *in*-un-dayt (سیلاب میں غرق کر دینا).
invalid : (sick person) *in*-va-leed; (adj. void); in-*val*-id ; (verb) in-va-*leed*.
iodine : *eye*-o-dyn.
irascible : ir-*ras*-ibl (چڑ چڑا - جھلا).
irate : eye-*rayt* (غصے میں بھرا هوا).
iron : *eye*-urn (لوها).
irony : *eye*-ron-i (ستم ظریفی).
irreconcilable : ir-*rek*-on-sy-labl (منافی - سخت مخالف).
irrefragable : ir-*ref*-raj-ble (ناقابل تردید - مسکت).
irrefutable : ir-re-*few*-t a b l e (ناقابل تردید - مسکت).
irremediable : ir-re-*mee*-di-abl (ناقابل تلافی - لا علاج).
irreparable : i r -*r e p*-a r-abl (ناقابل تلافی).
irrevocable : ir-*rev*-o-kabl (اٹل - ناقابل تنسیخ).
isolate : *eye*-so-layt (دوسروں سے الگ رکھنا).
isthmus : *ist*-mus or *is*-mus (خاکنائے).
itinerary : eye-*tin*-er-ar-i (سفر نامہ).
jaunt : jawnt (سیر - گل گشت).
jean : jayn (زین).
jejune je-*jewn* (ناکافی).
jewellery : *jew*-el-ri (1. جواهرات 2. جڑاؤ زیورات).
jocund : *jok*-und (زندہ دل۔ ہنسوڑ).
jugular : *jug*-ew-lar (رگ گردن).

justificative : *jus*-ti-fik-ay-tiv (تائیدی).
jute : joot (پٹ سن).
juvenile : *joo*-ve-nyl (نو عمر - کم سن).
kismet : *kis*-met (قسمت).
knoll : nohl (ٹیلا).
knout . nowt (روسی کوڑا - تازیانہ).
knowledge : *nol*-ij (علم).
laboratory : *lab*-or-a-tor-i (معمل - تجربہ گاہ).
labyrinthine : lab-i-*rin*-thyn (بھول بھلیاں کا سا).
laissez faire : lay-say *fayr* (عدم مداخلت).
lamentable : *lam*-en-tabl (افسوسناک).
landau : *lan*-daw (لینڈو گاڑی).
landscape : *land*-skayp (بری مناظر).
largess : *lar*-jes (گراں قدر عطیہ).
larynx : *lar*-inks (حنجرہ).
laudanum : *lod*'n-um (شیرہ افیون).
launch : lawnsh (بڑی مسافر کشتی).
laundry : *lawn*-dri (دھوبی خانہ).
laureate : *law*-ri-at (لارل کا هار یا اس کا مستحق یعنی ملک الشعراء).
leeward : *lew*-ard (هوا سے محفوظ پہلو).
legend : *lej*-end (1. مشہور افسانہ 2. تذکرۃالاولیاء).
leisure : *lezh*-er (فرصت).
lenient : *leen*-yent (روادار - نرم - حلیم).
lenity : *len*-it-i (حلیمی - نرمی).
leonine : *lee*-o-nyn (شیر کا سا).
lese majesty : leez-*maj*-es-ti (1. مزاحاً - گستاخی 2. بغاوت).
levee : (reception) *lev*-i (ملاقاتیوں کا مجمع); (embankment) le-*ve* (طغیانی سے بچاؤ کے لئے دریا کا پشتہ).
libertine : *lib*-er-tin (آزاد خیال - منکر اخلاق).
lien : *lee*-en (قبضہ کا حق).
limousine : *lim*-oo-zeen (بند موٹر کار).
lingerie : *lahnzh*-ri (زنانہ انڈر ویر).
litigious : li-*tij*-us (مقدمہ باز).
livelong : *liv*-long (سارا - تمام - پورا).
loathe : lohdh (متنفر ہونا).
loll : lol (اینڈنا).
luxurious : lugs-*ew*-ri-us (پر تکلف - ٹھاٹ کا).
luxury : *luk*-shu-ri (ٹھاٹ - عیش و عشرت).
mademoiselle : mad-ma-*zel* (آنسہ - مس صاحبہ).
maelstrom : *mayl*-strom (گرداب).
magnesia : mag-*nee*-she-a (ایک ملین دوا - میگنیشیا).
maladroit : *mal*-a-droyt (بے سلیقہ اناڑی).
malefactor : *mal*-e-fac-tor (موذی - بدمعاش - مجرم).
mall : mawl or mal (ٹھنڈی سڑک - خیاباں).
maniacal : man-*nj*-a-kal (مجنونانہ).
margarine : *mar*-gar-een (نقلی مکھن).
marital : *mar*-it-al (ازدواجی).

maritime : *mar*-i-tym (بحری - ساحلی).

matriarch : *may*-tri-ark (سر قبیلہ عورت).

matricide: *may*-tri-syd (مادر کشی - مادر کشی).

matrix : *may*-triks (ٹائپ کا سانچہ).

matutinal : mat-ew-*t* *y*-nal (صبحگاھی).

mauve : mohv (شوخ ارغوانی رنگ).

medicament : med-*ik*-a-ment (دوا - مرھم وغیرہ).

medicine : *med*-s'n (دوا).

megrim : *mee*-grim (درد شقیقہ).

melodrama : *mel*-oh-drahma (جذبات انگیز تمثیل).

menagerie : men-*aj*-er-i (پنجروں میں پڑے ھوئے نمائشی جانور).

messuage : *mess*-wej (مکان مع ملحقہ اراضی).

metallurgy : met-*tal*-ur-ji (خام دھاتیں صاف کرنے والا فن).

metamorphosis : met-a-*mo* *r*-f o-sis (قلب ماھیت).

mezzanine : *mez*-an-een (چھوٹی درمیانی منزل - "میانی").

microscopy : my-*cros*-k o-pi, (خردبین کا استعمال).

midwife : *mid*-wyf (دائی) ; but **midwifery** : *mid*-wif-ri.

mien : meen (چہرہ - بشرہ - انداز).

migraine: *mee*-grayn (درد شقیقہ).

milch : milsh (دودھ دینے والی).

mimetic : my-*met*-ik (نقالی کا شائق).

minaret : *min*-a-ret (مینارہ).

minute : (adj) my-*newt* (خفیف).

mirage : mi-*rahzh* (سراب).

misanthrope : *mis*-an-throhp (آدم بو - مردم بیزار - اکل کھرا).

miscellany :mis-el-an-i (متفرقات کا مجموعہ).

mischievous: *mis*-chiv-us (مضرت رساں).

misconstrue : mis-*kon*-strew (غلط تعبیر کرنا).

misogamy : my-*sog*-am-i (شادی سے نفرت).

misogynist : my-*soj*-i-nist (عورت سے نفرت کرنے والا).

mistletoe : *misl*-toh (آکاس بیل).

mobile *moh*-byl (حرکت پذیر).

mobilization : moh-bil-y-*zay*-shun (اجتماع افواج).

mocha : *moh*-ka (بحیرہ قلزم کی بندرگاہ مخا کا عقیق).

molecule *mol*-i-kewl (سالمہ).

mongrel : *mun*-grel (دوغلا کتا).

morale : mor-*ahl* (حوصلہ).

morphine: *mor*-feen (افیم کا ست).

mourn : mohrn (آہ و بکا کرنا - کسی کو رونا).

myopia : my-*ohp*-ya (دور کی نظر کمزور ھونا)

myopic : my-*op*-ik (جس کی دور کی نظر کمزور ھو).

nadir : *nay*-dir (سمت النظیر).

naiad : *ny*-ad (جل پری).

naphtha : *naf*-tha (نفت).

nascent : *nas*-ent (اٹھتا ھوا).

nausea : *naw*-se-a (متلی) ; hence **nauseous** : *naw*-si-us.

neglige(e) : *neg*-li-zhay (ڈھیلا ڈھالا بے تکلف لباس).

negotiation : ne-goh-shi-*ay*-shun (گفت و شنید - مذاکرہ).

Negus : *nee*-gus (نجاشی).

Nemesis : *nem*-ee-sis (انتقام کی دیوی).
nephew: *nev*-ew (بھتیجا - بھانجا)
nepotism : *nep*-o-tizm (خویش پروری)
nescience : *nes*-i-ens (لاعلمی - ناواقفی).
nestle : ness-l (چمٹ کر بیٹھنا).
neuralgia : new-*ral*-ji-a (اعصابی درد).
neurasthenia : new-ras-*theen*-ya (ضعف اعصاب).
nicety - *ny*-set-i (1. نازک فرق 2. بے حد احتیاط).
nicotine : *nik*-o-teen (تمباکو کا زہر).
nihilist : *ny*-il-ist (منکر مذہب و اخلاق).
nisi : *ny*-sy (بالفعل فیصلہ).
nomad : *nom*-ad (خانہ بدوش).
nomenclature : *noh*-men-clay-cher (نام رکھنے کا نظام).
nonage: *noh*-nij (نا بالغی - کمسنی - نا پختگی).
nonagenarian : non-aj-en-*ay*-ri-an (۹۰ سالہ).
nonchalance : *non*-sha-lans (بے پروائی - بے ہوشی).
nondescript : *non*-des-kript (نہ اِدھر نہ اُدھر).
nonpareil : *non*-par-el (بہت باریک ٹائپ).
noose : noos (کمند).
notoriety: noh-tor-*y*-et-i (بدنامی)
novel : *nov*-l (1. ناول - 2. نیا).
novice : *nov*-is (نو آموز).

noxious : *nok*-shus (مضر صحت - مخرب اخلاق).
nuance : new-*ahns* (الفاظ میں نازک فرق).
nude : *newd* (عریاں).
nugatory: *new*-gat-or-i (عملاً معطل - غیر نافذ).
numismatic : new-miz-*mat*-ik (سکوں کے متعلق); but **numismatist** new-*miz*-mat-ist (ماہر مسکوکات).
oasis : oh-*ay*-sis (نخلستان).
obduracy : *ob*-dew-ra-si (سنگدلی).
obeisance : oh-*bay*-sans (آداب کا کورنش).
obesity : oh-*bee*-sit-i (فربہی).
obfuscate : *ob*-fus-kayt (چھکے چھڑا دینا).
obiter dicta : *ob*-it-er- *dik*-ta (فیصلہ میں جج کی ضمنی آراء).
object: (verb) ob-*jekt* (اعتراض کرنا); (noun) *ob*-jekt (شے - معمول).
objurgate : *ob*-jur-gayt (لعنت ملامت کرنا).
oblique : oh-*bleek* (ترچھا).
obloquy : *ob*-loh-kwi (رسوائی - ملامت).
obscenity : ob-*sen*-it-i (فحاشی).
obscurantism : ob-*skew*-rant-izm (ظلمت پسندی - اصلاح و تحقیق کی دشمنی).
obsequies *ob*-se-kwiz (تجہیز و تکفین).
obsequious : ob-*see*-kwi-us (خوشامدی - چاپلوس).

obverse : *ob*-vers (سکہ کا چہرہ والا رخ).
occipital : ok-*sip*-it-al (پشت سر کا) ; but **occiput** : *ok*-si-put
occult : o-*kult*. (ساحرانہ).
octavo ok-*tay*-voh (فل سکیپ کی ½ تقطیع).
octopus : *ok*-to-pus (هشت نیش صدفہ).
odeon : oh-*dee*-on
odious : *oh*-di-us (قابل نفرت) ;
odium : *oh*-di-um (نفرین خلائق - عام ناراضی).
Odyssey : *od*-is-i (ہومر کی مشہور مثنوی).
often : *off*'n (*not of*-ten) (اکثر).
ogreish: *oh*-ger-ish (عفریت سیرت - دیو پیکر).
olden - *ohl*-den (پرانا).
omelet : *om*-lit (آملیٹ).
ominous : *om*-in-us (منحوس).
omniscience : om-*nish*-ens (همہ دانی).
onerous : *on*-er-us (مشکل - ذمہ داری والا).
onomatopoeia : *on*-o-mat-o-*pee*-a (صوتی ترکیب).
onyx : *on*-iks (سلیمانی پتھر).
oolite : *oh*-o-lyt (دانہ دار چونہ کا پتھر).
opacity : oh-*pas*-it-i (کثافت - کند ذہنی).
ophthalmic: of-*thal*-mik (آنکھوں کا).
opportune: *op*-por-tewn (برمحل).
oppugn : op-*pewn* (اعتراض کرنا - ایراد کرنا).
orange : *or*-inj (نارنگی).
orang-outang : aw-*rang* oo-*tang* (ایک قسم کا بندر).
orchestra : *or*-kes-tra (سازندوں کا طائفہ). ; but **orchestral** or-*kes*-tral (آرکسٹرا سے متعلق).
ordeal : or *dee*-al (جسمانی اذیت کے ذریعے جھوٹ سچ کا امتحان).
organization : or-gan-ny-*zay*-shun (تنظیم).
orient : *oh*-ri-ent (مشرق).
orientate : *oh*-ri-en-tayt (عمارت وغیرہ مشرق کے رخ بنانا).
orotund : *oh*-ro-tund (شاندار عبارت).
orthoepy : *or*-tho-ee-pi (صحت تلفظ).
orthopaedic : or-tho-*pee*-dik (بچوں کے جسمانی نقائص کے متعلق) ; but **orthopaedy**: *or*-tho-pee-di.
ostler : *os*-ler (سرائے کے اصطبل کا محافظ).
ostracize : *os*-tra-syz (شہر بدر کرنا).
otiose : *oh*-shi-ohs (بیکار - بے مصرف).
oust : owst (بے دخل کرنا).
oviparous : oh-*vip*-or-us (انڈے دینے والے جانور).
pachydermatous: pak-i-*der*-mat-us (موٹی کھال کا چوپایہ).
padre : *pah*-dray (پادری).
pageant : *paj*-nt (شاندار جلوس - پرشکوہ منظر).
pagination : paj-in-*ay*-shun (صفحوں کے نمبر ڈالنا).
palanquin : pal-an-*keen* (پالکی).

palette : *pal*-et (مصور کی رنگ کی تختی).
palfrey : *pol*-fri (زنانہ سواری کا گھوڑا).
palliasse : *pal*-yas (پلنگ کا گدا).
palliative : *pal*-le-a-tiv (مسکن دوا).
pall-mall : pel-*mel* (لندن کی ایک سڑک).
palmist: *pah*-mist (هاتھ کی لکیریں دیکھنے والا).
panegyric : pan-i-*jir*-ik (قصیدہ).
panegyrize : *pan*-ej-i-rize (مدح کرنا).
panorama : pan-o-*rah*-ma (سیر بین).
pantheon : *panth*-i-on (تمام رومی دیوتاؤں کا مندر).
papa : pa-*pah* (ابا).
papyrus : pa-*py*-rus (قدیم مصری کاغذ).
paradigm: *par*-a-dym (گردان کا نقشہ).
paradigmatic : par-a-dig-*mat*-ik (گردان کے نقشہ کے متعلق).
paraffin : *par*-a-fin (پیرا فین).
parentage : *payr*-en-tij (نسب).
parenthesis: par-*en*-thi-sis (جملہ معترضہ).
paresis : *par*-i-sis (استرخاء - هلکا فالج).
pari passu : *pay*-ri-*pass*-ew (ایک هی وقت میں اور برابر).
parliament : *par*-li-ment ; but **parliamentarian** par-li-ment-*ayr*-yan ; and **parliamentary** par-li-*ment*-ar-i.
parquet : par-*ket* (لکڑی کا فرش).
partisan: par-ti-*zan* (کورانہ حمایت کرنے والا).
passe-partout - pas-par-*too* (هر قفل کنجی).
pastel : pas-tel (رنگین چاک بنانے کا مسالہ).
pastille : pas-*tel* (میٹھی ٹکیہ).
pathos : *pay*-thos (رقت انگیزی - دل گدازی).
patriot: *pay*-tri-ot, (محب وطن) ; but **patriotic** pay-tri-*ot*-ic.
patronage: *pat*-ron-ij (سرپرستی).
pedagogical : ped-a-*gog*-ikl (مدرسانہ) ; but **pedagogy** *ped*-a-gog-i.
pedantry : *ped*-ant-ri (ادعائے علم).
pedometer : ped-*om*-e-ter (سیر پیما).
penalize : *pee*-nal-ize (لائق تعزیر قرار دینا).
penchant : *pon*-shong (g) (میلان)
pencil : *pen*-sl (پنسل).
pension : boarding house (دارالاقامہ) *pons*-yon.
peremptoriness : *per*-emp-tur-i ness (قطعیت).
perfect : (verb) per-*fekt* (تکمیل کو پہنچانا) ; (adj.) *per*-fekt (مکمل).
perfume : (verb) per-*fewm* (معطر کرنا) ; (noun) *per*-fewm (خوشبو).
perfunctory : per-*funk*-tor-i (سطحی - سرسری - رسمی),
perimeter : per-*im*-i-ter (محیط).
periphery : per-*if*-er-i (محیط).
periphrasis: per-*if*-ra-sis (لفاظی)
periphrastic : per-i-*fras*-tik (لفظی هیر پهیر والی بات - پیچیدہ)
permit : (verb) per-*mit* (اجازت-

دینا) ; (noun) *per*-mit (اجازت نامہ).

persiflage : *per*-si-flahzh (دل لگی - بذلہ سنجی).

persist : per-*sist* (کسی رائے پر جما رہنا).

personnel : per-son-*el* (عملہ).

pestle : pes-l (موسل).

petard : pet-*ard* (منجنیق).

petrol : *pet*-rol (پٹرول).

pewit : *pee*-wit (ایک چھوٹا سا پرندہ).

phaeton : *fay*-(i)-tn (فٹن).

pharmacist: *far*-ma-sist (دواساز).

pharmacopoeia : far-ma-ko-*pee*-a (قرابا دین - مخزن ادویہ).

pharynx : *far*-inks (حلق).

phenacetin : fen-*nas*-i-tin (تپ شکن دوا).

phenol : *fee*-nol (کار بالک ایسڈ).

phenyl : *fee*-nil (فینائل).

philander : fil-*an*-der (دل پھینک ہونا).

philately : fil-*at*-e-li (ٹکٹ فراہمی).

philistine : *fil*-is-tin (ناشائستہ).

phlegmatic : fleg-*mat*-ik (بلغمی).

phlogiston : flo-*jis*-ton (اصول تحریق).

photochromy : *fo*-to-kroh-mi (رنگین فوٹو گرافی).

photogravure : fo-to-grav-*ewr* (فوٹو بلاک).

phthisic : *tiz*-ik (دق زدہ).

physicist : *fiz*-is-ist (ماہر طبیعات)

physiognomy : fiz-i-*on*-o-mi (چہرہ مہرہ - قیافہ).

pianist : *pee*-an-ist (پیانو نواز).

pilaster : pil-*as*-ter (دیوار کے اندر کا ستون).

pince-nez : *pahns*-nay (بینی گیر عینک).

piquancy : *peek*-an-si (چٹ پٹا ہونا).

piquant : *peek*-ant (چٹ پٹا - پسندیدہ).

placable : *play*-kab-l (جلد معاف کرنے والا).

placard : *plak*-ard (اعلان ، اشتہار).

placate : pla-*kayt* (راضی کر لینا).

plagiarism : *play*-j(i)ar-ism (خیال - مضمون یا ایجاد کا) سرقہ).

plaid : plad (سکاٹ لینڈ کا اونی چارخانہ کپڑا).

plait : plat (چُٹ).

plaque : plahk (دھات کی منقش لوح).

plebeian : plee-*bee-an* (عامی).

plenary : *plee*-nar-i (مکمل - پورا).

plenitude : *plen*-i-tewd (کثرت - فراوانی).

plethora : *pleth*-o-ra (غلبہ خون) ; but **plethoric** ; pleth-*or*-ik.

plover: *pluv*-er (ایک قسم کا ولایتی پرندہ).

podophyllin : pod-o-*fil*-in (ایک مسہل دوا).

poetaster: po-et-*tay*-ster (متشاعر - تک بند).

poignant : *poy*-nant (تیز ذائقہ یا بو).

polka : *pol*-ka (ایک یورپی رقص).

polygamist : po-*lig*-am-ist : (کثیر الازواج).

polygamy : po-*lig*-am-i (تعدد ازدواج).

pomade : po-*mahd* (بالوں کو لگانے کے لئے موم کا روغن).

pomatum : po-*mah*-tum (same as pomade).
pomegranate : *pom*-gran-ayt (انار).
pommel : puml (مکے یا ڈنڈے مارنا).
porcelain : *pors*-lin (چینی مٹی
pork : pohrk (سوئر کا گوشت).
porpoise : *por*-pus (گوہ - سوسمار)
portentous : por-*ten*-tus (برے شگون والا).
portrait : *port*-rit (تصویر - شبیہہ).
postscript : *poh*-script (خط کے آخر میں مزید عبارت).
poste-restante : pohst-res-*tahnt* (مکتوب الیہ کے مطالبہ تک پڑی رہنے والی محفوظ ڈاک).
postpone : pohst-*pohn* (ملتوی کرنا).
potentate : *poh*-ten-tayt (فرماں روا).
pot pourri : *poh* *poo*-ree (خوشبو دینے والا مرکب).
precis : *pray*-see (خلاصہ).
precocity : pre-*cos*-it-i (ہونہار ہونا).
predecessor : *pre*-di-ses-or (پیشرو).
predilection : pre-di-*lek*-shun (رجحان).
preface : *pref*-as (دیباچہ).
preferable : *pref*-er-abl (لائق ترجیح).
prefix : (verb) pre-*fix* (سابقہ لگانا) (noun) *pre*-fix (سابقہ).
prelate : *prel*-at (پوپ).
prelude : *prel*-ewd (تمہید).
premature : *prem*-a-tewr (خام).
premier : *prem*-i-er (وزیر اعظم).
premise : (verb) pre-*mize* (بطور تمہید کوئی بات کہنا) ; (noun) *prem*-is مقدمہ (منطقی).
presage : (verb) pre-*sayj* (پہلے سے خبردار کرنا) ; (noun) *pres*-ij (پیش آگہی).
prescience : *presh*-i-ens (پیش بینی).
present : (verb) pre-*zent* (پیش کرنا) (noun and adj.) *prez*-nt (تحفہ - حاضر).
prestige : pres-*teezh* (وقار).
pretext : (verb) pri-*tekst* (بہانہ تراشنا); (noun) *pree*-tekst (بہانہ).
prima donna : preemah *don*-a (اوپرا میں سب سے بڑی گانے والی).
prima facie : pry-mah-*fay*-shi-ee (بدیہی).
primer : *prym*-er (قاعدہ) ; but *prim*-er (ایک طرح کا ٹائپ).
princess: prin-*ses* ; when followed by a name, *prin*-ses (شہزادی)
pristine : *pris*-teen (پرانا اور عمدہ).
privacy : *pry*-vas-i (خلوت).
probity : *prob*-it-i (دیانتداری - راستبازی).
proboscis: proh-*boh*-sis (تھوتھنی).
proceed : (verb) proh-*seed* (جانا); but **proceeds** (noun) *proh*-seeds (آمدنی - یافت).
process : *proh*-ses (طریق کار).
procurator : *prok*-u-ray-tor (گماشتہ - مختار).
produce : (verb) proh-*dews* (پیدا کرنا) ; (noun) *prod*-ews (پیداوار).

prognathous : *prog*-na-thus (حبشیوں کی طرح جس کا جبڑا آگے کو نکلا ھو).

progress : (verb) proh-*gres* (ترقی کرنا); (noun) *proh*-gress (ترقی).

prohibition : proh-hib-*ishn* (شراب کی بندش - ممانعت).

project: (verb) proh-*jekt* (منصوبہ باندھنا); (noun) *proj*-ekt (منصوبہ)

projectile : proh-*jek*-tyl (گولی کی طرح پھینکی جانے والی چیز).

proletarian : proh-let-*tayr*-i-an (عوامی).

prolix : *proh*-liks (لفاظی سے بھرا ھوا).

prologue : *proh*-log (افتتاحیہ).

promenade : prom-i-*nahd* (1. سیر 2. سیر گاہ - ٹھنڈی سڑک).

promissory : *prom*-is-or-i (وعدہ پر ادائگی والا (نوٹ) وغیرہ).

promulgate : *prom*-ul-gayt (نافذ کرنا).

pronunciation : pro-nun-si-*ay*-shun (تلفظ).

propaganda : prop-a-*gan*-da (پراپیگنڈا).

pro rata : proh *rah-ta* (نسبتاً).

prosody : *pros*-o-di (عروض).

prospect : (verb) pros-*pekt* (تجربتاً کان کنی کرنا); (noun) *pros*-pect (1. امکان ترقی 2. منظر).

protasis : *prot*-a-sis (تمہیدی جملہ).

protein : *proh*-tian (تغیر پذیر).

protege : *prot*-ay-zhay (متوسل).

protest: (verb) proh-*test* (احتجاج کرنا; noun (احتجاج).

protocol : *proh*-to-kol (1. سیاسی دستاویز 2. سررشتہ آداب درباره سفارت).

psalm : *sahm* (1. حمد 2. زبور داؤد).

psychiatrist: sy-*ky*-a-trist (دماغی معالج).

ptomaine : *toh*-mayn (عفونتی زھر)

publicist : *pub*-lis-ist (1. بین الاقوامی قانون کا ماھر 2. اخبار نویس).

puerile : *pew*-er-ile (طفلانہ).

puerperal : pew-*er*-per-al (زچگی کے متعلق)

puisne : *pew*-ni (چھوٹا جج).

puissance : *pew*-i-s-ns (طاقت - رسوخ).

pulsate : *pul*-sayt (نبض کا چلنا).

pumice : *pum*-mis (جھانوا).

purport: (verb) per-*pohrt* (معنی ھونا); (noun) *per*-port (معنی - مطلب).

purposive : *per*-pos-iv (منشا کے مطابق).

pursuit : per *sewt* (1. تعاقب 2. پیشہ).

pursuivant : *per*-swiv-ant (شاعرانہ پیرو - ملازم).

putative : *pew*-ta-tiv (عرفی - نام نہاد).

pyjamas : pi-*jah*-maz (شب خوابی کا لباس).

python : *py*-thon (اژدھا - بڑا سانپ).

quadrille : ka-*dril* (چوکورا ناچ).

quadruple : *kwod*-roo-pl (چوگنا - چہارگانہ).

quagmire : *kwag*-mire (دلدل - کیچھار).

qualm : kwahm (1. متلی 2. اندیشہ دغدغہ).

quarantine : *kwor*-an-teen (قرنطینہ).

quash : kwosh.

quasi : *kway*-zi (بظاہر - تقریباً - عملاً).

quatrefoil : *kat*-re-foyl (چوپتیا بیل).

quatorzain : *kat-or*-zayn (خلاف قواعد عروضی نظم).

queue : kew (قطار).

quinine : kwi-*neen* (کونین).

quorum : *kwoh*-rum (کورم - نصاب)

rabies : *ray*-bi-eez (ہڑک - جنون سگ گزیدگی).

raconteur : rak-on-*ter* (داستان گو - لطیفہ گو).

ragout : ra-*goo* (دم پخت سالن).

raillery : *rayl*-er-i (دل لگی - فقرہ بازی).

raison d'etre : ray-song(g) *daytr* (علت غائی - مقصد تخلیق).

rampage : ram-*payj* (آپے سے باہر ہونا - بپھرنا).

rampant : *ram*-pant (افراط والا).

rapine : *rap*-in (غارتگری).

rapprochement : ra-*prosh*-mon (g) (مصالحت - مفاہمت).

rara avis : rayr-a *ay*-vis (نادر)

rarefaction : rayr-i-*fac*-shun (لطافت).

rarefy : *rayr*-i-fy (لطیف یا رقیق بنانا).

raspberry: *rahz*-ber-i (رس بھری)

ratiocinate . rat-i-*os*-in-nayt (منطقی استدلال کرنا).

ration : *rash*'n (راشن - راتب) ; but **rationale** : rash-on-*ah*-li (عقلی سبب).

rebate : (noun) *ree*-bate (کٹوتی).

recess : re-*ses* (وقفہ - مہلت).

recidivist: re-*sid*-iv-ist (وہ شخص جو دوبارہ مجرمانہ زندگی کی طرف مائل ہو جائے).

recipe : *res*-ip-i (نسخہ - ترکیب)

recognizance : re-*cog*-niz-ans (مچلکہ - زر مچلکہ).

reconnaissance : re-*con*-is-ans (دیکھ بھال - جنگی جاسوسی).

record : (verb) re-*kord* (ضبط تحریر میں لانا) ; (noun) *rek*-ord (دستاویز).

recoup : re-*koop* (واجب الادا رقم میں سے وضع کرلینا).

recreate : (to refresh) *rek*-ri-ayt (تازہ دم کرنا) : (to create afresh) ree-kri-*ayt* (جلانا).

recusant : *rek*-ew-zant (سرکش).

referable : *ref*-er-abl (منسوب ہونے کے قابل).

refuse : (verb) re-*fewz* (انکار کرنا - قبول نہ کرنا) ; (noun) *ref*-ews (فضلہ - میلا).

refutable : *ref*-ew-tabl (قابل تردید).

regime : ray-*zheem* (عہد - دور).

regina : re-*jy*-na (ملکہ وقت).

registrar : *rej*-is-trar (رجسٹرار).

regress : (verb) re-*gres* (مراجعت کرنا) ; (noun) *ree*-gres (رجعت قہقری).

relay : (noun and verb) ri-*lay* (ڈاک کی چوکی - ڈاک کی چوکی بٹھانا) (verb to lay again) ree-*lay* (دوبارہ نشر کرنا).

reliquary : *rel*-ik-war-i (تبرکات خانہ).

remediable : re-*mee*-di-abl (علاج پذیر).

renaissance : re-*nay*-sans (نشاۃ ثانیہ).
rendezvous : *ron*-day-voo (ملنے کی جگہ).
reparable : *rep*-ar-abl (تلافی پذیر).
repartee : rep-ar-*tee* (حاضر جوابی)
repertory : *rep*-er-tor-i (ذخیرہ)
repetitive : re-*pet*-it-iv (تکراری)
reprimand : *rep*-ri-mahnd (سر زنش).
requiem : *rek*-qwi-em (دعائے مغفرت).
requisite : *rek*-kwiz-it (مطلوبہ)
research : (verb and noun) re-*serch* (تحقیقات - تحقیقات کرنا)
reservoir : *rez*-er-vwahr (ذخیرہ آب).
respirator : *res*-pi-ray-tor (آلہ تنفس) ; but **respiratory** res-*py*-ra-tor-i (تنفس کا).
restaurant : *res*-ter-on (ریسٹوران).
restorative : res-*tor*-a-tiv (شفا بخش).
retail: (verb) re-*tayl* (خردہ فروشی کرنا). (noun and adj) *ree*-tayl (خردہ فروش).
reticence : *ret*-i-sens (کم گوئی).
retina : *ret*-i-na (آنکھ کا پردہ).
retrograde · *ret*-tro-grayd (الٹی حرکت والا).
retrogression : ree-tro-*greshn* (زوال - انحطاط - رجعت قہقری).
retrospect : *ret*-ros-pekt (گزشتہ واقعات پر نظر).
reveille : re-*vel*-i (صبح کے وقت جگانے کا بگل).
revocable: *rev*-o-kabl (لائق تنسیخ)
Reynard : *ren*-ard (لومڑی).
ribald : *rib*-ald (پھکڑ - بے ادب).
ricochet : *rik*-o-shay (گولی کا چھچھلتے ہوئے نکل جانا).
righteous : *ry*-chus (راستباز).
rinderpest : *rin*-der-pest (بیل روگ - "منہ کھر").
riparian : ry-*payr*-i-an (دریائی).
risque : *rees*-kay (نا مناسب).
rococo : roh-*koh*-koh (دقیا نوسی طرز تعمیر).
rodomontade : rod-o-mon-*tayd* (شیخی - لاف و گزاف).
romance : (verb and noun) roh-*mans* (رومان).
romany : *rom*-an-i (خانہ بدوش).
roseate : *roh*-zi-ayt (گلابی).
rosemary : *rohz*-mar-i (ایک خوشبودار سدا بہار جھاڑی).
route : root (راستہ - راہ).
ruffian : *ruf*-yan (غنڈا - شہدا).
rustle : *rus*'l (سر سراہٹ).
saccharin : *sak*-ar-in (سکرین) ; but **saccharine** (adj.) *sak*-ar-yn (شکریلا - شکر دار).
sacerdotal : sas-er-*doh*-tal (مرشدانہ - مشائخانہ).
sachet: *sash*-ay (خوشبو کی تھیلی).
sacrilege : *sak*-ril-ij (مقدس شے کی بے حرمتی یا چوری).
sacrilegious : sak-ri-*lij*-us.
saga : *sah*-ga (رزمیہ داستان).
saint : saynt ; (followed by a name) s'nt (ولی).
saline : *say*-lyn (کھاری - نمکین - شور).
salivary : *sal*-i-var-i (لعاب دار).
salon : *sal*-on (دیوان خانہ).

salutary : *sal*-yew-tar-i (صحت بخش - سود مند).
salute : sa-*loot* (سلام - سلامی).
salve : (ointment مرہم) sahv ; (verb : to save بچانا) salv.
salver : *sal*-ver (چاندی کی کشتی).
sal volatile: sal vo-*lat*-i-li لخلخہ, (نوشادر کا).
sang-froid: sahn-*frewah* (دلجمعی - خوف کے وقت اطمینان).
sapient : *say*-pi-ent (لال بجھکڑ).
sarcophagus : sar-*kof*-a-gus (کتبہ وغیرہ والا پتھر کا تابوت).
sardine: (fish ; مچھلی کی ایک قسم) sar-*deen* ; (precious stone عقیق کی ایک قسم) *sar*-dyn.
sardonic : sar-*don*-ik بناوٹی ہنسی - زہر خند.
sardonyx : *sar*-don-iks (عقیق سلیمانی).
satiate : *say*-she-ayt (شکم سیر).
satiety : sat-*ty*-i-ti (سیری).
satirist : *sat*-i-rist (ہجو گو).
satrap : *say*-trap (قدیم ایرانی صوبہ دار).
saturnine : *sat*-er-nyn (اداس - غمگین).
saunter : *sawn*-ter (مٹر گشت کرنا)
sausage : *sos*-ij (ساسیج - ولایتی کباب).
savant : *sav*-on(g) (علامہ - فاضل اجل).
savoir-faire : sav-war *fayr* (زود فہمی - نکتہ رسی).
says : sez (کہتا ہے).
scabies : *skay*-bi-eez (کھجلی).
scabious : *skay*-bi-us (خارشی).
scallop : *skol*-up (مغزی لگانا).
scaramouch : *skar*-a-mowch (بزدل - شیخی خورا).

scenario: shay-*nah*-ri-o (سیناریو).
scenic : *see*-nik (تماشائی).
schedule: *shed*-ewl (جدول - نقشہ).
scherzo : *skert*-so (سبک خرامی - مذاق خیز حرکت).
schism : *siz*-m (تفرقہ) ; but **schismatic**, siz-*mat*-ik.
schist : shist (پرت والی چٹان).
scimitar : *sim*-i-tar (نیمچہ - سروھی).
scintilla : sin-*til*-a (ذرہ - شمہ).
scintillate : *sin*-til-ayt (ضو فشاں ھونا).
scion : *sy*-un (چشم و چراغ).
scission : *sish*-un (قطع و برید - جدائی).
scone : skon (تکونا کیک).
scorbutic : scor-*bew*-tik (خارشی جیسا).
scourge : skerj (1. کوڑا - 2. خدائی انتقام).
sculpture : *skulp*-chur (1. بت - 2 بت تراشی).
seamstress : *sems*-tress (درزن).
seance: *say*-ahns (مجلس مراقبہ).
seigneur : sayn-*yer* (جاگیر دار - امیر کبیر).
seine : (fishing net) sayn (مہاجال).
seismic : *syz*-mik (زلزلے کے متعلق) ; but **seismographer** syz-*mog*-ra- fer (زلزلہ نویس آلہ).
seminary : *sem*-in-ar-i (درسگاہ).
senescant: sen-*ess*-n't (سالخوردہ).
seneschal : *sen*-esh'l (داروغہ محل).
senile : *see*-nyl (بڑھاپے کا).
sentient : *sen*-sh'nt (ذی حس).

separatist : *sep*-ar-a-tist (تفریق کیشی).
sepulture : *sep*-ul-chur (تدفین).
sequestrate : si-*kwes*-trayt (ضبط کرنا) ; but **sequestration** ; si-kwes-*tray*-shun (ضبطی).
seriatim : see-ri-*ay*-tim (سلسلہ وار).
series : *see*-reez (سلسلہ).
servile : *ser*-vile (غلامانہ).
sesame : *ses*-a-mi (تل).
shellac : shel-*ak* (چپڑا لاکھ).
shortcoming : *short*-kuming (کمزوری - کوتاہی - قصور).
Sikh : seek (سکھ).
silhouette : sil-oo-*et* (سیاہ یک رخی خاکہ).
simile : *sim*-i-li (تشبیہ).
sine die : sy-ni *dy*-ee (غیر محدود التوا).
sinister : *sin*-is-ter (ڈراؤنی - شر انگیز).
ski : shee (برف پر پھسلنا).
slake : slayk (پیاس بجھانا).
sleight : slite (ہاتھ کی صفائی).
sloth : slohth (سستی - آلکس)
slough : (verb=to cast off ; noun =cast off skin) sluff ; (noun= swamp) slou.
sloven : *sluv*-'n (بے سلیقہ).
sluice : sloos (پانی کے بند کا پھاٹک).
sobriquet : *soh*-bri-kay (عرف).
sociology : so-si-*ol*-o-ji (عمرانیات social science).
soiree : *swah*-ray (شام کی محفل).
sojourn : *soj*-urn (عارضی قیام).
solace : *sol*-as (تسلی - دلاسا).
solder : *sol*-der (ٹانکا).
soldier : *sohl*-jer (فوجی).
solecism : *sol*-i-sism (محاورے کی غلطی).
solemn : *sol*-em (پر رعب - با ضابطہ).
soluble : *sol*-ewbl (حل پذیر).
sombre : *som*-ber (تاریک . افسردہ).
sombrero : som-*brayr*-o (نمدے کی امریکی ہیٹ).
sonata : son-*ah*-ta (ایک سر میں کئی گتوں : لا راگ).
sonorous : son-*ohr*-us (بلند آواز - گونجنے والا).
soot : (*oo* as in foot) (دھوئیں کی کالک).
sophist : *sof*-ist (سو فسطائی - غلط استدلال کرنے والا).
soporific : sop-or-*if*-ik (خواب آور).
sotto voce : sot-oh *voh* chay (زیر لب - آہستہ سے - چپکے سے).
sough : suf (سائیں سائیں).
souse : sous (ایک ولایتی اچار).
souvenir : *soo*-ven-eer (نشانی - یادگار تحفہ).
sovereign : *sov*-rin (حاکم - بادشاہ).
spatial : *spay*-shl (فضائی - مکانی).
species : *spee*-sheez (نوع).
speculative : *spec*-u-lat-iv (خیالی. نظری).
spheroid : *sfeer*-oyd (کرہ نما).
spinach : *spin*-ij (پالک).
spontaneity : spon-tan-*ee*-it-i (آمد - بے ساختہ پن).
springy : *spring*-i (لچک دار - کمانی دار).
squirrel : *skwi*-rel (گلہری).
staccato : stak-*kah*-to (وقفوں کے ساتھ بجایا ہوا راگ).

starboard : *star*-berd (کشتی کی داہنی سمت).
statistician : stat-is-*tish*'n (ماہر اعداد و شمار).
status quo: stay-tus-*kwoh* (موجودہ حالت - بدستور).
staunch : stawnch (پکا - مخلص - سر گرم).
steppe : step (سرد لق ودق میدان).
stereotyped : *steer*-e-o-typd (معاجاراً - لکیر کا فقیر).
sterile : *ster*-yl (بانجھ).
stern : (of a boat) stern (دنبالہ جہاز).
stertorous : *ster*-tor-us (خراٹے والی سانس).
stipend : *sty*-pend (وظیفہ) ; but **stipendiary**, sty-*pen*-d i-a r-i (وظیفہ خوار).
stirrup : *sti*-rup (رکاب).
stiver : *sty*-ver (چھوٹی کوڑی).
stomach : *stum*-ak (معدہ) ; but **stomachic** :stoh-*mak*-ik (ہاضم).
strata : *stray*-ta (زمین کی پرتیں).
strategic : strat-*ej*-ik (فن حرب سے متعلق).
strychnine : *strik*-neen (کچلا).
studding-sail : *stun*-s'l (زائد بادبان).
suavity : *swav*-it-i (شائستگی - خوش خلقی).
subaltern : *sub*-l-tern (لفٹیننٹ).
subject : (verb) sub-*jekt* (مغلوب کرنا - تسلط بٹھانا) ; (noun) *sub*-jekt (موضوع).
subpoena : sub-*pee*-na (سمن).
subtle : sut'l (1. نازک 2. نکتہ سنج).
succinct : suk-*sinkt* (موجز - جامع - مختصر).
succumb : suk-*kum* (مر جانا - شکست کھانا).
suede : swayd (بکری کے بچے کی بن کمائی کھال).
suffragist : *suf*-raj-ist (خواتین کے لئے حق رائے دہی کی خواستگان).
suicidal : sew-i-*sy*-dal (خود اپنے اغراض کے لئے مہلک).
suite : sweet (1. خدم چشم 2. کمروں یا فرنیچر کا جوڑ).
sulphureous : sul-*few*-ri-us ; (گندھک کا سا).
sumach : *sew*-mak (سماق - ایک قسم کی جھاڑی).
sumptuous : *sump*-tew-us (گراں قدر - پر تکلف).
sundae : *sun*-di (آئس کریم جس میں کچلے ہوئے پھل ہوں).
superficies : sew-per-*fish*-i-eez (بالائی یا بیرونی سطح).
superfluity : sew-per-*flew*-it-i (ضرورت سے زائد ہونا) ; but **superfluous** : sew-*per*-flew-us (فاضل - ضرورت سے زائد).
supine: *sew*-pyn (1. چت 2. سست آلکسی).
suppliant : *sup*-li-ant (ملتجی).
supposititious : sup-poz-i-*tish*-us (فرضی - نقلی - جعلی).
surreptitious : sur-rep-*tish*-us (دزدیدہ - چوری کا).
surveillance : sur-*vay*-lans (کسی کی نقل و حرکت کی نگرانی).
survey : (verb) ser-*vay* (جائزہ لینا); (noun) *sur*-vay (جائزہ).
suture : *sew*-cher (زخم کے ٹانکے لگانا).
svelte : svelt چھریرا - ہلکا پھلکا (عورت کا جسم).

swap, swop : swop (بدلنا).
swat : swot - رٹنا (سکول کی بولی)
گھونٹ ڈالنا ?
syllogism : *sil*-o-jism (قیاس منطقی).
symposium : sim-*poh*-zi-um (1. گلدستہء 2. فلسفیانہ مذاکرہ - مضامین).
synod : *sin*-od (پادریوں کی مجلس عام).
syringe : *si*-rinj (پچکاری).
syrinx : *si*-ringks (منہ سے بجانے کا چھوٹا سا ارگن باجا).
tableau : *tab*-loh (زندہ مرقع).
table d'hote: tah-bl-*doht* (عام میز جس پر ہوٹل کے سبھی گاھک کھانا کھاتے ھیں).
tacet: *tay*-set (موسیقی کی ھدایت) رک جاؤ.
tacit : *tass*-it (الخاموشی نیم رضا).
talisman : *tal*-iz-m'n (طلسم - تعویذ).
tambour : *tam*-boor (طنبورہ).
tarpaulin : tar-*paw*-lin (ترپال).
taunt : tawnt (دینا) طعنہ.
tedium : *tee*-di-um (اجیرن ھونا - کوفت).
telepathy : tel-*ep*-a-thi (اشراق- دل کا دل پر اثر).
telescopic : tel-es-*kop*-ik (دور بین کا سا); but **telescopy** tel-*es*-kop-i (دور بین بنانے یا برتنے کا طریق).
temporarily : *tem*-po-rar-i-li (عارضی طور پر).
tenable : *ten*-abl (1. قابل مدافعت 2. قرین عقل).
tenet : *tee*-nit (عقیدہ - اصول).
tercentenary . ter-cen-*tee*-nar-i (سہ صد سالہ جشن وغیرہ).
tergiversation : ter-jiv-er-*say*-shun (بار بار پہلو بدلنا - ایک بات پر قائم نہ رھنا).
terrain : ter-*rayn* (خطہ - زمین).
testator : tes-*tay*-tor (موصی - وصیت کرنے والا).
tete-a-tete : tayt-a-*tayt* (تخلیے کی گفتگو).
textile : *tex*-tyl (پارچہ بافی سے متعلق).
threnody : *three*-nod-i (ماتمی گیت - نوحہ).
threshold : *thresh*-old (آستاں - دھلیز),
thyme : tym (صعتر- ایک خوشبودار پودا).
timbre : *tam*-br (آواز کی کیفیت).
tincture : *tink*-cher (سپرٹ میں کسی دوا کا محلول).
tirade : ti-*rayd* (ملامت والی لمبی پر جوش تقریر).
tissue : *tish*-ew (بافت - نسیج).
tomato : to-*mah*-to (ٹماٹر).
topsail : topsl (چوکور بادبان).
torchon : *tor*-shon (تصویر کشی کا کاغذ).
torment: (verb) tor-*ment* (سخت اذیت دینا) ; (noun) *tor*-ment (اذیت).
tornado : tor-*nay*-do (زور کی آندھی).
tortoise : *tor*-tus (کچھوا).
tournament : *toor*-na-ment (ٹورنامنٹ).
tourniquet : *toor*-ni-ket (لہو روک آلہ).
tout court : too *koor* (فقط - بلا تشریح).

tout ensemble: toot on-*sawm*-bl (مجموعی اثر).
towards: to-*wawdz* (کی طرف).
trachoma: trak-*oh*-ma (ککرے).
tragedian: tra-*jee*-di-an (المیہ نگار - المیہ اداکار).
transient: *trahn*-si-ent (عارضی - نا پائدار).
transition: tran-*sizhn* (تغیر).
transmigrate: trans-*my*-grayt (قالب بدلنا - تناسخ ہونا).
transparent: trans-*payr*-ent (شفاف).
transport: (verb) trans-*pawrt* (ایک جگہ سے دوسری جگہ لے جانا); (noun) *trans*-po(r)t (سواری).
treatise: *tree*-tiz (رسالہ - مقالہ).
trefoil: *tree*-foyl (تپتیا پھول).
trilogy: *tril*-o-je (ایک مجموعے میں تین شہپارے).
tripartite: try-*par*-tyt (سہ طرفہ).
tripod: *try*-pod (تپائی).
tripos: *try*-pos (کیمبرج کا امتیازی B.A.)
truculent: *truk*-ew-lent (تندخو - جنگ جو).
turbine: *ter*-bin (پانی کے زور سے چلنے والا پہیا)
turgid: *ter*-jid (متورم - سوجا ہوا).
turquoise: *tur*-koyz (فیروزہ).
typographer: ty-*pog*-raf-er (فن طباعت کا ماہر).
ultimatum: ul-ti-*may*-tum (الٹی میٹم).
ululation: yew-lew-*lay*-shun (بھیڑئیے یا الو کی آواز).
umbrage: *um*-brij (1. سایہ 2. خفگی - آزردگی).
unctuous: *ungk*-tew-us (مصنوعی جوش دکھانے والا - چکنی چپڑی باتیں بنانے والا).
undulatory: *un*-dew-lay-tor-i (لہریا).
unguent: *un*-gwent (مرہم).
urbanity: er-*ban*-it-i (مروت - تہذیب).
urinal: *yew*-rin-al (پیشاب خانہ).
urine: *yew*-reen (پیشاب).
usage: *yewz*-ij (استعمال - دستور).
used (to): yewst
usury: *yew*-zhoo-ri (سود خواری).
vaccine: *vak*-seen (ویکسین).
vale: (farewell) (الوداع) *vah*-lee.
valise: val-*ees* (ایک قسم کا بیگ).
vapid: *vap*-id (پھیکا - بے مزہ).
variegate: *vayr*-i-gayt (رنگ برنگ والا بنانا).
vase: vahz (پھاٹک پر لگے ہوئے گلدان).
vaseline: *vas*-i-leen (ویسلین).
vaticinate: vat-*is*-in-ayt (پیشن گوئی کرنا).
vaudeville: *vohd*-vil (غنائی ناٹک).
vaunt: vawnt (بگھارنا) شیخی.
vehemence: *vee*-i-mens (تیزی - تندی - شدت).
vehicle: *vee*-ikl (گاڑی).
vehicular: vi-*hic*-u-lar (گاڑی والا).
venison: venz-'n (ہرن کا گوشت).
verbose: ver-*bohs* (طوالت پسندی); but **verbosity**: ver-*bos*-it-i (طوالت پسندی).
verdure: *verd*-yer (ہریالی).
vers libre: vayr *lee*-br (نظم آزاد).
vertigo: *ver*-ti-goh (دوران سر).
via: *vy*-a (براہ).

viands: *vy*-andz (اشیائے خوردنی).
vibratory : *vy*-bra-tor-i (مرتعش).
vicarious : vy-*kayr*-i-us (نیابتی - مفوضہ).
vicinity : vis-*in*-i-ti (قرب و جوار).
vicissitude : v y-*s*-*i* *s*.i-t e w d (انقلاب - نیر نگی - زمانہ).
victualler : *vitl*-er (اشیائے خوردنی فروش).
vide : *vy*-di (ملاحظہ ہو).
videlicet : vid-*ee*-lis-et (یعنی - یہ تفصیل ذیل).
vignette : vin-*yet* (قلمی چہرہ).
villain : *vil*-an (پاجی - بدمعاش).
viola : (plant بنفشہ) *vy*-oh-la ; (musical instrument, بڑی ولایتی سارنگی) vi-*oh*-la.
violin : vy-o-*lin* (ولایتی سارنگی).
violoncello : vy-o-lon-*chell*-oh (بڑا وایولن - وایولن چیلو).
virago : vi-*rah*-go (- لڑاکا عورت ھڑدنگی).
virile : *vi*-ryl (قوی - پر زور).
virulence : lent-*vi*-rew-lens (1. سختی - شدت 2. زھریلا پن).
visage : *viz*-ij (چہرہ - صورت).
vis-'a-vis : vee-za-*vee* (- روبرو مقابل).
viscid : *vis*-id (لیس دار),
viscount : *vy*-cownt (ارل سے چھوٹا برطانوی نواب).
vitiate : *vish*-i-ayt (. فاسد کرنا بگاڑنا).
vituperate : vy-*te w*-p e r-a y t (سخت سست کہنا - آڑے ھاتھوں لینا).
vivacious : vy-*vay*-shus (شگفتہ مزاج - بشاش).
vivacity : vy-*vas*-it-i (بشاشت).
viva voce : vy-va *voh*-si - زبانی (تقریری (امتحان).
viviparous : vy-*vip*-ar-us (انڈے دینے والے حیوان کے مقابلے میں بچے دینے والا).
vizier : viz-*eer* (وزیر).
volatile : *vol*-a-tyl سیماب (مجازاً) وش.
volte face : vohlt *fas* (قلا بازی).
vox populi : voks *pop*-ew-ly (1. رائے عامہ 2. عام افواہ).
wagon-lit : vag-on-*lee* (ریل کا سونے والا ڈبہ).
wainscot : *wayn*-skot (دیوار پر لکڑی کے تختوں کا حاشیہ).
waistcoat : *ways*-koht (واسکٹ).
wassail : *wos*-l (رنگ رلیاں منانا).
Wednesday : *Wenz*-di (بدھ).
whale : wayl (وہیل مچھلی).
wont : wohnt (- عادت - رسم دستور).
worsted: *woost*-ed (اونی دھاگا - بٹی ھوئی اون کا کپڑا - ورسٹیڈ).
yeast : yeest (خمیر).
yesterday : *yes*-te-di (گزشتہ). کل
yodel : *yoh*-dl (- الاپ - گنگنانا - الاپنا).
zenith : *zen*-ith (سمت الراس).
zero : *zee*-roh (صفر).
zodiacal : zoh-*dy*-ak-al (منطقہ البروج کا).
zoology : zoh-*ol*-o-ji (حیوانیات).
zoophyte : *zoh*-o-fyt (نباتی شکل کے حیوان).
zouave : zoo-*ahv* (فرانس کی اس پیادہ فوج کا سپاھی جس میں الجزائر کے عرب بھرتی ھوتے ھیں).

PART II
BRUSH UP YOUR GRAMMAR
CHAPTER IV
PARTS OF SPEECH

1. O magnify the Lord with me, and let us exalt His name together.
—*Psalms* 34 : 3

This is a group of **words**. So is the book on the study of which you have embarked. **Words** are the symbols of meaningful human speech. As such they are aptly termed **Parts of Speech** in English grammar. These parts are commonly regarded as being **eight** in all, though Dr. Otto Jesperson, the distinguished German scholar of English grammar, has set the total at a higher figure. Here are the eight usually recognized **Parts of Speech**. All words must belong to one or more of these categories according to the diversity of their meaning :—

(*i*) Noun ;
(*ii*) Pronoun ;
(*iii*) Adjective ;
(*iv*) Verb ;
(*v*) Adverb ;
(*vi*) Preposition ;
(*vii*) Conjunction ;
(*viii*) Interjection.

2. Rather than repeat formal definitions, let us try to understand thoroughly what each category denotes.

(*i*) *Bilal, Jones, nightingale, dove, book, pen, radio, telephone, Lahore, Pakistan, America, Russia* are all **names of persons, things or places**. Such words are called **nouns** (اسم). They are the labels put on various objects or types to facilitate reference to them.

(*ii*) *You, your, yours, he, she, it, they who* are some of the words used by us in place of nouns. They are known as **pronouns** (ضمیر). The prefix *pro* is a Latin word meaning *for*. So a *pronoun* is a *word used for a noun*. It saves us from the jarring repetition of nouns. The following extract from Ernest Hemingway rewritten without pronouns will at once make you feel that you couldn't do without them.

Robert Jordan went to the mouth of the cave, lifted the blanket and looked out......*Robert Jordan* looked through the tree trunks ......The air came into *Robert Jordan's* lungs sharp and cold as *Robert Jordan* breathed.

Doesn't it sound odd, coming as it does from the pen of a Nobel prize winner who is the greatest living novelist of the English language? But just read the original passage and see what a world of difference is made by the substitution of these small words which go by the name of pronouns. This is how Hemingway wrote in *For Whom the Bell Tolls* :

Robert Jordan went to the mouth of the cave, lifted the blanket and looked out......He looked through the tree trunks......The air came into his lungs sharp and cold as he breathed.

Now you know how useful and beautiful they are.

(*iii*) A naughty boy, a *good* girl, an *intelligent* young person, a *ravishing* beauty, the *playful* kitten, the *peevish old* woman is *rich*, are some groups of words with qualifying words printed in italics. Such qualifying words are called **adjectives** (pronounced with the accent on the first syllable, *adj*). The word is derived from a Latin phrase meaning *thrown towards* or *added to* (a noun).

(*iv*) *Read, write, is, has, go, see, play, rest, sleep* are some of the words denoting an action or state of somebody or something. They are known as **verbs** (فعل). Their importance can be gauged from the derivation of their name. *Verb* is derived from the Latin *verbum* which means a *word*. And it well deserves the name since the words falling in this category are the most communicative ones in a clause.

(*v*) He ran *swiftly*. It rained *incessantly*. She looked *furtively*. The italicized words in these sentences describe the condition in which some verb unfolds its meaning. Such words are known as **adverbs** (متعلق فعل).

But the term is much more extensive. It covers even such words as qualify an adjective or even another adverb. Here are two examples.

It is *very* strange. (In this sentence *very* will be classed as an **adverb** because it *qualifies the adjective* strange).

He bore all the hardships *very* patiently. (In this sentence again, *very* is an **adverb** but the reason is different. It is so because it qualifies *patiently* which itself is *an adverb like it*).

So an *adverb* may qualify a verb, an adjective or another adverb.

(*vi*) "*In* Sir Henry Wotton's jocular definition," says Dr. Johnson, "an ambassador is said to be a man *of* virtue sent abroad to tell lies *for* the advantage *of* his country; a newswriter is a man without virtue who writes lies *at* home *for* his own profit." The italicized words bring out the relation that exists between certain words. They

are termed **prepositions** (حرف ربط) because they are placed immediately before a noun, pronoun or noun equivalent, and one must take care to pronounce it along with the word *following* (and not preceding) it.

(*vii*) *And, but, or, nevertheless, also* are some of the words which join words together. Such words are called **conjunctions** (حرف عطف).

(*viii*) *Hallo! Pooh! Gosh! Alas! Hurrah!* Words like these which express a sudden emotion are termed *interjections* (حرف فنجائیہ). One may use them alone or in a sentence. They are generally followed by the mark of exclamation (!) Properly speaking, they are not a Part of Speech. Nevertheless they have come to stay as the eighth category in this grammatical classification.

These are the various Parts of Speech. We shall deal with them at greater length in the following chapters.

EXERCISES

Name the various Parts of Speech in the following extracts :—

(*For* **Board** *Classes*)

(*a*) **Raina** : Ugh ! But I do not believe that the first man is a coward. I believe he is a hero !

Man : That is what you would have said if you had seen the first man in the charge today.

Raina : Ah, I knew it ! Tell me—tell me about him.

—Shaw : *Arms and the Man.*

(*b*)

If I should meet thee
After long years,
How should I greet thee ?—
With silence and tears.

—Byron

(*For* **University** *Classes*)

(*c*) It is of course obvious that freedom is not to be increased by a mere diminution of government. One man's desires are apt to be incompatible with another man's, so that anarchy means freedom for the strong and slavery for the weak. Without government, the human population of the globe could hardly be a tenth of what it is ; it would be kept down by starvation and infant mortality. This would be to substitute a physical slavery far more severe than the worst social slavery to be found in civilized communities in normal times. The problem we have to consider is not how to do without government, but how to secure its advantages with the smallest possible interference with freedom. This means striking a balance between physical and social freedom.

—Bertrand Russel.

(*d*) **Polonius** : Affection ! pooh ! you speak like a green girl unsifted in such perilous circumstance. Do you believe his tenders, as you call them ?

—Shakespeare : *Hamlet.*

CHAPTER V

CLASSES OF NOUNS

1. The word **noun** comes from the Latin *nomen* (meaning name). Its English form is based on the Old French adaptation *non*. As a technical word in grammar it signifies a word used as a name.

2. In order to tackle successfully the grammatical problems arising in connection with the use of nouns, we must know the various **classes** into which they fall, the different **cases** in which they are used, the **gender** they represent and the **number** they denote.

3. **Classes of Nouns** : Nouns fall into **two** main divisions, (*a*) **Concrete** and (*b*) **Abstract**. An Abstract Noun denotes some quality, but the Concrete Noun denotes things, etc., which are the possessors or vehicles of those qualities. Concrete nouns have **four** sub-divisions. Thus we have the following five classes of nouns :

(*a*) (*i*) *Proper Nouns* ;
(*ii*) *Common Nouns* ;
(*iii*) *Collective Nouns* (including *Nouns of Multitude*) ;
(*iv*) *Material Nouns* ; and
(*b*) (*v*) *Abstract Nouns*.

4. A **Proper Noun** (*proper*, Latin *propirus*—one's own) is the name of one particular person, thing or place, as *Shakespeare* (a person), *The Sphinx* (a thing) and *London* (a place). The particular names of all beings, natural or supernatural, fall into this category. Certain Proper Nouns take the definite article (*the*) before them. Occasionally some other word or phrase is appended to one of them to prevent any ambiguity, as *Alexander the Great*, *Elizabeth the Second*, *Frederick of Prussia*. This is done with a view to clarifying which Alexander, Elizabeth or Frederick it is that we mean, for each of them has several namesakes.

Note : *The first letter of a Proper Noun is always* **capital**, as Washington, Venus, Abraham.

5 A **Common Noun** (*common*, Latin *communis*—that which is shared by a *community*, *i.e.*, by several individuals marked by some common characteristic) is the name of a class shared by each of its members, as *man*, *horse*, *city*, *river*, etc. *Man* is not the name of a particular man but of the whole adult male sex of human beings as well as of each individual belonging to that category. Similar is the case of horse, city, river and all other Common Nouns. They do not denote any particular horse, city, river, etc., such as the

one winning the Derby race in a certain year, the one situated along the Thames, the one flowing past Lahore, or some other particular person, thing or place; they denote any and every horse, city, river, etc.

Note: Sometimes even a **Proper Noun** is used as a **Common Noun** to denote the following:

(*a*) A **class**. "Agha Hashr is the Shakespeare of Urdu," is an oft-quoted example It means that Agha Hashr is the greatest name in the history of Urdu dramatic literature as Shakespeare is in that of English. *The* **Proper Noun** *used as a Common Noun like that* **is preceded by the** *definite article* (**the**).

(*b*) A **rank**. "He is a Napoleon," means that his dictatorial habits remind one of Napoleon Bonaparte. *The* **Proper Noun** *used as a Common Noun to denote rank is preceded by an article* (**a**, **an** or **the**).

Conversely, a Common Noun is occasionally used as a Proper Noun to denote a particular individual. Father, mother, baby are instances in point. You use them like that when you ask your mother, "Mummy, when will father be back?" In such cases you mean your own father, mother, brother, sister or child.

6. A **Collective Noun** is the name of a group of individuals considered as one complete whole. In the battlefield there are numerous soldiers but only one *army* fighting on a particular side. In this instance a *soldier is merely a Common Noun* but an *army is a Collective Noun*.

A Collective Noun is generally a Common Noun, but the possibility of its being a Proper Noun is not ruled out. The Collective Noun *army* is a Common Noun, no doubt, but the Collective Nouns *Senate*, *Congress* (the U.S. Upper and Lower Houses), *Parliament* (British legislature), *Majlis* (the Iranian legislature) are definitely Proper Nouns.

A **Noun of Multitude** is not just another name for a Collective Noun. A noun of this category goes by the latter appellation when it is treated as *one whole*. When, however, it calls attention to the individuals of the group, it goes by the former appellation. Take a noun of this category, *jury*. *Taken as a whole*, as in "The jury *has given* the verdict, 'guilty'," *it is a Collective Noun* **taking the verb in the singular**; but when *not taken as a whole*, as in "The jury *are divided* in their opinions," *it is a Noun of Multitude* **taking the verb in the plural**.

☞ **A group name takes the verb in the singular when used as a Collective Noun, and in the plural when used as a Noun of Multitude.**

7. A **Material Noun** denotes some particular kind of matter or some substance. *Wood*, *iron*, *steel*, *oil* are all Material Nouns.

Note ; The same word which is used as a Material Noun in one context, may be used as a Common Noun in another context. When we speak of "The babes in the *wood*," we use the word *wood* as a Common Noun ; but when we talk of the carpenter who sold us a desk of *wood*, we use the word *wood* as a Material Noun. Again, we use the word *iron* as a Material Noun when speaking of a *rod* of iron, but as a Common Noun when referring to some unfortunate person in *irons* (fettters, بیڑیاں)

8. An **Abstract Noun** stands as a class by itself. As already pointed out, it denotes some quality, condition, or action, as distinct from the possessor of that quality or condition, or the vehicle of that action. Abstract Nouns virtue, vice, humanity, length, breadth, depth, whiteness denote *qualities* ; liberty, slavery, happiness, sorrow, youth, age denote *conditions* ; pursuit, choice, relation and even thought are *actions*.

A word used as an Abstract Noun in one context may be used as a Common Noun in another context ; but it will have the latter appellation when it denotes the possessor of that quality, etc., and not the quality itself. Thus the word *authority* is an Abstract Noun when it signifies the power to command, but a Common Noun when it signifies the persons or persons wielding that power. In the former sense we speak of "someone invested with *authority*," and in the latter sense we refer to the "Authority" meaning thereby the powers that be. Similarly *justice* signifies the "quality of being just" when used as an Abstract Noun, and a "Judge" when used as a Common Noun.

☞ **Personification** *is a figure of speech, frequently employed in poetry, when an Abstract Noun is spoken of as an individual person.* Here are plenty of examples from Milton when L'Allegro addresses Euphrosyne, or "the heart-easing Mirth":

> Haste thee Nymph, and bring with thee
> *Jest*, and youthful *Jollity*,
> *Quips* and *Cranks* and wanton *Wiles*
> *Nods* and *Becks* and wreathed *Smiles*,
> Such as hang on Hebe's cheek,
> And love to live in dimple sleek ;
> *Sport* that wrinkled *Care* derides,
> And *Laughter* holding both his sides.

* **When personified, as in the verses cited above, Abstract Nouns must be written with a capital initial letter.** This is done with a view to bringing them in conformity with the rules governing the Proper Nouns.

9. By far the larger number of nouns are Common Nouns. We have already seen that Collective Nouns are mostly Common Nouns. We have also noticed how Proper Nouns can occasionally

be treated as Common Nouns in order to denote some class or rank. It remains to be noted that even Abstract Nouns and Material Nouns can be used as Common Nouns. There are two rules governing this change :

(*a*) *Either an article* (**a**, **an**, *or* **the**) should precede the noun meant to be changed into a Common Noun ;

(*b*) *Or such a noun should be put in the plural.*

Here are examples. The nouns used in different categories are printed in italics :

(*i*) '*Beauty* is truth, truth *beauty*'—that is all
Ye know on earth, and all ye need to know.

—*Ode on a Grecian Urn.*

Here Keats uses *beauty* as an **Abstract Noun**. But mark the same word used as a Common Noun in the following sentences :

(*a*) Rita Hayworth is a beauty (*i.e.*, a charming woman).

(*b*) Most of the *beauties* of the town (*i.e.*, the pretty girls of the locality) participated in the ball.

(*ii*) *Daniel* answered and said, "Blessed be the name of God for ever and ever : for wisdom and might are His."

—Daniel 2 : 20.

In this quotation from the scriptures, the word Daniel is used as a Proper Noun. But Shakespeare uses it as a Common Noun when he says :

A *Daniel* come to judgment ! yea, a *Daniel* !
O wise young judge, how I do honour thee !.........
A second *Daniel*, a *Daniel*, Jew !
Now, infidel, I have you on the hip.

—*The Merchant of Venice.*

And here is another sentence in which it is used as a Common Noun, but it is in the plural number here :

In the interpretation of dreams he is wiser even than the Daniels.

(*iii*) Here is a word *mango* used first as a Material Noun and then as a Common Noun :

(*a*) *Mango* is a delicious fruit. (Material Noun)

(*b*) Please pass me a *mango*. (Common Noun—Singular)

(*c*) I gave him one of these mangoes. (Common Noun—Plural)

10. **English Names** : We started with a discussion of Proper Nouns. The most frequently used nouns of this class are the names of human beings. English names are so foreign to the oriental mind and culture, that we experience a lot of difficulty in judging their true import in literature. This and the following article explain certain elementary points in this connection.

The names of English-speaking persons consists mainly of two parts :

(i) *Family name* or *Surname* ;

(ii) *Christian name* (i.e. the personal name of an individual).

The name *Thomas Smith* comprises these two parts. Smith is the *surname* (or *family name*), borne by every male member connected with that family on the paternal side. Female members descended from that family on the paternal side go by that name only till their marriage, after which they take on their husband's family name. On the other hand, women with other surnames in maidenhood, will on marrying into this family drop their earlier surnames and take on that of this family. Thus Miss Susan Smith, after her marriage to James Brown, will be called Mrs. Susan Brown. Whenever in legal documents she finds it necessary to mention her maiden name, she will write Mrs. Susan Brown *nee* Smith. *Nee* is a French word which means 'having had (as maiden name)." It is pronounced so as to rhyme with *neigh* or *nay*.

11 **Surnames** : The *surname* (or *family name*) forms the last part of a person's name. Words preceding it are all Christian names of which more anon. English surnames have a history of their own on which the following poem throws interesting light :

Men once were surnamed from their shape or estate
(You all may from history worm it).
There was *Lewis the Bulky*, and *Henry the Great*,
John Lackland and *Peter the Hermit*.

But now, when the doorplates of misters and dames
Are read, each so constantly varies
From the owner's trade, figure and calling surnames
Seem given by the rule of contraries.

Mr. Box, though provoked, never doubles his fist,
My Burns in his grate has no fuel,
Mr. Playfair won't catch me at hazard or whist,
Mr. Coward was winged in a duel.

Mr. Wise is a dunce, *Mr. King* is a Whig,
Mr. Coffin's uncommonly sprightly,
And huge *Mr Little* broke down in a gig
While driving fat *Mrs. Golightly*.

Mrs. Drinkwater's apt to indulge in a dram,
Mrs. Angel's an absolute fury,
And meek *Mr. Lyon* let fierce *Mr. Lamb*
Tweak his nose in the lobby of Drury.

At Bath, where the feeble go more than the stout.
(A conduct well worthy of Nero).
Over poor *Mr. Lightfoot*, confined with the gout.
Mr. Heaviside danced a bolero.

Miss Joy, wretched maid, when she chose *Mr. Love*,
Found nothing but sorrow await her ;
She now holds in wedlock, as true as a dove,
That fondest of doves, *Mr. Hayter*.

Mr. Oldcastle dwells in a modern-built hut,
Miss Sage is of madcaps the archest :
Of all the queer bachelors Cupid e'er cut,
Old *Mr. Younghusband's* the starchest.

Mr. Child, in a passion, knocked down *Mr. Rock*,
Mr. Stone like an aspen leaf shivers ;
Miss Poole used to dance, but she stands like a stock,
Ever since she became *Mrs. Rivers*.

Mr. Swift hobbles onward, no mortal knows how,
He moves as though cords had entwined him,
Mr. Metcalfe ran off, upon meeting a cow,
With pale *Mr. Turnbull* behind him.

Mr. Barker's as mute as a fish in the sea,
Mr. Miles never moves on a journey,
Mr. Gotobed sits up till half after three,
Mr. Makepiece was bred an attorney.

Mr. Gardener can't tell a flower from a root,
Mr. Wilde with timidity draws back,
Mr. Rider performs all his journeys on foot,
Mr. Foot all his journeys on horseback.

Mr. Penny, whose father was rolling in wealth,
Kicked down all the fortune his dad won,
Large *Mr. Le Fevre's* the picture of health,
Mr. Goodenough is but a bad one.

Mr. Cruikshank stepped into three thousand a year,
By showing his leg to an heiress :—
Now I hope you'll acknowledge I've made it quite clear,
Surnames ever go by contraries.

—James Smith : *Surnames.*

This poem will make it clear that English surnames have by now lost all their meaningful association.

The commonest English surnames are arranged below in order of the frequency :

Smith, Jones, Brown, Fowler, Turner, Baker, Chandler, Roberts, Lynch, Carpenter, Jennings, Johnson, Dutton, Harvey, Kingston, Cunningham, Benton.

In the States (which means the U.S.A. or the United States of America) these very surnames are common, with the following typical additions :

Snyder, Swartz, Mosher, Chrysler, Blankenship, Ladue, Van Allen, Van Camp, Van Scoy, Van Noy, Yoacum, Yerkes.

The *surnames of the English gentry and nobility* are hard to spell and pronounce. Here are some of them with the pronunciation indicated against each name, the accented syllables being printed in italics :

Spelling	*Pronunciation*	*Spelling*	*Pronunciation*
Abergavenny	*Aber*-geni	Harlech	*Har*-li
Abinger	Ab-*in*-jer	Hawarden	*Har*-den
Baden-Powell	*Bay*-dn-po-el	Hough	Haf
Beauchamp	*Bee*-cham	Inge	Ing
Beaulieu	*Bew*-lay	Mackarness	*Mak*-kar-nees
Bellingham	*Bel*-in-jam	Meagher	Mar
Belvoir	*Bee*-ver	Pole-Carew	Pol-*ka*-ri
Bethun	*Bee*-tan	Poulett	*Paw*-let
Bosanquet	*Bo*-san-ket	Ranfurly	*Ran*-fur-li
Buccleugh	*Bak*-lo	Reuter	*Roy*-ter
Cheyne	*Chay*-ni	Ruthven	*Riv*-en
Claverhouse	*Klav*-ers	Sandys	Sandz
Colclough	*Kok*-li	Shrewsbury	*Shrows*-bery
Colquhon	Ko-*hoon*	St. John	Sin-jan
Conisborough	*Kans*-bro	St. Leger	*Sil*-in-jer
Crespigny	*Krep*-in-i	Strachey	*Stray*-chi
Dysart	*Dy*-zert	Torphichen	*Tawr*-fit-chen
Drogheda	*Draw*-e-da	Villiers	*Vil*-ers
Dumaresq	*Doom*-e-risk	Wemyss	Weemz
Elibank	*El*-i-bank	Woburn	*Woo*-barn
Fiennes	Fynz	Zouche	Zoosh
Hardinge	*Hard*-ing		

The following is a **supplementary list** of the less frequent English surnames, along with their pronunciations. The names are alphabetically arranged without regard to the status of the family.

Spelling	*Pronunciation*	*Spelling*	*Pronunciation*
Abbott	*Ab*-at	Besant	1. *Bes*-ant 2. Bez-*ant*
Arbuthnot	Ar-*bath*-nut		
Ayers	Ayrs	Bigelow	*Big*-e-lo
Bagehot	*Ba*-jat	Blount	Blant
Beatty	*Bee*-ti	Bolitho	Bo-ly-tho
Berkeley	*Bark*-li	Bompas	*Bam*-pas

Spelling	Pronunciation
Boscawan	1. Bas-co-en 2. Bas-caw-en
Boughton	1. *Bow*-tun 2. *Baw*-tun
Bourchier	*Bow*-cher
Brough	Braf
Broughan	1. *Broo*-am 2. Bro-am
Buchan	*Bak*-an
Buchanan	Ba-*kan*-an
Cadugan	Ka-*dag*-an
Capell	Kay-pel
Carew	1. *Kay*-ri 2. Ka-*roo*
Carmichael	Kar-*my*-kal
Carnegie	1. Kar-*neg*-i 2. Kar-*nee*-gi
Carruthers	Ka-rath-ers
Cavan	*Kav*-an
Cavangh	*Kav*-ana
Chalmers	Chah-mers
Chartieris	1. *Char*-ters 2. *Char*-ter-is
Chetwode	Chet-wud
Chisholm	*Chiz*-am
Cholmondeley	*Cham*-li
Clough	Kluf
Cochrane	*Kawk*-rayn
Cockburn	*Ko*-barn
Colnaghy	Kal-*nah*-gi
Compton	*Kamp* tan
Constable	*Kuns*-tabl
Conyngham	*Kan*-in-gam
Couch	Kooch
Coutts	Koots
Coventry	*Kav*-ent-ri
Creagh	Kray
Creighton	*Kry*-tan
Crichton	*Kry*-tan
Dalhousie	Dal-*how*-zi
Dalmeny	Dal-*men*-i
Dalrymple	Dal-*rim*-pal
Dalzell	Dee-*el*
Dalziel	Dee-*el*
Decies	*Dee*-sheez
Doughty	*Dow*-ti
Dunsany	Dan-*say*-ni
Falconer	Fawk-ner
Farquhar	1. *Far*-ker 2. *Fark*-wer
Farquharson	1. *Far*-ker-san 2. *Fark*-wer-san
Fenwick	*Fen*-ik
Fildes	Fylds
Findlater	*Find*-la-ter
Findlay	*Fin*-lay
Foljambe	*Fool*-jam
Fremantle	1. Free-*man*-tal 2. *Free*-man-tal
Froude	Frood
Gairdner	1. *Gard*-ner 2. *Gayrd*-ner
Galbraith	Gal-*brayth*
Gallagher	*Gal*-a-her
Geddes	*Ged*-iz
Geikie	*Gee*-ki
Gerard	*Jer*-ard
Giffard Gifford	1. *Gif*-ard 2. *Jif*-ard
Gillespie	Gil-es-pi
Gilmour	*Gil*-mar
Gough	Gaf
Gower	1. Gor 2. *Gow*-er
Greig	Greg
Grier	Greer
Haldane	*Hawl*-dayn
Halsbury	*Hawls*-bri
Harcourt	*Har*-kart
Heneage	Hen-ij
Hepburn	He-barn
Hervey	Har-vi
Hobart	*Hab*-art
Hoey	Hoy
Holmes	Ho-mes
Home	Hewm

Spelling	*Pronunciation*
Hougton	1. *Haw*-tan 2. *How*-tan
Ingelow	*In*-je-low
Innes	In-is
Iveagh	1. *Eye*-vi 2. Eye-ver
Jerome	Jer-*om*
Jervis	*Jar*-vis
Keightly	*Keet*-li
Kekewich	*Kek*-wich
Kennard	Ken-*nard*
Keogh	Kio
Kernahan	*Ker*-na-han
Kesteven	*Kest*-ev-en
Keynes	Kayns
Knollys	Nols
Kynaston	*Kin*-as-tan
Laffan	La-*fan*
Lascelles	*Las*-els
Lathom	*Lay*-tham
Lefevre	Le-*fee*-ver
Lehmann	*Lay*-man
Le Queux	Le-*kew*
Leven	*Lee*-ven
Leverhulme	*Lee*-ver-hewm
Lowther	1. *Low*-ther 2. *Lo*-ther
Lysaght	*Ly*-saht
Macara	Ma-*kah*-ra
Maccullagh	Ma-*ka*-la
McEvoy	*Mak*-e-voy
McKay	Ma-*ky*
Mackie	*Mak*-i
Maclean	Mak-layn
Macleod McLeod	Mak-*lowd*
Macmahon	Mak-*mahn*
Macnamahra	Mak-na-*mah*-ra
Madan	*Mad*-an
Mahan	Mahn
Mahon	1. Mahn 2. Ma-*hoon*
Mahony	*Mah*-ni
Mainwaring	*Man*-er-ing
Martineau	*Mar*-ti-no
Maughan	Mawn
Meiklejohn	*Mykl*-jawn
Melhuish	*Mel*-ish
Menzies	1. *Meng*-is 2. *Ming*-is
Meux	Mewz
Meyer	*My*-er
Meynell	*Men*-el
Meyrick	*Mer*-ik
Moncrieff	Mon-*kreef*
Monro Monroe	Mun-*ro*
Montefiore	Monti-fi-o-ri
Montgomery	Mant-*gam*-ri
Montmorency	Mant-ma-*ren*-si
Morant	Ma-*rant*
Moray	*Mur*-i
Mordaunt	*Mor*-dant
Morrell	1. Ma-rel 2. *Mar*-el
Moulton	*Mol*-tan
Mowat	*Mo*-at
O'Hagan	O-*hay*-gan
O'Shanghnessy	O-*shaw*-ne-si
Outram	*Oot*-ram
Packenham	*Pak*-en-am
Palgrave	*Pawl*-grayv
Pegram	*Peeg*-ram
Petrie	*Peet*-ri
Pinero	Pio-*nee*-ro
Ponsonby	*Pan*-san-bi
Powell	*Po*-el
Powys	*Po*-is
Prothero	*Prath*-e-ro
Rea Reay	Ray
Renwik	*Ren*-ik
Rhys	Rees

Rolleston	*Rals*-tan
Routh	Rowth
Rowton	Ro-tan
St. Clair	*Sinc*-lay-er
Saunders	*Sahn*-ders
Saunderson	*Sahn*-der-san
Scrymgeour	*Skrim*-jer
Souttar	*Soo*-tar
Speight	Spayt
Strachan / Strahan	Strawn
Sudeley	*Sewd*-li
Symons	*Sim*-ans
Synge	Sing
Thesiger	*Thes*-i-jer
Thorold	*Thar*-old
Tighe	Ty
Tollemache	*Tal*-mash
Trefusis	Tre-*few*-sis
Treloar	Tre-*lor*
Tyrwhitt	*Tir*-it
Urquhart	*Er*-kert
Vanbrugh	*Van*-brer
Walmesley	*Wawms*-li
Waugh	Waw
Whitefield	*Whit*-feeld
Willard	Wil-*ard*
Winstanley	*Wins*-tan-li
Wodehouse	Wood-hows
Worsley	*Wers*-li
Wylie / Wyllie	*Wy*-li
Yonge	Yang

Note : It may be noted that many surnames express the relation "*the son of*." Their form corresponds to the following :

English : (*i*) John*son* (*son*-son), the son of John.

(*ii*) Brown*ing* (*ing*-son), the son of Brown.

Norman: (*iii*) *Fitz*gerald (*Fitz*-son), the son of Gerald.

Irish : (*iv*) O'Donnell (O-son) the son of Donnel.

Scottish: (*v*) *Mac*millan (*Mac*-son), the son of Millan.

The last (*Mac*) may also be spelt as *Mc*, but in that case the letter following it will be capital.

☞ **We should never lose sight of the fact that it is very discourteous to misspell or mispronounce a person's name.** The mistake in spelling may even involve one in legal liabilities.

12. **Christian Names** : The personal name of an English-speaking individual is called a Christian name. It precedes his surname and is given to him by the priest when he is *christened* (pronounced *krisnd*) or *baptized*. Usually, it is only one name, but when the baby is the darling of so many elders, he gets one or more names inserted between his Christian name and surname. These interpolations are just the Christian names of those who had so keenly been looking forward to the new issue.

13. Unlike the surnames, the Christian names are always meaningful. **Christabel**, in Coleridge's poem of the same name, is *a pretty Christian maiden*, and the villain of the story, **Geraldine**, is *a woman strong with a spear*. For this very reason *masculine* and *feminine* Christian names are different from each other. For instance, *Clarence*, *Raymonde* and *Valentine* are masculine names ; *Jean* is feminine ; *Evelyn* is usually feminine, but occasionally

masculine; *Francis* is masculine and *Frances* feminine, although both of these are pronounced alike. Below you will find two lists of masculine and feminine Christian names along with their meaning:

Masculine Christian Names

Name	*Meaning*	*Name*	*Meaning*
Adam	Man of red earth (آدم)	Albert	All bright
Adolphus	Helper	Alexander	Helper (سکندر ۔ اسکندر)
Alan	Helper	Alfred	Wise adviser
Alphonso	Willing helper	Edward	Rich guard
Ambrose	Immortal	Eli	My God (الہی)
Andrew	Fearless	Enoch	Made sacred to (God)
Anthony	Praiseworthy	Ephraim	Fruitful
Archibald	Most brave	Eric	Powerful
Arnold	Strong in honour	Ernest	Angelic
Arthur	Noble	Eugene	Well-born
Augustus	Grand	Eustace	Stands firm
Bartholmew	Warlike son	Evan	Youthful fighter
Basil	Kingly	Felix	Happy
Benjamin	Son of my right hand (ابن یمین (بنیامین)	Ferdinand	Brave
Bernard	Darling	Francis	Free
Bertram	Fair and bright	Frederick	One who rules with peace
Brian	Strong voice	Geoffrey	God's peace
Caleb	Dog (کلب)	George	Farmer
Cecil	Blind	Gerald	Able to fight with a lance
Charles	Strong and noble	Gilbert	Bright
Christopher	One who works for Christ	Guy	Leader
Claud	Lame	Harold	Fighter
Clement	Merciful	Henry	Head of a family
Conrad	Able	Herbert	Credit to his army
Cuthbert	Famous	Hubert	Happy outlook
Cyril	Lord	Hugh	High
Daniel	Judge (دانیال)	Ian	God's good gift
David	Beloved (داؤد)	Ingram	Pure as a raven
Donald	Proud	Isaac	Laughter (اسحاق ۔ اضحاک ۔ اضحاق)
Duncan	Brown chief	Jabez	Maker of sarrow
Edgar	Happy when rich	Jacob	One who supplants (یعقوب)
Edmund	Rich possession		

Name	*Meaning*
James	One who supplants. (same as Jacob)
Japheth	Increase (یافث)
John	God's gift (یحیٰ یوحنا)
Jonathan	God has given
Joseph	Addition (یوسف)
Joshua	Saviour (یوشع)
Julius	Soft-haired
Kenneth	Handsome leader
Laurence / Lawrence	Crowned with laurels
Leonard	Strong as a lion
Lewis	Warrior of the people
Llewllyn	Lightning
Maurice	Dark
Michael	One who is like God (میکائل میکال)
Morgan	Sailor
Moses	Taken from the water (موسیٰ)
Nathaniel	God's gift
Nicholas	Victor of the people
Norman	Norman

Name	*Meaning*
Oliver	Olive (زیتون)
Patrick	Noble
Paul	Little
Percy	With piercing eyes
Peter	Stone (پطرس)
Philip	Lover of horses
Raymond(e)	Quiet protector
Reuben	Behold a son
Richard	Stern ruler
Robert	Bright in fame
Roger	Spear of fame
Rufus	Red-haired
Samuel	Heard by God (سموئل)
Solomon	Peaceable (سلیمان)
Stephen	Crown
Theodore	God's gift
Thomas	Twin
Valentine	Valorous
Victor	Conqueror
Vincent	Conquering
Vivian	Living
Walter	Conqueror
Wilfred	Bold
William	One who defends others

Feminine Christian Names

Name	*Meaning*
Ada	Happiness
Adelaide	Noble birth
Agatha	Kind
Agnes	Pure as a lamb
Alberta	All bright
Alice	Noble
Amelia	Hard-working
Amy	Beloved
Angelina	Angelic

Name	*Meaning*
Ann	Gracious
Augusta	Noble
Barbara	Stranger
Beatrice	Provides happiness
Bertha	Bright
Beryl	Soothsayer
Blanche	White and pure
Bridget	Shining bright

Name	Meaning
Catherine, Katherine, Kate *diminutive*	Pure
Cecilia	Blind
Clara	Bright
Claudia	Lame
Constance	Constant
Coralie	Sea-nymph
Cynthia	Moon-goddess
Daisy	Innocent flower
Deborah	Bee
Diana	Queen of the moon
Dolores	Sadness
Dora	God's gift
Doris	Sea-nymph
Edith, Edyth	Rich gift
Eleanor	Torch
Elizabeth, Bessy *diminutive*	Devoted to God
Ella	Holy
Emily	Work
Emma	Nurse
Estelle	Star
Ethel	Noble
Eva	Life (حوا)
Evelyn	Hazel-nut
Fanny	Free
Flora	Flowers
Florence	Flourishing
Geraldine	Strong fighter with a lance
Gertrude	Dares to be true
Gladys	Lame
Grace	Grace, charm
Gwendoline	White bow
Hannah	Grace
Harriet	Head of the family
Hellen, Ellen	Shine brightly
Hester	Star
Hilda	Battle-maid
Hortense	Lover of gardens
Ida	Perfect happiness
Ina	Purity
Irene	One who gives peace
Isabella	Sworn by God
Jane	God's gracious gift
Jessie	God's gift
Josephine	Addition
Joyce	Pleasant
Julia	Soft-hearted
Laura	Laurel
Letitia	Joy
Louisa	Famous
Lydia	Beautiful and pleasant
Mabel	Lovable
Margaret, Peggy *diminutive*	Pearl
Martha	Bitterness
Mary, Miriam	Bitter (مريم - ماريه)
Matilda, Maud	One who fights for purity
May	Hope
Mildred	One who speaks mildly
Olive	Olive tree (زيتون)
Ophelia	Serpent
Penelope	Weaver
Philippa	Lover of horses
Phoebe	Shining
Phyllis	Green bough
Rachel	Lamb
Rebecca	Comfortable (ربقه)

Name	*Meaning*	*Name*	*Meaning*
Rhoda	Rose	Theodora	God's gift
Rosalind	Rose	Ursula	She-bear
Ruth	Beauty	Victoria	Conqueror
Salome	Peace	Viola	Violet
Sarah	Princess (سارہ)	Virginia	Virgin
Selina	Moon	Winifred	Peacemaker
Sybil	Wisdom	Zenobia	Child of Zeus
Susan	Lily (سوسن)		

EXERCISES

(*For* **Board** *Students*)

1. Name the various classes of nouns, giving examples in each case.

2. Is a Common Noun ever used as a Proper Noun ? Explain.

3. What is a Collective Noun ? When does it take the verb in the singular and when in the plural ?

4. What do you understand by a surname and a Christian name ? Give examples.

5. Pick out the nouns from the following extracts and classify them.

(*a*) It will be seen from these remarks that Mrs. Gamp was looking out of the window. When she had exhausted the prospect, she tried the easy-chair, which she indignantly declared was 'harder than a brick-badge.' Next she pursued her researches among the physic-bottles, jugs, and tea-cups ; and when she had entirely satisfied her curiosity on all these subjects of investigation, she untied her bonnet-strings and strolled up to the bedside to take a look at her patient. —Dickens : *Martin Chuzzlewit*

(*b*) And "What mockery or malice have we here ?" cries Herve Riel :
"Are you mad, you Malouins ? Are you cowards, fools, or rogues ?
Talk to me of rocks and shoals, me who took the soundings, tell
On my fingers every bank, every shallow, every swell
'Twixt the offing here and Greve where the river disembogues ?
Are you bought by English gold ? Is it love the lying's for ?

—Browning : *Herve Riel*

(*For* **University** *Students*)

1. When does a Collective Noun become a Noun of Multitude ? How does the change affect the number of the verb used along with it ?

2. Can you ever use a Common Noun as a Proper Noun ? Give examples, if any.

3. What change is necessited by using the following as Common Nouns : (*a*) An Abstract Noun ; (*b*) A Proper Noun ; (*c*) A Material Noun ?

4. What parts do the names of English-speaking persons comprise ? Are these parts meaningful ? Cite instances.

5. Mention some of the commonest English surnames. Explain why is it necessary to spell and pronounce them correctly.

6. What do the following Christian names signify? Can you tell which of these nouns are only feminine? Evelyn, Morgan, George, Walter, Fanny, Agnes, Arthur, Eleanor, Alice, Charles.

7. Pick out the nouns from the following extracts and classify them :

(*a*) Then Aristotle, observing Bacon advance with a furious mien, drew his bow to the head, and let fly his arrow, which missed the valient modern and went whizzing over his head; but Des Cartes it hit; the steel point quickly found a defect in his headpiece; it pierced the leather and the pasteboard, and went in at his right eye. The torture of the pain whirled the valiant bow-man round till death, like a star of superior influence, drew him into his own vortex.

—Swift : *The Battle of Books.*

(*b*) The quality of mercy is not strain'd,
It droppeth as the gentle rain from heaven
Upon the place beneath : it is twice blest;
It blesseth him that gives, and him that takes;
'Tis mightiest in the mightiest : it becomes
The throned monarch better than his crown;
His sceptre shows the force of temporal power,
The attribute to awe and majesty,
Wherein doth sit the dread and fear of kings;
But mercy is above this sceptred sway;
It is enthroned in the hearts of kings;
And earthly power doth then show likest God's
When mercy seasons justice.

—Shakespeare : *The Merchant of Venice.*

CHAPTER VI

CASES OF NOUNS

1. The **case** of a noun is the relation in which it stands to some other word in an expression. This relation involves a change of form in certain instances. This change is called **inflexion** in grammar. The word undergoing such change is said to be **inflected**, as is the language which employs a number of inflexions.

2. Old English (or Anglo-Saxon) was a highly inflected language, but modern English is one of the least inflected ones. This change has been brought about by the mixing of various races that have conquered Britain and settled there from time to time. Historical factors like that always tend to simplify the grammar of the language in order to facilitate mutual understanding between the divers elements of population.

3. Modern English has **five cases**, but with the singular exception of the Genitive Case they have lost their case-endings. To put it more simply, none of the cases save one involves any change of form. The relation in all other cases is expressed by the position it occupies rather than through any change in the sound of the word in question. Here are the five cases :

(*i*) **Nominative** (or *Subjective*) ;
(*ii*) **Vocative** ;
(*iii*) **Accusative** (or *Objective*) ;
(*iv*) **Dative** ; and
(*v*) **Genitive** (or *Possessive*).

4. A noun is said to be in the **Nominative** case when it is used either (*a*) as the **subject** of a verb, or (*b*) as its **complement**. Examples of the *Nominative of subjects* are :

Jack fell down. —Nursery Rhyme.
Jill came tumbling after. —Nursery Rhyme.
The melancholy *Jaques* grieves at that.
—Shakespeare : *As You Like It*

A **Complement** in grammar is a word that completes the predicate of a verb or incomplete prediction. By *verbs of incomplete predication* are meant intransitive verbs like *to be*, *to become*, *to look*, *to appear*, *to seem*, which sometimes demand a noun or adjective to complete their sense (though normally even they complete the predicate). Examples of *Nominative of* complement are :

This Caesar was a *tyrant*. —Shakespeare.
And Brutus is an honourable man. —Shakespeare.

5. **Vocative** is the case of a noun used for the sake of address, as italicized words in the following examples :

I am, afraid, *sir*, this is wrong.

Why, how now, *Hamlet* ! —Shakespeare.

But, *Othello*, speak :
Did you by indirect and forced courses
Subdue and poison this young maid's affections ? —Shakespeare

In thee, O *Lord*, I put my trust. —Psalms 31 : 1.

6. There are two kinds of objects in English grammar, **direct** and **indirect**. *The direct object is in the* **Accusative** *case*, and the *indirect object is in* the **Dative** *case*. An example will make clear what is meant by direct and indirect objects. Take the sentence, "He gave her a flower." In it *gave* is the verb in the active voice and *He* is the subject. But there are two objects, *her* and a *flower*. One of these is the direct and the other the indirect object. To know one from the other we have to see which of these objects is directly affected by the verb and which indirectly. It needs no ratiocination, no formal logical reasoning, to discover that it is a *flower*, and not *her*, which is directly affected by the action of the verb *gave*. The person denoted by *her* is only the recipient, while it is a *flower* which has changed hands, thus implementing the action envisaged by the verb *gave*. A *flower* is thus the direct object, and *her* is the indirect object to this verb. Hence the noun *flower* is in the **Accusative** (or *Objective*) case, while the pronoun *her* is in the **Dative** case.

Note : Only a few verbs in English are capable of Dative construction. Some of them are set down here in their order of precedence :

To *give*, to *send*, to *write*, to *bequeath*, to *pay*, to *find*.

Examples are :

He *gave* (or *sent* or *wrote*) me a letter.

He *bequeathed* (or *paid*) her a *lot* of money.

Did he not *find* you that job ?

☞ *A noun immediately following a preposition is said to be in the* **Accusative** *case*, as *Arthur* in "Will you please give it *to Arthur* ?"

It would be incorrect to infer that nouns in the Accusative case are always preceded by the prepositions. One conclusion, however, is obvious : *No word immediately preceded by a preposition can be in the* **Dative** *case*.

To sum up, the **Dative** is the case of an indirect object. It never follows a preposition directly. On the other hand the **Accusative** (also called *Objective*) is the case of a direct object to a verb or a preposition.

7. The **Genitive** (or *Possessive*) is the problem child of this chapter. It is the case of a noun which appertains to or possesses

the thing or person denoted by another noun in the same phrase. It is the only inflected case in modern English and is formed by adding to the noun *'s* (known as apostrophe s) or simply (') (known as *apostrophe*), as the horse's head (*i.e.*, the head of one horse), and the horses' heads (*i.e.*, the heads of many horses).

The Genitive case has only a restricted use. We cannot use it with all nouns. For instance, we cannot correctly say "a table's leg," though it would be quite correct to speak of "Alfred's leg" or "the leg of a table." This last form can be used with all sorts of nouns when the sense of possession has to be expressed. The words *of a table* used in this phrase are equivalent to the Genitive form, *a table's*. But unlike the latter form, they are not in the Genitive case which could not be used correctly with the name of an inanimate object.

We can correctly use the Genitive case-ending only with the following types of nouns :

(*i*) *Nouns denoting* **persons**, as *William's* book, *George's* pen, James' pencil.

(*ii*) *Nouns denoting* **other living things**, as a *bird's* wings, a *snake's* slough (pronounced *sluf*, کینچلی), a *hog's* snout, a *cat's* paw's, a dog's tail.

(*iii*) *Nouns denoting* **personified things**, as *Fortune's* favourite, *Solitude's* abode, *Honour's* voice, *Death's* ear.

(*iv*) *Nouns denoting dignified objects*, as the **sun's** rays, *heaven's* will, *nature's* work, the *court's* decree.

(*v*) *Nouns denoting* **time**, as a *year's* stay, a *month's* leave, a *week's* rest, a *day's* absence, in an *hour's* time.

(*vi*) *Nouns denoting* **space**, as a *stone's* throw, a *hair's* breadth.

(*vii*) *Nouns denoting* **weight**, as a *pound's* weight, a maund's weight.

(*viii*) *Nouns in certain* **familiar phrases**, as to one's *heart's* content, at one's *wit's* end, for *money's* sake.

*In phrases, the Genitive case-ending is added only to the last noun, as his father-in-*law's* house, the Earl of *Mountbatten's* mischief.

*When a noun in the Genitive case is in apposition to (*i e.*, placed alongside of) one or more nouns, only one of such nouns, preferably the last, is put in the genitive. Examples are :

He purchased his *neighbour Brown's* orchard.
I came at the *King my master's* bidding.
I called at *Lucy's the schoolmistress*.

Pedantry disapproves of the last form, insisting on its being changed into *Lucy the schoolmistress's*, but there is no denying

the fact that when emphasis falls on the first noun, the *'s* is added to it in everyday speech. However, it is definite that both the nouns

☞**Singular nouns** in the Genitive case add *'s*, but the following exceptions must not be lost sight of:

(i) A singular noun in the Genitive will add only (') (apostrophe and not *'s* or apostrophe s) when its final syllable both begins and ends with *s*, as *Moses'* laws. *Keats's*, *Yeats's*, *Wells's*, however, do not fall under this rule and take *'s*. There is a difference of opinion about classical names like Mars, Venus, Aristophanes; but the modern tendency is to us *'s* (and not merely the (') with them, as *Mars's*, *Venus's*, *Aristophanes's*, etc.

(ii) A singular noun of more than one syllable ending in *s* or *ce*, and followed by the word *sake* takes only the apostrophe in the genitive (and not apostrophe *s*), as for *goodness'* sake, for conscience' sake. However, *s* would be added if such noun is monosyllabic, as for *Grace's* sake, for *Ross's* sake.

☞**Plural nouns** in the genitive case add only (') (apostrophe) if they end in *s*, as *dogs'* tails; but they add *'s* (apostrophe *s*) if their own final letter is *s*, as the *bosses'* orders, *Joneses'* books.

In deciding about the use of 's, or (') in doubtful cases, we should be guided by good sense, and drop the *s* to avoid *cacophony* (the ugly sound of words).

*The genitive when used alongside of the *of* form sometimes denotes authorship, etc., as a play *of Shakespeare's*, a poem *of Milton's*.

EXERCISES

(*For* **Board** *Students*)

1. Name the various cases of nouns in modern English and give examples of each.

2. What is a direct object? What is an indirect object? What are their cases? Illustrate your answers.

3. Can the genitive case be used with all nouns? If not, point out the restrictions on its use, and name the alternative form.

4. Name the cases of the various nouns used in the following extract:

I looked around, I was at Harris's bed; a Sabbath day's journey from my own. There was only one sofa, it was against the wall; there was only one chair where a body could get at it—I had been revolving around it like a planet, and colliding with it like a comet half the night. —Mark Twain.

(*For* **University** *Students*)

1. When do you use *'s* and when merely (') as the genitive case-ending? Are there any hard and fast rules? What is the modern tendency?

2. What is meant by *inflexion*? Is Modern English a highly-inflected language? How did the change from Old to Modern English take place?

3. What will you do when two or more nouns in the genitive case are in apposition?

4. Explain and exemplify various restrictions on the use of the genitive case-ending. What is the alternative form? Can both the alternatives co-exist in one phrase? If so, with what meaning?

5. Name the cases of the various nouns used in the following extracts:

(*a*) James's *Will to Believe* dates from 1897; his *Pragmatism* from 1907. Schiller's *Humanism* and Dewey's *Studies in Logical Theory* both date from 1903. Throughout the early years of the twentieth century the philosophical world was excited about pragmatism; then Bergson outbid it in appealing to the same tastes. —Bertrand Russell.

(*b*) **Cleopatra.** (*revolted*) Silence. Charmian: Do not you be a silly little Egyptian fool. Do you know why I allow you all to chatter impertinently just as you please, instead of treating you as Ftatateeta would treat you if she were Queen?

Charmian. Because you try to imitate Caesar in everything; and he lets everybody say what they please to him. —Shaw: *Caesar add Cleopatra.*

(*c*) Drive my dead thoughts over the universe
Like withered leaves to quicken a new birth!
And by the incantations of this verse,
Scatter as from an unextinguished hearth
Ashes and sparks, my words among mankind!
Be through my lips to unawakened earth
The trumpet of a prophecy! O Wind,
If Winter comes, can Spring be far behind?

—Shelley: *Ode to the West Wind.*

CHAPTER VII

GENDERS OF NOUNS

1. **Gender** (from Latin *genus* or *generis*, through French *genre*, meaning a kind) is a distinction of words roughly corresponding to **sex**. English is a very scientific language in respect of the genders of its nouns which follow the order of nature. But it is different with Urdu and French where every object is of necessity regarded as masculine or feminine. In German, among the modern languages, as in Greek and Latin among the classical, the confusion is made worse confounded by assigning to many words grammatical genders without regard to the sex of the object they denote. In English, however, gender is determined by sex. Only words for living objects can be **masculine** or **feminine**. The names of things without life are in the neuter gender.

2. There are **four genders** of English nouns :

(*i*) **Masculine** ;
(*ii*) **Feminine** ;
(*iii*) **Common** ;
(*iv*) **Neuter**.

Nouns which denote *males* (persons as well as animals) are of the **masculine gender**, as *man, boy, cock, horse*.

Nouns which denote *females* (persons as well as animals) are of the **feminine** gender ; as *woman, girl, hen, mare*.

Nouns which denote persons of **either** sex are of the **common** gender ; as *baby, servant pupil, bird, deer, friend, parent, child, cousin, relation, relative, monarch, person, neighbour*.

Nouns denoting *inanimate objects* (*i.e.*, things) which can be neither male nor female are of the **neuter** gender ; as *paper, pen, table, room, rock, air*.

3. In speaking of young children, lower animals or other living objects whose sex is unknown we employ the **neuter pronouns** ; as

It is a bonny baby.
It is a chubby child.

The naughty boy aimed a brickbat at the dog which made *it* yelp and run away to safety.

4. When speaking of men or women in general without regard to sex, we generally employ the masculine noun or pronoun ; as

Man is mortal.

The *poets* of the age are all obscure.

5. In figurative language, gender is sometimes attributed to abstract nouns and names of lifeless objects which have no sex ; as

> *Earth*, with *her* thousand voices, praises *God*. —Coleridge

> Child of the sun, refulgent *summer* comes :
> *He* comes attended by the sultry hours,
> And ever-fanning breezes, on *his* way ;
> While from *his* ardent looks, the turning *spring*.
> Averts *her* blushful face. —Thomson

In the first extract quoted above, *Earth* is treated as feminine, and in the second extract **summer** becomes masculine while **spring** is feminine. What rule, you may ask, is observed in assigning a gender to a word representing a sexless object ? Well, the answer is there are no cut and dried rules in this respect, save a vague distinction and some long-established conventions. The distinction is this. Words representing objects characterized by manly qualities of strength, temerity, superiority and greatness are personified as masculine. Words standing for objects characterized by feminine qualities of delicacy, beauty, grace and fertility are personified as feminine. In addition, the names of countries, cities and ships are also treated as feminine. Here are a few personifications :

Masculine : Sun, Day, Summer, Winter, Thunder, Wind, Ocean, Death, War.

Feminine : Moon, Earth, Country, City, Ship, Railway train, University, Truth, Justice, Liberty, Peace, Fame, Mercy, Charity, Humanity, Hope, Pride, Flattery, Jealousy.

6. Certain nouns of the masculine or feminine gender are normally used in a general sense to denote either sex ; as

> Go to the *ant*, thou sluggard ; consider *her* ways and be wise : which having no guide, overseer, or ruler, provideth *her* meat in the summer, and gathereth *her* food in the harvest.
>
> —Proverbs 6 : 6-8.

> And with thee will I break in pieces the *horse* and *his* rider ; and with thee will I break in pieces the chariot and his rider.
>
> —Jeremiah 51 : 21.

From among such nouns, *horse* (masculine), *dog* (masculine), *bee* (feminine), duck (feminine), *goose* (feminine) are used to denote either sex, unless the occasion specially calls for a clarification as to which sex of the species is actually meant. That is why we seldom hear of a *mare* (female of horse), *bitch* (female of dog), *drone* (male of bee), *drake* (male of duck) and *gander* (male of goose).

7. Certain feminine nouns have no corresponding masculine form. Some of them are :

Amazon, brunette, dowager, prude, shrew siren, virago.

8. Distinction between a masculine and the corresponding feminine gender is made in one of the following **three** ways :

(*a*) **By the use of different words** ; as *boy* and *girl*, *cock* and *hen*.

(*b*) **By prefixing or affixing another word** ; as *he-goat* and *she-goat*.

(*c*) **By a difference of termination** (adding **ess** to the masculine form to change it into the feminine) ; as *lion* and lioness.

The termination **ess** is affixed to the masculine form

(*i*) Either, without changing it, as *shepherd* and *shepherdess* ;

(*ii*) Or, by omitting the last vowel of the masculine form as *prince* and *princess*, *negro* and *negress*, *tiger* and *tigress* ;

(*iii*) Or, in an irregular, inexplicable way which cannot be reduced to any definite rules ; as *lad* and *lass*, *duke* and *duchess*. Detailed lists follow under each of these heads :

(*a*) Use of Different Words

Masculine	*Feminine*	*Masculine*	*Feminine*
Bachelor	Maid	King	Queen
Boar	Sow	Lad	Lass
Boy	Girl	Landlord	Landlady
Brother	Sister	Lord	Lady
Buck	Doe	Male	Female
Bull (سانڈ)	Cow	Man	Woman
Bullock (بیل) or Steer	Heifer	Milter (مچھیا - نرماهی)	Spawner
Cock	Hen	Nephew pronounced *nev*-you	Niece
Colt	Foal, filly	Pappa	Mamma
Dog	Bitch	Ram	Ewe
Drake	Duck	Sir	Madam (used with English names ; for foreigners *Madame* is used)
Earl	Countess	Sloven (بے سلیقہ)	Slut (پھوہڑ)
Father	Mother	Son	Daughter
Friar, *or* Monk	Nun		
Gaffer (بابا)	Gammer (مائی)		
Gander	Goose		
Gentleman	Lady		
Hart	Doe		
Horse, *or* Stallion	Mare		
Husband			

Masculine	*Feminine*
Stag	Hind
Uncle	Aunt
Wizard	Witch

(*b*) Adition of New Word

Billy-goat	Nanny-goat, *or* Nanny
Buck-rabbit	Doe-rabbit
Bull-calf	Cow-calf
Cock-sparrow	Hen-sparrow
He-goat	She-goat
Male-child	Female-child
Man-servant	Maid-servant
Peacock	Peahen
Turkey-cock	Turkey-hen
Washerman	Washerwoman

(*c*) Addition of 'ess'

(i) Without further change

Author	Authoress
Baron	Baroness
Count	Countess
Dauphin	Dauphiness
Deacon	Deaconess
Giant	Giantess
Heir (pronounced *air*)	Heiress
Host	Hostess
Jew	Jewess
Lion	Lioness
Manager	Manageress
Mayor	Mayoress
Patron	Patroness
Peer	Peeress
Poet	Poetess
Prior	Prioress
Prophet	Prophetess
Priest	Priestess
Shepherd	Shepherdess
Tailor	Tailoress

Masculine	*Feminine*
Tutor	Tutoress
Viscount	Viscountess

(ii) Without the final vowel

Actor	Actress
Ambassador	Ambassadress
Arbiter	Arbitress
Benefactor	Benefactress
Chanter	Chantress
Conductor	Conductress
Director	Directress, *or* Directrix
Elector	Electress
Enchanter	Enchantress
Hunter	Huntress
Inspector	Inspectress
Instructor	Instructress
Negro	Negress
Preceptor	Preceptress
Prince	Prin ess
Protector	Protectress
Seamster	Seamstress
Songster	Songstress
Tempter	Temptress
Tiger	Tigress
Traitor	Traitoress
Votary	Votaress
Waiter	Waitress

(iii) Irregularly with 'ess'

Abbot	Abbess
Adulterer	Adulteress
Caterer	Cateress
Duke	Duchess
Emperor	Empress
God	Goddess
Governor	Governess
Marquis	Mrc hioness
Master	Miss

Masculine	*Feminine*
Master	Mistress (Mrs.)
Murderer	Murderess
Sorcerer	Sorceress

(*d*) *Exceptions*

Bridegroom	Bride
Fox	Vixen
Widower	Widow

(*e*) *Foreign Feminines*

There are certain foreign words making their feminines according to the rules of their parent languages :

Administrator	Administratrix
Beau (چھبیلا)	Belle (چھبیلی)
Czar	Czarina

Masculine	*Feminine*
Don	Donna
Executor (pronounced Eg-*zec*-tar)	Executrix
Heritor	Heritrix
Hero	Heroine
Monsier (pronounced Moos-*yer*)	Madame
Prosecutor	Prosecutrix
Signor pronounced *Sen*-yor)	Signora *or* Signorina
Sultan	Sultana *or* Sultaness
Testator	Testatrix
Viceroy	Vicereine

EXERCISES

(*For* **Board** *Students*)

1. How do we denote the gender of English nouns ? State the rules and exemplify.

2. What genders are the following nouns : Nanny, Gammer, Vixen, Widow, Dowager.

3. Give the masculine genders of the following : Belle, Madam, Madame, Cow, Miss, Mistress, Lass.

(*For* **University** *Students*)

1. Give five feminine nouns which have no corresponding masculine forms.

2. What is the method usually adopted when a reference is intended to both the sexes of a species at the same time ?

3. What is meant by the word *personification* ? How are the genders assigned when this figure of speech is used ?

CHAPTER VIII

NUMBER OF NOUNS

Different forms of nouns are used to express one or more of the things they denote. These forms are known as its **number**. When a noun signifies one thing, it is said to be **singular** ; when it signifies more than one, it is said to be **plural**. For example, the word *chair* denotes one object of a particular type used for sitting a little above the ground ; the word *chairs* denotes more than one object of the type.

Properly speaking, only *Common* and *Collective nouns* can be put into the plural. *Proper*, *Material* and *Abstract* nouns are used only in the singular, and cannot be put into the plural unless they are used as *common* nouns. Of these, we will speak later.

Here are some of the ways of converting singular into plural nouns :

(*a*) *Generally*, an **s** *is added to the singular noun*. This is called the **regular** formation.

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Cat	Cats	Horse	Horses
Cow	Cows	House	Houses
Curio	Curios	Pin	Pins
Dog	Dogs	Tractor	Tractors

(*b*) *If, however, the singular noun ends in* **ch** (soft), **sh**, **s**, **ss** or **x** *the plural is formed by adding* **es** *to it* :

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Ash	Ashes	Glass	Glasses
Gas	Gases	Box	Boxes
		Church	Churches

(*c*) *When a noun ends in* **y preceded by a consonant**, *the plural is formed by changing* **y** *into* **ies**, as *army* (*armies*), *lady* (ladies), *spy* (spies).

*The plurals of proper nouns ending in **y** do not change the **y** into **ies**, as *Lucy* (Lucys), *Mary* (Marys).

* *If a noun ends in* **y preceded by a vowel** (*i.e.*, ends in ay, ey, oy or uy) *the plural is formed by adding* **s** *only*, as *day* (days), *key* (keys), *monkey* (monkeys), *guy* (guys).

If, however, a noun ends in* **quy, the form **ies** *is used for the plural*, **qu** being regarded as a double consonant equivalent in sound to *kw*, as *soliloquy* (soliloquies), *colloquy* (colloquies).

(*d*) *If a noun ends in* **f** *or* **fe**, *the plural is generally formed by changing* **f** or **fe** into **v** and adding **es**, as *life* (lives), *wife* (wives), *beef* (beeves).

*The following nouns ending in **fe** add **s** only :
Fife (fifes), *safe* (safes).

*The following nouns ending in **f**, take only **s** in the plural :

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Chief	Chiefs	Reef	Reefs
Dwarf	Dwarfs	Roof	Roofs
Gulf	Gulfs	Scarf	Scarfs
Grief	Griefs	Strife	Strifes
Handkerchief	Handkerchiefs	Surf	Surfs
Proof	Proofs	Turf	Turfs

*The following nouns ending in **fe** form their plural both ways, as *hoof* (hoofs or hooves), *wharf* (wharfs or wharves).

☞ Nouns ending in **ff** form their plurals regularly, *i.e.*, simply by the addition of an **s**, as *cliff* (cliffs), *muff* (muffs), *stuff* (stuffs). The noun *staff* forms its plural regularly, both when used singly in a compound word, as staff (staffs), *flagstaff* (flagstaffs). But as a technical term of music, its plural is staves.

(*e*) Nouns ending in **o** are very troublesome. Some of them form their plurals with an **s**, others with an **es**. The general rule appears to be that *while fully anglicized nouns take* **es** *in the plural, those still felt as foreign take only* **s**. But though infallible as a rule, it is no practical guide. The following points may, therefore, be noted :

(*i*) Nouns terminating in **eo, io, oo, yo** form their plurals in **s** (and not *es*), as *cameo* (cameos), *portfolio* (portfolios), *cuckoo* (cuckoos), *embryo* (embryos).

(*ii*) **Monosyllables ending in o** form their plural in **oes** ; *go* (goes), as :

Have a *go* at it.
He had several *goes* at it.

(*iii*) Contracted words ending in **o** whose plurals are in common use add **es**, as *dynamo* (dynamos), *photo* (photos).

(*iv*) Nouns ending in **o preceded by a consonant other than y** add **es** :

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Banjo	Banjoes	Cargo	Cargoes
Buffaloe	Buffaloes	Domino	Dominoes
Calico	Calicoes	Echo	Echoes

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Embargo	Embargoes	Negro	Negroes
Fresco	Frescoes	Portico	Porticoes
Grotto	Grottoes	Potato	Potatoes
Halo	Haloes	Salvo	Salvoes
Hero	Heroes	Tomato	Tomatoes
Innuendo	Innuendoes	Tornado	Tornadoes
Mango	Mangoes	Torpedo	Torpedoes
Mosquito	Mosquitoes	Volcano	Volcanoes
Motto	Mottoes		

The following are the notable exceptions to this rule. They take **s** (and not **es**) in the plural :

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Albino	Albinos	Magnifico	Magnificos
Alto	Altos	Manifesto	Manifestos
Archipelogo	Archipelogos	Memento	Mementos
Arpeggio	Arpeggios	Octavo	Octavos
Bravo	bravos (*i.e.* hired assassins) ; but bravoes (shouts of bravo from the crowd)	Oratario Piano Piccolo Proviso Punctilio Quarto	Oratarios Pianos Piccolos Provisos Punctilios Quartos
Canto	Cantos	Solo	Solos
Cento	Centos	Soprano	Sopranos
Chromo	Chromos	Tobacco	Tobaccos
Crescendo	Crescendos	Torso	Torsos
Electro	Electros	Tyro	Tyros
Fiasco	Fiascos	Zero	Zeros
Impresario	Impresarios		

☞ Words like *manifesto* and *memento* tend to take the *es* plural as they discard the foreign note gradually, as the words *calico*, *mosquito*, *portico*, once forming their plurals regularly (*i.e.*, with *s* alone), are now definitely taking *es* in the plural.

(*f*) Certain old plural forms are retained :

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Man	Men	Goose	Geese
Woman	Women	Mouse	Mice
Child	Children	Ox	Oxen
Foot	Feet	Cow	Kine (same as cows)
Tooth	Teeth		

Certain nouns form double plurals, each with a different sense :

Singular	*Plural*	*Meaning*
Brother	1. Brothers	Sons of the same parents
	2. Brethren	Persons of the same society or profession
Stamen	1. Stamens	Male organ in a flower
	2. Stamina	Reserve of vital force in a person.
Die	1. Dies	Stamps for coining
	2. Dice	Small cubes for gambling
Genius	1. Geniuses	Men of genius
	2. Genii	Aerial spirits
Penny	1. Pennies	Distinct pieces of penny coins
	2. Pence	Plural of penny used in computation.
Cherub	1. Cherubim	Angels of a certain order
	2. Cherubs	Images of cherubs
Index	1. Indexes	Alphabetical references to books
	2. Indices	Exponents in Algebra
Appendix	1. Appendices	Something added
	2. Appendixes	Parts of the body

(*g*) Here is a list of words which retain their foreign plurals :

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Addendum	Addenda	Criterion	Criteria
Agendum	Agenda	Datum	Data
Alumnus	Alumni	Desideratum	Desiderata
Amanuensis	Amenuenses	Dictum	Dicta
Analysis	Analyses	Ellipsis	Ellipses
Antithesis	Antitheses	Erratum	Errata
Arcanum	Arcana	Genus	Genera
Axis	Axes	Hypothesis	Hypotheses
Basis	Bases	Ignis fatuus	Ignes fatui
Beau	Beaux	Larva	Larvae
Corrigendum	Corrigenda	Memorandum	Memoranda
Crisis	Crises	Metamorphosis	Metamorphoses

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Miasma	Miasmata	Stimulus	Stimulii
Nebula	Nebulae	Stratum	Strata
Oasis	Oases	Synopsis	Synopses
Ovum	Ova	Terminus	Terminii
Parenthesis	Parentheses	Thesis	Theses
Phenomenon	Phenomena	Ultimatum	Ultimata
Radius	Radii	Vortex	Vortices

* Foreign words which have been quite well Anglicized by now, form their plurals in the regular English way, except in technical or pedantic writings where the original plural form is occasionally preferred.

Singular	*Original plural*	*Regular modern plural*
Apparatus	Apparatus	Apparatuses
Automaton	Automata	Automatons
Bandit	Banditti	Bandits
Diploma	Diplomata	Diplomas
Dogma	Dogmata	Dogmas
Focus	Foci	Focuses
Formula	Formulae	Formulas
Fungus	Fungi	Funguses

(*f*) Certain nouns have identical forms in the singular and the plural numbers, as *census*, *series*, *congeries*, *status*, *species*, *means*, *odds*, *bellows*, *deer*, *sheep*, *swine*, *fish*, *salmon*, *trout*, *yoke*, *grouse*, *heathen*.

(*g*) There are certain nouns which, though singular in form, are used only in the plural sense, like *cattle*, *poultry*, *vermin*, *gentry*. The word *people* is one of such words when it means human beings.

(*h*) Certain nouns have two meanings in the singular, but only one in the plural, as *light* (1. illumination, 2. lamp), *lights* (lamps) ; *people* (1. human beings, 2. nation), *peoples* (nations).

(*i*) Conversely, certain nouns with only one meaning in the singular have two meanings in the plural, as *colour* (hue) *colours* (1. hues, 2. flags), *part* (portion) parts (1. portions, 2. abilities).

(*j*) Certain nouns like *news*, *means*, *innings*, are used only in the singular.

(*k*) The following nouns, on the other hand, are used in the plural :

Annals, archives, ashes, assets, auspices, billiards, bitters, bowels, breeches, clothes, calends, drawers, dregs, embers, entrails, goods, hysterics, ides, lees, letters (meaning *literature*), lungs, manners, morals, nones, orgies, pincers, riches, scissors,

shears, shambles, spectacles, tidings, tongs, thanks, vespers, vitals, victuals.

☞ The names of various arts and sciences end in **ics**. In the case of such words, the names of sciences like *physics*, *statics*, *phonetics*, *ethics*, *semantics* are used as singular; but the name of arts ending in **ics**, like *gynastics*, are treated as plural. We say, 'phonetics is the science which treats of the pronunciation of words'; but, 'gymnastics are good for body-building.'

There are nouns which undergo a radical change of meaning when their number is changed. *Force*, for instance, signifies strength, but *forces* means army. Similarly *advice* means counsel, but *advices* signifies information; *good* as a noun means benefit, but *goods* denotes movable property; *property* signifies that which is owned by one but *properties* means stage appurtenances. Of such nouns it would be proper to say that their singular and plural forms are words quite distinct from each other.

(*l*) Abstract Nouns, *i.e.*, denoting qualities do not admit of plurality. So *eloquence*, *industry*, *pride*, *virtue*, *wisdom*, etc., are used only in the singular. So are the Material Nouns, like *gold*, *silver*, etc. But when we want to express the kinds or varieties denoted by these Material Nouns, we may use them in the plural, as the *wines* of Burgundy.

(*m*) The plurals of letters of the alphabet, figures and signs are, like the nouns in the genitive case, denoted by **'s** (apostrophe *s*), as :—

Dot the *i's* and cross the *t's*.

Everything was at *6's* and *7's*.

He is dressed up to the *9's*.

The little boy was nonplussed with+*'s* and —*'s* in his arithmetic lessons.

(*n*) Words which have no usual plural, form their plurals on this pattern, as :

Why do you dither, Johnny ? These *if's* and *but's* will lead you nowhere.

Who, that has any taste, can endure the incessant, quick returns of *also's*, and the *likewise's*, and the *moreover's*, and the *however's* and the *notwithstanding's* ?" —Campbell.

(*o*) Compound nouns when written as one word form their plurals in the regular way, as *mousetrap* (mousetraps), *handful* (handfuls). But they are quite a problem when hyphenated. In that case the plural ending, **'s**, is added to the most important part of the compound, as *brother-in-law* (brothers-in-law), *step-son* (step-sons), *court-martial* (courts-martial), *passer-by* (passers-by), *knight-errant* (knights-errant), *aide-de-camp* (aides-de-camp).

(*p*) When it is necessary to put Proper Nouns into the plural number, **es** is added to them if they end in **ch**, **sh**, **s**, **ss**, **x**, or **z**; otherwise, only an **s** is added. Names ending in **y** do not change it into *ie* while adding **s**. Thus we have:

Smith (Smiths), *Jones* (Joneses), *Nimitz* (Nimitzes), *Bunch* (Bunches), *Nash* (Nashes), *Ross* (Rosses), *Fox* (Foxes), *George* (Georges), *William* (Williams), *Mary* (Marys).

The use of the titles, Mr., Mrs., Miss, Master, with the names should be noted carefully. The following table should prove helpful:

Singular	*Plural*	*Remarks*
1. Arnold	The Arnolds	It means Mr. Arnold and his family, or more than one person bearing the surname Arnold.
2. Mr. Arnold	1. The Mr. Arnolds	General form denoting more than one man bearing the surname Arnold.
	2. Messrs. Arnold	Form used in business correspondence.
3. Mrs. Arnold	The Mrs. Arnolds	More than one woman whose husband's name is Mr. Arnold.
4. Miss Arnold	1. The Miss Arnolds	The form in general use for the daughters of Mr. Arnold
	2. The Misses Arnold	Occasionally used form
5. Master Arnold	The Masters Arnold	The young sons of Mr. Arnold

(*q*) The use of nouns along with numerals is to be specially noted. We can say *six* **feet** *high* as well as *six* **foot** high. The rule is to use a singular noun when a hyphen connects it with the numeral, and plural when it stands disjointed. In telling of age, the word *old* is also hyphenated and we speak of a *seven-year-old boy*.

(*r*) Used after numerals, the following nouns always stand in the singular:

Stone, ***hundredweight*** (*cwt.*), ***hundred***, ***thousand***, *dozen*, *score*, ***gross***.

Examples are :

He weighs eight *stone*.

I have got a few *hundred* rupees.

He bought four *dozen* eggs.

(*s*) When used of animals, the words *brace*, *head* and *yoke* are always in the singular, as two *brace* of pheasants, twenty *head* of cattle, a large *head* (number) of game, and thirty *yoke* of oxen.

EXERCISES

(*For* **Board** *Students*)

1. Explain and illustrate the various methods of forming plurals of English nouns.

2. What, if any, are the singular forms of the following :
News, Alms, Statics, Terminii, Agenda.

3. Give the plurals of the following nouns :
Embargo, Hero, Photo, Bravo, Manifesto.

(*For* **University** *Students*)

1. Do the following classes of nouns admit of plurality :
(*a*) Abstract Nouns ; (*b*) Material Nouns ?
If so, with what meaning ?

2. What do the following denote :
The Brownings, the Mr. Brownings, Messrs. Browning, the Mrs. Brownings, the Miss Brownings, the Misses Browning, the Master Brownings.

3. How will you form the plurals of the following :
(*a*) Letters of the alphabet ; (*b*) mathematical figures and signs ; (*b*) other parts of speech used as nouns.
Exemplify.

CHAPTER IX

MISTAKES IN THE USE OF NOUNS

1. **Wrong words**. Mistakes made by Pakistani students in the use of nouns arise out of many causes. In the first place, it is more than likely that the noun has been used with a wrong meaning. Consider the following incorrect sentences. The wrong word is printed in the sentence, in italics, and the correct word has been given in parenthesis at the end of the sentence.. In certain cases a justification of the correction is given below the sentence.

(1) Children generally go about in *half-pants*, (shorts). Shorts is the correct word.

(2) When I grow up, I shall wear *pants*, (trousers or slacks). Pants means an underclothing for the lower part of the body.

(3) He laughed to see the *joker's* antics at the circus, (clown's). Joker is not the correct word.

(4) She took *insult* at his words, (offence). Took offence (and not took insult) is the correct idiom.

(5) The corporal's wife is a tall *lady*, (woman). Lady is a woman of noble birth and high social status. The word woman is quite a polite term for the common run among them.

(6) *Female* education is becoming quite the vogue here, (Women's). Education itself cannot be male or female.

(7) Please put your *sign* on the document, (signature). Sign is a verb and not a noun.

(8) We saw a thrilling *play* of hockey, (game or match).

(9) We had gone *to see the cinema*, (the picture). To see the cinema, if it means anything at all, is just to have a look at the picture-house from the outside.

(10) The *front side* of the building is very imposing, but it is quite the opposite at the *back side* (front, back). One speaks of the front of a building and its back, and not of its front side and back side. Moreover, *backside* means only the bum or the buttocks.

(11) There is no *place* in this omnibus, (room).

(12) Is he your *cousin brother* ? (cousin).

(13) I have an important *business* with you, (piece of business).

(14) He purchased a *ground* in Gulbarg, (piece of ground or building site).

(15) He had a great *number of money* and a large *amount of books*. (amount of money, number of books).

(16) Right from her college days she was fond of *taking part in drama*. (acting).

(17) I took down his address in my *copy*, (notebook).

(18) A new *poetry* has been prescribed for both the Higher Secondary and the Degree examinations in English (anthology, collection of poetry, or book of verse).

(19) I am learning by heart a new *poetry*, (poem).

(20) I *passed the noon* in my study, (spent the middle of the day). Noon is exact 12 o'clock in the day and not the period round about it.

2. **Misuse of the Genitive**. Though the apostrophe form is not generally used after nouns denoting inanimate objects, it is quite idiomatic to use it with certain expressions denoting *time*, *distance* or *weight*. Thus we may quite correctly say that even an *hour's talk* failed to convince me that one had to walk a *mile's distance* to buy a *pound's weight* of fish, but the apostrophe in the following sentences would still be wrongly used :

(1) He left on *Sunday's* night. (Sunday).

(2) I shall go by the 7 *o'clock's* train. (7 o'*clock*).

(3) He was in a *holiday's* mood. (holiday).

(4) The *winter's* session begins after the end of the *summer's* vacation. (winter, summer).

3. By far the larger number of mistakes in the use of nouns are the result of the wrong use of number. Sometimes the singular is used for the plural, as in the following :

(1) The magistrate passed *an order* for his release, (orders).

(2) You must take the *consequence*, (consequences).

(3) He took no *pain* over the work. (pains).

(4) My *circumstance does not* allow me to incur so much expenditure. (circumstances do not).

(5) The company's *finance is* sound, (finances are). The singular form is used to denote the science of money.

(6) I came to know of it through one of my *friend*, (friends).

You must be on your guard never to use the singular verb with any of the following nouns, besides those mentioned above.

Arms, ashes, bellows, bowels, breeches, chattels, contents, drawers, dregs, embers, fetters, goods, lodgings, measles, riches, scissors, shears, surroundings, tactics, tidings, tongs, trousers, victuals, wages.

But the commoner form of this mistake is to put into the plural form what the English usage demands in the singular.

Never use the following in the plural :

Alphabet, behaviour, cattle, cavalry, clergy, corn, dirt, filth, food, fuel, furniture, infantry, information, issue (meaning offspring) *logic, machinery, mischief, music, needlework, perfumery, physic* (meaning medicine), *poetry, poultry, people* (meaning persons and not a nation), *scenery, woodwork.*

The names of all sciences ending in s like physics take the verb in the singular.

Study the following wrong sentences :

(1) He took wives but had *issues* from only one of them. (issue). Issue has no plural in the sense of progeny.

(2) All sorts of games were *forbidden fruits* to me. (forbidden fruit). There is no justification for changing the Biblical allusion.

(3) Our professor gave us *advices*. (advice). Advice means counsel ; advices means information.

(4) His suggestions were full of *meanings*. (meaning).

(5) He spoke in the same *strains*. (strain).

(6) The facts are delicious enough without *comments*. (comment).

(7) The song called forth loud *applauses*. (applause).

(8) A loud yell of (*execrations*) was set up. (execration).

(9) The country is not prepared to take him at his *words*.(word).

(10) That they should have come forth from their *seclusions* and recorded their sense of sorrow. (*seclusion*).

(11) To add fresh *fuels* to the fire of popular ill-feeling. (fuel)

(12) They will ignore both the protestations and the *bombasts*. (bombast)

(13) Don't utter *abuses*. (abuse). Abuses means malpractices.

(14) Only there should be more and more such examples with the progress of *times*. (time).

(15) Their number must dwindle with the lapse of *times*. (time).

(16) They run into *debts* with the full knowledge that they may claim the privilege of their position and escape payment. (*debt*).

(17) A bag of *silvers*. (silver).

(18) In Germany the State finances the universities, and prescribes in a general way the subjects of *instructions*. (instruction). Instruction in the abstract is meant, and so the singular should have been used. The use of the plural is confined to concrete directions or orders.

(19) The people of Bharat are now being led by persons with apparently very blurred and impracticable *visions*. (vision). Presumably *vision* in the sense of power of sight is meant, not *visions* in the sense of apparitions.

(20) Redeem it from the oft-repeated but ill-merited *odiums*. (odium). The noun 'odium' is not used in the plural.

(21) The chief feature of the conference was the keen and watchful *interests* of the public in its proceedings, (interest). The distinction between the *interest* which is never used in the plural and that which may be so used is rather fine ; interest in the sense of appreciative regard has no plural ; but interest in the sense of personal advantage or disadvantage has. Or we may say that a subjective interest is always spoken of in the singular, while objective interests may be plural.

(22) Prizes awarded for articles of exceptional *merits*, (merit). This is not positively wrong, but, unless there was special occasion to contemplate merit of different kinds, a native would write *merit*.

(23) The foreign elements are easily assimilated, and made *parts and parcels* of our beings, (part and parcel). The expression 'part and parcel' is never used in the plural : it is too individual to bear both its members receiving the plural affix, and yet not sufficiently like a single word to permit of the affix at the end only.

(24) They clothed their sermons in *garbs* suited to their taste, (garb). 'Garb' may possibly sometimes bear the plural form, but here the sense is too abstract to permit it.

(25) Are they not the *offsprings* of the immigrants from India ? (offspring).

(26) I conceive that chiefly the existing form of matrimony, and partly some political causes account for the increasing *numbers* of femal *offsprings* over males, (births, offspring). 'Offspring' is not used in the plural. 'Numbers' would be better in the singular as only one general number is here in contemplation. But 'offspring' having no plural, we should not speak of a *number* of offspring. 'Births' would do, or 'children born.'

(27) Receptacles are put up for the deposit of fruit *peels*. (peel). We may speak of the 'peels' of different kinds of fruit, but when there is no individuality in question we should use the word in the singular.

(28) We have to work against our poverty of *resources* in the presence of our unlimited resources, (resource). This word when used in the plural always means some concrete source of aid, such as pecuniary means. In the sense of mental capacity to find expedients it is used only in the singular. That the writer meant to use the word in the latter sense is shown by his reference to the 'unlimited resources.'

(29) Before finding *faults* with the preachers, (fault). In the established phrase 'to find fault with' the noun is used in the abstract and therefore in the singular. If certain specific faults are to be mentioned then the plural might be used, but the following preposition would be 'in' and not 'with.'

(30) The Nagar Grihasths have taken a step in advance as far as the question of foreign *travels* is concerned, (travel). We may speak of the *travels* of a particular person ; but in the text travel in the abstract is meant.

(31) Students should, therefore, if *needs* be, be taught politics as a science. (need). 'Need,' in this connection, should be used in the singular as an abstract noun. Perhaps the writer had in mind the expression 'needs must' ; but 'needs' is there an adverb, meaning necessarily, and not a noun.

(32) Are cases ever won by *counsels* who insult judges ? counsel. In this sense the plural form of 'counsel' is the same as the singular.

(33) Cobwebs and *soots*, (soot).

'Soot' has no plural. If not the substance soot itself, but particles of it, or marks made by it, be intended, the term 'smut' may be used in the plural.

(34) The area exported silk *threads*, etc., *grains* and cotton, (thread, grain). Individual threads are not here in contemplation, nor individual grains.

(35) This mock revel will not cost you a *pence*, (penny). 'Pence' is plural, and we cannot say 'a pence.' Observe the word 'penny' has two plurals : pennies, which means a number of individual penny coins, and 'pence,' which means an amount of pennies in value. Thus 'eighteen pennies' means eighteen of the bronze coins called pennies ; eighteen pence means a sum of one shilling and a half.

(36) *Cities after cities* surrendered without any show of resistance, (city after city).

(37) The decline of the number of students is alarming, and *schools after schools are* being closed every month. (school after school is)

(38) Buddhism began to achieve *victories after victories* over its great rivals, (victory after victory). The use of the singular sufficiently expresses the succession of objects or events, and the use of the plural has the effect of putting the objects or events into groups, which is meaningless.

(39) A type of *men* rare in these days, (man).

CHAPTER X
PRONOUNS

1. Kinds of Pronouns. In an earlier chapter we have learnt the importance of pronouns. They are the words that come in handy when a repetition of nouns or their equivalents begins to bore us. Naturally they are governed by the same rules of *number*, *gender* and *person* as govern the nouns.

Pronouns fall into the following categories :

(*i*) **Personal pronouns**.
(*ii*) **Reflexive pronouns**.
(*iii*) **Demonstrative pronouns**.
(*iv*) **Interrogative pronouns**.
(*v*) **Relative pronouns**.
(*vi*) **Indefinite pronouns**.
(*vii*) **Distributive pronouns**.

Here is a detailed discusssion of each category.

2. Personal pronouns are those which stand for the three grammatical 'persons' *viz*., the First Person, the Second Person and the Third Person. Each of these 'persons' can be nominative, accusative or genitive in its case. It can further be singular or plural in the number as will be evident from the following table :

Person	Case	Number			
		Singular			Plural
First	Nominative	I			We
	Accusative	Me			Us
	Genitive	My, Mine			Our, Ours
Second	Nominative	~~Thou~~, You			You
	Accusative	~~Thee, You~~			You
	Genitive	~~Thy, Thine~~, Your, Yours			Your, Yours
		Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	
Third	Nominative	He	She	It	They
	Accusative	Him	Her	It	Them
	Genitive	His	Her, Hers	Its	Their, Theirs

He She

Pronouns used in the genitive case are called Possessive pronouns. They have got two parallel forms, *my* and *mine*, *our* and *ours*, etc. The difference is that the second form is never used except as a possessive pronoun, whereas the first form may be used even as a possessive adjective.

(1) This house is *mine*.

(2) *My* house and *his* are both newly-built.

(3) This house of his has a very good design.

In these sentences, the italicized words are all used as possessive pronouns. They can be recognized as such by having been used without a noun following them (as in sentences 1 and 2) or by the word *of* preceding them (as in sentence 3). But when they precede a noun (like the first word in sentence 2), they are termed **possessive adjectives**, because there they qualify and not represent a noun.

*When two or more personal pronouns are used together, they are usually placed in the following order :

Second person, Third person, First person. Thus we say :

You, *he* and *I* will stand together.

The usual order is reversed when admitting a fault, as in.

All the three of us, *I*, *he* and *you*, deserted our leader.

In the plural, however, **we** comes before **you**, and **you** comes before **they**.

☞ When a pronoun refers to other pronouns of more than one person, it will agree with that in the First person rather than that in the Second, and with that in the Second rather than that in the Third :

He, *you*, and *I* did our duty.

He, and you must do **your** duty.

You and *I* should not shirk **our** duty.

He and *I* never failed to do **our** duty.

* When two or more pronouns are joined by a conjunction and the first of them is governed by a preposition the remaining pronouns will also be governed by that preposition :

He has sent 'Id greetings to *him* and *me*.

☞ Sometimes a comparison is made between two pronouns with the words *than* or *as*, like

He is better than I.

He is as good as I.

In such instances the latter pronouns are in the **same case** as the first. Negligence of this rule often gives rise to silly mistakes. Study the following sentences carefully :

(i) **She** cursed *him* more than **I**. (It means that she cursed

him more than I *did*. **I** is in the *nominative* case because it is the *subject* of the verb *cursed* and stands on a level with **she**).

(*ii*) *She* cursed **him** more than **me**. (It means that she cursed him more than she cursed me. The pronoun **me** is in the *accusative* case because it is the *object* to the verb *cursed* and stands on a level with **him**.)

3. **Reflexive pronouns** are in fact just a subdivision of personal pronouns. They are formed by adding the termination self (or *selves* in the plural) to personal pronouns. They are :

Singular. *Myself*, *Thyself*, *Yourself*, *Himself*, *Herself*, *Itself*.

Plural. *Ourselves*, *Yourselves*, *Themselves*.

Such pronouns indicate that the action of the subject reflects on the subject itself. But they cannot be used unless preceded by the relevant noun or personal pronoun. Thus the sentence, "Herself was a liar" would be meaningless unless written as "Mary herself was a liar." or "She herself was a liar."

4. **Demonstrative pronouns** are use to point to some noun preceding them and are used instead of that noun. They are :

This, These, That, Those, Such, Same.

When used as qualifying words, and not as substitutes for other nouns, they are termed **demonstrative adjectives**.

(*i*) *That* is a good boy

(*ii*) *That* boy is good.

That is used as a demonstrative pronoun in the first sentence, and as a demonstrative adjective in the second.

5. **Interrogative pronouns** are the ones used for asking questions. They are :

Who, *Whom*, *Whose*, *Which*, *What*.

The first three are used of *persons*, and are *indefinite* :

Who came here in the morning ?

Whom did you rusticate ?

Whose book is this ?

What is used only of *things*, and is *indefinite* :

What do you want now ?

What are you doing here ?

Which may be used either of *persons* or *things*. If implies a *selection* and is applied to one or more of a known number :

(1) *Which* is your book ?

(2) *Which* book is yours ?

(3) *Which* of these books is yours ?

(4) *Which* of them is your classmate ?

In sentence 4, *which* is used of persons, and in sentences 1 to 3 it is used of things ; but in all cases it implies selection.

To fix up in the mind the shades of meaning expressed by **who, which** and **what**, study the following sentences :

(1) *Who* is Jones ?

(2) *Which* is Jones ?

(3) *What* is Jones ?

The *first* sentence inquires about the person called Jones ; the *second* about that particular person while he is included in a group ; the *third* about his social status, using *what* because the inquiry here is not about the person called Jones, but about the *things* which go by the name of social status.

6. **Relative pronouns** are those which serve to join clauses, in addition to being substitutes for other nouns. All the interrogative pronouns and the pronouns *as* and *that* are used as relative pronouns. Here are examples :

Interrogative pronoun	*Relative pronoun*
(*i*) *Who* is coming ?	(*i*) I know the boy *who* is coming.
(*ii*) *Whom* did you see there ?	(*ii*) I know the person *whom* you saw there.
(*iii*) *Whose* is this book ?	(*iii*) I know the person *whose* the book is.
(*iv*) *What* do you mean ?	(*iv*) I know quite well *what* you mean.

As a relative pronoun, *that* is used as a variant for *who, which* or *whom* ; it is never used as a varient for *whose*. In this capacity it cannot follow a preposition (although as a demonstrative pronoun it can) We can correctly say :

We have all heard of *that*, (demonstrative pronoun).

But

It is a thing of *that* we have all heard (relative pronoun) is wrong. We can correct it by using either of the following two forms:

(*i*) It is a thing *that* we have all heard of.

(*ii*) It is a thing of *which* we have all heard.

Sentence (*i*) is quite good conversational English, although pedantry frowns upon a sentence ending in a preposition. It is preferable to sentence (*ii*) because the use of the phrase *of which* is somewhat stilted.

7. **That** is used to mean *namely the one who*. Hence it has a restrictive force as compared with *who* or *which*. Thus we say :

(*i*) I wrote a letter to my father *who* lives at Karachi.

(*ii*) I wrote a letter to my brother *that* lives at 'Pindi.

In sentence (*i*) *who* is not used to restrict the sense, because there can be only one father. It is just a piece of information which we may even drop without changing the sense of the sentence. But *that* in sentence (*ii*) restricts the sense, because I may

have more than one brother, and am correctly referring here to the one who lives at 'Pindi. This important qualification cannot be dropped except at the cost of ambiguity.

That is preferable to *who* or *which* after adjectives used in the superlative degree, as

It is the best book you can ever hope to read.

After the interrogotive pronouns *who* or *what*, the relative pronoun *that* is preferable to *who* or *which*, as in

(i) Who are you *that* you should question me like that ?

(ii) What is it *that* worries you so much ?

When a relative pronoun refers to two antecedents, one of which denotes a person and the other a thing, *that* is used instead of *who*, etc., as :

Both the jockey and the horse that met the accident succumbed to the injuries.

That is also used along with *any*, *only*, *all*, as :

He had the choice to attempt *any* question *that* he liked.

He is the *only* person *that* volunteered to go.

All the women *that* were present at the meeting voted for the resolution.

*Please bear in mind that the relative pronouns *whom*, *of*, *whom*, and *of which* are disappearing from spoken English. They continue to be used in literary English but make the style stilted and smack of pedantry. Below are given examples with current alternatives :

(i) (**whom**). The man *whom* you saw just now is a friend of mine.

(**current alternative**). The man you saw just now is a friend of mine.

(ii) (**of whom**). The man *of whom*). I was speaking is a friend of mine.

(**current alternative**. The man I was speaking of is a friend of mine.

(iii) (**of which**). The matter *of which* I was talking is very important.

(**current alternative**). The matter I was talking of is very important.

(conversational form). The matter *which* I was talking of is very important.

8. Another relative pronoun is *as*. It is used along with *such*, *as*, and *the same*. Here are examples :

(i) Never before in living memory was such a huge crowd as that witnessed there.

(*ii*) *As* many men **as** ventured forth were arrested.

(*iii*) It is not *the same* dress **as** she wore yesterday.

9. Sometimes the word **but** is also used as a relative pronoun. In such cases it is used after a negative, and is equivalent to *who* (or *which*) *does not*, as in

There is no young man these days *but* shuns hard work and longs for an easy life.

10. **Omission of the relative pronouns**. A relative pronoun used in a restrictive sense is often omitted when it is the object of a verb or of a preposition.

The woman (*whom*) you saw there is an M.L.A.

The book (*which*) I have given you is very interesting.

It all happened in the year (*in which*) I passed the degree examination.

11. **Relative pronoun and its antecedent**. The word *antecedent* means that which comes before something else. In grammar, the term denotes a noun preceding a relative pronoun. What we are to remember is that the relative pronoun should be kept as near to its antecedent as possible. Failure to do so often results in a change of sense. Note the following two sentences in which the antecedents have been italicized :

(*i*) This boy, who got though the examination, is a friend of my younger brother.

(*ii*) This *boy* is the friend of my younger *brother* who got through the examination.

In the first case, the person who got through the examination is *this boy* ; in the second it is *my younger brother*. Now which is the one that expresses your meaning ? This difference should serve to bring home to you the need to place the relative pronoun close to its antecedent.

12. As a corollary to this, it should be borne in mind that the relative pronoun demands the *verb in the same number and person* as its antecedent. However, the agreement in case is not necessary. Note the following sentences carefully :

(*i*) He, who *is* a hard-working student, *is* sure to pass.

(*ii*) They, who *are* hard-working students, *are* sure to pass.

(*iii*) This is *one of the most formidable weapons* of war **that** *have* so far been invented. (The verb agrees with *weapons*, and not with *one*.)

(*iv*) He is *one of the students* **who** *were* rusticated. (The verb agrees with *students* and not with *one*).

☞ In either of the sentences (*iii*) and (*iv*), it would be wrong to make the verb agree with word *one*, since the relative clause (*i.e.*, the clause beginning with *that who*, etc.) tells us something about the preceding word (*weapons*, *students*), and not about the

whole of the preceding phrase (*one of the most formidable weapons of war, one of the students*). Mistakes resulting from agreement with the wrong word are quite frequently made by the students.

As for non-agreement in the matter of *case*, we may see its justification in the following examples, in the first of which the relative *who* (nominative case) and in the second the relative *whom* (accusative case) is used for the same antecedent, **boy** :

(i) The **person** *who* fails to report for duty will be punished with a heavy fine.

(ii) The **person**, whom I gave a good hiding, had sworn at me.

13. **Indefinite pronouns** are those which refer to something indefinite and not to any particular thing. They are *one*, *any*, *some* and their compounds.

☞ As an indefinite pronoun, *one* is used in the sense of people in general. When used in this capacity it is not to be followed by any other pronoun. **If the occasion demands further reference to it in the same sentence, it must be repeated** as in

One must do **one's** duty.

One never knows when and where **one** will die.

*It must be borne in mind that the use of **one** is avoided as far as possible, with a view to avoiding its repetition.

When, however, *one* is used as an indefinite numeral, denoting one person or thing belonging to a particular class, it is followed by an appropriate pronoun, as in

One of the boys lost **his** book.

One of the girls lost **her** pen.

14. *Nobody*, *No one* and *None* are the negative forms of **one**, the first two being used of persons and the last both of persons and things. The verb used with *none* may be either singular or plural, but the latter is preferable whenever it is possible to use it. Both of the following forms are correct :

None of them *is* of any use to me.

None of them *are* of any use to me.

15. *Any* indicates a person or a thing. It might be followed even by a plural noun. It is used in conditional, interrogative or conditional sentences, i.e., along with words like *if*, *whether*, *hardly* and *without*, as in

Don't you have *any* eyes ?

You will see for yourself if you have *any* eyes.

He is without *any* money.

Some is used in the same sense either before singular uncountable nouns or plural nouns, except in the interrogative, conditional or negative sentences where *any* is used. But *some* may be used in interrogative sentences to which the reply is expected to be in the affirmative. Compare the following sentences :

(*i*) *Will you have* **some** *tea* ? (The questioner expects a reply in the affirmative, like "Yes, thank you," conveying to him the addressee's wish to have a cup or two of tea).

(*ii*) *Is there* **any** *tea* ? (The questioner expects a reply in the negative, like "Sorry, there is none left now.")

These words are used in certain compound forms as well, like *anyone*, *anybody*, *anything*, etc.

16. **Distributive pronouns** are those which show that the nouns to which they refer are to be taken singly. They are *each*, *either*, and *neither*. They signify *one at a time*. Here are examples :

Each of the labourers will get £ 1.

Either of the two witnesses might turn hostile.

Neither of them is a liar.

Either and *neither* are used in reference to two persons or things only. But when the reference is to more than two, the pronoun used is *any* or *any one*. All of these take the verb in the singular.

17. **Each other** and **One another** are also used as pronouns. The first refers to two and the second to more than two persons :

All the (*five*) brothers loved *one another*.

The (*two*) adversaries stabbed *each other* in the back.

* 18. A pronoun used as a subject should not be separated from its verb, if possible. The sentence

He along with his wife has gone out

should be changed into

He has gone out along with his wife.

19. The pronoun **it** deserves special notice. We have seen how it may be used as a third personal pronoun where it is used either of lifeless objects, or of living objects like a *child* which are too small to need any reference to their sex. Thus we may say :

(i) It is a rock.

(ii) You see this child ? It is learning to walk.

Again, it may be used as a vague subject of impersonal verbs, as in.

It rains. It never rains but pours

In such cases, **it** does not stand for any noun.

Sentences beginning with an *infinitive*, a *gerund*, or a *noun clause* sound very clumsy to the English ear. To avoid this construction, the infinitive, the gerund or the noun clause is transferred to the end of the sentence and the predicate is put in the beginning with the word **it** standing at the head of it. This **it**, followed by some tense of the verb *to be*, is known as the *introductory subject*, or the *anticipatory subject*.

It, as an introductory subject, is used of persons or things, regardless of their number or gender, as in

It was the President and his Begum.

The words **there** and **this** are also used as introductory subjects like **it**. *There* (pronounced thay-e) begins a sentence or clause containing an intransitive verb (mostly *to be*) whose subject is placed after it as in

There stood the little boy

Once upon a time there was a king who was very cruel.

It anticipates the idea for which it stands, whereas **this** follows that idea. But **this** may be used in place of **it** to give greater emphasis to the meaning. Thus we say :

(*i*) *It* is no wonder he has passed the examination after so many unsuccessful attempts. (*Idea anticipated*)

(*ii*) He died fighting for a noble cause, and *this* is a great consolation for the bereaved family. (*Sequel to the idea*)

(*iii*) *This* is the first time I have heard from him. (*Emphasis*)

☛ The pronoun following the introductory subject *it* and the verb *to be* is always in the nominative case.

Incorrect.	It is *him*.	**Correct**.	It is *he*.
Incorrect.	It was *them*.	**Correct**.	It was *they*.
Incorrect.	It will be *us*.	**Correct**.	It will be *we*.

The expression, "It is *me*" is, however, sanctioned by usage, though the correct grammatical form even here would be, "It is *I*."

20. The pronoun **it** may be used even as a formal object. In such cases, a noun clause or an infinitive in apposition follows it, as in

(*i*) I will see to *it* that he does not tell a lie (*noun clause*)
(*ii*) You will find *it* quite easy to get up early in the morning. (*infinitive in apposition*)

The vague **it** is used sometimes after a preposition and at other times alone. Here are examples :

(*i*) We made a night of *it*.
(*ii*) Come, and trip it as you go.
On the light fantastic toe (—Milton : *L'Allegro*)

21. The demonstrative pronoun (used absolutely, not attributively) is wrongly omitted, though its presence is required according to the English idiom. In the following examples the demonstrative pronoun 'that' must be used in the place indicated by a blank.

(*i*) The earliest name found in the history of the town is—of Whitfield.

(*ii*) The work was to be considered as mine, and not—of the Government.

(*iii*) It was due to his wisdom and, no doubt, also—of his renowned coadjutor.

(*iv*) Pakistan is their motherland just as much as it is—of the Muslims.

(*v*) It is your own fault and not —of the Government.

(*vi*) The fault will be theirs, and not—of the people.

Those is required in the following sentence :

The causes of the ferment are other than—the executive have fastened upon.

Study the following sentences illustrating the wrong use of the reflexive pronoun :

(*i*) Whenever someone attempts to bestow any care on his children, he insists on *them* working incessantly at their lessons.

The better form is to use the possessive 'their' instead of 'them'; for it is the working and not the person that is insisted on.

(*ii*) The bold course has more to commend *itself* than the milk-and-water scheme.

(*iii*) The suggestion has much in it to commend *itself*.

'Self' is to be added only when the pronoun refers to the agent, or subject of the verb: 'the bold course commends itself,' or 'the suggestion commends itself' would be correct ; but in these sentences it is the 'more' and the 'much' which commend, and therefore we should have 'it' and not 'itself.'

(*iv*) His amiable personality shone like a beacon and endeared *himself* to everyone.

His personality endeared *him*—it did not endear itself, nor is it said that *he* endeared himself. He and his personality are one and the same in fact, but grammatically they are different.

(*v*) The so-called new school has scarcely anything to distinguish *itself* except scurrility in the Press. To 'distinguish oneself' means to acquire distinction or eminence, and the phrase taken as a whole (though it may be resolved into a verb and its object) is used intransitively, and would require some such preposition as 'by' before the word expressing the means of acquiring distinction. But the writer means that the school has no mark by which *other persons* will distinguish *it* from other schools. Hence *itself* should be changed into *it*.

(*vi*) It may be said that executive officials have little freedom of action left to *themselves*.

This should be 'to *them*' ; for it is not the officials themselves who leave the liberty to themselves, but higher authorities who leave it to them.

Here are some instances of wrong agreement :

(*i*) To me who *has* been engaged in misssion work for seventeen years.

(*ii*) O holy angel! Why not come to me—me who *is* all anxiety to embrace thee.

A relative pronoun is of the same person as its antecedent. The verbs here should therefore be 'am' and 'have,' not 'is' and 'has.'

The wrong use of *what* as a relative pronoun:

(*i*) It can hardly be expected that we shall get all *what* we want.

(*ii*) That is the least *what* his writings teach us.

(*iii*) It does, judging from what I saw here, all *what* such brotherhoods do elsewhere.

The simple relative 'which' or 'that' should take the place of *what*, which, as a relative, is always compound, meaning *that which*. Now in these sentences *all* and *least* serve as objects of the verbs and only a simple relative is neeeded to introduce the subordinate clause. If the writer had not had occasion to say *all* or *least*, then the compound relative *what* would have been correct.

What is redundant in the following sentences:

(*i*) We want more control over our own affairs than *what* Government is prepared to grant.

(*ii*) This supremacy is no doubt much more limited than *what* it used to be.

So is *that* in the following:

The more reckless write whatever nonsense *that* comes uppermost.

The 'that' should be omitted, it being included in the preceding 'whatever.'

The wrong use of *which*:

(*i*) We do not know *which* "good people" the paper is referring to.

Instead of 'which' we should have 'what,' as no particular classes of good people had previously been specified. Of things in contemplation we should say: Which of these do you want? But of things not present to the mind: What do you want?

(*ii*) *Which* person would dare give his consent in the face of the social slavery in which he is born?

This is similar. The question is not *which* person out of two or three specified ones, but *what* one of the whole indefinite number would dare.

☞ 22. *His* and *of him* cannot be used interchangeably. Failure to appreciate the subtle difference in their usage gives rise to a number of mistakes. Take the following example of their misuse:

The want of education in Pakistani women makes *their comparison* with European women somewhat ridiculous.

In this sentence, the phrase 'their comparison' is wrong because it is in no sense theirs. They do not make the comparison ; rather it is made about them by others. Hence it should stand as *the comparison of them.*

Similarly the sentence :

Your very sight is repulsive to him is wrong. It should be changed into the following :

The very *sight of you* is repulsive to him.

23. Study the following carefully :—

(*i*) When you have read the book, please return *the same* to me.

The correct form is : When you......return *it* to me. *Same* or *the same* should never be used in place of a personal noun. The mistake is very common in commercial correspondence.

(*ii*) *Whom*, you believe, is responsible for this muddle ?

The correct form is : *Who*......The interrogative pronoun is here the subject of the verb *is* and not the object of the verb *believe*.

(*iii*) *Your's* faithfully.

The correct form is *yours* faithfully. The apostrophe is wrong because pronouns never form their genitive like that. Furthermore, we have to use the form *yours* (and not *your*) because the phrase reads in full "I am yours faithfully," or "I am yours in full faith." As compared to that, it would be wrong to say "Yours obedient servant," because here we do not want a pronoun, but an adjective qualifying the noun servant. So in the latter phrase we have to use a possessive adjective and say "*Your* obedient servant."

(*iv*) I remember *him* speaking to me about it.

In such instances, the possessive form is used before the gerund. We say, "I remember his......" treating the whole phrase *his speaking* (and not merely *him*) as object to the verb *remember*. This mistake too is quite common and should be guarded against.

24. We have already learnt that a pronoun agrees with its antecedent in number, gender and person. But with regard to the agreement in number the following points should not be lost sight of :

Nouns joined by *and* take the pronoun in the plural, unless they are preceded by *each* or *every*.

The student and the teacher went to their college.
Every student and every teacher went to his college.

Similarly the pronoun is singular when the antecedent comprises two or more singular nouns and are joined by *or*, *neither...or*, or *neither......nor*. But when one of the nouns so joined is plural, the

pronoun agrees in number with the nearer noun. The agreement in gender also is with the nearer noun. Thus we say :

(*i*) Either John or Victor will sell away his book.

(*ii*) Either John or Mary will sell away her book.

(*iii*) Either John or his children have lost their way.

(*iv*) Either the children or their father has lost his way.

(*v*) Either the children or their mother has lost her way.

25. **It is in no wise admissible to omit a pronoun used in the objective case.** The pronoun must be used in sentences like the following :

Incorrect. "Here is my cup ; please fill."

Correct. "Here is my cup ; please fill *it*."

Incorrect. "Is he going ?" "Yes, I think."

Correct. "Is he going ?" "Yes, I think *so*."

Incorrect. "Would you have a cup of tea ?" "No, thank you ; I have already had."

Correct. "Would you have a cup of tea ?" "No, thank you ; I have already had *one*."

EXERCISES

Correct or justify the pronouns used in the following sentences :

(*For* Board *Students*)

1. She is more intelligent than him.
2. I and he are brothers.
3. I, you and she told a lie.
4. One should not waste his time like that.
5. One of them at least has got back his book.
6. Each of us play tennis.
7. Both had not done the work entrusted to us.
8. We all could not hear him speak.
9. My hat is costlier than my friend's.
10. Its size should be the same as of this collar.

(*For* University *Students*)

1. None of us have ever had a chance to see him.
2. They tried for the protection of their own industries and not of Pakistan.
3. He graciously accepted me who is poorer even than his servant.
4. He enjoyed during the summer vacation.
5. She enjoyed the joke very much.
6. I, together with him, am going out for a walk.
7. He writes like a schoolboy, and that of not a very brilliant order.
8. The dancing-girls are depraved, one and all, and their very sight, no less than their songs and gestures, should be a terror to respectable people.
9. Whoever does best he will get a prize.
10. They should visit the cultural clubs of the Metropolis and become their members.

CHAPTER XI

ADJECTIVES

1. Classification. An adjective (pronounced *aj*-ek-tiv with the accent on the first syllable) is a word which, according to its derivation is "thrown against" a noun in order to describe it more precisely. It is thus a word qualifying a noun, as the italicized words in a *pretty* maiden, a *spiteful* woman, a *learned* man, a *naughty* boy, a *cute* girl, a *phoney* affair, a *bad* hat, and the *Big* Ben. Adjectives fall into the following eight categories :

(i) **Qualitative** or **descriptive adjectives.**
(ii) **Quantitative adjectives.**
(iii) **Numeral adjectives.**
(iv) **Proper adjectives.**
(v) **Possessive adjectives.**
(vi) **Distributive adjectives.**
(vii) **Interrogative adjectives.**
(viii) **Demonstrative adjectives.**

The various categories of adjectives are briefly dealt with in the following paragraphs :

2. Qualitative adjectives describe the quality or state of the qualified noun. They tell us what kind of person or thing it is that they describe. This is the most frequently used type of adjectives. All the adjectives given as examples in the foregoing paragraph belong to this class.

3. Quantitative adjectives state the quantity or degree of the qualified noun. They furnish the reply to *how much* ? The noun qualified by them is always *singular* in the number, and is either *material* or *abstract* in its class.

The commonest adjectives of the type are :

All, whole, much, little, enough, sufficient, half, any, some, no.

Some of these words have been dealt with in the previous chapter as pronouns. The fact of the matter is that there are many words which can be used both as pronouns and as adjectives, according as they stand in place of nouns or just qualify them.

4. Numeral adjectives tell of the number or order of the noun qualified by them. When they indicate an exact number or order, they are called **definite numeral adjectives.** They are known as **cardinals** when they tell of number (as *one, two, three,* etc.), **ordinals** when they tell of the serial order (as first, second, etc.), and **multiplicatives** when they show how many times an

object is repeated (as *single*, *double* or *twofold*, *treble* or *three-fold* *four-fold*, *tenfold*, etc).

Numeral adjectives are said to be **indefinite** when they denote the number or order in a vague manner. *All*, *several*, *many*, *enough*, *some*, *sundry* and *few* are some of the indefinite numeral adjectives. The words *some* and *about* used before a definite numeral adjective will make it indefinite, as

(*i*) I have *about* ten rupees with me ;

(*ii*) There were *some* twenty persons there.

*The adjectives *all*, *enough*, *some*, etc., can be numeral as well as qualitative. To know the category into which they fall in a particular context, we should bear in mind that they will be qualitative adjectives if they qualify an abstract or material noun, but will be numeral adjectives if they qualify a common noun. It is qualitative in the first and numeral in the second example cited below :

(*i*) *All* thoughts, *all* passions, *all* delights,
Whatever stirs this mortal frame,
All are but ministers of Love,
And feed his sacred flame —Coleridge : *Love*.

(*ii*) *All* lovers young, *all* lovers must
Consign to thee, and come to dust —Shakespeare.

5. **Proper adjectives** are adjectives formed from proper nouns, like *Bengali* literature and the *Islamic* Republic of Pakistan. Proper adjectives are capitalized even when used in a descriptive sense, like *French* leave.

6. **Possessive adjectives** are the genitive forms of personal pronouns used as qualifying words for other nouns. They have been dealt with in article 2 of the previous chapter. The noun qualified by them is always expressed and follows them immediately. They are never preceded by *of*.

7. **Distributive adjectives** denote that the noun qualified by them must be taken singly. They are *each*, *every*, *either* and *neither*. All the four take the verb in the singular.

Every is only an adjective but *each* can be used even as a pronoun. That is to say that *each* can be used without a qualified noun, but not *every*. *Each* individualizes while *every* refers more to the group than to the individual.

Either and *neither* are generally combined with *or* and *nor* respectively. Each pair may qualify two or more nouns, as

He told me that *either* he himself, *or* his wife *or* their neighbour will call on you.

8. **Interrogative adjectives** are the same as interrogative

pronouns, but they get the new name when they qualify a noun. Note the difference between the two in :

(*i*) What is this country called ?
(*ii*) What country is this ?

9. **Demonstrative adjectives** qualify a noun by pointing out the things or persons under reference. They are :

This, that, other, another, some, a certain, the same.

The articles *a, an,* and *the* also fall into this category but their importance calls for a separate and more detailed notice.

10. **Comparison of Adjectives.** There are three degrees of comparison, *viz.*, the *Positive*, the *Comparative*, and the *Superlative*. Many adjectives admit of the various degrees of comparison. The comparitive degree of adjectives is formed by either putting the word *more* before it, or adding the suffix *er* to it. The superlative degree is formed in a similar way by either putting the word *most* before it, or adding the suffix *est* to it. But the addition of *er* and *est* is subject to the following limitations :

(*i*) These suffixes are added to adjectives of *one syllable*, or, in certain cases, of two syllables.

(*ii*) They cannot be used with adjectives ending in *ful*, *ie*, *ile*, *ose*, or *ous*.

Thus we have *taller* and *tallest* from **tall** but we cannot form *beautifuller* and *beautifullest* from **beautiful**, or *enterprisinger* and *enterprisingest* from **enterprising**. In such cases we can only use *more* and *most*, and say *more beautiful, most beautiful, more enterprising, most enterprising.*

Certain adjectives, however, form irregular comparison like *good, better* and *best.*

* Adjectives in the Comparative degree are followed by *than*, as

He is taller *than* I.

But there are certain adjectives of Latin derivation and used in the comparative degree alone which are followed by *to* (and not *than*). All such adjectives end in *ior*. They are *senior, junior, superior*, etc.

Certain English comparatives like *inner, outer, former, latter, elder* are followed neither by *than* nor by *to*.

Certain Latin comparatives like *interior, exterior, ulterior, major, minor* have lost their original force and are now used only as positive adjectives.

☞ When an object is compared to the rest of its species, the latter must exclude the former. Thus we cannot say :

He is taller than any man. The correct form would be :
He is taller than any other man.

☞ The adjective in the superlative degree is usually preceded

by the definite article *the*. But in doing so, we must also mention the group in which this object occupies the position of precedence. When this is not done and the superlative degree is used in a vague manner signifying nothing more than that the qualified noun possesses that particular quality to a great extent, the adjective in the superlative degree is preceded by the indefinite article *a* or *an*. Thus we may say :

(i) She is *the* most charming woman I have ever seen.
(ii) She is *a* most charming woman.

11. **Uses of adjectives**. When an adjective qualifies a noun *directly*, it is said to be used *attributively*. When, however, it qualifies a noun *indirectly* it is said to be used *predicatively*. Here are examples :

(i) She is a *beautiful* girl. (*attributive use*).
(ii) That girl is *beautiful*. (*predicative use*).

* Adjectives used attributively may, in certain cases, be placed after the qualified noun, though normally they precede it. This change in order is brought about when either an explanatory phrase is attached to the adjective, or when emphasis is to be placed on a noun qualified by several adjectives :

(i) There stood before him a young man, more *intelligent* than others.
(ii) He had a remarkable style, *simple*, *direct*, and *forceful*.

12. **Position of Adjectives**. This brings us on to the question of the general order in which adjectives used attributively are to be placed. The general rule that the adjective so used immediately precedes the qualified noun, is subject to the following reservations.

(i) Certain adjectives always follow the noun, as in the Ambassador-*Designate*, the Poet *Laureate*, the heir-*apparent*, generations *unborn*, times *immemorial*, and the sum *total*.
(ii) When emphasis is needed, the attributively used adjective may be placed either after the noun or right at the beginning of the sentence. Here are examples :

This is an event *undreamt of*

Undreamt of the event is, but it is in no way unwelcome.

*When several adjectives qualify the same noun, the following rules of precedence are observed :

(*a*) The adjectives *all*, *both* and *half* take the first place owing to their implicit emphasis, as in
All that tall talk.

(*b*) Next in order are the *demonstrative adjectives*, as
That dark girl has a very musical voice.

(*c*) Then come the *possessive adjectives*, as
My new hat is very costly.

(*d*) Then there are the *numeral* and *quantitative adjectives*, as The *four* just men.

(*e*) And then there are the *descriptive* and *proper adjectives* which often immediately precede the qualified noun, as

"'I am a dood dirl, a int I ?' cried my littte niece," writes Jerome K. Jerome in *Idle Thoughts of an Idle Fellow*.

The golden rule to observe in this connection is to place nearest to a noun the adjective most closely related to it.

13. **Adjectives with Prepositional Force**. The adjectives *near*, *opposite*, *like*, *unlike* have a prepositional force and the noun following them is regarded as being in the dative case. These adjectives are not followed by *to*. Thus we say : *near* me, *opposite* me, *like* me, *unlike* me.

We must guard against the wrong use of *like* in such sentences as the following :

Say it *like* I do.
You can learn this in a short time *like* you learnt that.

In both these sentences, like is used as a conjunction, and must be replaced by *as*.

Like Macaulay, Maulana Mohammad Ali's style is very vigorous.

This sentence stands in need of correction, since the Maulana's style resembled not Macaulay's person but his style. It should be changed as follows :

Maulana Mohammad Ali's style, like Macaulay's, is very vigorous.

14. **Articles with Adjectives**. The definite article is used with qualitative adjectives to form the collective noun representing all individuals marked by that particular quality. Note the difference between

The *poor* person is in a pitiable condition, (adjective) ; and
The poor are in a pitiable condition, (noun).

It would be absolutely wrong to say *the poors*, for it is already a collective noun embracing all individuals belonging to the class.

The use of the articles with numeral adjectives is also worth noting. *Pair*, *decade*, *dozen*, *score*, *gross*, *hundred*, *thousand*, *million*, *lakh*, *crore* are treated as collective nouns. They are either preceded by an article or followed by *of*. We say *a hundred cartridges*, *a million men*. We can also say *a hundred of cartridges*, *a million of men*. These numerals can also be used in the plural, like *hundreds of cartridges*, *millions of men*.

Fractions expressed in words stand like this : *two-and-a-half* annas, *one-and-a-half* annas. But the latter can also be written as *one anna and a half*.

15. **Any**. As a demonstrative adjective, it is more emphatic

than *a* and *an* It can be used both with singular and plural nouns.

As a quantitative adjective, *any* is used in negative and *some* in affirmative sentences, while both can be used in interrogative sentences. However, in questions which are just hidden requests or commands, only *some* is used. Thus we say :

I did not see *any* students there.

I saw *some* students there.

Did he buy *any* milk ?

Did he buy *some* milk ?

Will you please bring me some milk ?

The distinction between *any* and *some* is not altogether easy to explain, and there are occasions when either may be used indiscriminately. Each is used to express a part of a whole, and with each the particular part is indefinite ; but while with *any* the part is always absolutely indefinite, with *some* the part, though unknown, may be fixed as to its identity Thus to the question, "Is there *any* news ?" the answer, if in the affirmative, must be "There is *some* news," because the news, though not yet declared, is fixed as to its identity. But the negative answer would be. "There is not *any* news," because the speaker extends his answer to all possible news whatever. So to the question, "Have you *any* money ?" the answer must be either "Yes, I have *some* money," or "No, I have not *any* money." To answer "Yes, I have *any* money," would mean, if it meant anything, that whatever money was in the world, the speaker had it. And to answer, "No, I have not *some* money," would be equally meaningless, because while the speaker had not *some* money, he might have *some other* money ; and one amount would be as good as another as the basis of an affirmative reply. The above questions might, indeed, be put in either form : "Is there *any* news ?" or "Is there *some* news ?" "Have you *any* money ?" or "Have you *some* money ?" the only difference being that in the one case the speaker frames his question according to his own want of information (*any*) ; and in the other he frames it with reference to the particular information (*some*) which the person questioned may be able to supply. But in either case the answer must be "Yes, *some*," or "Not *any*."

The general rule is that *any* applies to every part of the whole that is in contemplation ; *some* applies to a particular, though it may be an indefinite and unknown part. Consequently, *any* is chiefly used in interrogative and negative sentences ; for a question or a denial, to be effective, must apply to every part. But an assertion is usually as to a particular part, and then *some* is used.

These remarks as to the adjectives *any* and *some* apply also to the same words used as pronouns, and to the nouns *anybody* and *somebody*, the adverbs *anyhow* and *somehow*, and the like. In the following examples the *some* should be *any* :

(*i*) He will be too worn out to attend to *some* business of his own.

(*ii*) Everyone with *some* pretension to learning will be knowing that.

(*iii*) There was no case of *some* importance in which Mr. Badruddin had not to appear.

(*iv*) Unhappily they are not nurtured according to *some* sound method.

(*v*) The ordinary text-books deal with history of some particular part of the world, without explaining its bearing upon *some* general movement of civilization.

(*vi*) Schools should be established in nearly every town of *some* importance.

(*vii*) One must go to England if one wishes to study the English language to *some* advantage.

In the following examples 'any' should be 'some':

(*i*) They must make it a point to meet together, and above all mess together. Unless they do *any* such thing, no good step can be made in our march of progress.

(*ii*) These considerations may have *any* value in the case of executive officers, but......

(*iii*) We hope that a well-equipped middle school or *any* institution may arise.

16. **Both**. It is a conjunction when we say "*Both* she and he slandered him," but it is evidently a pronoun when we simply say, "Both slandered him."

As an adjective, it belongs to the category of numerals and is treated like them in the manner explained in article 14 of this chapter. Thus we may quite correctly say:

Both persons slandered him.

Both the persons slandered him.

Both of them slandered him.

*Though *both* means *two*, it is wrong to use it when similar predication is not made. Whereas it is quite correct to say, "*Both* doctors agreed in their opinion," it would be wrong to say on this analogy that "*Both* doctors differed in their opinion," because here the predication is not similar. The correct form would be:

"*The two* doctors differed in their opinion."

17. **Enough**. It may be used with either a singular or a plural noun, and may be put before or after it. Thus we say *enough money*, *enough cups*, *money enough and to spare*.

18 **Few, a few, the few**. The first one has a negative sense, the other two affirmative. **Few** means *not many*, **a few** means

some at least and **the few** mean *all that exist, though not many in number*.

19. **Fewer, less, lesser.** The first one is a numeral and the other two quantitative adjectives. *Lesser*, a double comparative, is in common use. We say *fewer* persons, *less*, trouble, *lesser* evil.

20. **Further, farther.** Both may be correctly used to mean *more distant*, but *further* also means *additional* :

> New York is *farther* than London
> San Franciso is three thousand miles *further* on.
> Do you have anything *further* to say ?

21. **Gentlemanly, manly.** They are adjectives and not adverbs so it would be wrong to say, "He behaved gentlemanly." One should rather say, "His behaviour was gentlemanly."

22. **Glad, happy.** The adjective *glad* is seldom used attributively. Thus we can say *a happy person*, but we cannot correctly say a *glad person*. The idiomatic use *to give a glad eye* is, however, quite different. But while *glad* is followed by *of*, *to*, *at* or *that*, *happy* cannot be used in that way. We may be *glad to hear* something, but *not happy to do so*. *Happy* expresses a condition of mind, as in a *happy person*, or the circumstances bringing about that condition as a *happy occasion* or the popular but obscene *happy time*.

23. **Later, latter.** The first one denotes time, the second order. So do *latest* and *last* as their superlatives. Thus we say : *he arrived later*; *the latter of the two*; *the latest news*; *the last period*.

24. **Little, a little, the little.** The distinction is exactly like the one between *few*, *a few* and *the few*.

25. **Much, many.** The first one refers to quantity, the second to number. We say *much* time, *many* hours. In the following sentence *many* should replace *much* :

> As to the number of students, there were 316 in all, and it is pleasing to note that out of this number as *much* as 120 lived in the college hostel.

26. **Many, many a, a great many.** The first and the last expressions are used with singular and the middle one with plural nouns. Here are examples :

> I have told you *a great many times* not to go there.
> *Many men* have fallen on evil days owing to this change.
> *Many a man* had landed himself in trouble in this way.

27. **Next, nearest.** The first one indicates position, the second distance. Thus we speak of the *nearest place* and the *next room*.

* Though *next morning* and *tomorrow (morning)* usually signify the same thing, they are not interchangeable. In speaking in the past, it is correct to use *next morning*; but *tomorrow* or *tomorrow morning* must be used when speaking in the present. Thus we say, "I left the *next morning*," but "I leave *tomorrow morning*."

28. **Older, elder**. The second comparative is used for persons of the same family, whereas the first can be used of all persons and all things. Moreover, even for persons of the same family, *elder* cannot be used with *than*. Thus it will be wrong to say, "Rahim is *elder* than Karim." The word *elder* will have to be replaced by *older*.

29. **One**. Study the following sentences carefully :

(*i*) Never for the last one century has such a phenomenon been witnessed.

(*ii*) Such a phenomenon was never witnessed during the last century.

The phrase *last one century* signifies a period of one hundred years counted backward from now ; but the phrase *last century*, the century before the current one, *i.e.*, the 19th century, which lasted from A.D. 1801 to 1900

Similarly *during the last one year* means during the 365 days preceding today ; but *during the last year* means in the last calendar year from January 1 to December 31 last. This is the difference between the following two sentences :

(*i*) A new political party has come into being within the last one year.

(*ii*) A new political party came into being during the last year.

30. **Oral, verbal**. The first one means *spoken*, or *by word of mouth* ; the second, in addition to this sense, means concerning words spoken or written. An *oral* or *verbal statement* is, therefore, a statement not in black and white, but just given by word of mouth. But *a verbal translation*, which signifies a word for word translation, cannot be called an *oral* translation.

31. **Single**. This word is used as a noun only when speaking of *Tennis Singles*, etc. otherwise it is used as an adjective and must qualify a noun. Hence it is wrong to say :

Not a *single* of the principles here laid down can be defended on moral grounds. It can be corrected in either of the following forms :

(*i*) Not *one* of the principles.........

(*ii*) Not *a single one* of the principles...........

32. **Such**. This word implies comparison of two things, even though the second thing may only be implicitly stated. So it should be coupled with as. It would be incorrect to say, "It is undemocratic for a government not to take the people into confidence on *such* matters " The sentence, in order to be correct, should end with "on *such* matters *as these*."

33. **Very**. As an adjective, it carries an intensive force. So it should not be used to express ordinary senses. It is quite correct to say :

Major-General Iftikhar Khan died in an aircrash that *very* night But, there is no justification for using *very* in such sentences as :

That *very* night he left for Peshawar.

34. **Whole, the whole, a whole**. Of these three *a whole* means entire, as in *a whole orange*.

The second form, *the whole*, is used before singular nouns to mean entire. It is always followed by *of* when used with proper nouns, but generally stands alone when used before common nouns. Thus we say *the whole of* Pakistan, *the whole* book, *the whole of the* book.

The first form, *whole*, is synonymous with *all* in one sense but it is used only with singular nouns and is preceded by some determinative. Thus, you may speak of *all parts of your* body, or of *your whole* body.

Whole can also be used with both singular and plural nouns attributively and predicatively. Here are examples :

(i) *Whole* districts were inundated when the River Ravi was on the rampage.

(ii) It rained for three *whole* days.

(iii) Crocodiles swallow their victims *whole*.

EXERCISES

Correct or justify the following sentences :

(*For* **Board** *Students*)

1. Nasim is elder than Salim.
2. This article costs rupees five.
3. These all oranges are ripe.
4. He is growing strong every day.
5. He gave me hundred rupees.
6. "I have never seen a lakh rupees," the poor poet sighed to Khan Khanan.
7. This is a worth-seeing sight.
8. Have you ever come across such a bad boy ?
9. Both of them did not turn up.
10. Shakespeare is greater than all dramatists of the world.

(*For* **University** *Students*)

1. The climate of Murree is better than of Lahore.
2. There are dozen books on the shelf.
3. Whole my career is ruined.
4. His all friends let him down in this crisis.
5. The two last chapters of the book are worth reading again and again.
6. It was the most unkindest cut of all.
7. She has less good qualities than her sister.
8. He wanted nothing else than leave for going home.
9. The whole Pakistan was jubilant on the Republic Day.
10. He is more learned than me.
11. Either of the five candidates may get the offer of a job.
12. Herve Riel asked for nothing else them leave to go home and see his wife.
13. It is more unique than other things.
14. Everyone of them are like me.
15. Many a flowers are born to blush unseen
    And waste their sweetness on the desert air.

CHAPTER XII

ARTICLES

1. **The use of Articles**. Three of the demonstrative adjectives, **a, an** and **the** constitute a class by themselves. Their importance calls for a separate notice. **A** and **an** are called *indefinite articles*, and **the** (pronounced *dha* before consonants and *dhee* before vowel sounds) is known as the definite article. In the English language, some one of these three articles is always used before a common noun in the singular number. The **indefinite articles** go along with the names of *indefinite* or unspecified objects, and the **definite articles** with those of *definite* or particular objects. When, however, a noun is used in the abstract or general sense, it stands without any article whatsoever.

The use of the definite article presents the greatest difficulty. If we keep in mind what is stated above, we will see that there is every reason to use the definite article with :

(i) *the name of a concrete thing which is only one of its kind, as the sun ;*

(ii) *the adjective in the superlative degree* because it is restricted to one particular thing, as '*the prettiest girl*' ; and

(iii) *a noun separated from the rest of its class* by definition, as '*the ignorance displayed by him.*' Such separation cannot effectively be made by just placing an adjective before the noun. Thus we cannot correctly say :

(*a*) He displayed *the* ignorance.

(*b*) He displayed *the* gross ignorance.

In these sentences, *the* should be omitted because particularization is missing in the first sentence and inadequate in the second.

(*iv*) *The definite article is further used in nouns followed by* **of** because of particularization. But this is done only when the two nouns so connected give the sense of a particular thing or idea. In such cases, the omission of **of** would necessitate the omission of the definite article.

(*v*) *Lastly, the definite article is used to denote the whole species*, as, *the lion*. This generalizing effect is the exact antithesis of the restrictive steps referred to above.

We shall now discuss the implications of these observations.

2. **The Indefinite Articles**. *A* is used before singular words beginning with either a consonant or a vowel sounding like a consonant, *viz*., **u** or **eu** pronounced as **yoo**, and **o** pronounced as **wa**) :

A **man**, *a* **pen**, *a* **hand**, *a* **fan**, *a* **union**, *a* **university**, *a* **eulogy**, *a* **European**, *a* **one**-anna stamp.

An is used before a word beginning with either a vowel or a silent *h*. Thus we say;

An **angel**, *an* **egg**, (but *a* **eunoch**), *an* **interest**, *an* **owl**, *an* **umbrella**, (but *a* **usurpur**); *an* **heir** (but *a* hero), *an* **hour**.

*It may be noted in this connection that *heir*, *heiress*, *hour*, *hourly*, *honest*, *honesty*, *honour*, *honourable*, *honorary*, *honorarium* are the only words in English beginning with a silent *h*.

An is sometimes used before words beginning with *h* and an unaccented syllable, as *an* **hotel**, *an* **historic** event. The modern tendency, however, is to use *a* even with such words.

A* and **an are used only with singular nouns, whereas **the** can be used with plural nouns as well.

3. The definite article, **the**, *should be used* in the following cases:

(i) To point out a thing known or already referred to, as "I have read *the* book," or "*The* book is very useful."

(ii) With things of which only one exists, as *the sun*, *the moon*, *the earth*, *the sky*.

It must be borne is mind that this condition, like others, relates to common nouns only. No reference is intended to propern nouns.

(iii) When a whole class is indicated by a common noun in the singular, as

The horse is a very useful animal

The intriguer always comes to grief.

*The same meaning can be expressed by:

(*a*) Either putting the common noun in the plural number and using no article along with it, as

Horses are very useful animals.

Intriguers always come to grief.

(*b*) Or using the indefinite article with the singular noun, as

A horse is a very useful animal.

An intriguer always comes to grief.

☞ The most notable exceptions to these rules are the words **man** and **woman**. When used to express the whole species, these words do not take any article. Thus we may say with Aristotle that "*Man* is a social animal," or with Pope that "The proper study of mankind is *man*"; but in neither case can we substitute *a man* or *the man* for the simple *man*. Likewise, we can say that "*Woman* is the real custodian of a nation's culture," or that "Woman is the prettiest flower created by God; only she has a venomous thorn growing in her in the form of her tongue";

but in neither of these cases can we substitute *a woman* or *the woman* for the simple *woman*.

(*iv*) When an adjective is used as a noun to indicate a whole class, as

Blessed are *the merciful*.

The rich are always callous.

(*v*) Before an adjective in the superlative degree, as

He is *the most intelligent* student.

The most unkindest cut of all. (Shakespeare)

*The following, however, are exceptions :

(*a*) The superlative used as (or with) a vocative :

Mightiest of men, even you will one day be laid low by death.

(*b*) When a possessive adjective precedes it :

My eldest brother has got a commission in the Army.

*The definite article will, however, be used if the possessive is shifted to some other position, as

The eldest of my brothers is a very learned man.

(*v*) Occasionally, when the common noun is used as an abstract noun, as

He played *the fool*.

The fool that he is, he made himself the butt of ridicule.

(*vi*) With parallel adjectives used adverbially, as

The sooner he is given the sack, the better it will be for the organization.

4. **No article** should normally be used before a proper noun. We say :

Pakistan is the largest Muslim State of the present-day world.

Einstein was a scientist as well as a philosopher.

But it is different when phrases take the place of proper nouns. Thus we have to say :

The Islamic Republic of Pakistan came into being on March 23, 1956.

The U.S.A. (*The United States of America*) is at logger-heads with the *U.S.S.R.* (*The Union of Soviet Socialist Republics*).

The following important *exceptions* to the rule should be noted very carefully :

(*i*) When a proper noun is used as a common noun :

India has grabbed Kashmir which is the *Switzerland* of Pakistan.

Agha Hashr is *the Shakespeare* of Urdu literature.

(*ii*) When a proper noun is qualified by a word or phrase used as an adjective :

The wise Solomon, who has given us the wonderful *Proverbs*, also wrote the beautiful *Song of Songs*.

The coquettish Sylvia is the Rita Hayworth of Pakistan film industry.

It is surprising how *the studious Salim* has failed.

The Mohammad Din in our class has joined the Air Force. It will be observed that the full names of countries like *the U. K.* (the United Kingdom), *the U.S.I.* (the United States of Indonesia), *The U.S.A.* and *the U.S.S.R.* fall under this head.

*When the adjective is placed after the noun, the definite article is placed before the adjective and not before the noun. Thus while we speak of *the great Caesar* or *the tyrant Alcibiades*, we use the phrases *Alexander the Great* and *Akbar the Great*.

(iii) Before the titles of books, provided the author's name does not stand before them in the genitive case. We speak of *The Bible, The Koran, The Iliad, The Odyssey, The Doll's House, The Bang-i-Dara, The Naqsh-i-Faryadi.*

Nevertheless, we speak of Homer's *Iliad*, Faiz's *Naqsh-i-Faryadi*, Ibsen's *Doll's House*.

* When, however, the name of a person constitutes the title of a book, the definite article is not used before it and we speak of two dramas written by Shakespeare and Shaw respectively as *Julius Caesar* and *Caesar and Cleopatra*.

☞The definite article precedes even the titles of newspapers and other periodicals. But while it forms a part of the title of book and is written with a capital **T**, it does not form a part of the periodical's title and is written with a small **t** save in certain cases where their publishers insist on its inclusion. Thus we speak of *The Times* (of London) *The Pakistan Times* (of Lahore), *The New Times* (of Moscow), but of other papers we always speak of as the *Civil and Military Gazette* (of Lahore), the *Readers' Digest*, the *Time*, the *Life*, etc.

(iv) Before the names of rivers, canals, bays, straits, gulfs, seas, oceans, archipelagoes, and mountain-ranges :

The Ravi, the Upper Bari Doab Canal, the Persian Gulf, the Straits of Dover, the Adriatic (Sea), the Altantic (Ocean), the Hebrides, the Himalayas.

* The names of *streets (not roads), towns, lakes and* single mountains, however, do not take the definite article, and we speak of Fleet Street (but the Mayo Road, or Mayo Road Lahore, *Mount Everest*, K^2, *Mont Blanc, Lake Leman.*

(v) Before the names of territorial divisions which are meaningful words or phrases even otherwise.

The Punjab, the Deccan, the West Pakistan, the East Bengal, the Sussex Downs.

(vi) Before the names of all territorial divisions when a word like district, division, province, country, etc. follows them as

The Lahore Distri..., .he Peshawar Division, the (former) *Sind Province, the Wessex County.*

5. The definite article, **the**, *is not used* before material or abstract nouns unless they are qualified by some word, phrase or clause. Thus *bread, butter, cloth* are quite correct forms, but we say:

The whole-meal bread has full nutritive value.

'Ghee,' formerly called the '*clarified butter*,' is now-a-days known as 'butter oil.' The same rule applies to abstract nouns. Thus we say:

Honesty is the best policy ; but

The honesty displayed by him is highly creditable for a man in straitened circumstances.

6. Before a common noun which forms a part of the title, as *Queen Elizabeth, President Iskander Mirza, Premier Mohammad Ali, Governor Gurmani, General Ayub Khan, Marshal Bulganin, Secretary of State Dulles, Dr. Inayatullah, Prof. Sirajuddin, Saint Joan, Lord Mountbatten.*

7. Before adjectives denoting languages and colours used as nouns, as

He has a command of both *English* and *Urdu*.

Green is a 'sacred' colour in the eyes of certain orthodox Muslims.

Red is the symbolic colour of the Communists.

The article is, however, used when such words are adjectives qualifying other nouns, as

He is studying *the English language.*

She was going about in *a red gown.*

The blue blood in him is the cause of his vanity.

8. Usually before the names of regular meals and diseases, as *breakfast, lunch, luncheon, supper, dinner*. We say, "It is time for dinner," or "Shall we ask him to dinner" ; but when speaking of a formal party in somebody's honour, we say :

A dinner was given to (or arranged in honour of) the distinguished visitor.

Bronchitis, cold, diarrhoea, dysentery, fever, malaria, typhoid, tuberculosis, etc., do not take any article. Nevertheless we speak of *the mumps* and *the measles.*

9. Before plural nouns denoting a class, as

Applications received after the 12th instant will in no case be entertained.

10. Before nouns in the vocative case, as

Friends, Romans, countrymen. (—Shakespeare)

11. Before a common noun used as a complement to a verb in order to indicate status. Thus we say :

He was crowned king.

He turned Christian.

12. Before common nouns going in pairs, as

Milk and honey, bread and butter, fire and brimstone, man and wife or *husband and wife.*

13. In certain well-known phrases of either of the following type :

(*a*) Comprising a verb and its object : To bring *word,* to cast *anchor,* to catch *fire,* to do *penance,* to follow *suit,* to gain *confidence,* to give *battle,* to give *ear,* to keep *house,* to lay *siege,* to leave *home,* to leave *school,* to lose *heart,* to set *foot,* to set *sail,* to strike *root,* to take *breath,* to take *fire,* to take *cognizance,* to take *offence.*

(*b*) Comprising a preposition and its object.

Above *board* ;

At *anchor,* at *dawn,* at *daybreak,* at *dinner,* at *tea,* at *ease,* at *fault,* at *interest,* at *night,* at *school,* at *sea* ;

By *aeroplane,* by *air,* by *bus,* by *rail,* by *land,* by *sea,* by *water,* by *hand,* by *name,* by *day,* by *night* ;

In *bed,* in *court,* in *earnest,* in *fact,* in *jest,* in *school,* in *turn,* in *trouble,* in *view* ;

On *board,* on *deck,* on *demand,* on *earth,* on *foot,* on *horseback,* on *sale,* on *view* ;

Out of *doors.*

To (the) *market,* to *prison* ;

Through *fire* and *water* ;

Under *ground.*

14. The omission or otherwise of an article may sometimes cause a difference in meaning. *To be at school,* for instance, means to be studying there as a regular scholar ; *to be at the school* means to be on a school premises mentioned or known to us beforehand; *to be at a school* means to be on the premises of some unspecified school.

15. **Redundant Articles.** Mistakes frequently occur through the use of articles where none are required. We shall take up the indefinite articles first, and then proceed to the definite articles.

(*a*) *Superfluous* **a** *or* **an** : Mistakes under this head are very common, and arise principally from putting the indefinite article before absract nouns, which is not the English usage. Thus we find:

(*i*) The fact of which he makes *a* mention is insignificant.

(*ii*) It brings on too early maternity, which means too early death or too weak *a* progeny.

(*iii*) After *a* mature deliberation the decision was revoked.

(*iv*) There is *a* vast scope for improvement.

(*v*) In spite of *an* inclement weather, I have come here.

(*vi*) Those who seek, *a* government employment will be dismayed.

(*vii*) The woman prayed for *a* legislation for the prevention of the practice of polygamy.

(*viii*) The exravagances call for *an* early attention.

(*ix*) I had *an* important business with him.

(*x*) Will his words fall on *a* barren soil ?

(*xi*) If *a* slang may be permitted.

(*xii*) The provincial social conference repeats the same tale in *a* different phraseology.

(*xiii*) It is nothing short of *a* sacrilege to consign him to the genus agitator.

(*xiv*) Those who can advance such *a* fallacious reasoning are capable of anything.

(*xv*) There should be *a* separate bedding for the child.

(*xvi*) Industry is making *a* decided headway in the country.

(*xvii*) You may consider it *a* great luck to have passed.

(*xviii*) Perhaps he expected *a* laughter for his wit.

In all the above instances the article should have been omitted. There are cases in which the mistake is made more natural from the fact that the word used may, when used in another sense, take the indefinite article. Such cases are :

(*i*) The case called for *an* action such as the Governor took.

(*ii*) He died leaving *an* issue.

(*iii*) If the fates ordain the birth of *a* male issue, she would be very lucky.

(*iv*) Having made *a* rapid progress.

(*v*) We would have kept silent over it had not our adversaries sought to make *a* capital of it.

(*vi*) The new book displays *a* wide reading and much pains.

(*vii*) Go out for *a* travel and come back fifteen years hence.

(*viii*) The expenses which *a* foreign travel entails are too heavy for me.

(*ix*) He showed his spite against women in a language unworthy of a responsible politician.

(*x*) The sorrows of women are depicted by Rashid-ul-Khari in *a* passionate language.

(*xi*) The present chaos and the only chance of *an* order emerging out of it lies in Dr. Khan's victory, he believes.

(*xii*) The report is in literary form, and invites *a* study.

The following are instances of an idiom in which the practice is to use no article, the nominal phrase being treated as an adjective :

(*i*) *An* unsympathetic official as he was, he was still broad-minded in reference to public finance.

(*ii*) *A* fervent and most active patriot as he was, the work of social reform was to him not a matter of secondary importance.

(*iii*) He would not go back on his word, and *a* true gentleman as he was, he remained in the party.

(*iv*) *An* able and *an* experienced lawyer that he is, he pleaded the case very efficiently.

(*v*) The knowledge of man is only *a* part and parcel of the knowledge of the Infinite.

With the idiomatic expression, 'part and parcel,' no article is used.

(*vi*) The name of politicians who have publicly expressed such views is *a* legion.

'*A* legion' seems quite logical, but the idiom demands 'legion' only. It is derived from a particular narrative of the Bible in which an evil spirit, being asked its name, answers, "*My* name is legion ; for we are many."

(*vii*) No more painful *an* example could ever be cited.

The article cannot be thus used with the negative adjective *no*. Indeed, it is already included in *no* ; for *no* is *none* or *no one*, and *one* is originally identical with the article *an* or *a*. But with the negative adverb *never* this article may properly be used, as *never a farthing*, *never a soul*.

(*viii*) Who is this *an*other ?

An article cannot be used in combination with a demonstrative pronoun like 'this' or 'that.'

(*b*) *Superfluous* **the**. Study the following sentences along with the criticism on them :

(*i*) The police act as guardians of *the* internal order.

'Order' is here an abstract noun, and it is not defined. Only an adjective is applied to it. Therefore no article should have been used.

(*ii*) The practice is coming into *the* vogue even among the higher classes.

Here also the noun is an abstract one and no particular vogue is indicated.

(*iii*) The Russian leaders landed on *the* English soil.

The article should be omitted. Though 'soil' is a material substance, the name is used in this connection in an abstract sense. *On English soil* does not present a picture to the mind any more

than, for instance, *within English jurisdiction* would. The word *shores*, however, would have taken the definite article in such a sentence for this very reason.

(*iv*) I am of *the* opinion that religion is the highest study of man.

This would be correct if several different opinions had been mentioned, and the writer wishes to express that he adhered to this particular one. But that was not so. He was merely expressing an opinion where none had been expressed. So he should have said : "I am of opinion."

(*v*) This will supply *the* information which is very urgently wanted.

Here there had been no previous question of one kind of information or another being wanted. The writer was making a first intimation that certain steps would lead to the supply of informamation that was wanted.

(*vi*) It is *the* one of the foremost philanthropic institutions of the day.

The writer merely puts the institution into a particular class —he does not distinguish it from others in the class.

(*vii*) It is one of the causes that check the reform movement of *the* modern times.

Here *modern times* means modern times in general which is an undefined period ; therefore the use of the article is wrong. Similarly we would say, 'In recent years,' 'In early days' ; but, on the contrary, 'In *the* early years of the century.'

(*viii*) It is an encouraging sign of the progress which *the* educated persons are making.

Here again educated persons in general are meant, not the educated persons of a particular country. Therefore the article is out of place.

(*ix*) What are the causes of a rise in *the* prices.

Prices in general are meant, and the article should have been omitted.

(*x*) Last, though not *the* least, they persist in refusing the honours due.

'Least' is here an adverb, not an adjective, and therefore cannot take the article. It would be quite correct to use both 'last' and 'least' as adjectives, and say, 'The last item, though not the least.'

(*xi*) Many who were not *the* members of the party, but were as much gentlemen as its members, refused to join it.

The statement that the persons in question did not hold the status in question is distributive, not collective, and therefore the definite article should be omitted before the word *members*.

(*xii*) He denied that they had the right to play the part of *the* dictator.

(*xiii*) The Anjuman-i-Himayat-i-Islam acted as *the* host on the occasion.

Dictator and *host* here stand not for concrete persons, but for the abstract character or capacity of dictator or host.

(*xiv*) In the West, universities are not *the* examining boards, but scientific institutes where professors and pupils co-operate.

If a question had arisen as to who are the *examining boards*, the use of the article would have been right ; but the question is as to what the universities are, and the statement is that their nature is not that of *examining boards*.

(*xv*) What we feel to be right and what *the* society forces us to do, sometimes differ from each other.

Society in general, and not any particular society is meant.

(*xvi*) Ignorance of *the* human nature has been displayed by him in his new book.

If human nature were in question as distinguished from other forms of nature, this would be correct. Not so when human nature is the whole back-ground to which reference is made.

(*xvii*) More than twelve gentlemen have enrolled themselves as *the* members of the association, and an attempt is being made to include more.

Obviously those enrolled are not all *the* members of the association (except for the time being), as others are expected to join.

(*xviii*) The verdict of *the* politicians had been that Persia was doomed for ever after the fall of Mossadeq.

Politicians in general are meant, not some contemplated class of politicians.

(*xix*) In the government of a country, conscience and self-restraint are *the* very essential elements.

The adverb *very* expresses here a high degree, but not the superlative degree, so the definite article is out of place. There might be other very essential elements besides the two mentioned. It would be correct to say *the most essential elements*, but the meaning would be different.

(*xx*) The drapers run shops in *the* Regent Street and the bankers in *the* Lombard Street, in London.

(*xxi*) Reuter has plied *the* Fleet Street with the most sensational telegrams.

The article is here out of place, as 'Fleet Street,' etc., are proper names and proper names take no article. There are, however, some apparent exceptions to this. For instance, we may say *The High Street* as well as *High Street* ; but that is because *High* in

this connection is equivalent to chief, or principal and the High Street is the principal street of a town. Again, we may say '*the* Multan road' as well as 'Multan Road,' but in so doing we do not use the term as quite a proper name, but rather in a descriptive way, as *the road that leads to Multan*.

(*xxii*) In the heart of *the* Lahore city.

We should say either *Lahore city* (where the proper name dominates the common noun), or else *the city of Lahore*.

(*xxiii*) *The* Good Friday and *the* Christmas Day are not observed.

(*xxiv*) He was a graduate of *the* Cambridge University.

A proper name takes no article.

(*xxv*) She urged the necessity of making *the* female education more defined.

Female education at large is intended, so the definite article is out of place. If, instead of the objectionable phrase 'female education,' the phrase 'education of women' had been used, the article would have been right.

(*xxvi*) Nugent in 1813 addressing the Italians said: "*The* peoples of Italy, you have groaned long enough."

No article is used with the vocative case in English.

(*xxvii*) The year before *the* last.

The use of the article here is logical, but the practice is to say *the year before last*.

(*xxviii*) The event of *the* last week was the debate on the Budget.

Last week if a mere expression of period, should not have the article. It would, however, be right to say *the last week of the year*, or *of the session*, etc., because there the last week is being distinguished from previous weeks.

(*xxix*) *The* representative government is the best policy.

Government is here used in an abstract sense, and the addition of an adjective does not warrant the use of the article.

(*xxx*) The love of athletics has degenerated into a mad craze, and is affecting all *the* classes.

Classes in general are meant—not any particular classes as distinguished from others. The article, therefore, is out of place here. But we sometimes speak of *the classes*, as distinguished from *the masses*.

(*xxxi*) The average assessment on a holding is *the* heaviest in that area.

It would be correct to say, "*The heaviest average assessment...*" because there a predication would be made as to the heaviest average assessment. But that is not so in this sentence where the

adjective, though in the superlative degree, is used only quantitatively.

(*xxxii*) Oil was poured in *the* front of the couple.

Front is a noun, and it is quite correct to speak of '*the* front' of anything but 'in front of' is the accepted form when the phrase is used as a preposition.

(*xxxiii*) *The* yonder tower is very high.

Yonder, though called an adjective, is in effect a demonstrative pronoun like *this* or *that*, and does not take the article.

(*xxxiv*) It is the noblest institution for the training of *the* youth.

The definite article is out of place, since youth in general, and not any particular class of youth, is meant.

16. **Omission of Articles**. Many a time the articles are unjustifiably omitted. Here are examples :

(*a*) **A** *or* **an** *missing*. Study the following sentences from which the indefinite articles are missing :

(*i*) She invited me to sit down, and offered me betels and smoke.

Smoke in the sense of visible vapour is used without the article ; but an act of smoking is *a smoke*.

(*ii*) We have undergone great many difficulties.

(*iii*) The shrine where good many students are still living is lying in ruins.

It would be right to say *many difficulties*, *many students*, etc., or *very many*, without any article ; but when an adjective like *great* or *good* precedes the word *many*, the latter is a noun and not an adjective, and the article *a* is required. *Many* as a noun means a considerable number, and suggests a single group or body, however numerous the items composing it may be. When a pronoun follows, *of* is inserted, as in *many of them*.

(*iv*) Less than handful delegates came to the session.

(*v*) We see that this country is governed by handful of persons.

It should be *a handful* in each case.

(*vi*) Punishment to one for the deed of other cannot be termed justice.

It should be *another*. Observe that *one* is indentical with the article *a* (which is only another form of *one*), but *other* is merely an adjective.

(*vii*) The Muslim League should organize itself upon elective basis.

It should be *upon* **an** *elective basis*.

(*viii*) To provide the Republican Party with proper constitution this year should be your primary consideration.

It should be *a proper constitution.*

(*ix*) These gentlemen strike a match from distance and run away before the explosion takes place.

We should say *from a distance.*

(*x*) The spread of education is gradually placing all the classes on equal footing.

It should be *on an equal footing.*

(*xi*) I do not propose to enter into the various aspects of the question, but will content myself with placing before the reader *few* facts that he may be the better enabled to think over it.

(*xii*) *Few* years after, he came to Ispahan.

(*xiii*) Some of the books are priced at *few* annas each.

For *few* we should here have *a few* in all these examples. Both are grammatically correct, but the force of each is different, and the distinction requires careful observation. *A few* means simply a small number, but *few* without the article has rather the sense of *only* a small number—that is, a smaller number than might in ordinary course have been expected.

(*xiv*) Mere sentimental wish to go and do likewise cannot avail much.

The indefinite article is required, because *wish* stands for a concrete desire, not an abstract feeling denoted by the word *desire.* Had the word *desire* been used instead of *wish*, the article might have been either used or omitted. But *wish* is not so used. For example, one might say, "Desire is an important factor ...," but one should not say, "Wish is an important factor..."

(*xv*) There was *time* in the history of the world when the Muslims were in the van of civilization.

Not time in the abstract, but a particular undefined time is meant ; so we should have *There was a time...*

(*xvi*) He has explained how the agitators worked to convert loyal into disloyal territory.

The indefinite article is required before both *loyal* and disloyal.

(*b*) **The** *mising.* Study the following examples with the relevant comments :

(*i*) Of all things that mortal man bestows his thought on the thought of love is one that affects him to the utmost.

Here one particular thought is selected for mention to the exclusion of all others, and therefore the expression should have been '*the* one.'

(*ii*) Struggle, struggle was my motto last ten years.

This should be *the last ten years* or *these last ten years*, the being no other last ten years.

(*iii*) A precarious hand-to-mouth existence is prejudicial alike to spiritual, moral, and social development on which depends the stability of a nation.

It should have been *to the spiritual*, because the particular development contemplated is described by the last words, *on which depends*, etc.

(*iv*) Banat-i-Islam or daughters of Islam is the name of women's organization of this country.

It should have been *the daughters*, because they are particularized by the words *of Islam*.

(*v*) Request the committee to take necessary steps in this connection.

It should have been *the necessary steps*, as the object of them is particularized.

(*vi*) I heard it with greatest joy.

Heard with joy would have been correct, but the joy being defined as the *greatest*, the definite article is needed.

(*vii*) The majority of persons that constitute a nation are men of middle or poor classes.

It should be *the persons*, as they are defined as those which constitute a nation.

(*viii*) Is imprisonment in civil jail harsher than that in the military quarter-guard ?

In jail would be right ; but the jail being particularized as the *civil* one, the definite article is required.

(*ix*) The feeling of fear of God is not very common these days.

The fear in question being defined requires the article.

(*x*) Bahawalpur State ceased to exist when the West Pakistan Unit came into being.

The Bahawalpur State being one and individual, the definite article should be used. Bahawalpur would be right, because it is a proper name; but Bahawalpur State is more than a proper name.

(*xi*) They received very little of consideration which natural affection secures for the young.

The consideration in question is defined, and the definite article is required.

(*xii*) The organization has been doing creditable work in furtherance of national cause.

This should be *the national cause*, as there is only one.

(*xiii*) Free quarters are provided in vicinity of the school.

The *vicinity* in question is defined, so the definite article is required.

(*xiv*) It was won with the mighty arm of sword.

(*xv*) To talk of sword in this connection is both unhistorical and impolitic.

'*The* sword' is required.

(*xvi*) A stigma will attach to British name.

Even without the adjective added the word 'name' itself particularizes and requires the definite article.

(*xvii*) The produce will hardly enable him to pay up Government demand.

Here the noun *Government* is still more essentially specific.

(*xviii*) Large expensive factories seem to be out of question at present.

Question here stands for the subject of inquiry or discussion, and so should have the definite article. It is quite right to speak of putting a matter *to question* because *question* is there abstract, and means inquiry from outside the matter in hand.

(*xix*) One thing which pleased us most in the Governor's address was his promise of financial aid.

The superlative *most* requires the definite article before *one thing* as it has the effect of defining a particular thing or a particular class.

(*xx*) The anniversary this year will be celebrated with usual eclat.

'With eclat,' or 'with great eclat,' would have been right, but as the degree of eclat is specified by the adjective 'usual' we require *with the usual eclat*.

(*xxi*) Election cry is good, but we have to look at it from all points of view.

A particular cry being mentioned, the definite article should have been put before *election*.

(*xxii*) Some arrests have already been made, and prosecutions will soon be commenced in courts.

It should be '*the* courts,' the courts being a definite body.

(*xxiii*) Tax is further reduced.

The tax is a particular thing, and should have the article.

(*xxiv*) Where temples stand in gardens outside town.

The town is one and particular, and the definite article is required.

(*xxv*) Such a contingency is not likely to arise in near future.

'In future' would be right, but the attributive 'near' makes the definite article necessary.

(*xxvi*) The difference between the richer classes and masses is very great.

The contrast is between the richer classes and '*the* masses' —not a certain number of masses taken and other masses left, but the one great body of the populace distinguished from the richer classes.

(*xxvii*) Indian constitution utterly ignores the idea of the brotherhood of men.

Though the word *constitution* is not concrete in the sense of being material, it is not an abstract term, for it is a thing that has been built up. The Indian constitution is one and particular, and the definite article is required.

(*xxviii*) The parties who ought to be most interested were not on record.

Record here requires the definite article, as it means the specific file of papers forming the record of a suit.

(*xxix*) As soon as he put his foot on Pakistan shores, he tried to look like a devout Muslim.

The Pakistan shores are concrete and particular, and the definite article is required.

(*xxx*) There could be nothing more delightful to feed the senses than on 'dream in marble.'

It should be *the dream in marble*, as a particular building is referred to.

(*xxxi*) Japanese language contains an excellent literature.

It should be *The Japanese language*, the language being one and particular.

(*xxxii*) He gave this advice once last year or year before last.

Here we should have *the year before last*, that one year being particularized and separated from all others. It may be said that on the same principle we should also have *the last year*—and logically perhaps we should, just as in the case of *last ten years* in the example (*ii*) above. But the habit is to say *last year*, *last week*, *last night*, etc., when only a single measurement of time is involved and no numeral is used. When, however, the last year is being distinguished from any other year, the use of the article is proper as *the last year of the British rule*.

(*xxxiii*) This is far from truth.

The truth about the facts in question is something specific and particular, and the writer should have said *the truth*.

17. **Misuse of Articles**. Under this heading will be found examples of the misuse of the definite for the indefinite article and *vice versa*.

(*a*) **The** *used for* **a** *or* **an**. Study the following carefully :

(*i*) A little consideration will make us believe that this is not *the* change which is wrought by mere chance.

Here the writer has not before his eyes any change that is wrought by mere chance; he sees a change and says it is not of a particular character. He should have written *a change.*

(*ii*) There has been a storm in *the* teapot in the League circles.

The popular expression, *storm in a teapot,* does not contemplate any particular teapot.

(*iii*) *The* question is oftentimes asked as to what steps the association is going to take.

As the question is not made definite, the article should be indefinite. It would have been right to say, "*The question is often asked : What steps, etc.*" because there the question is definite.

(*iv*) Maulana Zafar Ali Khan is *the* resident of a village in the Gujrat district.

He is not *the sole resident,* he is *only a resident.*

(*v*) I am *the* life member of the Library.

This is similar.

(*vi*) Perhaps the authorities fear *the* state of things like that which occurred in the first quarter of the last century.

The fear would not be of *the identical state of things* which occurred last time, but only of *a state of things* resembling it.

(*vii*) The proposed amendment does not affect the non-minorities one way or *the* other.

Were two specified ways in question, this sentence would be right. But the statement is quite general, and we do not know how many possible ways there may be, so *the* should be *an.*

(*viii*) I have travelled from one corner of the province to *the* other.

There are more than two corners, hence '*to another.*'

(*ix*) In Sparta the military discipline was pushed to *the* extreme.

Extreme, though originally a superlative, is not always used as such in English, but is often used to express only a very high degree.

(*x*) The object of the Society is to stretch out *the* helping hand to the man who is down.

We should say '*a* helping hand.'

(*xi*) They were bound to keep the Government well informed about the needs of the country; but to use violently abusive language against the Government was quite *the* different thing altogether.

It should be *a different thing* as different things are numerous.

(*xii*) *The* deputation, like the one proposed, can do very useful work.

No definite existing deputation is referred to, but *a* possible one is contemplated.

(*xiii*) The sky was perfectly clear, and *the* west wind was blowing.

We speak of *the wind* when we mean the air in motion generally, and regard it as a single entity—just as we speak of *the sun*. But when we wish to individualize the wind blowing on a particular occasion, we should use the indefinite article. The definite article would be correct only if the West Wind were personified or a reference were made to its character.

(*b*) **A** *or* **an** *used for* **the**. Study the following sentences along with the relevant comments :

(*i*) He did it in *a* manner least calculated to provoke angry feelings.

It would have been all right to say *in a manner little calculated*, etc., if that would have expressed the meaning intended ; but the use of the word *least* restricts the manner in view to one only, and therefore the definite article should have been used.

(*ii*) Of all great movements, Rationalism occupies *a* most prominent place.

The most prominent place of all is definite ; hence *a* should be changed into *the*.

(*iii*) People who have one eye on earth and *an*other on heaven cannot do much good to the cause of social reform.

(*iv*) A fight between economy on one hand, and sentiment on *an*other is likely to ensue.

As there is only one other eye, or one other hand, the definite article should be used.

(*v*) This is probably *a* thin end of the wedge.

As there is only one thin end, the definite article should be used.

(*vi*) The West Pakistan Chief Minister, Dr. Khan Sahib, is *a* right man in the right place.

The figure is of one particular man fitting one particular place, and the definite article is required as much before the one as before the other,

EXERCISES

(*For* **Board** *Students*)

Correct or justify the following sentences :

1. The English is difficult language.
2. English language is very difficult.
3. Please lend me your English dictionary.
4. Time and tide wait for none.
5. Strike iron while it is hot.
6. Righteous shall prosper.
7. Laccadives is a group of islands near the Ceylon.
8. *The Pakistan Times* is a daily newspaper published from Lahore.
9. The virtue is its own reward.
10. He became king when he was hardly out of his teens.
11. He had long talk with me.
12. The new smuggling scandal is now the talk of the town.
13. He will certainly be here in few days' time.
14. His baby caught measles.
15. Give him pen and pencil.
16. The place abounds in milk and honey.
17. He belongs to West Pakistan, but I am from East Bengal.
18. The beauty is much prized by all.
19. The white and the red flower is very pretty.
20. He looked gift horse in mouth.

(*For* **University** *Students*)

Justify the use of articles in the following extract from Collins :

I ran to *the* wash-hand stand, drank some of *the* water in my jug, poured *the* rest out, and plunged my face into it, then sat down in *a* chair and tried to compose myself. I soon felt better. The change for my lungs from *the* fetid atmosphere of *the* gambling-room to *the* cool air of *the* apartment I now occupied ; *the* almost equally refreshing change for my eyes from the glaring gas-lights of the " Salon " to the dim, quiet flicker of one bedroom candle, aided wonderfully *the* restorative effects of cold water. *The* giddiness left me, and I began to feel *a* little like *a* reasonable being again. My first thought was of *the* risk of sleeping all night in *a* gambling-house ; my second, of *the* still greater risk of trying to get out after *the* house was closed, and of going home alone at night, through *the* streets of Paris, with a large sum of money about me. I had slept in worse places than this on my travels ; so I determined to lock, bolt, and barricade my door and take my chance till *the* next morning. Accordingly, I secured myself against all intrusion, looked under *the* bed and into *the* cupboard, tried *the* fastening of the window, and then, satisfied that I had taken every proper precaution, pulled off my upper clothing, put my light, which was *a* dim one, on *the* hearth among *a* feathery litter of wood ashes, and got into bed, with *the* handkerchief full of money under my pillow.

CHAPTER XIII

VERBS : PRELIMINARIES

1. Chief Word. The term *verb* is of Latin origin. It is derived from *verbum* which signifies a *word*. It is so called in grammar because, in fact, it is the principal word in a sentence. *A verb indicates accomplished or contemplated action*.

2. Formation of Verbs. Verbs are divided into two classes, **regular** and **irregular**. A *regular verb* is one which forms its past tense and paste participle by adding **d** or **ed** to the present tense, as

Call (present tense), *called* (past tense), *called* (past participle).

Love (present tense), *loved* (past tense) *loved* (past participle).

*It will be observed that regular verbs ending in mute *e* form their past tense and past participle by the addition of **d** only, but those ending in another letter add **ed**.

☞ This suffix (**d** or **ed**) is pronounced as follows :

(*i*) **ed** after *d* or *t*, as, *needed* (pronounced *need*-id), *completed* (pronounced kom-*pleet*-id).

(*ii*) **d** after (1) the consonants *b*, *g*, *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *v*, *z*, and (2) all vowels, as *crabbed* (pronounced krabd), *logged* (pronounced logd), *drilled* (pronounced drild), *confirm* (pronounced kon-*firmd*), *dined* (pronounced dynd), *blurred* (pronounced blurd), *raised* (pronounced rayzd), *delved* (pronounced delvd), *gazed* (pronounced gayzd), *baaed* (pronounced bahd), *freed* (pronounced freed), *denied* (pronounced de-*nyd*), *booed* (pronounced bood), *glued* (pronounced glewd).

(*iii*) **t** after *ch*, *f*, *k*, *p*, *sh*, as *enriched* (pronounced en-*richt*), *chafed* (pronounced chayft), *milked* (pronounced milkt), *strapped* (pronounced strapt), *slashed* (pronounced slasht).

3. The present participle of all verbs is formed by adding **ing** to the present tense, as *call* (present tense), *calling* (present participle).

*If the present ends in mute *e*, it drops it on becoming the present participle, as *come* (present tense), *coming* (present participle). But the *e* is retained if there is a danger of a word getting mixed up with another. Thus we have *singeing* (from singe) to distinguish it from *singing* (from sing). There are only eight words in English which retain their final mute *e* in the present participle. They are :

(*i*) *dyeing* (from dye) to distinguish it from *dying* (from *die*).

(*ii*) *singeing* (from singe) to distinguish it from *singing* (from sing).

(*iii*) *Springeing* (from springe) to distinguish it from *springing* (from spring).

(*iv*) *swingeing* (from swinge) to distinguish it from *swinging* (from swing).

(*v*) *tingeing* (from tinge) to distinguish it from *tinging* (from ting).

(*vi*) *eyeing* (from eye).

(*vii*) *hoeing* (from hoe).

(*viii*) *shoeing* (from shoe).

4. Verbs ending in *ie* omit the *e*, and change the *i* into *y* before **ing** as *tie, tying*.

5. Verbs of one syllable ending in *single* consonant, preceded by a *single* vowel, (or by *two* vowels, if the first is *u*), on assuming **ing** or **ed**, double the final consonant, as *ship, shipping, shipped; quit, quitting, quitted.*

But *suit, suiting, suited; bruit, bruiting, bruited* are exceptions.

6. Verbs ending in a single consonant, preceded by more than one vowel, [unless the one before the last be *u* or *w*.] do *not* double the final consonant, on assuming **ing**, as *load, loading, loaded; swab, swabbing, swabbed. Recruit, recruiting, recruited*, is however, an exception.

7. Verbs of more that one syllable ending in a single consonant, preceded by a single vowel, (or by two vowels, if the first is *u* or *w*), and having the accent on the last syllable, double the final consonant, on assuming **ing** or **ed**, as *defer, deferring, deferred; acquit, acquitting, acquitted.*

8. Verbs of more than one syllable ending in a single consonant, preceded by a single vowel, and not accented on the last syllable, do not double the final consonant, on assuming **ing**, as *recover, recovering; quiet, quieting.*

9. Verbs ending in *y*, preceded by a consonant, change the *y* into *i*, on assuming **ed** as *study, studied.*

But verbs ending in *y*, preceded by a *vowel*, on assuming *ed*, do not change the *y*, as *journey, journeyed.*

10. Verbs ending in *ee* omit the latter *e*, on assuming *ed*, as *agree, agreed; fee, feed.*

11. Verbs ending in c assume *k* before *ing* and *ed*, as *frolic, frolicking, frolicked; mimic, mimicking, mimicked; traffic, trafficking, trafficked.*

12. **Irregular Verbs.** Here are some useful lists :

(i) *Forty-five verbs like* **begin, began, begun**, *have different forms in the present tense, past tense, and past participle.*

Present Tense	*Past Tense*	*Past Participle*
Arise	arose	arisen
Am (is)	was	been
Begin	began	begun
Bid	bade (or bid)	bidden (or bid)
Bite	bit	bitten
Blow	blew	blown
Break	broke	broken
Choose	chose	chosen
Do	did	done
Draw	drew	drawn
Drink	drank	drunk
Drive	drove	driven
Eat	ate	eaten
Fall	fell	fallen
Fly	flew	flown
Forget	forgot	forgotten
Forsake	forsook	forsaken
Freeze	froze	frozen
Give	gave	given
Go	went	gone
Grow	grew	grown
Hide	hid	hidden
Know	knew	known
Lie	lay	lain
Ride	rode	ridden
Ring	rang	rung
Rise	rose	risen
See	saw	seen
Shake	shook	shaken
Shrink	shrank	shrunk
Sing	sang	sung
Sink	sank	sunk
Speak	spoke	spoken
Spit	spat or spit	spat or spit
Spring	sprang	sprung
Steal	stole	stolen
Strew	strewed	strewn

Present Tense	*Past Tense*	*Past Participle*
Strike	struck	struck (or stricken)
Swear	swore	sworn
Swim	swam	swum
Take	took	taken
Throw	threw	thrown
Tear	tore	torn
Wear	wore	worn
Write	wrote	written

(ii) *Fifty-three verbs like* **buy, bought, bought**, *have the same form for the past tense and past participle but a different form in the present tense :*

Present Tense	*Past Tense*	*Past Participle*
Beseach	besought	besought
Bind	bound	bound
Bleed	bled	bled
Breed	bred	bred
Bring	brought	brought
Build	built	built
Buy	bought	bought
Catch	caught	caught
Cling	clung	clung
Creep	crept	crept
Deal	dealt	dealt
Die	died	died
Feed	fed	fed
Feel	felt	felt
Fight	fought	fought
Find	found	found
Flee	fled	fled
Fling	flung	flung
Get	got	got (U. S., gotten)
Grind	ground	ground
Have	had	had
Hear	heard	heard
Hold	held	held
Keep	kept	kept
Lead	led	led
Leave	left	left
Lend	lent	lent

Present Tense	*Past Tense*	*Past Participle*
Lose	lost	lost
Make	made	made
Mean	meant	meant
Meet	met	met
Read	read	read
Say	said	said
Seek	sought	sought
Sell	sold	sold
Send	sent	sent
Shine	shone	shone
shoe	shod	shod
Shoot	shot	shot
Sit	sat	sat
Spend	spent	spent
Stand	stood	stood
Stick	stuck	stuck
Sting	stung	stung
Sweep	swept	swept
Swing	swung	swung
Teach	taught	taught
Tell	told	told
Think	thought	thought
Tread	trod	trod (or trodden)
Wind	wound	wound
Wring	wrung	wrung
Win	won	won

(iii) Two verbs have the same form in the present tense and past participle, but a different form in the past tense.

Present Tense	*Past Tense*	*Past Participle*
Come	came	come
Run	ran	run

(iv) Sixteen verbs, such as **cut, cut, cut**; **cost, cost, cost** *have the same form in the present tense, past tense and past participle* :—

Present Tense	*Past Tense*	*Past Participle*
Beat	beat	beat or beaten
Cast	cast	cast
Cost	cost	cost
Cut	cut	cut

Present Tense	*Past Tense*	*Past Participle*
Hit	hit	hit
Hurt	hurt	hurt
Let	let	let
Put	put	put
Rid	rid	rid
Set	set	set
Shut	shut	shut
Shred	shred or shredded	shred or shredded
Split	split	split
Spread	spread	spread
Thrust	thrust	thrust
Wet	wet	wet

13. **Dual Forms**. Aside from the 116 irregular verbs, there are 61 verbs in English which have two forms, one regular and one irregular; *hang, hanged, hanged; hang, hung, hung*. These verbs are called **redundant** (Latin, *re*, back, again; *undare* from *unda*, a wave; hence to overflow), overflowing verbs. In many cases such as *hanged* and *hung*, a different meaning is conveyed by the two forms, as

The man hanged or has hanged. The picture hung or has hung.
The woman has borne a child; the child was born.

The more common form is given first in the following list which comprises such words

Present Tense	*Past Tense*	*Past Participle*
Abide	abode, abided	abode, abided
Awake	awaked, awoke	awaked, awoke
Bear	bore, bare	borne, born (passive)
Belay	belaid, belayed	belaid, belayed
Bend	bent, bended	bent, bended
Bereave	bereft, bereaved	bereft, bereaved
Bet	betted, bet	betted, bet
Blend	blended, blent	blended, blent
Bless	blessed, blest	blessed, blest
Burn	burned, burnt	burned, burnt
Clothe	clothed, clad	clothed, clad
Crow	crew, crowed	crowed
Curse	cursed, curst	cursed, curst
Dare	dared, durst	dared
Dig	dug, digged	dug, digged
Dream	dreamt, dreamed	dreamt, dreamed
Dwell	dwelt, dwelled	dwelt, dwelled

Geld	gelded, gelt	gelded, gelt
Gild	gilded, gilt	gilded, gilt
Grave	graved	graved, graven
Hang	hung, hanged	hung, hanged
Heave	heaved, hove	heaved, hove
Hew	hewed	hewn, hewed
Kneel	knelt, kneeled	knelt, kneeled
Knit	knitted, knit	knitted, knit
Lade	laded	laden, laded
Lean	leaned, leant	leaned, leant
Leap	leapt, leaped	leapt, leaped
Learn	learnt, learned	learnt, learned
Light	lighted, lit	lighted, lit
Mow	mowed	mown, mowed
Pen	penned, pent	penned, pent
Prove	proved	proved, proven
Quit	quit, quitted	quit, quitted
Rap	rapped, rapt	rapped, rapt
Reave	reft, reaved	reft, reaved
Rive	rived	riven, rived
Saw	sawed	sawn, sawed
Seethe	seethed	seethed, sodden
Shape	shaped	shaped shapen
Shave	shaved	shaved, shaven
Shear	sheared, shore	shorn, sheared
Show	showed	shown, showed
Slit	slit, slitted	slit, slitted
Smell	smelt, smelled	smelt, smelled
Sow	sowed	sown, sowed
Speed	sped, speeded	sped, speeded
Spell	spelled, spe't	spelled, spelt
Spill	spilled, spilt	spilled, spilt
Spoil	spoiled, spoilt	spoiled, spoilt
Stave	staved, stove	staved, stove
Stay	stayed, staid	stayed, staid
String	strung, stringed	strung, stringed
Strive	strove	striven, strove
Sweat	sweated, sweat	sweated, sweat
Swell	swelled	swollen, swelled
Thrive	throve, thrived	thrived, thriven

Wake	Waked, woke	waked, woke
Weave	wove, weaved	woven, weaved
Wed	wedded	wedded, wed
Work	worked, wrought	worked, wrought

14. **Agreement in Person.** In grammar, the most important thing to know about a verb is the way it agrees with its subject in person and number. Here are certain simplified, practical rules regarding agreement in person :

(*i*) If the subject consists of too or more words of different persons connected by *either......or*, *neither......nor*, the verb agrees in person with the word nearest to it :

Either you or he *has* to do the work.
Neither she nor I *know* him.

(*ii*) If the subject consists of two or more words of different persons joined by *and*, the verb is in the first person (rather than the second or third person) and in the second person (rather than in the third person). Thus for a subject having first and second persons, or first and third persons, or first, second and third persons, the verb will correspond to the first person plural, as

Jones and I *were* in the States last year.
You, and I *were* in the U. K. the year before last.
You, he and I *were* in the Army during World War II.
You and Smith *were* in the picturehouse yesterday, wern't you ?

* The verb used in the form *let me* (see), *let us* (go), *let him* (read), *let her* (stitch), *let it* (be forgotten), *let them* (come) has the verb in the second person, as the complete sentence is, *you let* me (us, etc.) go (etc.), the subject in every case being the second personal pronoun, *you*.

(*iii*) For impersonal forms, the pronouns *we*, *you*, *it*, *they*, *one* are used and the verb agrees with the person of that particular pronoun which forms its subject. Here are examples :

It is said he is addicted to drinking.

They say familiarity breeds contempt.

You would have said that the country was on the verge of a civil war.

We say barking dogs seldom bite.

One no doubt feels so, but can *one* muster courage enough to say it to his face?

(*iv*) **First Person Plural.** The verb (along with the pronoun) is in the first person *plural* (and not *singular*) even when the singular is intended in the speech or writing of the kings and the editors of the various types of periodicals. Here are examples :

(*a*) A king's soliloquy :

Now is the winter of *our* discontent.
Made glorious summer by this sun of York ;
And all the clouds that lour'd upon *our* house
In the deep bosom of the ocean buried.
Now are *our* brows bound with victorious wreaths ;
Our bruised arms hung up for monuments ;
Our stern-alarums changed to merry meetings,
Our dreadful marches to delightful measures.
—Shakespeare : *Richard III.*

(*b*) A newspaper editorial :

However, in view of *our* grave misgivings, which many in Pakistan are bound to share, *we* would urge the department concerned to cancel the deal and make other arrangements for carrying out a plan which otherwise appears sound and useful.
—*The Pakistan Times.*

(*v*) **Polite Forms**. The *third* person is sometimes used for the *first* and the *second* for the sake of politeness and we say :

Your humble petitioner *prays* (for *I pray*).

Comfort my liege : Why *looks* your grace so pale ? (for ......why do you *look* so pale ?) —Shakespeare : *Richard II.*

15. **Agreement in Number**. The agreement of a verb with its subject in number is no less important. All that it means is that a singular subject should have a singular verb and a plural subject a plural verb. Certain implications of this general rule have already been discussed in the relevant chapter on nouns. Here follows a more detailed and thorough discussion.

(*i*) A subject consisting of more than one noun joined by *and* takes a verb in the plural, provided that these nouns do not refer to the same person. Thus we say :

Your brother *and* sister *have* come to see you. The verb is in the plural because the subject comprises two nouns (referring to different persons) which are joined by *and*. But we say :

My guide *and* counsellor *is* no more.

The verb is in the singular here because the *guide and counsellor* is one and the same person.

☞ In this connection, it is very important to remember that when two or more nouns forming the multiple subject of a verb refer each to a different person, a separate article (*a*, *an*, *the*) is used with each noun ; but when they refer to one and the same person, the article is used with the first noun only, and is not repeated.

* If, however, the two or more nouns comprising the subject of a verb and joined by *and*, express a single idea, the verb is usually in the singular, as

The *sum and substance* of the argument *is* that it is a faked up charge.

(*ii*) A singular verb is used with a multiple subject comprising singular nouns joined by *or*, *nor*, *either......or*, *neither......nor*.

Neither Victor *nor* John *has* turned up.

Any man *or* woman that goes there will be prosecuted.

* When, however, one of nouns so joined happens to be in the plural, it is placed nearest to the verb which must be in the plural as in

Neither Mr. Abu Husain Sarkar nor his Cabinet colleagues could do anything to get the Speaker's ruling annulled.

(*iii*) Two singular nouns joined by *as well as*, *along with*, *together with*, *besides*, *in addition to*, *and not*, to form a multiple subject take the verb in the singular ; as

He *as well as his* mother *was* present on the occasion.

Mr. Mohammad Ali *along with* Mr. Hamidul Huq Chaudhry *has* visited the Chinese Peoples' Republic.

This book *along with* portions of that one *covers* the whole syllabus.

Arnold *together with* his sister *is* travelling incognito.

Alfred James *and not* his brother William *was* absent.

He *besides* his cousin *attends* the meetings regulary.

She *in addition* to her sister *has* donated large sums of money to this noble cause.

(*iv*) A singular subject, even though separated from its verb, will put it in the singular, as

Every many, woman or child *has* donated something.
Each person *has* got some share in it.
One of my friends *is* a man of literary tastes.

☞(*v*) A verb which has a relative pronoun (*who*, *that*, etc.) for its subject **must** agree in number and person with the antecedent of that pronoun. This is a very important rule, the lack of strictly observing it being a frequent cause of mistakes. Thus we should say :

I, who *am* a student, will continue to be so throughout my life and never discontinue my studies even at the end of my college career.

I have been in the show to eliminate *all those* who *are* crooks, says Dr. Khan Sahib.

(*vi*) The verb is in the singular with a noun which is singular in meaning, though plural in form, and *vice versa*. Here are examples of both.

(*a*) Politics *has* become a very dirty game in this country. Mathematics *is* his *bete noire*.

(*b*) Four score *make* eighty. Twelve dozens *are* called a gross.

(*vii*) Collective nouns have been dealt with at length in a previous chapter. The general rule of agreement in their case is to have a singular verb when you stress the idea of unity, and plural one when you have in mind the various individuals comprising that whole. So the same word may be used in different ways to suit different contexts, and we may quite correctly say :

(*a*) The committee *is* a representative, elected body.
The committee *were* at sixes and sevens,

(*b*) A hundred rupees *is* not a big amount these days.
The hundred rupees he gave me *were* all counterfeit.

(*viii*) The word *all* takes a verb in the plural except when it means *everything*. Thus we say, "All *were* agreeable to this proposal," but the proverb runs, "All's (all *is*) well that ends well."

(*ix*) The phrase *as follows* has the verb always in the singular as it has an impersonal subject which is understood. Thus we say :

The regulations are as *follows*.
The suggestions put forward by him are as *follows*.

EXERCISES

Correct or justify the following sentences :

(*For* **Board** *Students*)

1. You as well as he is ready to go.
2. Neither you nor Smith are to blame.
3. She is one of those who are always on the look-out to do a kindness to others.
4. Four times five make twenty.
5. Neither Jimmy nor his brothers are to be found.
6. One of them have come to see you.
7. She is one of the persons who are free from vanity.
8. What are poverty or riches to him ?
9. *Gulliver's Travels* are written by Swift.
10. He was one of the wisest persons who has ever lived.

(*For* **University** *Students*)

1. All are waiting for you in the Senate.
2. All is over now ; it is no use crying over spilt milk.
3. Twenty five miles are not a long distance.
4. *The Canterbury Tales* are the most famous of Chaucer's works.
5. I am one of those who are unable to withhold their assent.
6. It is I who is going to Peshawar.
7. Truth and honour are a more important matter then mere monetary gain.
8. I do not know whether his dress or manners is more offensive.
9. The erstwhile colleague and friend have let me down.
10. The colleague and the friend has come to my rescue.

CHAPTER XIV

VERBS, VOICE, MOOD AND TENSE

1. There are verbs whose action passes from the subject to a direct or indirect object, and there are verbs whose action stops at the subject. Because of their passing on (or *transition*) to the object, the verbs of the first category are known as **transitive**; and for their not passing on (or *lack of transition*) to the object, those of the second category are termed *intransitive*. The importance of this classification lies in the fact that intransitive verbs can be used in the **active voice** only, but transitive verbs can be used in the **active as well as the passive voice.**

2. The difference between the *active* and the *passive* voice is fundamentally the same as that between our Urdu معروف (active) and مجہول (passive), but there is a world of difference between the rules governing them in the two languages. The Urdu فعل مجہول has no subject but the English passive voice has as good a subject as that of the active voice. The distinction between them lies only in this: Whereas the subject of a verb in the active voice is the *doer* or *active agent*, that of a verb in the passive voice is a *passive agent* and is acted upon. Take, for instance, the following sentences: (**Active Voice**) *Mr. Longman* (subject) gave *me* (indirect object) a *book* (direct object). (**Passive Voice**) (*a*) *I* (subject) was given a *book* (retained object) by *Mr. Longman* (object to the preposition *by*). (**Passive Voice**) (*b*) A *book* (subject) was given to *me* (retained object) by *Mr. Longman* (object to the preposition *by*).

3. Now there is no hard and fast rule as to which object to change into subject and which to retain in transforming a verb from the active to the passive voice. All that can be said is that either the need for emphasis determines the preference, or the object representing a *person* is preferred to the object representing a *thing* while elevating it to the status of the subject.

* The reflexive pronoun is never used as a subject even if the verb is changed into the passive voice. Thus while changing, "*He hurt himself*" from active into passive voice, we cannot say "*Himself was hurt by him.*" This form is incorrect and the passive voice form will be, "He was hurt by himself."

4. We must be on guard against an attempt to change the adverbial accusative into a subject in the passive voice. Whereas we can correctly say, "*He slept an hour,*" or "*He worked all day,*" it would be simply ridiculous to change these sentences into "*An hour was slept by him*" or "All day was worked by him." The reason is

that the verbs *slept* and *worked* (in this sense) are *intransitive* (and not transitive) verbs. As such they can have no object. The words following them are not objects but mere adverbs which have no right to become a subject in any case.

5. Expressions like "*He is come.*" "*He is gone*" are not passives because the verbs *come* and *go* are intransitive and as such cannot be used in the passive voice. However, since they are sanctioned by usage we have to accept them as they are without building other ssntences on their pattern.

☞ Contrariwise, there are certain transitive verbs which are used with a passive meaning even in the active voice. Two of such verbs frequently used are *smell* and *taste*. We say, "The flower *smells* sweet" meaning thereby that the flower, being smelt, is found to be very sweet and fragrant. Similarly when we say "The milk *tastes* sour" we mean that the milk, being tasted, is found to be sour.

6. In Urdu we avoid the use of the passive voice as far as possible, and reject it altogether when the active subject is known. But it is otherwise with English where the passive voice is very frequently employed, in preference even to the active voice. *You will be well-advised to use the passive in the following instances* :

(*i*) Where the subject is unknown or difficult to be stated, as :

It *is said* that he will be canonized one day.

He *was taken prisoner* in World War II.

(*ii*) When we evince greater interest in the *sufferer* rather than the *doer* of the action, as

The old beggar *was run over* by the limousine.

(*iii*) When the subject is so clear from the context that there can be no mistake about it, as

He *was dismissed* (in place of the active form, "His employers dismissed him").

(*iv*) When variety is called for. Here is an example :

As already pointed out, he had devoted his whole life to the service of the people.

This in fact, is equivalent to, "As I have already......"

* Sometimes the transition from the active to the passive voice is made right in the middle of a sentence with the object of relieving the sentence of its monotony, as

He fought with his back to the wall, and his valiance was greately admired.

7. **Transitive used as Intransitive**. Mistakes frequently occur from the use of transtive verbs as intransitive.

Study the following sentences carefully where the preposition should be omitted and the verb left to govern the object :

(*i*) Could they possibly *desire* for anything less ?

(*ii*) She *ordered for* the carriage.

(*iii*) To *contemplate on* the great benefit.

(*iv*) They *demand for* a reduction of expenditure.

(*v*) I need not *labour on* this point any further.

(*vi*) Inspiration is altogether spiritual and *influences on* the spirit of man and *on* that alone.

(*vii*) He cannot *help for* it.

(*viii*) He has a grasp of public questions which very few can *claim to*.

(*ix*) We do not *remember of* such ceremonials.

(*x*) He *attempted at* a lame explanation.

(*xi*) The results *desired for* cannot be achieved.

(*xii*) He reproached him for making up his mind to *contest for* a seat.

(*xiii*) They must *expiate for* the sin at any cost.

(*xiv*) They may, therefore, reasonably *claim for* a share in the privilege.

(*xv*) So long as we *lack of* such men amongst us all our attempts at big university schemes must remain in the realm of dreams.

(*xvi*) I *regret at* the delay.

(*xvii*) It is difficult to *hit at* the exact point.

(*xviii*) Has any conference ever *petitioned to* the Government against the waste of precious life ?

(*xix*) He *encounters* on his coming home *with* the strong and persistent resolution.

(*xx*) He *emphasized on* the importance of introducing machinery.

(*xxi*) Its chief aim will be to *emphasize upon* the common and true basis of all religions.

(*xxii*) No counsel, however wise, is *heeded to* when it affects the army.

(*xxiii*) Taking down a volume, he began to *discuss on* its merits.

(*xxiv*) He *suggested* among other things *for* the setting up of a new party.

Here follow other examples of the wrong use of a transitive verb as intransitive :

Public opinion *focusses* principally upon that part of the report.

The noun *focus* means a hearth, a central point, and the verb

means *to bring to a point*. The sentence might run "*Public opinion is focussed......*"

He *warned that* the advocacy of wrong methods tended to divert attention from the right methods.

To *warn* is transitive, and requires an object, such as *us* or *them*.

The eternal One *having manifested*, on the one hand, as the Logos, *manifests*, on the other, as the Root of Matter.

To *manifest* is always transitive. We should have *being manifested* or *having become manifest*.

There was a political consciousness *pervading throughout* the whole country, *permeating* even *with* the masses.

Both the verbs are transitive ; both the prepositions should be omitted.

Two or three years after she *missed*, he received a letter from her.

To *miss* is now used intransitively only in the sense of to fail. The text should have *was missed*.

The worship *comprised of* reciting verses.

Comprise is always transitive, so the *of* should be omitted. Or the intransitive *consist* might be used, and the *of* retained.

The suggestion has certainly much to *recommend in* it.

Here also the the verb is transitive, and requires an object. The *in* should be omitted.

A friend volunteered to *accompany*.

The verb requires an object, such as *me*, *him*, or as the case may be.

However these aspects may differ, in one aspect they all *resemble*.

An object such as *each other* or *one another* should be added.

"Of course I would," *assured* the Begum.

The verb requires an object, namely, the person addressed.

A document binding the bride's father in a contract so that he may not *defraud* hereafter.

Defraud is always transitive, and requires an object such as, the bridegroom's party. Or the phrase *commit fraud* might have been used.

The nation seemed to have *estranged* from its past.

We should say *been estranged*, or *become estranged*.

He *broached on* the subject.

This should be *broached the subject*.

They still hug *to* their old beliefs.

To hug is transitive, and the preposition should be omitted.

The writer *addresses* in the following strain.

Some objective as *us* or *his readers* is required after addresses.

To the lay mind the exclusion of any evidence may *strike* as a piece of injustice.

To strike, in this sense, is transitive, and requires an object. We should say, "The exclusion strikes the lay mind......"

Those who wish to *dissociate from* Government altogether.

Here *dissociate* requires an object such as *themselves*.

We cannot any longer *suffer* to be guided by them.

Suffer, in this sense, is transitive, and an object such as *ourselves* is necessary.

It is quite in consonance with the policy lately *launched* into by the authorities.

There is confusion here between the two expressions *to launch a thing* and *to launch into a thing*. Grammatically the sentence may be right, but if so taken it does not express what the writer evidently means ; for instance, the authorities *launch* their own schemes —they do not *launch into* ready-made schemes One may launch (transitively) a vessel, or launch (intransitively) into the sea.

(*i*) The news which *reaches* from Karachi.

(*ii*) Sometimes the information *reaches* too late.

(*iii*) The particulars that *reach* from East Bengal require corroboration.

(*iv*) The place *where* he *reached* was a desolate tract.

To reach is here a transitive verb, and requires an object, such as *us* in the first three cases, or *which* in the last. Or the intransitive *arrive* might be used.

The spirit again *visited*.

The verb is transitive and requires an object as *him*, etc.

The proposal *initiates* with some ardent students.

This verb also is transitive, and requires an object. Either "*some ardent students initiated the proposal*," or "*The proposal was initiated*, etc.," would do. Or, "*the proposal originates with......*"

As soon as he sees some men doing honour to him, he *puffs up* within himself.

To puff up is common as a transitive verb, but is not used intransitively. The intransitive *to puff* does not mean to swell, but to breathe or blow hard.

When a relief lies in our own hands we have to *exert*.

This intransitive use of *to exert* is permissible. It should be followed by *ourselves*.

I seriously *challenge* if any one can show me a single instance.

This should be *challenge any one to show me*, etc. Or *question* in its intransitive use might replace *challenge*.

A tall person was wending slowly along the road with a few boxes of grapes in his hand.

To wend is not now used thus intransitively. We should say *wending his way*.

That a whole class should be persecuted because they belong to one particular religion *revolts against* the fundamental canons of justice.

To revolt in the sense of to renounce allegiance is intransitive, and may be followed by *against*; but here it is used in its transitive sense of *to shock*.

We earnestly hope that we may for a long time to come, be spared *of* this uncouth reversal.

To spare in this sense is transitive, and may even take two objects. The *of* in the text should be omitted. Compare Dryden:

> Spare my sight the pain
> Of seeing what a world of tears it cost you.

8. **Intransitive used as Transitive**. Alternately, an intransitive verb is sometimes wrongly used as a transitive verb. Study the following sentences to avoid such mistakes:

The millowners will have *nothing* to complain.

Here *complain* is made to govern the nouns *nothing* and *much*, which it cannot do. *Of* should be inserted after *complain*.

Wives and sisters had often to *drudge themselves* to death.

The object *themselves* should be omitted.

Superstition had *degenerated* the nation.

To *degenerate*, again, is intransitive, and can take no object. "*Caused the nation to degenerate*" would do.

This school shortly *developed itself* into a regular girls' school.

This is, perhaps, not positively wrong, but the usual expression would be *developed* only. *Develop itself* would be more naturally used of a thing that grows from within and of its own accord, than of a school which can only be developed by external influence.

All individual souls *are emanated* from Him.

Emanate is very rarely used transitively. We should say *have emanated*.

This contemplative mood has *drifted him* to inaction.

To drift, in this sense, is used only intransitively. The sentence should be "*has caused him to drift.*" Or the transitive verb to 'drive' might be used instead of to *drift*, and we should say, "*is being driven.......*"

The rivers *debouch their contents* into the Atlantic Ocean.

To debouch is intransitive, and cannot take an object. *Their contents* should be omitted, or a transitive verb like *pour* substituted.

His mother remonstrated with him on his folly, and *desisted him* from proceeding further in the matter.

We might say *induced him to desist from*.

She did as her conscience *dictated her*.

To dictate is used transitively of the thing dictated, as, *to dictate a letter*; but in the text *to* must be added after the verb.

He is a *failed* B.A.

To fail in this sense is intransitive, and the past participle cannot be thus used as an adjective.

Even as a hungry man does not wait for others to commence a meal before he *falls to it*.

To fall is intransitive, and the addition to it of the adverb *to* (for *to* is here an adverb, not a preposition) does not make it transitive. The object *it* should be omitted or be preceded by the preposition *on*.

I pray you not to *insist* me to do a thing which I can't.

We should say, *not to insist on my doing a thing which I can't* do.

High prices have been *ruling* the country for over three years.

To rule is transitive in the sense of *reign*; but in this it is intransitive and should be followed by *in*.

9. **Mood**. The mood (also called *mode*) of a verb is a form it adopts in order to indicate the speaker's mood or state of mind. The usually recognized moods in English are:

(*a*) **The Indicative**, *i.e.*, the mood of certainty which denotes action, as *He runs*. *She ran*;

(*b*) **The Subjunctive,** *i.e.*, the mood of dependence in which not a fact, but only a thought or idea is expressed, as *If he should run* ;

(*c*) **The Imperative**, or the mood of command, in which an order is issued or a prayer made, as *Go away* ;

(*d*) **The Infinitive**, or the undefined mood, which cannot be used as the predicate of a sentence, as *to see*.

10. **Tense**. According to its derivation, the word *tense* (from Latin *tempos*) means time. In grammar, a tense is the form of a verb which indicates at what time the action is performed. The three main divisions of tense are the **Present**, the **Past** and the **Future**. These correspond to present, past and future divisions of time. Each of these has four sub-divisions :

If the action is simply stated without telling of its continuance or completion it is termed **Indefinite**, if it is or was still going on it is termed **Continuous**, if it is complete it is termed **Perfect**, if it has been going on till a certain time it is termed **Perfect Continuous**.

11. **Affirmative Tenses**. Here is a table of both the voices of these tenses in the indicative mood showing the form of the first person in each case :

Voice	Tense	Indefinite	Continuous	Perfect	Perfect Continuous
Active	Present	I see	I am seeing	I have seen	I have been seen
	Past	I saw	I was seeing	I had seen	I had been seeing
	Future	I shall see	I shall be seeing	I shall have seen	I shall have been seeing
Passive	Present	I am seen	I am being seen	I have been seen	
	Past	I was seen	I was being seen	I had been seen	
	Future	I shall be seen		I shall have been seen	

12. **Negative Tenses**. This is the **Affirmative** form in which something has been asserted about somebody. There are two more forms : **Negative** in which something is denied about somebody

and **Interrogative**, in which something is asked about him. Tables of negative tenses on the pattern of that for the affirmative are given below :

Voice	Tense	Indefinite	Continuous	Perfect	Perfect Continuous
Active	Present	I do not see	I am not seeing	I have not seen	I have not been seen
	Past	I did not see	I was not seeing	I had not seen	I had not been seen
	Future	I shall not see	I shall not be seeing	I shall not have seen	I shall not have been seeing
Passive	Present	I am not seen	I am not being seen	I have not been seen	
	Past	I was not seen	I was not being seen	I had not been seen	
	Future	I shall not be seen		I shall not have been seen	

13. **Interrogative Tenses.** Here is a table of the Interrogative tenses :

Voice	Tense	Indefinite	Continuous	Perfect	Perfect Continuous
Active	Present	Do I see ?	Am I seeing?	Have I seen?	Have I been seen ?
	Past	Did I see ?	Was I seeing ?	Had I seen?	Had I been seen ?
	Future	Shall I see?	Shall I be seeing ?	Shall I have seen ?	Shall I have been seeing?
Passive	Present	Am I seen?	Am I being seen ?	Have I been seen ?	
	Past	Was I seen?	Was I being seen ?	Had I been seen ?	
	Future	Shall I be seen ?		Shall I have been seen?	

14. The present indefinite tense has a further form called the **emphatic**. It runs *I do see*, etc.,

15. Here is further chart of the complete conjugation of various important tenses in all the moods :

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE MOOD

Present tense (habitual) : I see, thou seest, he sees ; we see, you see, they see.

Present tense (emphatic) : I do see, thou dost see, he does see ; we do see, you do see, they do see.

Present tense (progressive) : I am seeing, thou art seeing, he is seeing, we are seeing, you are seeing, they are seeing.

Past tense, I saw, thou sawst, he saw ; we saw, you saw, they saw.

Present Perfect : I have seen, thou hast seen, he has seen ; we have seen, you have seen, they have seen.

Past Perfect : I had seen, thou hadst seen, he had seen ; we had seen, you had seen, they had seen.

Future tense : I shall see, thou wilt see, he will see ; we shall see, you will see, they will see.

Future Perfect : I shall have seen, thou wilt have seen, he will have seen ; we shall have seen, you will have seen, they will have seen.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Present tense : If I see, if thou see, if he see ; if we see, if you see, if they see.

Past tense : If I saw, etc. (all invariable).

IMPERATIVE MOOD

Let me see, See thou ! Let him see, Let us see, See ye ! or See ! Let them see.

INFINITIVE

Present : To see. *Past* : To have seen. *Future* : To be about to see.

PARTICIPLE

Present : Seeing. *Past* : Seen.

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE MOOD

Present tense (habitual) : I am seen, thou art seen, he is seen; we are seen, you are seen, they are seen.

Present tense (progressive) : I am being seen, thou art being seen, he is being seen ; we are being seen, you are being seen, they are being seen.

Past tense : I was seen, thou wast seen, he was seen ; we were seen, you were seen, they were seen.

Present Perfect : I have been seen, thou hast been seen, he has been seen ; we have been seen, you have been seen, they have been seen.

Past Perfect : I had been seen, thou hadst been seen, he had been seen ; we had been seen, you had been seen, they had been seen.

Future tense : I shall be seen, thou wilt be seen, he will be seen ; we shall be seen, you will be seen, they will be seen.

Future Perfect : I shall have been seen, thou wilt have been seen, he will have been seen ; we shall have been seen, you will have been seen, they will have been seen.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Present tense : If I be seen, if thou be seen, if he be seen, etc. (invariable).

Past tense : If I were seen, if thou wert seen, if he were seen etc.

IMPERATIVE

Let me be seen. Be seen or Be thou seen ! Let him be seen ; Let us be seen, Be seen or Be ye seen ! Let them be seen.

INFINITIVE

Present : To be seen. *Past* : To have been seen. *Future* : To be about to be seen.

PARTICIPLE

Present : Being seen. *Past* : Having been seen.

16. **The Use of Tenses**. A mere knowledge of the forms of various tenses will not be profitable without a thorough knowledge of, and practice in, their use. The following notes should be quite helpful in this connection.

17. **Present Indefinite**. This tense is used to indicate what is actually taking place at the time, as *I write, she reads*.

(i) The habitual form expresses habit or permanent action, as "*He gets up every day at 5 in the morning.*"

(ii) Sometimes it is used to express a general or universal truth, as "*The sun sets in the west.*"

(iii) When used instead of the past, it is known as the **historic past**, and serves to make a narrative more vivid. Here is an example from Browning :

So the storm *subsides* to calm :
They *see* the green trees wave
On the heights o'erlooking Greve
Hearts that bled *are stanched* with balm. —*Herve Riel.*

(*iv*) It is generally used instead of the future with verbs of motion like *come, go, return, sail, start.*

He *goes* to Karachi early next week. (Actually it means, "He *will go......*").

(*v*) It is sometimes used for the present perfect tense, as He goes to the States next fall, I *learn* (used for "......I *have learnt.*")

(*vi*) In subordinate clauses beginning with *if* or *when*, the use of the present indefinite tense is worth nothing. It expresses the future when the main clause has a future tense. Here is an example :

He will come to receive me *when* I *go* there. (It means, "When I shall go there, he will come to receive me.)

18. **Present Continuous**. This tense represents an action as continuing at the time of speaking, as *I am writing, he is sitting near the radio set.*

More frequently even than the present indefinite, it is used to denote future, as

He *is going* on pilgrimage this season.

*The expression *is going*, the present continuous tense from *to go*, when followed by some other infinitive has acquired a permanent future significance and is treated as the equivalent of *about (to), on the verge of* :

He *is going to* make a new bid (=He will......).

19. **Present Perfect**. This tense denotes an action that has been just now completed, as *I have done my work*. Like all other perfect tenses, it refers to two periods of time. It refers to the past and the present at once, but our attention is focussed on the completion of the action *just now*, rather than on its occurrence in the past. If it had ended earlier, simple past would have been used instead of this tense.

☞ There is a subtle distinction between the past and the present indefinite tenses. This will be evident from a comparative study of the following two sentences :—

(*a*) I *served* here for two years.

(*b*) I *have served* here for two years.

Both the sentences point out towards a completion of two years of service, but while the first one implies that the speaker is no longer in service at the institution under reference the second one implicitly informs us of his continuance in service to date. Bearing this difference in mind, we find that it is wrong to use the present continuous tense in a sentence in which there is an indication of the past. We must not write such sentences as, "*Jamil has died last night.*" or *I have appeared in the Higher Secondary Examination*

in April 1956. These sentences, we should now realize, are wrong. The correct way to express these ideas is to say :

Jamil *died* last night.

I *appeared* in the Higher Secondary Examination in April, 1956.

20. **Present Perfect Continuous.** This tense is very much like the *present perfect* discussed in the last article, but it further emphasizes the continuousness of the action completed just now. "I have been reading *The Faerie Queene*" places greater stress on the continuity of my study of Spenser's masterpiece than if I had simply said, "I have read *The Faerie Queene*."

21. **Past Indefinite.** It is also termed **preterite**. This tense denotes a single act in the past. We have already noted the difference in its meaning from that of the present perfect in article 16 above. It is correctly used when we say :

All the West Pakistan provinces and States were merged into one unit on October 14, 1955.

(*i*) Besides this particular use it denotes a habitual action in the past, just as the present indefinite denotes a habitual action in the present. Thus we say :

We kept late hours there (*i.e.*, we used to go to bed quite late in the night during those days).

(*ii*) It is sometimes used in place of the present perfect tense to indicate an action begun a short while ago and continued perhaps up to the time of speaking, as

I *came* to see you in connection with the discourse you gave at the Senate Hall yesterday.

This tense in such case is regarded as preferable to *I have come.*

(*iii*) Again, it is sometimes used to indicate a continuous action that took place in the past, as

He *studied* many hours a day (meaning thereby, "He used to study......").

☞(*iv*) It is used instead of the present.

(*a*) Either for the sake of politeness, as in

Would you kindly take the trouble of delivering this message ?

Could you please tell me if double five nine oh (*i.e.*, telephone No. 5590) is O.K. ?

Was this the brand you were looking for, sir ?

(*b*) Or in a deprecatory sense, as in

Did you hope to see her without a previous appointment ?

Might I know why you created all this fuss ?

22. **Past Continuous.** This tense represents an action as going on in the past, as

I *was reading* when I heard a sudden noise as of a gunshot.

23. **Past Perfect.** It also goes by the name **pluperfect**. This tense denotes that the action was completed before another took place. It presupposes a past time, an intermediate time and the time of using it in a sentence. The tense itself is used of what occurred in that remote past, but it cannot be used unless there is a mention of the intermediate stage in another clause of the same sentence. If there is no such clause, the past indefinite should be used in place of it. Thus we say :

(*a*) He *had left* the place when I reached there.

(*b*) He *left* the place quite early.

However, the past perfect is occasionally used even without the subsidiary clause. For instance, we may say, "He had finished the book." Though this sentence does not explicitly state so, it implies that the book was finished before something else took place.

The past perfect continuous tense is frequently used in indirect narration, as

He told me that his brother *had left* for Lyallpur.

24. **Past Perfect Continuous.** This tense is used in the same way as the past perfect with an additional stress on the continuity of the action in the remote past, as

He had been working for sometime when he went abroad for further study.

25. **Future Indefinite.** This tense is used for an action that is yet to take place, as

I shall again call on him tomorrow.

*Sometimes the future indefinite is used for the present indefinite for the sake of politeness, etc., as

(*i*) I *shall read* it out to you.

(*ii*) You *will compel* me then to read the will ?
Then make a ring about the corpse of Caesar,
And let me show you him that made the will.
—Shakespeare : *Julius Caesar*.

26. **Future Continuous.** This tense shows an action as continuing at some future time, as

I shall be reading the new publication.

27. **Future Perfect.** This tense expresses an action that with be complete before another future action. Sentences in which this tense is used should contain a suggestion of the other action in some other clause, as

I shall have read the book before you will find it necessary to take it back from me.

28. Future Perfect Continuous. This tense stresses continuity of action in addition to the meaning expressed by the future perfect tense, as

The custodians of law and order shall have been sleeping when the event will take place.

29. Sequence of Tenses. Mistakes are frequently made by the wrong use of tense in a subordinate clause. The rules governing such cases are set out below, and must be learnt carefully with a view to avoiding such mistakes.

30. If the principal clause has a past tense, the subordinate clause must follow suit, unless the latter states some universal truth when it will have a present tense. Here are examples :

(*i*) He *said* that he *would* be willing to go there.
He *told* me that intriguers *were* machinating to sabotage his scheme.

(*ii*) Even the fool *knew* that the sun *rises* in the east.
The experiment *showed* that parallel lines never *meet*.

31. If the principal clause has a present or future tense, the subordinate clause may have any tense, as

He *says* (*will say*) that he *has* (*had*, *will have*) no leisure.

32. An adverbial clause will have the present tense (*may*) if the principal clause has a *present or future* tense ; but it will have the past tense (*might*) if the principal clause has a past tense. Thus we say :

We (*will*) *work* that we *may* earn.
We *worked* that we *might* earn.

33. Misuse of Tenses. Mistakes as to tenses fall primarily under two heads :

(*a*) In independent sentences or clauses ; and (*b*) in complex sentences where the tense required in one clause depends on the tense used in another clause. Such mistakes are considered in the following articles :

34. Past Perfect used for Past Indefinite. Study the following sentences along with comments on them :

He *had gone* to the town on a visit.

Here *had gone* is an error for the past *went*. Some of the examples that follow are similar in this respect, while in others the use of the past perfect is obviously improper.

(*i*) Some days ago I *had been* to witness a marriage.

(*ii*) It was selfishness which in the past *had* caused our national decay.

(*iii*) Mediaeval history is not without instances when emperors *had* humbled themselve before the house of God.

(*iv*) Free Trade was accepted by England only when her statesmen *had been* convinced that it was to her more advantageous than Protection.

35. Past Perfect used for Present Perfect. Study the following :

Notwithstanding superficial indications to the contrary, it would be rash to allege that the current *had* changed its direction.

The contemplated allegation is that the current has changed its direction, the period allowed for the change extending right up to the time of the allegation. The present perfect tense should therefore have been used. The past perfect would have been justified only if some past point of time had been indicated between the time of the possible change and the time of writing.

If his opponents *had* counted upon his humiliation, they are sadly mistaken.

They are in the present time, and no intermediate point of time between it and the act of counting is in contemplation ; so the *had* should be *have*.

We have had two editions of the pamphlet sent to us, but we *had* refrained from noticing them as the statements seemed exaggerated.

Till when had we refrained ? Till the time of writing. Therefore the perfect tense, which carries the action up to the time of writing, should have been used.

On former occasions, speaking in this very hall, I *had* compared the conduct of our Government with that of France.

If the speaker regarded the comparison previously made as something in hand applicable to his present argument, he would use the present perfect tense *have compared* ; or merely regarding it as a past event he might use the past *compared*. But in neither case is there any occasion for the past perfect.

Up to this time the unanimous verdict of politicians *had* been that Asia was doomed for ever.

If up to the time of writing is meant, so the perfect tense *has been* is appropriate.

(*i*) In many more cases has the attempt proved a trial to the temper of both teacher and taught, and, by mutual consent, the offending books *had* been thrust into the lumber room.

(*ii*) It should be remembered that it *had* always been a scientific guild.

(*iii*) By constant repetition of the word, individuals may come honestly to delude themselves into the belief that the thing *had* been achieved.

(*iv*) Nothing can turn him from a course which he *had* settled in his own mind to be the right one.

(*v*) This disillusioned man, like the apostate, is never a dispassionate judge of the faith he *had* left.

(*vi*) The institution is to be located in Lahore and the Government *had* all along professed the warmest sympathy.

(*vii*) He may be spending precious years on a theory which *had* been exploded.

(*viii*) The political sky could never have been besmirched, as it *had* been of late, if he had been alive.

(*ix*) He is an excellent speaker, and in his profession he *had* easily taken the lead in the country.

In all these cases the *had* should be changed to *have* or *has*.

36. **Past used for Past Perfect.** Mistakes under this head are very rare. Here is an example :

For some time past the deceased's health *was* far from satisfactory.

Here we have the time of writing, the time of the death and the antecedent time ; so the past perfect *had been* is required.

37. **Past used for Present Perfect.** Here are examples :

They have set their faces against the idea of marrying their daughter before she *finished* her education at college.

This should be *has finished*, because the requirement of the subordinate clause is continuous up to the time of the act contemplated, namely, the marriage.

Struggle, struggle, *was* my motto last ten years.

The present perfect *has been* again is needed as the motto is retained up to the time of speaking. Had any ten years other than the last been intended, the past would have been right.

He *fell* a victim to cholera, which is severely raging in the district.

If the death had been an event of past history, the past *fell* would have been right ; but the use of the present in the *is raging* brings the event up to the time of the announcement, and so the perfect, *has fallen*, is required.

No unbeliever *did* anything great in this world by merely playing on the beliefs of others.

The meaning is that up to the present time *no believer has done*, etc., so the present prefect is necessary. Were such an adverb as *ever* used, the past would be right, because the effect of *ever* would be to break the one continuous space of time into separate points of time.

The attempts hitherto made to rouse the community to political life *were* note quite successful.

The effect of 'hitherto' is to carry the review of facts up to [the present time, so the present perfect tense would be appropriate.

Fanaticism leads to all kinds of diabolical methods, which *deluged* the world under the name of religion.

The use of the present tense, *leads*, suggests that the review of the methods in question continues up to the time of writing, so the perfect tense, *have deluged*, would be better.

The proceedings of the conference, which just *closed* its sittings, were more lively than usual.

Has just closed would be better, as the review of events is carried up to the time of writing.

38. Compound Tenses Used for Simple Present or Past. There is a strong tendency to use tenses formed of the present participle and an auxiliary, instead of simple present or past tenses. In English this use of the present participle is strictly confined to cases in which continuity of action is meant to be expressed. Thus we say, "*I am learning Greek*," "*He was building a house*," and so on. But in the following examples we should say simply *refer*, *commit*, *give*, instead of *are referring*, *be committing*, *be giving* :

It is not for the first time that we *are referring* to this question.

People are made to think that they can *be committing* any excess with impunity.

I should *be giving* a one-side account in this way.

So also in the following example the simple past *embraced* should be used instead of the imperfect tense :

His warmth of heart *was embracing* the whole range of mankind.

And in the next two it would be preferable to say *commit*, *deal*, and *failed*, instead of *be committing*, *be dealing*, and *been failing*.

If people of a place are made to think that they can *be committing* any excess with impunity till the Commissioner is telegraphed to and arrives, it will *be dealing* a blow to the prestige of the executive.

I have dwelt on the subject of education at length ; I should have *been failing* in my duty if I had not given its due weight to that topic.

39. Past used for Present or Future This is contrary to the rules of the sequence of tenses. Consider the following examples :

If agitators are suppressed, there *would* be no indication of the state of the country.

For *would* we should have *will* as the preceding verb *are* is in present time. If the *are* were changed to *were* the *would* would be right. So also in the following.

(*i*) We hope that the association *would* try to give effect to those suggestions.

(*ii*) We hope the exhibition *would* be a success and that the public *would* contribute to that success.

(*iii*) We hope the association *would* rise to the occasion.

(*iv*) This practice is on the decline. It is hoped that it *would* soon disappear.

(*v*) Let us hope that the new spirit of national and corporate life *would* go a long way towards achieving this objective.

(*vi*) We are sorry that the futile predictions of our friends *would* bitterly disappoint them.

(*vii*) Such impressions, if they take root in the minds of the general public, *would* prove very harmful.

(*viii*) If matters go in this way there *would* soon be a time when girls' fathers *would* be compelled to have recourse to secret infanticide.

(*ix*) If a man but hold fast to his convictions things *would*, come right in the end.

(*x*) India is dragged before the great tribunal of the world, and is condemned because she *would* not exaplain.

(*xi*) It is generally expected that the Government *would* assign a leading place to the revival of the hand-loom industry.

(*xii*) We hope the publishers *would* find it possible to continue the series.

In all the above cases the *would* should be changed to *will*.

(*i*) Now that the baneful effects of that system come to be slowly recognized, it *was* time that it was discarded.

(*ii*) They go cheerfully, happy in the thought that a better life *was* in store for them.

(*iii*) It will be dangerous to allow things to drift, for unless a bold, definite stand *was* taken, they are likely to sink back into orthodoxy.

The present tense being used in the first clause, the tense in second should also be the present.

(*i*) They are warned that a terrible doom is in store for them if they *did* not let their children go their own way.

(*ii*) The Government cannot go on if the people *did* not pay their taxes.

(*iii*) When any canard is started and circulated by irresponsible men, it has to be promptly contradicted lest it *did* mischief.

(*iv*) It will be worse than useless if they *did* not take full advantage of what English life and society offer them.

In this group of cases the *did* should be *do*.

(*i*) If proper men be selected, a good push *would have been* given to public life.

(*ii*) It would not be long before a system *would have been* inaugurated.

In these two instances we should have *would be* instead of *would have been*.

Resolved that the committee should take such steps as *would* be necessary.

The *should*, though past in form, is in effect future, and for *would* there should be *may*.

Now and again it may so happen that the wrong man *would have received* the help.

This should be *may receive*.

(*i*) It will be valuable benefit to the public if men of Dr. Khan's character *came* forward more frequently.

(*ii*) Our salutations go to all the past prophets, whose teachings and lives we have inherited, whatever *might* have been their race and clime.

(*iii*) It will be some time before he *realized* his mistake.

(*iv*) They keep their minds open to truth from whatever direction it *might* come.

(*v*) It is better that we should be hypnotized into some such belief, than that the controversy should be kept open until everyone *got* heartily tired of it.

(*vi*) It will be dangerous to allow things to drift, for unless a bold definite stand *was* taken, they are likely to sink back into orthodoxy.

(*vii*) Unless the heart and the head work together in harmony, no permanent progress *could* be possible.

(*viii*) All this requires to be largely modified before we *could* be welded into a great nation.

(*ix*) It will be a long time, indeed, before the people of this country *reached* such a stage of mental development.

(*x*) It is absolutely necessary that the Panjab University *took* care that nothing wrong happens to young men.

In all the above instances the past tense in the second clause should be changed to the present.

Victor Hugo was the first to *have taken* liberties with the established forms of French poetry.

This should be *was the first to take*. This may seem to be an

exception to the general rule, because the preceding verb *was* is in the past tense; but the predication is of a quality regarded as existing at the time indicated by the verb.

He never seemed *to have been* conscious of his greatness.

We should say *he never seemed to be conscious of his greatness*, for the time of the consciousness is the same as the time of the seeming. The use of the past infinitive *to have been* has the effect of expressing that it was a former state of feeling that was apparent.

It was a wise thing that the public men of Lahore did in *having* openly *disclaimed* any sympathy with the recent acts of lawlessness in the city.

Similarly this should be *in openly disclaiming*, for the time of the disclaimer was the same as that of the preceding verb *did*. That is to say, the verb *did* takes us back to a certain time at which the disclaimer was a present act.

40. **Present or Future Used far Past**. Here are a few examples of the misuse:

If all communities would agree upon a common line of action, their action *will* have an electrical effect.

The *will* should be *would*, as the past form *would* is used in the first clause. Had the verb in the first clause been *will agree*, the *will* in the second clause would have been right. A corresponding remark applies to all the following examples, and in each case the *will* should be changed to *would*, *seem* to *seemed*, *may* to *might* and so on.

(*i*) If there were young men thirsting for higher education, high schools and colleges *will* spring up.

(*ii*) If cases of conflict were confined to this they would be intelligible, though even then they *cannot* but be reprehensible.

(*iii*) There was a time when the Premier *seems* to have been confident of taking the public with him.

(*iv*) If young men turned their attention to the vast field of human feelings, our languages *will* soon possess a literature of which any nation could be proud.

(*v*) If there were more schools suitably situated and staffed, many more girls *will* be attending.

(*vi*) Signatures could be obtained without the signatories knowing what they *are* signing.

(*vii*) If these were to come, we *shall* be less dependent.

EXERCISES

Correct or justify the tense of the verb in the following sentences :

(*For* **Board** *Students*)

1. Jack fell down and broke his crown.
2. He has broken his (*own*) leg.
3. He had come that he may see me.
4. Experience taught him that intriguers never prospered.
5. The man had drowned in the stream.
6. He said that he has bought a new book.
7. Might I enquire why you did this ?
8. The car had stopped near the store.
9. He is going abroad next month.
10. He says that he wanted some money.

(*For* **University** *Students*)

1. He will tell you that he was constrained to steal the bread owing to starvation.
2. He said that there is no other way out of this trouble.
3. He comes so that he might seek confirmation of this news.
4. The train had started.
5. I shall speak to her about it when I shall see her.
6. If you will run quickly you will overtake him.
7. The blind man never knew that the sun rose in the east.
8. He said that he will leave the hostel next week.
9. I had written him a detailed letter about the incident.
10. I have passed the Higher Secondary examination last year.

CHAPTER XV

VERBS : AUXILIARIES

1. An **Auxiliary** verb is a verb used to form the tense of another verb, as *shall* in "I *shall* go."

☞2. With the exception of *ought to*, *have to* (or *had to*) denoting necessity, an auxiliary is immediately followed by the verb it modifies without the use of *to*.

3. The following is a list of the chief auxiliaries with the use of each indicated against it.

Auxiliary Verb	**Use**
* *Shall, Will*	Denote a future action
May, Might	Denote permission or possibility
Can, Could	Denote power or ability
Be (Am, Is, Be, Was, Were)	Denote continuing action, or action on the subject
Do, Did	Denote emphasis
Has, Have, Had	Denote a completed action
Should, Ought to	Denote duty
Have to, Had to, Must	Denote necessity
Had better, Had rather	Denote exigency
Let	Denotes a command
Dare, Dared	Denote audacity.

4. **Shall** and **Will**. These words express either simple futurity or obligation. The precise force of their meaning is determined by the nature of the sentence in which they are used and the person of their subject.

(i) *Simple futurity* is expressed by **shall** in the first, and **will** in the second and third persons, as

I *shall* go there.
You *will* see it for yourself.
He *will* be back in a moment.

*The negative forms of **shall** and **will** are generally contracted into **shan't** and **won't**.

(ii) Determination, willingness, promise or obligation is expressed by **will** in the first and **shall** in the second and third persons. Used as such **shall** and **will** cease to be auxiliaries and become verbs of independent meaning. Here are examples :

I *will* come. (*Determination*).

I *will* give an anna if you become a good girl and don't cry. (*Promise*).

Thou *shalt* not steal. (*Command*).

He *shall* go. (*Obligation*).

(*iii*) The rules given above govern the cases of affirmative and negative sentences. It is, however, different with interrogative sentences where **shall** and **will** are used exactly as they are expected in reply, with the following result :

Shall you buy a new hat ? (Simple futurity, because the expected reply is, "I shall buy").

Will you buy me a new hat ? (Request or desire because the expected reply is, "I *will* buy you one").

*5. Here is a grammarian's detailed note on *shall* and *will*. It is necessary first to remember, he says, that the two auxiliaries have each of them two distinct uses. Each may be used to express mere futurity of action, but, apart from this, 'shall' may be used to convey a sense of compulsion or insistence, and 'will' to express wish or determination.

Now, when employed merely to express futurity of action, the use of these two words is perfectly clear and simple. The whole rule is merely this : that 'shall' pertains to the first person, and 'will' to the second and third persons. So that the conjugation runs thus :

I shall	We shall
Thou wilt	You will
He will	They will

This one rule is sufficient to correct all the mistakes shown in the examples given below :

6. In the following examples *shall* is a mistake for *will* :

(*i*) Their conviction is that war *shall* ever continue to be a necessary evil.

(*ii*) He *shall* have formed a wrong estimate if he supposes that I am weak.

(*iii*) The only question is whether he *shall* face it like a man.

(*iv*) The abolition of the declaration in question *shall* obviate this difficulty.

(*v*) This is a new departure, and a ladies' gallery *shall* now form a part of the conference gathering in all future years.

(*vi*) That the legislative councils need expansion is an admitted fact, and we hope the congress *shall* have not to wait long for a move in this direction.

(*vii*) The organization *shall* never forget its first president.

(*viii*) To do so, however, they *shall* have to rise superior to petty considerations of self.

(*ix*) You have long talked of it you say, but when *shall* the time come for you to work it out?

(*x*) Unable to pay the oppressive tax, the people *shall* fly from village and town.

(*xi*) One might hope that the time is not far distant when it *shall* recover its former state.

(*xii*) An example such as *shall* certainly not be surpassed.

(*xiii*) He does not assume that the nations of the East *shall* all rise or fall together.

(*xiv*) The perfection of the commonwealth may take long in coming, but come it *shall* in the fullness of its time.

(*xv*) We hope that the Government *shall* submit a strong representation.

(*xvi*) The concrete result is that the country *shall* miss the definite utterance.

(*xvii*) The people *shall* be baulked of the benefits.

(*xviii*) While her struggle from the old order into the new *shall* be watched with interest by collective Europe and America, it *shall* be watched with anxiety by Spain.

(*xix*) For several days the paper has multiplied the evils which, in its opinion, *shall* come to pass if a new Chief Minister were to succeed Mr. Sarkar.

(*xx*) We hope therefore that a detailed report of the findings of the Commission *shall* be early published by Government and that no official quibblings *shall* be allowed to mar the statement.

7. Here follow examples in which, on the contrary, *will* has been erroneously used for *shall*.

(*i*) We *will* not be surprised to hear.

(*ii*) Till we have the full text we *will* not be in a position to know.

(*iii*) We may have a beautiful eye, still we *will* not see anything if the internal nerve is useless.

(*iv*) The more we correct our defects and increase our worth, the more we *will* advance our cause.

(*v*) If we persevere in this direction, we *will* be able within a measurable distance of time to produce in the country most of the articles we require.

(*vi*) We *will* get all the political privileges that we want when we show our fitness for them.

(*vii*) The moment we give it up we *will* be dead.

(*viii*) We *will* see how the idea of a new religion led to its foundation.

(*ix*) Bear this distinction in mind or we *will* never understand each other.

(*x*) Then, and only then, *will* we find results other than the bitter fruit of discontent.

(*xi*) I crave leave to say one or two words which I hope I *will* be pardoned for saying.

(*xii*) When I *will* not hear the wind blowing, when I *will* never see the summer flowers growing, and when I *will* never feel the winter snows.

(*xiii*) Unless we train ourselves in individual politics we *will* never build up a nation.

8. It follows from these examples that when *will* is used with the first person, or *shall* with the second or third persons, something more than mere futurity of action is conveyed—in the case of *will*, wish or determination, and in the case of *shall*, compulsion or insistence. Thus in the English marriage service the question is asked, "*Will you have this woman to be your wedded wife* ?" And the answer is, "*I will*." In this connection "*I shall*" would be absurd, as an expression of will is distinctly asked for. As an example with the second person we have the command, "*Thou shalt not kill*." Also the story of the king who, because his subject showed fear of him, beat him exclaiming, "How dare you be afraid of me, sir! You must love me; you *shall* love me." Or again, very markedly, in Lamb's line :

Though thou want'st not, thou *shalt* have them.

Then, as an example with the third person, take Kirke White's lines on the death of Nelson :

He must not sink ;
The good, the brave—he must not, *shall* not sink
Without the meed of some melodious tear.

Or the Penal Code enactment, that

Whoever commits murder *shall* be punished with death or transportation for life.

For the law is not predicting what *will* happen, but is declaring what it insists *shall* happen.

9. Now it may be asked : If *shall* with the first person expresses mere futurity, how is the sense of compulsion or insistence to be conveyed with the use of the first person ? And, similarly, if *will* with the second and third persons expresses mere futurity, how is the sense of wish or determination to be conveyed with the use of those persons ? The answer to these questions is that (*i*) The intended meaning is often indicated by the context or by the circumstances of the statement made ; (*ii*) in speaking this can be further aided by the tone of the voice ; and (*iii*) A certain amount

of ambiguity may remain. For example, if one man says to another, "You shall not enter this house," and the other replies, "Yes, I *shall*," there is no doubt (even without the accent that would, in speaking, be put on the *shall*) that the reply is not merely a statement of what will happen, but expresses the fact that the speaker insists upon entering. So also if one man says, "Tell them not to come here," and the person spoken to replies, "But they say they *will*," not mere futurity but a determination to come is expressed. An example in the second person is supplied by the question from the marriage service cited above—"*Will* you have this woman... ?" does not merely raise a question of futurity, but clearly invites an expression of will. On the other hand, such a statement as "I shall go to Karachi to-morrow," without any illuminating context, and without the modification of the speaking voice, may mean either that I insist upon going, or that as a matter of fact I shall go. And similarly of *will* with the the second and third persons. But these cases of possible ambiguity present no difficulty in actual practice. And if the simple rule given above be remembered (namely, that futurity of action, when no sense either of obligation on the one hand or of desire on the other is involved, is expressed by *shall* with the first person, and by *will* with the second and third person) no mistakes in the use of these auxiliaries are likely to be made.

In the following example, *shall* is used with the first person, but, as the speaker is expressly exercising a choice, *will* would be better.

I may go on noticing article after article, but *shall* conclude with sugar.

10. Interrogative sentences form an exception to the rule that in the second person mere futurity is expressed by *will*. On the contrary, *shall* is used for that purpose. Thus we say, "*Shall* you be at home to-morrow ?" The explanation given by some grammarians is that *shall* or *will* is used interrogatively *according as the one or the other would be used in reply*. "Shall you be at home ?" expects the answer "I shall," or "I shall not," as the case my be—a mere question of futurity. But "Will you be at home ?" expects the answer "I will," or "I will not," which is a matter of intention or pleasure.

11. It should not be overlooked in this connection that besides the auxiliary verb *will*, there is a substantive verb to *will*. The two are distinct, and have different past tenses, namely, *would* of the auxiliary, and *willed* of the substantive verb. Thus we say, "He willed me to do it," meaning that he exercised his power of will over me to induce me to do it. The word, however, is not of very frequent use, nor does it present any special difficulty.

12. Should and Would. Just as *shall* is used with the first person, and *will* with the second and third persons when mere futurity has to be expressed, so *should* (the past of *shall*) is used

with the first person, and *would* (the past of *will*) is used with the second and third persons. But it must be borne in mind that *would* and *should* have other uses, which will be dealt with later. Below are given examples of the wrong use of these words merely in relation to the persons with which they are used as the past tenses of *shall* and *will*. In the following *should* is wrongly used for *would* :

It was an agitation for which there *should* have been no occasion if he had not been a Minister.

And in the following *would* is wrongly used for *should* :

(*i*) Without them we *would* never be able to do any solid good.

(*ii*) Had the council decided otherwise, conceive what we should be—I think we *would* be in blissful ignorance of our defects.

(*iii*) We *would* not have been enduring the present difficulties now.

(*iv*) It is what we *would* call the aggressive form of politics.

(*v*) Were I properly to review all the great acts of this ruler of men, I *would* be filling up volumes.

(*vi*) We *would* be sorry to see our only national political organization made the sport of intriguers.

(*vii*) If the import of all fine goods were stopped, we *would* still be none the worse for it.

(*viii*) I have not been able to dwell on this need at as much length as I *would* have wished.

(*ix*) We *would* be proud indeed if our college acted as a feeder to it.

(*x*) We *would* have gained nothing by his resignation.

13. Though *should* and *would* are called the past tenses or preterites of *shall* and *will*, it is to be observed that they have other uses also, some of which convey no sense of past time at all. So also have *could* and *might*, the past tenses of *can* and *may*, uses which convey no sense of past time. The following are examples :

(*i*) You should go and see him to-morrow.

(*ii*) Would you be able to come here on Monday ?

(*iii*) Could you be here on Monday ?

(*iv*) I might perhaps be able to come on Tuesday.

Again, *should* is used to convey a sense of duty or propriety which has no very obvious connection with *shall* as in such expressions as "You *should* do your duty," or "One man *should* not injure another." In the following example *should*, in this sense, is required, as the writer is not speaking of any contingency, but is making an independent suggestion as to what ought to be done :

His name *would* be written in gold in the annals of Egypt.

Other examples of the wrong use of 'should' follow :

(*i*) Those who know will readily see that there *should* be a set of diabolical plotters behind.

(*ii*) Now, the Government would not purchase for the fun of the thing; they *should* have felt the need for it.

Here also necessity is indicated, and the verb should be *must*.

14. A very common mistake is to use 'should' in setting forth a contingency ragarded as desirable, but not yet fully attained. The English idiom in such cases is to use *is to* or *are to*. For example:

The connection with the U.S.A. must endure if Pakistan *should* be able to develop herself in all directions.

This would mean that in the event of Pakistan being able, etc., the connection must endure. But the writer presumably means that the connection is necessary in order that Pakistan may, etc. In the following examples also the first *should* ought to be replaced by *is to*, or *are to* for the writer is not considering the contingency of the discussion being of value, but what must be done in order to make it so:

(*i*) We may agree or disagree with the contentions on either side, but if the discussion *should* be of any value, we should discern the points around which it really centres.

(*ii*) If primary education *should* really benefit the masses, the foundation must be laid in the model village school.

(*iii*) If the associations *should* be useful their constitution should represent all classes.

(*iv*) If we *should* succeed in our mission of reforming society we cannot set before ourselves too high a standard.

(*v*) The Pakistani home should be a model of purity and integrity in word, deed, and thought, if ever we *should* have a race of sturdy, upright, manly men among us.

(*vi*) If we *should* be true to ourselves and so true to the country which we are bound to serve, there is little use in blinking facts.

15. *Would* also has some curious uses which seem to have no connection with 'will.' It sometimes expresses *habit* or *custom*, as in the lines:

There at the foot of yonder nodding beech,
That wreaths its old fantastic roots so high,
His listless length at noon-tide *would* he stretch,
And pore upon the brook that babbles by.

So again in this line:

And constant as her vespers *would* he watch.

16. *Would*, again, is used of a contingency which has not

happened, and which, in the view of the speaker, may or may not happen, as in the lines :

> For, high-soul'd Maid, what sorrow *would* it be
> That Mountain floods should thunder as before,
> And Ocean bellow from his rocky shore,
> And neither awful Voice be heard by thee !

*But would cannot be used of a contingency as to which no doubt is felt, as in the following passage :

> Brother and brother may live together for years, and may yet really never know each other's heart. How much more difficult *would* it be for men of different races and opposite political prejudices to know each other.

Here instead of *would* we should have *must* or *will*, according as the present or future time is in view.

> He did yoeman service as an interpreter between the two countries, and the regret occasioned by his loss *would* be felt keenly on both sides.

The loss having already occurred, the *would* is quite out of place, and should be replaced by *will* or *must*.

A great personality has passed away in his death. The news *would* be received with profound regret.

Here there is neither anything conditional nor anything to be spoken of in the past tense. The *would* should be *will*.

17. To sum up, we may say that *should* and *would* are used both as auxiliaries and independent verbs :

(*i*) As auxiliaries, *should* is used with the first person and *would* with the second and third person to denote an action which at some time past was regarded as being still in the future. Here are examples :

He told him that *I should* be back presently.
I knew that *you should* be late.
She feared that *he would* never return.

(*ii*) Used as independent verbs, *should* goes along second and third person as being synonymous with *ought to*, and *would* with all the three persons to express habit, inclination or determination, as

(*a*) *You should* be ashamed of your conduct. (*Ought to*).
He should regret his mistake. (*Ought to*).

(*b*) *I would* take a bold stand despite all opposition. (*Am determined to*).

You would go there. (Were in the habit of).
He would read that letter addressed to his wife. (Had an inclination to).

☞ *Remember that before verbs denoting inclination, as* **care, like prefer, be glad, be inclined, be pleased,** *'should' is used in place of 'would' to express willingness.* Hence it is wrong to say, *I would like to see him.* The correct form is :

I should like to see him.
I should be pleased to grant him an interview.

(iii) **Should** and **would** may be used with any person as the subjunctives of *shall* and *will*, as *should he* upbraid me I will answer with a smile.

18. **Be and its Derivatives**. In legal or poetic diction, **be** is sometimes used as a subjunctive to mean *is, are, as, should be,* etc. Here are examples :

(*a*) The powers that *be*. (*i.e.*, are)

(*b*) Whoe'er she be,
That not impossible She
That shall command my heart and me. —Crashaw.

***Were**, the past subjunctive of *be*, is used to express a wish or supposition unlikely to be realized. But if its realization is possible, **was** will be used instead of *were*. Here are examples :

(*a*) If wishes *were* horses beggars would ride.

(*b*) If he was really *hurt* you would be responsible.

19. **Do**. *As* an auxiliary, this verb is used in *negative, interrogative* and *emphatic* sentences. Here are examples :

Affirmative : I want to study.
Negative : I *do* not want to study.
Interrogative : *Do* I want to study ?
Emphatic : I *do* want to study.

☞ The order of words in these sentences should be noted very carefully. The inversion in affirmative sentences is not always for the sake of emphasis as in the last example. It is rather the natural order when the sentence begins with an adverb or its equivalent, as in the following examples :

Quickly *did* they beat a retreat.
Not a word *did* he utter.

Again, *do* is used without any implication of emphasis in legal or religious diction, as

(*a*) I *do* hereby remove him from trusteeship.

(*b*) Here am I for thou *didst* call me. —The Bible.

***Do** is sometimes used as a substitute for other verbs, as

He knows more than you *do* (*i.e.*, more than you *know*).

The uses of **do** as an independent verb are too well known to

need any discussion. It signifies *act, accomplish, get along* or *suffice*, as

England expects every man to *do* his duty.
How do you *do* ?
That will *do*.

20. **Have.** As an auxiliary, this verb is used to form the present perfect and the past perfect tenses, as

I *have given* him a piece of my mind.

I *had gone* to see him.

*However, the phrase **have got** is used not as the past perfect of *get*, but as the past indefinite tense. This is regarded as an idiomatic use, but is avoided by purists in language. So both of the following forms are correctly used in the past indefinite tense :

I *have got* a bad cold,

I *have* a bad cold.

*In phrases like **had better, had rather** the verb *had* is used as a subjunctive to show preference. They are followed by the infinitive with *to* omitted from it. Thus we say :

You *had better* hold your tongue.

She had sooner commit suicide than submit to this disgrace.

He *had rather* be apologetic than start an argument.

21. **May** and **Might**. The auxiliary *may* expresses permission or wish. It further denotes a possibility. Here are examples :

You *may* go now. (*Permission*).

May you prosper. (*Wish*).

He *may* come today. (*Possibility*).

The sense of possibility is further expressed by the phrase *may be* which is equivalent to *perhaps*, as in

May be he is ill.

☞In interrogative sentences *may* seeks permission while *shall* only likes to know the other party's wish, as

May I read it out to you.

Shall I read it out to you ?

In the first sentence one has a mind to read out something to one's addressee and only seeks his formal permission, but in the second one indifferently asks the other fellow whether one is to read out something to him or not.

22. On *might*, the following dissertation by a grammarian should be carefully studied :

The past auxiliary *might* again seems to present a good deal of difficulty. Especially when used in the form *might have* does its particular force seem to be missed. That force is usually expressive

of an opportunity missed or of some contingency having failed to occur. This force is well illustrated in the humorous lines :

He might have been a Russian,
A Turk, a Greek, a Prussian,
Or else Italian ;
But in spite of all temptations
To belong to other nations,
He remains an Englishman.

The humour here depends upon the appreciation of the *might have been*, which does not mean "it might have happened that he was born a Russian, etc.," but conveys the sense that he had his opportunity and deliberately declined it. Indeed, so strong is this sense that we sometimes speak of lost opportunities as *the might-have-beens* ; and an American poet has written :

Of all sad words of tongue or pen,
The saddest are these, "*It might have been.*"

But we find many writers expressing themselves thus wrongly :

(*i*) Those of you who *might have* studied the history of Greece know how they put ethics in the fore-front of all sciences.

(*ii*) What little work we *might have* done heretofore can only make us ruefully ponder over the past.

(*iii*) Whatever *might have* been their shortcomings in other respects, they have never been wanting in religious tolerance.

In this last example the use of the perfect tense *have never been* brings the review of facts up to the present time, and we should have *may have* instead of *might have*. In the two previous examples, so far from *might have* referring to a lost opportunity, it is distinctly recognized that some history had been studied, that some work had been done, and in each instance the *might have* should be *may have*. In these particular examples, indeed, there is another reason for requiring *may* instead of *might* and that is the verb in the main clause of each sentence is in the present tense.

*It may, however, be well to mention here that the form *might have* does not always suggest a missed opportunity. Besides its special meaning it has also its ordinary use as the past tense of *may have* ; and in the above examples, if the main clause in the sentence had been in the past tense, then *might have* would have been right in the subsidiary clause. For example, "I knew that he *might have* come." "It never occurred to me that he *might have been* stopped on the way." But here is an example in which no such consideration is involved, the cause not being subsidiary to another.

The recovery during the year under review *might have been* due to the increasing outturn from plantations.

Here *might* is quite out of place, as the writer is speaking of what may actually have happened.

23. Occurrence in Pairs. The auxiliaries *shall* and *will*, *should*, *would*, *could*, and *might* frequently occur in pairs; the one expressing either some supposition, or what might be or what should have been, and the other showing either what would be the conseqence, or what would be the object desired, or what should have been done. Sometimes, indeed, the very same verb will express both the hypothesis (*supposition*) and the consequence in the same sentence, and thus, as it were, answer to itself. This representation may not, perhaps, include every instance of their mutual use. It is only given as containing some leading ideas of their preculiar application in pairs, which will be better understood from the following examples :

(i) Shall & Will

Shall, denoting the hypothesis, *will* the consequence :

If we *shall* say, "From heaven," he *will* say, "Why then believed ye him not?"

He that *shall* cut off Antony, *will* put an end to the war.

So long as thou *shalt* be prosperous, thou *wilt* number many friends ; but if the times *shall* become untoward, thou *wilt* be alone.

(ii) Will & Shall

Will, denoting the hypothesis, and *shall* the consequence :

If ye *will* obey my voice indeed, and keep my convenant, then ye *shall* be a peculiar treasure unto me above all people.

The man, that *will do* presumptuously, and not hearken to the judge, even that man *shall* die.

(iii) Shall & Shall

All these blessings *shall* come on thee, and overtake thee, if thou *shalt* hearken unto the voice of the Lord thy God.

The Lord *shall* establish thee a holy people to himself, if thou *shalt* keep the commandments of the Lord thy God.

(iv) Will & Will

I *will* bring you thither, my Lord, if you *will* vouchsafe me.

If you *will* follow me, I *will* shew you enough.

If thou *wilt* not observe to do all the words of this law, then the Lord *will* make thy plagues wonderful.

(v) Should & Would

Should, denoting the hypothesis, and *would* the consequence :

If these *should* hold their peace, the stones *would* immediately cry out.

If any Deity *should* at once bring thee to those things, thou *would'st* instantly refuse.

Should I now meet my father, he *would* not call me son.

How *would* you be,
If he, which is the top of judment, *should*
But judge you, as you are? Oh! think on that;
And mercy then will breathe within your lips
Like man new made.

He sent word to Athens that he *would* come from the continent with an army, and *would* recover from the tyrants the rights of the people, unless they *should* restore them beforehand.

(*vi*) Should & Could

Should, denoting the hypothesis, and *could* the consequence :

The affair is now become such that, if all mankind *should* give their advice, and seek a remedy for this evil, they *could* bring no aid.

Suposing God *should* discover to any one supernaturally a species of creatures, inhabiting Saturn, which had six senses, and *should* imprint on his mind the ideas conveyed to theirs by that sixth sense, he *could* no more by words produce in the minds of other men those ideas imprinted by that sixth sense, than one of us *could* convey the idea of any colour by the sounds of words into a man born totally blind.

(*vii*) Should & Might

If the wind *should* keep me on the sea, he *might* arrest him here before I came.

He neither doubts nor denies that further assistance is conditionally promised, and *should* he have done so, he *might* have been confuted by evident and express texts of Scripture.

(*viii*) Should & Should

I *should* laugh now, if this blunt fellow *should* put them all aside.

If I could not do so without professing myself of their belief in this matter, then I suppose I *should* be excused from schism, if I *should* forsake their communion rather than say I believed what I did not believe.

(*ix*) Would & Should

Would, denoting the hypothesis or condition, and *should* the consequence, including what might be, or what ought to have been done, or desired.

But if we *would* rightly consider what is done in all these genera and species, we *should* find that there is no new thing made.

If Phaeton *would* have lived, he *should* have avoided heaven, and *should* not have wished to touch the horses ; which he had foolishly desired to drive.

(*x*) Would & Could

And if men *would* tell what ideas they make their words stand for, there *could* not be half that obscurity and wrangling in the search or support of truth that there now is.

If I *would* broach the vessels of my love,
And try the arguments of hearts by borrowing,
Men and men's fortunes *could* I frankly use.

(*xi*) Would & Might

I *would* it were, that you *might* still your stomach with your meat.

This creature, *would* she begin a sect, *might* quench the zeal of all other professors.

The cry went out on thee,
And still it *might*, and yet it may again,
If thou *would'st* not entomb thyself alive.

If I *would*, I *might*.—

I had well hoped thou *would'st* have denied Beatrice, that I *might* have cudgelled thee out of thy single life.

(*xii*) Would & Would

If thou *wouldest* seek unto God betimes, and make thy suplication to the Almighty, surely now he *would* awake for thee, and make the habitation of thy righteousness prosper

If grief *would* have allowed it, thou also, O Icarus, in so great a work, *would'st* have had no inconsiderable place.

I *would* cure you, if you *would* but call me Rosalind.

The following instance of *would* and *would* is improper : "You are gentlemen of brave mettle : you *would* lift the moon out of her sphere, if she *would* continue in it five weeks without changing" ; it should be "if she *should* continue etc."

(*xiii*) Could & Should

Could, denoting the hypothesis, and *should* the consequence.

If I *could* believe this to be truly spoken, I *should* be able to bear anything.

If I *could* bear it longer,
My snuff and loathed part of nature *should*
Burn itself out.

(*xiv*) Could & Would

If riches *could* make thee prudent—if they *could* tender thee less covetous and solicitous ; then indeed *would'st* thou blush, if there lived on earth any one more avaricious than thyself.

The very person, whom just before they had denied all human assistance, they *would*, if they *could*, have placed in heaven.

He hath some offences in him, that thou *would'st* discover, if thou *could'st*.

(*xv*) Could & Might

If thou *could'st* please me with speaking to me, thou *might'st* have hit upon it here.

He *could* easily conceive circumstances, which *might* render such intelligence extremely improper.

(*xvi*) Could & Could

"If I *could* believe that to be truly spoken, I *could* bear any thing." Here the latter *could*, denoting the hypothetical consequence, signifies just the same as *should be able*—which phrase, in sentences of this kind, is frequently the best. The following sentences, however, are unobjectionable and strictly accurate :

You are a friend to posts ; surely then, you *could* have no objection to our shifting our posts, if we could bind others more advantageous than those, which we already hold.

Now if he *could* not have denied this, he *could* not have denied the separation of the Donatists to have been just.

(*xvii*) Might & Should

Might, denoting the hypothesis, *should* the consequence :

You, doing thus,
To the perpetual wink, for ay, *might* put
This ancient morsel—this Sir Prudence, who
Should not upbraid our course.

It is no excuse that, being drunk, his wits were not his own, inasmuch as himself *might* have chosen whether his wits *should* by that means have been taken from him.

There the righteous *might* dispute with him : so *should* I be delivered for ever from my judge.

(*xviii*) Might & Would

I *might* have still held off, and then you *would* have tarried.

If there *might* be added the right helps of true art and learning, there *would* undoubtedly be almost as much difference in maturity of judgment between men therewith inured, and that, which now men are, as between men, that are now, and innocent.

(*xix*) Might & Could

Whether the resemblance *might* not be great, he *could* not say.

If he *might* be permitted to bring forward such evidence as undoubtedly exists, he *could* expose some renowned characters.

Might I speak to her, I *could* surely win her.

(*xx*) Might & Might

Oh that I knew where I *might* find him, that I *might* come even to his seat.

What *might* I have been, *might* I a son and daughter now have looked on.

But granting what *might* possibly be the case—that authenticating such intelligence by parliament *might* have a bad effect, yet he *could* not exactly perceive any objection to that course.

If he *might* borrow an image from the sacred text, he *might* say that they had received the gift of tongues.

24. These examples make the following points clear :

(*i*) Each of these peculiar verbs will pair with any other verb, as well as with one another, in hypothetical sentences, thus :

If thou *knewest* the gift of God, and who it is, that saith to thee "Give me to drink," thou *wouldest* have asked of him.

If I *reigned*, you *should* be adorned according to your deserts.

Who *would* have known Hector, if Troy *had been* prosperous ?

(*ii*) Two or more of these verbs will often be used hypothetically in the same sentence, even though there is not a hypothetical pair, as in the foregoing examples, thus :

These learned men did equally instruct men's understandings, and profit their lives, as he, who *should* alter the signification of known characters, and by a subtle device of learning, far surpassing the capacity of the illiterate, *should*, in his writings, show that he *could* put *a* for *b* and *d* for *c*, etc., to the admiration of his reader.

To require that men *should* use their words constantly in the same sense *would* be to think that all men *should* have the same notions, and *should* talk of nothing but what they had clear and distinct ideas of.

(*iii*) Sometimes several of these verbs will occur in the same sentence, denoting a train of hypothetical consequences arising one out of another, in which each term may be reduced to one or other of the foregoing observations.

I also *could* speak as you do—and if your soul *were* in my soul's stead, I *could* heap up words against you, and shake mine head at you—but I *would* strengthen you with my mouth, and the moving of my lips *should* assuage your grief.

> I *would* to heaven I had your potency,
> And you were Isabel : *should* it then be thus ?
> No : I *would* tell what 'twere to be a judge,
> And what a prisoner.

25. The meaning and use of the auxiliaries **ought, must, need, dare, used** is quite well known. **Ought** and **used** are always followed by *to* ; **dare** is still used like that, but there is a tendency to put *to* after it in certain cases ; **need** is followed by *to* in affirmative but never in negative or interrogative sentences. **Must** is never followed by **to**.

Besides this use, they are often employed as substitute verbs. Examples of both types of their use follow :

Auxiliary Verb	**Substitute Verb**
He *ought* to go	*Ought* he ? (to go)
You *must* pay	*Must* I ? (pay)
He *need* not trouble himself	*Needn't* he ? (trouble himself).
You *darn't* do it.	*Darn't* I ? (do it).
I *used* to go to the pictures	*Used* you ? (to go to the pictures).

It must, however, be pointed out that the last usage is very rare it being substituted by *do* or *did*, etc.

26. **Agreement**. When one auxiliary is used along with two principal verbs, or conversely two auxiliaries with one principal verb, one must be careful to see that their forms are suitable to one another. The following slipshod constructions are obviously wrong :

(*a*) Two burglars *have been* arrested and the rest absconding.

(*b*) He *has* and *will* study.

Read without omissions, these sentences would be, "Two burglars *have been arrested* but the rest *have been absconding*" and "He *has study* and *will* study." So we must have something of the following type without the words in the parentheses :

Two burglars *have been* arrested and the rest (*have been*) shot dead.

He *has been* and *will be* studying.

EXERCISES

(*For* **Board** *Students*)

Comment on the use of auxiliaries in the following :

1. I will never act against the rules of the institution.
2. If he passes the examination, he shall have a gold medal.
3. If he comes here he shall be severely punished.
4. Bearer, you will see that all these things are done properly.
5. Let him have a few pice and he shall go to the confectioner's shop.
6. Whoever will stand first in the examination, shall get a gold medal.
7. Will he come to you today ?
8. Shall he come to you today ?
9. Shall you come to me today ?
10. Will you come to me today ?
11. Tomorrow will be a holiday.
12. Tomorrow shall be a holiday.
13. I will be a good boy.
14. I will sit still.
15. "I will learn, mother," said James.

(*For* **University** *Students*)

Correct the use of auxiliaries in the following sentences, giving reasons for your corrections :

1. Will I write to him today ?
2. Shall you lend me your pen ?
3. I hope you shall help me.
4. Will he come today ?
5. Shall you come to see me this evening ?
6. When shall the time come for you to fulfil your promise ?
7. We would be proud indeed to welcome you.
8. We would have gained nothing by such a course of action.
9. Unable to bear various losses, the traders shall fly from the town.
10. The more we take pains to correct our faults, the more we will advance.
11. I will be dismissed.
12. Will I fail in the examination ?
13. Who can tell what shall be the greatest event in the new century ?
14. A few years hence we will find him very much improved.
15. If it shall rain, we will suffer a great loss.

CHAPTER XVI

VERBS : MISCELLANEOUS

1. **The Infinitive**. We learnt about the *infinitive* while discussing various moods. It is the equivalent of our Urdu مصدر and has many uses in English which are detailed below :

(*i*) As an *adjective*, as

Is there something *to eat*?

There was a Press show of a picture soon *to be screened* at the Odeon.

They were about to be arrested.

(*ii*) As an *adverb* expressing purpose or result, or qualifying an adjective or a verb, as

Martial law was declared in the area *to suppress* the result. (*Purpose*).

Scott lived long enough *to repay* his heavy debt. (*Result*).

I shudder *to think* of it. (*Adverb*).

(*iii*) Sometimes it is used almost independently of the rest of the sentence, in what is technically known as the *absolute construction*, as

To tell you the truth, he stole the pen.

*The infinitive is sometimes active in form but passive in meaning, as

You are not *to blame*. (=to be blamed).

☞2. **The Split Infinitive**. Grammarians condemn the splitting up of an infinitive. By this is meant the interpolation of any words between the sign of the infinitive (*to*) and the root of the verb (*see, give, go*, etc.) as "*to* **swiftly** *move*," in which the adverb *swiftly* has been inserted between the two parts of the infinitive, *to* and *move*.

Grammarians want such phrases to be written as "*to move swiftly*," leaving the solidarity of the infinitive unimpaired. But instances of the split infinitive are to be found in some of the best authors. A more reasonable stand on the issue of the split infinitive would be to keep the infinitive intact unless the separation of *to* is called for by reasons of brevity and clarity. Thus there is hardly any reason for avoiding the split infinitive in :

The Government has decided *to* practically *reconstruct* the school building,

or, worse still, in :

I have come again *to* further *examine*.

Both these examples would become still more clumsy if *practically* and *further* did not split the infinitive. But in a sentence like the one that follows we must avoid the separation of *to* :

They were able *to* easily *win* the match. This sentence would greatly improve if it were reconstructed, as

They were able *to win* the match easily.

*In this connection we must note that phrases like *to be seen*, or *to be carefully seen* are not cases of the split infinitive : the first is itself the passive infinitive, and the second is not a case of the separation of *to* from the verb root (*be*). In fact, a passive infinitive could not be split unless an adverb were inserted between *to* and *be*, as in "*to* carefully *be* seen" which never can have any grammatical sanction.

3. **The Omission of 'to.'** The infinitive drops its *to* when used after any of the following :

(*i*) **as soon as, sooner, better, rather, do (nothing) but**

(*ii*) **feel, hear, see.**

(*iii*) **bid, dare, make, need.**

Here are examples :

I would *as soon resign as* tamper with the records.

He would *sooner die than* desert her.

He had *better go* now.

He had *rather apologize* than suffer the consequences of insubordination.

He *did nothing but study*.

I *felt it creep* over him.

I *heard him speak* to her.

I *saw him come* up to me.

Bid him *go* there.

He *dare* not *say* it to my face.

I shall *make* him *speak*.

You *need* not *say* anything to him.

But *to* is not omitted when any of these verbs is used in the passive voice.

4. Unless representing an action prior to that of the governing verb, the infinitive should be in the present indefinite. Thus "I should have liked *to have seen*" should be, "I should have liked *to see*." But "He appears *to enjoy* his stay there last year" is equally incorrect and should be changed into, "He appears *to have enjoyed* his stay there last year."

5. **Verbs used reflexively.** Certain verbs insist on the use of the reflexive pronoun while others insist on its omission.

(i) The verbs demanding the *use of the reflexive* are :

Absent, acquit, apply, avail, avenge betake, demean, drink, exert, overreach, oversleep, resign, set.

Here are examples of the use of these verbs :

He *absented himself* from duty.
He *acquitted himself* creditably in the test.
He *applied himself* to the task wholeheartedly
He *availed himself* of the opportunity.
He *avenged himself* on his enemies.
He *betook himself* to shelter.
He *demeaned himself* by speaking to her.
He *drank himself* to death.
He *exerted himself* to the utmost.
He *overreached himself*.
He *overslept himself*.
He *resigned himself* to his fate.
He *set himself* to the task.

Omission of the reflexive pronoun in any of these cases would be incorrect.

(ii) The verbs demanding the *omission of the reflexive* pronoun in some of their senses are :

Bathe, break, burst, dash, draw, enlist, feed, form, gather, hide, keep, lengthen, make, move, open, qualify, rest, roll, set, spread, steal, stop.

Here are examples :

He *bathes* every morning.
When the day *broke* he again set out on his journey.
She *burst* into tears when he *dashed* into the room.
He *drew* near him to listen to his words.
He *enlisted* in the army.
He *fed* greedily.
The soldiers *formed* up quickly.
They *gathered* round him.
They *hid* in the cavern.
He *kept* away from the place.
The nights *lengthen* till December 23 every year.
Let us *make* merry.
Be steady ! Do not *move*.
The door *opened* with a bang.
He *qualified* for the post.
He would *rest* content with that.
The ball *rolled* into the gutter.

The sun has *set*.
The army *spread* out into the forest.
He *stole* away from there.
He would *stop* short at nothing.

Use of the reflexive pronouns with any of these verbs in the senses indicated above would be a glaring mistake.

6. The present participle of a verb is formed by adding *ing* to its root, as *seeing* from *to see*. It is more of an adjective than a verb and always qualifies a noun or pronoun. Hence it should never be unattached. A practicable rule to be observed in this connection is to remember that the word to which the participle refers should be the same as the subject of the finite verb. Here is an example of its incorrect use with comments.

Walking through the park, a snake bit him.

This is a wrong use of the participle. The subject of the finite verb is snake which is quite different from its victim who is bitten. If the sentence is to be taken as it stands, it would mean that the snake bit him while the viper was walking through the park. And this makes nonsense for everybody knows that reptiles creep or crawl but never walk. So it should read, *As he was walking through*......

Here is another example :

He was made premier, thus *necessitating* several changes in the Cabinet. This is again obviously wrong, because it was not *he* who necessitated the changes, but *his appointment* which became the occasion for this reshuffle. So the subject and the present participle refer to two different things, and the construction whould not be correct till changed as follows :

He was made Premier, *the appointment necessitating* several changes in the Cabinet.

7. As a corollary to this rule, we should learn to avoid the wrong use of **due to** instead of **owing to**. The former is an objectival phrase qualiying a noun, whereas the latter is just a compound preposition. *Due to* must, therefore, be *preceded by* a noun, but *owing to* need not. All that *owing to* requires is to be *followed by* a noun. Hence, in doubtful cases it is safer to use *owing to*, rather than hazard the use of *due to*. Here are examples :

Correct : His *failure* was **due to** illness.
Correct : He failed **owing to** *illness*.
Incorrect : He *failed* **due to** illness.

☞8. A present participle can only be used to express an action contemporaneous with that of the main verb. Thus we cannot say.

He left for Karachi on Saturday, *arriving* there on Sunday.
The correct form would be :

He left for Karachi on Saturday, and *arrived* there on Sunday.

9. Frequent use has almost converted certain participles into prepositions or adverbial phrases. In such cases, the participle need not be attached to any noun. This is known as the absolute or independent construction of a participle which is sanctioned by grammar. Thus we may correctly say :

Roughly speaking, there were a hundred persons at the meeting.

10. The verb root +*ing* form is termed **participle** when used as an *adjective*, but **gerund** when used as a *noun*. The word *sleeping* is a participle in the proverb, *Let sleeping dogs lie*, because it qualifies the noun *dogs* ; but the same word is a *gerund* in the phrase *sleeping room*, because there it is used as a noun. The two functions of the same construction are sometimes emyloyed to express the same idea.

☞ There is, however, an important difference in the use of a word as a participle and as a gerund ; **the gerund is preceded by a noun (or pronoun) in the possessive case, but a participle is preceded by one in the accusative.** Here are examples :

Gerund	Participle
(*i*) You may depend upon **my** *doing* all in my power to help you.	(*i*) You may depend upon **me** *doing* all in my power to help you.
(*ii*) The sadist relished the idea of seeing a **woman's** *being* killed with kindness in Heywood's play.	(*ii*) The sadist relished the idea of seeing a **woman** *being* killed with kindness in Heywood's play.

*The parallel examples will also serve to show that while use as a gerund is preferable in most cases, it sometimes makes the construction so clumsy as to call for the use of the word as a participle.

11. The use of a gerund with a preposition is not permissible for an infinitive of purpose. Thus it is quite wrong to say :

I have come *for attending* the meeting.

It should be changedinto the following form :

I have come *to attend* the meeting.

12. From the list of verbs given above it will be seen that certain verbs have double forms in the past participle. Of these alternative forms, the old one is now used simply as an adjective, the new form being reserved for ordinary verbal uses, as

(*Old form*) His well-*knit* form ; (*New form*) She knitted the shawl.

13. **Verbs followed by** '*as*.' The following verbs are followed by 'as' :

Regard, describe, represent, portray, depict, mention, define, treat :

Incorrect—You ought to have regarded him your superior.

Correct—You ought to have regarded him *as* your superior.

Incorrect—He is described by his students the most whimsical teacher on the staff.

Correct—He is described by his students *as* the most whimsical teacher on the staff.

Incorrect—The students represent him the most harmless man.

Correct—The students represent him *as* the most harmless man.

Incorrect—He portrayed him a typical country farmer.

Correct—He portrayed him *as* a typical country farmer.

Incorrect—He was depicted in lurid colours a person of the very worst character.

Correct—He was depicted in lurid colours *as* a person of the very worst character.

Incorrect—He is mentioned to be possessing a great reputation as a lawyer.

Correct—He is mentioned *as* possessing a great reputation as a lawyer.

Incorrect—Some one has defined genius to be an infinite capacity for taking pains.

Correct—Some one has defined genius *as* an infinite capacity for taking pains.

Incorrect—You ought to have treated him your brother.

Correct—You ought to have treated him *as* your brother.

14. **Verbs not followed by** '*as*.' Verbs such as **name, call, term, think** and **consider** are not followed by *as* and take two accusatives :

Incorrect—The president nominated Mr. Huq as Governer of East Bengal.

Correct—The president nominated Mr. Huq Governor of East Bengal.

Incorrect—He called him as fool, traitor, and rogue.

Correct—He called him a fool, a traitor and a rogue.

Incorrect—They make a desert and call it as peace.

Correct—They make a desert and call it peace.

Incorrect—I think him as a silly fellow.

Correct—I think him a silly fellow.

Incorrect—I consider it as a very badly managed affair.

Correct—I consider it a very badly managed affair.

The verbs *act* and *pass* are followed by *as* in such sentences ; as 'He *passed* as a gentleman.' 'He *acted* as principal.'

15. **Verbs Distinguished** : Here are some important distinctions :

(i) **See, Look at, Hear, Listen to.** *See* bears the same relation

to *look at* as *hear* does to *listen to* or as *speak* does to *say*. The verbs *see*, *hear*, and *speak* are used *generally* to denote the exercise of the power of *sight*, *hearing* or *speech*, without any definite or special affort or concentration upon any particular object. But the verbs *look at*, *listen to* and *say* do indicate the concentration of the power of *sight*, *hearing* or *speech* upon a particular object :

Incorrect—Have you *seen* my last Examination paper, sir ?

Correct—Have you *looked* at my last Examination paper, sir ?

Incorrect—You should not hear such nonsense.

Correct—You should not *listen to* such nonsense.

Incorrect—What you are speaking ?

Correct—What are you *saying* ?

Incorrect—He saw the pictures with the greatest admiration.

Correct—He *looked at* the pictures with the greatest admiration.

(ii) **Deny, Refuse**. To *deny* means to *contradict*, to *refuse to acknowledge*, or to *disavow*. To *refuse* means to *reject* or to *express unwillingness to follow a suggested course of action* :

Incorrect—She denied to recognize him.

Correct—She *refused* to recognize him.

Incorrect—He denied to give a pice to the beggar.

Correct—He *refused* to give a pice to the beggar.

Incorrect—He denied the invitation.

Correct—He *refused* the invitation.

Incorrect—He refused the genuineness of his signature.

Correct—He *denied* the genuineness of his signature.

Incorrect—He refused the statement.

Correct—He *denied* the statement.

(iii) **Know, Believe, Think, Suppose, Trust, Hope, Expect.** *To know* is used with reference to some ascertained fact ; as, '*I know* that the earth moves round the sun.' *To believe* implies faith, trust or confidence in some person or thing, in the absence of certain proof—'*I believe* in the goodness of God.' *To think* means to consider, to be of opinion—'*I think* it will rain.' *To suppose* means to assume or presume, with or without good reason—'You will soon be going to the hills, *I suppose*.' *To trust* means to hope.—'You will soon be better, *I trust*.' *To hope* means to anticipate an event as pleasurable—*I hope* he will recover from his illness.' *To expect* means merely to anticipate an event (without reterence to whether it is painful or pleasurable)—. '*I expect* a storm' ; 'It was not so bad as I *expected* (it to be).'

These verbs are often confused by Pakistani students as the following examples will show :—

Incorrect. You will be going to the hills soon, I think.

Correct. You will be going to the hills soon, I *suppose.*

Incorrect. My aunt is very ill, I hope she will soon die.

Correct. My aunt is very ill, I *expect* she will soon die.

Incorrect. I believe you are better now.

Correct. I *hope* or (*trust*) you are better now.

Incorrect. I expect you will give me a good certificate.

Correct. I *hope* you will give me a good certificate.

(*iv*) **Intend, Wish.** To *intend* to do anything implies a fixed determination irrespective of the wishes of any one else. A pupil or a subordinate should, therefore, never use the verb *intend* in making a request or in writing an application to a teacher or to a superior officer :

Incorrect. I want leave as I *intend* to go home.

Correct. I want leave as I *wish* to go home.

Incorrect. I intend to go home this evening, you will please give me leave for to morrow.

Correct. As I wish to go home this evening *will you* please give me leave for to-morrow.

EXERCISES

Correct the following sentences :

(*For* **Board** *Students*)

1. Please *leave* my arm.
2. I must *take your leave.*
3. He knews *swimming.*
4. We should not *cut jokes in* class.
5. She said that she *saw* me last year.
6. My tooth is *paining.*
7. My foot is *paining.*
8. He *gave* a speech.
9. He *made* a lecture.
10. He has *given* his examination.
11. Please *see* my book.
12. She *would not* hear him.
13. He has *ordered for* a new watch.
14. They *made* a goal.
15. We *won* our opponents.

(*For* **University** *Students*)

1. The river has *overflown* its banks.
2. He *availed* of the offer.
3. He *resigned* to his fate.
4. I *will* be drowned ; nobody *shall* save me.
5. I think I *will* pass.
6. I ask *your favour* of sending me a reply aoon.
7. It depends upon the *wall's* being built.
8. I take this opportunity *to thank* you.
9. He has no business to *attend*.
10. He has a family to *work*.
11. *Leave* to do evil ; learn to do good.
12. He *came out* successful in the B.A. Examination.
13. They do not *pull on* well together.
14. We often *come across with* serious difficulties in learning English.
15. We are *habituated* to the heat in Pakistan.
16. I intend to *join* the law.
17. He *took admission in* the Government College.
18. He was *plucked up* in Mathematics.
19. This word is wrong, please *cut* it.
20. I intend to *fair out* my notes.
21. *Briefly speaking* it was a most deplorable affair.
22. He gets Rs. 50 a month for *fooding and lodging expenses*.
23. *What to say of* writing English correctly, he cannot write it at all.
24. He has to do an important work there.
25. Why did you do it ? *Just like that*, sir.

CHAPTER XVII

ADVERBS

1. An **adverb** is a word qualifying (or as is technically known, modifying the meaning of) a *verb*, an *adjective* or another *adverb*. They denote **time** (as *now*), **place** (as *here*), **number** (as *once*), **degree** (as *much*), *manner* (as *quickly*), **affirmation** (as *certainly*), **negation** (as *never*), **interrogation** (as *when* ?) and **relation** (as *when*).

2. **Formation of Adverbs.** Adverbs are formed in one of the following ways :

(*i*) **From adjectives** by adding *ly*, as *slowly* (from *slow*) ;

(*ii*) **From nouns** in various ways, as *today* (from *day*), *besides* (from *side*) ;

(*iii*) **From Pronouns** in various ways, as *where* (from *who*) ;

(*iv*) **By combining two or more words** as *however* (from *how* and *ever*) ;

(*v*) **By giving an adverbial meaning to adjectives**, as *hard* (in *to hit hard*).

3. **Comparison.** Adverbs too have various degrees of comparison like adjectives. Some of them are identical in form with adjectives. Of such, some are like *much*, *more*, *most*, and others add **er** and **est** as *soon*, *sooner*, *soonest*.

Adverbs ending in *ly* indicate comparison by taking *more* and *most* before them, as *more quickly*, *most quickly*.

4. **Position of Adverbs.** Here are the rules :

(*i*) Adverbs are usually placed *before* adjectives, other adverbs, prepositions and conjunctions :

Manzur is a *very* good boy (Adjective).

We ran *very* fast. (Adverb).

We reached the place *long* after the right time. (Preposition).

A man is cheerful *only* when he enjoys sound health. (Conjunction)

Note : The adverb *only* is placed immediately before the word it modifies.

* The adverb *enough* is placed after the word it modifies ; as, "I hope you will be kind *enough* to grant my prayer." "He was foolish *enough* to let them know what he thought of them."

(ii) Adverbs are placed *after* intransitive verbs ; as, He died *painfully*.

* But the adverbs *always*, *ever*, *generally*, *rarely*, *often*, *seldom*, etc., are usually placed before the verbs they modify, as I *always* think so. I *seldom* go there now. He *often* comes to see me.

(*iii*) Adverbs are placed either before the Transitive verbs or after their objects ; as, He *honestly* believes it, or He believes it *honestly*.

(*iv*) They are placed between the Auxiliary and the Principal Verbs ; as, He is *rarely* seen these days. I have *faithfully* carried out your orders.

(*v*) When an adverb modifies the whole sentence it is placed at the beginning of a sentence ; as, *Fortunately* he was not present there at that time.

☞ 5. Negative adverbs should not be used with words already containing an element of negation. In the sentence "*No one scarcely* pays a visit to the ruins of the fort these days," we have this kind of error. *Scarcely* has an element of negation in it. The sentence should be "*Scarcely any one* pays a visit, etc."

6. **That** is often used, especially in vulgar speech, instead of **so** as an adverb. This practice is to be condemned. 'He was *that* tired that he could scarcely walk' ; He was *that* clever that everyone thought he would do something remarkable in life,' are wrong.

7. **Very, Much**. These two adverbs should be carefully used, and their distinctive uses noted :

(*i*) **Very** modifies adjectives or adverbs in the *positive* degree and *much* in the *comparative* :

He is walking *very* slowly.

He is *much* slower than Karim.

(*ii*) **Very** modifies *present participles* and **much** modifies *past* ones :

This problem is *very* tantalising.

I was *much* delighted at hearing the news.

(*iii*) **Very** in the sense of 'actual' or 'real' is used to give emphasis to adjectives in the superlative degree :

He is the *very* best boy among the candidates.

Much is used to intensify the superlative degrees of adjectives :

He is *much* (very decidedly) the best candidate.

(*iv*) As an adverb *very* is often used to modify the adverb *much* :

This book is *very* much better than the other book.

The modern tendency is to discontinue the use of *very* **before** *much*.

☞8. **Enough, Too**. *Enough* signifies that the proper limit or amount has been reached, and *Too* means 'more than enough' :

I am not strong *enough* to leave my bed. (Not sufficiently strong).

I am strong *enough* to walk four miles at a stretch. (Sufficiently strong).

This is *too* good to be true. (Signifies something abnormal).

You are *too* unreliable a man to be trusted with this job. (Excessively unreliable).

9. **Yes, No.** Note the following questions and answers :

Question—Is he a good man ?

Answer—*Yes*, he is a good man.
No, he is *not* a good man.

Question—Did you not see him at that time ?

Answer—*Yes*, I *did* see him at that time.
No, I did *not* see him at that time.

It would be wrong to say, "*Yes*, I did not see him at that time." If the answer to a question is *Yes*, the verb following must be in the affirmative. But if the answer is *No*, the verb following must be in the negative.

10. **Since**. The use of *since* puzzles the students a good deal. *Since* denotes time, but can be used as on Adverb, Preposition or Conjunction.

(i) *As an adverb* **since** means *from now*, that is from the present time dating bıckwards. But as an adverb **since** stands after the word or words it modifies and is preceded by a verb in the *past indefinite* tense. It should be remembered that **since** is placed after a noun or phrase denoting some *period* of time not a *point* of time. We can say :

The principal *resigned* a *fortnight since*.

But we cannot use any of the following forms correctly :

(*a*) The Principal *has resigned* a fortnight since.

(*b*) The Principal resigned *since* a fortnight.

(*c*) The Principal resigned *Monday* since.

(ii) As a preposition **since** means *from*, and is preceded by a verb in the *perfect* tense. As a preposition it is never placed before a noun or phrase denoting a *period* of time, but is placed before one denoting some *point* of time :

The Principal *has not attended* the college since last Wednesday.

We cannot put it in any of the following forms :

(*a*) The Principal *did not attend* the college since last Wednesday.

(*b*) The Principal has not attended the college *since* two weeks.

(*c*) The Principal has not attended the college Wednesday *since*.

(*iii*) As a conjunction *since* signifies *from which time*. Then, it is followed by a verb in the *past indefinite* tense and preceded by a verb in the *present indefinite* or *past perfect* tense. As in the case of its use as an adverb, it is preceded by a noun or phrase denoting some *period* of time, not *point* of time :

It *is* now a week *since* the Principal resigned.

We cannot use any of the following forms :

(*a*) It *was* a week since the Principal resigned.

(*b*) It is *Monday* since the Principal resigned.

(*c*) It is a week since the Principal *has resigned*.

First(ly), secondly, lastly. Fowler says, "The preference for *first* over *firstly* in formal enumerations is one of the harmless pedantries in which those who like oddities because they are odd are free to indulge, provided that they abstain from censuring those who do not share the liking. It is the pedant that begins his list with *first* ; no one does so by the light of nature ; it is an artificialism."

11 Adverbs of time, such as *always, ever, often, seldom, never, sometimes, frequently* are placed *before* the verb they modify :—

He *always* speaks the truth.

Nothing *ever* happens by chance.

I *often* meet him near the railway station.

He *seldom* makes a mistake.

He *never* went there.

He *sometimes* feels depressed.

I *frequently* go to his house.

*However, these Adverbs are placed *after* the verbs *to be* ; as,

He is *always* melancholy.

EXERCISES

Correct the following sentences :

(*For* **Board** *Students*)

1. He was *enough foolish* to do it.
2. I have carried out *faithfully* your orders.
3. No one *hardly* comes to see me these days.
4. He explained his meaning *much* clearly.
5. He is the *much* best student in the class.
6. Our house *has fallen* two weeks since.
7. He has been absent from school *last Monday since*.
8. One year *passed* since my uncle died.
9. Three hours have elapsed since he *has fallen* down unconscious.
10. The college *was closed* since Thursday.

(*For* **University** *Students*)

1. His lordship has no time for transports, and no temper neither.
2. He who laughs heartiest laughs best.
3. He came quicker than I thought.
4. He played his cards wondrous well.
5. It was bitter cold.
6. I never spoke to him this morning.
7. If he at all comes it will be not till the winter.
8. The boy studies very carefully Mathematics.
9. The Principal was much angry with me.
10. He was very much pleased to receive my letter.
11. He was too exhausted when he got home.
12. Of course my son won the first prize in English.
13. His death has occurred long since.
14. No sooner said but done.
15. No sooner I entered the room the clock struck twelve.
16. He finished his work like he had been ordered to do.
17. I am very delighted to see you.
18. The flowers smell sweetly.
19. This hardly won liberty was not to be abused.
20. I never remember to have seen a more excited cricket match.

CHAPTER XVIII

PREPOSITIONS

1. A **Preposition** is a word expressing relationship between two simple objects or between an action and an object. The name is of French origin where such words are always placed *before* their object. In English it is correct only as far as nouns are concerned. But they are placed *after* objects having no verbs, as in.

The remark was uncalled *for*."

In such cases, *prepositions* are better termed **postpositions**.

2. Prepositions indicate a relationship of **time** (as *during*), of **place** (as *at*), or **hesitation** (as *notwithstanding*). Sometimes a whole phrase (like *in order to*, *instead of*) is used as a preposition.

3. Usually prepositions are placed *before* the objects they govern :

He went *before* me. *In front of* the house we found a crowd.

4. But prepositions are placed *after* the objects :

(i) When the object is an *interrogative pronoun* or *adverb* :
What are you talking *of ?*
Where are you going *to ?*

(ii) When **that** is used as a relative pronoun or the *relative pronoun* is omitted :

The man whom you speak *of* came to see me this morning.
All are not rogues *that* you may object to.

(iii) Sometimes after **whom** or **which** in relative sentences :

There is nothing about biology *which* he does not know of.

*This practice should not, however, be encouraged. Generally speaking a preposition should not occupy the last place in the sentence, especially in a long sentence.

5. **The use of certain Prepositions**. Here are some brief notes on the use of certain prepositions :

(i) **Beside, besides**. *Beside* means *by the side of* or *outside*. *Besides* means *in addition to* :

My house is *beside* the post office.
This is *beside* the question.
He has a motor-car and a motor-cycle *besides*.

(ii) **In, Within**. *In* points to the end of a period of time :

I shall finish the work *in* a week. (When a week has elapsed).
I shall finish the work *within* a week. (Before the week is out).

(*iii*) **Between, Among**. *Between* is used of two objects; *among* of more than two:

He was sitting *between* the Principal and the President of the committee.

He could not be found anywhere *among* the crowd.

(*iv*) **For, Since.** *For* is used before a *period of time* and *since* is used before a *point of time*:

I have been suffering from fever *for* five days.

I have been suffering from fever *since* Tuesday last.

(*v*) **From, Since**. *Since* is followed by a noun denoting a *point of time* and is preceded by a verb in the Present Perfect tense. It is not used for *present* or *future* time *From* is generally used to denote a *point of time* with reference to *past* time in cases where the time when the action ends is specified.

He was not seen there *from* Monday to Friday.

Unlike *since*, *from* may be preceded by a verb in any tense:

I shall go to office *from* to-morrow.

I am going to office *from* to-day.

(*vi*) **On, Over**. *On* indicates actual contact, but *over* does not do so.

Put the pen *on* the table.

Heavy clouds hang *over* the forest.

(*vii*) **In, Into**. *In* indicates *presence* or *existence* within.

I was *in* the room when he came.

Into indicates *motion inward* or *change of condition.*

I went *into* the room. A passage of English has to be translated *into* Urdu.

(*viii*) **Amid, Amidst**; **Among, Amongst.** *Amid* and *amidst* denote quantity:

He lay down *amid* the hay.

Among and *amongst* indicate number:

There was not one man *among* the crowd who would help me.

☞6 Since the infinitive (*to be*, *to go*, etc.) itself is headed by the preposition *to*, it follows as a useful corollary that prepositions other than **to** can never be followed by an infinitive. This principle is very important to bear in mind. As a positive assertion, we may say that prepositions are usually followed by *gerunds* or *abstract* nouns. **Assist** *in*, **bent** *on*, **chance** *of*, **confident** *of*, **custom** *of*, **despair** *of*, **disqualify** *from*, **excel** *in*, **excuse** *for*, **fearful** *of*, **fond** *of*, **fortunate** *in*, **gift** *for*, **hinder** *from*, **insist** *on*, **intend** *on*, **necessity** *of* or *for*, **negligent** *in*, **passion** *for*, **persist** *in*, **persevere** *in*, **pretext** *for*, **prohibit** *from*, are all followed by a gerund like *doing*, etc. It may further be noted that all verbs

meaning *to prevent* are followed by the preposition *from* and the gerund **Forbid**, however, is followed by the infinitive. Again, **hopeful** *of* (success) is an example of a preposition followed by an abstract noun.

7. Certain words, however, take either both the gerund and the infinitive (as **afraid** *of* doing, **afraid** *to* do; **chance** *of* doing, **chance** *to* do), or the infinitive only (as, **easy** *to* do, **intend** *to* do.)

8. In many instances a difference of preposition makes a difference of meaning or usage. Thus a letter is *directed* (addressed) to a person, a criticism is *directed* (aimed) *against* him. We are *vexed with* a person but *vexed at* a thing. We are *disappointed of* a thing when we *fail to* get it, but we are *disappointed in* a thing after we have got it and it does not satisfy us. We *fail in* an attempt but *fail of* a purpose. The same is the case with *angry, disgusted, displeased, enraged, annoyed, offended, delighted.* Similarly we are *irritated, provoked, excited, affected by* persons and *at* events. The examples should be noted carefully :

Advantage of. You had the advantage *of* me.

Advantage over. You gained an advantage *over* me.

Agree with. I agree *with* you.

Agree to. I agree *to* your proposal.

Accord to. A warm reception is accorded *to* you.

Accord with. This does not accord *with* the truth.

Afflicated with. I am afflicted *with* fever.

Aftlicted at. I am afflicted *at* your failure.

Anxious for. I am anxious *for* the prize.

Anxious about. I am anxious *about* his health.

Attend at. I was ordered to attend *at* that time.

Attend upon. He has only one servant to attend *upon* him.

Begin at. Begin your book *at* page 50.

Begin with. Begin *with* the first ten pages.

Beg of. The prisoner begged mercy *of* the judge.

Beg for. The prisoner begged the judge *for* mercy.

Blush at. The young lady blushed *at* the praise of her beauty.

Blush for. You shall have no cause to blush *for* me.

Bound for. This vessel is bound *for* Japan.

Bound in. He is bound *in* honour not to divulge the secret.

Bound by. We are bound *by* a contract.

Care of. We should take care *of* our health.

Care for. My brothers do not care *for* me.

Concur with. I concur *with* you.

Concur in. I concur *in* your decision.

Confide in. I confide *in* you.

Confide to. I confide my plans *to* you.

Confident of. He is confident *of* success.

Confidence in. He has confidence *in* the justice of his cause.

Cause of. What is the cause *of* delay.

Cause for. There is no cause *for* delay.

Compare with. Compare Akbar *with* Aurangzeb. (*similar*).

Compare to. We compare anger *to* fire, eloquence *to* thunder, and the world *to* a stage. (*dissimilar*).

Differ with. I differ *with* you in this plain.

Differ from. The climate of West Pakistan differs *from* that of East Bengal.

Die of. Men die *of* hunger, *of* cholera.

Die by. Men die *by* the sword, *by* violence.

Engaged in. I am engaged *in* this business.

Engaged to. The young man was engaged *to* a young girl of rare beauty.

Entrust with. I cannot entrust anyone *with* this secret.

Entrust to. I cannot entrust this secret *to* any one.

Exult in Do not exult *in* the misfortune of another.

Exult over. Do not exult *over* a defeated enemy.

Familiar to. The name of Iqbal is familiar *to* every Muslim in the present-day world.

Familiar with. Every Muslim is familiar *with* the name of Iqbal.

Impatient of. He is impatient *of* reproof.

Impatient for. I am impatient *for* payment.

Liable to. All men are liable *to* error.

Liable for. Who is to be liable *for* payment.

Part from. It is very painful to part *from* the scenes of childhood.

Part with. He is not willing to part *with* his money.

Provide for. God will provide *for* our wants.

Provide against. We must provide *against* this risk.

Prevail on, with. He prevailed *on* me to accompany him.

I prevailed *with* him to accept my present.

Prevail over or **against**. He prevailed *over* or *against* his enemies (defeated).

Reconciled with. I am reconciled *with* my brother.

Reconciled to. I am reconciled *to* his marriage.

Result of. What is the result *of* the examination ?

Result from. Peace and happiness result *from* a life of purity.

Search for. He made search *for* lost property.

Search of. He is in search *of* a job.

Succeed to. He succeeded *to* his father's property.

Slow at. He is slow *at* Arithmetic.

Slow of. He is slow *of* hearing.

Succeed in. He succeeded *in* his efforts.

Sympathise with, in. I sympathise *with* you *in* this misfortune.

Taste of. He has had a taste *of* poverty.

Taste for. He has no taste *for* music.

Tired of. I am tired *of* doing nothing and want change.

Tired with. I am tired *with* my exertion.

Trust in. Trust *in* God and do the right.

Trust to. I cannot trust *to* my memory.

Trust with. I cannot trust you *with* money.

Use of. What is the use *of* asking him about it ?

Use in. There is no use *in* asking him about it.

Use for. There is no use *for* this.

Vengeance upon. He took vengeance *upon* his enemy.

Vengeance for. He took vengeance *for* the wrong inflicted upon him.

War upon. He made war *upon* luxury.

War with. He waged war *with* witch-craft.

9. The following is a list of words which, though similar in meaning, are not necessarily followed by the same preposition.

Short of. He is short *of* money.

Deficient in. He is deficient *in* politeness.

Alarmed at. I am alarmed *at* your rashness.

Afraid of. I am afraid *of* your rashness.

Amused at. I was amused *at* his proceedings.

Interested in. I was interested *in* his proceedings.

Eager for. He is eager *for* renown.

Covetous of. He is covetous *of* gain.

Inured to. I am inured *to* misfortune.

Hardened against. I am hardened *against* misfortune.

Pretends to. He pretends *to* great accuracy.

Aims at. He aims *at* great accuracy.

Foreign to. This is foreign *to* the purpose.

Remote from. This is remote *from* my intention.

Free from. He is free *from* fever.

Rid of. He got rid *of* fever.

Adequate to. His pay is adequate *to* his needs.

Sufficient for. His pay is sufficient *for* his needs.

Dear to. This ruler is dear *to* his subjects.

Popular with. This ruler is popular *with* his subjects.

Acquainted with. I am acquainted *with him*.

Known to. I am known *to* him.

Gave way to. He gave way *to* me.

Made way for. He made way *for* me.

Replete with. The speech was replete *with* wit.

Full of. The speech was full *of* wit.

Wanting in. You are wanting *in* firmness.

Devoid of. You are devoid *of* firmness.

Joined to. Power joined *to* wealth.

Combined with. Power combined *with* wealth.

10. In some cases more than one preposition is used after the same word without altering the meaning. Here are some words of this type :

Ambitious *of*, *for* (renown)	Fight *with*, *against* (the foe)
Advance *upon*, *against* (enemy)	Ill *of*, *with* (fever)
Analogy *to*, *with* (a thing)	Lenient *to*, *with* (an offender)
Averse *to*, *from* (something)	Moved *by*, *with* (pity)
Borrow *of*, *from* (a neighbour)	Proportionate *to*, *with* (an amount)
Buy *of*, *from* (a dealer)	Provide *for*, *against* (difficulties)
Correspond *to*, *with* (this)	Recover *from*, *of* (a disease)
Contend *with*, *against* (a person)	Relieved *of*, *from* (a burden)
Endeavour *for*, *after* (success)	Sympathy *for*, *with* (him).

11. In some instances words that differ slightly in form from each other and which might be expected to take the same preposition, are followed by different prepositions. Thus we say :

Dependent *on*	Independent *of*
Dislike *to*	Liking *for*
Sensible *of*	Insensible *to*
Equal *to*	Co-equal *with*
Qualified *to* (compete)	Disqualified *from*
Trust *in*	Distrust *of*
Encourage *to* (proceed)	Discouraged *against* (proceeding)
Subsequent *to*	Consequent *upon*
Different *from*	Indifferent *to*
Neglectful *of*	Negligent *in*.
According *to*	In accordance *with*
Affection *for*	Affectionate *to*
Alternate *with*	Alternative *to*
Ambition *for*	Ambitious *of*
Alien *to*	Alienate *from*
Capable *of*	Capacity *for*
Cautious *of*	Caution *against*
Confident *of*	Confidence *in*
Delight *in*	Delighted *with*
Descend *from*	Descendent *of*
Desire *for*	Desirous *of*
Envy *at*	Envious *of*
Exclude *from*	Exclusive *of*

Fond *of*	Fondness *for*
Hinder *from*	Hindrance *to*
Hope (verb) *for*	Hope (noun) *of*
Prepare *for*	Preparatory *to*
Sympathy *with*, *for*	Sympathise *with*
Want *of*	Wanting *in*.

12. **Wrong use.** Sometimes a Preposition is wrongly put between a Transitive Verb and its Object as in the following:

Incorrect	Correct
The officer *ordered for* his dismissal.	The officer *ordered* his dismissal.
He *ordered for* the books.	He *ordered* the books.
A bad boy does not *obey to* his teacher.	A bad boy does not *obey* his teacher.
My pen *resembles* to his pen.	My pen *resembles* his pen.
I *contemplate to* write a letter.	I *contemplate* writing a letter.
I will *inform to* your father.	I will *inform* your father.
Have you *signed to* that contract.	Have you *signed* that contract.
You should not have *violated against* the rule.	You should not have *violated* the rule.
He carefully *investigated into* the case.	He carefully *investigated* the case.
Your medicine has *benefited to* me much.	Your medicine has *benefited* me much.
He *assisted to* me in this work.	He *assisted* me in this work.
He *opens out* the school.	He *opens* the school.
He *ascended on* the hill.	He *ascended* the hill.
He *recommended for* me.	He *recommended* me.
He *confused up* two different things.	He *confused* two different things.
That thought *pervades through* my whole mind.	That thought *pervades* my whole mind.
He has *resigned from* his post.	He has *resigned* his post.
He is *spent up* with toil.	He is *spent* with toil.
He *criticised upon* my proposal.	He *criticised* my prosposal.

13. **Wrong omission.** Contrariwise a preposition is sometimes wrongly omitted as in the following:

I must now *dipense* your services.	I must now *dispense with* your services.
He *prevailed* him.	He *prevailed upon* him.

Incorrect	Correct
He *tyrannised* him.	He *tyrannised over* him.
I *encroach* your leisure.	I *encroach upon* your leisure.
I *muse* a matter.	I *muse over* a matter.
I *listen* what you say.	I *listen to* what you say.
You can *depend* his word.	You can *depend upon* his word.
Apply a person.	*Apply to* a person (but *apply* a thing).
Dispose a work.	*Dispose of* a work.
Partake a meal.	*Partake of* a meal.
We are *beware* dogs.	We are *beware of* dogs.
We are *aware* the fact.	We are *aware of* the fact.

EXERCISES

Correct or justify the following sentences :

(*For* **Board** *Students*)

1. He was sitting among the two windows.
2. I have not seen him *for* five days.
3. I have been suffering from fever for Monday last.
4. You must come back before two hours.
5. What for is Calcutta famous ?
6. One stream flows in another.
7. You should admonish to him to be more careful in his behaviour.
8. Do not trouble yourself for the miseries and complexities of life
9. Energy is a marked feature in the English character.
10. This happened at the eve of the Battle of Panipat.
11. I like to listen the song of the nightingale at the evening.
12. He closely resembles to his father in appearance.
13. The dacoits set the house to fire.
14. He went to the station for seeing his father.
15. He has the bad habit to borrow money from others.
16. Refrain to tell lies and do not persist to do evil.

(*For* **University** *Students*)

1. I hope you have been successful to get the appointment.
2. I have a great desire for being a doctor.
3. Do you know if there is a house for letting in this neighbourhood ?
4. He went home having forbidden all others from accompanying him.
5. I want to feel that I can in all times rely your word.
6. Send this letter on this address.
7. Write with ink.
8. What use is it ?
9. I addressed to her in these words.
10. Due to illness, I could not go to school.

11. He sided him.
12. I inquired her.
13. They replied me in the negative.
14. Will you fight the cause ?
15. He is a man who keeps appearances.
16. Do not blame me of carelessness.
17. Do not accuse me for carelessness.
18. The people of Utopia looked down gold and valued iron.
19. He was honourably acquitted from the charge.
20. Travel affords a man with many experiences.
21. He was sitting in company with his friends.
22. The king presented him a very fine sword.
23. In vain I searched after an answer to the question.
24. He was admitted in the household.
25. She burst in tears.
26. He turned this accident into account.
27. I tried to save her, but of no purpose.
28. Sadly she took leave from her children.
29. I asked him to take care for his life.
30. Before a fortnight she was quite well.

CHAPTER XIX
CONJUNCTIONS

1. **A conjunction** is a word employed **only** for the sake of *joining* sentences, clauses, phrases, or words. The word **only** in this definition is very significant because *relative pronouns, relative adverbs* and *prepositions* also serve the same purpose though it is not their *only* use.

2. To know a conjunction from a *preposition*, one must bear in mind that whereas the former only joins a noun (or, for the matter of that, any word, phrase, etc.), the latter (*i.e.*, a preposition) also governs the noun joined by it to some other word.

3. To know a *conjunction* from a *relative* (pronoun or adverb), one should remember that whereas the latter have an antecedent noun; the former only joins. A conjunction has no antecedent.

4. Conjunctions are of two kinds : (*a*) **Co-ordinative** ; (*b*) **Subordinative**. The latter class has a further sub-division which includes the *relatives*.

(*a*) **Co-ordinative** conjunctions are so called because they join clauses (or sentences) of '*equal order*.' They denote :

(*i*) **Addition**, as *and, again, besides, furthermore, moreover, finally*, etc.

(*ii*) **Contrast**, as *but, however, yet, still, nevertheless, notwithstanding, whereas, on the contrary, on the other hand*, etc.

(*iii*) **Alternation**, as *either......or, neither......nor, whether......or*, etc. They are known as **correlative conjunctions**.

(*iv*) **Consequence**, as *hence, consequently, thus, therefore, accordingly, wherefore*, so.

(*v*) **Evidence**, as *for*, (meaning because).

(*vi*) **Repetition**, as *indeed, in fact, in other words, for example, that is*.

(*b*) **Subordinative** conjunctions are so called because they join a subordinate or dependent clause to the principle clause. They denote :

(*i*) **Time**, as *when, whenever, while, as, since, after, before, until*, etc.

(*ii*) **Place**, as *where, whence, whither*.

(*iii*) **Degree**, as *then, as, more than, rather than*.

(*iv*) **Manner**, as *as if, as though, as*.

(*v*) **Cause or reason**, as *because, for, since, as, inasmuch as*.

(*vi*) **Condition**, as *if*, *provided that*, *supposing*, *unless*, *on condition that*.

(*vii*) **Purpose,** as *that*, *so that*, *in order that*, etc.

(*viii*) **Concession**, as *though*, *although*, *even if*, etc.

5. **The use of certain conjunctions**. Below you will find some useful notes on the use of certain conjunctions :

(*i*) When **as** shows *contrast*, it must follow some adjective, adverb or participle. Here is an example :

Wise as she is, even she errs in this respect.

(*ii*) **While** is a co-ordinative when it shows *contrast*, and subordinative when it denotes *time*, as

(*a*) Wise men love truth, *while* fools shun it. (*Co-ordinate*).

(*b*) She kept the house while her mother was away. (*Subordinative*).

(*iii*) **However** stands alone when it is a co-ordinative, but must be joined on to some adjective or adverb when it is used as a subordinative, as

(*a*) Everyone was opposed to him ; he, however, stuck to his opinions. (*Co-ordinative*).

(*b*) However rich one may be, one is never content. (*Subordinative*).

(*iv*) **Unless** means *if not*. See that the clause headed by it does not negative its intended meaning.

Incorrect : *Unless* you do not work hard, you will fail.

Correct : Unless you work hard, you will fail.

(*v*) **Until, while, as long as, so long as**. The first one refers to the time which passes before the occurrence of some event, whereas the other three refer to the duration of that very time. **So long as** is used with negative, but **while** and **as long as** are used with affirmative statements Here are examples :

I cannot go until he returns.
I have to keep watch while he is away.
As long as you are prepared to work hard, you can earn enough money.
So long as he is ill, he will not come here.

(*vi*) **And, but**. The former is used to add something, whereas the latter is used to show contrast or to detract from the earlier statement, as

He is an honest person *and* should be rewarded for it.
He has not done it on purpose, but he cannot escape the punishment,

(*vii*) **As it were** (meaning *so to speak*) should not be confused with **as if** or **as though**. Here are examples of their correct use :

He is *as it were* a new Napoleon.

He spoke *as if* he knew the inside story.

It isn't *as though* she were poor.

(*viii*) **That** should not be used before a sentence in direct narration or after an interrogative verb in indirect narration. It should be omitted from both of the following sentences :

He said *that* "I shall come tomorrow."

He asked *that* what I felt in that point.

(*ix*) **Scarcely** should be followed by *when*, and not by *than* :

Incorrect. Scarcely had the teacher departed *than* the boys jumped up and began to shout.

Correct. Scarcely had the teacher departed *when* the boys jumped up and began to shout.

(*x*) **Without** should not be used as a conjunction instead of **unless** :

Incorrect.—He never speaks a word *without* he is compelled to.
Correct.—He never speaks a word *unless* he is compelled to.

(*xi*) **Like** should not be used as a conjunction instead of **as** :

Incorrect. He dresses *like* his friend does.
Correct. He dresses *as* his friend does.

Nevertheless, it must be remembered that *like* is used as a conjunction colloquially and may have literary sanction in course of time when the sentence marked as incorrect above will be deemed as correct.

(*xii*) ☞ When the conjunctions **when, while, before, after, till** are used in a subordinate clause with reference to some future event, they take the verb in the present indefinite even if the principal clause is in the future :

Incorrect : I shall deliver your message *when I shall see* him.
Correct : I shall deliver your message when I see him.
The other conjunctions listed above follow the same pattern.

6. Use of Correlative Conjunctions. When using Correlative Conjunctions care should be taken to see that they are followed by the same parts of speech. In the sentence '*Neither* did I go *nor* he went,' the correlatives have been wrongly used : for whereas *neither* is followed by an auxiliary verb, *nor* is followed by a pronoun. The correct sentence would be '*Neither* did I go *nor* did he.' Again in the sentence, 'He *not only* lost his watch, *but also* his purse,' we have a similar mistake. Whereas *not only* is followed by a verb *but also* is followed by a pronoun in the possessive case.

(i) Both...and

Incorrect.—He is *both a* fool *as also* a knave.

Correct.—He is *both* a fool *and* a knave.

If one fact is more important than the other, the former should be mentioned last :—

Incorrect.—He was *both* driven out of the house *and* insulted.

Correct.—He was *both* insulted *and* driven out of the house.

(ii) Not only...but also or but

When two words or sentences are joined by these correlatives the emphasis is given to the *second* of the two :

Incorrect.—*Not only* all other men *but also* I think it to be incorrect.

Correct.—*Not only* I *but also* all other men think it to be incorrect.

Incorrect.—*Not only* I, *practically* all other men think it to be incorrect.

Correct.—*Not only* I, *but also* or *but* all other men...etc.

(iii) No sooner . than

Incorrect.—*No sooner* had he heard the news *than* he wept aloud.

Correct.—He had *no sooner* heard the news *than* he wept aloud.

(iv) Scarcely (or hardly)...before (or when)

Note the following examples :

He had *scarely* (or *hardly*) come into the room *when* his father began scolding him.

He had scarcely (or *hardly*) come into the room *before* his father began chastising him.

(v) Indeed...but

Incorrect —The man was *indeed* found guilty *but* was convicted.

Correct.—The man was *indeed* found guilty *but* could not be convicted.

These two correlatives emphasise the contrast between the first and the second statements.

(vi) Such...as

Incorrect.—There is no such country which you mention.

Correct.—There is no *such* country *as* you mention.

(vii) Such...that

Incorrect.—*Such* was her hatred as she stuck at nothing to gratify her malice.

Correct.—*Such* was her hatred *that* she stuck at nothing to gratify her malice.

(*viii*) **So as...as ; As...as**

Incorrect.—So far I am concerned he is dead.

Correct.—*So* far *as* I am concerned he may *as* well be dead.

Incorrect.—*As far* the school is concerned you are free to act as you please.

Correct.—*As* far *as* the school is concerned you are free to act as you please.

(*ix*) **Either...or**

Incorrect.—Either he as well as she is mercenary.

Correct.—*Either* he is mercenary *or* she is. Either he or she is mercenary.

(*x*) **Neither...nor**

Incorrect.—The boy is neither fool, *or* knave ; he is merely idle.

Correct.—The boy is *neither* a fool *nor* a knave ; he is merely idle.

(*xi*) **As...so**

Incorrect.—As I *have fever to day, so I cannot attend the college.

Correct.—I cannot attend the college as I have fever to-day. Also,

As I have fever to-day, I cannot attend college.

*As is not followed by so except for the sake of emphasis, *e.g.*, *As* you sow, *so* shall you reap.

(*xii*) **So...that**

Incorrect.—We talked loudly that the guests were disturbed.

Correct.—We talked *so* loudly *that* the guests were disturbed.

(*xiii*) **Though...yet**

Incorrect.—Though He slay me but I will trust in Him.

Correct.—*Though* He slay me *yet* I will trust in Him.

However, it is better to drop even *yet* in accordance with the modern tendency. The two clauses will then be separated with a comma.

(*xiv*) **Other...than**

Incorrect.—She had no other claim to the post but her good looks.

Correct.—She had no *other* claim *for* the post *than* her good looks.

EXERCISES

(*For* **Board** *Classes*)

What is wrong with the following sentences ?

1. She and him are very happily connected.
2. Both him and me should comply with your request.

3. He is not as smart as you are.
4. The statements are so suspicious as they require much attention.
5. You must wait until I do not arrive.
6. No sooner he finished to speak than we started.
7. Only such students will be allowed to compete who have passed the Higher Secondary examination.
8. Though he said he was not going but still he went there.
9. His conduct is such which I cannot forgive.
10. He works hard lest he should not fail.

(*For* **University** *Classes*)

1. Scarcely had my father left the room than my younger brother began to dance.
2. He speaks like his teacher does.
3. Indeed the man was found guilty but he was not convicted.
4. Though you insult me but I will love you.
5. He wished to make Janardan as his assistant.
6. He had a piece of paper or a pen with him.
7. Both in Lahore as well as in the surrounding villages there was good deal of excitement about the temple-incident.
8. The outside costume of a clergyman is not a matter of much or any importance, and I think there would be a strong barrier to break down before we can do away with it.
9. It was neither by superior numbers, discipline, organisation, or enlightenment, that the leaders of the Confederate Army could prevail.
10. Though she was tired, but she did not stop dancing.

CHAPTER XX

INTERJECTIONS

1. An **interjection** is a word expressing a sudden emotion like joy, curiosity, anger, pain, etc. It is in fact merely an exclamatory sound, thrown into a sentence, to denote some strong feeling. It does not modify any word and is used by itself.

2. Interjections of every generation are closely akin to its slang, while those of a previous period sound bookish. Since they are a mild form of swearing, they are borrowed either from a perverted appeal to sacred things or from baser passions.

3. An interjection is followed by the **note of exclamation** written as "!"

4. An interjection generally consists of one word, but there are also phrases used as interjections.

5. Below is given a list of the more important interjections :

Approval : Bravo ! Well done ! (شاباش !)

Amusement : Ha ! (واہ !)

Attention : Lo ! Hark ! Hush ! (ایلو !)

Call : Ho ! Hallo ! (سنئے ! اے ! جی ! ارے !)

Doubt : Hum ! (ھونہہ !) Why ! (کیوں !)

Surprise : Dear ! Dear ! Dear me ! Oh dear ! (توبہ توبہ ! ارے ! توبہ) Good gracious ! (خدایا رحم !) Good heavens ! (خدا پناہ !) ; Gosh ! (ارے ! اوئی !).

Grief : Dear ! (etc.) Oh ! Alas ! Alack ! Alack a day ! Ah me ! Woe is me ! (دریغا ! آہ !).

Greeting : Hail ! Welcome ! (خوش آمدید !).

Farewell : Good-bye ! Bye bye ! Cheerio ! Ta-ta ! (*nursery*) (خدا حافظ !).

Joy : Hurrah ! Huzza ! (واہ وا !).

Reproof : Fie ! Shame (شرم شرم !).

Contempt : Pooh ! Pooh pooh ! Pish ! Psha ! Tush ! (ھونہہ !).

Pain : Oo ! (ھائے ! اوئی ! اوئی اللہ !).

Request for repetition : Encore ! (مکرر !).

Command (to horse) ! (i) (to stop) Wo ! Whoa ! (ii) (to go faster) Gee ! Gee-up ! Gee-hup ! Gee-ho !

6. Oh ! and O ! This interjection expresses various emotions. The latter form is usually prefixed to a vocative name, as O king (اے بادشاہ). Used as such, it is **not** followed by the note of exclamation, for unlike the practice in Urdu, the vocative in English is never followed by this punctuation mark. When used as interjections, the rule is to spell *Oh* if separated by punctuation, but as simply O if not separated like that. Thus we write :

Oh, what a lie !

O for a rest !

☞ 7. When an interjection is used in a sentence, the note of exclamation is usually put at the end of the sentence, and the interjection is generally separated with a comma.

EXERCISES

(*For* **Board** *Students*)

Use the following interjections in sentences of your own :

Ta-ta ! Hallo ! Hurrah ! Shame ! Bye bye ! Hail ! Dear me ! Alas ! Bravo ! Pooh !

(*For* **University** *Students*)

Tush ! Hark ! Hush ! Cheerio ! Dear dear ! Hum ! Pooh pooh ! Oo ! Gosh ! Gee-ho ! Encore !

CHAPTER XXI

DIRECT AND INDIRECT NARRATION

1. When the actual words used by a person are reported we have **Direct Narration**. But when the *substance* of a person's speech is reported we have **Indirect Narration**.

Direct. Rahim said, "I am going to see Karim."

Indirect. Rahim said that he was going to see Karim.

The verb which reports the speech is called the *reporting verb*, and the speech is called the *reported speech*. In the sentences given here *said* is the reporting verb, and the second clause in each sentence is the reported speech.

2. **Rules** *for changing a* **direct** *into an* **indirect** *narration* :

(*i*) The conjunction *that* or a *relative* or *conjunctive adverb* is inserted before the reported speech :

Direct. The little man said, "Quite right."

Indirect. The little man said *that* (it was) quite right.

Direct. Rahim said, "I cannot do it."

Indirect. Rahim said *that* he could not do it.

Direct. The man said to me, "Will you apply for the post ?"

Indirect. The man asked me *whether* I was applying for the post.

(*ii*) If the reporting verb is in the *present* or *future* tense, the rb in the reported speech should remain unchanged :

Direct. Rahim says, "I am not coming."

Indirect. Rahim says that he is not coming.

Direct. Rahim will certainly say, "I could never do it."

Indirect. Rahim will certainly say that he could never do it.

(*iii*) If the reporting verb is in the *past* tense, the verb in the reported speech should be changed from the *present* or *future* tense into *past* tense, and from the *present perfect* or *past* tense into the *past perfect* tense :

Direct. He said, "The other man may come now."

Indirect. He said that the other man *might* come now.

Direct. He said, "I have already done that."

Indirect. He said that he *had* already done that.

Direct. He said, "I finished the work two days ago."

Indirect. He said that he *had* finished the work two days earlier.

* But if the reported speech contains a *universal* truth then this rule will not apply. A universal truth can never be stated in the past tense :

Direct. The teacher said, "The earth moves round the sun."

Indirect. The teacher said that the earth *moves* round the sun.

(*iv*) The *person* of *pronouns* and *verbs* in the reported speech should correspond to the person of the individual with reference to whom the speech is made :

Direct. He said to me, "Are you going there ?"

Indirect. He asked me whether *I* was going there.

Direct. He exclaimed, "I am a sinner !"

Indirect. He exclaimed that *he* was a sinner.

(*v*) In indirect narration *shall* and *will* should be changed according to the rules for their use :

Direct. Johnson said, "I shall not believe it."

Indirect. Johnson said that he *would* not believe it.

Direct. He comes and says, "You will pass."

Indirect. He comes and says that I *shall* pass.

(*vi*) If the reported speech is an *interrogative sentence*, the reported verb, *say* or *tell*, should be changed into *ask* or *inquire*, and should be followed by a *conjunctive adverb* if necessary :

Direct. He said to me, "Are you coming this evening ?"

Indirect. He asked me *if* (or *whether*) I was coming that evening.

(*vii*) If the reported speech is a *command* or *request*, some verb expressing *command* or *request* should be used and the *Infinitive Mood* should be substituted for the *Imperative Mood* :

Direct. The master said to the servant, "Fetch a glass of water at once."

Indirect. The master *ordered* the servant to fetch a glass of water at once.

Direct Rahim said to his friend, "Please do this if you can."

Indirect. Rahim *requested* his friend to do that if he could.

(*viii*) In reporting *exclamations* or *wishes*, some verbs expressing exclamation or wish should be used and some word or words may be added to make the sense complete :

Direct. My friend said to me. "How kind you are !"

Indirect. My friend *exclaimed* that I was *very* kind.

Direct. Aslam said, "Alas ! I am a ruined man !"

Indirect. Aslam *exclaimed with a sigh* that he was a ruined man.

Direct. The audience shouted, "Bravo ! it is a fine hit !"

Indirect. The audience shouted *with applause* that it was a fine hit.

(*ix*) When *Let* occurs in direct speech so as to express a *proposal*, *let* should be changed into *should*, and the reported verb into *propose* :

Direct. The teacher said, "Let the boy on the last bench answer the question."

Indirect. The teacher *proposed* that the boy on the last bench *should* answer the question.

* But when *let* does not express a proposal, it should be changed according to the meaning :—

Direct. The teacher said, "Let him answer the question if he wants."

Indirect. The teacher said that he *might* answer the question if he wanted.

(*x*) *Interjections* and *interjectional phrases* should be omitted in indirect narration or substituted by other words :

Direct. Manzur said to me, "Ah ! There you are ! I told you you would come to this position sooner or later."

Indirect. Manzur expressed his satisfaction and said that he had told me that I would have to come to that position sooner or later.

(*xi*) Commit to memory the following list :
In indirect narration—

This	is	changed into	*that.*
These	,,	,,	,, *those.*
Here	,,	,,	,, *there.*
Hither	,,	,,	,, *thither.*
Hence	,,	,,	,, *thence.*
Now	,,	,,	,, *then.*
It	,,	,,	,, *that.*
Come	,,	,,	,, *go.*
Thus	,,	,,	,, *so.*
Hereby	,,	,,	,, *thereby.*
Ago	,,	,,	,, *before.*
Today	,,	,,	,, *that day.*
Tomorrow		,,	,, *the next day.*
Yesterday ,,		,,	,, *the previous day.*
Last night ,,		,,	,, *the previous night.*
Next week		,,	,, *the following week.*

3. Here are some model exercises :

(*i*) **Direct.** "Pretty busy, eh ?" said the little man.

"Oh, werry well, sir," replied Sam, "we shan't be bankrupts and we shan't make our fort'ns. We eats our biled mutton without capers, and don't care for horse-radish ven ve can get beef."

"Ah," and the little man, "You're a wag, aint you ?"

"My eldest brother was troubled with that complaint," said Sam ; "it may be catching—I used to sleep with him."

Indirect. The little man asked (Sam) if he was pretty busy. Sam replied that they were pretty busy, they should not be bankrupts, and they should not make their fortunes. (He added that) they ate their boiled mutton without capers, and did not care for horse-radish when they could get beef. The little man asked him if he was a wag. Sam replied that his eldest brother had been troubled with that complaint (and that) it might be catching, (for) he used to sleep with him.

Note. In the passage above there were many vulgar and cockney expressions. These have been improved in the indirect narration Again, here and there, some words have been added to make the sense complete.

(ii) **Direct**. "Mr. Grundy's going to oblige the company with a song," said the chairman.

"No, he aint, ' said Mr. Grundy.

' Why not ?" said the chairman.

"Because he can't," said Mr. Grundy.

"You had better say he won't," replied the chairman.

"Well, then, he won't," retorted Mr. Grundy.

Indirect. The chairman said that Mr. Grundy was going to oblige the company with a song. Mr. Grundy said that he was not. The chairman asked him the reason for that. Mr. Grundy gave the reason that he could not sing. The chairman suggested that he had better say that he would not. In retort Mr. Grundy agreed that he would not.

(iii) **Direct**. Jesus said unto her, "Woman, believe me, the hour cometh when ye shall neither in the mountain, nor yet at Jerusalem, worship the Father. Ye worship ye know not what : we know what we worship ; for salvation is of the Jews. But the hour cometh and now is when the true worshippers shall worship the Father in spirit and in truth : for the Father seeketh such to worship Him."

Indirect. Jesus bade the woman believe Him that the hour was coming when they should neither in the mountain, nor yet at Jerusalem, worship the Father. They (the Samaritans) worshipped they knew not what : they (the Jews) knew what they worshipped ; for salvation was of the Jews. But the hour was coming and then (it) was (the time) when the true worshipper should worship the Father in spirit and in truth : for the Father seeketh such to worship Him.

* The last clause contains a universal truth, so the verb has not been changed.

(iv) **Direct**. "I know who has charge of the horses," said

Dick. "I saw them grazing near the hut of the woman whose baby was saved by Crusoe."

"That's well," said Joe. "That's one of my difficulties gone."

"What are the others ?"

"Well, d'ye see they are troublesome. We can't get the horses out of camp without being seen. And to get off without them would never do at all."

Indirect. Dick told Joe that he knew who had charge of the horses. He saw them grazing near the hut of the woman whose baby had been saved by Crusoe. Joe replied that was all right as with that was one of his difficulties gone. Dick asked him what the other difficulties were. Joe replied that Dick could see they were troublesome. They could not get the horses out of the camp without being seen, and to get off without them would never do at all.

EXERCISES

(*For* **Board** *Students*)

Change the following passages into direct form :

1. The boy admitted that he was very sorry for the fault he had comitted.
2. They told him that they would never believe what he said.
3. I replied that if my fault was proved I would pay the fine.
4. Mr. Pickwick replied mildly that in affording him that interview the young lady had taken a natural, perhaps, but slill a very imprudent step. If he were present at the meeting—a natural friend, who was old enough to be the father of both parties—the voice of calumny could never be raised thereafter.

(*For* **University** *Students*)

Change the following passages into indirect form :

1. "What would Arthur say now ?" she asked, speaking of a younger son of hers—"who never so much as once came to see my dearest Johnny through all the time of his poverty and struggle !

2. "Captain Pendennis is with his regiment in India, mother," Mr. Pendennis remarked ; "and, if you please, I wish you would not call me Johnny before the young man—before Mr. Parkins."

3. "Let that place for good, Pendennis ?" Mr. Foker said, descending from his landau, and giving Pendennis a finger.

"Yes, this year or more," Pen said.

"Beastly old hole," Mr. Foker remarked. "Hate it. Hate the Doctor ; hate Towzer, the second master ; hate everybody there. Not a fit place for a gentleman."

"Not at all," said Pen, with an air of the utmost consequence.

"By gad, sir, I sometimes dream, now, that the Doctor's walking into me," Foker continued (and Pen smiled as he thought that he himself had likewise fearful dreams of this nature). "When I think of the diet there, by gad, sir, I wonder how I stood it Mangy mutton, brutal beef, pudding on Thursdays and Sundays, and that fit to poison you. Just look at my leader—did you ever see a prettier animal ? Drove over from Baymouth. Came the nine mile in two-and-forty minutes. Not bad going, sir."

PART III

INCREASE YOUR VOCABULARY

CHAPTER XXII

WORD-BUILDING

1. Decent Dress. "Words are the dress of thought," says Lord Chesterfield, and thoughts, he adds, "should no more be presented in rags, tatters and dirt than your person should." If there is even a grain of truth in this observation, there is no reason why you should ignore the study of words. Of course you would never like to see your precious thoughts going about in rags, would you?

2. Familiarity. It is not enough that you should have a mere nodding acquaintance with words. Such acquaintances, you must have realized by now, cannot be counted upon as true friends to stand by you through thick and thin and help you in time of need. They will only let you down when you are in great need of them, making you miserably fumble for them. And they are in no way to blame for turning their back on you when you suddenly look forward to their help, because you never befriended them, never made them part and parcel of your mental property when you easily could. You never recognized their rights ; what claim can you then have on their services ?

3. Basic Vocabulary. How to breed familiarity with words ; how to get on intimate terms with them. That is the question and that should be our constant care. This you can do in various ways. You get to know human being well if you (*a*) constantly live in their company, (*b*) are struck by their exotic glamour, or (*c*) know their family history. An intimate knowledge of words can be had in the same way. There are certain words of basic importance in every language which you have to use again and again if you claim to possess a working knowledge of that language. Hazy ideas of these words would never do. You must have vivid impressions of the meanings these words convey, so that you can properly use them at you will.

4. Basic English. Several lists of English words of basic importance have been drawn up time and again, the best known of them being the one known as **Basic English.** It comprises eight hundred words with fifty for the technical terms of every additional science on which a particular book is being written. **Basic English** has been given wide publicity and has won not unconsiderable recognition. A number of English classics have been rewritten to fall within the arbitrarily set limits of its small vocabulary. But the experiment, one is constrained to say, has not met with unqualified success. Its greatest weakness is that it takes one off the right track to standard literary English.

5. **Interim Report**. Far better is the detailed discussion of two thousand words spread over more than 400 large-sized pages of the *Interim Report on Vocabulary Selection for the Teaching of English as a Foreign Language.* This report was drawn up by Fancett, Palmer, Thorndike and Michael West in the U. S. A. and was subsequently revised in London before publication. It is indeed a definite milestone in endeavours at vocabulary selection.

6. **Latest List**. The latest attempt in the line is a list comprising almost double the number of words given in the *Interim Report.* This list has been compiled by the American State Department of Education for testing foreign students' knowledge of English. This list possesses the advantage of including the latest words. This is in fact the modicum of English vocabulary. One simply cannot do without these words, and one must be thorougly familiar with them in order to have a working knowledge of the English language. It is with this end in view that these words have been explained at length in the following chapter. You should make a point of constantly being in their company.

7. Another way of getting to know a word well enough would be to be struck by its freshness, beauty or sublimity. *Cinemascope, radio, television, aeroplane, radar, filmstar, ballet, opera* are some of the words falling into this category which you could never forget after learning them once. These words make an indelible impression on your mind in the same way as towering personalities do. Such words, grouped under various heads, will be found somewhere in the chapter following the next.

8. **Derivation**. The best and surest way to know a word is to be acquainted with its derivation or family history so that we may treat it as our friendly neighbour. This is indeed a very scientific method of learning words. We shall discuss it here at some length.

9. **Parent Languages.** Etymology is the science concerned with the formation and sense development of words. It tells us how new words are formed by the addition of **prefixes** and **suffixes** to **root words** or **stems**. The stems (or roots), prefixes and suffixes of words used in modern English are derived mainly from the following three sources :

(*a*) **Anglo-Saxon**.

(*b*) **Latin**.

(*c*) **Greek**.

☞ It must be carefully noted that *hybrids* among words are not looked upon with favour. By *hybrid* is meant a word whose *stem* comes from one parent language and prefix or suffix from another. Some of the acceptable words belonging to this class are :

Bicycle : prefix *bi* (Latin) ; stem *cycle* (Greek) ;

Grandfather : prefix *grand* (French) ; stem *father* (Anglo-Saxon).

But these are exceptions which only prove the rule.

10. The Anglo-Saxon words in English are of the same origin as German. They form the basic and the more vigorous vocabulary of the language. They resemble the Hindi element in Urdu.

11. The Latin words are derived mainly through Old French, and comprise the highbrow vocabulary of the English language in much the same way as words of Persian (and through it of Arabic and Turkish) extraction form the highbrow element in Urdu.

12. Words derived from Greek are in the main used for scientific and philosophical terminology.

13. **Stems** (or **Roots**). Below are given two lists of the commoner Greek and Latin stems which go to form English words.

(*a*) GREEK STEMS

Stem	Meaning	Derived Words
1. **aner, andros, anthropos**	*man, stamen*	androgynous, philander, philanthropy.
2. **archos**	*chief, primitive*	archaic, architect.
3. **astron**	*star*	asterisk, disaster.
4. **autos**	*self*	autograph, automatic, authentic.
5. **barys**	*heavy*	baritone. barites.
6. **biblos**	*book*	Bible, bibliomania.
7. **bios**	*life*	biology, autobiography, amphibious.
8. **cheir**	*hand*	chiropody, chirurgical, surgeon.
9. **chilioi**	*a thousand*	kilogram, kilowatt.
10. **chroma**	*color*	chromo, achromatic.
11. **chronos**	*time*	chronic, anachronism.
12. **cosmos**	*world, order*	cosmopolitan, microcosm.
13. **crypto**	*hide*	cryptogram, cryptology.
14. **cyclos**	*wheel, circle*	encyclopedia, cyclone.
15. **deca**	*ten*	decasyllable, decalogue.
16. **demos**	*people*	democracy, epidemic.
17. **derma**	*skin*	epidermis, taxidermist
18. **didonai, dosis**	*give*	dose, apodosis, anecdote.
19. **dis, di**	*twice, doubly*	dichromatic, diagraph.
20. **dynamis**	*power*	dynamite, dynasty.

Stem	Meaning	Derived Words
21. **eidos**	*form, thing seen*	idol, kaleidoscope, anthropoid.
22. **ethnos**	*race, nation*	ethnic, ethnology.
23. **eu**	*well*	euphemism, eulogy.
24. **gamos**	*marriage*	polygamy, bigamy.
25. **ge**	*earth*	geography, geometry.
26. **genos**	*family, race*	gentle, engender.
27. **gramma**	*writing*	monogram, grammar.
28. **grapho**	*write*	telegraph, lithograph.
29. **haima**	*blood*	hematite, hemorrhage, anemia.
30. **heteros**	*other*	heterodox, heterogeneous.
31. **homos**	*same*	homonym, homeopathy.
32. **hydor**	*water*	hydraulics, hydrophobia, hydrant.
33. **isos**	*equal*	isosceles, isotherm.
34. **lithos**	*stone*	monolith, chrysolite.
35. **logos**	*word, study*	theology, dialogue.
36. **metron**	*measure*	barometer, diameter.
37. **micros**	*small*	microscope, microbe.
38. **monos**	*one, alone*	monoplane, monotone.
39. **morphe**	*form*	metamorphosis, amorphous.
40. **neos**	*new, young*	neolithic, neophyte.
41. **neuron**	*nerve*	neuralgia, neurotic.
42. **nomos**	*law, science, management*	astronomy, gastronomy, economy.
43. **onoma**	*name*	anonymous, patronymic.
44. **opsis**	*view, sight*	synopsis, thanatopsis, optician.
45. **orthos**	*right*	orthopedic, orthodox.
46. **pais, paidos**	*child*	paideutics, pedagogue, encyclopedia.
47. **pas, pan**	*all*	diapason, panacea, pantheism.
48. **pathos**	*suffering*	allopathy, pathology.
49. **petros**	*rock*	petroleum, saltpeter.
50. **phaino**	*show, be visible*	diaphanous, phenomenon, epiphany, fantastic.
51. **philos**	*loving*	bibliophile, Philadelphia.
52. **phobos**	*fear*	hydrophobia, Anglophobe.
53 **phone**	*sound*	telephone, symphony.
54. **phos**	*light*	phosphorus, photograph.

Stem	Meanings	Derived Words
55. **physis**	*nature*	physiognomy, physiology.
56. **plasma**	*form*	cataplasm, protoplasm.
57. **pneuma**	*air, breath*	pneumatic, pneumonia.
58. **polis**	*city*	policy, metropolitan.
59. **polys**	*many*	polyandry, polychrome, polysyllable.
60. **pous, podos**	*foot*	octopus, chiropodist.
61. **protos**	*first*	protoplasm, prototype.
62. **pseudes**	*false*	pseudonym, pseudo-classic.
63. **psyche**	*breath, soul, mind*	psychology, psychopathy.
64. **pyr**	*fire*	pyrography, pyrotechnics.
65. **scopos**	*watcher*	scope, microscope.
66. **sophia**	*wisdom*	philosophy, sophomore
67. **techne**	*art*	technicality, architect.
68. **tele**	*far, far off*	telepathy, telescope.
69. **tomos**	*that which is cut off*	epitome, anatomy, tome.
70. **theos**	*god*	theosophy, pantheism.
71. **therme**	*heat*	isotherm, thermodynamics.
72. **thesis**	*a place, arrangement*	epithet, hypothesis, anathema.
73. **tomos**	*that which is cut off*	epitome, anatomy, tome.
74. **treis**	*three*	trichord, trigonometry.
75. **zoon**	*animal*	zoology, protozoa, zodiac.

(*b*) **LATIN STEMS**

1. **ago, actum**	*do, rouse*	agile, transact.
2. **alius**	*other*	alias, inalienable.
3. **alter**	*other*	alteration, adultery.
4. **altus**	*high*	altitude, exalt.
5. **ambulo**	*walk*	perambulator, preamble.
6. **amicus**	*friend*	amicable, enemy.
7. **amo, amatum**	*love*	inamorata, amateur, inimical.
8. **anima**	*life*	animal, inanimate.
9. **animus**	*mind*	animosity, unanimous.
10. **annus**	*year*	annuity, biennial.
11. **aqua**	*water*	aquarium, aqueduct.
12. **audio, auditum**	*hear*	audience, audit.
13. **bellum**	*war*	rebel, belligerent.
14. **bene**	*well*	benefit, benevolence.
15. **bonus**	*good*	bonanza, bona fide.

Stem	Meaning	Derived Words
16. **brevis**	*short*	abbreviate; unabridged.
17. **cado, casum**	*fall*	cadence, casual.
18. **caedo, caesum**	*cut, kill*	suicide, incision.
19. **cano, cantum**	*sing*	recant, chanticleer.
20. **capio, captum**	*take hold*	capacious, incipient.
21. **caput, capitis**	*head*	cape (Cape Cod), decapitate, chapter, biceps.
22. **cedo, cessum**	*go*	concede, accessory.
23. **centum**	*hundred*	per cent, centigrade.
24. **civis**	*citizen*	civic, uncivilized.
25. **clamo**	*shout*	acclaim, declamation.
26. **claudo, clausum**	*close, shut*	conclude, recluse, cloister, sluice.
27. **coquo, coxi**	*cook*	decoction, precocious.
28. **cor, cordis**	*heart*	core, discord courage.
29. **corpus**	*body*	corpse, incorporate.
30. **credo, creditum**	*believe*	creed, discreditable.
31. **cresco, cretum**	*grow*	crescendo, concrete, accrue.
32. **crux, crucis**	*cross*	crucifix, excruciating.
33. **cura**	*care*	curate, sinecure.
34. **curro, cursum**	*run*	occur, concourse.
35. **dens, dentis**	*tooth*	dentist, indent.
36. **dexter**	*right, right hand*	ambidextrous, dexterity.
37. **dico**	*speak, say*	abdicate, verdict.
38. **dies**	*day*	diary, quotidian.
39. **dignus**	*worthy, fitting*	dignity, condign.
40. **dirigo, directum**	*direct*	dirge, dirigible, address.
41. **do, datum**	*give*	condone, data.
42. **doceo, doctum**	*teach*	document, doctor.
43. **dominus**	*lord*	dominion, dominate, domineer.
44. **domus**	*house*	domicile, majordomo.
45 **dormio**	*sleep*	dormant, dormouse.
46. **duco**	*lead*	traduce, deduction.
47. **duo**	*two*	dubious, duet.
48. **durus**	*hard*	durable, obdurate.
49. **eo, itum**	*go*	exit, initial.
50. **error, erratum,**	*wander*	erroneous, aberration.
51. **facio, feci, factum**	*make, do*	manufacture, affect, sufficient, verify.

Stem	Meanings	Derived Words
52. **fero, latum**	*carry*	transfer, relate.
53. **fido**	*trust, believe*	confide, perfidious.
54. **finis**	*end*	confine, infinity.
55. **flecto, flexum**	*bend*	reflection, inflexible.
56. **fluo, fluxum**	*flow*	influence, reflux.
57. **fortis**	*strong*	fortress, comfort.
58. **frango, fractum**	*break*	infringe, refraction.
59. **frater**	*brother*	fraternity, fratricide
60. **fugio, fugitum**	*flee*	centrifugal, fugitive.
61. **fundo, fusum**	*pour*	refund, profuse, fusion.
62. **gero, gestum**	*carry*	belligerent, gesture, digestion.
63. **gradior, gressum**	*walk*	degrade, progress.
64. **gratia**	*favour, good-will, pleasure*	ingratiate, congratulate, disgrace.
65. **grex, gregis**	*flock*	segregate, egregios.
66. **habeo, habitum**	*have, hold*	habituate, prohibit.
67. **itum**	see **Eo**.	
68. **jacio, jeci, jactum,**	*throw, hurl*	reject, interjection.
69. **judex, judicis**	*judge*	judgment, prejudice.
70. **jungo, junctum**	*join*	enjoin, juncture.
71. **juro**	*swear*	adjure, perjury.
72. **jus, juris**	*law, right*	justice, jurisprudence.
73. **juvenis**	*young*	rejuvenate, juvenile.
74. **latum**	see **Fero**	
75. **laudo, laudatum**	*praise*	allow, laudatory.
76. **lego, lectum**	*read, choose*	elegant, lecturer, dialect
77. **lex, legis**	*law*	privilege, illegitimate, legislature.
78. **liber**	*book*	libel, library.
79. **liber**	*free*	liberty deliberate.
80. **ligo**	*bind*	obligation, allegiance, alliance.
81. **linquo, lictum**	*leave*	delinquent, relict, derelict.
82. **litera**	*letter*	illiterate, obliterate.
83. **locus**	*place*	collocation, dislocate.
84. **loquor, locutus**	*speak*	soliloquy, elocution.
85. **ludo, lusum**	*play*	prelude, illusory.
86. **lux, lucis**	*light*	lucid.
87. **lumen, luminis**	*light*	luminary.
88. **magnus**	*great*	magnate, magnificent.
89. **malus**	*bad, evil*	malaria, malnutrition.

Stem	Meaning	Derived Words
90. **mando**	*order*	mandatory, commandment.
91. **manus**	*hand*	manual, manufacture.
92. **mare**	*sea*	maritime, submarine.
93. **mater**	*mother*	maternal, alma mater.
94. **medius**	*middle*	mediocre, intermediate.
95. **mens, mentis**	*mind*	mental, demented.
96. **miror**	*wonder*	mirror, admirable.
97. **mitto, missum**	*send*	commit, emissary.
98. **moneo, monitum**	*to warn, remind*	admonish, monitor.
99. **mordeo, morsum**	*bite*	mordant, morsel, remorse.
100. **mors, mortis**	*death*	mortal, mortify.
101. **moveo, motum**	*move*	remove, locomotive.
102. **multum**	*many*	multiform, multiplex.
103. **muto, mutatum**	*change*	transmute, immutable, moult.
104. **nascor, natus**	*be born*	renascence, cognate.
105. **nihil**	*nothing*	nihilism, annihilate.
106. **nomen, nominis**	*name*	denomination, renown.
107. **norma**	*rule*	abnormal, enormous.
108. **nosco, notum, cognosco, cognitum**	*know*	notation, incognito.
109. **novum**	*new*	novelty, renovate.
110. **nox, noctis**	*night*	nocturnal.
111. **nuntio**	*announce*	denounce, renunciation.
112. **opus, operis**	*work*	operator, inoperative.
113. **pater**	*father*	patrician, patrimony.
114. **patior, passus**	*suffer*	impatient, passion.
115. **pello, pulsum**	*drive*	propeller, repulse.
116. **pendeo, pensum**	*hang*	pendulum, appendix.
117. **pendo, pensum**	*weigh*	compendium, expense.
118. **pes, pedis**	*foot*	expedite, biped.
119. **peto**	*seek*	impetus, compete.
120. **plaudo, plausum**	*clap, applaud*	explode, plausible.
121. **plecto, plexum**	*braid*	perplex, complexion.
122. **pleo, pletum**	*fill*	complement, expletive.
123. **plus, pluris**	*more*	surplus, plural.
124. **plico, plicatum**	*fold*	reply, implicate.
125. **pono, positum**	*place*	opponent, deposit.
126. **porto**	*carry*	report, porter.
127. **potens, potentis**	*powerful*	impotent, potential.

	Stem	Meaning	Derived Words
128.	**prendo, prehensum**	*seize*	comprehend; apprise.
129.	**primum**	*first*	primary, primate.
130.	**probo, probatum**	*prove*	improbable, reprobate.
131.	**pugno**	*fight*	impugn, repugnant.
132.	**puto**	*think*	impute, disreputable.
133.	**quaero, quaesitum**	*seek*	require, inquest, exquisite.
134.	**rapio, raptum**	*seize*	enraptured, surreptitious.
135.	**rego, rectum**	*rule, lead*	region, erect.
136.	**rideo, risum**	*laugh*	deride, risible.
137.	**rogo, rogatum**	*ask*	prorogue, abrogate.
138.	**rumpo, ruptum**	*break*	disrupt, eruption.
139.	**salio, saltum**	*leap*	salient, insult.
140.	**sanguis**	*blood*	sang froid, sanguinary.
141.	**scio, scitum**	*know*	prescience, plebiscite.
142.	**scribo, scriptum**	*write*	prescribe, manuscript, escritoire.
143.	**seco, sectum**	*cut*	secant, dissect.
144.	**sedeo, sessum**	*sit*	supersede, obsession.
145.	**sentio, sensum**	*feel*	presentiment, consensus.
146.	**sequor, secutus**	*follow*	sequence, persecute, ensue.
147.	**signum**	*sign*	insignia, designate.
148.	**solus**	*alone*	solitude, desolate.
149.	**solvo, solutum**	*loosen*	solvent, dissolute.
150.	**somnus**	*sleep*	somnambulist, insomnia.
151.	**sono**	*sound*	consonant, resonance.
152.	**sors, sortis**	*lot*	sort, assortment.
153.	**specio, spectum**	*look*	despicable, suspect.
154.	**spiro, spiratum**	*breathe*	perspire, conspiracy.
155.	**spondeo, sponsum**	*promise*	respond, espouse.
156.	**sto, steti statum**	*stand*	constant, establish.
157.	**sisto, stiti, statum**	*cause to stand*	consistent, superstition.
158.	**stringo, strictum**	*bind*	stringent, restrict.
159.	**struo, structum**	*build*	construe, destruction.
160.	**tango, tactum**	*touch*	intangible, tact.
161.	**tempus, temporis**	*time*	temporize, contemporary.
162.	**tendo, tensum**	*stretch*	distend, intense.
163.	**teneo, tentum**	*hold*	tenure, detention.
164.	**tento**	*try*	tentative, attempt.
165.	**terminus**	*end, boundary*	terminal, exterminate.
166.	**terra**	*earth*	territory, inter.

Stem	Meaning	Derived Words
167. **Torqueo, tortum**	*twist*	distort, tortuous.
168. **traho, tractum**	*draw*	extract, subtraction.
169. **tumeo, tumidum**	*swell*	tumor, contumacy.
170 **turba**	*tumult, crowd*	turbulent, disturb.
171. **unus**	*one*	unify, triune, onion.
172. **urbs**	*city*	urbane, suburban.
173. **vado, vasum**	*go*	pervade, invasion.
174. **valeo, validum**	*be strong*	prevail, invalid.
175. **venio, ventum**	*come*	intervene, adventure.
176. **verto, versum**	*turn*	divert, adverse.
177. **verum**	*true*	verdict, veracity.
178. **via**	*way*	obviate, impervious, trivial.
179. **video, visum**	*see*	provide, revise.
180. **vinco, victum**	*conquer*	province, convict.
181. **vir**	*man*	triumvir, virtue.
182. **vivo, victum**	*live*	vivacious, vivisect.
183. **voco, vocatum**	*call*	revoke, avocation.
184. **volo**	*wish*	malevolent, voluntary.
185. **volvo, volutum**	*turn*	revolver, evolution.
18~. **vox**	*voice*	equivocal, vociferate.
187. **velox, velocis**	*swift*	velocity.

14. **Prefixes**. Below are listed the more important of Greek, Latin and English prefixes.

(a) GREEK PREFIXES

Prefix	Meaning	Derived Words
1. **a, an**	*no, not*	anarchy, apathy, aseptic.
2. **amphi**	*about, around, both*	amphitheatre, amphibious
3. **ana**	*up, again*	anatomy.
4. **anti**	*against, opposite*	antidote, antagonist.
5. **apo**	*from*	apology, apostate, apostrophe.
6. **arch**	*chief*	archbishop, arch-enemy, architect.
7. **auto**	*self*	autograph, automobile.
8. **cata**	*down*	cataclysm, cataract, catastrophe.
9. **di**	*in two*	dilemma, diphthong, diarchy.

Prefix	Meaning	Derived Words
10. **dia**	*through*	diagonal, dialogue, diameter.
11. **dys**	*ill, bad*	dyspepsia, dysentery.
12. **ec, ex**	*out of*	eccentric, exodus.
13. **em, en**	*in*	emphasis, enthusiasm, energy.
14. **epi, eph**	*upon*	epidemic epitaph, ephemeral.
15. **en**	*well, good*	euphony, eulogy.
16. **hemi**	*half*	hemisphere.
17. **hetero**	*different*	heterodox, heterogeneous.
18. **hiero**	*sacred*	hieroglyphic, hierarchy.
19. **homo**	*like*	homogeneous, homonym.
20. **hyper**	*beyond, (hence) extremely*	hypersensitive, hyperbole.
21. **hypo**	*under, (hence) in smaller measure*	hyphen, hypodermic, hypothesis.
22. **meta**	*after, change*	metaphor, metaphysics.
23. **miso**	*hate*	misanthrope, misogynist.
24. **mono**	*alone*	monarch, monopoly.
25. **ortho**	*right*	orthodox, orthography, orthoepy.
26. **pan**	*all*	panorama, pantheism, pantomime.
27. **para**	*beside*	paraphrase, parasite, parody.
28. **pente**	*five*	pentagon, pentameter.
29. **peri**	*around, about*	perimeter, period, periscope.
30. **phil**	*love*	philosophy, philanthropist.
31. **poly**	*many*	polygamy, polyandry, polyglot.
32. **pro**	*before*	prophet, proboscis.
33. **proto**	*first*	protoplasm, prototype.
34. **pseudo**	*false*	pseudonym, pseudo-classical.
35. **syn, syl, sym**	*with*	synonym, synopsis, syllable, sympathy.
36. **tele**	*far*	telephone, telegraph, television.

(b) LATIN PREFIXES

Prefix	Meaning	Derived Words
1. **a, ab**	*from, away*	avert, abnormal, abduct, abbreviation.
2. **ad**	*to*	admit, adopt, administer; accede, affect, attempt (with *d* assimilated with the first letter of the stem).
3. **ambi, am**	*around*	ambition, ambidextrous, amputate.
4. **ante**	*before*	antedate, antechamber.
5. **bene**	*well*	benefit, benevolent.
6. **bi, bis**	*two*	bilateral bicycle, biennial, biscuit.
7. **circum**	*around*	circumstance, circumference, circumspect.
8. **con, com, cum, co**	*with*	condense, co-existence, compact.
9. **contra, counter**	*against*	contradict, contrary, countersign.
10. **de**	*down, away*	dethrone, decamp, detach.
11. **di, dis**	*asunder, away from, not*	divert, disbelief, displease, disgrace, dishonour.
12. **dis**	*reversal*	disarm, disappear, disclose.
13. **ex, e**	*out*	expel, examine, educate, ex-premier.
14. **extra**	*beyond*	extraordinary, extravagant.
15. **in**	*in*	invade, immerse, embrace, irruption (assimilated with the first letter of the stem).
16. **in**	*not*	ineligible, illegible (by assimilation).
17. **inter**	*between*	international, intervene.
18. **intra**	*within*	intramural.
19. **intro**	*into*	introduce, introspection.
20. **male, mal**	*evil*	malefactor, malcontent.
21. **mis**	*wrong, ill*	misfortune, misbehave.
22. **multi**	*many*	multipurpose, multitude, multi-millionaire.
23. **non, ne**	*not*	nondescript, nonsense, negligent.
24. **ob**	*in front of, against*	obvious, obloquy, offer, omit, oppose (by assimilation).
25. **omni**	*all*	omnipresent, omnibus.

Prefix	Meaning	Derived Words
26. pen	*almost*	peninsula, penultimate.
27. per, par	*through*	perfect, pardon, pellucid (by assimilation).
28. post	*after*	postpone, post-dated, post mortem.
29. pre	*before*	predict, precaution, predestination.
30. preter	*beyond*	preternatural, preterite.
31. pro	*for*	promise, produce, pronoun.
32. quadru	*four-fold*	quadrangle, quadruped.
33. re	*again*	return, re-admit.
34. retro	*back, backward*	retrospective, retrograde.
35. se	*apart*	secession, seclusion, secret.
36. semi	*half*	semi-circle, semi-civilized.
37. sine	*without*	sinecure, sine die.
38. sub	*under, inferior*	subject, subordinate ; succeed, suffer, support, subnormal, sub-committee, (by assimilation).
39. super, sur	*over*	superficial, superintendent, superhuman, survive, surpass.
40. trans, tra, tres	*across*	transfer, transparent, transatlantic, traverse, trespass.
41. tri, tre	*three*	triangle, trilateral, treble.
42. ultra	*beyond, extremely*	ultra-modern, ultra-conservative.
43. uni	*one*	uniform, unanimous.
44. vice	*instead of*	vice-president, viscount.

(c) ENGLISH PREFIXES

Prefix	Meaning	Derived Words
1. a	*on, in*	aboard, ashore, astir, away.
2. a	*off, from*	abroad, again, along, among, ashamed.
3. be	*by*	before, behind, befool.
4. be	*with (intensive) meaning*	bestir, besmear.
5. by	*on the side*	bystander, byword.
6. for	*(with negative or intensive meaning)*	forbid, forgive, forbear

Prefix	Meaning	Derived Words
7. **fore**	*before*	forecast, forehead, forestall.
8. **gain**	*against*	gainsay.
9. **in**	*into*	income, inland, insight.
10. **mis**	*wrongly*	mistake, misdeed.
11. **n**	*(with negative meaning)*	neither, nor, never.
12. **on**		onset, onslaught.
13. **out**		outcome, outlook, out-turn.
14. **over**		overlook, over-eat.
15. **to**		today, tonight.
16. **un**	*not*	undo, unreal, untrustworthy.
17. **under**		understand, undergo.
18. **up**		upon, uphold, upright.
19. **well**	*in good state*	well-being, welfare, welcome.
20. **with**	*against, back*	withstand, withdraw, withhold.

15. **Suffixes**. The suffixes are of various kinds. Some of them form nouns from other words ; some form adjectives ; some verbs, some adverbs. Like the prefixes given above many of the suffixes are of Latin and Greek origin. We shall give them in separate groups with examples of derived words :

(*a*) SUFFIXES OF NOUNS

English

(*i*) Those denoting *state*, *action*, *condition*, etc., forming *abstract nouns* :

dom ; wisdom, freedom, kingdom.

hood ; childhood, manhood, (archaic form **head**, as in *godhead*).

ness ; boldness, goodness, sweetness.

red : kindred, hatred.

ship ; friendship, kinship.

th ; growth, health.

(*ii*) Those denoting *agent* or *doer*, forming *common nouns* :

er (with its forms, **ar**, **or**, **yer**,) ; beaker, maker, sailor, lawyer.

ster ; songster ; spinster.

ter (**ther**) ; daughter, father, mother.

(*iii*) Those forming *diminutives* of common nouns :

el (**le**) ; girdle, handle, kernel.

en ; maiden, chicken, kitten.
ie ; birdie, lassie.
kin ; lambkin, mannikin.
let : hamlet, leaflet.
ling ; duckling, stripling, weakling.
ock ; hillock, bullock.

Latin

(i) Those denoting *state, action, result of an action* :
age ; bondage, leakage.
ance (ence) ; abundance, innocence.
cy ; accuracy, lunacy.
ion ; union, opinion.
ment ; judgment, movement.
money ; testimony, matrimony
tude ; fortitude, magnitude.
ty ; frailty, cruelty.
ure ; verdure, furniture, forfeiture.

(ii) Those denoting *agent or doer of a thing.*
ar (er, eer, ier, ary) ; teacher, scholar, financier, engineer, missionary.
or (our, eur, er) ; rector, saviour, amateur.

(iii) Those denoting *diminutives* :
cule, (ule, ul, sel, el, le) ; globule, animalcule.
et ; owlet, lancet.
ette ; cigarette.

(iv) Those denoting *place* :
ary (ery, ry) ; library, dispensary, nunnery.

Greek

Most of them form nouns. The suffix **ic** forms adjectives also, and **ize** forms verbs.

ic (ique) ; cynic, angelic, unique. (The last two words are adjectives).
ist ; artist, dentist.
isk ; asterisk, obelisk.
ism (asm) ; enthusiasm, despotism, patriotism (a most active suffix).
ize (forms verbs) ; civilize, sympathize, criticize, etc.
sis (sy) ; crisis, heresy, poesy, analysis.
e (y) ; catastrophe, philosophy.

French

ee (denoting a person who takes a passive share in an action) employee, legatee, trustee.

(*b*) SUFFIXES OF ADJECTIVES

English

ed (having) ; talented. learned, wretched.
en (made of) ; wooden golden, earthen.
ful (full of) ; joyful. beautiful.
ish (somewhat like) ; reddish, girlish, tallish.
less (free from without) ; shameless, blameless.
ly (like) ; manly, godly.
some (with the quality of) ; wholesome, quarrelsome.
ward (inclining to) ; forward, wayward.
y (with the quality of) ; healthy, windy, thirsty, greedy.

Latin

al ; legal, mortal. national.
an (**ane**) ; human, humane.
ar ; regular, insular.
ary ; necessary, ordinary, honorary.
ate ; obstinate, fortunate, temperate.
ble (**ible**, **able**) ; feeble, sensible, laughable, get-at-able.
esque ; grotesque, picturesque.
ile ; fragile, juvenile.
ine ; canine, feline, divine.
ive ; active, sportive.
lent ; indolent, turbulent.
ose (**ous**) ; verbose, dangerous, languorous.

(*c*) SUFFIXES OF VERBS

English

en (causative sense, forming transitive verbs) ; weaken, strengthen, sweeten.
er ('intensive or frequentative') glitter, glimmer, flutter.

Latin

ate ; captivate, terminate, assassinate.
fy ; purify, fortify, terrify.
ish ; nourish, punish, banish.

(*d*) SUFFIXES OF ADVERBS

English

ly (like) ; nicely, wisely.
long ; sidelong, headlong.
ward (**wards**) (turning to) : backwards, homeward
way (**ways**) ; anyway, always, straightway.
wise (manner, model) ; likewise, otherwise.

16. Word-formation. There are many words in English which are not derived or developed or compounded from other words. These words are called **primary words**. For example, *blood*, *red*, *blue*, *man*, *bread*, *wife*, etc., are not derived, compounded or developed from other words.

Out of these primary words other words are formed. These new words are of three kinds :

(i) **Primary Derivatives.** These words are formed by making some change in the body of the primary word, without adding anything to it, *e.g.*, **bleed** from *blood*, **breach** from *break*, etc.

(ii) **Secondary Derivatives.** These are formed by an addition of a *prefix to the begginning* or by an addition of a *suffix to the end* of a primary word; as Need + *y* = needy ; *Em* + bosom = embosom ; person + *ate* = personate ; *Il* + lustr + ate = illustrate. The secondary derivatives form the largest number of words in English. The more one knows how these prefixes and suffixes are added to the primary words to form new words, the more extensive will one's vocabulary be.

(iii) **Compound Words.** These are formed by joining two or more primary words. New compounds are not formed much these days. The following examples may be noted : *Moonlight* (moon + light), *man-of-war*, *light-winged*, *full-throated*. In some cases the hyphen is used to distinguish the primary words, but in many cases the hyphen is dropped, as in *moonlight*, *lifelong*, *lukewarm*, *postman*, etc.

17. Primary Derivatives. Below we are giving some typical examples of these primary derivatives.

(i) *Formation of Nouns from adjectives :*

Adjectives	**Nouns**	**Adjectives**	**Nouns**
Dull	dolt	Hot	heat
		Proud	pride

(ii) *Formation of Nouns from Verbs :*

Verbs	**Nouns**	**Verbs**	**Nouns**
Advise	advice	Float	fleet
Bind	bond	Live	life
Bless	bliss	Lose	loss
Burn	brand	Sit	seat
Deal	dole	Speak	speech
Dig	ditch dike	Wake	watch

(iii) *Formation of Adjectives from Nouns* :

Nouns	Adjectives	Nouns	Adjectives
Milk	milch	Wit	wise

(iv) *Formation of Adjectives from Verbs* :

Verbs	Adjectives	Verbs	Adjectives
Float	fleet	Lie	low

(v) *Formation of Verbs from Nouns* :

Nouns	Verbs	Nouns	Verbs
Bath	bathe	Food	feed
Blood	bleed	Gold	gild
Breath	breathe	Knot	knit
Cloth	clothe	Sooth	soothe
Drop	drip	Tale	tell

(vi) *Formation of Verbs from Adjectives.*

Adjectives	Verbs	Adjectives	Verbs
Cool	chill	Hale	heal

18. **Secondary Derivatives** These are formed, as we have seen, by the addition of prefixes and suffixes. **Prefixes** modify the root of a word according to their meaning. Take, for example, the word 'autobiography.' The prefix **auto** means *self* ; so the biography that is written by the man himself is '*auto*-biography.' Again the prefix **mis** means *wrongly*. So we have *mis*deed (a bad deed), *mis*trust, *mis*take, etc. **Suffixes**, however, form the modifications of a word in the different parts of speech. Thus we can form a noun out of an adjective or verb by adding a suffix, an adjective out of a verb or noun, and so on. Thus from **dark** we have the abstract noun dark*ness*, the verb dark*en*, the adverb dark*ling*. Again from king we have king*dom*, king*ly*, etc., from *rapid* we have rapid*ity*, rapid*ly*, etc.

19. **Compound Words**. The compound words are mostly *Nouns*, *Adjectives* and *Verbs*. As we have already said, fresh compounds are not formed much these days. Only the poets seem to enjoy the privilege of forming compound words freely. The poet Keats, for example, has contributed many fresh-minted compounds to the English language.

Now compounds are of two kinds. **Unrelated Compounds** (or **Juxtapositional**) and **Related Compounds (Synthetic)**. In the unrelated compounds the primary or simple words are not connected together by any grammatical relation ; they are just placed side by side. In the Related Compounds there is some grammatical relation between the component words. Take, for example, the word *sign-post*. The two words *sign* and *post* have no grammatical relation but in the word *watch-making*, it is not so.

20. **Unrelated Compounds**. In compounds of this class first word defines the second word. A *horse-race* means a race that

is run by horses ; a *race-horse* because a horse that runs in the races ; a *sack-race* means a race in which sacks are used, and so on.

(*a*) **Nouns**

These compound words can be formed in the following ways :

(*i*) A noun is joined with another noun ; *e.g.*,
Ring-finger, rail-way, post-man, door-step.

(*ii*) A noun is combined with a gerund ; *e.g.*,
Looking-glass, drinking-water, blotting-paper, writing-desk.

(*iii*) A noun is combined with an adverb ; *e.g.*,
By-word, under-tone, after-thought, over-coat.

(*b*) **Adjectives**

These compounds are formed in the following ways :

(*i*) An adjective or participle preceded by a noun ; *e.g.*,
Milk-white, water-tight, fire-proof, heart-broken, purse-proud, bed-ridden, world-wide, life-long.

(*ii*) A noun ending with *d* or *ed* (suffix) preceded by another noun ; *e.g.*,
Hook-nosed, eagle-eyed, dog-faced.

(*iii*) An adjective or participle preceded by an adjective ; *e.g.*,
Dark-brown, free-spoken, ready-made, full-grown, high-born, thick-set.

(*c*) **Verbs**

Verbal compounds are formed in the following ways :

(*i*) A verb preceded by a noun ; *e.g.*,
To hen-peck, to back-bite, to way-lay, to hood-wink.

(*ii*) A verb preceded by an adjective : *e.g.*,
To rough-hew, to white-wash, to safe-guard.

21. **Related Compounds**. Here are some methods of the formation of compounds whose constituents are related to each other :

(*a*) **Nouns**

The related compound nouns are formed in the following ways :

(*i*) A transitive verb followed by the object ; *e.g.*,
Tell-tale, cut-throat, make-shift, stop-gap.

(*ii*) A transitive verb preceded by its object. The suffix **er** or **ing** is added to the verb ; *e.g.*,
Snake-charmer, screw-driver, watch-making, ship-building.

(*iii*) A verb qualified by an adverb ; *e.g.*,
Out-turn, out-fit, break-down, keep-sake.

(*iv*) A noun qualified by an adjective ; *e.g.*,
Noble-man, sweet-heart, low-lands, quick-sand.

(*v*) A noun qualified by a participle ; *e.g.*,
Past Participle :—Loving-kindness, finishing-stroke.

Past or Passive Participle :—*Locked-jaw* (also *lock-jaw*), *fostered-child* (also *foster-child*).

(*vi*) A noun qualified by a possessive noun ; *e.g.*,
Sales-man (really *sale's man*), *oars-man*, *kins-man*, *crafts-man*, *states-man*.

(*vii*) A noun in apposition with another noun or with a pronoun ; *e.g.*,
Washer-man, *she-goat*, *man-servant*, *oak-tree*, *lady-doctor*, *barber-surgeon*, etc.

(*viii*) A noun preceded and governed by some preposition ; *e.g.*,
After-noon, *fore-noon*,

(*b*) Adjectives

The related compound adjectives are formed thus :

(*i*) A noun preceded and followed by an adjective, the noun ending with the suffix **ed** ; *e.g.*,
Hot-headed, *quick-sighted*, *thick-skinned*.

(*ii*) A noun preceded and governed by the present participle of some transitive verb ; *e.g.*,
Man-eating (tiger), *heart-rending* (sight), *soul-stirring* (story), *time-serving* (man).

(*iii*) A noun preceded and governed by some preposition ; *e.g.*,
Under-hand, *up-hill*, *out-of-doors*.

(*c*) Verbs

Such related compound words are formed thus :

(*i*) An adverb preceding a verb ; *e.g.*,
Cross-question, *with-hold*, *over-hear*, *under-state*.

(*ii*) A verb preceding an adverb ; *e.g.*,
Turn out, *come on*, etc.

EXERCISES

(*For* **Board** *Students*)

1. Give the Latin adjectives of the following :
Brother, cat, dog, ear, eye, flesh, flower, foot, hand, life, moon, nose, ox, side, world, youth.
2. Mention two prefixes which denote :
(*i*) Reversal of an action ;
(*ii*) A negative ;
(*iii*) Something good ;
(*iv*) Something bad.
3. Give the primary derivatives of the following words :
Dig, advise, live, speak, blood, milk, dog, hale, tale.

(*For* **University** *Students*)

1. (*a*) Give examples of nouns formed by the following suffixes :
hood, ship, ster, kin, ock, ance, tude, ar, cule, ist.
(*b*) Give examples of adjectives formed by the following suffixes :
ed, less, ly, ary, ate, esque, ose, lent.
(*c*) Give examples of verbs formed by these suffixes :
en, fy, ize, ate, ish, er.
(*d*) Form adverbs by the use of the following suffixes :
ly, long, ward, way, wise.

2. Explain the formation of the compound words in the following verses :
(*i*) That thou, *light-winged* Dryad of the trees......
Singest of summer in *full-throated* ease.
(*ii*) Where youth grows pale, and *spectre-thin* and dies.
(*iii*) And haply the *Queen-Moon* is on her throne.
(*iv*) And *mid-May's* eldest child,
The coming *musk-rose* full of dewy wine.
(*v*) Up the *hill-side* ; and now 'tis buried deep
In the next *valley-glades.*

3. How are words formed in English ? What do you understand by **primary words, primary derivatives** and **secondary** derivatives ?

CHAPTER XXIII

INDISPENSABLE WORDS

Here follows the list of indispensable words which we promised in the previous chapter to give with detailed explanations. You must go through it, checking your knowledge at every step honestly. Whenever you come across a word with which you are not perfectly familiar, put a cross mark against it, and then go on with the next word. A perusal of the whole list will give you the words which you must, but do not, know. Then start a second reading of this basic vocabulary leaving out all the words you know, but learning one by one those with which you do not happen to be familiar.

You will now be well on your way to acquiring th· basic vocabulary. The explanations of words and examples of their use given in this vocabulary are sufficient for ordinary purposes, but to acquire a thorough knowledge of them, you will have to look up all of these words in a good dictionary. The best dictionaries of average size and moderate price are :

(i) *The Concise Oxford Dictionary of Current English.*

(ii) *The Pocket Oxford Dictionary of Current English.*

The Pocket Oxford Dictionary is preferable not only because it is cheaper, but also because it is handy. But better far than these for a college student of this country is a new Oxford publication, *The Advanced Learner's Dictionary of Current English.* To derive full benefit from any of these admirable dictionaries, you should learn by rote all the idiomatic uses of these words as given in them and try to use them as often as you can in your speech and writing.

☞ A final piece of warning before you embark on the study of these words. Remember that it is of no use having just foggy ideas about these basic words of the English language. You must be able to recognize readily the senses conveyed by them. You must be capable of using them correctly without any effort. This will not come without constant practice, but you cannot escape it, since that is the only way of acquiring a working vocabulary of English. We wish you God-speed.

How Many Words Do You Know ?

abandon (a-*ban*-don) *v.* To give up or leave entirely, as sailors abandon a sinking ship. *Ex.* I will *abandon* the idea of becoming a singer.

abide *v.* To remain or stay, as in the hymn "Abide with me." *Abode* is the house or place in which one lives. *Ex.* It was a humble *abode* but very clean.

ability *n.* Power of doing things. Cleverness. *Ex.* He is a boy with great *ability*, and is sure to do well.

abjure (ab-*joor*) *v.* Swear or promise solemnly to give up. *Ex.*

He tried to make the prisoner *abjure* his faith.

able *adj.* Having the power to do a thing. *Ex.* Are you *able* to swim ?

abode *n.* *See* abide.

abolish (a-*bol*-ish) *v.* To do away with or put an end to. *Ex.* Britain passed an Act of Parliament in 1807 to *abolish* slavery (*see* slave). Its *abolition* was a very good thing.

about (a-*bowt*) (*a*) *prep.* Of, concerning. *Ex.* What do you know of the accused ? near. *Ex.* He had an accident somewhere *about* here. (*b*) *adv. part.* Almost. *Ex.* There were *about* fifty students in the class-room.

above (a-*buv*) (*a*) *prep.* Higher, greater or more than, beyond. *Ex.* I am *above* fifteen years of age now. (*b*) *adv.* Before or over one's head. *Ex.* See the notes *above*.

abridge *v.* To shorten. *Ex.* An *abridged* story is usually cheaper than the full-length version.

abroad (a-*brawd*) *adv.* In a foreign country. *Ex.* We hope to have a holiday *abroad* this summer.

absent (*ab*-sent) *adj.* Away from home or from school. Not present. *Ex.* Five boys were *absent* from school this morning.

absent (ab-*sent*) *v.* To stay away deliberately. One who does this is an *absentee*. The act is called *absence*.

absolute (*ab*-sol-ewt) *adj.* Complete. *Ex.* The play was an *absolute* failure. It is *absolutely* impossible for water to run uphill.

abundant (a-*bun*-dant) *adj.* Plentiful. In great numbers. *Ex.* Oranges are *abundant* in Spain. There is an *abundance* of fruit in the orchard.

abuse (a-*bewz*) *v.* To use wrongly or treat badly. *Ex.* A good king would not *abuse* his power. You would not *abuse* your little dog.

accent (*ak*-sent) *n.* A way of speaking. *Ex.* He has a Scots *accent* : or : She speaks French with a bad *accent*.

accept (ak-*sept*) *v.* To agree to take. *Ex.* The man refused to *accept* any payment for what he had done : or, I shall *accept* this invitation.

accident (*ak* si·dent) *n* An unexpected event ; sometimes one in which people are injured, as in a railway accident. *Accidental* means happening by chance. *Ex.* It was an *accidental* meeting.

accompany (a-*kum*-pa-ne) *v.* (*a*) To go with. *Ex.* I will *accompany* you on your walk. (*b*) To play the music for a song.

accomplish (a-*kum*-plish) *v.* Succeed in finishing. *Ex.* That indolent person will never *accomplish* the task he has set before himself. She is an *accomplished* (*adj.*) lady, or is a woman of *accomplishments*. (*n.*) means that she is quite clever in social arts like etiquette, music, dancing, painting, etc.

according (a-*kaw*-ding) (followed by the *prep.* **to**). On the authority of. *Ex.* He has a command of English, *according* **to** his statement. (Followed by **to** or **as**) Proportionate to. *Ex.* You will be rewarded **according to** your good deeds. He will pass or fail **according as** he works hard or neglects his studies.

accordingly (a-*kaw*-ding-li) *adv.* Therefore. *Ex.* Your explanation

has been called for ; *accordingly*, you shall submit a reply by Saturday.

account *n*. (*a*) A statement of money to be paid for what has been bought. *Ex* The butcher sent his *account*. (*b*) A description (*see* describe). *Ex* He gave an *account* of his experiences (*see* experience) in the war.

accountant (a-*kown*-tant) *n*. A person who keeps accounts in a concern, or examines accounts for it.

account *v*. To explain or give a reason for. *Ex*. If he was ill, that would *account* for his being absent.

accuse (a-*kewse*) *v*. To blame. *Ex*. The man was *accused* of stealing. An *accusation* of stealing was made against him.

accustom (a-*kus*-tum) *v*. Make used to a thing. *Ex*. I am accustomed to the hard life of a soldier.

accustomed (a-*kus*-tomd) *adj*. & *v*. Having the habit of. *Ex*. I am *accustomed* to getting up early. I have *accustomed* myself to it.

ache (ake) (1) *n*. Pain. (2) *v*. To cause pain or to be in pain. *Ex* My head *aches*, since I bumped it.

acknowledge (ak-*nol*-edj) *v* (*a*) To admit. *Ex*. He *acknowledged* that he was guilty. (*b*) To express gratitude (*see* grateful) for *Ex*. He *acknowledged* his aunt's kindness. Please *acknowledge* this letter. Send an *acknowledgement*.

acquainted (a-*kwayn*-ted) *adj*. Known or familiar (*see* familiar). *Ex*. These ladies are *acquainted* with each other. They are *acquaintances* An *acquaintance* is a person whom one knows, but who is not a friend.

acquire (a-*kwire*) *v*. To get. You *acquire* knowledge at school.

acre (*ay*-ker) *n* A piece of ground measuring 4,840 square yards.

across (a-*kros*) *prep*. and *adv*. On the other side of, from one side to the other of.

act *n*. A thing done. *v*. (*a*) do something (*b*) behave, (*c*) take part in a play.

action *n*. Work, movement; effect ; battle.

active *adj*. Inclined to be busy and quick in movements. *Ex*. She is still a very *active* woman although she is eighty years old.

actor *n*. A man who plays a part on the stage. A woman who does so is an *actress*.

actress *n*. A woman who takes part in a play.

actual (*ak*-tew-al) *adj*. Real. *Ex*. Sherlock Holmes was not an *actual* person.

add *v*. (*a*) put together. *Ex*. Add 2 to 2 ; you get 4, no less, no more. (*b*) Say something more. *Ex*. "Be quick," he added. The process of adding up is called *addition* (*n*).

address (1) *n*. (*a*) A speech. *Ex*. The headmaster gave a very interesting *address*. (*b*) The place (town and street, etc.) where one lives. *Ex* I wrote his *address* on the envelope before posting it. (2) *v* (*a*) To make a speech. *Ex*. He *addressed* a large audience. (*b*) To *address* a letter means to write the address on the envelope.

admiral *n*. The highest officer of a navy.

admire *v*. To like the look of. To have a high opinion of. *Ex*. (*a*) I *admire* these roses. (*b*) The sailors all *admired* Lord Nelson.

They had great *admiration* for him.

admission (ad-*mish*-un) *n.* (*a*) Allowing to come into a premises. *Ex.* Three thousand boys have been refused *admission* to the schools this year in one district alone. (*b*) Saying that something is true. *Ex* He made an *admission* of his guilt

admit *v.* (*a*) To allow to come in *Ex.* They will not *admit* dogs. (*b*) To agree or confess. *Ex* He *admits* that he took an apple.

adopt. *v.* To take the child of someone else (by agreement) and bring it up as if it were one's own. *Ex.* She was their *adopted* daughter

adore *v.* To love or worship. *Ex* They *adore* their little son. He is *adorable*.

adult (*ad*-ult) *n.* A grown-up person. *Ex.* No *adults* were invited.

advance *v.* To go forward. *Ex.* The army *advanced* two miles. They made an important advance.

advantage (ad-*van*-tage) *n.* A benefit (see benefit) that makes one more fortunate than someone else. *Ex.* It is a great *advantage* to have good health.

adventure *n.* An exciting experience. *Ex.* I like reading stories of *adventure*. One who likes having adventures is *adventurous*.

advertise (*ad*-ve-tyz) *v.* Give publicity to. *Ex.* You must *advertise* your products. An *advertisement* (*n.*) appeared in today's paper. The newspaper carried an *advertisement* of American exports.

advise *v.* To give an opinion (*see* opinion) on what should be done. *Ex.* Please *advise* me in this difficulty. Give me your *advice*.

affair *n.* Business, something to be done. *Ex.* It is his *affair*; Why should you bother about it?

affect *n.* To have an effect upon. *Ex.* Cold weather *affects* delicate plants.

affection *n.* Love. One who is loving is *affectionate*.

affidavit (af-i-*dai*-vit) *n.* Written statement sworn to be true and signed in the presence of a law officer.

afford (a-*ford*) *v.* To have enough money to buy. *Ex.* I can *afford* a new hat now.

afraid (*a*) Filled with fear. *Ex.* I am not *afraid* of ghosts. (*b*) Sorry. *Ex.* It will be very hot today, I am afraid.

after *prep.* Behind, later in time. Also, in the style of. *Ex.* This is a painting *after* Picasso.

afternoon (af-te-*noon*) *n.* the time between noon and evening. *Ex* Good *afternoon*. He was relieved in the *afternoon*.

afterward, afterwards *adv.* later.

again *adv.* (*a*) Once more. (*b*) Back to the first *place* (*c*) (Of number, amount, size, distance, etc.) that number plus— **as much again** means twice that much, **half again** means one-and-a-half that much.

against *prep.* Opposite to, in contrast with, in preparation for, in touch with.

age *n.* The number of years a person has lived. A long period of time.

agency (*ay*-jen-si) *n.* (*a*) The work of one who acts for another

in business ; the place where he works. (*b*) Something that helps or causes something else to be done. *Ex.* He got a good job through (or *by*) the *agency* of his friends.

agent (*ay*-jent) *n.* One who acts for another. Ex. My father employs an *agent* to sell his books.

agony (*ag*-o-ne) *n.* Very great pain of body or mind. *Ex.* Tooth-ache can cause *agony*, or *agonising* pain.

agree *v.* To consent or accept or be content. *Ex.* He *agreed* to pay a shilling for it. "Birds in their little nests *agree*." A person or thing that is pleasant is *agreeable*. *Ex.* An *agreeable* surprise. A written *agreement* is a promise between people to do a certain thing.

agriculture *n.* The growing and harvesting of crops. *Ex.* As he means to be a farmer, he is studying *agriculture*.

ahead (a-*hed*) *adv.* In front. *Ex* The dog runs *ahead* of his master. To go *ahead* with a thing means to go on doing it.

aid (ayd) (1) *n.* Help. *Ex.* He gave willing *aid* to the injured (*see* injure). (2) *v.* To help. *Ex.* We ought to *aid* those who are old and feeble.

aim (1) *v.* To point at, or try to reach. *Ex.* He *aimed* his rifle at the tiger's head. (2) *n.* *Ex.* His aim was to shoot the tiger.

air *n.* (*a*) The mixture of gases which we breathe. (*b*) Style or manner. (*c*) Tune or melody. *v.* (*a*) Let air come into. *Ex* Open the windows and air the rooms. (*b*) Put out into the sun and the air to dry and clean. *Ex.* She aired the baby's clothes.

airborne *adj.* Carried by the air. *Ex.* The plane was *airborne* before it reached the end of the runway.

aircraft *n.* A flying machine or machines.

air-mail *n.* Letters which are carried partly by air. *Ex.* I send all my letters to America by *air-mail* now.

air-port *n.* An aerodrome used by planes coming from abroad.

aisle (eyle—like *isle*) *n.* passage between rows of seats

alarm (1) *n.* A warning of danger. *Ex.* He fixed burglar-*alarms* on all the windows. (2) *v.* To frighten. *Ex.* She was *alarmed* by the noise. A house on fire is an *alarming* sight.

alas *interj.* A cry of sorrow or anxiety.

alcohol (*al*-ko-hol) *n.* The ingredient in brandy, beer, wines, etc., which makes them intoxicating (*see* intoxicated).

alderman (*awl*-der-man) *n.* An important member of a town or county council.

alien (*ayl*-yen) *n.* One belonging to another country. *Ex.* In England a Frenchman is an *alien*.

alike *adj* Like each other. *Ex.* These two sisters are very much *alike*.

alive *adj.* Living, active, in force.

allegiance (a-*lee*-jans) *n.* Loyalty. Faithfulness. *Ex.* We all owe *allegiance* to our State.

allow *v.* To agree to something being done. *Ex.* I will *allow* you to go home early to-day. An *allowance* is a fixed amount that is allowed. *Ex.* The *allowance* my mother gives me is a shilling a week.

almighty (awl-*mite*-e) (1) *adj.* Having all power. (2) *n* The Almighty, God.

almost (*awl*-most) *adv.* Nearly. *Ex* Dinner is *almost* ready.

alone *adj.* By oneself.

along *adv.* On. Onward.

aloud *adv.* In a voice louder than the usual, or such that one may be heard.

alphabet (*al*-fa-bet) *n.* All twenty-six letters we use; a, b, c, d, and so on.

altar (*awl*-tar) *n.* The communion table in a church. *Ex.* The *altar* is always at the East end of a church.

alter (*awl*-ter) *v.* To change. *Ex.* Mother has *altered* the way she does her hair.

although *conj.* Even if. Even supposing that.

altogether *adv.* Completely. On the whole.

always *adv.* At all times.

am *v* Present tense of the infinitive **to be** used with **I**. *Ex.* I *am* a boy

amazed *adj* Very much surprised. *Ex.* I was *amazed* at the size of the aeroplane. It caused me *amazement.*

ambassador *n.* A minister of high rank who represents his country abroad. *Ex* Lord Halifax was our *Ambassador* in America for many years.

ambition (am-*bish*-on) *n.* Desire for success and power. *Ex.* The young man was full of *ambition.* He was *ambitious.*

ambulance *n.* A large van, fitted to carry the wounded or sick.

amend *v.* To improve. *Ex.* He promised to *amend* his ways.

America (a-*mer*-ika) *n.* (*a*) Name of the two continents comprising the New World. (*b*) Used colloquially for the United States of America which is also called *the U.S.A.* or simply *the States.*

American *adj.* or *n.* Belong to, or a citizen of, the United States of America.

amount *n.* Cost. *Ex.* The *amount* of my expenses was a pound. (2) *v.* To add up to. *Ex.* My expenses *amounted* to a pound.

ample *adj.* Enough. *Ex.* There is *ample* room in the back seat.

amuse *v.* To keep pleasantly occupied. To cause laughter. *Ex.* Mary *amused* herself very well when she had chicken-pox. Her father's funny stories *amused* her. She found them *amusing.* They caused much *amusement.*

an *Indefinite article* used instead of a before vowel sounds or a silent *h.* *Ex.* An artist. An hour.

ancestor (*an*-ses-tor) *n.* Our ancestors are our parents, grandparents, great-grandparents and so on into the past. *Ex.* He is very proud of his *ancestors.*

anchor (*ang*-ker) (1) *n.* A very heavy iron hook attached to a rope, which can be thrown over the side of a ship to grip the sea bottom and keep the ship from drifting (*see* drift). (2) *v.* To fix with an anchor. *Ex.* The ship *anchored* in the bay.

ancient (*ayn*-shent) *adj.* Very old. Existing long ago. *Ex.* England has many beautiful and *ancient* churches.

and *conj.* (1) It is a word that joins. (2) Colloquially it means in order to. *Ex.* Wait and see, (*i.e.*, you should wait in order to see for yourself the result).

angel (*ayn*-jel) *n.* A heavenly spirit or messenger.

angle (*ang*-gl) *v.* To fish with a rod. One who does this is an *angler. Ex. Angling* for trout is a favourite pastime. In Geometry, an angle (*n.*) is the space between two lines which meet each other.

angry *adj.* (*a*) Filled with anger (*b*) (figuratively) (of a wound). Red and painful.

animal *n.* (*a*) Living and feeling body which can move about, especially one moving on four legs. (*b*) Hence a man like a lower animal in his desires and acts.

ankle *n.* Joint of the foot and the lag.

announce *v.* To state publicly. *Ex.* The Princess *announced* her engagement. The *announcement* (*n.*) was published. Which of the B. B. C. *announcers* do you like best ?

annoy *v.* To make angry or uncomfortable. *Ex.* Tom was *annoyed* when he lost his penknife. He felt it a great *annoyance.*

annual (*an-ew*-all) (1) *adj.* Happening every year. *Ex.* The prize-giving is an *annual* event. (2) *n.* A Christmas *annual* is a book that is published every Christmas.

another *adj.* Different or one more of the same kind.

answer *n.* reply *v.* (*a*) To reply. (*b*) To do something in return. (*c*) Be suitable.

ant *n.* Ants are small insects which live together in great numbers, making their homes in woods and gardens, doing their own special tasks, somewhat as bees do.

anxious (*ang-shus*) *adj.* Worried. *Ex.* Mother was *anxious* about me when I was ill. She suffered *anxiety* (ang-*zy*-e-te).

any *adj.* and *pro.* (*a*) No matter which. (*b*) *any* is used instead of *a, on* or *some* in clauses having *if, whether, without* or *hardly. Ex.* I had hardly *any* money. *Adv.* At all. *Ex.* She was too tired to walk *any further.*

anybody *n.* (*a*) Any person. (*b*) A person who is important. *Ex.* He will never be *anybody* if he continues to shun hard work like that.

anyhow *adj.* (*a*) In any case, in any way or manner. (*b*) Carelessly. *Ex.* He was in such a hurry that he put on his clothes *anyhow.*

anyone *n.* Anybody.

anything *n.* A thing of any kind. *adv* In any way. *Ex.* Is it *anything* like mine ?

anyway *adv.* Anyhow.

anywhere *adv.* In or to any place.

apart *adv.* (*a*) At a distance from, (*b*) In pieces.

apartment (U. S. A.), **apartments** (England) *n.* Flat. **apartment** (England) room.

apiece *adv.* To each one. *Ex.* I gave them a rupee *apiece.*

apparatus (ap-a-*rai*-tus) *n.* Set of things arranged together for some purpose.

apologise (a-*pol*-o-jize) *v.* To say one is sorry for having done something one ought not to have done. *Ex.* He *apologised* for arriving late. He made an *apology.*

apparent (a-*pa*-rent) *adj.* (*a*) Easily seen. *Ex.* It was quite *apparent* that he knew nothing

about the book. (*b*) Seeming but not always real. *Ex.* The *apparent* cause is often quite different from the real one. "*Apparently* he never got my letter" means that it seems as if he never got it.

appeal (1) *n.* An earnest request (*see* request). *Ex.* The prisoner made an *appeal* for mercy. (2) *v.* To ask earnestly. *Ex.* She *appealed* to me to help.

appear *v.* (*a*) To come into sight. *Ex.* The policeman *appeared* just in time. (*b*) To seem. *Ex.* He *appears* to be a very clever boy. We were surprised by his *appearance* (*n*).

appetite *n.* The desire for food. *Ex.* Mary had no *appetite* while she had measles.

apple *n.* A well-known fruit which "keeps the doctor away."

apply (a-*ply*) *v.* (*a*) To put on. *Ex.* *Apply* a plaster to the cut. (*b*) To refer to. *Ex.* This rule does not *apply* to children. (*c*) To ask for. *Ex.* *Apply* for your tickets at the office. Make your *application.*

applicant *n.* One who applies.

appoint *v.* To name or select. *Ex.* The team has *appointed* a new captain, and 1st March is the date *appointed* for the match. His *appointment* as captain has pleased everyone. The doctor made an *appointment* to see me on Friday.

appreciate (a-*pree*-she-ate) *v.* To value highly and be grateful for. *Ex.* We *appreciate* her great kindness. We feel great *appreciation* of it.

approach (1) *v.* To come near. *Ex.* The cat *approached* slowly. (2) *n.* *Ex.* The *approach* to the house is by a narrow path.

approve (a-proov) *v.* To be pleased with and think good. *Ex.* I do not *approve* of your idea at all. I will not give it my *approval.*

apricot (*ayp*-re-cot) *n.* A golden coloured fruit rather like a plum, but larger.

April (*ay*-pril) *n.* The fourth month of the year.

apron (*ay*-pron) *n.* A piece of cotton or other material worn over one's clothes to keep them clean.

arch (artsh) *n.* A structure (*see* structure) of stone or brick, built in a curve across an open space. A bridge across a stream is often in the shape of an arch. A cat *arches* its back when it sees a dog. Arch as a prefix (*see* prefix) means chief or greatest as in archduke, arch-enemey, etc.

are *v.* Present tense of **to be**, used with *you* or *they*. *Ex.* You *are* a gentleman ; they *are* rogues.

area (*air*-re-a) *n.* A piece of land, or the size of a piece of land or water or any surface. *Ex.* London covers a very large *area.* The *area* of the park is four acres.

arena (a-*ree*-na) *n.* An open space in a building such as that in which a circus is held.

arise (arose, arising, arisen) *v.* Appear, begin, come into notice. (It is not used for *rise* these days).

argue *v.* To debate or discuss, showing different ways of thinking of the thing that is being talked about. This is having an *argument.*

arithmetic (a-*rith*-me-tik) *n.* The science of numbers.

armour *n.* Metal covering for the body used in battles long ago. *Ex.* The knight wore shining *armour.*

arms *n.* Weapons (*see* weapon).

for fighting, such as guns. When men have such weapons, they are *armed*. An *army* is a body of armed men trained for fighting

around *adv.* and *prep* Here, there and everywhere.

arrange (a-*raynj*) *v* (*a*) To put in their proper places. *Ex*. Please *arrange* the chairs for me. (*b*) To plan. *Ex*. A meeting has been *arranged* for next Tuesday. That is an *arrangement*.

arrest *v*. To stop or seize. Often used in the sense of : The policeman *arrested* the thief.

arrive *v*. To come to a place, or to the end of a journey. *Ex*. We expect to *arrive* about 3 o'clock. Our friends are looking forward to our *arrival*.

arrow *n*. The pointed stick which is fired from a bow.

arrowroot *n*. A food somewhat like cornflour.

art *n*. (*a*) The study and creation of beautiful things. (*b*) Branch of learning that requires skill. (c) Set of principles for doing a work (usually gained by experience). (*d*) A division of human knowledge (usually in the plural as the **arts**). (*e*) Human skill. (*f*) Cunning.

article *n*. (*a*) A thing. *Ex*. Every *article* in this shop was made by myself. (*b*) A piece of writing in a magazine. *Ex*. An interesting *article* on cricket.

artist *n*. One who is skilled in a fine art such as painting or sculpture. Such a man is *artistic*.

as (*a*) *conj* because, when, in the manner of. (*b*) *adverb of degree*. Similarly, equally.

ascend (a-*send*) *v*. To climb or go up. *Ex*. You can *ascend* by the stair or the lift. The *ascent* is rather long.

ash *n* (*a*) A tree. The mountain ash is the rowan tree. (*b*) The dusty matter that is left when a fire has burned out.

ashamed *adj*. Feeling shame or discomfort when one has done something badly, or done something wrong. *Ex*. I am *ashamed* of my bad handwriting.

ashore (a-*shoh*) *adv*. On land.

aside (1) *adv*. To one side. *Ex*. The rabbit jumped *aside* and ran to its hole. (2) *n*. A remark in a very low voice. In a play, a remark which the other actors are not supposed to hear is an aside.

ask *v*. Request, invite, seek information about.

asleep *adv*. and *adj*. (*a*) sleeping. (*b*) (of legs, feet, etc.) Benumbed. *Ex*. My leg is *asleep*.

assemble *v*. To come together in one place. *Ex*. When the crash was heard, a crowd *assembled* quickly. An *assembly* is a meeting of people for some special purpose.

assign (a-*syn*) *v*. Give a person something for his use or as his duty.

assist *v*. To help. *Ex*. He was ready to *assist* the lame old lady. He gave her his *assistance*.

associate (a-*so*-ci-ate) *v*. To keep company with. *Ex*. Try not to *associate* with bad boys. An *association* is a group of people meeting, and joining together, for one purpose.

assume (as-*sewm*) *v*. (*a*) Suppose or take for granted. (*b*) take to oneself. (*c*) Pretend.

assure (a-*shure*) *v*. To tell firmly. *Ex*. Tommy *assured* his mother that he would be good. He gave her that *assurance*.

astonish *v*. To surprise. *Ex*.

Your story *astonishes* me. It causes me *astonishment*.

at *prep.* (*a*) In a place, condition or manner (*b*) In return for. *Ex.* He sells these at an *anna* each.

attach *v.* (*a*) Stick (*to*). (*b*) seize property under law. *Ex.* His property was attached by his creditors.

attain *v.* Reach, gain, succeed in doing or getting.

attempt *v.* To try. *Ex.* He *attempted* to save the kittens from drowning. He made the *attempt* (*n*).

attend *v.* (*a*) To be present at. *Ex.* He *attends* church regularly. (*b*) To give thought to. *Ex.* Please *attend* to what I am saying. (*c*) To look after. *Ex.* Nurse *attends* to baby very carefully. Give me your *attention*. Be *attentive*.

attendant (1) *n.* A servant or companion (2) *adj.* accompanying. *Ex.* Slavery and its *attendant* misfortunes are no more our lot.

attire *v.* To dress. *Ex.* The actress was beautifully *attired*. Her *attire* was beautiful.

attitude *n.* (*a*) Position of the body. *Ex.* He stood in an *attitude* of keen watchfulness. (*b*) A way of thinking. *Ex.* His *attitude* to cricket was one of dislike.

attorney (a-*ter*-ni) *n.* A person empowered to act for another; solicitor.

attract *v* (*a*) To rouse interest or admiration. *Ex.* Her beauty *attracted* the artist. (*b*) To draw to itself. *Ex.* The magnet *attracts* pieces of iron. The street decorations were very *attractive*. They were an *attraction* to the crowds.

audience (*awd*-i-ence) *n.* A number of people who have come together to listen to something or to see something. *Ex.* The *audience* at the concert applauded (*see* applaud) loudly.

August (*aw*-gust) *n.* The eighth month of the year.

aunt (ahnt) *n.* Parent's sister.

author *n.* A writer of books. *Ex.* Dickens was a popular *author*. A woman author is an *authoress*.

authority *n.* The power or right to be obeyed. *Ex.* The Headmaster has full *authority* in the shool.

automobile (*aw*-to-mo-beel) *n.* A motor-car.

autumn (*aw*-tum) *n.* The season that comes after summer. *Ex.* In *autumn* the leaves fall and the harvest is gathered in.

avenue (*av*-e-new) *n.* (*a*) (England) Road with trees on either side. (*b*) (U.S.A.) Wide street with lofly buildings on either side. (*c*) (figuratively) Way of approach *to* some object.

average *adj.* The average number of boys in a class is found by taking the total number of boys in the school, and dividing by the number of classes. Thus, if there are 160 boys in a school, and there are 8 classes, the *average* number in each class is 20. The *average* of 1, 3, 5, and 7 is 4, because these numbers add up to 16, and there are 4 of them.

avoid *v.* To keep away from. *Ex.* You will *avoid* trouble if you do as I tell you.

await *v.* To wait for. *Ex.* I *await* a reply from my friend.

awake (1) *v.* To rouse from sleep. *Ex.* I was *awakened* by the crash. (2) *adj.* Not asleep. *Ex.* I was *awake* till 11 o'clock last night.

aware *adj.* Knowing and thinking of. *Ex.* He was *aware* of the

dangers he would have to face.

away *adv*. At a distance from.

awe *n*. Great respect and sometimes fear. *Ex*. He was filled with *awe* when he saw the Queen for the first time.

awful *adj*. (*a*) Dreadful. (*b*) (colloquial) Very great.

awhile *adv*. For a short time.

axe (*aks*) *n*. A sharp-edged tool for cutting wood.

baby *n*. (*a*) Very young child. (*b*) Grown-up person behaving like a baby. (*c*) Thing of small size compared with others of the same type. *Ex*. He bought a *baby* car.

bachelor (*batsh*-e-lor) *n*. A man who has not married. *Ex*. He is a lonely *bachelor*.

back *n*. Part of the body from the neck to the buttocks. *adv*. To the back, in or into the earlier position. *v*. (*a*) Go or cause to go back. (*b*) Support.

backward, *adj*. Towards the back, slow to act, shy, hesitating. *adv*. (also **backwards**) towards the back, or with the end coming first.

bacon (*bay*-con) *n*. The back and sides of a pig cured (*see* cure) and prepared for eating.

bad (worse, worst) *adj*. Unsatisfactory, disagreeable, wicked, not right or good.

bag *n*. (*a*) Something made for holding or carrying things. (*b*) A sportsman's prey. *Ex*. He has got a very good *bag*. *v*. (*a*) Obtain (*b*) Kill animals. *Ex*. The sportsman *bagged* just one quail. (*c*) Become round and hang losely. *Ex*. His slacks *bag* at the knees. (*d*) Take another's thing of small value without dishonest purpose. *Ex*. I *bagged* his matchbox.

badge *n*. A sign or token usualy worn on hat or sleeve, etc., to give some information about the wearer. *Ex*. A school *badge*, or a Boy Scout's *badge*, or a cricket club *badge*.

baggage *n*. The bags and cases that one takes on a journey. *Ex*. Most of his *baggage* was put in the van.

bake *v*. (*a*) Cook by dry heat in an oven. (*b*) Make hard by heating. A *bakery* is a place where bread is baked, and a *baker* is the person who bakes it.

balance (1) *n*. A pair of scales for weighing (*see* weigh). What is left over. *Ex*. When you have paid for your ticket out of this five shillings, you can keep the *balance* for pocket-money. (2) *v*. To keep steady *Ex*. The baker's boy can *balance* his basket on his head.

balcony *n*. A sort of platform, with railings, outside a window, on which people can sit.

ball (bawl) *n*. (*a*) Any spherical object. (*b*) A gathering of people for dancing.

ballet (*bal*-ay) *n*. A sort of play on the stage, acted entirely by dancing. *Ex*. Mary is being trained for *ballet* dancing.

ballot (*ba*-lut) *n*. (*a*) Piece of paper on which one records one's vote. (*b*) Secret voting.

banana *n*. Well-known tropical fruit.

band *n*. (*a*) A narrow strip of material (cloth, leather, rubber, etc.) used for holding things together or as an ornament. *Ex* A neck*band*, a hat*band*, etc. (*b*) A number of people brought together for one purpose. In stories we read about *bands* of warriors or robbers, and at the seaside we listen to *bands* playing music.

bandage (1) *n.* A band of material (cloth, leather, rubber, etc.) used to bind up wounds and injuries. (2) *v.* To bind up in this way. *Ex.* Mother *bandaged* Harry's arm after his accident.

banish *v.* Force one to go away (from native land, mind, etc.)

bank (1) *n.* (*a*) The ground at the edge of a river. (*b*) A building in which money is kept and sometimes lent out for business purposes. (2) *v.* To put money in a bank. *Ex.* You had better *bank* five pounds at once.

banker *n.* person who keeps a bank.

bankrupt *adj.* Unable to pay the money he owes. *Ex.* Mr. A. has lost all his money and is *bankrupt.*

banner *n.* A flag.

banquet (*bank*-wet). *n.* A rich dinner, usually with speeches afterwards. *Ex.* The Lord Mayor gives a *bankquet* every year.

bar *n.* (*a*) Long stiff piece of iron or other material. (*b*) something which prevents progress. (*c*) A sand bank. (*d*) Division in a law court separating the portion used by judges, officials, lawyers and the accused from that used by spectators. (*e*) Counter in a public house where drinks are served. *v.* (*a*) Stop. (*b*) Put bars into or across.

barber *n.* A man's hairdresser.

bare *adj.* (*a*) Not covered. (*b*) Just enough and no more *v.* Uncover.

barely (*bare*-le) *adv.* Not quite or only just *Ex.* We have *barely* enough bread for beakfast.

bargain (*bar*-gen) *n.* An agreement between two people about buying, selling or exchanging. Someting bought very cheaply. *Ex.* I got some *bargains* at the sales. *To bargain* (*v*) means to argue about the price to be paid.

bark *n.* (*a*) The outer covering of tree trunk. *Ex.* The *bark* of the beech tree is very smooth. (*b*) The cry of the dog.

barn *n* A farm building in which corn and hay are stored.

barrel *n.* A wooden vessel (*see* vessel) used for storing foods or beer, etc. (*b*) The metal tube of a gun.

barren *adj.* Producing nothing. *Ex.* This apple tree is *barren.*

base (1) *n.* (*a*) The lowest part of anything. *Ex.* A wreath was laid at the *base* of the Cenotaph. (*b*) The headquarters of an army where its stores are kept. *Ex.* The troops had to march a long way back to their *base.* (2) *adj.* Of low character. Mean. *Ex.* He turned out to be a *base,* ungrateful fellow.

baseball (*bais*-bawl) *n.* The American national game played with a bat and ball on a field with four bases.

basement (*bais*-ment) *n.* Portion of the building which is partly or wholly underground.

basin (*bai*-sin) *n.* (*a*) Wide and round open dish. (*b*) Hollow place containing water. (*c*) Area of land from which water is carried away by a river and its tributaries.

basket (*bahs*-ket) *n.* Something made to contain things, usually, it is made of materials that bend easily.

bat *n.* A heavy stick with which ball games such as cricket, etc., are played. (*b*) A small animal, like a mouse but with wings, which flies in the dark.

bath *n*. (bath) (plural **baths** pronounced bahdhz). (*a*) Washing of the body. (*b*) Vessel in which a bath may be taken. (*c*) (Plural) *baths* are indoor swimming tanks, but pools are the same things built in the open. *v*. Give a bath to. *Ex*. Don't give a cold bath to the baby

bathe (baidh) *v*. (*a*) Have or give a bath. (*b*) Touch, cover, surround. *Ex*. The whole scene was *bathed* in moonlight. *n*. Act of bathing in a lake or sea. *Ex*. We had a pleasant bathe on the beach. *Bathing* (*bai*-thing) means going into the sea for swimming.

bath-room *n* Room with a bath-tub in it.

battery *n*. (*a*) A group of large guns for use in war. (*b*) An arrangement of cells for producing electricity. *Ex*. My torch went out last night because the *battery* had run down.

bay (1) *n*. (*a*) A curving part of the seashore. *Ex*. We came to a lonely sandy bay. (*b*) A kind of tree (*c*) The deep cry of the hound. (2) *v*. *Ex*. One of the hounds *bayed* all night.

be *v*. (*a*) Exist (*b*) Become. (*c*) Cost.

beach *n*. The sand on the edge of the sea *Ex*. The children spent a happy morning on the *beach*.

bead *n*. A small round ball with a hole through it so that it may be put on a string.

beam *n*. (*a*)A large piece of wood used to support the roof in building a house. (*b*) A ray (*see* ray) of light. *Beaming* (*adj*.) means smiling happily.

bean (been) *n*. A seed used as food ; plant yielding that seed.

bear (**bore**, **born** pronounced bohrn) *v*. (*a*) Carry, support. (*b*) Bring forth. (*c*) Suffer. (*d*) Turn, move. (*e*) Lean heavily *on*. (*f*) Have an influence *on*.

beard *n*. (*a*) Hair on a man's chin, etc. (*b*) Hair on the seeds cf barley, etc. *v*. To take one by the beard, face boldly.

beast *n*. (*a*) Four-legged animal, esp. wild animal. (*b*) Cruel and disgusting person with habits like those of beasts.

beat (beet), **beat**, (beet), **beaten** (beeten) *v*. (*a*) Hit, strike. (*b*) Win a victory over, or drive away. (*c*) Move up and down regularly. *Ex*. His heart was still *beating*. (*d*) Make the sound as the result of being struck.

beat *n*. (*a*) Repeated stroke or its sound. (*b*) Course over which one goes regularly.

beauty (*bew*-ty) *n*. (*a*) Qualities that give pleasure to mind, eye or ear. (*b*) Thing or person having these qualities. The adjective expressing these qualities is *beautiful*, as a beautiful maiden.

because *conj*., **because of** (prep.) owing to, for the reason that.

become (**became**, **become**) *v*. (*a*) Pass from one state to another. (*b*) Be suitable for. *Ex*. It doesn't *become* a brave boy to grumble like that.

bed *n*. A thing to sleep or rest on. *Ex*. A cot is called a *bed*, but the *bed-clothes* spread thereon are called a *bedding*. (*b*) Material used as a base or foundation. (*c*) Ground at the bottom of a river, lake or sea. (*d*) Piece of ground prepared for plants, like a flower bed.

bed-ridden *adj*. Obliged to remain in bed for a long time. *Ex*. The old lady has been *bed-ridden* since last year.

bed-room *n.* A room to sleep in.

bee *n.* flying insect which gathers honey from flowers.

beef *n.* Flesh of cow or ox used as food. A *beef-steak* (pronounced beef-staik) is a thick piece of beef for frying.

been *v.* Past participle of **be**.

beer *n.* An alcoholic drink made from malted barley.

before *prep., adv., conj.* earlier. In front. Higher in rank. Rather than.

beg *v.* To ask. *Ex.* I *beg* you to accept this book. A *beggar* is someone so poor that he lives by *begging*, that is, by asking for gifts of food, etc., from door to door.

begin (began, beginning, begun) *v.* (*a*) Start. The *beginning.* (*n.*) (*b*) The starting point.

behave *v.* To act in a certain way. You can behave well or behave badly. Your *behaviour* can be good or bad.

behind (bee-hynd), *adv. prep.* (*a*) At the back, a distance, from remaining after, in a lower position. (*b*) *n.* (colloquial) part of the body on which one sits. *Ex.* The teacher kicked the boy's *behind.*

being (*bee*-ing) *n.* A person. A human being.

believe (be-*leev*) *v.* To accept as true. *Ex.* I *believe* his story. It is my *belief* that he spoke the truth.

bell *n.* (*a*) Hollow metal vessel with a striker, making a ringing sound. (*b*) Sound of a bell.

belong *v.* Be a possession or member of, have as a proper place.

beloved (be-*luv*-id) *adj.* and *n.* one who is much loved.

below (bi-*loh*) *prep. adv.* At a lower place (than), beneath, unworthy of.

belt *n.* A band of leather, etc., usually worn round the waist.

bench *n.* A long seat such as one sees in parks. A table on which a carpenter works. The Judges who sit in a Court of Law are called the *Bench.*

bend (1) *n.* A bend in the road is a part of the road that is not straight, but is curved. When you bend a piece of wire, it is *bent.* (2) *v.* To shape a piece of wire in this way is to bend it.

beneath *prep.* Below, under.

benefit (*ben*-e-fit) *n* A kindness, or something that gives happiness or help. *Ex.* Mary received many *benefits* from her employer. John got great *benefit* from his holiday. He found it *beneficial.*

berry *n.* Any small stoneless, juicy fruit.

beside (bi-*syd*) *prep.* by the side of.

besides (bi-*sydz*) *adv.* and *prep.* Moreover, in adition to.

best *adj.* Superlative of *good.*

bestow (be-*stoh*) *v.* To give. *Ex.* The Mayor *bestowed* a handsome prize.

better *adj.* Comparative of good.

betray *v.* To be unfaithful to, or plot against. *Ex.* He *betrayed* his country by giving secret information about the Navy to the enemy.

between *prep.* and *adv.* In a space bounded by other things.

beverage (*bev*-er-aj) *n.* A drink such as tea or coffee.

beware *v.* To look out for, and be careful. *Ex. Beware* of the bull in that field.

beyond *adv.* and *prep.* Further on or than, later than, out of reach of.

Bible (bybl) *n.* Christian scriptures.

bicycle *n.* A light metal-framed machine on two wheels, driven by pedals.

bid *n.* Offer of a price at a sale; the price offered.

bid (**bad** pronounced bad, **bidden**) *v.* Command (only in literary usage in this sense).

bid (**bid, bid**) *v.* (*a*) Make an offer of money for something at a sale. (*b*) (in America) State a price for doing a piece of work.

big (**bigger, biggest**) *adj.* Large, grown-up, important. (figuratively) Generous. *Ex.* He has a big heart.

bill *n.* (*a*) Statement of money for things bought or services given. (*b*) Advertisement. (*c*) draft of a projected law. (*d*) (in America) a currency note. (*e*) A bird's beak. A *bill-sticker* or *bill-poster* is the person who sticks bills on walls, etc.

biography (by-*og*-raf-e) *n.* The story of someone's life. *Ex.* He is writing the Captain's *biography*.

blackmail (1) *n.* Money obtained from a person by threatening (*see threat*) to do him harm. (2) *v.* To get money in this way.

blacksmith *n.* A smith who works in iron, and makes horseshoes and tools for farmers.

blade *n.* The cutting part of a knife, sword or razor. A leaf of grass.

blind (1) *adj.* Being unable to see. (2) *n.* A screen covering a window to shut out the light. (3) *v.* To deprive of sight. *Ex.* He was *blinded* in the railway accident.

block (1) *n.* (*a*) A solid mass, as of stone, or ice. (*b*) Something which stops natural movement, such as a block in the traffic. (2) *v.* To stop or prevent movement. *Ex.* A fallen rock *blocked* the pathway.

blood *n.* (*a*) Red liquid in the body. (*b*) Temper. (*c*) Decent, family. *Ex.* It is in the *blood*, *i.e.*, the strain runs through the family. The adjective *bloody* signifies an event with much bloodshed, or a body which is bleeding or is covered with blood.

bloom (1) *n.* A blossom or flower. (2) *v.* To produce blossoms.

blossom *n.* The flower on a tree which comes before the fruit. *Ex.* Apple *blossom*

blot (*a*) *n.* Spot or mark, hence a fault or disgrace. (*b*) *v.* (*a*) Make a spot with blood. (*b*) Dry ink with blotting paper. (*c*) (figuratively) Bring dishonour or disgrace to.

blouse (blowz) *n.* Loose outer garment worn by women or children.

blow (bloh) (*a*) *n.* A hard stroke or unpleasant shock. (*b*) *v.* (**blew, blown** (*a*) (of wind) move itself or something. (*b*) Breathe hard and quickly.

blue (bloo) *adj.* and *n.* the colour of the sky.

blush *v.* To become red in the face through shame or feeling uncomfortable about something. *Ex.* She *blushed* when asked to explain why she had been absent.

board (1) *n.* (*a*) A thin flat strip of wood, such as a floor-board. (*b*) The food supplied to a lodger. *Ex.* He gets *board* and lodging. "*On board*" means "on a ship." A *boarder* is one who is supplied with board and lodging as, for

instance, at a *boarding*-school or in a *boarding*-house.

boast *v.* To talk about something you have done, or something you possess, as if it were much better or bigger than it really is. *Ex.* She is always *boasting* about her doll's house. She is *boastful*.

boat *n.* (*a*) Vessel used for travelling on water. (*b*) Dish shaped like a boat. *v.* travel in a boat for pleasure

body-guard *n.* A group of men who have to guard the safety of some great person, such as a King or Queen.

boil (boyl) (1) *n.* A small red swelling on the skin. *Ex.* John has a *boil* on his neck. (2) *v.* To cook in water, as to boil an egg.

bold *adj.* (*a*) Fearle s; immodest. (*b*) Well marked, clear and easy to see.

bolt (1) *n.* A strong metal bar on a door, used for fastening it. "To make a bolt" is to run away. *Ex* The prisoner made a *bolt* for freedom. (2) *v.* To fasten a door with a *bolt.* To run away. *Ex.* Our horse *bolted*.

bomb (bom) *n.* A well known dangerous weapon of war.

bond *n* Something which binds or holds people together. *Ex.* There is a strong *bond* of friendship between my cousin and me.

bone (bohn) *n.* a part of the framework of the body.

bonnet (*bon-et*) (*a*) Hat worn by women (*b*) Motor-car over.

book *n.* (*a*) Printed sheets bound together. (*b*) Division of a long prose or poetical production. *v.* (*a*) Write down (orders, etc.) in a book. (*b*) Arrange to have something. *Ex.* I have booked two seats for the picture.

boot *n.* Leather or rubber covering for the foot covering the ankle. A *boot-black* is one who cleans and polishes boots and shoes for a living.

border (*baw*-da) *n.* (*a*) Edge of a thing. (*b*) Narrow strip of land near the line dividing one state from another. *v.* (*a*) Put a border on. (*b*) Be next to

borough (*bur*-ro) *n.* A town that has a mayor and a corporation.

borrow (*bor*-ro) *v.* When a friend lets you have the use of his penknife for a short time, you *borrow* it. You *borrow* a book from the library (*see* library) when you take it out, having promised to give it back.

bosom (*buz*-am) *n.* Heart, place where one feels joy or sorrow.

boss (baws) *n.* (colloquial) Master or manager who gives orders to workmen.

both (bohth) *adj* and *pron.* The two, the one as well as the other. *adv.* Two things at once.

bother (*bodh*-er) *v.* (*a*) Be or cause trouble to, take trouble. (*b*) (Used to express impatience) *Ex.* *Bother* it. *Bother*.

bottle (botl) *n.* Container with a narrow neck. *v.* Put into a bottle.

bottom *n.* (*a*) Lowest part of a thing. (*b*) Ground under. (*c*) Part of a ship under. (*d*) (colloquial) Buttocks (contracted into *bum*).

bough (baw) *n.* Large branch of a tree protruding from its trunk.

boundary *n.* The line that divides one place from another. *Ex.* The walls of York were in olden days the *boundary* of the city.

bower (*baw*-e) *n.* Shady place under trees or creepers; summer house in a garden.

box (1) *n.* A case for holding something. (2) *v.* To fight with the hands in thick padded gloves. One who does so is a *boxer*.

boy *n.* Male child till eighteen.

braid *n.* Threads or strips of cloth used to bind the edges of clothes for decoration.

brain *n.* Soft mass of grey matter in the head.

branch *n.* (*a*) Part of a tree growing out of its trunk or some large bough. (*b*) (figuratively) A division. *v.* Send out or divide into branches.

brake *n.* A fixture on a bicycle or car, etc., by which the motion can be made slower, or stopped. To brake (*v.*) is to use the brake.

brand *n.* A piece of burning wood. *Ex.* The native snatched a *brand* from the fire and threw it at the lion.

brass *n.* (*a*) Yellow alloy of copper and zinc ; anything made of this alloy. (*b*) (Slang) money. (*c*) (Slang) impudence.

brave *adj.* Having no fear. Showing *bravery*.

bread (bred) *n.* food made from kneaded flour by baking.

breadth (bredth) *n.* Abstract noun from *broad*.

break (braik) (**broke, broken**) (*a*) Come or cause to come to pieces. (*b*) Fail to keep or obey (a promise, a law). (*c*) Interrupt. (*d*) End, change. *Ex.* The fine weather has broken, *i.e.*, has ended. (*e*) Better (the record). (*f*) Make poor or weak. *n.* breaking place, interruption ; act of breaking. A *breakage* refers to a place or part of a thing which has been broken. The word breakages in the plural signifies the damage by breaking.

breakfast (*brek*-fast) ناشتہ.

breast-plate *n.* A piece of armour (*see* armour) worn on the breast in battle.

breath (breth) *n.* The air that we take into, and drive out of, our lungs. To do this is to *breathe*.

breed *v.* (*a*) (Of animals) give birth to young, or cause them to have young by choosing pairs. (*b*) Bring up. (*c*) Be the cause of. *n.* A variety of animal, man, etc.

breeze *n.* A light and gentle wind.

bribe *n.* A payment or gift made to a person to get him to do something he knows to be wrong. To bribe (*v.*) is to make a gift in this way. *Ex.* The thief confessed that he had *bribed* a boy to leave the door open for him.

briar *n.* a bush.

brick *n.* اینٹ

bride *n.* A woman on the day she is being married. The man she marries is her *bridegroom*. *Ex.* The *bride* looked very happy on her wedding-day.

bridge *n.* Bridges are built over roads, railways and rivers to allow people or trains, etc., to cross from one side to the other.

bridle (*bry*-dl). *n.* The leather straps on a horse's head to which the reins are attached. To bridle (*v.*) a horse is to put on its bridle.

brief *adj.* Short. *Ex.* Make your letter as *brief* as possible. We had a *brief* holiday in Wales. I aimed at *brevity* (shortness) in my letter as I had not much time.

bright (bryt) *adj.* (*a*) Not dull or dark. (*b*) Cheerful ; clever.

brilliant (*bril*-yant) *adj.* Very bright, or sparkling, or clever. A light or a jewel can be *brilliant*.

A man is said to be *brilliant* when he is extremely clever. He shows *brilliance*.

bring (brought, brought) *v.* (*a*) Carry or cause to come from a distant place. (*b*) Cause, produce.

broad *adj* چوڑا

broadcast *v.* To give out information, or music, or a play on the radio. Such a performance is called a *broadcast* (*n*).

bronze *n.* A metal made of copper and tin. A *bronze* medal is one made of this metal.

brood (1) *n.* A number of young birds hatched at the same time. *Ex.* I saw the hen with her *brood* of chickens. (2) *v.* To spend much time thinking of one's troubles. *Ex.* Don't *brood* over your bad luck.

brook *n.* A small stream. *Ex.* There was a little bridge over the *brook*.

broom *n.* (*a*) A brush used for sweeping floors, etc. (*b*) A shrub which bears yellow flowers.

brother *n.* بھائی

brow *n.* بھوں

brown *adj.* بادامی

bruise (brooze) *v.* To hurt by a knock which does not break the skin but makes it black and blue.

brush *n.* (*a*) برش (*b*) Act of using a brush. (*c*) Short, quick fight. (*d*) Rough low-growing bushes.

bubble *n.* حباب - بلبلا

basket *n.* بالٹی

bud *n.* A flower or leaf, before it has grown enough to be fully open.

bug *n.* کھٹمل

buggy *n.* بگھی

build (bild) *v.* To make, especially a house, ship, church, etc., which is made of stone or bricks. The house or church is a *building* and has been *built* (bilt).

bulb *n.* The roots of certain flowers and vegetables are bulbs. The onion is a bulb. Daffodils and tulips grow from bulbs. An electric lamp is called a bulb.

bulge (bulj) *v.* To swell out. *Ex.* His pocket was *bulging* with marbles. I saw the *bulge* (*n.*) in his pocket.

bulk *n.* Size. *Ex.* The great *bulk* of the bull filled the shed. Fold your clothes into little *bulk*. A thing that takes up much space is *bulky*.

bull *n.* سانڈ

bullet (*bool*-et) *n.* The small bit of metal fired from a gun.

bulletin (*bool*-et-in) *n.* A public announcement. *Ex.* When a king is ill, a *bulletin* is issued about his health. We listen to *news bulletins* on the wireless.

bump *n.* and *v.* Knock. You may get a bump on your head or you may bump your head on the door.

bunck *n.* گچھا

bundle *n.* A number of things tied together. *Ex.* She was carrying a *bundle* of newspapers.

burden *n.* Something, usually too heavy, that has to be carried. *Ex.* The old man was glad to lay down his *burden* of firewood

bureau (*bew*-roh) *n.* A writing-table with drawers. Sometimes a public office is called a bureau.

burglar *n.* One who breaks into a house after dark, in order to steal. Such a man commits a *burglary*. He *burgles* (*v.*) the house.

burn (**burned**, **burned** or **burnt**, **burnt**) *v.* (*a*) hurt by fire,

heat or acid. (*b*) Be alight or in flames. (*c*) be filled *with* strong feeling (as *love*, *hatred*). *n*. Sore or mark made by burning.

burst (**burst**, **burst**) *v*. Explode, do something violently or suddenly, be full to overflowing. *n*. Explosion, short violent effort.

bush (boosh) *n*. A plant like a very small tree, with many little branches. *Ex* A gooseberry *bush*, a current *bush* When hair grows very thick it is sometimes said to be *bushy*.

business (*biz*-ness) *n*. The work or profession by which one earns one's living. *Ex*. What is his *business* ? He is a tobacconist.

busy (*biz*-ze) *adj*. Having much to do working hard. *Ex*. Mother is *busy* cooking the dinner.

but *conj*. مگر صرف - کم از کم

butcher (*buch*-er) *n*. One who kills animals for food and sells their meat ; hence a cruel person. *v*. Kill animals for food ; hence slaughter human beings unnecessarily.

butler *n*. The chief man-servant in a large house.

butter *n*. مکھن. *v*. Put butter on bread.

butterfly *n*. تتلی - تیتری

button *n*. بٹن *v*. Fasten with buttons.

buy (by) *v*. To get a thing by paying money for it. *Ex*. I will *buy* some flowers for mother. The person who buys a thing is a *buyer*.

buzz *v*. بھنبھنانا *n*. بھنبھناہٹ

by *prep*. (*a*) Near, past, through. (*b*) By means of, from the pen of.

cabbage *n*. بند گوبھی

cabin *n*. A very small house or hut. The room in which one sleeps in a ship. *Ex*. There were two **berths** (*see* berth) in our *cabin*.

cabinet (*kab* in-et) *n*. A piece of furniture with drawers and shelves for holding china, etc. The Cabinet is a group of Members of Parliament, including the Prime Minister, who are chiefly responsible for the government of the country.

cafe (kafai) *n*. A place where light meals may be had, but not any alcoholic drinks.

cafeteria (kaf-e-*tee*-ria) *n*. (America) restaurant in which the customers wait on themselves.

cage (kaje) *n*. A little house in which birds are kept. *Ex*. A canary's *cage*. A cage can also be very large, such as a lion's *cage* at the Zoo. To cage (*v*) a bird or animal is to put it in a cage.

cake *n*. 1. کیک 2. ٹکیہ

calendar (*kal*-en-dar) *n*. A table (*see* table) that shows the days, weeks and months of the year.

calf (kahf) *n*. A young bull or cow not fully grown. One calf, two calves (kahves).

calm (kahm) *adj*. Quiet, peaceful, not excited. One can speak of a calm sea, or a calm day, or a calm person.

camera *n*. An apparatus by which photographs are taken.

camp *n*. A group of tents in which people live for a time. *Ex*. The Boy Scouts' summer *camp* was a great success.

can *v*. Is able to.

campaign (kam-*pain*) *n*. Number of military or political operations connected with one another and having a special purpose. *v*. Serve on a campaign.

canal (ka-*nal*) *n*. A canal might

be called an artificial river, made for purposes of trade. Its channel (or bed) was dug out by men, not by the flow of water as in the case of a river.

candidate *n.* امیدوار

candle *n.* قندیل - موم بتی

candy *n.* دانی دار چینی

cane *n.* بید *v.* To strike with a cane as punishment.

cannot *v.* Is not able to.

cannon *n.* A very large gun.

canoe (ka-*noo*) *n.* A very light boat which is moved by paddles instead of oars.

cantaloup (*kan*-ta-loop) *n.* Kind of melon.

canvas *n.* A coarse cloth used for making tents, sails, school-bags, etc. Finer kinds are used for embroidery, and for painting pictures.

cap *n.* Covering for the head with a peak but no brim.

capable (*kay*-pa-bl) *adj* A capable person is one who is able to do things well. *Ex.* My sister is a very *capable* cook. She has great *capability* (*n.*) in cooking.

capacity (ka-*pas*-it-e) *n.* We can say that the capacity of a bottle is one pint, meaning that it will hold one pint; or that the capacity of the village hall is 100 people. A thing such as a trunk or a room is *capacious* (ka-*pay*-shus) if it can hold many articles or people.

cape (kaip) *n.* (*a*) Sleeveless outer garment worn over the shoulders. (*b*) Point of land going out into the sea.

capital *adj.* Excellent. *Ex.* That is a *capital* idea. A *capital* letter is a large letter like the E of Excellent. A *capital* city means the chief city of a country. London is the *capital* (*n.*) of England. Paris is the *capital* of France.

Capitol *n.* Name of the building in which the Congress (i.e., the U.S. Legislature) meets.

captain *n.* The chief officer of a ship or of a company of soldiers; or the chief member of a group, such as captain of the school or of a football team.

caption (*kap*-shon) *n.* A heading or title of a chapter or paragraph (see these words) or picture. *Ex.* The old silent films used to have *captions* to explain what was happening.

captive *n.* A person who has been caught or *captured* and is a prisoner. He is kept in *captivity*.

capture *v.* To catch or take by force *Ex.* The thief was *captured* by a policeman. The castle was *captured* by the enemy.

car *n.* موٹر کار

card *n.* (*a*) Oblong piece of card-board used for various purposes; one of the 52 playing cards. (*b*) Toothed instrument for preparing wool. *v.* Treat with this instrument.

care *n.* (*a*) Serious attention or thought. (*b*) Sorrow or anxiety; (in the plural) cause of anxiety. (*c*) Responsibility or protection. *v.* Feel sorrow or anxiety. One who takes trouble over what one does is said to be *careful*; one who does not, is said to be *care-less* This latter quality is termed *carelessness*. A light-hearted person is said to be *carefree*, but one who is worn with care is said to be care-worn.

career *n.* A person's career is the work or profession in which he spends his life. *Ex.* My sister

says she will take up nursing as her *career*.

cargo *n*. The goods carried by a ship. *Ex* A *cargo* of coal or of sugar, etc.

caricature (*kar*-i-ka-*tewr*) *n*. A drawing which makes fun of some-one or something. *Ex*. He drew a *caricature* of the headmaster.

carpenter (*kahr*-pen-ter) *n*. One who makes things of wood, and mends things made of wood.

carpet *n*. قالین *v*. Cover with a carpet.

carriage *n*. (*a*) کسی قسم کی گاڑی (*b*) Four-wheeled vehicle pulled by a horse. (*c*) Taking persons or goods from one place to another. (*d*) Cost of carrying goods (*e*) Manner of holding one's head or body. (*f*) Sliding part of a machine, as of a typewriter.

carrot *n*. گاجر

carry *v*. Support the weight of a thing and move it from one place to another.

cart *n*. Two-wheeled vehicle pulled by one or more horses and used for carrying loads. *v*. Carry in a cart.

cartoon (kar-*toon*) *n*. A drawing making fun of something that has happened. *Ex*. Some newspapers have amusing *cartoons*.

carve (kahrve) *v*. (*a*) To cut a design on wood or stone as an artist or sculptor would do. This is called a *carving*. *Ex*. There is a beautiful *carving* of a ship above the door of the Town Hall. (*b*) To cut in slices. Father *carved* the turkey for our Christmas dinner.

case *n* (*a*) Box or any other container. (*b*) A matter for trial in a court of law. (*c*) Facts relating to a person or thing. (*d*) Change in the form of a noun or pronoun expressing its relation to other words in the same phrase.

cash *n*. Money. *Ex*. Can you lend me a shilling ? I am short of *cash*. Father keeps his *cash* in a strong box.

cashier (kash *eer*) *n*. The person who keeps the accounts of all money spent and received in a business.

cast *v*. throw, allow to drop or fall. *n*. (*a*) Throw. (*b*) Actors in a play.

castle (kahsl) *n*. قلعہ

cat *n* (*a*) بلی (*b*) (figuratively) Scratching child or spiteful woman.

catalogue (*kat*-a-log) *n*. A list of things arranged in order. You can get a catalogue of seeds for planting in the garden ; or you can get a catalogue of books from the library.

catch (1) *v*. To take hold of or seize. *Ex*. *Catch* this ball. The policeman *caught* the thief. (2) *n*. What has been caught. *Ex*. The fishermen had a good *catch* of herring.

cathedral (kath-*ee*-dral) *n*. A very large church which has a bishop (*see* bishop) in charge of it. *Ex*. We saw beautiful stained-glass windows in the *Cathedral*.

cattle *n*. Cows, bulls and oxen. *Ex*. The fields were full of *cattle*.

cauliflower *n*. پھول گوبھی

cause *v*. make a thing happen, use before an infinitive, it makes it causative (متعدی یا متعدی دو مفعول) *Ex* To see (دیکھنا) : to *cause* to see (دکھلانا). To make (بنانا) to *cause* to make (بنوانا) *n*. (*a*) Season ; that which produces effect. (*b*) Some object in which many people are interested, as to

make a common *cause*, for a good cause.

cave *n.* A hollow (*see* hollow) place in the ground, sometimes on a hill-side, sometimes under cliff (*see* cliff) near the sea.

cease (seece) *v.* To stop. *Ex.* *Cease* that noise, please. The rain has *ceased*.

cedar (*see*-dah) *n.* (قیدار) an evergreen tree.

ceiling (*seel*-ing) *n.* The inside roof of a room. *Ex.* Flies can walk across the *ceiling*.

celebrate (*sel*-e-brate) *v.* To remember happily or to do honour to. *Ex.* We are having a party to *celebrate* mother's birthday. It will be a *celebration*. Celebrated means famous. *Ex.* Mr. Gladstone was a *celebrated* Prime Minister.

celery (*sel*-e-ri) *n.* A garden plant eaten cooked or uncooked.

cell (sel) *n* The small rooms in prisons are called cells, and so are the small spaces in a honey-comb. Certain parts of electric batteries are called cells.

cellar (*sel*-har) *n.* A store-room below the ground floor, sometimes used for storing coal.

cement (se-*ment*) *n.* A mixture containing ground limestone, used by builders for binding stones or bricks together.

cemetery (*sem*-e-ter-e) *n.* A place set apart for the burial of the dead. *Ex.* The graves in the *cemetery* were kept very tidy by the villagers. A cemetery is also called a grave-yard (*see* grave).

census (*sen*-sas) *n.* (مردم شماری)

cent (sent) *n.* coin equivalent to $ 1/100 in the U.S.A.

centre (*sen*-ter) *n.* The middle point, especially of a circle. *Ex.* She was standing in the *centre* (at the *central* point) of the room.

century (*sen*-tew-re) *n.* A hundred years. *Ex.* There have been many wonderful inventions during the last *century*. The word century is also used to mean a hundred runs in cricket.

cereal (*seer*-i-al) *n.* Any kind of grain that is used for food, such as corn, oatmeal, etc. *Ex.* Do you like sugar with your *cereal ?*

ceremony (*ser*-e-mon-e) *n.* A way of doing something in public to honour a person, or to mark a great event. *Ex.* We had a prize-giving *ceremony* at our school. A coronation is a very impressive *ceremony*. It is a *ceremonial* (*ser*-e-mo-ne-al) occasion.

certain (*ser*-tin) *adj.* Sure, without any doubt. *Ex.* The sun is *certain* to rise. I am *certain* of it. It is a *certainty* (*n*).

chain *n.* (زنجیر ;) *v.* fasten with a chain.

chair *n.* (*a*) (کرسی). (*b*) (صدر جلسه)

(c) position of a professor at a University. *Ex.* At the Panjab University there is a *chair* of Urdu, but not of English.

challenge (*chal-eng*) *v.* When a sentry challenges a passer-by he wants to be told who is there. One school can *challenge* another to a game of football. This is an invitation to a friendly contest, to see which side will win. The one school sends a *challenge* (*n.*) to the other.

chamber (*chame*-ber) *n.* A room, usually a bedroom ; sometimes an office. *Ex.* "Upstairs, downstairs and in my lady's *chamber*."

champion (*cham*-pe-on) *n.* (*a*) One who takes the part of someone weaker than himself. *Ex.* Wilberforce was the *champion* of

ill-used slaves. (*b*) The one who does best in games or sports. *Ex.* A golf *champion.* A *champion* runner.

chance *n.* (موقع) *v.* happen.

change (chaynj) (1) *v* (*a*) To make different or become different. *Ex.* I *changed* my plans. (*b*) To take or give or use one thing instead of another. *Ex* I am to *change* mother's book at the library. I must *change* my shoes for they are wet. (2) *n.* You can make a *change* in your plans. You can go to the country for a *change.* When you give a shilling for an article that costs ninepence, you get threepence *change.*

channel (*chan*-nel) *n.* (*a*) The bed or mouth of a river. (*b*) A narrow strip of water joining two seas. The English Channel, between England and France, joins the North Sea and the Atlantic Ocean.

chapel *v.* A small building used for worship ; sometimes one attached to a school or college or large house ; sometimes a church not belonging to the Church of England.

chapter *n.* One of the parts into which books are often divided. *Ex.* How many *chaoters* of the story have you read ?

character (*kar*-ak-ter) *n.* The qualities a person has, such as kindness, honesty, laziness, etc. All these qualities are parts of his character. The people in stories and plays are called characters. *Ex.* Which of Shakespeare's *characters* do you admire most ?

charge *n.* and *v.* Cost or price. *Ex.* The *charge* (*n.*) for mending my bicycle was five shillings. That is what he *charged* (*v.*) me. To be in *charge* of a small brother is to be obliged to take care of him. To be *charged* to do something is to be ordered to do it. *Ex.* I *charge* you to do this when I have gone. To accuse. *Ex.* The man was *charged* with stealing. That *charge* (*n.*) was made against him.

chargeable (*chah*-jebl) *adj.* liable to be charged.

chariot *n.* (رتھ) ancient two-wheeled car used for fighting and races.

charm (1) *n.* Something worn, usually round the neck, which is supposed to have the power of keeping the wearer safe from harm. (2) *v.* To please people by being attractive and nice. *Ex.* Mary *charms* everyone by her kindly ways. They find her *charming* (*adj.*).

charter *n.* A document granting certain rights and privileges. The Magna Carta is one of Britain's most important *charters.* In recent times we have had the Atlantic *Charter.*

chase (chace) *v.* To run after and try to catch. *Ex.* Father *chased* the little boys who had thrown snowballs through the window.

chauffeur (*sho*-fer) *n* The man employed to drive a private car.

che p *adj.* Costing very little. *Ex.* My pen-knife was *cheap.* I managed to buy it *cheaply.*

cheat *v.* To deceive, to be dishonest. *Ex.* The man who sold me this puppy *cheated* me by charging far too much. One who does this is a *cheat* (*n.*).

check *v* (*a*) To stop or hinder or reprove. *Ex.* I was rushing out to play, but mother *checked* me and told me to put on a coat. (*b*) To go over a second time. *Ex.* I have

checked this sum, and it is correct.

cheek *n.* (*a*) (رخسار). (*b*) figuratively) (گستاخی). *Ex.* He had the *cheek* to ask his superior to work for him.

cheer (1) *n.* A shout of joy or applause. *Ex.* *Cheers* for the half holiday. (2) *v.* To make happier. *Ex.* It will *cheer* Mary if you go over and talk to her. It will make her more *cheerful*. Talk to her *cheerily*.

cheese (cheez) *n.* (پنیر).

chemistry (*kem*-is-tre) *n.* The science that tells us what things are made of. From chemistry we learn that water is made of hydrogen and oxygen. A *chemist* is one who is learned in this science, or one who makes up medicines and sells them.

cherry (*cher*-i) *n.* (شاہ دانہ - گیلاس).

chess *n.* A game played on a board, by two people, with 32 pieces called *chess-men*.

chest *n.* (*a*) A large box with a lid often used for holding either clothes or food, etc. or tools. (*b*) The upper part of the human body.

chestnut (*ches*-nut) *n.* (شاہ بلوط کا پیڑ یا پھل) *adj.* (سرخی مائل بھورا).

chew (choo) *v.* To bite into small pieces with one's teeth. *Ex.* You should always *chew* your food thoroughly.

chicken *n.* (*a*) Young bird, especially a young fowl. (*b*) Its flesh used as food.

chicken-pox *n.* An illness which causes spots or blisters on the skin, comman among children.

chief (cheef) *n.* Leader, commander or ruler. *adj.* Most important.

chill (1) *n.* A cold. *Ex.* *I* think I have caught a *chill*. (2) *v.* To make cold. *Ex.* I felt *chilled* after waiting for an hour. I felt *chilly* (*adj.*).

chime *n.* The musical sound of bells ringing together, especially church bells. A chiming clock is one that chimes the hours.

chimney (*chim*-ne) *n.* The smoke from a fire passes upwards through the chimney, which was buit for that purpose.

chin *n.* (ٹھوڑی).

chocolate *n.* (کوکو والی برفی - چاکو لیٹ).

choice (choyce) (1) *n.* *See* choose. (2) *adj.* Specially good. *Ex.* We bought some *choice* grapes.

choir (kwire) *n.* A number of singers, especially those trained to sing in church services. They sing *choral* music.

choke *v.* To block up a narrow passage, either in the throat or in a water-pipe, etc. *Ex.* That herring-bone nearly *choked* me.

choose *v.* (*a*) To pick out from among others. *Ex.* *Choose* the book you like best. You can have your *choice* (*n.*). (*b*) To decide to. *Ex.* He *chose* to walk, although he could have cycled.

chop *v.* Cut by striking blows with a sharp tool. *n.* Something chopped off, especially a thick slice of mutton.

chorus (*kowr*-us) *n.* The part of a song which everyone sings at the end of each verse.

Christ *n.* (حضرت عیسیٰ). Hence a *Christian* (*kris*-chan) is an (عیسائی); but to *christen* (krisn) means to give a name to anything. *Christmas* is the birth anni-

versary of Christ celebrated on December 25.

churn *n.* The large vessel, or can, in a dairy, in which milk is made into butter by stirring.

cider (*sy*-der) *n.* A drink made from apple juice.

cigar (si *gah*) *n.* (سگار). A *cigar* is a roll of tobacco leaves, but a *cigarette* (sig-a-*ret*) is tobacco cut up very fine and rolled in thin paper. Both are meant for smoking.

circle (*ser*-kl) *n.* A circle is a line with both ends joined, in the shape of a ring. Round things, like plates and saucers can be called *circular* (*adj.*).

circular (*ser*-kew-lar) (1) *adj.* Rcurd. In the shape of a circle or ring. *Ex.* A *circular* (or round) plate. (2) *n.* A letter or advertisement (*see* advertise) sent round to a large number of people. *Ex.* This *circular* was in our letter-box.

circumstance *n.* When we say someone is in poor circumstances, we mean he has to live in poor conditions. When we say we know all the circumstances, we mean we know all the facts.

circus (*ser*-kus) *n.* (*a*) An entertainment in which trained horses and other animals appear. (*b*) A space at a busy crossroads. *Ex.* Oxford *Circus*, in London, is the point at which Oxford Street crosses Regent Street.

city (*sit*-i) plural cities (*sit*-iz) (شہر).

citizen (sit-iz-n) *n.* One who lives in a city. *Ex.* The *citizens* of Edinburgh are proud of their beautiful town. The abstract noun from it is *citizenship*.

civic (*siv*-ik) *adj.* Having to do with a *city* or *citizen*.

civil (*siv*-il) *adj.* Polite. *Ex.* The assistants in that shop are always *civil*. They show *civility* to the customers. A *civil war* is a war between two parties in the same country.

claim (klame) *v.* To ask for something because one has a right to it. *Ex.* He went to the Police Station to *claim* his bicycle which had been found.

clan (*n.*) (قبیلہ) group of families with a common ancestor, as *the Bruce clan*.

clay *v.* Strike together sharply, especially the hands. *n.* (*a*) (تالی). (*b*) Any sharp, loud noise.

clasp *v.* Hold tightly with arms, hand or other device. *n.* (*a*) Firm hold. (*b*) Something used to fasten two things together.

class *n.* (*a*) Group of students. (*b*) Group of persons of the same kind or quality. *v.* Arrange.

claw *n.* (پنجہ) *v.* Tear and scratch with the claws.

clay *n.* Soft sticky earth used for making bricks and pots.

clean *adj.* (صاف ستھرا).

cleaner *adj.* More clean. *n.* Person or thing that cleans.

clear *adj.* (*a*) Pure, distinct. (*b*) Easy to see through or safe to pass along. (*c*) Entire, *Ex.* A *clear* profit of Rs. 1000. You have a clear month to submit the claim.

clergyman (*kler*-ji-man) *n.* A minister of the church.

clerk (klark) *n.* A person employed to do office work. He does *clerical* (*adj.*) work.

clever *adj.* (*a*) (لائق - ہوشیار). (*b*) (چالاک - عیار).

cliff *n.* A high wall of rock near the edge of the sea. *Ex.* From

the *cliffs* of Dover one can sometimes see France.

climate (*kly*-mate) *n.* The sort of weather a place usually has. *Ex.* The *climate* of the West of Ireland is mild and rather damp.

climb (klym) *v.* (*a*) Ascend. (*b*) (figuratively) Rise by effort *n.* (*a*) Act of climbing. (*b*) Place that is climbed.

cling (clang, clung) *v.* Hold fast, be faithful to.

clinic *n.* Institution where medical advice and examination is given.

cloak (cloke) *n.* An outer garment without sleeves. A covering to hide something. *Ex.* His friendly chat was only a *cloak* to hide his real feelings.

clock *n.* (کلاک - ٹائم پیس).

close (klohz) *v.* (*a*) Shut or become shut. (*b*) Come near or come together. (*c*) Bring, or come, to an end. *n.* End. *adj.* (*a*) Near. (*b*) Dense, packed, with very little space. (*c*) Secret, hidden. (*d*) Thorough. (*e*) (Of weather or air in a room) not having enough or good air, not fresh.

closet (*klo*-zit) *n.* (*a*) (The American word for a small storeroom). (*b*) A **closet, water-closet** or **W.C.** is a flush-system lavatory.

cloth *n.* Material made of wool, cotton, etc., for clothes, curtains and such things.

clothe *v.* (**clothed, clothed**). The forms were **clad** are becoming old-fashioned. In the plural, *clothes* usually (klohz) signifies coverings for the body or the bed. A *clothier* is a dealer in cloth.

clothier (*klo*-thee-er) *n.* One who makes or sells clothes.

cloud *n.* (*a*) (بادل). (*b*) (figuratively) A anything that casts a shadow and causes unhappiness. (*c*) The sky *v.* Make or become dark with clouds. The adjective *cloudy* signifies that which is covered with clouds.

cluster *n.* A number of things or people close together. *Ex.* A *cluster* of grapes. To cluster (*v.*) means to gather closely together. *Ex.* The crowd *clustered* round the gate.

coach (koach) *n.* (*a*) A vehicle (*see* vehicle) for carrying passengers. (*b*) One who teaches or helps another either to become good at a game, or to prepare for an examination. This is called *coaching* You might get a coach to help you with mathematics, or a tennis coach, etc.

coachman *n.* (کوچوان).

coal *n.* (پتھر کا کوئلہ).

coarse (korse) *adj.* (*a*) The opposite of fine or smooth. *Ex.* This linen is *coarse*. (*b*) Rough or rude. *Ex.* His manners are *coarse*.

coast (koast) *n.* The land at the edge of the sea. *Ex* The part of the *coast* was rough and rocky.

coat *n.* An outer garment with sleeves and fastened with buttons in the front. But it should be noted that if it is as small as the (کوٹ) we usually put on as a part of the suit, it is termed a *jacket* by Englishmen. Thus what we call *coat* and *pant* is commonly and more correctly known in England as *slacks* (پتلون) and *jacket* (کوٹ).

cobble (*kob*-l) (1) *n.* A small round stone, used for paving streets in olden days. (2) *v.* To mend, especially shoes. One who does this is a *cobbler*.

cock *n.* (*a*) Male of the fowls kept for eggs. (*b*) Tap for flow of liquid. (*c*) Leader, one who has defeated others *v.* turn upwards or sideways showing attention or defiance.

cocoa (*koh-koh*) *n.* کوکو

cod (its plural is the same). *n* large sea-fish used as food and prized for its liver oil.

code *n.* (*a*) A set of letters or signs with a special meaning known only to one group of people. (*b*) In time of war, codes are used to prevent the enemy understanding messages.

coffee *n.* قہوہ

coin (koyn) *n.* A round piece of metal stamped and used as money. *Ex.* He had only a few *coins* left. The coins of any country are called it *coinage*.

cold *adj.* (*a*) Without heat. (*b*) (figuratively) Calm *n.* (*a*) absence of heat. (*b*) Catarrh.

collect (kol-*ekt*) *v.* To gather together. *Ex.* The tickets were *collected* at the station. I have a good *collection* of stamps.

collector *n.* (*a*) one who collects things. (*b*) Government official deputed to collect revenue.

college (*col*-ej) *n.* A school for older boys or girls or an institution (*see* institution) where young men and women are educated.

colony (*kol*-on-e) *n.* A group of people living together in a country that is not their native land. They are *colonists*. We speak of a colony of bees or ants.

colour *n.* (*a*) رنگ - (*b*) چہرے کی سرخی - (*c*) Appearance (of reality). (*d*) (Plural) flag of a ship or regiment. (*e*) (Plural) colouring materials used by artists. *v.* (*a*) Put colour on, or become coloured. (*b*) (figuratively) Change in some way to produce excitement or hide the truth.

colt *n.* A young horse.

column (*kol*-um) *n.* (*a*) A pillar. *Ex.* The roof of the hall was supported by eight *columns*. (*b*) One of the divisions of a page of newspaper. *Ex.* The account of the football match filled nearly a *column*. (*c*) A set of figures arranged above each other. *Ex.* Add up this *column* of figures.

comb (kohm) *n.* (*a*) کنگھی *v.* (*a*) Tidy up with a comb. (*b*) figuratively) Search thoroughly. *Ex.* The police *combed* the area for the murderer.

combat (*kum*-bat) *n.* A fight, usually with weapons. Those who take part in it are *combatants*.

combine (kom-*bine*) *v.* To join together. *Ex.* As so many children were absent absent, the mistress decided to *combine* the two classes. Things that are joined in this way are said to form a *combination* (com-bin-*ay*-shon).

come (kam) *v.* (*a*) More nearer, arrive at. (*b*) Amount to. (*c*) happen.

comfort (*kum*-fort) (1) *n.* To live in comfort is to have things pleasant and nice around one. To be a comfort to your mother means to make her happier than she would otherwise be. (2) *v.* To comfort your mother means to help her when she is unhappy about something. You are her *comforter*. To be *comfortable* means to have no pain or unpleasantness.

command (kom-*and*) (1) *n.* An order. *Ex.* That was the *com-*

mand he gave them. (2) *v.* To order. *Ex.* King Canute *commanded* the waves to stand still. A *commander* is one who commands.

commence (kom-*ence*) *v.* To begin *Ex.* The concert *commenced* at seven o'clock.

commend (kom-*end*) *v.* To praise. *Ex.* The boy was *commended* for his brave action.

commerce (*kom*-erce) *n.* Buying and selling goods. *Ex.* There is a great deal of *commerce* between England and France.

commercial (ka-*mer*-shal) *adj.* related to commerce.

commission *n.* (*a*) Authority given to a person to act. (*b*) Money paid for services performed for another person. (*c*) Group of persons holding an enquiry. (*d*) Act of doing something (usually wrong). (*e*) Letter of appointment as officer in the forces.

commissioner *n.* (*a*) Official in charge of some public office. (*b*) Member of a commission.

commit (ka-*mit*) *v.* (*a*) Speak or act in such a way as to be compelled to do something later. (*b*) Entrust. (*c*) Do a bad or foolish act.

committee (ka-*mit*-ee) *n.* Group of persons chosen by a larger group to do some special business.

common (1) *n.* A piece of land open to all. *Ex.* Take the dog for a run on the *common.* (2) *adj.* Usual, ordinary, well-known. *Ex.* Oak trees are *common* in this district.

communicate (kom-*ewn*-ik-ate) *v.* To pass on a message. *Ex.* The only way to *communicate* with the island was by radio. That was the only means of *communication.*

community (kom-*mewn*-iti) *n.* (*a*) Group of persons with common interests. (*b*) All the persons of an area. (*c*) ownership in common.

companion *n.* (*a*) Cheerful person having the same interests. (*b*) One who goes with another person or shares his work. (*c*) One of a pair. (*d*) Woman who is paid to live with another woman as a friend and to help in the household affairs.

compare (kom-*pare*). *v.* To look at two things and see how they are like or unlike each other. *Ex.* If you *compare* these two stamps you will find they are very different from each other. To compare them is to make a *comparison* (*n.*) between them.

compass (*kum* pas) *n.* An instrument which has a needle that always points to the north and so helps travellers to find their way on land or sea. *Ex.* The ship's *compass* is tested (*see* test) before every voyage. A pair of *compasses* is an instrument used for drawing circles.

compel (kom-*pel*) *v.* To force. *Ex.* John *compelled* his dog to give up the ball.

compensate *v.* give something to make up for loss or injury, give relief for. The act of compensating or the amount paid for that purpose is called *compensation.*

compete (kom-*peet*) *v.* To compete with someone is to try to do better than he does, and to win the prize if there is one. *Ex.* John and Mary *competed* for the first place in the race. The race was a *competition* to find the best run-

ner, and John and Mary were among the *competitors* (com-*pet*-i-tors).

complain (kom-*playn*) *v.* To find fault with, and say that something is wrong *Ex.* John *complained* that his bed was too short, and Mary *complained* of toothache. They each made a *complaint* (*n*).

complete (kom-*pleet*) *v.* To finish. *Ex.* Mary has *completed* the scarf she was knitting. It is now complete (*adj.*). There is a complete (full) set of tools in the workshop.

complexion (com-*plek*-shun) *n.* Natural colour ; general appearance.

complicated *adj.* Having many parts ; not simple. *Ex.* The works of a clock look very *complicated*.

compose (kom-*poze*) *v.* To make up. *Ex.* The bouquet was *composed* of roses and sweet-peas. Mary composed a song, and John composed a good essay. The Master said his *composition* was good. To say that a person is composed means that he is quiet and calm. *Ex.* She remained *composed* during the thunder and lightning.

compositor (kom *po*-zit-er) *n.* One who sets up type for printing.

comprehend *v.* Understand. *Ex.* Did you *comprehend* all the teacher said ?

comrade (*kom*-rayd) *n.* A companion (*see* company) and good friend.

conceal (kon-*seel*) *v.* To hide. *Ex.* Mary *concealed* her tears. The sailor lay *concealed* in a cave for several hours.

conceive (kon-*seev*) *v.* To understand. *Ex.* I cannot *conceive* why you went out and got so wet. To say that he *conceived* the idea of making a toy aeroplane means that he thought it would be a good idea to do it.

concern (kon-*sern*) *n.* To feel concern is to worry or feel anxious. To concern (*v.*) is to be connected with. *Ex.* I am interested in everything that *concerns* flying. I read a book *concerned* with aeroplanes.

concerning *prep.* Regarding, about.

concert (*kon*-sert) *n.* musical entertainment in a public hall.

conclude (kon-*klood*) *v.* (*a*) To end. *Ex.* We will *conclude* the concert with the National Anthem. (*b*) To believe or have an opinion because of some information one has got. *Ex.* From what he says in his letter I *conclude* that he will not be at home next week. That is the *conclusion* (*n.*) I have come to.

condemn (kon-*dem*) *v.* To condemn a person is to say that he is guilty. *Ex.* Do not *condemn* him till you know all the facts. To condemn a building is to say that it is not fit to use or live in.

condition (kon-*dish*-on) *n.* (*a*) State. *Ex.* My bicycle is in very good *condition*. At school we work under pleasant *conditions*, in a sunny room. (*b*) A part of an agreement that must be fulfilled. *Ex.* I will let you have a bicycle on one *condition* : that you get off it when you come to a cross-roads.

conduct (*kon*-dukt) (1) *n.* Way of behaving. *Ex.* She was praised for her good *conduct*. (2) *v.* (kon-*dukt*). To lead or show the way. *Ex.* Father *conducted* us over the Zoo. One who conducts or guides is a *conductor*.

confectioner *n.* One who makes and sells cakes, pastry and other sweets.

confer (kon-*fer*) *v.* (*a*) To give or bestow. *Ex.* You have *conferred* a great kindness on me. (*b*) To consult or discuss. *Ex.* They *conferred* about the date of the match. They held a *conference* (*n*).

confess *v.* To admit having done something. *Ex.* Tommy *confessed* to his mother that he had been naughty at school. He made a *confession.*

confide *v.* (*a*) To tell as a secret. *Ex.* Betty *confided* to me that she did not like sewing. She told me this in *confidence*, or *confidentially.* (*b*) To trust. *Ex.* I can *confide* in him completely. I am *confident* he will keep his promise.

confine *v.* To keep indoors or in a small space. *Ex.* The hens were *confined* in a small back yard. They were kept in *confinement.*

conflict (*kon* flikt) *n.* A fight or struggle. *Ex* The Battle of Bannockburn was a *conflict* between the English and Scots.

confirm *v.* (*a*) make stronger or firmer in belief or position (*b*) make (a document) legal by signing.

confusion (kon-*few* sjon) *n.* Disorder, untidiness, or shame. *Ex.* The room was in great *confusion.* She was covered with *confusion* when she was found out.

congress (*kong*-res) *n.* The joint name of the two Houses of Legislature in the U.S.A. A *Congressman* is a member of either House. India borrowed the word Congress from America.

connect (kon-*ekt*) *v.* To join together. *Ex.* He will *connect* the truck to the engine. They will be *connected.* There will be a *connection* between them. When we say two things are connected or have a connection, we sometimes mean that one causes the other. *Ex.* You got your feet wet yesterday and you need not tell me that there is no *connection* between that and the cold you have to-day. They certainly are *connected.*

conquer (*kong* ker) *v.* To win against another in a fight. *Ex.* The Normans *conquered* the Saxons in 1066. They were the *conquerors* and the battle was a *conquest* for them.

conscience (*kon*-shence) *n.* Our conscience is a feeling inside ourselves that tells us when we are doing right or wrong.

consent (kon-*sent*) *v.* To agree. *Ex.* Mother *consented* to let me spend the day with Mary. She gave her *consent* (*n.*).

consequence (*kon*-se-kwence) *n.* Something that must follow afterwards as a result. *Ex.* John stayed up very late and as a *consequence* (or *in consequence*) he overslept. You missed your bus, and the *consequence* was that you were late for school.

consider (kon-*sid*-er) *v.* (*a*) To think carefully about. *Ex.* You must *consider* how much pocket-money you have to spend before you buy anything. (*b*) To think or have an opinion. *Ex.* I *consider* Tommy quite deserved the prize. To show *consideration* for someone is to think of what is best for them, and to be *considerate* means the same. *Ex.* Mary is very *considerate.* She never makes a noise when baby is asleep.

considerable *adj.* (*a*) (of a thing) Not small. (*b*) (of a person) Important.

consist (kon-*sist*) *v.* To be made up of. *Ex.* Porridge *consists* of oatmeal and water cooked together.

constant (*kon*-stant) *adj.* (*a*) Not changing, faithful. *Ex.* He is a very *constant* friend. (*b*) Going on without stopping. *Ex.* There was *constant* rain for two days. It rained *constantly* for two days.

constitution *n.* (*a*) آئین (*b*) All the qualities that determine health.

construct (kon-*strukt*) *v.* To build, or make by putting the parts together. *Ex.* The builders *constructed* the house in six months.

construction *n.* (*a*) Manner of building. (*b*) Object constructed. (*c*) Meaning or interpretation.

consult (kon-*sult*) *v.* To ask for advice or information. *Ex.* I *consulted* my mother about learning music. She *consulted* the doctor when she was ill. My father *consulted* the time-table to see the time of the last train.

consume (kon-*sewm*) *v.* To use up or eat up. *Ex.* This fire *consumes* logs very quickly. The children have *consumed* all the cake that I was keeping for Sunday.

contact (*kon*-takt) *n.* Touch or nearness. To be *in contact* with someone is to be beside him. *Ex.* I was *in contact* with Tom when he had mumps, so I got it, too. A *contagious* disease is one (like mumps) which is passed on by being is contact.

contagious *adj.* (*a*) (of a disease) Spreading by touch. (*b*) (Figuratively) anything likely to spread from one to another.

contain (kon-*tane*) *v.* To hold, as a jug can contain or hold water, and a book can contain several stories. What is contained is called the *contents* of the jug or the book, etc.

contempt (kon-*tempt*) *n.* A feeling of scorn, or looking down on someone because he has done something shameful. You would feel contempt for a boy who was cruel to a dog. You would think him *contemptible*.

contend *v.* (*a*) Fight or compete. (*b*) Uphold an opinion.

content (kon-*tent*) *adj.* Pleased, satisfied. *Ex.* I am *content* to be going home to-morrow. Tommy is a very *contented* child. For *contents*, see *contain*.

contest (*kon*-test) *n.* A struggle to decide which is better or stronger. *Ex.* There was a great *contest* between them for the prize.

continent (*kon*-tin-ent) *n.* The largest division of land that we can see on a map. *Ex.* Asia is the largest *continent* in the world. Sometimes we say "the Continent" when we mean Europe. *Ex.* We should like to have a holiday on the *Continent* sometime.

continue (kon-*tin*-yew) *v.* To go on without stopping. *Ex.* The noise *continued* during his speech. The noise was *continuous* or incessant. It happened *continually*. *Continual* is that which happens again and again. If there is a *continuation* of the noise I will send you all away. Have you read the *continuation* of the story in the new magazine?

contract *n.* (*kon*-trakt) (*a*) Agreement between two parties or states to do, or refrain from doing something. (*b*) Business

agreement to certain work for certain charges. (*v*) (kon-*trakt*) (*a*) Make an agreement. (*b*) Make or become smaller or tighter. (*c*) Catch, enter into. A person entering into a contract is called a *contractor*.

control (kon-*trole*) *v*. To guide or keep in order. *Ex*. You must *control* your temper, and you must *control* your dog. You must keep them under *control* (*n*.) one who controls is called a controller.

convenient (kon-*veen*-e-ent) *adj*. Suitable, helpful, not causing trouble. *Ex*. Mother said it would be quite *convenient* for me to have Susan to tea on Sunday. We find the bus-stop near the house very *convenient*. It is a great *convenience*.

convention *n*. (*a*) Custom. (*b*) Agreement between States which is less formal than a treaty, as the Geneva Convention. (*c*) Meeting or series of meetings arranged for a special purpose. A behaviour is termed *conventional* if it is either ordinary or customary.

conversation *n*. گفتگو.

convert *v*. (kon-*vert*) (*a*) Change from one state or use into another. (*b*) Cause a person to change his opinions or religious beliefs. *n*. (*kon* vert) One whose beliefs are so changed.

convey (kon-*vay*) *v*. To carry or take somewhere. *Ex*: A bus *conveyed* us to the station. A bus is *a conveyance* and so is a taxi. (*b*) To make known. *Ex*. Aunt Mary's letter *conveyed* the news that she had been ill for a month.

convict (*kon*-vikt) (1) *n*. A convict is a man who has been sent to prison for several years. (2) *v*. To prove guilty. *Ex*. The man was *convicted* (kon-*vikted*) of stealing a bicycle.

convince (kon-*vince*) *v* To make someone believe you. *Ex*. David *convinced* his mother that he really had toothache.

cook *v*. Prepare, or be prepared as, food. (*b*) Make something appear different from what it is. *n*. One who cooks.

cool *adj*. Between cold and warm. *v*. Make or become cool.

copper *n*. (*a*) تانبہ. (*b*) Small copper coin. (*c*) Large copper vessel in which to boil or wash clothes. *v*. Cover with copper sheets.

copy (co-pi) *n*. Reproduction. *v*. Reproduce.

cordial (*kor*-de-al) *adj*. Warm and friendly. *Ex*. They gave us a *cordial* welcome. They welcomed us *cordially*. A cordial (*n*.) is a refreshing drink.

cork *n*. A piece of the bark of the cork oak tree, cut so as to fit into the neck of a bottle. A cork-screw (cork skroo) *n*. is a screw which is used for pulling corks out of bottles.

corner *n*. (*a*) Place where two surfaces or edges meet. (*b*) Hidden, secret or far-away place. *v*. To drive into a corner ; to put into a difficult position.

corporation *n*. Body of persons elected to govern a town or city, as the Lahore Corporation.

correct (ku-*rekt*) *n*. Accurate, true. *v*. (*a*) Make right. (*b*) Point out the faults (of a person) and reprove (him).

correspond *v.* (*a*) To agree. *Ex.* What you tell me *corresponds* with what I heard from your mother last week. (*b*) To write letters. *Ex.* My cousin and I *correspond* with each other regularly. We keep up a *correspondence*.

corrupt *v.* Make impure, rot. *adj.* (*a*) Rotten. (*b*) Dishonest. The noun *corruption* means dishonesty or bribery.

corsets *n.* Close-fitting undergarment worn by women to support the body and keep it in good shape.

cost *n.* (*a*) Money, etc., spent on something. (*b*) (plural) Expenses of a lawsuit. *v.* (*a*) Require (the payment of) or result in the loss of. (*b*) Estimate the cost of production. Something for which we have to pay a high price is called costly.

cot *n.* (*a*) Small light bed. (*b*) Child's bed just bigger than a cradle. (*c*) Small hut or shelter.

cottage *n.* (*a*) Small house of a workman. (*b*) Small house of a better kind in the country or the suburbs, in which the owner resides, or which he lets out to holiday-makers.

cotton *n.* روئی - کپاس

couch (kowch) *n.* Kind of sofa for sitting in or sleeping on. *v.* Put an idea into words.

cough (kof) (1) *n.* The noise we make in our throats when we have a cold. (2) *v.* To make such a noise. *Ex.* Baby was *coughing* last night.

council (*kown*-sil) *n.* A group of men and women who look after the affairs of a city, or a school, or some other important group of people. They are called *councillors*.

counsel (*kown*-sel) (1) *n.* Advice. *Ex.* My father always gives me good *counsel*. (2) *v.* He has always *counselled* me wisely. He is a wise *counsellor*.

count *v.* Number things, or say the numerals. *n.* (*a*) Act of counting. (*b*) Each charge in the charge-sheet. *Ex.* He was found guilty on all *counts*. (*c*) A title of nobility.

countenance (*kown*-tenance) *n.* The appearance and expression of a person's face. *Ex.* You can see what sort of woman she is from her kindly, honest *countenance*.

counter *n.* The table in a shop at which customers are served and money may be counted.

country *n.* (*a*) Land occupied by a nation. (*b*) Land which is not built over. (In this sense, it is used as only *the country*. The *countryside* also means the same thing).

county *n.* One of the parts into which a country is divided for purposes of government. *Ex.* The *counties* of Surrey and Essex.

couple (*kup*-l) *n.* Two that are alike. *Ex.* A *couple* of children, a *couple* of days. A married *couple*.

courage (*kur*-rage) *n.* The quality of being brave, and not allowing oneself to be afraid in time of danger. *Ex* Tom showed great *courage* when he separated the fighting dogs. He was *courageous* (kur-*raje*-us).

course (kohrs) *n.* (*a*) Path or channel. (*b*) Ground prepared for races. (*c*) habitual conduct. (*d*) Dish served at a meal. *v.* run quickly.

court (kohrt) *n.* (*a*) Place where the king lives; the king's state gathering. (*b*) Hall of justice. (*c*) Space enclosed and marked off for certain games (*d*) Politeness, efforts to please. *v.* (*a*) Try to win (the favour of a woman or the support of a man). (*b*) Try to obtain.

cousin (*kuz*-in) *n.* (*a*) Child of one's uncle or aunt. Such a person is better known as the *first cousin.* (*b*) Child of a parent's first cousin. Such a person is better known as the *second cousin.* (*c*) any distant relative.

cover (*kuva*) *v.* (*a*) Hide, include, extend over. (*b*) Protect financially or otherwise (*c*) Travel a certain distance. (*d*) Report an incident or function in the Press. *n.* (*a*) Envelope (*b*) hide-out. (*c*) pretence, disguise.

cow *n.* Female of of ox, elephant, rhinoceros, whale, etc. *v.* Subdue by threats of violence.

courteous (*kur*-te-us) *adj.* Polite and well-mannered, showing respect to others. *Ex.* It was *courteous* of that man to give up his seat to my mother. He showed *courtesy.*

coward (*kow*-ard) *n.* One who has no courage (*see* courage) and does not even try to conquer his fears. A coward runs away from any kind of danger instead of facing it. *Ex.* My little sister is a *coward* when she sees a mouse. She shows *cowardice.*

crab *n.* (*a*) کیکڑا (*b*) Wild-apple, also called a *crab-apple.*

crack *v.* (*a*) Break in such a way that the pieces remain together. (*b*) Make, or cause a thing to make, a loud noise. (*c*) (of voice) Suddenly become harsh; hence a *cracked* voice. *n.* (*a*) Incomplete break. (*b*) Sudden, sharp noise or blow.

cracker (*kra*-ka) *n.* (*a*) Firework exploding with a crack or cracks. (*b*) Thin, hard, dry biscuit.

cradle *n.* (*a*) پنگورا ، پالنا. (*b*) Place where something begins. *v.* Place or rock in a cradle.

crane (1) *n.* A machine for lifting very heavy loads. *Ex.* The motor-cars were lifted from the dock and lowered into the ship by a very tall *crane.* (2) *v.* To crane one's neck is to stretch it so as to be able to see something.

crash *v.* (*a*) Fall suddenly and with a noise. (*b*) Collide. (*c*) Be ruined in business. *n.* (*a*) Noise made by fall or collision. (*b*) Financial ruin or social downfall.

crate *n.* A basket-work case or a framework of light narrow boards for protecting something. *v.* To put in a crate.

crawl *v.* رینگنا *n.* Act of crawling.

crave *v.* To beg or wish for, to have a *craving* for. *Ex.* The traveller in the desert had a *craving* for water.

crayon *n.* (*a*) Coloured chalk used in drawing. (*b*) A drawing with coloured chalk. *v.* Draw with coloured chalk.

cream *n.* (*a*) Thick oily part of milk. (*b*) Any substance looking like that, especially some for toilet. (*c*) Best part of anything.

create (kree-*ate*) *v.* To make a thing exist (or come to life) for the first time. *Ex.* The Bible says that God *created* the world. That was the *Creation* (kree-*ay*-shon).

creature *n.* Something created ; a human being ; something imagined ; a person who owes his rise to another ; a mere tool.

credit (*kred*-it) (1) *n.* An honour or something of which one may be proud. *Ex.* It is a great *credit* to him that he won the prize although he had been ill. It was very *creditable*. (2) *v.* To believe. *Ex.* We can *credit* his story because he is a truthful person.

creek *n.* A small bay ; a small harbour ; a brook.

crew (kroo) *n.* The sailors who manage a ship or the men who manage an aeroplane. *Ex.* On that voyage the ship's *crew* were mostly Indians.

crib *n.* A child's bed ; a small habitation ; a rack ; a stall for oxen ; a framework ; a literal translation.

cricket *n.* An insect which makes a creaking or chirping sound ; an open air game played with bats, ball, and wickets.

crime *n.* An act that is against the law. To steal is a crime, and one who steals or com its any other crime is a *criminal*.

cripple (*krip*-l) *n.* One who is lame, who has difficulty in walking because of trouble in a leg or foot.

crooked (*krook*-ed) *adj.* Bent or twisted ; not straight. *Ex.* Tommy drew a *crooked* line with his pencil.

crop (1) *n.* The grass, corn, vegetables, etc., that are grown for food. *Ex.* The *crop* of barley was very good this year, but the hay *crop* was a failure. (2) *v.* To cut, as to crop the hair or crop the grass.

cross *n.* An instrument of death, consisting of two pieces of timber placed transversely ; the symbol of the Christian religion ; the religion itself ; a monument or sign in the form of a cross ; anything that thwarts ; a hybrid *a.* Athwart ; adverse ; fretful. *v.t.* To draw a line or lay a body across ; to mark with a cross ; to cancel ; to pass from side to side of ; to thwart ; to perplex ; to interbreed. *v.i.* To be athwart ; to move across.

cross-roads *n.* The point at which two roads cross. *Ex.* Get off your bicy. le at the *cross-roads*.

crow *n.* A black bird of the genus corvus, includ ng the raven, rook, jackdaw ; a crowbar ; the sound which a cock utters.

crowd *n.* A large number of people gathered together. *Ex.* There was a great *crowd* watching the match.

crown *n.* An ornament for the head in the form of a wreath ; a diadem ; a badge of royalty ; perfection ; completion ; the top of anything, especially the head ; a coin five shillings in value. *v.* To invest with a crown ; to cover ; to adorn ; to finish ; to perfect.

cruel (*kroo*-el) *adj.* Very unkind, causing suffering to others. *Ex.* It was *cruel* of the man to kick his dog. That was *cruelty*.

crumb *n.* A fragment ; a small piece of bread broken off ; the soft part of bread *v.* To break into small pieces with the fingers: to cover with bread-crumbs.

crush *v.* To break or spoil by squeezing, as a dr.ss or a flower may be crushed. To crush an enemy is to beat him completely.

crust *n.* The hard outer coat of

anything; a piece of hard bread ; a deposit from wine *vt.* and *i.* to cover with a crust or hard coat.

cry To utter the loud shrill sounds of weeping, joy, fear, surprise, to clamour, to weep. *v.t.* To shout ; to proclaim. *n.* The loud voice of man or beast ; a shriek or scream ; acclamation ; weeping ; importunate call ; a political catchword.

crystal *n.* A superior kind of glass ; articles, collectively made of this material ; a regular solid mineral body with smooth surfaces —a consisting of or like crystal ; clear ; pellucid.

cucumber *n.* An annual plant of the gourd family.

cuff *n.* A blow ; slap ; part of a sleeve near the hand. *v.* To beat ; to strike with talons or wings or with fists.

cultivate *v.* To plough and prepare the land for growing crops. *Ex.* The farmer is *cultivating* 100 acres this year. To say that a person is *cultivated* means that he is well educated and is interested in books and music.

cunning *adj.* Clever in a sly or perhaps deceitful way.

cup *n* A small vessel to drink out of ; anything hollow, like a cup ; a glass vessel for drawing blood ; liquor in a cup. *v.t.* To apply a cupping-glass.

cupboard (*kup*-board) *n.* Shelves enclosed by a door and used for storing food, clothes, etc.

cure (kewr) *v.* (*a*) To make well again. *Ex.* The medicine *cured* mother's cough. (*b*) To preserve in salt, as is done with bacon.

curious (*kew*-re-ous) *adj.* (*a*) Strange. *Ex.* The key was of a very *curious* shape. (*b*) Eager to know something. *Ex.* John was *curious* to know how the radio set worked. He showed *curiosity* about this.

curl *v. t.* To form into ringlets. *v. i.* To take a twisted or coiled form ; To play at the game of curling. *n.* A ringlet of hair, or anything of a like form ; a waving; flexure.

current *a.* Running ; circulating, general ; present in its course—*n.* A running stream ; progressive motion of water ; successive course.

curse *v. t.* (cursing, cursed, curst). To utter a wish of evil against ; to blight ; to torment with calamities. *v. i.* To utter imprecations ; To blaspheme. *n.* Imprecation of evil ; execration ; torment.

curt *adj.* So short that it is almost rude. *Ex.* The old man gave a very *curt* answer to my question.

cushion *n.* A pillow for a seat, something resembling a pillow. *v t.* To seat on a cushion; to furnish with cushion.

curtain (*kur*-ten) *n.* A long piece of cloth or lace, often hung from the top of the window. *Ex.* At the end of each Act of a play in a theatre, the *curtain* comes down in front of the stage.

curve *n.* A bend that has no sharp corners. *Ex.* The railway had to go round the mountain in a great *curve*.

custom *n.* A habit of doing something regularly. *Ex.* It is an old *custom* to hang up mistletoe at Christmas time. A *customer* is one who buys things from a shop.

Ex. Our grocer knows nearly all his *customers* by sight.

cut *v. t.* To divide into pieces ; to fell or mow ; to clip ; to carve ; to affect deeply ; to intersect ; to castrate, to divide as cards, to refuse to recognize *v. i.* To make an incision ; to be severed by a cutting instrument ; to pass straight, and rapidly *a.* Gashed ; carved ; intersected; deeply affected. *n.* The action of an edged instrument ; a wound ; a stroke with a whip ; a severe remark ; a channel ; any small piece ; a lot ; a near passage ; a curving or engraving ; act of dividing a pack of cards ; form ; fashion ; refusal to recognize a person.

cutlery *n.* Knives and edged instruments collectively.

daily (*day*-le) *adj.* Happening every day. *Ex.* My *daily* walk ; a *daily* newspaper.

dairy (*dair*-e) *n.* A place where milk is kept, or sold, or made into butter and cheese. A *dairyman* (or a *dairymaid*) is a man (or woman) who works in a dairy.

dam *n.* A femal parent ; a bank to confine or raise water. *v.t.* (damming, dammed). To obstruct or confine by a dam.

damage (*dam*-aj) *v.* To hurt or spoil. *Ex.* He *damaged* his foot when he fell off his bicycle. The frost has *damaged* the fruit blossom. It has done great *damage* (*n.*)

dame *n.* A lady. *Ex.* An old *dame* was sitting at the cottage door.

damp *adj*. Slightly wet. *Ex.* My coat was still *damp* this morning. The air feels *damp* after rain.

dance *v. i.* (Dancing, danced). To move with measured steps, regulated by a tune ; to leap and frisk. *v. t.* To make to dance. To dandle. *n.* A leaping or stepping to the measure of a tune ; the tune itself.

danger *n.* Exposure to injury.

dangerous *a.* Perilous ; causing risk of harm ; unsafe ; insecure.

dare *v.* To be brave enough to do something. *Ex.* I don't know how Tom *dared* to separate the fighting dogs.

daring (*dair*-ing) *n.* & *adj.* Brave or bravery. *Ex.* He showed great *daring*

dark *a.* Destitute of light; clouded ; black or blackish ; disheartening involved in mystery ; keeping designs in concealment. *n.* Darkness ; obscurity ; secrecy ; a state of ignorance.

darken *v. t.* To make dark.

darkness *n.* Absence of light ; blackness ; gloom ; ignorance ; privacy.

dart *n.* A pointed missile thrown by the hand ; a sudden thrust ; to shoot. *v i.* To fly or shoot, as a dart ; to start and run.

dash *v t.* To cause to strike suddenly or violently ; to throw or cast ; to sprinkle ; to mix slightly ; to sketch out hastily ; to obliterate ; to frustrate ; to abash. *v i* To rush with violence ; to strike or be hurled. *n.* A violent striking of two bodies ; admixture ; a rushing or onset; vigour in attack; bluster ; a mark in writing or printing.

date *n.* The day or the year when a thing happened. *Ex.* The *date* of the Norman Conquest was 1066.

daughter *n.* A femal child or descendant.

dawn *n.* The beginning of day-

light, when the sun rises. *Ex.* We got up at *dawn* to prepare for our long journey.

day *n.* The time between the rising and setting of the sun.

daylight *n.* The light of the day.

dead *a.* Without life ; deceased ; perfectly still ; dull ; cold ; tasteless ; spiritless, utter; *n.* stillness; gloom ; depth ; the deceased.

deaf *a.* Wanting the sense of hearing, not listening or regarding.

deal *n* A part ; an indefinite quantity, degree, or extent ; the distribution of playing cards ; a board or plank; fir or pine timber *v.* To distribute *v.i.* to traffic ; to behave ; to distribute cards.

dealer *n.* A trader ; one who distributes cards.

dear *a.* Bearing a high price ; valuable ; expensive ; in high estimation ; beloved. *n.* A darling. *adv.* Dearly.

death *n.* Extinction of life ; decease; cause of decease; damnation.

debate *n.* An argument on some subject of interest, usually taking place in public. *Ex.* Our school has a *debating* society. We *debated* whether cricket or football was the better game.

debt (det) *n.* Something, usually money, that one person owes to another. But one can also owe a *debt* of gratitude, which means that one has received a kindness and is grateful.

decay (de-*kay*) *v.* To become rotten and waste away. *Ex.* An apple can *decay*, so can a tooth.

deceive (de-*seev*) *v.* To make someone believe what is not true. *Ex.* The beggar *deceived* us by pretending he was blind. That was *deceitful*. It showed *deceit*.

December (de-*sem*-ber) *n.* The last month of the year.

decide (de-*side*) *v.* To make up one's mind. *Ex.* We *decided* to look for a larger house. We came to that *decision* (de *sisj*-on) (*n.*).

deck *v.t.* To clothe ; to adorn ; to furnish with a deck, as a vessel. *n.* The platform or floor of a ship.

declaration *n.* Act of declaring ; that which is declared, an explicit statement ; a solemn affirmation.

declare *v.i.* (declaring, declared) To show clearly; to tell explicitly; To testify; To reveal. *v i.* To make a declaration.

decline *v.* (*a*) To refuse. *Ex.* The old man *declined* our offer of a lift, saying he would rather walk. (*b*) To go downwards or become worse. *Ex.* My father's health has *declined* during this past year.

decorate (*dek*-or-ate) *v.* To make more beautiful by adding something. What you add is a *decoration*. You can *decorate* a room by giving it a new wall-paper or by hanging up holly in it. The Queen *decorates* a soldier for bravery by giving him a medal. This is his *decoration*.

decrease (dee-*kreece*) *v.* To become less *Ex.* On high mountains, the snow does not *decrease* till midsummer. There will then be a *decrease* (*n.*) in the amount of snow. The numbers in our Club have *decreased*.

deed *n.* Something that has been done. An act. *Ex.* It was a brave *deed*.

deem *v.t.* To judge ; to think.

v.i. To judge ; to be of opinion ; to estimate.

deep *adj.* Going or reaching far down. *Ex.* The river near our home is *deep.* Its *depth* is 20 feet.

deer *n.* A quadruped of several species, as the stag, the fallow-deer, the roebuck, the reindeer.

deface *v.t.* To destroy or mar the surface of a thing ; to disfigure; to erase.

defeat *v.* To overcome or win a victory over someone, either in war or in a game. *Ex.* The Scots *defeated* the English at the Battle of Bannockburn. Our football team has not been *defeated* yet. We have not had one *defeat* (*n.*) yet.

defend (de-*fend*) *v.* To protect or keep safe, sometimes by fighting as when an army defends a city. *Ex.* Tom *defended* his dog when it was attacked by a bigger one. When someone defends well, we say he puts up a good *defence.*

defy (de-*fy*) *v* To disobey on purpose. *Ex.* John *defied* the school's rule by walking on the grass, and was punished for it It was an act of *defiance* that could not be allowed. "I *defy* you to do this" means "I dare you, or challenge you, to do it."

degree *n.* A step ; step in relationship, rank, quality, measure ; extent ; the 360th part of the circumference of a circle ; a mark of distinction conferred by universities ; divisions marked on scientific instruments.

delay *v.* To defer or to keep back, and make late. *Ex.* The ship's arrival was *delayed* by fog. This caused *delay* (*n.*).

delegate *v.t.* To send as a representative ; to dupute ; to commit to another's care. *n.* A representative ; a deputy.

delicate (*del*-i-kate) *adj.* Not strong. *Ex.* She has been *delicate* ever since she had measles. Her *delicacy* (*n.*) has been a worry to her parents. Specially nice food is also called a *delicacy.*

delicious (de-*lish*-us) *adj.* Very nice to eat, tasting very good. *Ex.* Nancy's birthday cake was *delicious.*

delight *n.* That which yields great pleasure ; a high degree of pleasure ; to give high satisfaction to. *v.i.* To take great pleasure ; to be rejoiced.

delightful (*a*) Affording great pleasure and satisfaction ; charming.

deliver (de-*liv*-er) *v.* (*a*) To set free. *Ex.* Daniel was *delivered* from the lion's den. That was a *deliverance.* (*b*) To hand over. *Ex.* The postman *delivers* letters twice a day. There are two *deliveries* of letters.

demand *v.* To ask for something very firmly. *Ex.* The policeman *demanded* that the savage dog be kept tied up.

democracy *n.* A form of government in which the supreme power is vested in the people.

democrate *n.* One who adheres to democracy.

den *n.* A cave ; a dell ; a haunt.

denial *n.* Act of denying, contradiction ; refusal to grant or knowledge.

denote *v.* To show, sometimes by a sign. *Ex.* The flag at the mast *denoted* that the ship would sail that day.

dense *adj.* Thick or tightly packed together. *Ex.* A *dense* fog.

jungle, or crowd. When you say a person is *dense* you mean that he is stupid.

dentist *n.* One trained to attend to the teeth, and take them out if necessary. He is a *dental* surgeon.

deny (de-*ny*) *v.* (*a*) To say that a statement is not true. *Ex.* The boy *denied* that he had broken the window. (*b*) To refuse. *Ex.* His mother never *denied* him anything. When you deny something, you make a *denial* (de-*ny*-al) *n.*

depart *v.* To go away, to leave. *Ex.* The train *departs* at six o'clock. That is the hour of its *departure* (*n.*).

department *n.* A separate part. A draper's shop may sell gloves in one *department* and ribbon in another.

depend *v.* To trust. *Ex.* You can always *depend* on your mother to help you in any difficulty. When you say that it *depends* on the weather whether you can have a picnic or not, you mean that the state of the weather will decide whether you can have it or not. When you depend on someone you are *dependent* on him.

deport *n.* To transport; to demean; to conduct.

deposit *v.t.* To lay down; to lodge in a place; to lay in a place for preservation; to intrust; to commit as a pledge. *n.* Any matter laid down or lodged; anything intrusted to another; a thing given as security.

deposition *n.* An act of depositing and of deposing; attested written testimony; declaration; act of dethroning a king or degrading an official.

depot *n.* A place of deposit; head-quarters of a regiment; a railway-station.

derive *v.t.* To draw or receive, as from a source or origin; to trace the etymology of. *v.i.* To come from.

deprive *v.t.* To take away from, or keep one from having. *Ex.* The bad weather *deprived* us of the picnic we hoped to have.

depth *n.* See *deep.*

describe *v.* To explain the appearance of a person or thing in words. *Ex.* The newspapers *described* the Boat Race. They gave a full *description* of it.

desert (de-*zert*) *v.* To leave a person or place when it was one's duty to stay. *Ex.* A parent might *desert* a child, or a soldier might *desert* from the army. This would be *desertion.*

deserve (de-*zerv*) *v.* To earn or be worthy of. *Ex.* David *deserved* a prize, for he had worked hard.

design (de-*zine*) (1) *n.* A plan, or aim, or a sketch of how a thing is to be done. *Ex.* Nancy made a beautiful *design* for a cushion. (2) *v.* To make such a plan or sketch. *Ex.* He was asked to *design* a small house. Lucy *designed* her new dress.

designer *n.* One who designs; a contriver; a plotter.

desire (de-*zyre*) (1) *n.* A longing for something. *Ex.* Tom had a great *desire* for a bicycle. (2) *v.* To long for something. *Ex.* He has *desired* a bicycle for a long time. The word is sometimes used almost as a command. *Ex.* The Queen *desired* her minister to come to her at two o'clock.

desk *n.* An inclining table to write or read upon; a portable

case for the same purpose; a lectern; a pulpit.

desolate (*dess*-o-late) *adj*. Lonely, dismal, gloomy, with no life about it. *Ex* The sea coast was wild and *desolate*. A person is *desolate* when he is lonely and unhappy. *Desolation* means the state of being desolate.

despair (1) *n*. When one has no hope one is in despair. *Ex*. Susan was in *despair* when she found the last train had gone. (2) *v*. To have no hope. *Ex*. Do not *despair*; you still have a chance of a prize.

desperate (*des*-per-ate) *adj* Having no hope, and not caring what happens. *Ex*. The explorers could find no water, and were beginning to feel *desperate*. They were almost in *desperation*.

despise *v*. To look down on. *Ex*. We *despise* anyone who cheats or tells lies.

destroy *v*. To ruin or put an end to; sometimes to kill. *Ex*. Caterpillars sometimes *destroy* all the leaves on a tree. You can *destroy* a piece of paper, and an arm can be *destroyed* in battle. When a storm destroys crops, it causes *destruction*. It is a *destructive* storm.

detail *v.t*. To relate in particulars; to specify; in military affairs, to appoint to a particular service. An individual fact, circumstances, or portion, an item; a report of particulars.

detain *v*. To hold or keep back, sometimes to make late. *Ex*. You might be *detained* at school to do a punishment exercise. Or a train might be *detained* by fog.

determine *v*. To make up one's mind. *Ex*. He *determined* that he would play better next time. He was *determined* to play better. That was his *determination*.

develop (de-*vel*-op) *v*. (*a*) To grow. *Ex* He has *developed* into a very clever young man. The buds quickly *developed* when the warm weather began. (*b*) A photograph is said to be *developed* when it has been made visible on a plate or film. *Development* means growth.

device *n*. That which is *devised*; contrivance; scheme; an emblem.

devil *n*. An *evil* spirit; Satan; a very wicked person; a machine for cutting, tearing. *v*. To pepper excessively and broil; to tease or cut up.

devote *v*. To give up one's time, attention, care, etc., to some person or thing. *Ex*. The nurse *devoted* herself to the care of the sick child. When we say that a mother is *devoted* to her child, or a boy is *devoted* to his dog, it means full of affection, or *devotion*.

devour (de-*vour*) *v*. To eat greedily or as an animal does.

dew *n*. Moisture from the atmosphere condensed into drops on the surface of cold bodies, as grass, damp. *v*. To wet with dew; to moisten; to damp.

diamond *n*. The hardest and most valuable of the precious stones. A diamond sparkles like cut glass.

dictionary *n*. A book containing the words of a language arranged alphabetically, with their meanings, a work explaining the terms, etc. of any subject under heads alphabetically arranged.

diary (*dy*-a-re) *n* An account of what has happened each day, or a book having a blank space

for each day. *Ex.* The famous *diary* of Pepys describes the Great Fire of London very clearly.

die *v.* To cease to live; to expire, to sink gradually; to vanish.

differ *v.* To be unlike in appearance or in character or in thought or in any other way. To differ is to be *different* (*dif-er-ent*). *Ex.* Oranges and grapefruits look much alike, but their tastes are quite *different*. There is a *difference* beween them.

difficult *adj.* Not easy to be done, perplexed; hard to please; unyielding.

difficulty *n.* Hardness to be done; obstacle; perplexity; objection.

dig *v.* To open and turn up with a spade; to excavate. To work with a spade.

digest (dy-*jest*) *v.* When we have eaten food and it has been changed into nourishment for our bodies, we have *digested* it. That is *digestion*. *Ex.* The ostrich can *digest* almost anything, even nails. What can be digested is *digestible*.

dignity *n.* A calm and noble way of behaving which causes respect. *Ex.* The Queen received her guests with great *dignity*. She is always *dignified*.

dim *adj.* Not seeing clearly; not clearly seen; mysterious; tarnished. *v.* to dull; to obscure; to sully.

dinner *n.* The principal meal of the day usually at night among the rich families, and in the afternoon among others.

dip *v.* To plunge in a liquid; to ba.tize by immersion. To dive into a liquid and emerge; to engage in a desultory way; to look cursorily; to choose by chance; to incline. *n.* Act of dipping; a path; candle; downward slope.

direct (dy-*rekt*) (1) *adj.* Straight. The most *direct* road is the shortest and straightest. A *direct* statement is a frank and clear one. (2) *v.* One *directs* a person to the place he wants to go to by telling him the best way to go. One can travel in a northerly *direction*, or one can walk in the *direction* of the river, etc. To give *directions* is to give instructions (or orders or advice) as to what to do.

director *n.* One who or that which directs; a superintendent; an instructor; a counsellor; one appointed to transact the affairs of a company.

dirt *n.* Any foul or filthy substance. *v.* To make foul; to defile.

dirty *adj.* Soiled with dirt; mean; despicable; rainy, squally. *v.* to soil; to sully.

disappear *v.* To go out of sight. *Ex.* The thief had *disappeared* before the police arrived.

disappoint *v.* To be disappointed is to be sorry because something has not happened as we hoped. *Ex.* Tommy was *disappointed* not to be chosen for the team. It was a *disappointment* to him.

discharge *v.* To set free from any duty or employment. *Ex.* When the war was over, soldiers were *discharged*.

discontent *n.* Want of content; uneasiness of mind.

discontented *adj.* Not pleased or satisfied. *Ex.* Mary seemed

discontented with the present I gave her at Christmas.

discourage (dis-*cur*-age) *v.* When we say that a person is discouraged we mean that he is made less hopeful. *Ex.* Do not be *discouraged* because you are the youngest in the class. If you work well you may come out top. If John wants to learn to swim, do not *discourage* him

discover *v.* To find out. *Ex.* Columbus *discovered* America. It was a great *discovery.*

discuss *v.* To talk or argue about. *Ex.* The boys *discussed* the chances of their team in the coming match. They had a *discussion* about it.

disease *n.* An illness. Smallpox is a disease.

disgrace *n.* To be in disgrace is to be thought badly of. *Ex.* Tommy was a *disgrace* because he had spilt ink on the table-cloth. He knew it was *disgraceful.*

disguise (dis-*gyze*) *v.* To change the appearance. *Ex.* Father was *disguised* as Santa Claus, but we saw through the *disguise* (*n*).

dish *n.* A broad open vessel for serving up meat at table; the meat served; any particular kind of food. *v.* To put in a dish; to make hollow or concave.

dismiss *v.* To send away. *Ex.* The messenger boy was *dismissed* from his job because he was so lazy. He deserved his *dismissal.*

disorder *n.* Untidiness, confusion. *Ex.* I found the toy-cupboard in great *disorder*. It was *disorderly*. Disorder is sometimes used in the sense of a slight illness.

disperse *v.* To scatter. *Ex.* The class *dispersed* as soon as the bell rang.

display *v.* & *n.* To show, or a show. *Ex.* Have you ever seen a peacock *display* (*v.*) its beautiful tail? There was a fine *display* (*n.*) of fireworks on 5th November.

displease *v.* To annoy or offend. *Ex* The headmaster was *displeased* with James's work. He showed *displeasure.*

dispose *v.* To ged rid of. *Ex.* Father *disposed* of his old bicycle before buying a new one. To be disposed means to be inclined. *Ex.* He was not *disposed* to agree to my plan.

dispute *n.* An argument or quarrel. *Ex.* The cricket club had a *dispute* as to who should be the next captain. They *disputed* (*v.*) the question.

dissolve *v.* To melt. *Ex.* Salt is easily *dissolved* in water.

distance *n.* The space between two things. *Ex.* The *distance* between the two villages is five miles. They are five miles *distant* (*adv.*) from each other. Distant can also mean for away. *Ex.* The *distant* (*adj.*) mountains were topped with snow.

distinct *adj.* Clear, easily heard or seen. *Ex.* The woodpecker makes a *distinct* tapping noise. The hills are very *distinct* to-day. You can see them *distinctly.* We heard the wood-pecker *distinctly.*

distinction *n.* (*a*) The state of being distinguished or famous. An honour. *Ex.* It was a great *distinction* for him to be chosen as leader. (*b*) Difference. *Ex.* The farmer pointed out the *distinction* between barley and wheat.

distinctive *adj.* Marking distinction; having power to distinguish.

distress *n.* Worry or suffering. *Ex.* The bad news caused us great

distress. It *distressed* us. It was *distressing.*

district (*dis*-trikt) *n.* An area of land. *Ex.* This is a pleasant *district* to live in. The Lake *District* is mountainous.

disturb *v* To trouble or interrupt. *Ex.* Do not *disturb* father when he is reading his paper. He does not like any *disturbance.*

ditch *n.* A long narrow space dug out of the earth to carry water away, often found at the side of a road.

dive *v.* To go into deep water head first. *Ex.* Tommy can *dive* now. He has had some *diving* lessons.

divide *v.* (*a*) To split up into parts. *Ex.* We *divided* the apple between us. (*b*) To separate. *Ex.* The Cheviot Hills *divide* Scotland from England. They form a *dividing* line. They mark the *division* between the two countries. A division can also be one of the parts that have been separated. *Ex.* My toy cupboard has one *division* for trains, and one for soldiers.

divine *adj.* Belonging to or coming from God.

divorce *n.* A legal dissolution of marriage; disunion of things closely united. *v.* To dissolve the marriage contract between; to separate.

do (did, done) (کرنا).

doctor *n.* A person who has received the highest degree in a university faculty; one licensed to practise medicine; a physician. *v.* To treat medically, to adulterate.

dock (1) *n.* (*a*) An enclosed place where ships are loaded and unloaded and repaired. (*b*) An enclosed place in a law court where the prisoner stands. (*c*) A common weed. (2) *v.* (*a*) To take a ship into dock. (*b*) To cut short or make smaller. A horse's tail can be docked, and so can a man's wages.

doctrine *n.* Instruction; whatever is taught; a principle in any science; dogma; a truth of the Gospel.

dog *n.* A domestic quadruped of many varieties; a mean fellow; a gay young man. *v.* To follow insidiously; to worry with importunity.

doll *n.* A child; puppet in human form.

dollar *n.* An America coin. An American counts his money in dollars.

dome *n.* A rounded roof such as the dome of St. Paul's Cathedral.

domestic *adj.* Connected with the house or home, as domestic work, a domestic animal (cat, dog, etc.). A *domestic* (*n.*) is a servant who does domestic work. A *domesticated* person is one who is accustomed to doing domestic work.

dominion *n.* Sovereign authority; district governed; region.

donkey *n.* An ass.

doom *n.* A judicial sentence; fate; ruin. *v.* To condemn to punishment; to destine.

door *n.* The entrance of a house or room; the frame of boards that shuts such an entrance; avenue; means of approach.

dose (doce) (1) *n.* The quantity of medicine to be taken at one time. *Ex* The *dose* is a teaspoonful, three times a day. (2) *v.* *Ex.* I was *dosed* with aspirin while I had a cold.

dot *n.* A small point, as made with a pen, etc., a speck. *v.* To mark with a dot; to diversify with small objects. To make dots.

dote *v.* To love so much as to see no faults. *Ex.* He *dotes* on his grandchild.

double (*dub*-bl) (1) *adj.* Twice as much. *Ex.* I shall need a *double* supply of wool. (2) *v.* *Ex.* Father is going to *double* my weekly pocket-money. (3) *n.* A person exactly like another. *Ex.* The twins were exact *doubles* of each other.

doubt (dowt) (1) *v.* To be uncertain, to be inclined not to believe. *Ex.* I *doubt* whether he will make a good captain of the team. I *doubt* her story, for she is sometimes untruthful. (2) *n.* The state one is in when one doubts. To be in doubt is the opposite of being certain. It is being *doubtful. Ex.* She was *doubtful* whether she could carry such a heavy load.

doubtless *adv.* Without doubt.

dough (doh) *n.* Flour moistened and ready for baking. *Ex.* The baker was preparing the *dough* for the bread to go into the oven.

dove *n.* A pigeon; a word of endearment.

down *n.* The fine soft feathers of birds; fine hair; the pubescence of plants; a hill; a dune; a tract of naked, hilly land. *adv.* In a descending direction on the ground; into less bulk; paid in ready money; along in descent; toward the mouth of. *adj.* Downcast; dejected.

downstairs *adj.* or *adv.* Descending the stairs on; a lower flat.

downward *adj.* Sloping down; descending.

dozen (*duz*-en) *n.* Twelve of any article.

draft (1) *n.* A rough copy. *Ex.* A *draft* of the letter was made before it was typewritten. (2) *v.* To *draft* a letter.

draftsman *n.* One who drafts documents; but *draughtsman* (the same pronunciation) is one who makes drawings and plans of machinery and houses.

drag *v* (*a*) To pull along with difficulty. *Ex.* The mother *dragged* her child out of the way of the horse's feet.

dragon *n.* A fabulous winged monster; a fierce person.

drain (1) *n.* A pipe to carry away water and waste matter. All town houses are supplied with drains. (2) *v.* To drain a piece of land is to supply it with drains. To drain a glass of lemonade is to drink it all till the glass in empty.

drawer (*draw*-er) *n.* A box without a lid, which slides into and out of a piece of furniture made for the purpose.

dread (dred) (1) *n.* Fear or terror. To be filled with dread is to be very frightened. (2) *v.* To dread is to be afraid of *Ex.* A child that has been burned *dreads* a fire. A thing that is dreaded is *dreadful.*

dream *n.* The thoughts, sometimes like a kind of story, that pass through our minds while we are asleep. To dream is to have a dream. *Ex.* I *dreamt* I was playing by the seaside.

Dress *v.* To make straight; to put in good order; to cleanse and cover a wound; to prepare; to carry, rub, and comb; to clothe; to carry; to trim; to arrange in a line; to put on clothes; to pay

regard; to dress. *n.* Apparel; attire; a lady's gown.

dressmaker *n.* one who stitches ladies' gowns (as opposed to a tailor who generally stitches men's clothes).

drift (1) *n.* (*a*) Something heaped up by the wind. *Ex.* The car could not get through the deep snow and at last stuck in a *drift.* (*b*) The meaning. *Ex.* I could not follow the *drift* of his speech. (2) *v.* To be carried along by the wind or the tide. *Ex.* When the oars were lost, the boat *drifted* towards the rocks.

drill (1) *n.* (*a*) Physical exercises. *Ex.* We watched the boys doing their *drill.* (*b*) A pointed instrument for boring holes. (2) *v.* To bore a hole with this. *Ex.* The dentist *drilled* my tooth.

drink (1) *n.* Liquid for drinking. *Ex.* He asked for a *drink* of water. He *drank* a cupful. (2) *v.* To swallow liquid.

drip *v.* To fall in drops ; to let fall in drops. *n.* A falling in drops. The eaves ; a projecting moulding.

drive (1) *n.* A journey in a car or coach. A path up to a house wide enough for a car to drive up. (2) *v.* To cause to move, as when you drive a car, or drive away a troublesome dog.

driver *n.* One who drives; a large quadrilateral sail ; a main wheel ; a golf club for long strokes.

droop *v.* To bend forward from weakness or want of nourishment. A plant does this if you do not water it. And a person may droop when very tired.

drop *n.* A globule of any liquid ; an earring ; a small quantity ; part of a gallows ; a distance to fall ; to pour or let fall in drops ; to let fall ; to let down ; to quit ; to utter casually ; to fall in drops; to fall ; to cease ; to come unexpectedly.

drown *v.* To die by being kept under water so that it is not possible to breathe.

drowsy *adj.* Sleepy. *Ex.* Susan felt *drowsy* and went to bed early.

drug (1) *n.* A medicine. *Ex.* Quinine is a valuable *drug* much used in hot countries. One who sells drugs in a shop is a *druggist.* (2) *v.* To be given a drug to swallow is to be *drugged.*

drugstore *n* دواخانه .

drum *n.* A hollow cylindrical instrument of music beaten with sticks ; something in the form of a drum ; the typanum of the ear. To beat a drum ; to beat with the fingers, as with drumsticks ; to beat rapidly. *v.* To beat rapidly; to expel or summon by beat of drum.

dry *adj.* Destitute of moisture ; arid ; free from juice ; thirsty ; uninteresting ; sarcastic ; harsh ; cold. *v.* To free from moisture ; to deprive of natural juice ; to drain ; to lose moisture ; to evaporate wholly.

duck (1) *n.* The well-known water-fowl often kept in farmyards. (2) *v.* To bend quickly so as to avoid a blow. *Ex.* The stone almost struck him, but he *ducked* just in time.

due *adj.* A thing that is due, such as a payment or a holiday or a train, etc., is a thing that one has a right to expect at a certain time. *Ex.* Our train is *due* to arrive at five o'clock. When we say that one thing is due to another, we mean that it was caused by the other. *Ex.* Mary's cold

was *due* to her getting her feet wet and not changing her shoes.

duke *n.* One of the highest order of nobility ; a sovereign prince.

dull *adj.* Stupid ; slow ; blunt ; drowsy ; cheerless ; not bright or clear; tarnished ; uninteresting. *v.* To make dull ; to stupefy, to blunt ; to make sad ; to sully ; to become dull, blunt, or stupid.

dumb *adj.* Incapable of speech ; mute ; silent ; not accompanied with speech.

dungeon *n.* A strong tower in the middle of a castle ; a deep, dark place of confinement.

dust *n.* Fine dry particles of earth, etc., powder ; earth as symbolic of mortality; a low condition. *v.* to free from dust ; to sprinkle, as with dust.

dusty *adj.* covered with dust ; like dust.

duty (*dew*-te) *n.* What one ought to do. A task which one knows one ought to perform. *Ex.* It is the *duty* of all of us to be honest and loyal citizens. It was Mary's *duty* to help her little sister to get ready for school each morning.

dwarf *n.* A man or any other animal or plant much below the sual size. *Ex.* One of the most famous *dwarfs* was General Tom Thumb.

dwell *v.* To dwell in a place is to live in it. *Ex.* One of the hymns we sing begins : "All people that on earth do *dwell.*" To dwell on something is to think much about it. *Ex.* Do not *dwell* on your troubles. A house is a *dwelling.*

dye *v.* To change the colour by dipping in a liquid. *Ex.* I shall have my old white dress *dyed* blue. I shall get a good *dye* (*n.*).

dyer *n.* one whose occupation is to dye cloth and the like.

each *adj.* Every one of any number considered individually.

eager (*ee*-ger) *adj.* Keen, anxious to do or have something. *Ex.* The new boy was *eager* to make friends at school as quickly as possible.

eagle (*ee*-gl) *n.* A large bird of prey, usually living among mountains.

ear *n.* The organ of hearing ; power of distinguishing musical sounds ; heed ; regard anything resembling an ear or ears ; a spike as of corn. *v.* To form ears, as corn ; to plough or till.

earl (erl) *n.* A nobleman of Britain. *Ex.* The brave general was made an *earl*, because of his services to the country.

early (*er*-le) (1) *adv.* (*a*) Near the beginning of some particular time. *Ex.* He left for work *early* in the morning. (*b*) In good time. *Ex.* I went to the butcher's *early*, so that I should not have to queue. (2) *adj.* Before the usual time. *Ex.* I gathered some *early* primroses yesterday.

earnest *adj.* Serious or determined. *Ex.* He made an *earnest* attempt to learn the poem by heart. He tried *earnestly*. He was *in earnest* about it.

earth *n.* The globe we inhabit ; the world ; the fine mould on the surface of the globe ; dry land ; the ground ; the hiding hole of a fox.

earthenware *n.* & *adj.* Baked clay, of which dishes and tiles are made. *Ex.* There were large *earthenware* vessels in the farm kitchen containing milk, and there were *earthenware* cups on the table.

earthquake *n.* A shaking or splitting of the ground due to movements of deeply underlying rocks. *Ex.* A terrible *earthquake* wrecked San Francisco in 1903.

earthly *adj.* pertaining to the earth ; sordid ; worldly ; sensual ; conceivable.

ease (eez) *n.* & *v.* A state of comfort, without difficulty or effort. *Ex.* He was quite at *ease.* He lifted the heavy weight with *ease.* He found it was *easy* to lift. He did it *easily.* The medicine *eased* his pain.

east *n.* That part of the heavens where the sun rises ; the countries east of Europe. *adj.* In or toward the east ; easterly.

easter *n.* A festival of the Christian Church in March or April, in commemoration of Christ's resurrection.

eastern *adj.* Belonging to the east, toward the east, oriental.

eat *v.* To chew and swallow, as food ; to wear away ; to gnaw ; to consume ; to take food ; to taste or relish ; to corrode.

echo (*ek*-o) *n.* When a person shouts, and the sound comes back to him like another voice, that is an echo.

economy (e-*kon*-om-e) *n.* The careful management of money, so as to avoid waste. A good housewife practises economy. She is *economical.* If she thinks she is spending too much money she decides to *economise.*

edge (edj) *n.* The cutting side of a blade. The outside of anything such as a table or a precipice.

edit (*ed*-it) *v.* To arrange, and make correct, all that is to go into a book or newspaper. The person who does this is an *editor* (*n*).

edition (e-*dish*-on) *n.* A number of copies of a book published at one time. *Ex.* A beautiful new *edition* of my favourite story has just been published.

educate (*ed*-yew-kate) *v.* To teach or train. *Ex.* School is the place where children are *educated.* They get their *education* there.

educator *n.* One who educates.

effect *n.* Result. *Ex.* We called to the dog, but without *effect.* The *effect* of the medicine was wonderful : I got better immediately.

effort *n.* When you try hard to do something you make an effort to do it.

egg *n.* A roundish body produced by many female animals besides birds, from which their young is produced ; something resembling an egg. *v.* To urge on; to instigate.

eight *adj.* One more than seven and less than nine. *n.* This number ; the symbol representing this number.

eighteen *adj.* & *n.* Eight and ten.

eighteenth *adj. and n.* Next in order after the seventeenth; one of eighteen parts.

eighty *adj.* Eight times ten.

either (*i*-ther) (*a*) *adj. pro.* & *conj.* One or the other. *Ex. Either* John or James is willing to go. You can ask *either* (*pro.*) of them. (*b*) *conj. Ex.* I will *either* write or telephone.

ejaculate (e-*jak*-yew-late) *v.* To exclaim or say suddenly. You often read in a story that a boy ejaculated "Look out!" or something of the sort. That is an *ejaculation.*

eject (ee-*jekt*) *v.* To throw out or put out. *Ex.* A stray dog that

came into the classroom had to be *ejected*.

elate *adj*. Elevated in mind; flushed, as with success. *v*. To exalt; to puff up; to make proud.

elated (e-*late*-ed) *adj*. Delighted and proud. *Ex*. When Jack won the prize his father was *elated*.

elbow *n*. The bend or joint of the arm; an angle. *v*. To push with the elbow; to push, as through a crowd. *v*. To project; to push one's way.

elect *v*. To choose, usually by votes. *Ex*. The cricket club met to *elect* a new captain.

election *n*. Act of choosing; choice; voluntary preference; divine choice; predestination.

elector *n*. One who elects or has the right of voting.

electricity (e-lek-*tris*-it-e) *n*. A kind of power which can be used to produce heat, or light, or drive trains, or carry messages by telephone. An *electric* bell (or fire or engine, etc.) is one that is worked by electricity.

elegant (*el*-e-gant) *adj*. Graceful, in good taste, fashionable. *Ex*. Mother looks *elegant* in her new coat.

element *n*. One of the simple parts or divisions of anything. We might say that addition and subtraction are two of the elements of arithmetic. Simple things are said to be *elementary*. You might have elementary lessons in French.

elephant (*el*-e-fant) *n*. One of the largest animals. It has ivory tusks and is found in Africa and Asia. We use the word *elephantine* to mean very large and clumsy.

elevate (*el*-e-vate) *v*. To raise. *Ex*. A house in an *elevated* position is one that has been built on high land. A lift is sometimes called an *elevator*.

eleven *adj*. Ten and one added. *n*. The sum of ten and one; the symbol representing this number; a side of players in football, cricket, etc.

eleventh *adj*. & *n*. Next after the tenth; one of eleven parts.

elm *n*. A tree valuable for its timber.

else *v*. Other; besides; in addition.

elf *n*. A kind of little fairy, either good or bad.

elsewhere *adv*. In another place. *Ex*. Tommy was not in the playground so I had to look *elsewhere*.

emblem *n*. A sign which represents or stands for some particular thing. The torch used as a road sign is an emblem showing that a school is nearby.

embrace *v*. To clasp affectionately in one's arms. *Ex*. My sister *embraced* me when we met after I had been away.

emigrate (*em*-i-grate) *v*. To leave one's own country and go and live in another for the rest of one's life. *Ex*. A great many British families *emigrated* to Canada 100 years ago. That was *emigration*, and those who emigrated were *emigrants*.

emperor *n*. The ruler of an empire. *Ex*. In China, the *Emperor* used to be regarded as a god. There has been no Emperor of Russia since 1917.

empire *n*. A group of states or countries ruled by an Emperor. *Ex* The Holy Roman *Empire* ruled a great part of Europe in olden times.

employ *v.* To employ a joiner is to pay him for doing a piece of work. The joiner is an *employee*, and the person for whom he works is his *employer*. The work for which he is paid is his *employment*. You sometimes hear that the *employees* of a factory are asking for higher wages.

empty (*em*-te) (1) *adj.* Having nothing in it *Ex.* My purse is *empty*. (2) *v.* To make empty. *Ex.* I *emptied* the jug of water.

enable (en-*ay*-bl) *v.* To make able. *Ex.* My bicycle *enables* me to get to school much more quickly.

enclose *v.* (*a*) To shut in. *Ex.* The garden was *enclosed* by high walls. (*b*) To put in. *Ex.* I *enclosed* a photograph along with my letter. The photograph was an *enclosure*.

encounter *v.* To meet. *Ex* He once *encountered* a lion in the jungle. It was a frightening *encounter* (*n.*).

encourage (en-*kur*-rage) *v.* When you encourage someone, you give him courage and make him more hopeful. *Ex.* I might never have learned to swim, if mother had not *encouraged* me. She gave me *encouragement*. It was very *encouraging* to hear her say that I was doing well.

endeavour (en-*dev*-ur) *v.* To try. *Ex.* In the scout camp everyone *endeavoured* to do a share of the work. They made an *endeavour* (*n.*) to do it.

end *n.* The extreme point ; the last part ; final state ; completion; close of life ; death ; issue ; result; aim ; drift. *v.* To bring to an end ; to conclude ; to destroy ; to come to an end ; to close ; to cease.

endless *adj.* Without end, lasting for ever. *Ex.* The road up the hillside seemed *endless*, but we got to the top at last.

endure *v.* (*a*) To bear. *Ex.* I cannot *endure* great heat. (*b*) To last or continue. *Ex.* The Bible says that God's mercy *endures* for ever. The power of enduring is *endurance*.

enemy *n.* One who hates or tries to harm another. *Ex.* France and Britain used to be *enemies*, but have been friends and allies for a great many years. They have no *enmity* for each other now.

energy *n.* Inherent power to operate or act ; power exerted ; force ; vigour ; strength of expression ; emphasis.

energetic (*en*-er-*jet*-ik) *adj.* Active, full of energy, ready to work hard. *Ex.* A farmer has to be *energetic*, to have much *energy*, as his work lasts from sunrise to sunset.

enforce *v.* To enforce a law is to make sure that it is carried out (obeyed). *Ex.* A policeman has the right to *enforce* the law.

engage (en-*gaje*) *v.* To promise, or make a definite arrangement, for marriage or work, etc. *Ex.* To say that Mary is *engaged* to Mr. Brown means that she has promised to marry Mr. Brown. To say that a singer has been *engaged* for the school concert means that someone has promised to sing at the concert. In each of these cases there is an *engagement* or promise to do something.

engine (*en*-jin) *n.* A machine which works by means of gas, steam or electricity. A steam engine, a diesel engine, etc. The man who looks after an engine is

an *engineer*. He has been trained in *engineering* as a trade.

English (*ing*-glish) *n.* The people of England or their language. *Ex.* The *English* like playing games in the open air. That is an *English* habit.

engraver *n.* One who engraves ; a cutter of figures on metal, wood, etc.

enjoy *v.* To feel gladness in ; to have use, or receive with pleasure.

enlarge *v.* To make larger. *Ex.* It was necessary to *enlarge* the school when many new people came to live in the town. You can *enlarge* a hole that you have dug in the sand. When a photograph has been made larger, we call it an *enlargement*.

enormous (e-*nor*-mous) *adj.* Very large indeed. *Ex.* Some whales are *enormous*, much larger than any land animals.

enough (e-*nuf*) (1) *adj.* As much as one needs ; the right amount. *Ex.* Have you *enough* money for your train fare ? (2) *adv.* This pail is full *enough*. (3) *n. Ex.* I have eaten *enough*.

enter *v.* (*a*) To go in, or come in. *Ex* Pray *enter* the room quietly. (*b*) To enrol. *Ex.* Ten new pupils were *entered* at our school. The door or gate by which one enters is an *entrance*, (*n*). And when you enter a room you can be said to make an *entrance* or an *entry*.

entertain *v.* (*a*) To amuse. *Ex.* He *entertained* the children by telling them stories. (*b*) To receive at one's house as a guest. *Ex.* They *entertained* me very kindly for a week. We call a theatre or a circus an *entertainment* (*n*.). We say a person who amuses us is very *entertaining*.

entire *adj.* Whole, complete. *Ex.* I have been working the *entire* day. To be *entirely* satisfactory means to be completely satisfactory.

entitle *v.* To give a title to ; to style ; to characterize ; to give a claim to ; to qualify.

envelop (en-*vel*-op) *v.* To wrap up in, or cover completely. *Ex.* Margaret was *enveloped* in a long cloak.

envy (*en*-ve) *v.* To envy another boy's new bicycle, or his cleverness, or anything else, is to be sorry he has it—perhaps even to dislike him for having it. To feel envy (*n.*) is to be *envious* of what someone else possesses.

equal (*eek*-wal) *adj.* The same in size or numbers. *Ex.* We all got *equal* shares of the toffee. John and James came out *equal* in the examination. They did *equally* well.

erase (e-*raze*) *v.* To rub out or scratch out. *Ex.* India-rubber will *erase* pencil marks.

eraser *n.* One who erases ; an appliance to erase writing , etc.

erasure *n.* Act of erasing ; obliteration.

err *v.* To make a mistake. *Ex.* "To *err* is human, to forgive is divine." To err is to make an *error*.

errand *n.* A short journey for the purpose of taking a message. *Ex.* Mother often sends me on *errands* when I come back from school.

escape *v.* To get away, to get free, to avoid. *Ex.* Last year a prisoner *escaped* from the gaol in our town. We all had measles except Nancy who luckily *escaped* it. She had a lucky *escape* (*n.*).

especially *v.* In an uncommon degree ; especially.

evening *n.* The close of the day ; the decline of anything. *adj.* Being at the close of day.

establish *v.* To set up or set going. *Ex.* A new Post Office was *established* at the far end of our village. A large house or institution is called an *establishment*.

estate *n.* A fairly large piece of land belonging to one person or family or business company. *Ex.* William the Conqueror gave English *estates* to many of his soldiers after the battle of 1066.

esteem *n.* High opinion, or respect. *Ex.* The headmaster is held in high *esteem* by all of us. We *esteem* (*v.*) him highly. It can also be said that we hold him in high *estimation*.

estimate (*es*-tim-ate) *v.* To form an opinion as to number, size, weight, or value. *Ex.* We *estimated* that the audience at our school play consisted of about 500 people. That was our *estimate* (*n.*) of the number. To say that a man is *estimable* means that people have a good opinion of him. For *estimation, see* esteem.

eternal *adj.* Lasting for ever ; having neither beginning nor end. *Eternity* means the whole of time, the past and the future.

even (*ee*-ven) *adj.* (*a*) Flat, smooth. *Ex.* The table has an *even* surface. (*b*) An *even* number is one which can be divided by 2 and have no remainder. 2, 4, 10, 56, 98 are all even numbers.

event (e-*vent*) *n.* A thing that happens. A death would be a sad event. A birthday party would be a happy event.

ever *v.* At all times ; at any time; continually ; in any degree.

everlasting *adj.* Enduring for ever; eternal. *n.* Eternity; the Eternal Being ; a plant whose flowers endure for many months after being plucked.

every *adj.* Each one ; all taken separately.

everybody *n.* Every person.

everyone *n.* Every person.

everywhere *v.* In every place ; in all places.

evident (*ev*-e-dent) *adj.* Clear and easily seen. *Ex.* It was quite *evident* that Tommy had been eating the jam. The jam on his lips was *evidence* (proof) of this, so we did not need to ask him.

evil *adj.* Not good; bad ; wrong ; unhappy ; calamitous *n.* That which is not good ; anything which produces pain, calamity, etc. wrong ; mala *v.* not well ; ill.

exact *adj.* Quite correct. *Ex.* The train came in at the *exact* time it was expected. It was *exactly* on time.

examine (eks-*am*-in) *v.* To look at very closely. To get information by asking questions. *Ex.* You should always *examine* the change you get in a shop. An *examination* paper is one that tests your knowledge by asking questions. The doctor may examine, or make an examination of, your throat.

example *n.* One thing that may be chosen either to be copied or to show what others of the same kind are like. *Ex.* I showed Mother an *example* of the stockings I had mended. I could give you many *examples* of Mother's kindness to us all.

exceed *v.* To go beyond. *Ex.* He was fined for *exceeding* the speed limit (for driving too fast). You have *exceeded* the orders I gave you. *Exceedingly* (*adv.*) meanc very, or very much. *Ex.* The party was *exceedingly* nice. We enjoyed it *exceedingly*.

excel *v.* To do something better than others do it. *Ex.* She *excels* at fine needlework. Her sewing is *excellent*. She deserves praise for its *excellence*.

exception *n.* Act of excepting; state of being excepted; that which is *excepted*; an objection; offence.

exceptional (ek-*sep*-shon-al) *adj.* Not like the others of its kind. Unusual. *Ex.* Susan is an *exceptional* girl, so kind and thoughtful for her age. The flowers in church yesterday were *exceptionally* (more than usually) beautiful.

excess *n.* That which exceeds; superabundance, intemperate conduct that by which one thing exceeds another.

excite *v.* To call into action; to rouse; to stimulate.

excessive (ek-*sess*-iv) *adj.* Too much. *Ex.* The amount of rain in February was *excessive*, and caused floods. It was an *excessively* wet month.

exchange (eks-*chaynj*) *v.* To change one thing for another. You might exchange stamps or exchange seats with another boy.

exclaim *v.* To call out suddenly, usually in surprise. *Ex.* When he saw my new bicycle he *exlaimed* "Oh! It is a beauty!" That was an *exclamation* (*n.*).

exclude *v.* To shut out. *Ex.* Children under ten were *excluded* from the lecture.

exclusive *adj.* Excluding; not including; debarring from fellowship, illiberal.

executive *adj.* That executes; carrying laws into effect or superintending their enforcement. *n.* The person or persons who administer the government.

executor *n.* (eg-*zek*-ewter) person appointed by a testator to execute his will.

execute *v.* To put to death by law. *Ex.* Many murderers have been *executed*. *Execution* was the punishment for their crime.

exempt *adj.* Free; excused from performing some duty. *Ex.* All who attended the evening lecture were *exempted* from doing homework.

exercise *n.* Something done to improve one's knowledge or skill, such as a French exercise, a musical exercise on the piano, or bodily exercise such as walking, running or gymnastics. One can exercise (*v.*) the brain or the body.

exhaust (egs-*awst*) *v.* To use up the whole of something. To tire out. *Ex.* The explorers had *exhausted* nearly all their food before the rescue party arrived. And they themselves were *exhausted* by the great distances they had had to walk.

exhibit (egs-*ib*-it) *v.* To show usually in public. *Ex.* At the Village Flower Show, beautiful roses were *exhibited*. It was an *exhibition* of very fine flowers.

exile (eks-ile) *n.* and *v.* One who has been sent out of his own country, or is unable to live in it. *Ex.* Napoleon was an *exile* from France after the battle of Waterloo. He was *exiled* from France.

exist *v.* To be; to live. *Ex.* It is known that tigers *existed* thousands of years ago in the land that is now England.

existence *n.* State of being life; continuation; anything that exists.

exit *n.* The way out. *Ex.* When we want to come out of a cinema, we look for the *exit*.

expatriate *v.* To exile, banish.

expect *v.* To look for and believe that something will happen. *Ex.* We *expect* mother to come home to-morrow. That is our *expectation*. I did not expect to find you here. That was an *unexpected* pleasure.

expedition (eks·ped·*ish*·on) *n.* A party of people who set out for a definite purpose. *Ex.* Many *expeditions* have set out to explore the regions round the North and South Poles.

expense *n.* The cost or price. *Ex.* We cannot afford the *expense* of a long journey this year. It would be too *expensive* for us.

experience (eks-*peer*-e·ence) *n.* What one has learned from all one has seen, felt and heard. *Ex.* My uncle has had long *experience* of gardening. He is an *experienced* gardener. You can call something that has happened to you an experience. It may be a happy experience, such as a delightful holiday, or an unpleasant experience, such as getting a fright.

expert (*eks*-pert) *adj.* Having a great deal of knowledge or skill in something. *Ex.* You might be an *expert* carpenter, or an *expert* skater. Such a person is called an *expert* (*n.*).

expire *v.* To die or come to an end. *Ex.* He *expired* at the age of 83. Our wireless licence has *expired* and we must get a new one.

explain *v.* To make clear; to give the meaning of, or the reason for. *Ex.* The teacher *explained* the difficult sentence. John *explained* why he was late in getting home. He gave the *explanation* of it.

explore *v.* To travel in strange lands in order to find out about their people, rivers, towns, etc. One who does so is an *explorer*. He makes *explorations* (*n.*).

export *v.* & *n.* To send goods to other countries for sale. *Ex.* Britain *exports* large quantities of coal. Coal is one of her chief *exports* (*n.*).

expose *v.* To lay bare or leave uncovered. *Ex.* He got sunstroke from *exposing* his head to the hot sun. The tent was blown away, and the boys were *exposed* to the pouring rain. Some of them suffered from the *exposure* (*n.*).

express *v.* To say in words. *Ex.* He found it difficult to *express* his thanks for all their kindness.

extend *v.* To stretch out, to make larger. *Ex.* The garden was *extended* to include a little stream that ran beside it. We *extended* our holiday by taking an extra week. The *extent* of the garden was increased. It was made more *extensive* (larger).

extra *adj.* Beyond what is usual or expected. *Ex.* It was so cold at night that an *extra* blanket was needed.

extraordinary (ex·tra-*ord*-in·a-re) *adj.* Beyond the ordinary, remarkable. *Ex.* A snowflake seen under a microscope is of extraordi-

nary beauty. It is *extraordinarily* beautiful.

extreme *adj.* Very grea', or in a very high degree. *Ex.* He suffered *extreme* pain, and he showed *extreme* courage. He was *extremely* brave.

eye *n.* The organ of vision ; sight or view ; power of perception ; something resembling an eye in form ; a small hole ; a loop or ring for fastening. *v.* To fix the eye on ; to observe or watch narrowly.

fable (*fay*-bl) *n.* A short story (usually containing animals that act and speak like human beings) which teaches a lesson. Aesop's fables are read by many boys and girls.

face *n.* The front part of an animal's head, particularly of the human head ; the visage ; front ; effrontery ; assurance ; dial of a watch, etc. Te meet in front ; to stand opposite to ; to oppose with firmness ; to finish or protect with a thin external covering ; to dress the face of.

fact *n.* Something which is known to have happened or to have been done. Information (*see* inform) which is known to be true. *Ex.* Newspapers try to make sure of the *facts* before they print the news. When we say "that is a fact" we mean that it is the truth.

factory *n.* A building in which things are made. *Ex.* We were shown over the biscuit *factory.*

fade *v.* To lose its colour or strength. *Ex.* Flowers *fade* quickly if not kept in water. Coloured material often *fades* when exposed to the sun. A talk on the wireless may *fade* out till we can scarcely hear it.

fail *v.* The opposite of succeed. If you were to fail in an examination it would mean that you did badly in it. If you were to fail in the high jump, it would mean that you did not succeed in jumping high enough. If you say that you will do something without fail (*n.*), that means that you are determined to keep yourword and do what you have promised. If you say a person is a *failure* you mean that he has not been successful in what he set out to do.

faint *adj.* Weak. A sound or a light may be faint, or a person may feel faint. To faint (*v.*) is to become unconscious. To be *faint-hearted* is to be timid and afraid, without courage.

fair *adj.* (*a*) Beautiful, as *Fair* lady. (*b*) Light-coloured, as *Fair* hair. (*c*) Dry and pleasant, as *Fair* weather. (*d*) Just, as the headmaster is always *fair*, even when he is angry. A *fair* share is a just share—what each one ought to have.

fair *n.* A place out-of-doors where goods are bought and sold, and where there are also amusements such as merry-go-rounds.

fairy *n.* An imaginary being of human form, supposed to play a variety of pranks. *adj.* Belonging to fairies ; given by fairies.

faith *n.* Trust, belief, especially in religious teaching. To be *faithful* is to be loyal and true. To be *faithless* is to be disloyal, dishonest, not fit to be trusted.

fall *v.* To sink to a lower position ; to drop down ; to empty or disembogue ; to sink into sin, weakness, or disgrace ; to come to an end suddenly, to decrease ;

to assume an expression of dejection, etc., to happen; to pass or be transferred; to belong or appertain; to be uttered carelessly. *n.* Descent; tumble; death; ruin; cadence; a cascade or cataract; extent of descent; declivity; autumn; that which falls; a kind of ladies' veil; lapse or declension from innocence or goodness.

false (fawls) *adj.* Untrue; disloyal. You can make a false statement, or be a false friend. A *falsehood* is a lie.

fame *n.* When we speak of the great fame of Shakespeare, we mean that his great qualities are known and spoken of by many people. The fame of Nelson spread all over the world after the Battle of Trafalgar. He became *famous*.

familiar *adj.* Well known. *Ex.* It is nice to be back in this old *familiar* room. These songs are *familiar*. I am *familiar* with them all.

family (*fam*-il-e) *n.* The group that is made up of parents and their children, and sometimes other relations. *Ex.* We had a large *family* party on Christmas Day.

famine (*fam*-in) *n.* A dreadful scarcity of food owing to poor crops. Famines sometimes occur in India and China, and many people starve.

famous *adj.* Much talked of and praised; renowned; distinguished; admirable.

fan *n.* An instrument for winnowing grain; an instrument to agitate the air and cool the face; something by which the air is moved; a wing. *v.* To cool and refresh by moving the air with a fan; to winnow; to stimulate.

fancy (*fan*-se) (1) *n.* (*a*) An idea. *Ex.* A *fancy* passed through her mind. (*b*) A liking. *Ex.* She has a great *fancy* for young kittens. (2) *adj.* Ornamental. *Ex.* She was wearing a *fancy* hat. (3) *v.* To imagine, to form an idea in the mind. *Ex.* She *fancied* she heard noises in the night. She is inclined to be *fanciful*.

far *adj.* Remote; distant. *v.* To a great extent or distance in space or in time; in great part, very much; to a certain point.

fare (1) *n.* (*a*) The price paid for a journey by bus, train, etc. *Ex.* The *fare* to Paddington was sixpence. (*b*) Food. *Ex.* The landlady provided us with very good *fare*. (2) *v.* To get on. *Ex.* He *fared* badly on the boat, for he was sea-sick and could not eat any of the meals.

farewell *n.* Good-bye. *Ex.* He said his *farewells* quickly, and hurried away.

farm *n.* A portion of land under cultivation; ground let to a tenant for tillage, pasture, etc. *v.* To let out or take on lease as lands; to cultivate; to lease, as taxes, imposto; *v.* to cultivate the soil.

farmer *n.* One who cultivates a farm; one who collects taxes etc., for a certain rate per.cent.

farther *adj.* More remote. *v.* At or to a greater distance; beyond; moreover; besides.

fashion (*fash*-on) *n.* The shape or pattern or style in which anything is made, especially clothes. Fashions change, and when we say something is not in

fashion, we mean that it is not now being much used or worn. It is *old-fashioned*. Wigs for men are not in fashion as they were in the 18th Century. They are no longer *fashionable*. To say that Mrs. A. is *fashionably* dressed means that she is dressed in the style that is newest and much liked.

fast (1) *adj.* (*a*) Fixed and secure. *Ex.* He made the windows *fast* before going to bed. (*b*) Quick. *Ex.* He is a *fast* runner. (2) *adv.* Quickly. *Ex.* He runs very *fast*. (3) *v.* To do without food for a time. *Ex.* He *fasted* for three days. He kept a three-days *fast* (*n.*).

fasten (*fah*-sen) *v.* To make firm with a look or hook. *Ex.* The windows are not *fastened* ; please *fasten* them. The *fastening* (lock, hook, etc.) is broken.

fat *adj.* Fleshy ; plump ; unctuous ; heavy ; stupid ; rich ; fertile. *n.* A solid oily substance found in parts of animal bodies ; the best or richest part of a thing *v.* To make a fat.

fatal (*fay*-tal) *adj.* Causing death or disaster. A fatal accident is one in which someone is killed. That is called a *fatality*. *Ex.* There were many *fatalities* when the ship sank.

fate *n.* The power that is supposed to decide how everything is to happen, long before it does happen. *Ex.* *Fate* decided that the boy was to die young. He was *fated* to die young. We are all *fated* to die some day.

father *n.* A male parent ; the first ancestor ; the oldest member of a society or profession ; the first to practise any art ; a creator ; a name given to God ; a dignitary of the church ; one of the early expounders of Christianity. *v.* To become a father ; to adopt ; to profess to be the author of ; to ascribe to one as his offspring or production.

fault (fawlt) *n.* A mistake, or bad quality, or wrong-doing. To find fault is to complain or to blame. *Ex.* It was not my *fault* that the glass was broken. John has one bad fault—laziness. Father finds fault with him for that. No boy is *faultless* (without any fault). John's new bicycle bell was *faulty*, so he took it back to the shop where he bought it.

favour (*fay*-vur) *n.* Kindness, goodwill. *Ex.* He is always ready to do anyone a *favour*. By *favour* of the Mayor, the dancing took place in the Town Hall. When you say that the sports were *favoured* with good weather, you mean that good weather made them more pleasant. The weather was *favourable*. You speak *favourably* of someone whom you think well of. When you say you are in *favour* of a picnic, you mean that you like the idea of it.

favourite (*fay*-vor-it) *adj.* Most liked. *Ex.* Father's *favourite* song is one about the sea.

fear (1) *n.* Distress of mind at the thought of danger. *Ex.* She has a great *fear* of the house catching fire. (2) *v.* To feel fear. *Ex.* She *fears* to go out in the dark by herself. A thing is said to be *fearful* or *fearsome* when it causes fear. Lightning might be fearsome.

feat (feet) *n.* A deed which requires special strength or courage. *Ex.* It was quite a *feat* for him to swim across that wide river.

feature *n.* A part of the face, such as the nose or chin. (*b*) A very noticeable or important part of anything. *Ex.* The special *feature* of the film was its beautiful colouring. It is sometimes said that a film *features* (*v.*) a particular actor. That means that it makes him important and noticeable.

February (*feb*-roo-a-re) *n.* The second month of the year.

federal *adj.* Pertaining to a league or contract ; confederated ; founded on alliance between states which unite for national purposes. *n.* One who upholds federal government.

fee *n.* Payment for services of a special kind. We can pay fees to doctors, dentists and lawyers.

feeble *adj.* Weak. *Ex.* The old man seemed very *feeble*. The baby gave a *feeble* cry. He cried *feebly*.

feed *v.* (*a*) To give food to another. *Ex. Feed* baby first. (*b*) To eat food. *Ex.* The sheep were *feeding* in the meadow.

feel *v.* To perceive by the touch; to have the sense of ; to be affected by ; to examine by touching. *v.* To have perception by the touch ; to have the sensibility moved ; to have perception mentally. *n.* Act of feeling ; perception caused by the touch.

fellow *n.* A partner ; one of the same kind ; an appellation of contempt ; a member of a college or incorporated society.

fence *n.* A barrier, usually made of wood, round a garden or field. *Fencing* is a kind of imitation fighting with swords. It requires great skill, and the *fencers* do not mean to hurt each other.

fern *n.* The name of many cryptogams producing leaves called fronds.

ferry *n.* A boat used for carrying passengers and goods between two places, usually across a river. *Ex.* The *ferry* across the river Mersey between Liverpool and Birkenhead is much used. People are *ferried* (*v.*) across.

fertile *adj.* Fertile land is land that produces good crops. It shows *fertility*. To *fertilise* the soil is to make it richer and able to produce better crops. For this purpose the land is spread with manure or other *fertilisers*.

festival *n.* Meetings held to express either rejoicing or thanksgiving such as a harvest festival, or for competitions in music and dancing.

fetch *v.* To go and bring someone or something. You can teach a dog to fetch a ball or a newspaper.

fever *n.* A disease characterized by an accelerated pulse, heat, thirst, and diminished strength ; agitation ; excitement. *v.* To put in a fever ; to be seized with fever.

few *adj.* Not many ; small in number.

fidelity (fy-*del*-i-te) *n.* Faithfulness. *Ex.* Dogs often show great *fidelity* to their masters.

field *n.* A piece of land suitable for tillage or pasture ; piece of inclosed land ; place of battle ; battle ; open space for action ; sphere ; blank space on which figures are drawn ; those taking part in a hunt or race. *v.* To watch and catch the ball as in cricket.

fiery (*fy*-er-e) *adj.* Made of fire.

We read in the Bible about Daniel not being harmed in the fiery furnace. When we say a person has a fiery temper, we mean he is hot-tempered—easily made angry.

fifteenth *adj.* The ordinal of fifty. *n.* A fifteenth part.

fifth *adj.* The ordinal of five *n.* A fifth.

fifty *adj. & n.* Five tens ; five times.

fig *n.* انجیر The fruit of a tree of the mulberry family ; the tree itself ; a mere trifle ; dress.

fight *n.* To strive for victory ; to contend in arms. *v.* To war against, to contend with in battle; to win by struggle. *n.* A struggle for victory; a battle, an encounter.

file (1) *n.* (*a*) A steel tool with a rough surface used for cutting or rubbing off roughness in wood or metal. (*b*) A row of people walking or standing one behind the other. *Ex.* The men had to walk in single *file* accross the plank.

filler *n.* (1) One who fills. (2) A tube for filling water. (3) A small news item inserted without heading in newspaper just to fill the space.

fin *n.* The part of a fish (like a small wing) by which it swims.

final (*fine*-al) *adj.* Last. The final words of a speech are the words that come at the end of it. When we say that Tom *finally* decided not to join the club, we mean that he decided after all, after thinking about it, not to join.

finance *n.* The science of public revenue and expenditure ; management of money matters ; public funds or resources of money matters ; private income. To conduct financial operations ; to manage the financial affairs of.

financial (fi-*nan*-shal) *adj.* Connected with money. One who is in financial difficulties is one who is in need of money.

find *v.* To come upon ; to discover ; to cover ; to get ; to perceive ; to supply ; to declare by verdict. *n.* A discovery ; the thing found.

fine *adj.* (*a*) The opposite of coarse or rough. *Ex. Fine* silk or *fine* thread. (*b*) Pleasant and bright, when referring to weather. *Ex.* We had a *fine* day for our picnic. Fine is used as a word of praise for many things, for instance a *fine* picture, or book or person. *v.* To fine a person is to make him pay a sum of money as a punishment. *Ex.* Mr. B. was *fined* five pounds for keeping a dog without a licence His *fine* (*n.*) was five pounds.

finger *n.* One of the five members of the hand ; something resembling a finger. Skill in playing on a keyed instrument. *v.* To handle with the fingers ; to touch lightly ; to pilfer. To dispose the fingers aptly in playing on an instrument.

finish *v.* To bring to an end anything one has been doing. You can finish your sewing, or finish the book you have been reading. You can say that the term finished with the prize-giving.

fire-arm *n.* A gun. *Ex.* The Chinese are said to have invented gunpowder and *fire-arms.*

fireman *n.* (*a*) A man specially trained to deal with buildings on fire. (*b*) The man who stokes the fire in a railway engine.

firm (1) *adj.* Strong and steady. *Ex.* A *firm* reply, a *firm* shelf, a *firm* friendship. (2) *n.* The persons who own and manage a business. *Ex.* The large stores were bought by a new *firm.*

first *adj.* Foremost in time; place; rank; value, etc.; chief; highest. *v.* Before all others in time, place, etc.

fish *n.* An animal that lives in water. The flesh of such animals used as food. *v.* To attempt to catch fish. To catch or try to catch fish in; to draw out or up when in water.

fisherman *n.* One whose occupation is to catch fish.

fist *n.* The closed hand. *Ex.* He shook his *fist* at the boy. A fight with fists is sometimes called *fisticuffs.*

fit (1) *n.* (*a*) A violent illness. *Ex.* Our puppy had a *fit* last week. (*b*) A mood. *Ex.* A *fit* of laziness or of bad temper. (2) *adj.* Able. In good health. Suitable. *Ex.* Father does not feel *fit* for work yet. Mother is very *fit.* These shoes are not *fit* to wear. (3) *v.* (*a*) To suit or be the right size. *Ex.* These shoes *fit* me. (*b*) To make suitable or useful. *Ex.* Father *fitted* a new tyre on Harry's bicycle.

five *adj. & n.* Four and one added; the half of ten.

fix *v.* To arrange, or settle, or make firm. *Ex.* To *fix* a date for the holidays. To *fix* a nail in the wall. Whatever is fixed in either of these ways is a *fixture.*

flag *n.* A piece of coloured cloth fastened to a pole and used as a signal, or to represent some idea, such as one particular country. The flag we know best is that of Pakistan. The large flat stones used in making pavements are called flag-stones.

flame *n.* The blaze from something burning. *Ex.* The building was soon in *flames.* It was *flaming.*

flash (1) *n.* A sudden blaze of light seen only for a moment. *Ex.* A *flash* of lightning. (2) *v.* (*a*) To make a flash. *Ex.* To *flash* a torch. (*b*) To move very quickly. *Ex.* The train *flashed* past.

flatter *v.* To praise insincerely; to pretend more admiration than one really feels. *Ex.* James *flattered* John by telling him he was a splendid cricketer, but James did not mean it sincerely. It was only *flattery.* He was only making *flattering* remarks.

flavour (*flay*-ver) (1) *n.* Taste. *Ex.* This soup has a very good *flavour.* (2) *v.* To change the taste by adding something *Ex.* What did you *flavour* it with? What sort of *flavouring* did you put in it?

flax *n.* The plant whose stalks give us the material from which linen is made.

flee *v.* To run away as quickly as possible. *Ex.* When the bull broke loose the people had to *flee.* They *fled* in all directions.

fleet (1) *n.* A number of ships or boats sailing together for one purpose. *Ex.* A fishing *fleet,* or the British *fleet.* (2) *adj.* Very fast. *Ex.* The deer is *fleet*-footed. When we say time is *fleeting,* we mean that it is passing quickly.

flesh *n.* The muscular part of an animal; animal food; beasts and birds used as food. *v.* To feed with flesh; to initiate to the taste of *flesh.*

flight *n.* (*a*) When birds or aeroplanes are flying through the air,

they are said to be in flight. So is a ball when it is thrown in the air. We can watch their flight. (*b*) A staircase or set of stairs. *Ex.* She had to go up two *flights* of stairs to her room.

fling *v.* To throw. *Ex.* He promised to *fling* a ball to me. He *flung* it.

float (flote) *v.* To rest on the surface of water. *Ex.* I always *float* for a little before I begin to swim. Wood floats, but a stone sinks.

flock *n.* A number of animals or birds together in a group. *Ex.* A *flock* of sheep or sparrows.

flood (flud) *n.* Water that has overflowed from rivers or from unusually high tides. *Ex.* Heavy rain for a week caused great *floods* in some parts of Lahore. These parts were *flooded.*

floor *n.* That part of a building on which we walk ; bottom of a room ; storey in a building ; a flat, hard surface of loom, lime, etc.

florist (*flo*-rist) *n.* A shopkeeper who sells flowers. *Ex.* We locked at the lovely roses in the *florist's* window.

flour *n.* Finely ground meal of wheat or other grain ; fine powder of any substance. *v.* To convert into flour ; to sprinkle with flour.

flourish (*flur*-ish) (1) *n.* A display, such as a *flourish* of trumpets. (2) *v.* (*a*) To grow well or get on well. Plants can flourish or a man can flourish in business. (*b*) To wave about. *Ex.* He *flourished* his cane when he saw me.

flow *v.* To move, as water ; to issue, to abound ; to glide smoothly ; to hang loose and waving ; to rise, as the tide ; to circulate, as blood. To flow over ; to flood. *n.* A moving along, as of water ; stream ; current ; rise of water ; fulness ; free expression ; feeling.

flower *n.* The delicate and gaily cloured leaves or petals on a plant ; a bloom or blossom ; youth; the prime ; the best part ; one most distinguished ; an ornamental expression ; a powdery substance. *v.* To blossom ; to bloom ; to embellish with figures of flowers.

fluid (*floo*-id) *n.* & *adj.* Liquid, able to flow as water does. Water is a fluid, when it is not frozen into a solid. Fluid is the opposite of solid.

flutter *v.* To flap the wings without flying away. Birds and butterflies often do this.

foam *n.* Froth or bubbles. *Ex.* The tops of the waves broke into white *foam.*

foe *n.* Enemy. *Ex.* Richard Coeur de Lion never feared a *foe.*

fog *n.* Thick mist. *Ex.* Ships cannot sail safely in fog.

fold (1) *n.* A part of a field enclosed by fences for holding sheep. (2) *v.* To bend one part over another, as one folds a piece of cloth or a sheet of paper.

folk (foke) *n.* People. We speak of old folk, country folk, etc.

follow (*fol*-o) *v.* To come or go after. *Ex. Follow* him. Day *follows* night. A *follower* is one who follows or supports or has the same beliefs.

following *n.* A body of followers. Being next after ; succeeding.

folly *n.* Lack of sense ; foolishness. *Ex.* It was *folly* to give up his job before he had found another one.

fond *adj.* (*a*) Loving. *Ex.* A *fond* mother. To be fond of is to enjoy or have a liking for. *Ex.* I am *fond* of walking. I have a *fondness* for children.

food *n.* Anything that is eaten by people or animals as nourishment. *Ex.* Grass is *food* for cows but not for men.

fool (1) *n.* (*a*) A stupid silly person. *Ex.* He was a *fool* to quarrel with his best friend. It was *foolish* of him. (*b*) Cooked fruit mixed with cream. Ex. Gooseberry *fool.* (2) *v.* To deceive. *Ex.* He was completely *fooled*, and believed all the stranger said.

foolish *adj.* Void of understanding; acting without judgment or discretion; silly; ridiculous; unwise.

foot *n.* The lower extremity of the leg; that on which a thing stands; the base; infantry; a measure of twelve inches, a measure of syllables in a verse. *v.* To dance; to tread to measure or music, to ship; to walk; to dance; to trip; to add a foot to; a game played with such a ball.

football *n.* An inflated leather ball to be driven by the foot; a game played with such a ball.

footsteps *n.* A track; the mark of the foot; vestige; example; course.

for In the place of; because of; in favour of; toward; during; in the quest of; according to; as far as; notwithstanding; in proportion to.

forbid *v.* To order a person not to do something. *Ex. Forbid* him to bathe in the river till he can swim. That is *forbidden*. A person who looks cross and unpleasant is said to have a *forbidding* look.

force (1) *n.* (*a*) Strength. *Ex.* He had to use *force* to turn the key in the lock. (*b*) A group of men trained in special duties such as the Police Force, or the forces engaged in a battle. (2) *v.* To make a person do something. *Ex.* He *forced* the small boy to give up the ball.

forehead (*for*-hed) *n.* The front part of the head above the eyes. The brow.

foreign (*for*-en) *adj.* Belonging to another nation. A foreign man is called a *foreigner*, and he speaks a foreign language.

foreman *n.* The chief man either of a jury or of a group of workmen.

foremost *adj.* The first or most important. *Ex.* The Captain's *foremost* thought was for the safety of the passengers.

forenoon *n.* The part of the day before noon or from morning to noon.

forest *n.* An extensive wood; a district devoted to the purposes of the chase. A tract once a royal forest. Relating to a forest.

forester *n.* One who watches a forest and preserves the game. One who manages the timber on an estate; an inhabitant of a forest.

forever *adj.* At all times; through endless ages; eternally.

forget (**forgot, forgotten**) *v.* To lose the remembrance of; to slight; to neglect.

forge *n.* The blacksmith's fire in which he heats his tools. *Ex.* Children like to watch the blacksmith at his *forge*.

forgive *v.* To bear no ill-will when someone has harmed you.

Ex. You must *forgive* Jack for losing your ball. He did not mean to do it. You must be *forgiving* and show *forgiveness*.

fork *n.* One of the tools or implements we use at meal-times. It has a handle and usually three or four prongs. Very large forks are used for turning over hay in the fields. When a road divides in two, like the letter Y, that is called a fork. The road [forks (*v.*) at that point.

form (1) *n.* (*a*) Shape. *Ex.* The pen-holder was in the *form* of a feather. (*b*) A class. *Ex* John is now in the Third *Form*. (c) A seat. *Ex.* We all sat on a *form*. (*d*) A printed paper. *Ex.* We were all told to write our age and birthday on the *form*. (2) *v.* To make or plan. *Ex.* We mean to *form* a sketching club.

former *adj.* Earlier; having happened before. *Ex.* Aunt Mary's *former* visit was remembered with pleasure.

forsake *v.* To leave, sometimes to neglect. *Ex.* The bird was seen to *forsake* its young in the nest. They were *forsaken*.

fort *n.* A place fortified for purposes of war.

forth *v.* Forward in place or order; out into public view; abroad; onward in time.

fortune *n.* (*a*) A large amount of money. *Ex.* When he died he left a great *fortune* to his son. (*b*) The kind of luck one has in one's life. We may have good *fortune*, and then we are *fortunate*. If we have ill fortune, we are *unfortunate*.

forty *adj.* & *n.* Four times ten.

forward (1) *v.* To send on in advance. *Ex.* I will *forward* my luggage. Please *forward* this letter. (2) *adv.* Towards what is in front. *Ex.* He stepped *forward*. He looked *forward* to Christmas.

foul *adj.* Dirty. *Ex.* The water in the pond was *foul*. It had a *foul* smell.

found *v.* To begin something such as a building, a business, or a church. *Ex.* This hospital was *founded* 200 years ago. The *foundation* of the hospital has been a great blessing to the town. The foundation of a building also means the part below the ground on which the rest is built. If one person supplies most of the money for the building of the hospital, school, etc., he is known as the *founder*.

fountain *n.* A spout or jet of water coming from a pipe and falling into a basin. *Ex.* The *fountains* at Versailles are famous. A *fountain-pen* is one that has a supply of ink inside itself which flows to the nib while the pen is being used.

four *adj.* & *n.* Twice two; three and one.

fourteen *adj.* & *n.* Four and ten.

fourteenth *adj.* The ordinal of fourteen. *n.* One of fourteen equal parts.

fourth *adj.* One of four equal parts.

fowl *n.* Bird, especially of the kinds we eat., such as chicken, duck, etc. *Ex.* *Fowls* are often kept in back gardens.

fox *n.* A wild animal, of the dog family, reddish-brown in colour. It eats rabbits and fowls and is hunted in England for sport.

fragrant (*fray*-grant) *adj.* Having a sweet smell. *Ex.* These

roses are *fragrant*. They have a delightful *fragrance*.

frail (frale) *adj*. Not at all strong. *Ex*. The boat was too *frail* to go out in such a sea. Grandmother is becoming very *frail* in her old age.

frame *v*. To surround by a border, as one frames a picture. *Ex*. This picture is *framed* in oak. It is in an oak *frame* (*n*.).

free *adj*. Being at liberty ; open; clear ; to exempt ; to absolve from some charge.

freedom *n*. The state of being free, having liberty *Ex*. Britain is a land of *freedom*, in which everyone can express his opinions without fear.

freeze *v*. To turn into ice, as water does when cold enough. Then it is *frozen*.

French (french) *adj*. Belonging to France, as the French language, or the French villages.

freight *n*. The cargo of a ship, lading hire of a ship ; charge for the transportation of goods. *v*. To load with goods ; to hire for carrying goods.

frequent (*free*-kwent) (1) *adj*. Happening often. *Ex*. There are *frequent* buses to Waterloo. (2) *v*. (free-*kwent*). To visit often. *Ex*. We all *frequent* the Park on fine Saturday afternoons.

fret *v*. To worry. *Ex*. Mother could not help *fretting* when Tommy was ill. To be *fretful* is to be inclined to complain ; to be hard to please. *Ex* Baby was *fretful* when she was cutting her last tooth.

Friday (*fry*-day) *n*. The sixth day of the week.

friend *n*. One attached to another by affection ; a favour ; one who is propitious.

friendly *adj*. Like or becoming a friend ; kind ; favourable ; disposed to peace.

friendship, *n*. Intimacy resting on mutual esteem ; kindness ; aid.

fright (frite) *n*. Sudden fear. *Ex*. You gave me a *fright*. You *frightened* me. A thing that is frightening is *frightful* *Ex*. There was a *frightful* thunderstorm.

frog *n*. A small animal with webbed feet like a duck's : it lives partly on land and partly in ponds.

from Out of the neighbourhood or presence of ; by reason of denoting source, distance, absence, departure, etc.

front *n*. The forehead ; the whole face, the fore part ; to face ; to look. To supply with a front.

frontier (*frunt*-e-er) *n*. The dividing line between two countries. *Ex*. *Frontiers* are often guarded by soldiers.

frost *n*. Great coldness of the air, which turns water into ice, and makes it freeze. This happens in *frosty* weather.

frown *v*. To show displeasure or anger by drawing down the eyebrows. *Ex*. Father *frowned* when he saw the toast was burned.

fruit *n*. whatever of a vegetable nature is of use to man or animals ; the reproductive produce of a plant. Offspring, effect ; outcome. *v*. To produce fruit.

fruitful (*froot*-ful) *adj*. Producing a good crop of fruit, corn, etc. A teacher's work among children can also be fruitful, producing good results in character and education.

fruitless *adj*. The opposite of fruitful—having no good results ; useless. *Ex*. Drake's first attempts to sail round the Horn were *fruitless*.

fuel (*few*-el) *n*. Material for burning to produce heat, such as coal, wood or peat.

fulfil *v*. To carry out (a duty) or do what is required. *Ex*. The gardener *fulfils* his duty faithfully, and always *fulfils* his promises too.

full *adj* Having all it can contain; abounding ; crowded ; entire ; strong ; loud ; clear. *n*. Complete measure ; the highest state or degree.

fully *adj*. With fullness ; amply; perfectly.

fun *n*. sportive acts or words ; merriment.

funny *adj*. Making fun ; droll ; comical.

fund *n*. An amount of money set apart for a special purpose. *Ex*. A *fund* was collected to help the blind people in our village.

funeral (*few*-ner-al) *n*. The ceremony of burying the dead.

fur *n*. The short soft hair of such animals as the squirrel or the seal. Women's coats are sometimes made of fur, and the man who sells is a *furrier*.

furious (*few*-re-us) *adj*. Very angry. *Ex*. Father was *furious* when he heard that the man next door had kicked our dog. He was in a *fury*.

furnace *n*. A closed fireplace such as is used in factories, ships, and railway engines. *Ex*. The stoker was busy shovelling coke into the *furnace*.

furnish *v*. To supply, especially with *furniture* for a room, house or office. The furniture of a house includes tables, chairs and beds, which make it comfortable to live in. *Ex*. Mother is buying new *furniture* for the dining-room. She is going to *furnish* it very nicely.

furniture *n*. That with which anything is furnished ; equipment; outfit ; movable wooden articles in a house.

furrier *n*. A dealer in furs, one who dresses furs.

further *adj*. More in advance, besides ; farther, more distant ; farther, *v*. To help forward ; to advance.

fury *n*. Rage ; a violent rushing; frenzy, a goddess of vengeance, in mythology ; *a*. Violent woman.

future (*few*-tewr) (1) *n*. The time that is coming. *Ex*. We must put aside some money for our needs in the *future*. (2) *adj*. *Ex* James's *future* career depends on how well he does at school.

gain (1) *n* What has been won or obtained. There is an old proverb that says : There are no gains without pains. (2) *v*. To obtain or win. *Ex*. John *gained* a high place in the class by his hard work.

gale *n*. A strong wind. *Ex*. The *gale* drove many seagulls inland.

gallant (1) *adj*. Brave. *Ex*. The crowd cheered the fireman's *gallant* rescue of the child. They admired his *gallantry*. (2) *n*. Gay young gentlemen used to be called gallants.

gallery *n*. (*a*) A long narrow passage built above a room or hall so that from it one can look down into the room. That kind of gallery is often to be seen in a church or a theatre. (*b*) A hall in which paintings are displayed, such as the National Gallery.

galley (*gal*-e) *n*. (*a*) A small ship of olden days, rowed by oars. (*b*) The kitchen of a ship. *Ex*. The *galley* fire could not be lighted

owing to the storm, and the sailors had no hot food for two days.

gallon *n.* A measure for liquids. A gallon is equal to eight pints. *Ex.* Many *gallons* of milk were lost when the lorry overturned.

gallop *v.* When a horse is moving as fast as it can, it gallops. *Ex.* We saw a rider having a *gallop* (*n.*) over the Downs.

game (1) *n.* (*a*) Amusement, play, such as football, musical chairs, ludo. (*b*) Certain animals or birds that are hunted for sport or for food, such as the hare and the pheasant. *Ex.* You can see plenty of *game* in the shops at Christmas. (2) *adj.* Brave, plucky. *Ex.* Tommy is not very strong but he is always *game*, and never wants to give in.

garage (*gar*-ahj) *n.* A building where a car is housed, or a repair shop where cars are attended to. *Ex.* The headmaster's house has a *garage* built on to it.

garbage *v.* Waste matter ; offal.

garden *n.* A piece of ground appropriated to the cultivation of plants ; a rich, well cultivated tract ; a delightful spot. *adj.* Pertaining to or produced in a garden. *v.* To lay out and to cultivate a garden.

gardener (*gar*-den-er) *n.* One who works in a garden, planting, digging and weeding.

garland *n.* A wreath of flowers or leaves, usually worn on the head. *Ex.* The native Prince appeared, wearing a *garland* of flowers.

garment *n.* Any article of clothing. *Ex.* Tommy and Susan wore their oldest *garments* at the seaside.

garter *n.* A band worn round the leg to hold the stocking up.

gas *n.* An elastic aeriform fluid ; coalgas, used for giving light ; any similar substance.

gasoline *n.* liquid got from petroleum and used for heating, etc.

gate *n.* A large door or entrance ; a frame of timber, iron, etc., closing an entrance ; a way or passage of water through a dam, lock, etc.

gather *v.* To bring together ; to collect ; to acquire ; to pucker ; to deduce by inference. To assemble ; to increase. *n.* A fold in cloth, made by drawing ; a pucker.

gathering *n.* A number of people who have come together for some purpose such as a meeting or a party. *Ex.* There was a great *gathering* of country people at the Cattle Show.

gay *adj.* Cheerful, merry, lighthearted. (Sometimes we say that flowers look gay.) *Ex.* Mary answered me *gaily*. She is very fond of *gaiety*. That means she likes being gay and enjoys amusements.

gaze *v.* To look long and steadily at something. *Ex.* When Baby is in her pram she *gazes* up at the sky.

gem (*jem*) *n.* A jewel, such as a diamond.

general (1) *n.* A soldier of very high rank. *Ex.* The Duke of Wellington was a famous *general*. (2) *adj.* Usual, or referring to a number of different things. *Ex.* As a *general* rule Mother gets up at seven o'clock. A *general* store is a shop that sells many different kinds of things.

generation (jen-er-*ay*-shon) *n.* People of about the same age who are living at the same time are of

the same generation. Their children belong to the next, or younger, generation. Many families have photographs of three generations, showing children, parents, and grandparents.

generous (*jen*-er-us) *adj.* Kind-hearted and willing to give things to other people *Ex.* Aunt Mary is very *generous* and gives us lovely presents on our birthdays. She shows great *generosity*.

genial (*jee*-ne-al) *adj.* Pleasant and cheerful. *Ex.* The headmaster has a *genial* way of talking to the boys.

genius (*jee*-ne-us) *n.* An extremely clever brain, or the person who has such a brain.

gentle *adj.* Well-born ; refined in manners ; mild ; placid ; not rough, violent or wild ; soothing. *n.* A person of good birth.

gentleman *n.* A man of good social position ; technically any man above the rank of yeoman, comprehending nobleman ; man of good breeding or of high honour ; a polite equivalent for man.

gently *v.* Softly ; meekly ; mildly ; with tenderness.

geography (je-*og*-ra-fe) *n.* The description of the mountains, rivers, cities, etc., that are on the surface of the earth. *Ex.* No one can learn *geography* without using maps as well as books.

germ (jerm) *n.* A very tiny living thing (too small to be seen) that can cause disease.

get (got, got) *v.* To obtain ; to gain ; to reach ; to beget ; to learn to induce ; to arrive at any place or state by degrees ; to become ; to make gain.

ghost (gohst) *n.* The spirit of a dead person returning to earth. This often happens in stories but not in fact.

giant (*jy*-ant) *n.* A very, very tall person. *Ex.* You may remember the old story of Jack-the-*giant*-killer.

giddy *adj.* Dizzy.

gift *n.* Something that has been given. *Ex.* Susan had some nice *gifts* on her holiday.

gifted *adj.* Clever. Able to do some things very well. *Ex.* He is a *gifted* boy, and it is a pity he cannot stay longer at school.

gild *v.* To cover with gold or gold paint. *Ex.* Some picture frames are *gilded*, and then we say they are *gilt* frames.

girdle *n.* A belt to go round the waist.

girl *n.* A female child ; young woman.

give (gave, given) *v.* to bestow ; to deliver ; to impart ; to yield ; to afford ; to utter ; to show ; to send forth ; to devote ; to pledge ; to allow ; to ascribe ; to make gifts ; to yield to pressure ; to recede.

gist (jist) *n.* The main point of a statement. *Ex.* I have not time to tell you all he said, but the *gist* of it is that you are to go to London with him on Monday.

glacier (*glas*-yer) *n.* A mass of frozen snow moving slowly down the side of a high mountain. *Ex.* When a *glacier* comes to an end in the sea, great pieces break off and float away as icebergs.

glad *adj.* Affected with pleasure ; pleased ; cheerful ; imparting pleasure. *v.* To make glad ; to gladden.

glade *n.* An open space in a wood or forest.

glance *n. & v.* A quick look (or to take a quick look) at something. *Ex.* I have only just *glanced* at his letter.

glare (1) *n.* Light so bright as to be dazzling. *Ex* The *glare* of the sunshine on the sea made my eyes ache (2) *v.* To stare angrily *Ex.* The little boys were *glaring* at each other as if they meant to fight.

glass *n.* A hard transparent substance; a small drinking vessel of glass; a mirror; quantity of liquor that a glass vessel contains; a lens; a telescope; a barometer; spectacles made of glass; vitreous.

gleam (1) *n.* A small beam or ray of light. *Ex.* A *gleam* broke through the stormy clouds. (2) *v* To shine. *Ex.* The sea *gleamed* in the sunlight.

glide *v.* To move easily and smoothly. *Ex.* The skaters were *gliding* gracefully over the ice.

glitter *v.* To sparkle with light. *Ex.* The stars *glittered* in the frosty air. Aunt Susan wore a *glittering* necklace.

globe *n.* A ball. The earth, or a model of the earth. *Ex.* He has travelled all over the *globe.* A large ball on which a map is printed representing the whole world. *Ex.* Father says he learned most of his geography from a *globe.*

gloom *n.* Darkness or unhappiness. *Ex.* The house seemed to be filled with *gloom.* It was *gloomy.* November is often a *gloomy* month, with fog and bad weather.

glory (*glore-e*) *n.* Great praise or honour or fame. *Ex.* The early Christians won *glory* by refusing to give up their religion even when tortured. They set us a *glorious* example. We are taught to *glorify* God—that is to give Him praise and honour.

glove *n.* دستانہ

glow (*gloh*) *n.* (*a*) A low but steady light coming from heat, not from a flame. *Ex* You can see a *glow* coming from cinders after the fire has died down. (*b*) A feeling of warmth, such as you get after taking exercise in cold weather. *Glowing* means shining with heat—or you might be *glowing* with happiness.

go (went, gone) *v.* To move; to proceed; to depart; to be about to do; to circulate; to tend; to be guided; to be alienated or sold; to reach; to avail; to conduce; to die; to fare; to become.

goal (gole) *n.* The thing one is aiming to reach, either in a serious matter such as one's work, or in a game. *Ex.* In football the *goal* is the pair of posts between which the ball has to be kicked.

goat *n.* A ruminant quadruped with long hair and horns.

God *n.* The Supreme Being; **god** (with a small *g*) a divinity; a deity.

gold *n.* A precious metal of a bright yellow colour; money; something pleasing or valuable; a bright yellow colour; made or consisting of gold.

golden *adj.* Made of gold; like gold; splendid; most valuable; auspicious.

good *adj.* The opposite of bad; wholesome; useful; fit; virtuous; valuable; benevolent; clever; adequate; valid; able to fulfil engagements; considerable; full or complete; immaculate. *n.*

What is good or desirable; advantage ; welfare.

good-bye *n.* A salutation at parting ; farewell.

goodly *adj.* Good-looking ; handsome ; graceful ; desirable.

goodness *n.* State or quality of being good ; excellence, virtue, etc., a euphemism for God.

goose *n.* A swimming bird larger than the duck ; a tailor's smoothing iron ; a silly person.

gorgeous (*gor*-jus) *adj.* Magnificent. Having a very fine appearance. *Ex.* There was a *gorgeous* sunset last night.

gospel *n.* The Gospels are the first four books of the New Testament, describing the life and teachings of Jesus Christ.

govern *v.* To rule. One who rules over part of the land belonging to his country is a *governor*. A lady who teaches children in their own homes is a *governess*. The *government* consists of the principal men in Parliament, who rule the country.

gown *n.* A woman's dress. A loose cloak worn on certain occasions by members of universities, ministers, judges and lawyers.

grab *v.* Snatch. *Ex.* You must not *grab* a piece of cake without asking for it.

grace *n.* (*a*) Divine love or mercy. *Ex.* The old man said he had lived to be eighty, by the *grace* of God. (*b*) A short prayer of thanks before or after a meal. *Ex.* Mother says *grace* when father is not at home to do it. (*c*) Beauty of appearance or movement. *Ex.* Mrs. A. gave away the prizes with great *grace*. She was very *graceful*. She was also *gracious*, which means kindly, pleasant, and not proud.

grade *v.* To arrange in groups or classes, which are called grades (*n.*), according to ability, quality, size or price.

gradual (*grad*-yew-al) *adj.* Going step by step. *Ex.* The improvement in mother's health was so *gradual* that we scarcely noticed it. But *gradually* she got better and better.

graduate *v.* To divide into regular intervals or degrees ; to mark with such ; to arrange by grades ; to confer a university degree on ; to reduce to a certain consistency by evaporation. *v.* To receive a university degree ; to change gradually. *n.* One who has received a degree of a university.

grammar *n.* Grammar teaches us the right way to use words when speaking and writing. We have to learn to speak and write *grammatical* (that is, correct) English.

grand *adj.* Splendid, magnificent. *Ex.* The Duke looked *grand* in his Naval uniform. A Royal wedding is a scene of great *grandeur* (*grand*-yur).

grandfather *n.* A father's or mother's father.

grandmother *n.* The mother of one's father or mother.

grant (1) *n.* An allowance or gift of money for a special purpose. *Ex.* The Government helped small fishing villages by giving them a *grant* for the building of safe harbours for their boats. (2) *v.* To give or agree to. *Ex.* He *granted* my request.

grape *n.* A sweet fruit which grows on a climbing plant called a vine.

grasp *v.* To take hold of firmly. *Ex.* If you *grasp* a nettle firmly it will not sting you. We can also grasp the meaning of a lesson. When we say a person is *grasping* we mean that he is selfish or greedy.

grass *n.* Herbage ; any plant of the family to which belong the grain yielding and pasture plants. *v.* To cover with grass.

grasshopper *n.* A small, greenish, jumping insect that is usually found in long grass.

grateful *adj.* Thankful for kindness. *Ex.* The campers were *grateful* to the farmer for the use of his field. They expressed their *gratitude* to him.

gratitude *n.* Quality of being grateful ; an emotion of the heart ; excited by a favour received ; thankfulness.

grave (1) *n.* Place in which the dead are buried. *Ex.* We placed some flowers on the *grave*. The stone erected above a grave is a *gravestone*. The large public garden in which the graves are dug is a *graveyard*. (2) *adj.* Serious or important. *Ex.* There was grave news in mother's letter this morning.

gray *adj.* Of the colour of hair whitened by age ; white with a mixture of black ; having gray hairs. *n.* A gray colour ; a gray animal, as a horse ; early morning twilight.

graze *v.* To feed on grass. *Ex.* The cows were put out to *graze*.

grease (greece) *n.* Melted fat. *Ex.* There is too much *grease* in the pan. The soup looks *greasy*.

great (grate) *adj.* Large or important or distinguished. *Ex.* A great crowd, a great man, a great success. We read of the *greatness* of Iqbal.

greedy *adj.* Too fond of eating, and inclined to take too much food, especially when there is something very nice. No one admires a greedy child, who eats *greedily*, who shows *greed* or *greediness*.

green *adj.* Having the colour of growing plants ; verdant ; fresh ; containing its natural juices ; unripe ; young ; easily imposed upon. *n.* A green colour ; a grassy plain or plot. *v.* To make or grow green.

greet *v.* To welcome kindly. *Ex.* Aunt Mary *greeted* me warmly. She gave me a very kind *greeting*.

grief *n.* Sorrow. To feel sorrow is to *grieve*. *Ex.* Try not to *grieve* too much about the puppy that died.

grieve *v. See* grief.

grin (1) *n.* A wide smile that shows the teeth. (2) *v.* To smile in this way. *Ex.* He did not answer me, but only *grinned*.

grind (grynd) *v.* To crush into powder, or to make sharp by rubbing. *Ex.* You may *grind* coffee, or you may *grind* an axe to sharpen it. When you have done this, you have *ground* it.

grinder *n.* One who or that which grinds ; a molar tooth.

grip *v.* & *n.* *See* grasp.

groan (1) *n.* The sound made by a person in pain. (2) *v.* To make this sound. *Ex.* The injured man was *groaning*.

grocer (*gro*-ser) *n.* A shopkeeper who sells tea, sugar and flour. These are *groceries*, and he is in the *grocery* trade.

gross (groce) *n.* Twelve dozen. A gross of eggs would be 144 eggs.

ground *n.* Earth, soil, land. A piece of land used for some purpose such as playing games on it. Past tense of grind.

group (groop) *n.* A number of people or things who have some interest in the same thing, or are alike in some way. *Ex.* A group of miners, a group of houses.

grove *n.* A small wood. *Ex.* There is a *grove* of fir trees half-way up the hill.

grow (grew grown) *v.* To be augmented by natural process; to increase; to make progress; to become; to accrue; to swell. To raise from the soil; to produce.

growth *n.* The act of growing, or the amount that has been grown. *Ex.* John's *growth* in the last year has been surprising. There has been great *growth* in the wheat-fields since the rain.

guarantee (*gar*-an-*tee*) *v.* To promise earnestly, and to see that the promise is kept. *Ex.* The father *guaranteed* that his boy would work well.

guard (gard) (1) *v.* To keep safe or defend from danger. (2) *n.* One who does this, or a group of men who do it. *Ex.* The *guard* on a train who looks after the passengers or the Home *Guard* which existed in the 1939—1945 war. A fire-guard is a screen placed round a fire to prevent accidents. A *guardian* is one who takes care of a person or persons.

guess (gess) *v.* To state an opinion without knowing enough of the necessary facts. You might guess the number of people who were in a cinema. You might make a guess (*n.*) at the number. The number would only be *guess-work*.

guest (gest) *n.* A visitor or friend invited to a meal, or to stay. People who stay in hotels are also called guests; and small boarding-houses are called *guest*-houses.

guide (gide) *v.* To show the way, or give advice as to the right thing to do. You could be guided through a Museum or an Exhibition; or you could be guided in your reading or your school work. One who guides is a guide (*n.*). A book describing a place and giving advice on what to see is called a *guide*-book.

guilt (gilt) *n.* The fact of having committed a crime or broken a law. *Ex.* His *guilt* was proved. He was proved to be *guilty*.

gulf *n.* A large bay, running far into the land, such as the Gulf of Mexico.

gum *n.* (*a*) The flesh in which the teeth are set. (*b*) A sticky liquid used for fastening pieces of paper together. There is gum on the back of postage-stamps. We can gum (*v.*) the stamps on to envelopes.

gun *n.* Any species of firearm.

gymnasium (jim-*nay*-ze-um) *n.* The place where physical exercises (called *gymnastics*) are done.

habit *n.* When you do the same thing in the same way very often it is said to be a habit. *Ex.* It is a good *habit* to brush your teeth every night before going to bed.

hail (1) *n.* Frozen rain. *Ex.* There was a shower of *hail* this morning. The *hailstones* were quite large. (2) *v.* To call or signal to, or to greet. You can hail a taxi, or you can hail a friend.

hairdresser *n.* A barber.

hairpin *n.* .بالوں میں لگانے والا پن

half *n.* One part of a thing divided into two equal parts. *adj.* Consisting of a half *v.* In part, or in an equal part or degree.

hall (hawl) *n.* A large room in which meetings are held. There is a Town Hall in most of our towns.

halt (hawlt) (1) *n.* A stopping place, such as you see marked "Halt" on railways. You can say that you came to a halt, meaning that you stopped. (2) *v.* To stop. *Ex.* "*Halt* at Major Road Ahead."

ham *n.* Part of the leg of a pig, salted and dried in smoke.

hammer *n.* A tool for driving in nails.

hand *n.* The extremity of the arm consisting of the palm and fingers ; a measure of four inches ; *v.* To give with the hand ; to lead with the hand ; to conduct ; to handle. Used by the hand.

handful *n.* So much as the hand will grasp or hold a small quantity or number.

handkerchief (*hank*-er-chif) *n.* A small square of cotton or silk carried in the pocket for blowing the nose.

handle (1) *n.* The part of an article by which one holds it in the hand. *Ex.* The *handle* of a jug. (2) *v.* To touch or feel or move with the hands. *Ex.* You must *handle* this doll gently, or its head may come off.

handsome (*han*-sum) *adj.* Good-looking. *Ex.* Peter has grown up into a *handsome* young man.

handwriting *n.* The writing peculiar to each person ; any writing.

handy *adj.* Useful, convenient. *Ex.* It is very *handy* having a grocer's shop so near.

hang *v.* To suspend ; to cause to droop ; to fit so as to allow of free motion ; to put to death by suspending by the neck, to linger, to lean ; to have a steep declivity.

hangar (*hang*-er) *n.* A shed in which aeroplanes are kept.

happen *n.* To come by chance, to occur.

happily *v.* In a happy manner.

happiness *n.* State of being happy ; enjoyment of pleasure ; good luck.

happy *adj.* Being in the enjoyment of agreeable sensations from the possession of good ; fortunate; propitious well suited.

harbour *n.* A shelter ; a haven for ships. *v.* To take shelter ; to lodge or abide for a time.

hard *adj.* Not easily penetrated or separated ; firm ; difficult to understand ; severe ; unjust ; harsh ; stiff.

harden *v.* To make or become hard, or strong. *Ex.* The toffee has *hardened* nicely. Father says that cold baths would *harden* us all, and make us stronger.

hard-hearted *adj.* Cruel, not sympathetic. *Ex.* That woman is very *hard-hearted*. She never likes to see children enjoying themselves, and she would never give a piece of bread to a beggar.

hardly *adv.* Scarcely, not quite *Ex.* Mother had *hardly* finished breakfast when the doctor called.

hardship *n.* Something that is hard to bear. *Ex.* Fishermen have to endure *hardships* when out in their little boats in winter.

hardware *n.* Metal things seen

in ironmongers' shops, such as saucepans, nails and buckets.

hark *v.* To listen, to lend the ear.

harm (1) *n.* Injury, damage. *Ex.* The crops suffered little *harm* from the wind. (2) *v.* To injure or damage. *Ex.* The wind did not *harm* the crop much.

harmony *n.* The just adaptation of parts to each other ; musical concord ; agreement ; peace and friendship.

harness *n.* Armour ; furniture of a carriage or draught horse. *v.* To dress in armour ; to put harness on.

harp *v.* To keep on referring to the same thing, usually something unpleasant. *Ex.* The old woman *harped* on and on about her neighbour's cat stealing the milk.

harsh *adj.* Rough, or hard-hearted and unkind. *Ex.* He has a *harsh* voice, but not a *harsh* nature. He is really very kind. He would not treat anyone *harshly*.

harvest *n.* The gathering in of ripe crops on farms. *Ex.* We expect a good *harvest* this year. The *harvesters* will have to work very hard to *harvest* (*v.*) all the crops.

haste (hayst) *n.* Quickness, hurry. *Ex.* Do not answer in *haste*. Take time to think it over. Do not be *hasty*. To move quickly is to *hasten* (*hays*-n). *Ex.* She *hastened* to put the teapot out of baby's reach.

hat *n.* A covering for the head.

hate (1) *n.* Great dislike. (2) *v.* To feel great dislike or *hatred* (*hay*-tred). *Ex.* Tommy seems to *hate* the sea, but he will enjoy it when he is older. We should try not to feel *hatred* for anyone, but to find something good in everyone.

haughty (*haw*-te) *adj.* Proud, disdainful. *Ex.* The duchess in this story is very *haughty* and treats other people as if they were not worth speaking to.

haul (1) *v.* To pull. *Ex.* The sailors *hauled* in the rope. (2) *n.* To get a good haul is to get a lot. Fishermen are said to get a good haul when they catch a lot of fish.

have *v.* To possess, to accept ; to hold ; to bring forth.

hawk *n.* A bird with a sharp beak that attacks and kills other birds or small animals.

hay *n.* Dried grass used as food for cattle in winter.

he (وہ مرد).

head *n.* The anterior part of animals ; uppermost part of the human body ; seat of the brain ; a chief ; first place ; top ; chief part. *v.* To form a head ; to be directed, as a ship.

headache *n.* Pain int he head.

heal *v.* (*a*) To cure. *Ex.* Mother always seems able to *heal* our troubles. (*b*) To become healthy. *Ex.* This scratch is *healing* nicely now.

health (health) *n.* When one has no sickness or disease one is said to be in good health. One is *healthy*.

heap *n.* A mass ; large quantity ; to raise in a heap ; to mass ; to pile.

hear *v.* To perceive by the ear ; to listen ; to obey ; to regard, to try in a court of law ; to receive by report.

hearsay *n.* Something one has heard. Gossip. *Ex.* People say the Queen is coming to visit our

town, but I think it is only *hearsay*.

heart (hart) *n.* The organ of the body which pumps the blood through the whole body.

hearty *adj.* Warm; cordial; healthy; having a keen appetite large; to satisfaction.

heat *n.* The sensation produced by bodies that are hot; hot air; hot weather: high temperature; degree of temperature. *v.* To make hot, to warm with passion or desire; to rouse into action.

heathen (*hee*-then) *n.* One who does not worship God, and has no religion of any kind.

heaven (hev-en) *n.* The sky.

heavenly *adj.* Pertaining to heaven; divine; inhabiting heaven; enchanting; in a heavenly manner.

heavy (hev-e) *adj.* Difficult to move or lift. *Ex.* The box was much too *heavy* for Tommy to carry.

hedge *n.* A row of bushes round a garden or field.

heed *v.* & *n.* To pay attention to. *Ex.* You must *heed* your mother's words. You must give *heed* to them.

heel *n.* The back part of the foot, shoe or stocking.

height (hyte) *n.* If a building or a tree is 20 feet high, we say it is 20 feet in height. 20 feet is its height. If we make a wall, or anything else, higher, we *heighten* it. A high place is also called a height.

heir (air) *n.* The person who has a right to all that belonged to someone who died. When a rich man dies, leaving money, land, and perhaps a title his eldest son is usually his heir. If he had no son, his daughter could be his *heiress* (*air*-ess).

hell *n.* The place or state of punishment for the wicked after death; the abode of the devil and his angels;

hello *int.* (هيلو).

hen *n.* The female of the domestic fowl; any femal bird.

help *n.* To lend strength or means towards effecting of a purpose; to aid; to relieve; to remedy; to prevent; to avoid; to lend aid; Aid; remedy, an assistant.

helpful *adj.* Kind and willing to help.

helpless *adj.* Not able to help oneself. *Ex.* Grandmother is rather *helpless* now, since her last illness.

hence *ad.* (*a*) For this reason. *Ex.* The roads were blocked by snow; *hence* the great delay in traffic of all kinds. (*b*) From this place. *Ex.* He went *hence.* But the word is not often used in this sense nowadays.

henceforth *adv.* From this time onwards. *Ex. Henceforth* you must always let me see your homework.

her *n.* The possessive and objective case of she. when the possessive is used without a noun it becomes hers.

herd *n.* A group of animals that live together. We keep sheep and cows in nerds, but some wild animals, such as elephants and buffaloes, live naturally in herds.

here *v.* In this place, at this point; hither.

hereafter (heer-*af*-ter) *adv.* (*a*) In the future, after this. *Ex. Hereafter* I will be more careful.

(*b*) In the next life, after death. *Ex.* Christians always hope to meet their dear ones in the *hereafter*.

hereby *v.* By this ; close by, near.

hereforth *adj.* Before or up to the present ; formerly.

hero *n.* A man of distinguished valour ; the person who has the principal share in some exploit or in a play, novel, etc. Feminine form is *heroine*.

heroic *adj.* Pertaining to a hero or heroes ; intrepid and noble ; reciting achievement of heroes, etc.

herselfy The emphatic and reflexive from of she and her.

hew *v.* Hewed or cut with an axe, etc., to cut ; to hack ; to make smooth, as stone ; to shape.

high *adj.* Having a great extent from base to summit ; elevated ; lofty ; far above the earth ; elvated in rank or office ; dignified ; proud ; violent ; solemn ; strong ; vivid. *v.* In a high manner ; to a great altitude or degree ; eminently ; greatly.

highway *n.* A public road ; direct course ; road ; train of action.

hill *n.* A natural elevation of less size than a mountain.

him The objective case of he.

hind *n.* The female of the red-deer or stag ; a farm servant, a rustic, a backward : back ; pertaining to the backward part.

hinder (*hin*-der) *v.* To keep back or delay. *Ex.* Our bus was *hindered* by meeting a large herd of cows on the road. Anything that hinders us is a *hindrance*.

hinge *n.* A fastening or joint, usually made of metal, on which a door or a lid of a box opens and shuts.

hint *v.* To suggest in a roundabout way. *Ex.* Mother *hinted* that we might soon be getting a pleasant surprise, but would not tell us what it would be. She only gave us a *hint* (*n.*).

hip *n.* The fleshy projecting part of the thigh ; the haunch ; the joint of the thigh. the fruit of the dog rose : hip, hip, hurrah ! The signal to cheer.

hire *v.* To procure for temporary use, at a certain price ; to engage in service for a stipulated reward ; to let, to lease. *n.* Price paid for temporary use of anything ; recompense for personal service ; wages ; pay.

his *pr.* (اس کا).

hiss *v.* To blow through the teeth making the sound of "S" as a sign of dislike. It is sometimes done in a theatre if the funny man is not funny enough.

history *n.* The story of events that have happened in the life of a nation. *Ex.* Many interesting books have been written on the *History* of England. Many exciting *historical* novels have been written too.

hit *v.* To strike or touch with some force ; to give a blow to ; not to miss ; to reach ; to light upon ; to suit. *v.* To strike ; to come in contact ; to reach the intended point ; to succeed. *n.* A stroke ; a blow ; a lucky chance ; happy thought or expression.

hither *v.* To this place. *adj.* Nearer, toward the person speaking.

hive *n.* A box or receptacle for honey-bees ; the bees inhabiting

a hive ; a place swarming with busy occupants. *v.* To collect into a hive ; to lay up in store. *v.* To take shelter together, to reside in a collective body.

hoe *n.* An instrument to cut up weeds and loosen the earth. *v.* To dig or clean with a hoe. *v.* To use a hoe.

hog *n.* A pig.

hold *n.* The space below the deck of a ship where its cargo is stored.

holdall *n.* A large bag into which all sorts of things can be put. *Ex.* Mother's luggage consisted of a trunk and a *holdall.*

holder *n.* One who or that which holds ; something by which a thing is held ; one who possesses.

holiday (*hol*-i-day) *n.* A time of rest from work. *Ex.* We are to have a *holiday* at the seaside this summer.

hollow (1) *adj.* Empty inside. *Ex.* The famous pyramids in Egypt are partly *hollow* and contain rooms in which kings were buried. (2) *n.* A little valley. *Ex.* We picnicked in a *hollow* of the Downs. (3) *v.* To make a groove or hollow place. *Ex.* Father *hollowed* out a piece of wood to make a little boat for me.

holy *adj.* Sacred. Connected with God or our worship of God. *Ex.* The Bible contains God's *Holy* Word.

home *n.* The house in which one lives. *Ex.* It is a great blessing to have a happy *home.* One who has no home is *homeless.*

honest (*on*-est) *adj.* An honest person is one who can be trusted ; one who would never lie or steal. We admire his *honesty.*

honey (*hun*-e) *n.* A very sweet syrup made by bees from the nectar that is in flowers (*see* nectar).

honour (*on*-er) *v.* & *n.* To honour a person is to show respect from him. To be a man of honour is to be a man of very good character, noble, generous and just. That is to be *honourable.*

hood *n.* A cloth covering for the head, often attached to a cloak. A baby's bonnet.

hoof *n.* The hard substance that covers the feet of horses and cattle.

hop *v.* & *n.* To jump on one foot. A hop is also a climbing plant from which beer is made.

hope *v.* To wish and believe that something good will happen. *Ex.* We *hope* Susan will soon be well again. We all have that *hope* (*n.*). We are *hopeful* about it. A person who has no hope is *hopeless.*

horizon (hor-*ry*-zon) *n.* The line where sea and sky (or earth and sky) seem to meet. *Ex.* A ship suddenly appeared on the *horizon.*

horn *n.* (*a*) The pointed bony growths on the heads of cows, goats, sheep, etc. (*b*) A musical instrument which used to be made of horn but is now usually made of brass.

horrible *adj.* Dreadful. Causing horror.

horror *n.* A feeling of great fear or shock *Ex.* It fills one with *horror* to see a serious accident, or to see a building being destroyed by fire

horse *n.* A well known quadruped, used for draft and carriage and in war ; the male animal ; cavalry ; a name of various things resembling or analogous to a horse.

v. To supply with a horse to carry on the back ; to bestride.

horseback *n.* The back of a horse.

horseman *n.* A rider on horseback ; a man skilled in riding ; a soldier who serves on horseback.

hose *n* (*a*) Stockings. One who sells stockings is a *hosier* (*ho*-si-er). (*b*) A long (usually rubber) tube for conveying water. A Fire Brigade uses long hoses. Petrol is put into motor-car tanks by means of a hose.

hospital *n.* A building in which people suffering from illness or accidents are taken care of by doctors and nurses.

host (hohst) *n.* (*a*) A great number. *Ex.* A *host* of enemies, a host of friends, a *host* of presents. (*b*) A man who receives and entertains guests. A woman who does so is a *hostess. Ex.* Our *host* and *hostess* gave us a delightful time.

hot *adj.* Having sensible heat, burning, glowing : easily exasperated ; vehement ; eager ; lustful ; biting ; pungent in taste.

hot-headed *adj.* Thoughtless and easily excited. *Ex.* A *hot-headed* person is inclined to be quarrelsome.

hot-tempered *adj.* Easily made angry ; quarrelsome.

hotel *n.* A superior house for strangers or travellers; an inn ; in France, a large mansion in town.

hour *n.* the twenty-fourth part of a day, consisting of sixty minutes ; the particular time of a day ; an appointed time.

house *n.* A building or erection for the habitation or use of man ; Any building or edifice; a dwelling, a household ; a family ; a legislative body of men. *v.* To put or receive into a house ; to shelter.

housewife *n.* The mistress of the house who looks after the cooking, washing and cleaning.

how *adj.* In what manner, to what extent ; For what reason ; by what means ; in what state.

however *v.* In whatever manner or degree ; in whatever state, yet ; still ; though.

howl *v.* & *n.* To cry loudly, usually in distress, but sometimes we speak of a howl of laughter.

huge (hewj) *adj.* Extremely large. *Ex.* There was a *huge* crowd at the station on Bank Holiday.

hum *n.* & *v.* The sound made by bees. To make a similar sound or to sing quietly with the lips closed. *Ex.* Father *hummed* a tune while he mended his bicycle.

human (*hew*-man) *adj.* Belonging to mankind. The human race means all human beings, all people everywhere, the whole of *humanity.*

humble *adj* (*a*) Modest, not proud. *Ex.* I think Mary is too *humble*, and thinks too little of herself. She has too much *humility.* (*b*) Living in a very simple way. *Ex.* They are *humble* folk, but very honest and respectable.

humour (*hew*-mor) *n.* Fun. To have a sense of humour is to be able to see the funny side of things and to make a joke—to be a *humorous* person. A humorous story is a funny story. A *humorist* is a person who tells or writes funny stories.

hundred *adj.* Ten times ten. *n.* The sum of ten times ten.

hungry *adj.* Feeling uneasiness from want of food ; having an eager desire ; lean, barren.

hunt *v.* To chase certain animals such as foxes and

deer. One who hunts is a *hunter*, and the horse ridden by a fox-hunter is called a hunter too. The *huntsman* is the man in charge of the fox-hounds.

hurl *v*. To throw with great force.

hurrah (hur-*rah*) or **hurray** (hur-*ray*) *interj*. An exclamation of approval or delight.

hurry *v*. To act quickly or make someone else do so. *Ex*. Do not *hurry* me, or I shall be sure to make a mistake. The doctor's visit yesterday was a *hurried* one. He was in a *hurry* (*n*.).

hurt *v*. A wound; bruise; injury; harm. *v*. To cause physical pain to; to bruise; to harm; to impair; to injure; to wound the feeling of.

husband *n*. A married man. He is the husband of the woman he married.

hush *n*. *or interj*. Silence, quietness. *Ex*. A *hush* came over the hall when the Headmaster rose to speak. Mother said "*Hush*."

husk *n*. The shell of nuts, beans and wheat.

hut *n*. A very small house or cabin, usually made of wood. In tropical countries huts are often made of branches of trees.

hymn (him) *n*. A song of praise, usually sung in a Church service.

ice *n*. Water which is frozen solid. A layer of moistened sugar on a cake is called *icing*. Very cold water or wind is said to be *icy* (*ice*-y).

idea (i-*dee*-a) *n*. A thought. *Ex*. I got an *idea* last night for Mother's birthday present.

ideal (i-*dee*-al) *adj*. The best that can be thought of. Perfect. *Ex*. The weather in June is often *ideal* for a holiday.

idle (*i*-dl) *adj*. When a person is inclined to do nothing at all, we say he is idle. *Ex*. Mother said, Mary ought to darn her stockings instead of being *idle* all evening. *Idleness* is a bad habit.

if Granting or supposing that, on condition that; whether; although.

ignorant (*ig*-nor-ant) *n*. Having no education or knowledge. *Ex*. The gardener's boy seems very *ignorant*, although he went to school. His *ignorance* will make it difficult for him to find a job.

ill *adj*. & *adv*. Not well, or badly. *Ex*. He became *ill* last week but his *illness* was slight. He is rather *ill-natured* bad-(tempered). She thought she had been *ill-used* (badly treated). That was an *ill-advised* (unwise) thing to do. He *ill-treated* his dog.

illegal (il-*ee*-gal) *adj*. Not lawful; against the law. It is illegal to steal.

illiterate *adj*. unlettered; ignorant of letters or books, not educated.

image (*im*-aj) *n*. A likeness, such as a statue, or a reflection in the mirror. *Ex*. You can sometimes see your *image* in a pool if you bend over it. Idols are sometimes called images.

imagine (im-*aj*-in) *v*. To think, or fancy, or make a picture in one's mind. *Ex*. Can you *imagine* what it would be like to live on a coral island.

imaginary *adj*. Not real; existing only in the mind or the *imagination*. *Ex*. Fairies are *imaginary* beings?

imagination *n.* The act of imagining; the faculty by which we form a mental image, or new combinations of ideas; mental image; mere fancy notion.

imitate *v.* To copy. *Ex.* Some apes in the Zoo are very intelligent and *imitate* what their keepers do. An *imitation* is a copy. *Ex.* The clown gave a good *imitation* of a street singer. Imitation (*adj.*) gold or silk is something which is not gold or silk but is made to look like it. One who imitates is an *imitator*.

immediate *adj.* and **immediately** *adv.* Without any delay. *Ex.* I want an *immediate* answer, or I want it *immediately*.

immense *adj.* Very large. *Ex.* There is an *immense* park near our house.

immigrant *n.* A person who immigrates into a country.

immigration *n.* Act of removing into a country for settlement.

immoral *adj.* Wrong, wicked. An immoral person is one who does wrong, knowing that it is wrong.

immortal *adj.* Never dying. The soul is said to be immortal, and the works of a great author, such as Shakespeare, are said to be immortal, because they will never be forgotten.

immovable (im-*oo*-va-bl) *adj.* That cannot be moved. *Ex.* Mountains and rocks seem to us to be *immovable*.

immunity *n.* Freedom from service or obligation; particular privilege or prerogative; state of not being liable.

impart *v.* To give. *Ex.* A good teacher *imparts* commonsense as well as knowledge.

impatient (im-*pay*-shent) *adj.* Not patient. In a hurry. Inclined to be irritable *Ex.* Mother is never *impatient* with us, no matter how busy she may be.

imperial (im-*peer*-i-al) *adj.* Connected with, or referring to, an Empire. *Ex.* Queen Victoria was proud of her *Imperial* crown.

imperil (im-*per*-il) *v.* To put in danger.

import *v.* To bring goods into this country from abroad. *Ex.* Britain has to *import* much of her meat and sugar. When we import these things, they are *imports* (*im*-ports) (*n.*).

important *adj.* An important person is a distinguished person. An important letter is one that must be attended to. An important fact in history or geography, etc., is one that must be remembered. To say that it is important for you to learn Arithmetic, or to take your medicine, means that it is necessary for you to do these things. They are of *importance* to your success or your health.

impose *v.* To place, set, or lay on; to lay on, as a tax, penalty, duty etc., to lay on, as hands; to obtrude fallaciously; to palm or pass off. *v.* used in phrase to impose on or upon; to deceive; to victimize.

imposing *adj.* Impressive, very fine. *Ex.* Edinburgh Castle is a very *imposing* sight.

impossible *adj.* Not possible; that cannot be, or cannot be done.

impostor *n.* One who pretends to be someone else, in order to

get some advantage. *Ex.* Perkin Warbeck was a famous *impostor* in the reign of King Henry VII. His *imposture* deceived many people for several years.

impression *n.* The effect that something has on the mind. *Ex.* The sight of St. Paul's Cathedral made a great *impression* on John. He got an *impression* of its great size and beauty.

improve (im-*proov*) *v.* To make better or become better. *Ex.* You should tr to *improve* your spelling. Mother's health has *improved* since her holiday. There has been a great *improvement* in it.

in, when used as a prefix, can mean *in* (as include, to take in or contain) or it can mean *not* (as incorrect, not correct). In the following list of words the prefix means "not." For meanings look up the words *without* the prefix. For instance look up "accurate" and you will know that "inaccurate" means the opposite of that:

inaccessible, inaccurate, inactive, inadequate, inappropriate, inattentive, inaudible, incapable, incautious, incommodious, incompetent, incomplete, inconsiderate, inconstant, inconvenient, incorrect, incredible, indefinite, independent, indigestible, indirect, indistinct, inedible, ineligible, inexact, inexperienced, infrequent, inhospitable, injustice, inoffensive, insane, insecure, insincere, insufficient, invisible.

incense *n.* Sweet-smelling spices which are burned in some churches as part of the religious service.

inch *n.* The twelfth part of a foot in length; a small quantity or degree. *v.* to drive or force by inches.

incline (in-*cline*) *v.* To learn or bend. *Ex.* The roof was slightly *inclined*, to allow the rain to run off. To be inclined to do a thing is to feel you would like to do it. You have an *inclination* to do it.

incline (*in*-cline) *n* A slope. *Ex.* The ball rolled down the *incline*.

include (in-*clood*) *n.* To take in, or contain. *Ex.* John's birthday presents *included* a cricket bat and a nice book. The *inclusion* (in-*cloo*-zhon) of the bat was Uncle Fred's idea.

income *n.* The amount of money a person earns, or gets in any other way, is his income. *Ex.* He has a large *income* and can afford to spend a lot of money.

increase *v.* To make or become greater. *Ex.* The number of pupils at our school has *increased* very much.

indeed *adj.* In reality; in fact.

independence (*n.*). State of being independent; complete exemption from control; self-reliance; political freedom.

independent *adj.* Not dependent; not subject to control; moderately wealthy; not subject to bias or influence; free; bold separate from; irrespective. *n.* One who is independent; one who maintains that every congregation is an independent church.

indicate *v.* To show or point out. *Ex.* His temperature *indicates* that he is really ill. A board in the station *indicates* the times of the trains.

indignant *adj.* Angry because something wrong has been done. One who is indignant shows *indignation*.

individual (1) *n.* A single person, animal or thing. *Ex.* Most of the people stayed to the end,

but one or two *individuals* left early. (2) *adj.* Belonging or referring to one only. *Ex.* We now have *individual* chairs in the village hall, instead of long wooden benches.

indivisible *adj.* Not divisible ; not separable into parts. *n.* An elementary part or particle.

induce (in-*dewce*). To persuade. *Ex.* I tried to *induce* James to come with us, but he would not. I offered every *inducement* I could think of, but it was of no use.

industrious (in-*dus*-tre-us) *adj.* Hard-woking. *Ex.* A boy who is *industrious* does not like being idle. He enjoys getting on with his work.

industry (*in*-dust-re) *n.* (*a*) The liking for work. *Ex.* I admire James's *industry.* (*b*) A branch of trade. *Ex.* The cotton *industry* is carried on in many towns in the North of England.

infancy (*in*-fan-se) *n.* The time when a baby is very young indeed. A very young baby is an *infant.*

inferior (in-*feer*-i-or) *adj.* Lower in quality or rank. *Ex.* A lieutenant is *inferior* in rank to a captain. Mother said the last jam she bought was very inferior to what she made at home. We all noticed its *inferiority* (in-*feer*-i-*or*-i-te).

infinite (*in*-fin-it) *adj.* So great as to have no limits. *Ex.* The Bible tells us of God's *inifinite* goodness and mercy.

influence (*in* floo-ence) (1) *n.* The effect (either good or bad) that one person has on another *Ex.* The new friend James has made seems to have a very good *influence* on him. (2) *v.* To have this effect. The headmaster *influences* every boy and girl in the school.

inform *v.* To tell. *Ex.* The porter *informed* John at which platform he would find his train. The *information* was gratefully received.

inhabit *v.* To live in. *Ex.* You *inhabit* your house, and your town and your country. One who inhabits is an *inhabitant.*

inherit *v.* To receive as an heir. An heir inherits, and what he inherits is his *inheritance.* *Ex.* John will *inherit* his father's gold watch.

initial (in-*ish*-al) *n.* The first letter of a word, especially of a name. *Ex.* What are your *initials*?

injure (*in*-jer) *v.* To hurt. *Ex.* Four people were *injured* when the bus overturned. Their *injuries* were not serious. *Injurious* (in-*jure*-i-us) means hurtful. *Ex.* The winter weather was *injurious* to mother's health.

ink *n.* A coloured fluid used for writing.

inn *n.* A house for the lodging and entertainment of travellers ; a college of law professors and students.

inner *adj.* Interior ; further inward than something else, internal. *n.* That part of a rifle target next the bull's eye.

innocent (*in*-o-sent) *adj.* Not guilty. Free from sin. Harmless. *Ex.* The prisoner said he was *innocent* of the crime, and after wards his *innocence* was proved.

inquire (or **enquire**) *v.* To ask a question. *Ex.* May I *inquire* who the singer is ? To inquire is to make an *inquiry.* A person who asks too many questions is *inquisitive.*

insane *adj.* Not sane. Mad. *Ex. Insane* persons are usually kept in an asylum. *Insanity* is sometimes cured.

insect (*in*-sekt) *n.* A tiny animal such as a bee, moth or ant.

inside *n.* The interior; internal. In the interior of; within.

insist *v.* To state firmly or to demand. *Ex.* Mother *insists* that we must all wash our hands before meals. Father *insisted* that mother must rest in the afternoon. He was *insistent* about this.

inspect *v.* To look at carefully; to examine. *Ex.* The engines of a new ship have to be carefully *inspected* before she sets out on a voyage. One who inspects is an *inspector*. He makes a careful *inspection*.

inspire *v.* To influence. To make someone want to do better, or to become better, perhaps by setting an example. *Ex.* Winston Churchill *inspired* the people of many nations during wartime by his speeches and by his example. He was an *inspiration* to many.

instance (*in*-stans) *n.* Example. *Ex.* King Robert the Bruce was an *instance* of a man who persevered against many difficulties.

instant *n.* A moment. *Ex.* The paper was alight in an *instant*, and we soon had a good picnic fire.

instead *adv.* In place. *Ex* Mary chose a doll *instead* of a book.

institute *v.* To set up or establish; to found; to begin; to appoint to an office; to invest with a benefice. *n.* That which is instituted; established law, principal; a literary or scientific body; an institution. a book of elements or principles.

institution (in-sti-*tew*-shon) *n.* A building which is the headquarters of some good work that is being done. *Ex.* In many towns there is an *Institution* for the Blind.

instruct *v.* To reach or give orders to. *Ex.* John is being well *instructed* in arithmetic. The erand boy was *instructed* to deliver the order at once. John is being given *instruction* in arithmetic. This book gives full *instructions* for doing conjuring tricks.

instrument (*ins*-troo-ment) *n.* Something made for doing one particular piece of work. *Ex.* A surgeon, a doctor and a dentist all have *instruments* for special purposes. A piano is a musical *instrument*, and so is a flute.

insult (*in*-sult) *n. & v.* A remark that is rude and meant to give offence. To make such a remark is to *insult* (in-*sult*) someone. An *insulting* remark is always offensive.

insure (in-*shoor*) *v* To pay a small sum of money regularly, in order to make sure of getting a large sum if a certain misfortune happens. *Ex.* Our house is *insured* against fire for Rs. 1,000. If it were burned down, father would get Rs. 1,000. That is called Fire *Insurance* (*n.*).

intelligence *n.* The power of understanding. *Ex.* The teacher says that Tommy shows great *intelligence*, though he is still very young. He is *intelligent*, and does not need to be told things more than once.

intend *v.* To mean or aim at. *Ex.* John *intends* to be a teacher when he is grown up. That is his *intention*. To do a thing *inten-*

tionally (*adv.*) is to do it on purpose, meaning to do it. *Ex.* He did not break the window *intentionally*. It was an accident.

intent *adj.* Having the mind bent on an object ; sedulously applied. *n.* Design or purpose ; meaning drift.

interest *n.* Keen attention. To take an interest or to be *interested* in something, such as birds' eggs or railway engines, is to enjoy spending time on studying them and getting to know a lot about them. *Ex.* James takes no *interest* in fish, but he is *interested* in all sorts of insects.

interior (in-*teer*-i-or) *n.* & *adj.* Inside. *Ex.* The *interior* of the house is more attractive than you might expect. The *interior* woodwork had all come from Australia.

interrupt *v.* To break into what someone else is doing or saying. *Ex.* Do not *interrupt* father while he is reading the paper. You *interrupted* me when I was going to tell you where I went yesterday. The *interruption* made me forget what I was going to say.

into In and to; expressing motion or direction towards the inside of, or a change of condition.

introduce (in-tro-*dewce*) *v.* To introduce one person to another is to make them known to each other or to give them an *introduction.* (*n.*). To introduce a new idea is to bring it forward so that it is noticed. *Ex.* The lecturer was *introduced* to the audience by the vicar. Our French master has introduced the plan of teaching us pronunciation by gramophone records.

invade *v.* To enter a country by force. Germany invaded Poland in 1939, and that *invasion* was the beginning of a war in which the German *invaders* were beaten.

invent *v.* To think out something quite new. *Ex.* Edison helped to *invent* electric lighting. That was a wonderful *invention* and Edison was a great *inventor*.

invest *n.* To clothe ; to array ; to clothe with office or authority ; to endow ; to besiege ; to lay out as money in some species of property. *v.* To make an investment.

invisible *adj.* Not visible ; that cannot be seen ; imperceptible.

investigate (in-*vest*-i-gate) *v.* To enquire into or examine with care. *Ex.* Scientists are now *investigating* ways of producing more food all over the world. They are making careful *investigations*.

invite *v.* To ask to come to a place, or to do something. *Ex.* My cousins *invited* me to their party. They also sent me an *invitation* to play tennis with them.

involve *v.* To roll up ; to envelop; to imply ; to include; to implicate; to complicate ; in algebra.

inward *adj.* Internal ; being within ; intimate ; in the mind, soul, or feeling. *v.* Toward the inside, into the mind. *n.* The inner parts ; internally ; privately.

irate (i-rate) *adj.* Angry. *Ex.* An *irate* farmer chased our dog out of his farmyard.

irregular *adj.* Not regular. Not working or happening in the usual way, or at the usual times. *Ex.* Our clock is *irregular* and cannot be trusted.

iron *n.* The most common and useful metal ; an instrument made of iron ; a utensil for smoothing cloth ; fetters ; chains ;

handcuffs. *adj*. Made of iron ; consisting of or like iron ; harsh ; severe ; binding fast ; vigorous ; inflexible. *v*. To smooth with an iron ; to fetter ; to furnish or arm with iron.

is The third pers. sing. of the verb to be.

island (*i*-land) *n*. A piece of land surrounded by water. *Ex*. Great Britain is an *island*.

isle (*ile*) *n*. An island. *Ex*. The Isle of Wight. An *islet* (*i*-let) is a small island.

issue (iss-yew) (1) *n*. The result. *Ex*. The *issue* of the tennis match was in doubt till the last moment as the players were so even. To say that a man died without *issue* means that he left no children. (2) *v*. To come out or send out. *Ex*. Water *issued* from the broken pipe. A daily paper is one that is *issued* every day.

isthmus (*isth*-mus, or *is*-mus) *n*. A narrow piece of land joining two large masses of land. *Ex*. The *Isthmus* of Panama.

it A pronoun of the neuter gender, third person, nominative or objective case

item *adj*. also *n*. A separate particular.

itch (ich) *n*. A constant teasing desire. *v*. To feel an itch ; to have a teasing sensation impelling to something.

ivory (*i*-vo-re) *n*. & *adj*. The hard white bony material of which the tusks of elephants and other animals are made *Ex*. In the exhibition there were some beautyfully carved *ivory* (*adj*.) chessmen.

jail (jale) *n*. gaol.

jam *n* Fruit boiled with sugar so that when cold it becomes firm or stiff.

jam (1) *n*. A block or stoppage. *Ex*. A lorry broke down and there was a traffic *jam*. (2) *v*. To stop or block. *Ex*. The door was *jammed* and would not open.

janitor *n*. Door-keeper. *Ex*. The *janitor* at our school rings a bell at the beginning of each hour.

Jannuary (*jan*-yew-a-re) *n*. The first month of the year.

jar *n*. A glass or earthenware pot, such as jam is kept in.

jaw *n*. The bones of the mouth in which the teeth have their roots.

jealous (*jel*-us) *adj*. To be jealous is to be angry because someone else has something you would like to have. *Ex*. Some of the girls were *jealous* when Mary got the music prize. They showed *jealousy*.

jelly *n*. A sweet jelly is like jam except that the fruit has been strained. Sometimes a jelly pudding is made with fruit juice and gelatine.

jest *n*. A joke. To say something in jest is to say it as a joke. In olden days kings had *jesters* to keep them amused.

jew *n*. A Hebrew or Israelite.

job *n*. (*a*) A piece of work. *Ex*. Mother gave Mary the *job* of peeling the potatoes. (*b*) The work or employment by which a person earns his living. *Ex*. Father has a good *job* in a motor factory.

jockey *n*. The rider of a racehorse. *Ex*. All *jockeys* keep their weight as light as possible to enable their horses to gallop fast.

join *v*. To bind, unite ; or correct ; to add ; to couple ; to unite in league or marriage ; to associate ; to unite ; to be close ; or in contact.

joint *n.* (*a*) The point at which pieces of wood, metal or rubber are joined together. *Ex.* The fireman's hose leaked at one of the *joints*. (*b*) A piece of meat, such as the "Sunday *joint*."

joke *n.* & *v.* Something said or done to cause amusement. *Ex.* I heard a good *joke* on the wireless last night. When father was ill, he still used to *joke* with us all.

jolly *adj.* Merry, cheerful. *Ex.* We were at a very *jolly* party last night.

journey (*jur*-ne) *n.* A trip from one place to another. *Ex.* Did you have a comfortable *journey* from London ?

joy *n.* A feeling of gladness or happiness. *Ex.* It was a great *joy* to hear of John's prize. It was *joyous* news, and we all felt *joyful* about it.

judge (1) *n.* (*a*) A person appointed by the Government to hear both sides of a case (it may be a quarrel, or it may be a charge of wrong-doing) and give his decision upon it. (2) *v.* To form an opinion on some particular thing, and state what is good or bad about it. *Ex.* An artist is coming to *judge* the drawings at our school. The decision of a judge is a *judgment*.

judicial *adj.* Pertaining to courts of justice, inflicted as a penalty or in judgment ; enacted by law or stature.

juice (jewce) *n.* The liquid part of fruit or vegetable. *Ex.* Most children like orrange *juice* ; and they like a *juicy* apple too.

July (joo-*ly*) *n.* The seventh month of the year.

jump *v.* To leap ; to skip ; to spring ; to agree ; tally ; coincide. *v.* To pass over by a leap ; to pass over hastily *n.* Act of jumping ; leap ; spring ; bound.

jurisdiction *n.* Judicial power ; right exercising authority; district within which power may be exercised.

junction (*junk*-shon) *n.* The place where two or more things meet, especially railway lines. *Ex.* At Lahore *Junction* many railway lines meet.

June (joon) *n.* The sixth month of the year.

jury *n.* A number of men and women who have to attend a Court of Law, hear a case that is being tried by a judge, and give their verdict.

just (1) *adj.* Fair, lawful, right. *Ex.* The rules made by our headmaster are very *just*. We all think he deals with us *justly*. (2) *adv.* Exactly, barely. *Ex. Just* long enough.

justice *n.* Honesty, fairness. *Ex.* A court of law has to see that everyone gets *justice*, rich and poor alike.

justify *v.* (*a*) To prove to be right and just. *Ex.* The policeman was *justified* in arresting the thief. (*b*) To give a good excuse for doing something. *Ex.* The boy *justified* himself by saying he did not begin the fight.

keen *adj.* Eager, sharp, interested. *Ex.* John was very *keen* to do well in the examination. He has *keen* eyesight. He is a *keen* cricket player.

keep (kept, kept) *v.* To hold ; to preserve ; to guard ; to detain ; to attend to ; to continue any state, course or action ; to obey, to perform ; to observe or solemnize ; to confine to one's own knowledge ; not to betray ; to have in pay ; to endure ; not to

perish or be impaired *n*. Care; guard; sustenance; a donjoin or strong tower.

keeper *n*. One who has the care or custody of persons or things; a gamekeeper; a ring which keeps another on the finger.

kerosene *n*. A lamp-oil from petroleum; extensively used in America.

kettle *n*. A metal vessel with spout and handle, used for boiling water.

key (kee) *n*. A tool for opening or fastening a lock. *Ex.* He opened the door with his own *key*.

kick *v*. To strike with the foot as a ball is *kicked* in football.

kid *n*. A young goat.

kill *v*. To deprive of life; to slay; to slaughter for food. To deaden; to overpower.

kind *n*. Race; genus; variety; nature; character;

kindly *adj*. Of a kind disposition; congenial; benevolent; mild; in a kind manner; favourably.

kindness *n*. Quality or state of being kind; benevolence; a kind act.

kindergarten (*kin*-der-*gar*-ten) *n*. A school for very young children.

kindle (*kin*-dl) *v*. To set fire to. *Ex.* When we want to light a fire, we begin by *kindling* the sticks.

king *n*. The sovereign of a nation; monarch; a playing card having the picture of a king, chief piece in the game of chess.

kingdom *n*. The dominion of a king; realm; a primary division of natural objects; place where anything prevails and holds sway.

kiss *v*. To touch with the lips; to caress by joining lips; to touch gently; to join lips; to come in slight contact; *n*. A salute given with the lips.

kitchen *n*. The room in a house where cooking is done.

kite *n*. (*a*) A light framework, covered with paper which, attached to a long string, can be flown to a great height. (*b*) A bird of prey, now very rare in England, but in the olden days very common even in London.

kitten *n*. A young cat.

knee *n*. The joint connecting the two principal parts of the leg; a similar joint; piece of bent timber or iron used in a ship.

kneel *v*. Kneel or knelt. To lend the knee; to rest on the bended knees.

knife *n*. A cutting instrument consisting of a blade attached to a handle; cutting part of a machine.

knight (nite) *n*. A title given to a man by the Queen which makes him Sir instead of Mr.

knit (nit) *v*. To make something (such as a sock or stocking) out of wool or silk, using needles of a special kind.

knob (nob) *n*. A small hard lump, such as a piece of coal. The rounded handle of door is called a knob.

knock (nok) *v*. & *n*. To strike or rap, as on a door. Sometimes a metal *knocker* is fixed on door for this purpose.

knot (not) *n*. & *v*. A fastening made by twisting a cord or ribbon in certain ways. *Ex.* Sailors are trained to *knot* (*v*.) ropes in such a way that the *knots* (*n*.) will never come out by accident. A

knotty (notty) problem is one that is difficult to solve.

knowledge (*nol*-ej) *n.* A person's knowledge of any subject is all that he knows about it. *Ex.* My *knowledge* of French is still very slight.

knuckle (nuk-l) *n.* The bony joints on the back of the hand *Ex.* When the two boys quarrelled. they used their *knuckles* on each other.

label (*lay*-bl) *n.* A small card or piece of paper fastened to something, usually to say what it contains (as a bottle) or where it is to go to (as on a parcel or luggage). *Ex.* Be sure to *label* (*v*) your trunk before it goes on the train.

laboratory (la-*bor*-a-tor-e) *n.* A room fitted up with all that is needed for doing scientific work.

labour (*lay*-bor) (1) *n.* Work. *Ex.* The spring cleaning meant great *labour* for mother. (2) *v.* To work hard. A *labourer* (*n.*) Is one who does heavy work. A *laborious* (la-*bor*-i-us) task is a hard and difficult one.

lace *n.* A cord used for fastening books, etc., ornamental cord or bride ; a delicate fabric of interlacing threads. *v.* To fasten with a lace ; to adorn with lace ; to interlace ; to mingle in a small quantity.

lad *n.* Boy or young man. *Ex.* Father says that when he was a *lad* there was no wireless to listen to.

ladder *n.* Two side-pieces joined together by wooden bars, or steps, which one can climb up. *Ex.* Window-cleaners often use *ladders.*

lamb (lam) *n.* The young of the sheep. *Ex. Lambs* are seen in the fields in the early spring.

lament (la-*ment*) *v.* To weep or complain or be sorry for. *Ex.* Mary *lamented* the loss of her kitten for a long time. The old lady next door was in a *lamentable* (*lam*-en-ta-bl) state, with no one to look after her property.

lamp *n.* A gadget which burns oil, gas or electricity, to make light. *Ex* In the country, oil *lamps* are still used sometimes.

land (1) *n* (*a*) The part of the earth that is not covered by sea. (*b*) A country. *Ex.* England is a pleasant *land* to live in. (2) *v.* To leave the sea and put or come on shore. *Ex.* The fishermen *landed* a great catch of herrings. We *landed* at Dover. We all made a safe *landing.*

landlord *n.* A man who owns land or houses. A *landlady* is one who lets rooms to lodgers.

lane *n* A narrow road, especially in the country.

language (*lang*-gwaj) *n.* The form of speech used by a particular nation, as the English language is spoken by the English people.

lantern *n.* A lamp enclosed in a case, suitable for carrying about. *Ex* The farmer carries a *lantern* when he goes to look after his animals on winter nights.

lap (1) *n.* The knees, usually of a woman, when sitting. *Ex.* The cat loves to lie on mother's *lap.* (2) *v.* To lick up with the tongue as a cat or dog does when it drinks.

lark *n.* (*a*) A small bird which sings sweetly while it flies. (*b*) A bit of fun.

last (1) *adj.* After all the others. *Ex.* James was the *last* to arrive. (2) *v.* To continue or hold out. *Ex.* The concert *lasted* a long

time. Mary feared that her money would not *last* to the end of her holiday. A *lasting* happiness or a *lasting* sorrow is one that goes on for a long time.

late *adj*. (*a*) After the usual or expected time. *Ex*. The train was ten minutes *late*. (*b*) The *late* Mr. Brown means the Mr. Brown who has died.

Laugh *v*. to make the involuntary noise which sudden meriment excites ; to treat with some contempt ; to appear gay, bright, or brilliant. *v*. To express by laughing, to affect or effect by laughter ; *n*. The act of laughing, short fit of laughing.

laughter *n*. Act or sound of laughing, expression of mirth peculiar to man.

laundry *n*. A place where clothes are washed. A woman who works in a laundry is a *laundress*. She *launders* the clothes.

law *n*. The rules made in any country by the government to prevent crime, and protect the inhabitants. A thing that is according to the law is *lawful*. The opposite is *lawless*, and lawless people must be punished.

lawn *n*. The grassy part of a garden. *Ex*. Baby plays with his ball on the *lawn*.

lawyer (*law*-yer) *n*. A person who is trained to know the law of the country, and can advise others about what is *lawful* and what is unlawful.

lay (1) *n*. A poem or song. (2) *v*. To spread or put down, as to lay a cloth or a book on the table. *Ex*. Hens *lay* eggs.

lazy (*lay-ze*) *adj*. Not inclined to work or be active. Laziness is a bad fault in a boy or girl.

lead *n*. A soft and heavy metal ; a plummet ; a thin plate of type-metal used to separate lines in printing ; plumbago in pencils ; the leaden covering of a roof. *adj*. Made of lead ; produced by lead. *v*. To cover with lead ; to fit with lead. To guide or conduct ; to direct and govern ; to precede ; to entice ; to influence ; to spend ; to begin.

leader *n*. One who leads ; a guide ; Captain ; head of a party ; editorial article in a newspaper.

leaf *n*. One of the thin, expanded deciduous growths of a plant ; a part of a book containing two pages ; a very thin plate ; the movable side of a table ; one side of a double door. *v*. To shoot out leaves ; to produces leaves.

leaflet *n*. A small printed sheet of paper. *Ex*. We found a *leaflet* in our letter-box advertising a concert in the Town Hall.

league (leeg) *n*. A group of people united by interest in or sympathy with some particular thing. *Ex*. The United Nations Organisation (known as U.N.O.) is a *league* of many nations which earnestly wish to prevent war.

lean(1) *v*. To rest against or bend over. *Ex*. You might *lean* on your mother's arm, or over the baby's cot. To have a *leaning* towards something is to have a liking for it. *Ex*. John has a *leaning* towards books rather than games. (2) *adj*. Thin, not fat. *Ex*. A *lean* man or a *lean* piece of beef.

leap *v*. & *n*. To jump or a jump. *Ex*. He *leapt* (lept) over the fence, or he made a great *leap*.

learn (lern) *v*. To study and get knowledge about something. *Ex*. Nancy is *learning* French now.

A person who has learned a great deal is said to be *learned* (*ler*-ned). He has much *learning* or education.

lease *n.* (lees) A letting of lands, etc., for a rent ; written contract for such letting ; any tenure by grant or permission ; to let ; to grant by lease.

least *adj.* Smallest *adv.* In.

leather (*leth*-er) *n.* The skin of an animal with hair or wool removed. A leather (*adj.*) bag is one made of leather.

leave (1) *n.* Permission. *Ex.* The teacher gave Mary *leave* to go home early. To go on *leave* is to go on holiday from work. A *leave*-taking is a good-bye. *Leavings* are what is left over when the best has been taken away. *Ex.* We give all our *leavings* of food to the dogs. (2) *v.* To go away from. *Ex.* To *leave* Lahore.

lecture *n.* A talk or speech given to an audience on a particular subject. *Ex.* We went to hear a *lecture* on "The Discovery of America."

left *v.* Past tense of the verb to leave. *Ex.* He *left* the house.

left *adj.* Connected with the side of the body on which the heart is. *Ex* The *left* hand, the *left* foot. To be *left*-handed is to be inclined to write, or do other things, with the left hand instead of the right.

leg *n.* The limb of an animal ; a lower or posterior limb ; the long or slender support of anything.

legal (*lee*-gal) *adj.* According to law, allowed by the law, lawful. *Ex.* It is not *legal* (it is *illegal*) to ride a bicycle without a light after dark.

legion *n.* A Roman body of infantry soldiers, in number from 3000 to above 6000, a military of force ; a great number.

legislative *adj* Capable of or pertaining to the enacting of laws.

lemon *n.* An acid fruit of the orange kind ; the tree that produces this fruit.

lend *v.* To let a person have something for a time, after which it must be returned. *Ex.* John *lent* me his penknife. I read books from the *lending* library.

length *n.* If a stick is a yard long, its length is one yard. To *lengthen* a thing is to make it longer. *Ex.* Mother had to *lengthen* Mary's school dress. At *length* means at last. *Ex.* At *length* he reached the top of the hill.

less *adj.* Not so much. *Ex.* We had *less* frost last year than usual.

lesson *n.* portion which a pupil learns at one time ; portion of scripture read in divine service ; something to be learned ; severe lecture : truth taught by experience.

let *v.* (*a*) To allow. *Ex.* I hope mother will *let* me go skating to-morrow. (*b*) To *let* a house to someone is to allow him to live in it and pay rent for it.

letter *n.* (*a*) *a*, *b*, *c*, and so on, are the letters of the alphabet. (*b*) A written message, usually sent by post in an envelope.

lettuce (*let*-us) *n.* A garden plant whose leaves are used for salad.

level (*lev*-el) (1) *n.* A flat surface. *Ex.* The *level* of the lake is higher because of the heavy rains. (2) *adj.* Flat, having an even surface.

Ex. The ground on which bowls or tennis is played must be *level*

liberal *adj.* Generous; giving frely. *Ex.* My uncle is very *liberal*, especially to his nephews and nieces.

liberty *n.* Freedom. *Ex.* The prisoner was given his *liberty*, or set at *liberty*.

library (*ly*-bra-re) *n.* A collection of books, or the building in which they are kept. *Ex.* There is a public *library* in Lahore The man in charge of the books is the *librarian* (ly-*brair*-i-an).

license *n.* Authority or liberty given to do any act ; certificate giving permission ; excess of liberty ; deviation from an artistic standard.

lick *v.* To draw the tongue over the surface of ; to lap ; to take in by the tongue over anything ; a slight smear or coat ; a blow.

lid *n.* A movable cover of a vesel or box ; eyelid.

life *n.* State of animals and plants in which the natural functions are performed ; vitality ; present state of existence ; time from birth to death ; manner of living ; animal being, spirit ; vivacity ; the living form, exact resemblance ; rank in society ; human affairs ; a person ; narrative of a life of eternal felicity.

lift *v.* To raise to a higher position ; to hoist ; to elevate; to raise in spirit; to collect when due. To raise ; to rise, *n.* Act of lifting ; assistance ; that which is to be raised ; an elevator or hoist.

light *n.* That by which objects are rendered visible ; day ; that which gives or admits light ; illumination of mind ; knowledge; open view ; explanation ; point of view ; situation ; spiritual illumination. *adj.* Bright, clear ; not deep. as colour ; not heavy ; not difficult ; easy to be digested ; active ; not laden ; slight, moderate ; unsteady ; gay ; trifling ; wanton ; sandy ; having a sensation of giddiness ; employed in light work ; lightly ; cheaply. *v.* To give light ; to enlighten ; to ignite ; to brighten ; to descend, as from a horse ; to alight ; to come by chance.

lighten *v.* To become brighter ; to shine ; to flash as lightning. *v.* To illuminate ; to enlighten ; to flash forth ; to make less heavy, to alleviate ; to cheer ; to gladden.

like *adj.* Equal ; similar ; resembling ; likely ; feeling disposed in the same manner ; similarly ; likely. *v.* To be pleased with ; to approve ; to be pleased ; to choose ; some person or thing resembling another ; a counterpart ; a liking, a fancy ; lovable.

lie *v.* To say something that one knows is not true. To do this is to tell a lie (*n.*). One who tells a lie is a *liar*.

lieutenant (lef-*ten*-ant) *n.* A junior officer in the Army or Navy.

likely *adj.* Probabe, such as one would expect. *Ex.* The weather forecast says that a good day to-morrow is *likely*.

likewise *v.* In like manner, also moreover ; too.

lily *n.* A bulbous plant with showy and fragrant flowers.

limb (lim) *n.* An arm or a leg, or a branch of a tree.

lime *n.* An English tree. Also the fruit of a foreign tree, which looks like a lemon, and from which lime-juice is made.

limit (1) *n.* The boundary, or farthest point one can reach. *Ex.* There in a fence to mark the *limits* of the football ground. In the last race, John ran to the *limit* of his strength. (2) *v.* To keep within boundaries. To keep down in size. *Ex.* Father *limits* John's pocket-money to sixpence per week. A *limited* space is one that is not large.

line *n.* A small rope or cord ; a threadlike marking a stroke or score ; row of soldiers ; ships ; words, etc., a verse ; an outline ; a short written communication ; course of procedure, etc., connected series, as of descendants ; series of public conveyances, as streamers ; the twelfth part of an inch ; the equator ; the regular infantry of an army ; works covering extended positions, and presenting a front in only one direction to the enemy *v.* To draw lines ; to cover on the inside ; to put in the inside of.

linen (*lin*-en) *n.* Cloth made from flax.

linger *v.* To delay ; to loiter ; to hesitate ; to remain long ; to spend warily.

link *n.* A single ring of a chain ; anything closed like a link. Anything connecting a measure of of 7.92 inches ; a torch ; to be connected ; to join or connect, as by links ; to unite.

lion (*ly*-on) *n.* A large fierce wild animal with thick hair on its head and neck, found in Africa and other hot countries.

lip. *n.* One of the two fleshy parts covering the front teeth in man, etc., edge or border. *v.* To touch as with the lip.

liquid (*lik*-wid) *n.* and *adj.* Fluid.

liquor (*lik*-or) *n.* Any liquid, but usually one containing alcohol.

list *n.* The selvedge of cloth ; a limit or border ; a roll or catalogue ; inclination to one side ; a field inclosed for a combat. *v.* To enroll, to enlist, as in the army ; to desire ; to be disposed, to hearken.

listen *v.* To hearken ; to give heed ; to hear ; to attend

literacy *n.* خواندگی

literate *adj.* Learned ; one who can read and write.

literature *n.* The writings of good authors, in prose and poetry. An author is sometimes called a *literary* man.

little *adj.* A small size or extent ; short in duration ; slight ; mean. *n.* A small quantity, space.

live *v.* To exist ; to be alive ; to dwell, to conduct one's self in life ; to feed or subsist ; to acquire a livelihood ; to be exempt from spiritual death. *v.* To lead, pass or spend.

live (liv) *adj.* Having life ; alive; not dead; ignited ; vivid, as colour.

lively (*lwe*-le) *adj.* Active, bright, gay, *Ex.* We had a *lively* game of musical chairs.

liver *n.* One who lives ; the organ in animals which secretes the bile.

load (lode) (1) *n.* What is laid on something, and has to be carried. The hay that is carried on a cart is a load of hay. (2) *v.* *Ex.* The hay was *loaded* on to the cart.

loaf (1) *n.* A piece of bread in the shape in which it was baked. (2) *v.* To *loaf* is to be idle and

lazy. A *loafer* is one who stands about lazily, doing nothing.

loan *n*. The act of lending, or the thing that was lent. *Ex*. John asked Harry for the *loan* of a book. And the book, when he got it, was a *loan*.

lobster *n*. A large shell-fish which is good to eat. It is blue-black while alive, but bright red when boiled.

local *adj*. Connected with, or belonging to, some special place. The local newspaper is one published in the town or district in which you live. In sudden illness, you would send for a local doctor, one living in your own *locality*.

locate *v*. To place ; to settle ; to reside.

location *n*. Act of locating ; situation with respect to place ; place.

lock (1) *n*. (*a*) A metal part fitted on to a door to keep it fastened. *Ex*. Jane left the key in the *lock*. (*b*) A piece of hair. *Ex*. The child in the story had golden *locks*. (2) *v*. To fasten with a lock. *Ex*. Jane went back and *locked* the door.

locomotive *n*. A railway engine.

lodge (lodj) *v*. To live in a place for a time. A *lodger* is one who pays a rent for a room in someone else's house, and lives in it. He is said to have *lodgings* in that house.

lofty *adj*. High. *Ex*. The Matterhorn in Switzerland is a *lofty* mountain.

log *n*. (*a*) A large piece of wood from a tree. *Ex* We all like to sit round a *log* fire. (*b*) The daily record that is kept of a ship's voyage is called the ship's log.

lone *adj*. Solitary ; unfrequented by men ; single.

lonely (*lone*-le) *adj*. Alone and feeling sad about it. *Ex*. Mrs. Smith is *lonely* since her husband died.

lonesome *adj*. Solitary ; secluded from society ; lonely.

long *adj*. Drawn out in a line ; drawn out in time ; tedious; protracted ; late; containing much verbal matter. *n*. Something that is long. *v*. To a great extent in space or in time ; at a point of duration far distant. *v*. To desire eagerly (with 'for).

look *v*. دیکھنا

looking-glass *n*. Mirror.

loop *n* The doubled part of string, wool or thread through which another length of thread may be drawn. *Ex*. Every stitch in knitting is a kind of *loop*.

loose *adj*. Not tight, not fastened. *Ex*. You must sew on that *loose* button, or you will lose it. To *loosen* is to make loose. *Ex*. You can *loosen* your shoe-laces.

lord *n*. A master ; a ruler ; proprietor of a manor ; a nobleman ; a British title applied to peers, sons of dukes and marquises, and the eldest sons of earls ; honorary title of certain high officials ; the Supreme Being. *v*. To act as a lord ; to rule with arbitrary or despotic sway.

lose (lost, lost) *v*. To cease to possess, as through accident ; to fail to keep ; to forfeit ; not to gain or win ; to miss ; to cease or fail to see or hear ; to misuse ; to suffer loss ; not to win.

loss *n*. Act of losing ; failure to gain ; that which is lost ; failure to utilize.

lot *n*. A person's part or share ;

fate which falls to one ; part in life allotted to a person ; a distinct portion ; a considerable quantity or number, something used to decide what is yet undecided. *v*. To assign by lot ; to sort ; to portion.

loud *adj*. Having a great sound ; noisy ; showy. *v* Loudly.

love *v*. To regard with affection ; to like ; to delight in ; to be in love ; to be tenderly attached. *n*. Warm affection ; fond attachment ; the passion between the sexes ; the object beloved, a word of endearment ; Cupid, the god of love.

lovely (*luv*-ly) *adj*. Very pretty, very beautiful.

lover *n*. One who loves ; a suitor ; a wooer ; one who likes strongly.

low *adj*. Depressed below any given surface or place ; not high ; deep ; below the usual rate ; not loud ; wanting strength ; mean ; dishonourable; not sublime; plain. *v*. Not aloft ; under the usual price ; near the ground ; not loudly.

loyal *adj*. Faithful and true, and worthy of being trusted. *Ex* We can be *loyal* friends, and *loyal* to our Queen and country.

loyalty *n*. State or quality of being loyal ; fidelity ; constancy.

luck *n*. Chance, or something that happens by chance without any special reason. You can have good luck (in which case you are *lucky*) or bad luck (in which case you are *unlucky*). *Ex*. It was very bad *luck* that John fell on the ice and broke his leg.

lumber *n*. Anything that takes up space and is of no use. *Ex*. There is a lot of *lumber* in the shed in our garden.

lump *n*. A small mass of matter ; a mass of things. *v*. to throw into a mass ; to take in the gross.

lunch *n*. The meal, which we sometimes call dinner, eaten in the middle of the day. It is the short word for *luncheon*.

lung *n*. Our two lungs are the organs through which we breathe.

lurk *v*. To lie in hiding. *Ex*. A leopard was known to be *lurking* in the forest.

lustre *n*. Brightness ; brilliancy ; renown ; a branched chandelier ornamented with cut glass ; a glossy fabric for dress.

luxury (*luks*-yew-re) *n*. Great comfort, including costly possessions of all sorts. *Ex*. The prince was brought up in great *luxury*. He had a *luxurious* (lucks-yew-re-us) home.

machine (ma-*sheen*) *n* An instrument made to do work that was formerly done by hand, such as a sewing machine, a printing machine. The parts of a machine are often called *machinery* (ma-*sheen*-er-e). *Ex*. All *machinery* has to be kept well oiled.

machinist *n*. (Ma-sheen-ist) a constructor of machines ; one who works a machine.

mad *adj*. Disordered in intellect; insane ; frantic ; furious ; infatuated. *v*. To make mad.

madam (*mad*-am) *n*. A polite word used to a lady when either writing or speaking to her.

magazine (mag-a-*zeen*) *n*. (*a*) A store-room for gunpowder. (*b*) a paper that comes out at a fixed time, such as every week or every month, containing stories and interesting notes. *Ex*. The She-

lock Holmes stories first appeared in a monthly *magazine*.

magic (*maj*-ik) *n*. A way of pretending to be able to do things that are really impossible. *Ex*. The conjurer on the stage pretended to cut the lady in two halves and put her together again by *magic*. There are many fairy-tales about *magicians* (ma-*jish*-ans) who do such things.

magistrate (*maj*-is-trate) *n*. A man or woman appointed to act as judge in a law court. *Ex*. The *magistrate* said that the boy must be punished for breaking the shop window.

magnificent (mag-*nif*-i-sent) *adj*. Very splendid and grand. *Ex*. The Queen's coronation was a magnificent sight.

maiden *n*. A young girl. *Maid* means either a young girl or a female servant in the house.

mail *n*. (*a*) Armour made of steel plates or rings. *Ex*. John saw coats of *mail* in the Tower of London. (*b*) Letter and parcel post. *Ex*. Is there no *mail* for me this morning.

main *adj*. Principal or chief. *Ex*. One of the *main* roads out of London is the Great North Road.

maintain (main-*tain*) *v*. To support or to keep something going. *Ex*. A father *maintains* a family, or he may *maintain* a car in good order.

majestic (ma-*jest*-tic) *adj*. Having dignity and grandeur.

majesty (*maj*-es-te) *n*. (*a*) Dignity and grandeur. *Ex*. Queen Victoria kept up the *majesty* of the British Crown all through her reign. (*b*) A title. *Ex*. His *Majesty* King Charles II.

major (*may*-jor) *n*. An Army officer, next in rank above a captain.

majority *n*. (*a*) The greater number or greater part. *Ex*. The *majority* of the audience enjoyed the concert very much (*b*) The age of twentyone. *Ex*. William's father gave him a gold watch when he reached his *majority*.

maker *n*. One who makes ; the Creator.

male *adj*. & *n*. Men belong to the male sex. Women belong to the female sex. A man can be called a male (*n*.) and a woman a female.

mamma *n*. mother.

man (1) *n*. A male human being when grown up. (2) *v*. To supply with men for the purpose of work. *Ex*. The life-boat was *manned*.

manger (*mane*-jer) *n*. The box or trough from which horses and cattle feed in a stable or byre.

manifest *adj*. Clearly visible; evident ; obvious. *v*. To make manifest ; to display or exhibit ; a document stating a ship's cargo or destination.

mankind *n*. All the people in the world. *Ex*. War is one of the greatest evils that can happen to *mankind*.

manner *n*. A way of behaving, or a way of doing anything. *Ex*. Nancy has a very pleasant friendly *manner*. Susan dresses her hair in a very strange *manner*. We say that people have good manners or bad manners, meaning that they are polite and courteous, or the reverse

mansion (*man*-shon) *n*. A large house.

mantle *n*. An old-fashioned name for a lady's cloak.

manufacture *n*. The process of making anything by hand or machinery ; something made from raw materials *v*. To fabricate from raw materials ; to fabricate without real grounds ; to be occupied in manufactures.

manufacturer *n*. One who manufactures ; owner of a manufactory.

manuscript (*man*-yew-script) *n*. A book or paper written by hand, or typed but not printed.

many *adj*. Forming or comprising a number ; numerous. **The many**, the great majority of people ; the crowd ; **so many** the same number of ; a certain number indefiants of New Zealand.

map *n*. A drawing or plan of any part of the world. *Ex*. In school we are taught to draw *maps* of our own neighbourhood.

marble *n*. & *adj*. A very hard and beautiful stone, used for sculpture and also for ornamenting buildings.

March *n*. The third month of the year.

mark *n*. A visible sign or impression on something ; a distinguishing sign, indication or evidence ; pre-eminence or importance ; a characteristic ; heed or regard ; object aimed at; proper standard ; extreme estimate; a German silver coin worth about one shilling. *v*. To make a mark or marks on ; to denote ; to regard, observe, heed ; to note ; to observe critically ; to remark.

market *n*. A public place where goods are shown for sale. *Ex*. The famous fish-*market* in London is at Billingsgate. To go out *marketing* is to go out shopping.

marriage *n*. The ceremony or religious service which makes a man and woman husband and wife. The man and woman *marry* each other.

martial (*mar*-shal) *adj*. Warlike. *Ex*. We might say that a General has a *martial* appearance, or that a band played a *martial* tune.

mask (mahsk) *n*. A covering to hide the face, or a false face. *Ex*. Aunt Mary is going to a dance at which everyone has to wear a *mask*. The robbery was carried out by *masked* men (men wearing masks).

mason (*may*-son) *n*. One who builds with stone. What he builds is called *masonry* (stonework). *Ex*. The great cathedrals were built by skilful *masons*.

mass *n*. (*a*) A celebration of the Lord's Supper, especially in the Roman Catholic Church. (*b*) A large amount or number. *Ex*. A great *mass* of timber and of bricks had been collected for the building of the house.

mast *n*. The tall pole on a ship or boat which supports the sails. *Ex*. One of the ship's *masts* was broken off by the storm.

master (1) *n*. One who has authority over others. *Ex*. The *master* who teaches us French is very nice. (2) *v*. To master something is to be able to manage it or to become good at it. *Ex*. It took me several months to *master* the French language. A *masterful* man is one who is determined to be obeyed. To do a thing in a *masterly* way (such as to play the piano) is to do it very well. A *masterpiece* is an extremely fine piece of work, usually artistic. *Ex*. Many *masterpieces* of painting are to be seen in the Alhamra.

mat *n.* An article of interwoven rushes, twine etc., used for cleaning or protecting; anything growing thickly or closely interwoven. To cover with mat; to entangle; to grow thickly together.

match (1) *n.* (*a*) A small piece of wood, tipped with a substance which lights when rubbed on a prepared surface. (*b*) A game played between two sides, such as a football match. (2) *v.* To get a hat to match your dress is to get one of the same colour. A thing that is *matchless* (*adj.*) is one that is perfect and may have no equal. *Ex.* The Queen wore a *matchless* pearl necklace.

mate *n.* A companion or helper. The second in command (under the captain) of a merchant ship.

matter (1) *n.* (*a*) What things are made of. *Ex.* Everything is made of some kind of *matter*. (*b*) The subject being considered. *Ex.* We can have a talk about this *matter* later on. (2) *v.* To be important. *Ex.* That does not *matter* at all.

mattress *n.* The soft part of a bed on which the sleeper rests.

mature (ma-*tewr*) *adj.* Ripe or fully grown. *Ex.* The fruit crop had grown *mature* in the sunshine It had matured (*v.*). It had come to *maturity*.

May *n.* The fifth month of the year.

maybe (*may*-be) *adv.* Perhaps. *Ex. Maybe* he will come if you ask him.

mayor *n.* The chief person in a City or Borough Council. *Ex.* The most famous *mayor* in the country is the Lord Mayor of London.

me The objective of I.

meadow (*med*-oh) *n.* A field of grass grown to make into hay.

meal *n.* (*a*) Food eaten at a certain time. Breakfast is a meal, and so is dinner. (*b*) Grain which has been crushed down to a rough powder. *Ex. Oatmeal* makes the best porridge.

mean (1) *adj.* (*a*) Poor, shabby. *Ex* The house is in a very *mean* street. (*b*) Selfish, the opposite of generous. *Ex.* Mr. A. is *mean*; he would never give anything to the poor. (2) *v.* To intend. *Ex.* James *means* to be a teacher when he is grown up. I did not *mean* to hurt you. The *meaning* of a word or a statement is the idea it expresses. *Ex.* In this dictionary, the *meanings* of all the words are explained.

meantime *adv.* At the present time, or at the time when something else was happening. *Ex.* We shall not go to London *meantime*. I left the room, and *meantime* baby knocked over his cup of milk.

meanwhile (*adv.*)

measure (*mesj*-ur) (1) *v.* (*a*) To be of a certain size. *Ex.* Our new carpet *measures* twelve feet each way. (*b*) To find out the size or weight of a thing. *Ex.* Mother *measures* the flour she puts into her cakes. Father *measured* the new carpet carefully He took its *measurements*. (2) *n.* A pint measure is a jug or other vessel that holds exactly a pint of liquid.

meat *n* The flesh of an animal used for food.

mechanic (me-*kan*-ik) *n.* A man who works with tools and machines. *Ex.* Mother sent for a *mechanic* to repapir the kitchen boiler. A *mechanical* toy is one that is worked by a small machine

inside it. To *mechanise* something is to make it work by means of machinery. A cavalry regiment is mechanised when it uses tanks and other motor vehicles instead of horses. *Mechanism* is the machinery that makes a thing work. *Ex.* Tommy is interested in the *mechanism* of clocks and watches.

medicine (*med*-is-in) *n.* What the doctor orders (usually a liquid in a bottle, for someone who is ill. *Ex.* Tommy said his *medicine* had a nasty taste

medium (*mee*-de-um) *adj* Middle. *Ex.* She is not tall, just of *medium* height.

meek *adj.* Humble, gentle. *Ex.* Our grandmother is a *meek* old lady, always kindly and gentle.

meet *v.* To come together. *Ex.* The Society will *meet* in the Village Hall. That is where the *meeting* will be.

meeting *n.* A coming together ; an interview ; an assembly ; encounter.

melody *n.* An agreeable succession of sounds ; sweetness of sound ; the particular air or tune of a musical piece.

melon *n.* A large and very juicy fruit.

melt *v.* To make liquid or to become liquid. *Ex.* Nancy *melted* the sugar in a pan. The snow *melted* when the sun came out.

member *n.* One of a number, or company, or society. *Ex.* A *Member* of Parliament or a *member* of a football club. Our club has many *members* ; it has a large *membership.*

memorial (me-*mor*-e-al) *n.* Something to remind us of a great person or event. *Ex.* The London Monument is a *memorial* of the Great Fire in 1666.

memory *n.* The part of the mind that remembers events that have happened, or things that have been heard or learned. *Ex.* Mother has a very good *memory* for faces. She never forgets anyone she has met. Memory can also mean the thing that is remembered. *Ex.* We have happy *memories* of the Christmas holidays.

mend *v.* To improve or put together something that has been broken or damaged in some way. Socks are mended with needle and thread. Toys may be mended with hammer and nails.

mention (*men*-shon) *v.* To refer to, or speak about. *Ex.* Do not *mention* this letter to anyone.

merchandise (*mer*-chan-dize) *n.* Goods that are bought and sold. *Ex.* In the Liverpool docks you can see all sorts of *merchandise* arriving from the different countries.

merchant *n.* One who buys and sells goods, especially if trading with foreign countries. *Ex.* The *merchants* of Bristol built up a great trade with America and the West Indies.

mercy *n.* Kindness which includes pity or forgiveness. *Ex.* The prisoner begged for *mercy.* One who shows mercy is *merciful.* One who does not is *merciless.* *Ex* The Roman Emperor Nero was a *merciless* tyrant.

mere *adj.* Nothing more than. *Ex.* Tommy is not being taken to the concert as he is still a *mere* child.

merit (*mer*-it) (1) *n.* Goodness or a good quality. *Ex.* It is one of John's *merits* that he is absolutely honest and trustworthy. (2) *v.*

To deserve. *Ex.* This good work *merits* a prize.

merry *adj.* Gay and cheerful. *Ex.* It was a very *merry* party.

message *n.* Information sent from one person to another. *Ex.* Mother sent a *message* to the doctor saying that Tommy was ill. The person who carries the message is a *messenger* (*mess*-en-jer).

metal (*met*-al) *n.* & *adj.* Iron, copper, silver and gold are well-known metals, all found in the earth.

meter (*mee*-ter) *n.* A machine for measuring the amount of something used, especially gas or electricty. *Ex.* Our *gas-meter* is in the kitchen.

method *n.* The way of doing something. You can have a method of cooking vegetables, or a method of doing your homework. A *methodical* (meth-*od*-ikal) person is one who does things carefully and in an orderly way.

middle *n.* & *adj.* At the point which is halfway between the two ends of anything. *Ex.* There were large rocks in the *middle* of the stream.

midnight *n.* The middle of the night ; twelve o'clock at night. *adj.* pertaining to midnight ; dark as midnight.

midst *n.* The middle ; amidst.

midwife *n.* A woman that assists other woman is childbirth.

might (mite) *n.* Power, strength. One who has great power or strength is said to be *mighty*. *Ex.* Alexander the Great was a *mighty* King of Greece.

mild *adj.* A mild nature is a kindly and gentle one Mild weather is warm and not stormy.

mile *n.* A measure of distance, 1760 yards. *Ex.* John walked five *miles* last Saturday.

military *adj.* Connected with soldiers. *Ex.* A *military* road is one that was built for armies to use in war-time. The Romans built many *military* roads in Britain hundreds of years ago.

milk (1) *n.* The white fluid obtained from certain female animals, especially cows. (2) *v.* To draw the milk from the cow.

mill *n.* A building in which certain kinds of work are done, such as grinding corn into flour, making wool or cotton into cloth and so on. The *miller* is the man who owns or manages a flour-mill.

milliner *n.* One who makes ladies' hats.

million *n.* A thousand thousands (1,000,000). A *millionaire* is a man who owns a million pounds or more.

mind (1) *n.* The brain. The part of ourselves by which we think or learn. The memory. To keep a thing in mind is to remember it. To make up one's mind is to decide about something. (2) *v.* To pay attention to, to take care of. *Ex. Mind* the step (look out for it). Mary is going to *mind* baby while mother is out. Never *mind* means do not worry or be sad about what has happened. *Mindful* means thoughtful, not forgetting. *Ex.* Mother told me to be *mindful* of baby while she was out.

mine *n.* (*a*) A deep hole in the earth from which such things as coal, iron and salt are dug up. *Ex.* Some coal *mines* run for miles under the sea. (*b*) A kind of bomb. A *miner* is a man who works in a mine.

mingle *v.* To mix. *Ex.* A few cows were *mingled* with the sheep in the field.

minister (1) *n.* (*a*) A person in charge of part of the government of a country. (*b*) One who conducts the service in a church ; a clergyman. (2) *v* To serve or give help to. *Ex.* A nurse *ministers* to her patients.

minute (my-*newt*) *adj.* Very small. *Ex.* There are *minute* living creatures in river water and they can be seen only through a microscope.

miracle (*mir*-a-kl) *n.* Something very remarkable and unexpected, almost too wonderful to be believed. *Ex.* The Bible tells of many *miracles* performed by Jesus Christ.

mirror *n.* A glass that reflects. *Ex.* You can see your own reflection in the *mirror*.

mischief (*mis*-chif) *n.* Harm, damage. It can also mean fun of a kind that does no harm. *Ex.* Tommy is full of *mischief*. Mischievous (*mis*-che-vus) can also mean either doing real harm, or just being full of fun.

misery *n.* A great unhappiness ; extreme distress ; wretchedness.

miserable (*miz*-er-a-bl) *adj.* Unhappy, wretched. *Ex* Susan was rather *miserable* on her first day at school, because she did not know any of the other children. *Misery* is unhappiness, or the state of being miserable.

miss *v.* To fail in hitting ; obtaining ; finding etc.

misfit *n.* Something that does not fit properly. *Ex.* James's new coat is a *misfit* and will have to be altered.

mist *n* A cloud of very small particles of moisture in the air which makes it difficult to see clearly. *Ex.* You often find *mist* on a mountain-top, even on a fine day. A *misty* day is one on which there is some mist, and you cannot see a long way.

mistake (1) *n.* Something done wrongly. *Ex.* Tommy made two *mistakes* in his sum. It was a *mistake* to go out on such a stormy day without a mackintosh. (2) *v.* To be wrong about something or to make a mistake between two things. *Ex* It is easy to *mistake* a crow for a blackbird. To be *mistaken* is to have made a mistake. *Ex.* Father was *mistaken* about the time of the train.

mistress *n.* A woman who is head of a house or family, or who teaches in a school. *Ex.* The cook spoke rudely to her *mistress*. The French *mistress* is very nice.

mix *v.* To put two or more things together. We can mix flour and sugar, or flour and water, by stirring them together. This makes a *mixture*. Sometimes a medicine is called a mixture, because it contains several different ingredients. Mixed sweets are sweets of different sorts put together.

moan *n & v.* A low, sad cry, as from one in pain. *Ex.* The injured boy gave no answer but a *moan*.

mock (1) *v.* To make fun of. *Ex.* John was *mocked* when he first went to school because he had a slight stammer. (2) *adj.* Imitation, not real. *Ex.* A *mock* battle.

mode *n.* A way of doing something. A fashion. *Ex.* I do not like that artist's *mode* of painting. The dress shop window showed all the latest *modes*.

model (*mod*-el) (1) *n.* (*a*) A small but exact copy of something larger. *Ex.* A *model* ship in a glass

case. (*b*) One who poses for an artist. (2) *v.* To make into a shape. *Ex.* Tommy has *modelled* a duck from the modelling clay he was given at Christmas. (3) *adj.* Good enough to be copied or imitated. *Ex.* A *model* hut, *model* behaviour.

moderate (*mod*-er-ate) *adj.* Reasonable, not too large or too small, too high or too low. *Ex.* A *moderate* wind was blowing. Keep the room *moderately* (*adv.*) warm.

modern *adj.* In the manner or fashion of to-day. Not oldfashioned. *Ex.* Father does not like *modern* music, but John and I do. Mother has *modernised* (*v.*) the kitchen by getting a new stove and a new sink in place of the old ones.

modest *adj.* Quiet, and not conceited or attracting attention to oneself. *Ex.* John plays the piano extremely well, but is very *modest* about it. To be modest is to have *modesty* (*n*).

moist *adj.* Damp. *Ex.* Susan cleaned her slate with a *moist* sponge. To *moisten* is to make damp or slightly wet. *Ex.* The shower only *moistened* the dry ground. I noticed some *moisture* on the roofs of the houses

moment *n.* A minute portion of time ; a second ; momentum ; important moment ; for a moment.

monarch (*mon*-ark) *n.* A King or Queen who rules over a country *Ex.* King George VI was a well loved *monarch.* A *monarchy* is a country that is ruled by a monarch. England is a monarchy, but France is not.

monastery *n.* A building for monks to live in

money (*mun*-e) *n.* Small pieces of metal (silver or copper), or pieces of paper, stamped by the Government. We give them in exchange for things we want to buy. English money can be pennies, shillings, pounds, notes and so on. In other countries, different coins and notes are used.

monkey (*munk*-e) *n.* A fur-coated animal which can walk on its hind-legs, and whose fore-legs and paws can be used like human arms and hands.

monster *n.* A very large animal. The word is sometimes used to convey the idea of cruelty or wickedness. *Ex.* Only a *monster* could have behaved in that way to a child. Sometimes it is also used as an adjective. *Ex.* A *monster* cabbage.

monstrous *adj.* (*a*) Having the qualities of a monster ; horrible. (*b*) Huge, enormous. *Ex.* Some of the pre-historic animals were *monstrous.*

month (month) *n.* One of the 12 parts into which the year is divided. *Ex.* January is the first *month* of the year. A *monthly* (*adj.*) magazine or visit is one that occurs once a month.

monument *n.* A pillar, statue, or other object, usually made of stone, set up in memory of a person or event. *Ex.* The Cenotaph in London is a *monument* to honour the memory of people who were killed in recent wars.

mood *n.* A state of mind. You can be in a happy mood or a sad mood, or a bad mood which usually means cross or bad-tempered. To be *moody* is to be inclined to have bad moods. The word *mood* has another meaning which you will find in your grammar books.

moon *n*. The planet which travels round the earth once every four weeks. It reflects the light of the sun and this is what we call *moonlight* When we say something is only *moonshine*, we mean it is nonsense, not real.

moral (*mor*-al) (1) *n*. A lesson to be learned from a story, or from something that happens. *Ex*. The *moral* of the last story I read was that one should keep on trying, and never give up. (2) *adj*. A *moral* man is a man who aims at doing what is right and good.

morals *n*. Rules or principles of good behaviour.

more *adj*. Greater in amount ; extent, degree, etc, greater in number. *v*. In a greater degree, extent or quantity ; in addition. *n*. A greater quantity or number ; something further.

moreover (mor-*oh*-ver) *adv*. Also, besides. *Ex*. Henry is tall and strong ; *moreover* he is clever.

mortal (1) *adj*. Anything that must die is mortal. All human beings, all people, are mortal. A mortal illness is one that must end in death. So is a mortal wound. (2) *n*. A *mortal* is a person. *Ex*. No *mortal* can expect to live much longer than a hundred years.

moss *n*. A small green plant that grows in damp places, on trees, and even on stones.

most *adj*. Superl of more, greater in any way. *v*. In the greatest degree, quantity, or extent ; mostly ; chiefly. *n*. The greatest number ; the majority ; greatest amount; utmost extent, degree, etc.

mother A female parent ; a women who has borne a child ; source or origin ; an abbess or other female at the head of a religious institution ; a slimy substance that gathers in vinegar.

motion *n*. Movement. *Ex* The *motion* of the boat made Susan feel sea-sick. *Motionless* means making no movement.

motor *n*. An engine driven by electricity, petrol, oil or paraffin. Sometimes a motor-car is called a motor.

mould (mohld) (1) *n*. (*a*) A kind of greenish growth that appears on clothes and walls in a damp place, or on cheese. When that happens the articles are said to be *mouldy*. (*b*) A shape into which a pudding or jelly or wet clay can be poured. When the jelly or clay is cold, and is turned out, it is in the shape of the mould into which it was poured. (2) *v*. To form into a shape.

moulder *n*. One who moulds.

mount (1) *n*. A mountain or hill. *Ex*. The *Mount* of Olives is outside Jerusalem. (2) *v*. (*a*) To climb up on. *Ex*. To *mount* a horse or a ladder. (*b*) To *mount* a photograph is to paste it on to a piece of paper or cardboard larger than itself.

mountain (*mount*-en) *n*. A very high hill. *Ex*. Ben Nevis is the highest *mountain* in the British Isles. Switzerland is a *mountainous* country (containing many mountains). A *mountaineer* is one who is a good climber of mountains.

mourn (moarn) *v*. To grieve or feel great sorrow. *Ex*. The people of the British Empire *mourned* for Queen Victoria when she died. To be *mournful* is to be sad and gloomy.

mouse (mowce) *n*. A small furry animal which lives in fields or under the floors of houses. A cat that is clever at catching mice is said to be a good *mouser*.

moustache (mus-*tahsh*) *n.* The hair grown on a man's upper lip.

mouth *n.* The opening in the head of an animal into which food is received, and from which voice is uttered; opening of anything hollow, as of a pitcher, or a cave, pit, etc., the part of a river, etc., by which it joins with the Ocean. *v.* To take into mouth; to utter with a voice affectedly big. *v.* To speak with a loud affected voice; to vociferate.

mouthful *n.* As much as the mouth will hold. *Ex.* Baby took a *mouthful* of the jelly and wanted more.

move (moove) (1) *v.* (*a*) To go, or carry, or take from one place to another. *Ex.* To *move* one's chair. (*b*) To affect one's feelings. *Ex.* To be *moved* to anger; to be deeply *moved* on hearing of someone's death. (2) *n* The act of moving. *Ex.* When playing draughts, one says, "It is my *move* now." To make a *movement* is to change the position of one's hand or foot. A *movable* thing is one that can be moved *Ex.* We have a *movable* electric fire.

mud *n.* Wet earth. If you get this on your shoes it makes them *muddy*. *Ex.* A football ground is *muddy* in wet weather.

multiply *v.* To increase in number. *Ex.* Wasps always *multiply* in summer. The word multiply is commonly used in arithmetic, and you all do *multiplication* sums.

multitude *n.* A great number. *Ex.* A *multitude* of people attended the Flower Show.

municipal (mew-*nis*-ip-al) *adj.* Connected with a Town Council. *Ex.* The Town Hall is usually part of the *Municipal* Buildings.

murder *v.* To kill a person deliberately, not in war.

murmur *v. and n.* To speak in a low voice. *Ex.* The invalid could only *murmur* a few words. Her *murmur* (*n.*) could scarcely be heard.

muscles (*mus*-ls) *n.* The parts of the body that make one able to move. *Ex.* John is lame because he has strained a *muscle* in his leg. A person who is very strong and can lift heavy weights is said to be *muscular* (*mus*-kew-lar).

muse *v.* To think quietly and dreamily. *Ex.* The poet sat *musing* in his chair.

museum (mew-*zee*-um) *n.* A building in which curious and interesting things are shown, connected with history or animals or science or any other groups of subjects. The British Museum in London is very famous.

music *n.* Sweet sounds produced either by the human voice or on instruments such as the piano or violin. Music is also the art of producing these beautiful sounds. A sound which is pleasant to the ear is a *muscial* one. A person who loves music or makes it, is a musical person. A person skilled in music is a *musician* (mew-*zish*-an). *Ex* All the players in an orchestra are trained *muscians*.

must *v.* Without inflection, and present or past. A defective or auxiliary verb expressing obligation of necessity. *n.* New wine unfermented.

mustard *n.* A yellow and hot-tasting powder, served as flavouring with meat. It is made from the seeds of the mustard plant.

mute *adj.* Silent.

mutual (*mew*-tew-al) *adj.* Given

and received by two people or more than two. *Ex.* Our two cousins seem to have a *mutual* admiration for each other. Each of them admires the other.

my The possessive case of I; belonging to me.

myself As a nominative it is used generally after I, to express emphasis—I, and not another; in the objective often used reflexively and without any emphasis.

mystery (*mis*-ter-e) *n.* Something strange that cannot be understood. *Ex.* There is a *mystery* about the habits of migrating birds. There is something *mysterious* about them which we have not yet discovered.

nail (nale) (1) *n* (*a*) The hard substance at the ends of toes and fingers. (*b*) A piece of metal like a thick pin with a flat top, used for fastening pieces of wood together. (2) *v.* To fasten with nails.

naked (*nay*-ked) *adj.* Having no clothes on, or no covering to the body. *Ex.* Children are not allowed to bathe *naked* in the Serpentine in London.

namely *adv.* By name. *Ex.* I have two brothers, *namely* John and James.

nap *n.* A short sleep. To be caught *napping* means to be taken by surprise.

napkin *n.* A square piece of linen or cotton used for wiping the lips and fingers at table.

narrow *adj.* Not wide or broad. *Ex.* The lane was so *narrow* that two cars could not pass each other.

national (*nash*-on-al) *adj.* Belonging to the whole nation. We have a National Anthem and national laws. To belong to the British nation is to be of British *nationality*. When it is said that coal-mines and railways have been *nationalised*, this means that they now belong to the whole nation and not to any one person or persons.

native (*nay*-tive) (1) *n.* A person born in a country is a native of it. *Ex.* The *natives* of northern countries are usually fair-haired. (2) *adj* Your native language is the one that is spoken in your native country.

natural history *n.* The study of plants, animals and birds. One who has studied these is a *naturalist*.

nature *n.* (*a*) The world of things not made by man: birds, plants, animals, the sea and the sky (*b*) Character or disposition. *Ex.* John has a very kind and friendly *nature*.

naturalization *n.* Act of investing an alien with the privileges of a native citizen.

naturalize *v.* To make natural; to confer the privileges of a native subject upon; to acclimatize.

naughty (*naw*-te) *adj.* Behaving badly, disobedient. *Ex.* Tommy was sent to bed in the afternoon because he was *naughty*.

navy (*nay*-ve) *n.* The ships belonging to a country. The British Navy contains many different kinds of ships, all armed and ready to defend the country against an enemy. The British Merchant Navy consists of unarmed ships which make voyages for purposes of trade.

near *adv.* Close to, not far away. *Ex.* Aunt Mary's house is quite *near*. (When we say that the school is near the church, *near* is a preposition.)

nearly *adv.* Almost, but not quite. *Ex.* Tommy's ball *nearly* broke the kitchen window.

necessary (*nes*-es-a-re) *adj.* That which cannot be done without. *Ex.* Food and drink are *necessary*. Sweets are nice but are not *necessary*. It is *necessary* to go to school if you want to be well educated.

necessity (ne-*ses*-it-e) *n.* A thing which is necessary. *Ex.* Drinking-water is a *necessity*.

neck *n.* The part of an animal's body between the head and the trunk ; a narrow tract of land ; the slender part of a vessel as a bottle.

necktie *n.* A tie worn round the neck.

neglect *v. & n.* To pay no attention to, or to treat without care and affection. *Ex.* John *neglected* his work last week, and the farmer *neglects* his poor old horse.

negro (*nee*-gro) *n.* One of the black-skinned natives of Africa.

neighbour (*nay*-bor) *n.* One who lives next door, or very near. *Ex.* We are friendly with our *neighbours*.

neighbourhood (*nay*-bor-hood) *n.* The district near a certain place. *Ex.* Uncle Harry lives in the *neighbourhood* of York.

neither (*ny*-ther) *adj., pro. & conj.* Not either.

nephew (*nev*-yew) *n.* The son of a person's brother or sister. *Ex.* Uncle Harry, who is my mother's brother, is kind to all his *nephews* and nieces.

nerve *n.* The nerves are the parts of the body through which we feel heat, or cold, or pain. A brave man is said to have good nerves. A person whose nerves are in a bad state is said to be *nervous*—easily upset or frightened. *Ex.* Tommy is still rather *nervous* when left alone in the dark.

nest *n.* The home built by birds in which to rear their young ones. A *nestling* is a very young bird, not yet able to fly.

net *n.* Long strings fastened together so as to make equal sized spaces at equal distances from each other. *Ex.* A tennis *net*, a fisherman's *net*. When made of wire it is usually called wire-netting and can be used in gardens as fencing.

nevertheless *v.* Not the less ; notwithstanding ; yet ; however.

new *adj.* Recent in origin ; novel ; not before known ; different ; unaccustomed ; not second hand ; newly ; recently.

news *n.* Information about recent events. *Ex.* There was lots of *news* in Aunt Mary's letter.

newspaper *n.* A printed paper, daily or weekly containing news. A *newsagent* is one who sells such papers.

New Year's Day *n.* نوروز -

next Nearest in place, time, rank, or degree. *v.* At the time or turn nearest

nice *adj.* Fastidious ; punctilious ; accurate ; pleasant ; delicate, dainty.

nickel *n* (*a*) A silvery-white metal. (*b*) A small American coin.

niece (neece) *n.* The daughter of a person's brother or sister.

night *n.* The daily period of darkness ; the time from sunset to sunrise ; a state of time ; depression, etc., ignorance, death, obscurity.

nightly (*nite*-ly) *adj.* Happening by night, or every night. *Ex.* The nightingale sings his *nightly* song.

nine *adj.* & *n.* one more than eight.

nineteenth *adj.* The ordinal of nineteen. *n.* A nineteenth part.

ninth *adj.* The ordinal of nine *n.* A ninth part.

ninety *adj.* & *n.* Nine times ten.

no *v.* A word of denial or refusal ; not in any degree ; not. *n.* A denial ; a negative vote. *a.* Not any ; none.

noble (*no*-bl) (1) *n.* A man of high rank who has a title. An Earl or a Duke is a noble, or a *nobleman.* The people of high rank and titles in a country are the *nobility* of that country. Nobility also means *nobleness* of character. A man who does a noble deed shows *nobility.* (2) *adj.* Having or showing a very fine character. *Ex.* Abraham Lincoln was a *noble* President of the United States. A man who risks his own life to save someone else's does a *noble* deed.

nobody (*no*-bod-e) *n.* No person. *Ex. Nobody* was allowed to enter the hall without a ticket.

nod *v.* To move the head quickly downwards, either as a greeting from one acquaintance to another or meaning "yes." *Ex.* I asked John if he was going to play football and he *nodded* in reply. He gave me a *nod* (*n.*).

noise (noyz) *n.* A sound, especially a loud one. *Ex.* Tommy and Harry made a great *noise* when they were playing in the garden. They were *noisy* (*adj.*). They played *noisily* (*adv.*).

nominate *v.* To mention by name, when recommending someone for some special position. *Ex.* A school captain had to be chosen for the new year, and each boy had a chance to *nominate* anyone in the sixth form.

nomination *n.* Act of nominating ; power of appointing to office, state of being nominated.

none *n.* Not one ; not any ; not.

noon *n.* Twelve o'clock in the middle of the day. *Ex.* At *noon* the sun is at its highest point in the sky.

nor A word used to render negative a subsequent member of a clause or sentence ; correlative to neither or other negative ; also equivalent to and not.

northern *adj.* Being in the North; proceeding from the North *n.* An inhabitant of the North.

nose *n.* The organ of smell, employed also in respiration and speech ; the power of smelling ; scent ; sagacity ; a nozzle. *v.* To smell ; to twang through the nose ; to pry officiously.

nostril *n.* One of the two openings in the nose. *Ex.* The seal can close its *nostrils* when swimming under the surface of the sea.

not *v.* A word that expresses negation, denial, or refusal.

note *n.* A mark, sign, or token ; an explanatory or critical comment ; a memorandum ; a bill, account a paper promising payment ; communication in writing ; notice ; reputation, distinction ; character representing a musical sound or the sound itself. *v.* To observe carefully ; to mark ; to set down in writing.

notepaper (*not*-pay-per) *n.* Paper for writing letters on.

nothing *n.* Not anything ; non-existence ; a trifle, a cipher ; *v.* in no degree.

now At the present time ; at that time ; after this ; things being so. *n.* The present time.

notice (1) *n.* A printed or written message placed where it will be easily seen. *Ex.* The *notice* in the garden said "No dogs allowed." The swallow was *noticeable* (easily seen). (2) *v.* To see and pay attention to. *Ex.* Mary *noticed* a swallow on a telegraph wire.

notion (*no*-shon) *n.* An idea that is not very clear. *Ex.* I have a *notion* that mother is planning a surprise for us.

November (no-*vem*-ber) *n.* The eleventh month of the year.

number *n.* An aggregate of units, or a single unit ; a numeral; many; one of numbered series of things ; part of a periodical ; metrical arrangement.

numerous (*new*-mer-us) *adj.* Many. *Ex.* Nancy made *numerous* mistakes in her essay.

nurse *v.* To take care of a sick person or a baby. One who does this is a nurse (*n.*). A *nursery* is a room in which children play and keep their toys.

nut *n.* A fruit containing a seed or kernel within a hard covering ; a small block of metal or wood with a grooved hole, to be screwed on the end of a bolt. *v.* To gather nuts.

nylon (*ny*-lon) *n.* A strong thread which looks like silk and is much used for making fine, strong material.

oak *n.* A large tree, common in English woods, which lives to a great age and provides strong, hard wood.

oar *n.* A long pole with one end broad and flat, used for moving small boats by rowing. *Ex.* The boats in the river races at Oxford are rowed by 8 *oars*.

oat *n.* A kind of plant which provides valuable food for human beings and animals. *Oatmeal* is made from oats.

oath *n.* A solemn promise. A witness in a law court takes an oath to speak the exact truth, as if before God.

obedience *n.* Act of obeying ; quality of being obedient ; submission to authority.

obey (o-*bay*) *v.* To do as one is told. *Ex.* Children ought to *obey* their parents and teachers. They should be obedient (o *bee*-de-ent) to them.

object (*ob*-jekt) *n.* (*a*) A thing. *Ex.* I saw a dark *object* on the grass, but did not know what it was. (*b*) A reason or purpose. *Ex.* What was John's *object* in leaving so early ? (*c*) A thing or person that looks ugly or ridiculous or pathetic. *Ex.* He did look a miserable *object* after falling into the little pond.

object (ob-*ject*) *v.* To refuse, or dislike, or disapprove. *Ex.* Baby *objects* to going to bed. Father *objects* to the boys smoking. He has an *objection* to it. He thinks it is an *objectionable* habit.

oblige (o-*blige*) *v.* (*a*) To do something to please a person, as a favour. *Ex.* Nancy is always helpful and willing to *oblige*. (*b*) To force or compel. *Ex.* John was *obliged* to go to bed as he had such a bad cold. An *obliging* person is one who is kindly and ready to help.

observe *v.* (*a*) To notice or look at, or pay attention to. One who observes is an *observer* (*n.*). An *observant* person is one who notices a great deal. (*b*) To make a remark. *Ex.* Uncle Jack *observed* that he would be going to London tomorrow. That remark was an *observation*.

obtain *v.* To get. *Ex.* You can *obtain* herrings from the fish-mongers. They are usually *obtainable*.

occasion (o-*kay*-sjon) *n.* The happening of some event. *Ex.* The village was decorated with flags on the *occasion* of the Queen's Birthday.

occasional (o-*kay*-sjon-al) *adj.* Happening sometimes, but not regularly or very often. *Ex.* There were *occasional* showers. Rain fell *occasionally*.

occupation (ok-ew-*pay*-shon) *n.* Business, profession, employment. *Ex.* When asked what his *occupation* was, he replied that he was a carpenter.

occupy (*ok*-ew-py) *v.* (*a*) To live in or take possession of. *Ex.* Mr. Brown has *occupied* the same house for ten years. He has been the *occupier*, or the *occupant*, all that time. (*b*) To be *occupied* with something is to be busy with it. *Ex.* Mother was *occupied* with the sewing all evening.

occur (ok-*ur*) *v.* To happen. *Ex.* A remarkable thing *occurred* yesterday. It was a remarkable *occurrence*.

ocean (*o*-shan) *n.* A huge area of water. The five great oceans of the world are the Atlantic, Pacific, Indian, Arctic, and Antarctic, which together cover a large part of the earth's surface.

October *n.* The tenth month of the year.

odd *adj.* Strange, unusual. *Ex.* The giraffe is an *odd*-looking animal. The odd numbers are those which are not even. 5, 7, 21, 49, 83 are odd numbers.

odour (oddor) *n.* Smell. *Ex.* Sea-weed on the beach has an unpleasant *odour* in hot weather.

of Denoting source, cause, motive, possession, quality, condition, material ; concerning, relating to, about.

off *v.* Away ; distant ; not on ; from; not toward—well off, ill off, in good or bad circumstances. *adj.* Distant ; farther away ; as applied to horses, right hand. Not on ; away from ; to seaward from ; begone.

offhand *adj.* Careless, thoughtless, sometimes even rude. *Ex.* James was in a hurry, and answered Mother in an *offhand* way.

offend *v.* To displease; to shock; to cause to sin or neglect duty ; *v.* To commit a fault ; to cause to dislike or anger.

offer *v.* To present for acceptance or rejection ; to tender ; to bid, as a price or wages; to present itself ; to declare a willingness ; to make an attempt. *n.* An act of offering ; act of bidding a price ; the sum bid.

office (*off*-is) *n.* Room or building where business is done. *Ex.* There are six clerks in the manager's *office*.

officer *n.* A person having an important position, such as an army officer or a police officer.

official (off-*ish*-al) *n.* A person employed to do public work. There are officials in banks, post officies and railway offices. They

do *official* work. An *official* rule is one that has been made by officials and must be obeyed.

often *v.* Frequently ; many times.

oil *n.* An unctuous inflammable liquid drawn from various animal and vegetable substances ; a similar substance of mineral origin ; an oil-colour. *v.* To smear or rub over with oil.

oiler *n.* One who oils ; something used for oiling machinery.

old *adj* Grown up to maturity and strength ; aged ; of some particular age ; long made or used; not new or fresh ; ancient ; antiquated.

olive *n.* An evergreen tree ; its fruit, from which a valuable oil is expressed ; the colour of the olive; the emblem of peace *adj.* Relating to, or of, the colour of the olive.

omit (o *mit*) *v* To leave out. *Ex.* We sang Hymn No. 56. *omitting* the last two verses. What is left out is an *omission.*

on Above and touching ; by contact with the surface or upper part ; in addition to ; at or near ; immediately after and as a result; in reference or relation to ; toward or so as to affect ; at the peril of ; among the staff of, pointing to a state of occupation, etc., onward ; in continuance ; adhering, not off.

once *v.* One time, formerly ; immediately after ; as soon as ; at once, all together ; suddenly ; forthwith.

one *adj* Being but a single thing or a unit ; closely united ; forming a whole ; single, representing this. At one, in union or concord. Any single person ; any man ; any person ; a thing ; particular thing.

onion (*un*-yon) *n.* A strongly flavoured vegetable, eaten with meat and in soups.

only *adj.* single ; sole ; alone ; for one purpose alone ; simply ; merely ; solely, but ; excepting that.

onward *adj.* Advanced or advancing ; progressive ; improved.

open *adj.* Not shut, covered, or blocked ; not restricted ; accessible to public ; spread out ; free ; liberal ; bounteous ; candid ; clear ; exposed ; fully prepared with a full utterance. *n.* An open or clear space. *v.* To make open ; to unclose ; to cut into ; to spread out ; to begin.

opera *n.* A play set to music, in which the words are sung instead of spoken.

operate *v.* To act. The word is most often applied to the action of a surgeon who heals diseases by cutting out a diseased part of the body. This is an *operation.*

operator *n.* One who operates.

opinion (o-*pin*-yon) *n.* An idea or belief about some particular matter. *Ex.* It is my *opinion* that our team will win the match.

opportunity *n.* A chance, or a suitable time for doing something. *Ex.* The fine weather gave the farmer an *opportunity* to cart in his harvest of wheat.

oppose *v.* To resist or be against. *Ex.* Father was inclined, at first, to *oppose* the idea of John's learning boxing. But he soon gave up his *opposition* and agreed.

opposite (*op*-o-zit) *adj.* (*a*) On the other side *Ex.* The house *opposite* yours is the house facing

yours on the other side of the street. (*b*) Quite different, opposed. *Ex.* Mary's opinion is exactly the *opposite* of mine.

oppress *v*. To treat harshly. *Ex.* The Roman Emperor Nero *oppressed* his subjects cruelly.

or *conj*. A particle that marks an alternative, and frequently corresponds with either and whether. *v*. Ere before *n*. Heraldic name for gold.

orchard (*or*-chard) *n*. A piece of land where fruit trees are grown, especially apples, pears, cherries and plums.

order (1) *n*. (*a*) A tidy arrangement. *Ex.* John has gone to put his books in *order*-to make them *orderly*. He is an orderly person. (*b*) A command to do something. *Ex.* The officer gave his men the *order* to advance. (2) *v*. To give an order. *Ex.* The officer *ordered* his men to advance. We also speak of giving an order to our grocer or butcher, meaning that we tell them what we want

ordinance *n*. That which is ordained ; law ; statute ; edict ; decree.

ordinary *adj*. Common, usual, not special. *Ex.* It is an *ordinary* things for father to have a walk after tea. Every *ordinary* boy likes playing games of some kind.

organ *n*. (*a*) A part of the body, such as the eye or the heart. (*b*) A musical instrument with a keyboard like a piano. Sometimes it has two or three keyboards, one above the other like steps. There are organs in most churches. One who plays an organ is an *organist*.

organise *v*. To arrange business or work of some kind, or to deal with people in such a way that they act well together and produce good results. Such an arrangement is good *organisation*.

original (or *ij*-in-al) *adj*. (*a*) First. *Ex.* The *original* inhabitants of Britain lived in caves and dressed in skins of animals. (*b*) New, made or said or done for the first time. Not copied from anything else. *Ex.* We had to write an *original* verse of eight lines in our English examination. The master wanted us to show some *originality* in choosing the subject.

ornament (*or*-na-ment) (1) *n*. A thing which is liked for its appearance and not because it is useful. People used to keep many ornaments on the mantelshelves ; they were considered *ornamental* (2) *v*. (or-na-*ment*). To make more beautiful by adding some decoration. *Ex.* Her hat was *ornamented* with roses.

orphan (*or*-fan) *n*. A child, both of whose parents are dead. An *orphanage* is an institution in which orphans live and are taken care of.

other *adj*. Not the same ; second of two ; not this ; opposite ; often used reciprocally with each.

otherwise *v*. In a different manner ; not so ; by other cause ; in other respects, *conj*. Else ; but for this.

ought *n*. To be held or bound in duty or moral obligation.

ounce *n*. The twelfth part of a pound Troy and the sixteenth of a pound, avoirdupois ; an Asiatic animal like a small leopard.

our *adj*. Pertaining or belonging to us. **Ours** is used for *our* when no noun follows.

ourself used for myself, as a more dignified word, in the regal style.

ourselves We or us, not others: added to we by way of emphasis and reflexively.

out *v*. On or towards the outside; not in or within; forth; beyond usual limits; not in proper place; public; exhausted; deficient; not in employment; loudly; in error; at a loss; having taken her place as a woman in society *n*. One who is out; a nook or corner.

outside *n*. The external surface or superficies; exterior; the utmost extreme estimate. *adj*. Exterior; superficial. On the outside of.

outward *adj*. External; exterior; visible; adventitious. *v*. Tending toward the exterior; from a part or country.

oven (*uv*-en) *n* A sort of metal box, usually built into a grate, for cooking food. *Ex*. Mother bakes lovely scones in the *oven*.

over Above; denoting motive; occasion, or superiority; a cross; throughout; upwards of. *v*. From side to side; in width on all the surface. Above the top or edge; in excess; competely; too. *adj*. upper; covering.

overalls *n*. A dress or suit worn on top of another to keep it clean. *Ex*. The motor-cyclist was protected from the mud by his *overalls*.

overcoat *n*. An upper coat; topcoat.

overcome (1) *v*. To defeat or conquer. (2) *adj*. Feeling beaten and exhausted. *Ex*. Mother felt quite *overcome* by the heat.

overtake *v*. To catch up with. *Ex*. Mary left the house first, but I soon *overtook* her.

overthrow *v*. To defeat or overcome. *Ex*. The Normans *overthrew* the English in 1066.

owe (oh) *v*. To owe money to someone is to know that it is one's duty to pay the money to him. *Ex*. I *owe* Nancy two-pence for the stamp I bought from her yesterday. One can also owe thanks for some kindness or gift received.

owing *adj* (with *to*, *prep*.) Because of, on account of. *Ex*. Mary had to stay at home, *owing* to her cold.

owner *n*. One who owns; the rightful possessor or proprietor.

ox *n*. A certain type of bull which is used for heavy farmwork in some countries. The plural is *oxen*.

oyster *n*. A shell-fish much liked as a food.

pace *n*. & *v*. A step, or to walk. *Ex*. He took three *paces*, or he *paced* up and down the room.

pack (1) *n*. (*a*) A bundle of goods to be carried on the back. (*b*) A number or group. *Ex*. A *pack* of thieves. (2) *v*. To arrange goods so as to take as little space as possible. *Ex*. To *pack* a suitcase for a journey. A *package* is made from a number of things wrapped together, usually in paper, to be sent by post or by railway. A small package is a *packet*.

packer *n*. One who packs or prepares merchandise for transit.

page *n*. One side of a sheet of paper, or of a leaf of a book. *Ex*. How many *pages* has this dictionary?

pail *n*. An open vessel for carrying liquids.

pain *n*. A penalty; bodily suffering; distress; anguish, the throes of childbirth; labour; diligent effort. *v*. To cause pain to, to afflict; to distress.

painful *adj.* Causing pain. To *take pains* is to take trouble to do something carefully and well.

paint (1) *n.* A liquid substance containing colour. (2) *v.* To spread this substance on a surface. *Ex.* To *paint* a door, or to *paint* a picture. One who paints is a *painter*, and a painted picture is called a *painting*.

pair *n.* Two things of like kind, suited or used together ; a couple; a man and his wife ; two members on opposite sides in parliament, etc., who agree not to vote for a time. *v.* To join in pairs ; to mate. *v.* To unite in pairs.

palace (*pal*-as) *n.* A large house, lived in by a king or bishop or other great person. A house that looks as grand as a palace is said to be *palatial* (pa-*lay*-shal).

pale *adj.* Without much colour. *Ex.* People often look *pale* after an illness.

palm (pahm) *n.* (*a*) A tall tree, with all its foliage at the top, which grows in a warm climate. (*b*) The soft inner surface of the hand.

pan *n.* A broad and shallow vessel, of metal or earthenware ; a pond for evaporating salt water to make salt ; part of a gun-lock holding the priming ; the skull ; the Greek and Roman god of flocks and herds.

pane *n.* A plate of glass inserted in a window, door, etc., a panel.

pants *v.* To breathe quickly ; to gasp ; to desire ardently. *n.* A gasp ; a throb.

pantry *n* A cupboard or small room in which china and glass are kept, and sometimes food.

papa *n.* A childish name for father.

paper *n.* A substance formed into thin sheets used for writing, printing, etc., a leaf, or sheet of this; a journal; an essay or article; promissory notes, bills of exchange. *adj.* Made or consisting of paper ; appearing ; slight *v.* To cover with paper ; to inclose in paper.

paper-hanger *n.* One who lines walls with paper-hangings.

parade *n.* A display. A gathering of troops.

paradise (*pa*-ra-dice) *n.* Heaven.

parallel (*pa*-ra-lel) *adj.* Parallel lines are the same distance apart all the way along. Railway lines run parallel to one another and so do the lines of print in this book.

parcel *n.* *See* pack.

pardon (1) *v.* To forgive. (2) *n.* The act of forgiving.

parent *n.* One who brings forth or begets ; a father or mother ; a progenitor ; cause ; origin.

park *n.* A piece of ground inclosed ; ornamental ground adjoining a house ; ground in a town for recreation ; an assemblage of heavy ordnance ; *v.* To inclose in a park ; to bring together, as artillery.

parliament *n.* An assembly of persons for deliberation, etc., the legislature of great Britain and Ireland ; any similar legislative assembly.

parlour *n.* The sitting room in a house which the family usually occupy.

parson *n.* A clergyman, a minister of the church. His house is sometimes called the parsonage.

part *n.* A portion or piece of a whole section ; a constituent or organic portion ; share ; lot ; party ;

duty ; business ; character assigned to an actor in a play ; faculties ; superior endowments ; regions ; locality. *v.* To divide ; to sever ; to share ; to distribute ; to separate, to intervene, to become separate, broken or detached ; to quit each other ; to depart.

partly *v.* In part ; in some measure.

particular *adj.* (*a*) Special. *Ex.* One *particular* dog at the show seemed certain to get first prize. (*b*) Careful, attentive. *Ex.* Father is very *particular* about locking up at night. He is *particularly* careful on dark winter evenings.

partner *n.* A person who shares with another in marriage or business or dancing, etc. Two people can form a *partnership*.

partridge *n.* A bird rather like a pheasant, but smaller. It lives in fields and is killed for food.

party *n.* A number of people who have the same aim or purpose *Ex.* A *party* of tourists, a birthday party, a political *party*.

pass (1) *n.* (*a*) A narrow road among mountains. (*b*) A ticket allowing someone to travel on a railway or enter a theatre. (2) *v.* (*a*) To move away. (*b*) To hand over. *Ex* *Pass* me the cheese. To *pass* an examination is to be successful in it.

passage *n.* (*a*) A journey, especially by sea. *Ex.* It was a rough *passage*. (*b*) A narrow corridor or hall between rooms in a house. (*c*) A part of a book or speech. *Ex.* We have to learn a short *passage* from Shakespeare by heart.

passenger *n.* One who travels in a vehicle.

passion (*pash*-on) *n.* Strong feeling, especially anger. *Ex.* The farmer was in a *passion* when he found his cherries had been stolen. He is a *passionate* man, and apt to be *passionately* angry.

passport *n.* A document issued by the Government, giving permission for a person to travel in foreign countries.

past Gone by or beyond ; belonging to an earlier period ; spent ; ended. *n.* Former time, beyond, out of reach of after ; by ; so as to pass.

paste *n.* A mass in a semi-fluid state; a mixture of flour, etc., used in cookery, or to cause substances to adhere ; a mixture of clay for pottery ; a brilliant of gems. *v.* To unite or fasten with paste.

pastime *n.* A game or amusement which passes the time. *Ex.* Father's favourite *pastime* is fishing.

pastry (*pace*-tre) *n.* A mixture of flour and fat baked in the oven. Pies and tarts are made of pastry.

pasture *n.* Grass fields on which cows or sheep can be fed. Pasture land is called *pasturage*.

pat *n.* A light stroke with the fingers or hand ; a tap ; a small lump of butter beaten into shape. *v.* To strike gently ; to tap, *adj.* Hitting the mark ; apt ; convenient. *v.* Fitly ; just in the nick.

path *n.* A way beaten by the feet of man or beast ; a footway, course or track ; way or passage ; course of life.

patience (*pay*-shence) *n.* The ability either to endure suffering without complaint, or to wait quietly for something that one wants. One who has this quality is *patient*. One who is under the

care of a doctor is called a *patient* (*n.*).

patriot (*pay*-tri·ot *or* *pat*-ri·ot) *n.* A person who loves his country and will do all he can to help it. Such a person is *patriotic.* He shows *patriotism.*

patron (*pay*-tron) *n.* One who helps and encourages another in some special work. *Ex.* We asked the Squire to be *patron* of our summer fete, as we were sure it would then be a success. Regular customers of a shop are sometimes called its patrons.

pattern *n.* (*a*) Something used as a guide or a model to be copied. *Ex.* I am going to make a new coat for baby from this *pattern.* (*b*) The design or markings on a fabric. *Ex.* I like the *pattern* of Mary's new dress. (*c*) A small piece of cloth used as a sample *Ex.* The tailor gave father three *patterns* to choose from.

pause (paws) *v.* & *n.* To stop for a short time. *Ex.* He *paused* in his speech. There was a sudden *pause* (*n.*) in the music.

pave *n.* To lay down stones to make a path or road. These stones are *paving-stones*, and they can form a *pavement.*

pauement *n.* The solid floor of a street, courtyard, etc., paved part of a road used by foot-passengers; material with which anything is paved.

pavilion (pa-*vil*-yon) *n.* A small house on a sports ground or golf-course in which the players can change their clothes or keep their balls and bats.

paw *n.* A foot of animals having claws. *v.* To draw the fore-foot along the ground. To scrape with the fore-foot along the ground.

pay, (**paid**, **paid**) *v.* To give money etc., for goods received or service rendered ; to reward ; to discharge, as a debt ; to give ; to cover with tar or pitch. *v.* To make a payment, to be profitable or remunerative. *n.* An equivalent for money due, goods, or services; salary ; wages ; reward.

pea *n* A well-known flowering plant cultivated for its seeds ; one of the seeds of the plant.

peace *n* A state of quiet ; calm ; repose ; public tranquillity, freedom from war ; concord.

peaceful *adj.* Free from war, noise, or disturbance ; quiet ; mild.

peach *n.* A well known tree and its fruit, allied to the almond. *v.* To betray one's accomplice.

peacock *n.* A large bird with beautifully coloured feathers, especially in its tail which it can spread out like a large fan.

peak *n.* (*a*) The highest point of a hill. (*b*) The front part of a cap which shades the eyes.

peal (1) *n.* The set of bells in a church tower, and also the sound they make when rung together. (2) *v.* To make this sound. *Ex.* The bells *pealed* on Christmas Day.

pear (pare) *n.* A fruit about the size of an apple, and growing on a similar kind of tree.

pearl (perl) *n.* A precious stone which is found in the shells of oysters.

peasant (*pez*-ant) *n.* A countryman who works on the land.

peck *n.* A dry measure of eight quarts. *v.* To strike with the beak, or something pointed ; to pick up, as food, with the beak.

peculiar *adj.* One's own

characteristic; particular; unusual; odd.

pedlar *n.* A petty dealar who carries his wares with him

peep *v.* To look quickly or through a narrow opening. *Ex* I *peeped* into baby's cot to see if he was asleep. I had a *peep* (*n.*) at him.

peer (1) *n.* A Duke or Earl or other nobleman. Peers sit in the House of Lords. (2) *v.* To look closely as if straining the eyes.

pen *n.* An instrument for writing with ink; style or quality of writing; a small inclosure for cows, etc., a fold. *v.* To write; to compose; to coop or incurring punishment.

penalty (*pen*-al-te) *n.* Punishment *Ex.* The *penalty* for breaking a window might be to pay one pound.

pencil *n.* A small brush used by painters; an instrument of black-lead, etc., for writing and drawing.

pendulum *n.* A bar with a weight at the end that hangs down from a clock and swings to and fro.

penknife (*pen*-nife) *n.* A small knife which folds up and can be carried in the pocket

penny *n.* A bronze coin, the twelfth of a shilling; money.

pension (*pen*-shon) *n.* A regular payment of money, usually to people too old to go on working.

people *n.* The body of persons who compose a community, race, or nation; persons indefinitely. *v.* To stock with inhabitants; to populate.

pepper *n.* A plant and its aromatic pungent seed much used in seasoning, etc. *v.* To sprinkle with pepper; to pelt with shot or missiles; to drub thoroughly.

per *adj.* A Latin preposition used in the sense of by or for, chiefly in certain Latin phrases, as per annum, by or for the year.

perambulator (per *am*-bu-lay-tor) *n.* A small carriage in which babies can be pushed along by hand, often called a *pram.*

perceive (per-*seev*) *v.* To know by means of the senses or to understand. You can perceive either by sight or by smell that an egg is bad. A thing that can be perceived is *perceptible*. *Ex* There was a *perceptible* silence.

perch (1) *n.* A bar or branch of a tree on which a bird rests. (2) *v.* To rest as on a perch. *Ex.* The blackbird *perched* on a twig beside me for a moment.

perfect *adj.* Complete and without a flaw. *Ex.* What made our seaside holiday *perfect* this year was that father was able to come with us.

perfection *n.* State of being perfect; an excellence perfect in its kind.

perform *v.* To do; to act. *Ex.* You can *perform* your duty, or perform a play in a theatre or perform a conjuring trick. You can see *performing* elephants at a circus. You can go to see the *performance* of a play. One who performs is a *performer.*

perfume (*per*-fewm) *n.* A sweet smell. A sweet-smelling liquid.

perhaps *v.* It may be; peradventure; perchance; possibly.

peril (*per*-il) *n.* Danger. *Ex.* Sailors are often in *peril* when at sea. A *perilous* journey is a dangerous one.

period (*peer*-i-od) *n.* A portion of time. *Ex.* Father was in Italy for a short *period* during the war. The Spanish Armada was destroyed during the Elizabethan period (the time when Queen Elizabeth I. was on the throne). A *periodical* (*peer*-i-*od*-i-cal) is a magazine which appears at regular times.

perish *v.* To die or be destroyed. *Ex.* The Swiss boy *perished* in the snowstorm. Many valuable books *perished* in the fire that broke out in the castle.

permanent *adj.* Lasting, remaining the same for a long time.

permit (per-*mit*) (1) *v.* To allow. *Ex.* Mother would not *permit* Harry to bathe to-day. She will give him *permission* to bathe when the weather is warmer. (2) *n.* (*per*-mit). Written permission allowing something to be done. *Ex.* John was given a *permit* to go through the private park.

perpetual (per-*pet*-yew-al) *adj.* Never ending, lasting for ever. *Ex.* The sea, even when calm, is in *perpetual* motion.

person *n.* An individual human being, each of the three beings of the Godhead ; bodily form ; one of the three inflections of a verb. In person, by one's self ; not by representatives.

personage *n.* An important person.

personal *adj* Pertaining to a person ; peculiar or proper to him or her ; belonging to face and figure ; denoting the person in a grammatical sense.

persuade (per-*swade*) *v.* To argue or coax a person into doing something. *Ex.* Mother *persuaded* Tommy to come home with her, though he was very anxious to stay longer in the cinema. He gave in to mother's *persuasion*.

pet *n.* A darling ; any little animal fondled and indulged ; fit of peevishness. *v.* To fondle ; to indulge.

petition *n.* An entreaty, supplication or prayer ; a written application ; to solicit.

petitioner *n.* One who petitions or presents a petition.

philosopher *n.* A person versed in philosophy ; one who studies moral or mental science.

philosophy *n.* The science which tries to account for the phenomena of the universe ; metaphysics ; the general principles underlying some branch of knowledge ; practical wisdom.

phonograph *n.* An instrument for registering and representing sounds.

phone *n.* & *v.* The short form of the word *telephone.*

photograph (*fo*-to-graf) *n.* & *v.* Picture made by the action of light on a film specially prepared to receive it. Such pictures are made by *photographers* (fo-*tog*-rafers). They practise *photography* (fo-*tog*-ra-fe).

phrase *n.* A short sentence or expression ; an idiom ; style ; to express.

physic (*fiz*-ik) *n.* Medicine. A doctor of medicine is a *physician* (fiz-*ish*-an).

physical (*fiz*-ik-al) *adj.* Connected with the body, or things that can be seen and heard ; not connected with the mind or the soul. *Ex.* Most boys enjoy hard *physical* exercise such as running, climbing and jumping.

piano (pe-*a*-no) *n.* A musical instrument in which the sounds are produced by hammers striking on wires. One who plays a piano is a *pianist* (*pee*-a-nist).

pick *v.* To strike at with something pointed ; to peck at ; to clean by the teeth, fingers, etc. To select ; to pluck ; to gather *v.* To eat slowly ; to nibble; to pilfer *n.* A pointed tool ; a pick-axe ; choice ; selection.

pickle (1) *n.* The liquid containing water, salt, or vinegar, in which vegetables and other foods are preserved. (2) *v* To preserve in this way. *Ex.* Father is fond of *pickled* onions.

picnic *n.* A party of friends having a meal out of doors.

picture *n.* A painting, drawing, etc., exhibiting the resemblance of anything ; any resemblance or representation. *v.* to represent pictorially ; to present an ideal likeness of ; to describe in a vivid manner.

picturesque (*pik*-tewr-*esk*) *adj.* Pretty enough to make a good picture. *Ex.* The black and white cottage was very *picturesque*.

pie *n.* A paste baked with something in or under it ; a mass of types unsorted ; the magpie.

piece (peece) *n.* A separate part or bit of anything. *Ex.* A *piece* of bread.

pierce (peerce) *v.* To make a hole in.

pig *n.* A young swine ; a swine in general ; an oblong mass of unforged metal. *v.* To bring forth pigs ; to act like pigs.

pigeon (*pij*-on) *n.* A bird of the dove family.

pile *n.* A heap ; a large mass of buildings ; a galvanic or voltic battery ; hair ; nap on cloth ; a beam driven into the ground to support some superstructure ; a heraldic figure like a wedge. *v.* To heap ; to amass ; to drive piles into ; to support with piles.

pilgrim *n.* Those who travel to visit a holy place. They go on a *pilgrimage.*

pill *n.* A medicine in the form of a little ball ; anything nauseous to be accepted. *v.* To dose with pills; to form into pills ; to rob ; to plunder.

pillar *n.* A column ; a perpendicular support ; a supporter.

pillow (*pil*-o) *n.* A soft cushion on which to rest one's head in bed.

pilot (*py*-lot) *n.* One who steers a ship or an aeroplane. *Ex.* When the ship came near the rocks, a *pilot* came from the shore to *pilot* (*v.*) her safely into harbour.

pin *n.* A longish piece of metal, wood, etc. used for a fastening, or as a support ; a peg ; a bolt. *v.* To fasten with a pin or pins ; to hold fast, to inclose, to pen or pound.

pinch *v.* To press hard or squeeze ; to nip ; to afflict. *v.* To press painfully ; to be sparing. *n.* A close compression, as with the fingers ; a nip ; a pang ; straits ; a strong iron lever ; as much as is taken by the fingers and thumb ; a small quantity.

pine (1) *n.* An evergreen tree which bears cones. (2) *v.* To grow thin and ill because of sorrow.

pineapple *n.* A fruit like the cone of a pine-tree but different in character ; the plant itself.

pink *n.* A garden flower ; a light rose colour or pigment; the flower or something supremely excellent. *adj.* of a fine light rose colour *v.*.

To work in eyelet-holes; to scallop, to stab; to wink or blink.

pint (*pine*-t) *n.* A measure for liquids. A breakfast cup holds about half a pint.

pious *adj.* Holy.

pipe *n.* A wind-instrument of music; a long tube; a tube with a bowl at one end for tobacco; the windpipe; a call of a bird; a wine measure containing about 105 imperial gallons; to play on a pipe; to whistle. *v* to utter in a high tone; to call by a pipe or whistle.

pistol *n.* A small gun. *Ex.* Old-fashioned *pistols* can be seen in museums.

pit *n.* A hollow in the earth; the shaft of a mine; a vat in tannning, dyeing, etc., a concealed hole for catching wild beasts; a small cavity or depression; part of the floor of a theatre. *v.* To lay in a pit or hole; to mark with little hollows; to set in competition.

pitch (1) *n.* (*a*) The place on which a market stall is set up, or a game is played, is called a pitch. (*b*) A thick black substance like tar, used in making the surface of roads. (2) *v.* To throw. *Ex.* The fireman *pitched* the burning curtain out of the window. To pitch a tent means to set the tent up in position.

pitcher *n.* A large metal or earthenware jug for holding liquid. *Ex.* In Eastern countries, women carry *pitchers* of water on their heads.

pity (*pit*-e) (1) *n.* A kindly feeling for the sorrow or suffering of others. (2) *v.* To feel pity or sympathy for others.

place *n.* An open space in a town; a locality, spot, or site; position; room; an edifice; quarters; a passage in a book; rank; to put or set; to locate; to appoint or set in an office, rank or condition; to invest; to lend.

plague (playg) (1) *n.* A disease that spreads quickly among many people. *Ex.* In the year 1665 the *Great Plague* broke out in London and caused the deaths of 100,000 people. (2) *v.* To annoy or disturb. *Ex.* We were *plagued* by wasps at the picnic.

plain (1) *adj.* (*a*) Without markings or ornament. *Ex.* A piece of *plain* cotton. (*b*) Simple *Ex. Plain* food or clothes. (*c*) Not beautiful. *Ex.* Cousin Alice may be *plain*, but she is kind and nice. (2) *n.* An area of flat land. *Ex.* The American *plains* stretch for hundreds of miles.

plan *n.* The representation of anything on a flat surface; sketch; scheme; project; method; process. *v.* To form a plan or representation of; to scheme. *v.* To form a scheme.

planet *n.* The planets in the sky revolve round the sun. The ones that we see look like stars except that they shine with a clear, steady light and do not twinkle. The Earth is a planet.

plant *n.* One of the living organisms of the vegetable kingdom; an herb; a shoot or slip; the machinery, etc., necessary to carry on a business. *v.* To set in the ground for growth; to set firmly; to establish; to furnish with plants; to set and direct, as cannon; to set plants in the ground.

plaster *n.* (*a*) A mixture of lime, sand and water spread on the inside walls and ceilings of houses. (*b*) A piece of material specially

prepared for placing over a cut or wound. It is often called sticking-plaster.

plaster *n.* One who overlays with plaster.

plastic *adj.* A substance such as clay or wax is plastic when it can be moulded into different shapes. Plastic materials (made of certain chemicals) are sometimes used instead of china for cups and saucers, and instead of rubber for mackintoshes.

plate *n.* A flat piece of metal; gold and silver wrought into utensils; a shallow flattish dish for eatables; an engraved piece of metal for printing; a page of stereotype for printing. To cover with a thin coating of metal, as of silver.

platform *n.* A raised flooring in a hall or in a railway station. *Ex.* John had to go up on the *platform* to receive his prize at school.

play *v.* To do something for amusement; to sport; to gamble; to perform on an instrument of music; to act with free motion; to personate a character *v.* To put in action or motion, to use an instrument of music; to act; to contend against; to perform. *n.* Any exercise for diversion; spot; gaming; action; use; practice a drama, motion; scope, swing.

playful *adj.* Fond of play. *Ex.* Susan's kitten is very *playful*.

playmate *n.* A play-fellow.

plead *v.* To argue in support of or against a claim; to urge; to discuss and defend; to argue; to present an answer to the declaration of a plantiff; to supplicate with earnestness; to urge; to discuss and defend; to argue; to offer in excuse; to allege in a legal defence.

pleasant (*plez*-ant) *adj.* Nice, enjoyable. *Ex.* We had a very *pleasant* day at the sea-side.

please *v.* To excite agreeable sensation or emotions in; to delight; to gratify; to seem good to; to give pleasure; to be kind enough.

pleasure (*plezh*-ur) *n.* Enjoyment, happiness *Ex.* It is always a *pleasure* to hear Nancy singing.

pledge *v.* To promise. *n.* A promise. *Ex.* To *pledge* one's word is to give a solemn promise.

plenty (*plen*-te) *n.* Enough or more than enough. *Ex.* We have *plenty* of apples on our trees. Apples are *plentiful* this year. There is a *plenteous* supply of them.

plot (1) *n* (*a*) A small piece of ground. *Ex.* The *plot* in front of the house contains lovely roses. (*b*) The story of a play, film or book. *Ex.* The *plot* was very exciting. (*c*) A secret plan, usually aiming at harming someone. *Ex.* The Gunpowder *Plot* in 1605 aimed at blowing up the Houses of Parliament. (2) *v.* To make a secret plan.

plough (plou) (1) *v.* To dig up the land with a machine. (2) *n.* The machine that does this. The man who drives the plough is called a *ploughman*.

pluck (1) *n.* Courage, bravery. *Ex.* John showed great *pluck* when he dived into the canal to save the little girl. It was very *plucky* of him. (2) *v.* To pull quickly. *Ex.* Mother *plucked* the feathers of the chicken before cooking it.

plum *n.* آلو بخارا. A fleshy fruit containing a kernel; the tree producing it; a raisin; a handsome sum or fortune generally.

plumber (*plum*-er) *n*. A man who fits and mends water-pipes, gas-pipes. He does the *plumbing* (*plum*-ing).

plume *n*. A large fine feather. The feathers of a bird are its *plumage* (*ploom*-aj).

plunge (plunj) *v*. To push or dive into. *Ex*. James *plunged* into the river ; he loves swimming.

pocket *n*. A sort of bag sewn into one's clothes and used for carrying small things such as handkerchief, money or keys.

poem (*po*-em) *n*. A verse or verses. A piece of *poetry*. Shakespeare, Wordsworth and Keats were famous *poets*. *Ex*. Keats wrote a beautiful *poem* about a nightingale.

poet *n*. The author of a poem ; a person distinguished for poetic talents.

poetry *n*. The language of the imagination or emotions expressed rhythmically ; the artistic expression of thought in emotional language ; whatever appeals to the sense of ideal beauty ; verse ; poems.

point-blank *adj*. Direct. *Ex* I had to ask James *point-blank* "Are you coming or are you not ?"

poison (poyzn) (1) *n*. A substance which will kill, or do serious harm when taken into the body. (2) *v*. To use such a substance—a *poisonous* substance.

Pole *n*. A native of Poland. The language of Poland is Polish (*poh*-lish). *Ex*. There have been some famous *Polish* musicians.

police *n*. The internal government of a community ; a body of civil officers for enforcing order, cleanliness, etc. *v*. To guard or regulate by police.

policeman *n*. An ordinary member of a body of police.

policy (*pol*-is-e) *n*. A plan, a way of acting in business or other affairs of life. *Ex*. The manager's *policy* was to keep the workmen happy and contented, besides seeing that they worked well.

polish (*pol*-ish) (1) *n*. A smooth shining surface, or a substance which makes a surface shine, such as shoe-polish (2) *v* To make a surface shine. *Ex*. To *polish* the sideboard.

polite (po-*lite*) *adj*. *Ex*. Our grocer is always *polite* and pleasant even when he is very busy. He always answers mother *politely*. He shows *politeness*.

politic *adj*. Showing policy ; adapted to the public prosperity ; sagacious ; subtle ; well devised *Body Politic*, the citizens of a state.

political (po-*lit*-ik-al) *adj*. Connected with the work of government which is done by Parliament. *Ex*. The two largest *political* parties (groups of people) in our Parliament are the Conservatives and the Socialists. The members of Parliament are *politicians* (pol-it-*ish*-ans) and make many speeches on *politics*, explaining how they think the work of government should be done.

pond *n*. A large pool of water. *Ex*. Three ducks were swimming in the *pond*.

pool *n*. A small quantity of water on the ground, or a very small pond.

poor *adj*. Having very little money. *Ex*. That old woman is very *poor*. A way of expressing pity. *Ex*. The *poor* Princess was ill and could not go to the ball.

Pope *n*. The Head of the Roman

Catholic Church, who lives in the Vatican Palace in Rome.

popular (*pop*-yoo-lar) *adj.* Liked by many people. *Ex.* A *popular* song, or a boy who is *popular* at school. He has *popularity.*

population (*pop*-yoo-*lay*-shon) *n.* The number of people living in a village, town or country. *Ex.* The *population* of England is about forty-four millions (44,000,000).

porch *n.* A doorway that has a roof built over it. *Ex.* I waited in the *porch* till the shower was over.

pork *n.* The flesh of the pig when used as food.

port *n* (*a*) A harbour of ships. (*b*) A kind of red wine that comes from Portugal. (*c*) The side of a ship to one's left, looking forward.

porter *n.* One who is employed to carry parcels or luggage, or to act as doorkeeper of a building. *Ex.* There are *porters* at all large stations.

portion (*por*-shon) *n.* A part or share of something. *Ex.* Tommy got a small *portion* of cheese.

position (po-*zish*-on) *n.* (*a*) The place where something is. *Ex.* The lighthouse is in a fine *position* on the top of the high cliffs. (*b*) The way som thing or someone is placed. *Ex.* The photographer told mother to get into a comfortable *position* before he took the photograph. (*c*) A job or employment. *Ex.* Mr. A has a good *position* as manager of tl e business.

possess (po-*zess*) *v.* To have as one's own. *Ex.* We *possess* a dog. He is a much-loved *possession.*

possible *adj.* A thing is possible when it can exist, or happen or be done. *Ex.* The prisoner saw only one *possible* way of escaping. It was the only *possibility* He had found every other method *impossible*.

post (poast) (1) *n.* (*a*) A long piece of wood or metal fixed into the ground, such as a lamp-post or telegraph post. (*b*) The carrying and delivering of letters. The *Post* Office does this, and employs *postmen.* (*c*) Same as position in the sense of job or employment. (2) *v.* To send by post; to put a letter in a post-office box. You must put a *postage* stamp on the letter. You can send money by a *Postal* Order.

Posterity *n.* Descendants; succeeding generations.

pot *n.* A metallic or earthenware vessel more deep than broad; the quantity contained in a pot; a sort of paper of small-sized sheets. *v* To put in a pot; to preserve in pots; to plant in a pot of earth.

potato *n.* A well known plant and its esculent tuber.

potentate *n.* One who possesses great power or sway; a monarch.

potter *n.* One who makes earthen-ware vessels or crockery. *v.* To busy one's self about trifles; to move slowly.

pottery *n.* Dishes or ornaments made of clay that has been baked in an oven till hard.

poultry (*pole*-tre) *n.* Birds, such as hens, turkeys and geese, kept to produce eggs, or to be eaten.

pound *n.* A standard weight of 12 ounces Troy or 16 ounces avoirdupois; a money of account, consisting of twenty shillings; an inclosure for cattle. *v.* To confine in a public pound; to beat; to pulverize.

pour *v.* To flow or issue forth in a stream ; to let flow out or in ; to emit ; to throw in profusion.

powder *n.* A dry substance of minute particles ; dust ; gunpowder ; *v.* To reduce to fine particles ; to sprinkle with powder ; to corn, as meat ; to fall to dust ; to use powder for the hair or face.

poverty (*pov*-er-te) *n.* The state of being very poor. *Ex.* The prisoner stated that his family suffered great *poverty*.

power *n.* The ability to do things oneself or make other people do them. Strength. *Ex.* We speak of the *power* of a statesman, or of the police, or of a machine. One who has great power or strength is *powerful*. One who is weak is *powerless*.

practical *adj.* Sensible, able to do useful things. *Ex.* Mary is very *practical*. She can sew and cook and mend a puncture in her bicycle tyre.

practice (*prak*-tis) *n.* (*a*) Regular habit or way of doing things. *Ex.* It is Uncle John's *practice* to have a little walk every morning. (*b*) The work that a doctor does for his patients is called his *practice*.

practise (*prak*-tis) *v.* To do a thing regularly so as to do it better. *Ex.* Susan *practises* on the piano every day.

praise (praze) *v.* & *n.* (*a*) To speak well of. *Ex.* John was *praised* (or had *praise*) for his good home-work. (*b*) To give honour and glory to, as to *praise* God.

pray *v.* To ask God for something, or to thank Him. The words we then use are a *prayer*.

preach (preech) *v.* To give a sermon in church. The one who does this is a *preacher*.

preamble *n.* An introduction ; introductory part of a statute.

precious (*presh*-us) *adj.* Valuable. Worth a great deal. Much loved. *Ex* Jewels are *precious* stones. To a mother, all her children are very *precious*.

prefer *v.* To bring or lay before ; to present, as a petition, etc., to exalt ; to set higher in estimation ; to choose rather.

prepare *v.* To make ready. *Ex.* Mother has gone to *prepare* the supper. She is *prepared* to go to Karachi to-morrow if necessary. She has made her *preparations*.

prescribe *v.* To lay down authoritatively for direction ; to appoint ; to direct to be used as a remedy ; to give directions ; to give medical directions ; to become of no validity through lapse of time.

present (pre-*zent*) *v.* To give, usually on some special occasion. *Ex.* The headmaster *presented* the prizes to the boys in the Sixth Form. A *present* (*prez*-ent) is something that is given, a gift, such as a birthday present.

present (*prez*-ent) *adj.* (*a*) To be present is to be at a certain place. When you are present at school you are not absent. (*b*) The *present* time is the time we are in now. If you say you will do a thing *presently*, you mean you will do it in a short time from now.

presence *n.* State of being present ; existence in a certain place ; company ; sight ; port ; mien ; the person of a great personage, an appearance or apparition ; readiness.

preserve *v.* (*a*) To keep safely. *Ex.* His life was *preserved* though he was in great danger. To preserve fruit is to make it into jam or jelly. Then it is called *preserves*.

preside (pre-*zide*) *v.* To preside at a meeting is to be in charge of it —to be "in the chair." *Ex.* The boy who *presides* at the meetings of the College Union is *President* of the society.

press *v.* (*a*) To squeeze. *Ex.* To *press* the juice from a lemon. (*b*) To make smooth. *Ex.* To *press* a handkerchief with an iron. If someone presses your hand, you feel the *pressure* (*presh*-er).

presume (pre-*sume*) *v.* To suppose. *Ex.* I *presume* you saw St. Paul's when you were in London ?

pretend (pre-*tend*) *v.* (*a*) To play at being something one is not. *Ex.* Tommy *pretends* he is a bus-driver. (*b*) To do the same sort of thing in earnest, in order to deceive. *Ex.* The burglar *pretended* he had come to clean the windows. It was a wicked *pretence* (pre-*tence*) (*n.*).

pretty *adj.* Having diminutive beauty ; of a pleasing form without dignity ; comely ; neatly arranged ; effectedly nice; foppish; moderately.

prevail *v.* To gain the victory or superiority ; to be in force ; to succeed ; to gain over by persuasion.

prevent (pre-*vent*) *v.* To hinder or make impossible. *Ex.* Mother fastens a strap round baby to *prevent* him from climbing out of his pram.

previous (*pre-ve-ous*) *adj.* Earlier. *Ex.* Their *previous* visit to Margate had been pleasant.

prey (pray) *n.* An animal that is hunted and killed by another. A bird of prey is one such as the eagle or vulture which hunts other creatures, usually for food. *Ex.* Zebras are often the *prey* of lions and leopards.

price *n.* The value which a seller sets on his goods ; cost ; value ; worth. *v.* To set a price on ; to ask the price of.

pride *n.* State or quality of being proud ; inordinate self-esteem ; a cause of pride ; glory or delight ; highest pitch ; splendid show. *v.* To indulge pride ; to value.

priest *n.* A man who officiates in sacred offices ; a clergyman above a deacon and below a bsihop.

primary *adj.* First ; chief ; first in time ; original ; elementary ; radical. *n.* That which stands first or highest in importance ; a large feather of a bird's wing.

prince *n.* A chief ruler ; the son of a king or emperor ; The chief of any body of men.

princess *n.* A female of the rank of a prince ; the consort of a prince.

principal (*prin*-si-pal) *adj.* Chief, most important. *Ex.* The *principal* building in our little village is the church. The head of a college is called the *principal* (*n.*).

print *v.* To mark by pressure ; to stamp ; to form or copy by pressure, as from types, *etc.*, to use or practise typography ; to publish. *n.* A mark made by pressure ; an engraving, etc., state

of being printed ; a newspaper ; printed calico.

printer. One who prints ; more especially, the printer of letter press.

printing-press *n.* A machine on which books and magazines are printed.

prison *n.* A building in which those who break the law are kept for a certain time. *Ex.* A burglar who is caught is usually sent to *prison*. He becomes a *prisoner*.

private (*pry*-vate) (1) *n.* A soldier of the lowest rank. *Ex.* Uncle Tom joined the Army as a *private*, but he is now a sergent. (2) *adj.* (*a*) Concerning oneself only. *Ex.* One's *private* affairs. (*b*) Secret. *Ex.* The contents of the letter were *private*.

privilege (*priv*-il-ej) *n.* A special favour or kindness or pleasure. *Ex.* The vicar lets us have the *privilege* of playing in his garden sometimes.

prize *n.* That which is seized ; that which is deemed a valuable acquisition ; a reward ; to value highly.

probable *adj.* Likely to happen. *Ex.* It is *probable* that we shall go to the seaside this summer. We shall *probably* go. It is a *probability*.

problem *n.* A question that is difficult to answer or to make up one's mind about. *Ex.* A *problem* in arithmetic. It was a *problem* how to feed the children when food was scarce.

proceed (pro-*seed*) *v.* To move forward. To go on, continue. *Ex.* Mother *proceeded* with her shopping, although it had begun to rain.

process *n.* A proceeding or moving forward ; gradual progress; course ; method of manipulation ; lapse ; course of legal procedings ; a projecting portion.

procession (pro-*sesh*-on) *n.* A number of people proceeding together in an orderly way. *Ex.* A long *procession* marched to the Assembly chamber.

proclaim (pro-*klame*) *v.* To announce publicly. *Ex.* A public holiday was *proclaimed* in honour of the Coronation.

procure (pro-*kewr*) *v.* To get, to obtain. *Ex.* Father has at last *procured* the kind of wireless set he wants.

produce (pro-*dewce*) *v.* To make, or to grow, or to bring forth so that it can be seen. *Ex.* Our garden *produces* many nice vegetables. Mary *produced* a clean handkerchief to wrap round the cut finger. What a garden (or a farm) produces is called its *produce* (*prod*-yewce). *Ex.* The farmer sells his *produce* at the market.

product *n.* That which is produced, result ; effect ; number resulting from multiplication.

profession (pro-*fesh*-on) *n.* An occupation which requires special training and education for it. *Ex.* A doctor's work (medicine) is a *profession*, and so is that of a lawyer. A *professor* is a learned (*lern*-ed) teacher in a university or college.

profit (*prof*-it) (1) *n.* Something (usually money) that has been gained. If you buy something for a shilling and sell it for one and sixpence, you have made a *profit* of sixpence. Anything that brings in a profit is *profitable*.

progress (*pro*-gress) (1) *n.* Going forward, improvement. *Ex.* The

building of the house made great *progress* last week (2) *v.* (*progress*). To go forward. *Ex* The explorers could *progress* no farther through the jungle.

prohibit (pro-*hib*-it) *v.* To forbid *Ex.* Smoking is *prohibited* in the dining-room of the hotel.

prolong (pro-*long*) *v.* To make longer. *Ex.* Father was too busy to *prolong* the conversation.

prominent *adj.* Easily seen, jutting out, noticeable, distinguished. *Ex.* The most *prominent* building in the High Street is the new cinema. The Mayor is a *prominent* citizin.

promise (*prom*-is) *v.* To agree to do a certain thing. *Ex.* Tommy *promised* to be home by 4 o'clock. He gave me his *promise* (*n.*) that he would do so. A *promising* child is one who seems likely to do well. In the same way, we can say that fruit b'ossom looks promising.

promote (pro-*mote*) *v.* To raise to a higher rank or position. *Ex.* A boy or girl could be *promoted* to prefect at school. A corporal in the army could be promoted to sergeant. They get *promotion*.

promoter *n.* One who or that which promotes ; an encourager ; one engaged in getting up a joint-stock company.

prompt *adj.* Ready ; unhesitating ; done without delay. *v.* to incite to action ; to tell a speaker words he forgets ; to suggest.

proof *n.* Something which tests ; trial; what serves to convince; evidence; firmness; a certain standard of strength in spirit; an impression in printing for correction ; early impression of an engraving. Impenetrable, able to resist.

pronounce (pro-*nounce*) *v.* To say clearly. The way you pronounce words is your *pronunciation* (pro-*nun*-se-*ay*-shon). *Ex.* Baby cannot *pronounce* words very well yet, but her *pronunciation* is improving.

proper (*prop*-er) *adj.* Correct. *Ex.* Please hold your spoon in the *proper* way. Hold it *properly*.

property *n.* (*a*) Things that belong to you are your property, such as your toys or your books. If a man buys some land, or a house, that is his property and he is the *proprietor* (pro-*pry*-e-tor) of it.

prophet *n.* One who foretells future.

proprietor *n.* An owner ; one who has legal right to anything.

propose *v.* To offer or suggest. *Ex.* Mother *proposes* to take me to see Aunt Lucy to-morrow.

prospect (*pros*-pekt) *n.* (*a*) A view. *Ex* The *prospect* from the hilltop was grand (*b*) What one expects to happen, or seems likely to happen. *Ex* What are the *prospects* of good weather to-morrow ? The headmaster says James will have good *prospects* if he becomes an engineer.

prospectus (pros-*pek*-tus) *n.* A printed statement giving details about a school or business naming the good points about it.

prosper (*pros*-per) *v.* To get on well and be successful. *Ex.* After about a year it could be seen that the new school was going to *prosper*. A person who prospers and makes money is said to be *prosperous*.

prosperity *n.* Flourishing state, satisfactory progres ; success.

protect *v.* To guard or keep safe. *Ex.* The henhouse had to be

protected from prowling foxes. We wear mackintoshes as *protection* from the rain.

protest (pro-*test*) *v*. To object or complain about something. *Ex*. The village people *protested* against the removal of the pump on the green. They made a *protest* (*pro*-test) (*n*.) about it.

proud *adj*. Having a high opinion of one's self ; haughty ; of fearless spirit ; ostentatious ; magnificent.

prove To try by experiment ; to test ; to establish the truth or reality of ; to demonstrate ; to obtain probate of ; to be found by experience or trial ; to turn out to be.

proverb (*prov*-erb) *n*. A well-known saying which states a simple truth. *Ex*. It is never too late to mend.

provide *v*. To supply or prepare for. *Ex* Our hens *provide* us with plenty of eggs. Father says he must save money to *provide* for his old age as well as our education. He must make *provision* (pro-*visj*-on) for it. The word *provisions* is used for a supply of food. *Ex*. We took plenty of *provisions* with us on our camping holiday.

providence *n*. Foresight ; the care which God exercises ever his creatures ; God ; a providential circumstance.

province *n*. A territory at some distance from the metropolis ; a large political division ; sphere of action ; department.

prune *v*. To trim, to cut or lop off ; to clear from superfluities.

public *adj*. Not private ; pertaining to a whole community open or free to all ; common ; notorious. *n*. The people, indefinitely ; **in public** in open view.

public-house *n*. An inn ; or a house where beer, wine and spirits are sold and drunk. The man who keeps such a house is a *publican*.

publication (pub-lik-*ay*-shon) *n*. Any book or magazine that has been published is a publication.

publish *v*. (*a*) To prepare books, magazines or other printed matter, and send them out for sale in shops. (*b*) To make a statement in a newspaper.

pudding (*pood*-ing) *n*. A pudding is usually a sweet dish, made of flour, eggs, fruit and butter, and eaten as the last part of luncheon or dinner.

puff *n*. A sudden emission of breath ; a whiff ; a short blast of wind ; a puff-ball ; piece of light pastry ; a consciously exaggerated commendation. *v*. To give a quick blast with the mouth ; to breathe hard after exertion ; to drive with a blast ; to inflate ; to praise extravagantly.

pull *v*. To draw towards one ; to tug ; to rend ; to pluck ; to gather ; to draw. *n*. Act of pulling ; a twitch ; act of rowing a boat ; a drink ; a struggle.

pulse *n*. The beating of the heart which can be felt in the wrist.

pump *n*. A machine for lifting water to a higher level. *Ex*. There is a *pump* in the kitchen of the farmhouse. The farmer's wife has to *pump* (*v*.) all the water she uses.

pumpkin *n*. A plant and its fruit, a kind of gourd or vegetable marrow.

punish (*pun*-ish) *v*. To punish a person is to make him suffer in some way because he has done something wrong. To give him

a *punishment.* You may punish a child by smacking him. A thief may be punished by being sent to prison.

pupil (*pew*-pil) *n.* A boy or girl being taught by a teacher.

purchase (*pur*-chas) (1) *v.* To buy. What one purchases is a purchase (n.).

pure *adj.* Clean, fresh, unspoiled, without sin. *Ex.* We speak of *pure* water, a *pure* heart. The state of being pure is *purity* (*pew*-ri-te). To make pure is to *purify.*

purple *adj.* & *n.* A colour produced by mixing red and blue. Emperors and kings used to wear purple robes in olden times.

purpose (*pur*-pos) *n.* The reason, or what is aimed at. *Ex.* The *purpose* of the ship's voyage was to find a new way to India. To do a thing on *purpose* or *purposely* is to do it intentionally and not by mistake.

purse *n.* A small bag or receptacle for money; money collected as a prize or a present; finances. *v.* To put in a purse, to pucker.

pursue (purs-*yoo*) *v.* To chase or follow. *Ex.* We watched the farmer *pursue* his runaway horse. We watched the *pursuit* of the horse.

push *v.* To press against with force; to thrust or shove; to enforce; to urge; to prosecute energetically; to make a thrust or effort; to force one's way. *n.* Act of pushing, vigorous effort; emergency; enterprise.

put *v.* To place in any position or situation; apply; to propose or propound; to state in words.

puzzle *v.* To perplex; to entangle; to be bewildered; perplexity; something to try ingenuity.

qualify *v.* To determine the quantity of; to modify with regard to quantity.

quality (*kwol*-it-e) *n.* The quality of a thing is its goodness or badness. *Ex.* This cloth is of very good *quality.* The *qualities* of people are of many kinds, such as kindness, laziness, honesty or courage.

quantity (*kwon*-tit-te) *n.* The amount, or bulk, or number. *Ex.* A large *quantity* of potatoes went into the sack.

quarantine *n.* The period during which a ship suspected of being infected is obliged to forbear all intercourse with a port; to cause to perform quarantine.

quarrel (kwor-el) *v.* & *n.* To disagree angrily with someone. *Ex.* Two men in the street were *quarrelling.* It was not a very serious *quarrel* (*n.*). People who are *quarrelsome* (inclined to quarrel) are not much liked.

quart (kwort) *n.* A measure of liquid, equal to two pints. *Ex.* Mary fetched a *quart* of milk from the dairy.

quarter *n.* When anything has been divided into four equal parts, each of the parts is a quarter. *Ex.* Mary left a *quarter* of her apple on her plate.

Queen *n.* The wife of a king; a female sovereign; a pre-eminent woman; the sovereign of a swarm of bees; a play-ing-card; a piece at chess.

queer (kweer) *adj.* Strange, odd. *Ex.* We heard a *queer* story about a dog and a monkey.

quench (kwensh) *v.* To put out a fire or flame with water, or to put an end to thirst by drinking.

question *n.* Act of asking; an interrogation; inquiry; discussion; subject of discussion. *v.* To ask a question; to doubt, to interrogate; to challenge.

queue (kew) *n.* A number of people (or cars) in a line behind each other. *Ex.* There was a long *queue* for the last bus.

quick *adj.* Alive; brisk; swift, keen; sensitive; irritable. A growing plant, usually hawthorn, for hedges; the living flesh; sensitiveness.

quicken *v.* To revive; to resuscitate; to cheer; to increase the speed of; to sharpen; to stimulate; to become alive; to move quickly or more quickly.

quiet (*kwy*-et) *adj.* Without (or with little) noise or movement. *Ex.* Mother had a *quiet* afternoon. She enjoyed the *quietness.*

quit *adj.* Discharged, released; free; clear; to discharge; to rid; to acquit; to leave; to abandon.

quite (kwite) *adv.* Completely, altogether. *Ex.* Baby is *quite* happy with his rattle. I have not *quite* finished my homework.

rabbi (*rab-by*) *n.* A Jewish priest or teacher of the law.

rabbit *n.* A burrowing rodent allied to the hare.

rack (1) *n.* (*a*) A shelf for holding plates or other articles. (*b*) A machine used for torturing people in olden times. (2) *v.* To be racked with pain means to suffer great pain. To rack one's brains means to think hard and try to remember something.

radio (*ray*-de-o) *n.* This word is often used to mean a wireless set.

radish *n.* A plant, the young root of which is eaten raw; as a salad.

radium (*ray*-de-um) *n.* A very rare metal which gives out rays that help to heal certain diseases.

rag *n.* A rough separate fragment; a tattered cloth; a shred; a tatter.

rage (raje) *n.* & *v.* Great anger. *Ex.* To be in a *rage.* To *rage* about something. To be *enraged.*

rail (*rale*) *n.* A metal or wooden bar used as part of a fence or staircase. Trains run on rails.

railroad *n.* A railway.

railway *n.* A road having iron rails laid in paralled lines on which carriages run; all the land, buildings, and machinery required for traffic on the road.

rain *n.* The moisture of the atmosphere falling in drops from the clouds; to fall like rain; to pour or shower down.

rainbow (*rain*-bo) *n.* An arch of light in various colours, sometimes seen in the sky when the sun is shining after rain.

rainy *adj.* Wet; showery.

raise *v.* To cause to rise; to lift upward; to excite; to recall from death; to stir up; to construct; to levy; to inflate; to cause to be relinquished.

rake (1) *n.* (*a*) A tool with long handle and sharp prongs, used for gathering loose leaves or weeds, or making the soil of a garden smooth. (*b*) A person of bad habits and bad character. (2) *v.* To pull together as with a rake. *Ex.* *Rake* the ashes of the fire together before you go to bed.

ranch (ransh) *n.* A large sheep or cattle farm, especially in N. America or Australia.

range (raynj) *n.* (*a*) A line of hills or mountains. (*b*) A kitchen stove for cooking and (usually) providing hot water.

rank (1) *n.* (*a*) A row of things (such as taxi-cabs) or of people, especially soldiers. (*b*) A position of importance. *Ex.* An Earl is a man of high *rank*, and so is a Duke. (2) *v.* *Ex.* An Admiral *ranks* higher than a Captain. (3) *adj.* Having a bad sour smell or taste. *Ex.* The butter smelt *rank*, and mother could use it only for cooking.

rapid *adj.* Very quick. *Ex.* Skating was stopped by a *rapid* thaw and the ice soon broke up.

rapture (*rap*-tewr) *n.* Great happiness or enjoyment. *Ex.* Tommy gazed in *rapture* at his Christmas presents.

rare *adj.* Not dense or compact ; spares ; not frequent ; uncommon ; very valuable ; underdone, as meat.

rat *n.* An animal like a mouse, but much larger.

rate *n.* Proportion ; standard ; degree ; degree of speed ; price ; in certain order ; a tax ; assesment ; to fix the value, rank, or degree of ; to class.

ration (*rash*-on) *n.* A fixed allowance of food or other necessities. *Ex.* The *ration* of water for the shipwrecked men was very small. It had to be strictly *rationed* (*v.*)

rating *n.* بحریہ کا سپاہی

rather *v.* More readily ; preferably ; more properly ; somewhat.

raven (*ray*-ven) *n.* A black bird like a very large crow.

raw *adj.* Not cooked. *Ex.* Most people enjoy eating *raw* apples, but could not eat raw potatoes.

ray *n.* A line, or beam, of light. *Ex.* A *ray* of light from the lighthouse shone out across the dark sea.

razor (*raz*-zor) *n.* A kind of very sharp knife used for shaving a man's beard or moustache.

reach (reetsh) *v.* (*a*) To stretch out the hand to get. *Ex.* *Reach* me the book from the table. (*b*) To arrive at. *Ex.* We *reached* Lahore about eleven o'clock. When we say a thing is within *reach* (*n*) we mean we can reach it.

read *v.* To peruse ; to utter aloud, following something written or printed ; to explain, to peruse ; to study ; to stand written or printed.

reader *n.* One who reads ; one who reads aloud prayers, lectures, etc., one who corrects for the press a reading book.

ready (*red*-e) *adj.* Prepared or willing. *Ex.* Dinner is *ready*. Harry is always *ready* to help.

readily *v.* In a ready manner ; quickly ; promptly ; easily cheerfully.

real *adj.* Actual ; true ; genuine; in law pertaining to things fixed or immovable, as lands and houses.

really *v.* Actually ; in truth ; in fact ; indeed.

realise (*re*-al-*ize*) *v.* To understand the truth of. *Ex.* Baby does not *realise* what Christmas means yet.

realm (relm). A kingdom.

reap *v.* To cut the corn and gather in the harvest.

rear (1) *n.* The back part. *Ex.* We were sitting in the *rear* of the train. (2) *v.* (*a*) To grow or nourish

or bring up. *Ex.* To *rear* puppies or to *rear* a family of children. (*b*) To get up on the hind legs as a horse does when frightened.

reason (*ree*-zon) *n.* (*a*) The power of thinking and understanding. To lose one's reason is to become insane. (*b*) The cause or explanation. *Ex.* We never heard the *reason* for all the noise. A thing that is fair and sensible is said to be *reasonable*. *Ex.* Mother bought the chair at a *reasonable* price.

rebel (re-*bel*) *v.* To resist orders. A boy might rebel against the rules of his school, and a man or a whole group of people might rebel against the law of the country. They would then be *rebels* (*reb*-els) (*n.*). A very large number of rebels might make a *rebellion*.

recall (re-*cawl*) *v.* (*a*) To call back. *Ex.* The headmaster *recalled* one of the boys as he was leaving the room. (*b*) To call back to memory, to remember. *Ex.* Can you *recall* the names of the last four Kings of England ?

receipt (re-*seet*) *n.* (*a*) The act of receiving. *Ex.* Immediately after *receipt* of the letter, mother went to London. (*b*) A written statement that money has been received. *Ex.* Mother paid the rent and was given a *receipt* for it.

receive (re-*seev*) *v.* To get or accept. *Ex.* Mother hopes to *receive* a letter from her sister soon.

recent (*re*-sent) *adj.* Having happened only a short time ago. *Ex.* Aunt Mary gave us the news of her *recent* holiday. She had *recently* been to Bournemouth.

recite (re-*site*) *v.* To say aloud from memory. *Ex.* After tea, Mary *recited* a poem to us. We enjoyed her *recitation* (res-i-*tay*-shon).

reckon *v.* To count up. *Ex.* The farmer quickly *reckoned* in his mind what price he should ask for the cow.

recognise (*rek*-og-nize) *v.* To know again. *Ex.* I did not *recognise* Mrs. Smith in her new hat.

recommend (*rek*-om-*end*) *v.* To praise, to speak favourably of. *Ex.* Can you *recommend* a good book for me to read ?

reconcile (*rek*-on-*sile*) *v.* To make friends again after a quarrel. *Ex.* John was glad to be *reconciled* to his cousin Frank after their little quarrel.

record (re-*kord*) *v.* To state in writing or in print, or on a gramophone record. *Ex.* Many schoolboys *record* numbers of cars or trains. They keep a *record* (*rek*-ord) (*n.*) of them. A *record* (*adj.*) performance is the best of its kind.

recover (re-*kuv*-er) *v.* (*a*) To get back what was lost. *Ex.* John soon *recovered* his good temper. (*b*) To get better after an illness or accident. *Ex.* Baby has *recovered* from measles ; we are all delighted about her good *recovery*.

red-handed *adj.* Caught in the very act of doing wrong. *Ex.* A burglar might be caught *red-handed* while breaking open a safe.

reduce (re-*dewce*) *v.* To make less. *Ex.* The draper *reduced* the price of the tea-cloth. Mother got it at a *reduced* price. The draper made a *reduction* (re-*duk*-shon) in the price.

reel *n* (*a*) A sort of wooden tube, on which cotton thread or string is wound. *Ex.* Mother

sent me to buy a *reel* of black cotton. (*b*) A Scottish dance.

refer (re-*fer*) *v*. (*a*) To mention. *Ex*. The preacher *referred* to Jonah in his sermon. (*b*) To pass on, or to turn to, for information. *Ex*. John could not answer my question and *referred* me to father. The preacher made a *reference* to Jonah.

refine (re-*fine*) *v*. To make finer or better. *Ex*. The gold dug up from the mine was not pure, and had to be *refined*. A *refined* (*adj*) person is one who has good and pleasant manners, and is not vulgar. Such a person has *refinement*.

reflect (re *flect*) *v*. (*a*) To throw back light from a polished surface such as a mirror. (*b*) To think. *Ex*. Grandmother often *reflects* on the time when she was young. You can see your *reflections* in the mirror, and grandmother enjoys her *reflections* of the past.

reform (re-*form*) *v*. To make better or to become better. *Ex*. There are people who try to *reform* men who have been in prison for committing crimes.

refuge (*ref*-yewj) *n*. A place of shelter or safety. *Ex*. The little harbour was a safe *refuge* in a storm. One who takes refuge (usually in another country than his own) is a *refugee* (*ref*-yew-*jee*).

refuse (re-*fewz*) *v*. To say "No" to what has been asked. *Ex* The workman was dismissed for *refusing* to obey orders. He lost his job because of his *refusal*.

regain (re-*gane*) *v*. To get back. *Ex*. Mother soon *regained* her health after the holiday.

regard (1) *n*. Affection or good wishes. *Ex*. I have a great *regard* fer Helen. One often sends "kind regards" in a letter. (2) *v*. To look at or consider. *Ex*. I *regard* Helen as my best friend.

region (*re*-jon) *n*. A part of the world or of a country. A district. *Ex*. The far north of Canada is a cold and desolate *region*.

register *n*. An official record ; a roll ; a book for special entries of fact; device for indicating work done by machinery, musical compass, to record.

regret (re-*gret*) *n*. Sorrow. *Ex*. There was great *regret* in the village at the doctor's death. Everyone *regretted* his death.

regular (*reg*-yoo-lar) *adj*. Happening at the arranged or expected time. *Ex*. There is a *regular* train service to Gujrat. The trains run *regularly*—with great *regularity* (reg-yoo-*lar*-ity).

regulation (reg-yoo-*lay*-shon) *n*. A rule that must be obeyed. It is a *regulation* on the railways that every passenger must have a ticket.

reign (rane) *v*. To rule as king (or queen). *Ex*. Queen Victoria *reigned* for sixty-four years. She had a *reign* (*n*.) of sixty-four years.

reject (re-*jekt*) *v*. To throw out or refuse to have. *Ex*. Mother *rejected* a bowl in the china shop, because it was cracked.

rejoice *v*. To be happy and glad. *Ex* The people *rejoiced* when the Prince returned home. There was great *rejoicing*.

relate *v*. To tell, as to relate a story.

relation (re-*lay*-shon) *n*. One who is connected with the family, such as cousin, uncle or grand-

father. Relations are also called *relatives* (*rel*-a-tivs).

release (re-*leece*) *v.* To set free. *Ex.* The prisoner was *released* after a month. He was thankful for his *release* (*n.*)

relief (re-*leef*) *n.* Help or freedom from suffering. *Ex.* It was a *relief* to know that Tommy was recovering from his illness Mother got *relief* from toothache when the dentist extracted her tooth. He *relieved* her toothache.

religion (re-*lij*-on) *n.* A way of worshipping. Faith in God. *Ex.* The *religion* in Pakistan is mainly Islam.

religious *adj.* Pertaining to religion ; teaching religion, used in worship ; devout ; scrupulously faithful.

remain *v.* To stay or continue *Ex.* The weather *remains* very cold. What is left over is the *remainder*. *Ex.* After making the dress, mother made the *remainder* of the silk into a little bag. After dinner, the *remains* were collected for the hens.

remark *v.* To say or to notice. *Ex.* The grocer *remarked* that it was a fine day. He made that *remark* (*n.*) A thing that is very noticeable or unusual is *remarkable*.

remedy (*rem*-e-de) *n.* A cure. *Ex.* The doctor gave me a *remedy* for my cough.

remember *v.* To keep in mind ; not to forget. *Ex* *Remember* to post this letter. A thing which helps one not to forget is a *remembrance*. *Ex.* Susan is keeping a pretty shell as a *remembrance* of her holiday at the seaside.

remind (re-*mined*) *v.* To remind a person of something is to make him remember it. *Ex.* Please *remind* me to order some bread from the baker. Give me a *reminder* about it or I shall forget.

remote (re-*mote*) *adj.* Far away, or in a lonely position. *Ex.* Uncle John lives in a *remote* village in the Highlands of Scotland.

remove (re-*moove*) *v.* To take away, or to move away *Ex.* A boy should *remove* his cap before entering a room. We used to live in London but have *removed* to Manchester. Mother found the *removal* (re-*moov*-al) very tiring.

render *v.* To give in return ; to give back ; to present ; to afford to invest with qualities ; to translate ; to interpret ; to clarify as tallow.

renew (re-*new*) *v.* To make new again, or to get something new instead. *Ex.* This carpet is much worn and will have to be *renewed* soon.

renown *n.* Fame, glory, great praise. *Ex.* Captain Cook, who made important voyages in the South Seas, was a sailor of great *renown*.

rent *n.* Money, etc., payable yearly for the use of lands or tenements ; a tear ; a schism. *v.* To let on lease ; to hold on condition of paying rent.

repay *v.* To pay back or again; to refund ; to requite.

repair *v.* To mend.

repeat *v.* To say or do again. *Ex.* Tommy *repeated* the poem very nicely. *Repeatedly* (re-*peet*-ed-le) means often. *Ex.* I have told you *repeatedly* not to stay out in the rain.

repent *v.* To be sorry for wrong

that one has done. To be *repentant*. *Ex.* When father saw that Tommy was *repentant* for breaking the window, he did not punish him. Tommy showed real *repentance*.

reply (re-*ply*) *v.* Answer, either in speech or writing. You can make a *reply* (*n.*).

report *v.* To describe or make known what has happened. You can make a report (*n.*) of it. *Ex.* The local paper printed a *report* of the flower-show. This was written by a *reporter*.

repose *n.* & *v.* Rest. *Ex.* You can enjoy *repose* (*n.*) after hard work, or you can *repose* (*v.*) on a sofa when you are tired.

represent (*rep*-re-*zent*) *v.* To act or appear either on the stage, or instead of someone else in real life. *Ex.* John *represented* Old Mother Hubbard. At the Cathedral service, the Admiral *represented* Her Majesty the Queen. In our charades the sofa *represented* the deck of a ship. A *representative* (*rep*-re-*zen*-ta-tiv) is one specially chosen to act for someone else. *Ex.* Anyone who could not attend the annual meeting of the club was asked to send a *representative*.

reproach (re-*proatsh*) *v.* To blame. *Ex.* Mother *reproached* Nancy for not holding baby's hand at the crossing.

republic (re-*pub*-lik) *n.* A country which is ruled not by an Emperor or a King, but by a man chosen by the people. France is a republic and so is North America.

republican *adj.* Pertaining to or consisting of a republic—one who favours republican government.

reputation *n.* Character derived from public opinion, repute; good name, honour; fame.

request (re-*kwest*) *v.* To ask for. *Ex.* When the first song was over, the audience *requested* another. The singer granted the *request* (*n*).

require (re-*kwire*) *v.* To need. *Ex* John *requires* a new bell for his bicycle.

rescue (*res*-kew) *v.* To save. *Ex.* All the people in the burning house were *rescued* in time. The *rescuers* worked very hard to save them.

resemble (re-*zem*-bl) *v.* To look like. *Ex.* The twins do not *resemble* each other very much. The *resemblance* between them is not great.

reserve (re-*zerv*) (1) *n.* Reserve is the opposite of talkativeness. A *reserved* person does not talk a great deal, sometimes because he is shy. (2) *v.* To put aside, or keep back, for a special purpose. *Ex* The best blossoms were *reserved* for the flower show.

reside (re-*zide*) *v.* To live in a place. *Ex.* Our doctor has gone to *reside* in York. His *residence* (*rez*-i-dens) is quite near York Minster.

resign (re-*zine*) *v.* To give up one's position or work. *Ex.* The headmaster has *resigned* because of ill-health. He handed in his *resignation* (rez-ig-*nay*-shon) a week ago. To be *resigned* (*adj.*) is to bear something without complaining. *Ex.* Tommy seems quite *resigned* to having his tonsils taken out.

resist (re-*zist*) *v.* To oppose or be against, or to use force against. *Ex.* The prisoner tried to *resist*

the police, but they were too strong for him.

resolve (re-*zolve*) *v.* To make up one's mind. *Ex.* James *resolved* to work very hard and try to win the prize. We all made good *resolves* (*n*) at the beginning of the New Year.

resort (re-*zort*) *n.* A place to which people go for holidays or for reasons or health. *Ex.* Brighton is a famous *resort* on the south coast of England.

respect (re-*spekt*) *v.* To look up to. To do honour to. To think well of. *Ex.* We all *respect* our headmaster. We are *respectful* to him.

respective *adj.* Relating severally each to each ; relative.

responsible (re-*spon*-si-bl) *adj* In charge of, or to blame for. *Ex.* John is *responsible* for feeding his rabbits every morning. James was *responsible* for breaking the kitchen window.

rest *n.* Cessation of action ; Peace, sleep ; an appliance for support ; a pause ; remainder ; the others. *v.* To cease from action, to lie for repose ; to be supported ? to be in a certain state, remain to be left ; to lay at rest ; to place, as on a support.

restaurant (*res*-tawr-awng) *n.* A place in which meals are provided for customers who pay for them.

restless *adj.* Unable to keep still. *Ex.* Tommy was very *restless* the first time he was taken to church.

restore (re-*store*) *v.* To give back. To make like new again. *Ex.* Aunt Mary has *restored* the umbrella she borrowed from Mother. The famous old picture was cleaned and *restored*. The *Restoration* in English history (1660) was the time when a King (Charles II) was brought back to the throne after Oliver Cromwell had ruled the country for several years.

restrain (re-*strain*) *v.* To hold back, to repress. *Ex.* I had to *restrain* Tommy from throwing stones near the windows.

result (re-*zult*) *n.* The end or consequence. *Ex.* The *result* of the match was a draw. Tommy was sick as a *result* of eating too many sweets

resume *v.* To take up again ; to begin. *n.* A recapitulation ; a summary.

retail *v.* To sell in small quantities ; to tell to many ; the sale of commodities in small quantities ; used also as adj.

retain *v.* To keep. *Ex.* I was not allowed to *retain* the book I borrowed from Agnes.

retire (re-*tire*) *v.* To go back, as soldiers do after an unsuccessful fight. To stop working when one reaches a certain age. *Ex.* Our vicar has just *retired* at the age of eighty. He is now living in *retirement*.

retreat (re-*treat*) *v.* To go back. *Ex* The little army *retreated* during the night. Their *retreat* (*n.*) was carried out without making any noise.

reveal (re-*veel*) *v.* To show or make known. *Ex.* The searchlight *revealed* the missing boat. The letter *revealed* the secret of the missing jewels.

revenge (re-*venj*) *v.* To do injury to someone who has injured

you. This is called taking your *revenge* (*n.*). The Bible teaches us that we ought to forgive, and not take revenge.

reverent (*rev*-er-ent) *adj.* Respectful in a religious sense. *Ex.* In a church one ought to behave in a *reverent* manner—to show *reverence*. *Reverend* is a title given to clergymen. *Ex.* The *Reverend* John Smith is the vicar of this parish.

review, *v.* To view again; to reconsider; to write a critical notice of; to inspect; to write reviews *n.* A re-examination; a criticism; official inspection of troops.

reverse (re-*verce*) (1) *n.* The opposite. *Ex.* We expected the evening to be dull, but it turned out quite the *reverse* and we enjoyed it. The two sides of a coin or medal are called the obverse and the reverse. A misfortune or set-back or defeat in battle is called a reverse. (2) *v.* To turn a thing the other way round is to reverse it. *Ex.* You can *reverse* this table-cover and it will look very nice. It is *reversible*.

revolt (re-*volt*) *v.* To rebel. A *revolt* (*n.*) is a kind of rebellion.

revolution (*rev*-ol-*yoo*-shon) *n.* (*a*) A large revolt, usually against the government. *Ex.* The great French *Revolution* happened in 1789. (*b*) The turning round of any circular thing, such as a wheel. *Ex.* John is counting how many *revolutions* his bicycle-wheel makes in ten yards.

revolver (re-*vol*-ver) *n.* A kind of pistol which can fire several shots without reloading.

reward (re-*ward*) *n.* A present given to express praise or thanks for some good or clever action. *Ex.* The boy who found the lady's purse was given a *reward* for returning it to her. She *rewarded* (*v.*) him.

rib *n.* One of the bones in the sides of animals and human beings. The ribs make a kind of cage, enclosing the heart and lungs.

ribbon *n.* A narrow band of silk; satin; etc.

rice *n.* A cereal plant, whose seed forms a light nutritious food.

rich (ritsh) *adj.* Having a large supply of something, especially money. Having *riches* (*n.*).

rid *adj.* To get rid of something is to get free from something, or to send something away. *Ex.* To get *rid* of a cold; to get *rid* of moths by using camphor.

riddle *n.* A question with a hidden meaning or trick in it, such as: When is a door not a door? When it is ajar.

ride (**rode**, **ridden**) *v.* To be borne on horseback, in a vehicle, etc. To have ability as an equestrian. To be at anchor, to sit on, so as to be carried; to go over in riding; to domineer over. *n.* An excursion on horseback, or in a vehicle; a road for the amusement of riding.

rider *n.* One who rides; one who manages a horse; a supplement or amendment; subsidiary problem.

ridge (rij) *n.* (*a*) A long narrow line of hills. (*b*) A raised edge such as one sees between furrows in a ploughed field.

rigger *n.* One whose occupation is to fit up the rigging of a ship.

right *adj.* straight; upright; just; suitable; proper; real;

correct; belonging to that side of the body farther from the heart; to be worn outward; perpendicular; formed by one line perpendicular to another; justly; correctly; very; directly to the right hand. *n.* what is right; rectitude; a just claim; authority; side opposite to the left. To put right; to do justice to; to restore to an upright position; to resume a vertical position.

rill *n.* A small brook.

ring (rang, rang) *n.* Anything in the form of a circle; a circle of gold, etc., worn on the finger; an area in which games, etc., are performed; a group of persons; sound of a bell; a metallic sound. To repeat often or loudly. To sound; to resound; to tingle.

riot (*ry*-ot) *n.* A noisy quarrel or disturbance caused by three or more people, usually in the street.

rip *v.* To tear; cut open; to take out by cutting or tearing. *n.* A rent; a scamp.

ripe *adj.* Fully grown or developed. *Ex.* We eat fruit when it is *ripe*—when it is *ripened* (*ry*-pend) —by the sun.

rise *v.* To pass to a higher position; to stand up; to bring a session to an end; to arise; to swell by fermentation; to become apparent; to come into existence; to rebel. *n.* Act of rising; ascent; elevation; origin; beginning; advance.

risk (1) *n.* Danger. Chance of loss. *Ex.* There might be a *risk* of getting hurt, or a *risk* of losing one's money. (2) *v.* We might risk getting hurt, by doing a *risky* thing such as climbing on a broken-down wall.

rival (*ry*-val) *n* Two people who want the same thing when only one of them can have it are rivals. Such people might be rivals in a game, or rivals for a school prize. There would then be *rivalry* (*ry*-val-re) between them.

river *n.* A large stream of water on land; a copious flow; abundance.

road *n* An open way or public passage; a highway, a means of approach; a roadstead.

roam *v.* To wander; to rove; to ramble.

roar *v.* To cry with a full loud sound; to bellow; to bawl or squall; to cry out aloud. *n.* A full loud sound of some continuance; cry of a beast.

roast *v.* To cook by exposure to a fire; to parch by heat; to banter severely; to become roasted. *n.* Roasted meat; part, selected for roasting; roasted.

rob To strip unlawfully and by force; to deprive by stealing; to deprive.

robber One who robs.

robe *n.* A long loose garment or dress. *Ex.* The Lord Mayor of London wears a magnificent *robe* and golden chain on public occasions.

robin *n.* The European bird called also redbreast.

rock *v.* To move backwards and forwards without displacing; to swing; to sway; to reel. *n.* A large mass of stone; defence; source of peril or disaster; a kind of solid sweatmeat.

rocky *adj.* Full of rocks; resembling a rock; stony; obdurate.

rod *n.* A straight slender stick; a badge of office; an enchanter's wand; a fishing-rod; a measure of 5½ lineal yards.

roof *n.* The top covering of a house. The top part of the inside of the mouth.

rouse (rowze) *v.* To wake from sleep, or to excite. *Ex.* Do not make a noise or you will *rouse* baby.

route (root) *n.* The way to somewhere. *Ex.* The *route* from Birmingham to London is through Oxford and Windsor.

royal (*roy*-al) *adj.* Connected with a King, Queen or Emperor. *Ex.* A *royal* palace, a *royal* wedding. Any member of a royal family can be called *royalty*.

rubbish (*rub*-bish) *n.* Anything that is of no use or value. *Ex.* We burn all our *rubbish* in the kitchen grate.

ruin (*roo*-in) (1) *v.* To spoil or destroy. *Ex.* Nancy's dress was *ruined* by the ink she spilled on it. Uncle Jack's health was *ruined* by the bad climate he had to live in. (2) *n.* Something, usually a building, that has been ruined by war, fire, or storms *Ex.* We saw the *ruins* of an old castle. The cost of a thing is said to be *ruin us* when it is very great—much more than the buyer can afford.

rumour (*roo*-mer) *n.* A story, or piece of news, told by one person to another which may be true and may not. Gossip. *Ex.* There is a *rumour* that we are to have a holiday on the headmaster's birthday.

runway (*run*-way) *n.* The straight smooth path made for aeroplanes to land on or start from.

rural (*roo*-ral) *adj.* Connected with the country. *Ex.* A *rural* life, a *rural* landscape.

rust *n.* The reddish-brown coating which forms on iron and steel when they have been exposed to air and moisture. *Ex.* There is *rust* on this knife. It is rusty.

sabbath (*sab*-ath) *n.* The day of the week set aside for rest and worship. It is now usually called Sunday.

sacred (*say*-kred) Holy. Connected with worship of God. *Ex.* Hymns and anthems are *sacred* music.

sacrifice (*sak*-ri-fice) (1) *v.* To give up, especially to God. Many sacrifices (*n.*) to God are described in the Bible. We can make sacrifices for each other also. *Ex.* Father *sacrificed* his holiday to stay home with mother while she was ill

safe *adj.* Free from danger or damage. *Ex.* When the explosion occurred, we were glad to hear that the miners were all *safe*. They got *safely* out of the mine, and came up into *safety*.

safe *n.* A strong metal box in which valuable things are kept.

sago (*say*-go) *n.* A starchy food, used for making milk puddings.

saint *n.* A holy person. Saint Francis of Assisi was a famous saint in Italy who could charm wild birds and animals We sometimes say that every good man or woman has a *saintly* character.

salad (*sal*-ad) *n.* A dish, usually of uncooked lettuce, tomatoes, and other raw vegetables. Sweet salads can be made of fruits.

salary (*sal*-a-re) *n.* The money paid regularly (usually each month) for work done. The work is often clerical, and not manual.

salmon (*sam*-on) *n.* A large fish with pink flesh, much liked as food.

salute (sa-*loot*) *v.* To greet. *Ex.* A gentleman *salutes* a lady by raising his hat. That is a *salutattion* (sal-ew-*tay*-shon) (*n.*) A soldier must give his officers a salute (*n.*).

sample (*sahm* pl) (1) *n.* A small part of something which shows what the whole is like. *Ex.* Mother has sent for *samples* of wall-paper for the kitchen. (2) *v.* To test a part of something. *Ex.* Mother allowed us to *sample* the Christmas pudding while she was making it.

sandwich (*sand*-witch) *n.* Two slices of bread with a filling such as egg, meat or fish-paste between them.

sanitary (*san*-i-ta-re) *adj.* Healthy, in the sense of preventing infection or disease. *Ex.* The water supply and drains of a town or a village must be kept in a *sanitary* condition.

sardine (*sahr*-deen) *n.* A very small fish, usually packed in oil in flat tins, and much liked as food.

satisfy (*sat*-is-fy). *v.* To make pleased or contented. When you have what you want, or have enough of something, you are *satisfied*. That gives you *satisfaction*, or pleasure. *Ex.* Father expressed great *satisfaction* at John's school report. He said it was very *satisfactory*.

Saturday *n.* The seventh day of the week.

sauce (sawce) *n.* A pleasant-tasting liquid served with meat, puddings, or fish.

saucer (*saw*-ser) *n.* The small dish placed below a teacup.

savage (*sav*-aj) *adj.* Wild, fierce untamed. *Ex.* A wild deer is very *savage* when attacked.

scale *n.* (*a*) A machine for weighing anything. (*b*) One of the small shining pieces on the skin of a fish. (*c*) A number of musical notes following each other, as on a piano. (*d*) The markings in the corner of a map which show how many miles are represented by an inch.

scarce (*skairce*) *adj.* Not plentiful. *Ex.* Strawberries are *scarce* this year. There was a *scarcity* (*skair*-si-te) of them.

scatter *v.* (*a*) To throw about. *Ex.* We *scattered* some crumbs for the birds. (*b*) to move apart. *Ex.* The crowd *scattered* when the horse galloped down the street.

scene (seen) *n.* (*a*) The place where a thing happened. *Ex.* The *scene* of the Battle of Waterloo. (*b*) One part of a play. *Ex.* The last *scene* of *King Lear*. (*c*) A person is said to "make a scene" when he or she becomes bad-tempered and noisy, or weeps loudly.

scheme (skeem) (1) *n.* A plan. *Ex.* There is a *scheme* for bringing electric light into our village. To *scheme* (*v.*) is to plan.

scholar (*skol*-ar) *n.* (*a*) One who goes to school. (*b*) A very learned man or woman.

science (*sy*-ence) *n.* Knowledge of facts about anything that exists in Nature, such as the stars, insects, the human body, or electricity. Such knowledge is *scientific* (*sy*-en-*tif*-ic), and one who is learned in science is a *scientist*.

scissors (*siz*-ors) *n.* A tool with two sharp edges, used in every household for cutting cloth and paper.

scold (skoled) *v.* To reprove or be angry with. *Ex.* Mother *scolded* Tommy when he pulled the kitten's tail.

scone (skon) *n.* A small plain cake, usually buttered.

score *n.* (*a*) A record of the number of runs, points, or goals that have been made in a game. *Ex.* At the end of the game the *score* was 5—1. One side had *scored* (*v.*) five, and the other side had scored one. (*b*) Twenty. *Ex.* There were only a *score* of sheep in the field.

scorn *n.* Contempt, disdain. To be *scornful* about something is to look down on it. *Ex.* John was inclined to be *scornful* when Tommy was afraid to paddle in the sea.

scout *n* (*a*) A soldier who is sent out to get necessary information. (*b*) A member of the Boy Scouts Association.

scrap *n.* A small piece. *Ex.* We save all the *scraps* left over from dinner to feed the hens.

scrape (1) *n.* A difficulty or trouble. *Ex.* Tommy got into a *scrape* when he threw a stone at the window. (2) *v.* To clean a surface with a knife or sharp tool. *Ex.* The painters had to *scrape* off the old paint before repainting the door.

scratch *v.* To mark the surface of something (such as a table) with a sharp point, or with one's nails.

scream (skreem) *v.* To utter a sharp cry, usually from pain or fright. The cry is a *scream* (*n.*).

scrub *v.* To clean by rubbing hard with a brush. *Ex.* To *scrub* the kitchen floor.

sea-level *n.* The level of the sea when it is between high tide and low tide. *Ex.* The cliffs rose to 1,000 feet above *sea-level*.

seal (1) *n.* An animal which lives mostly in the sea and eats fish. (2) *v.* To close firmly. *Ex.* To *seal* a letter. This is often done with *sealing*-wax.

seaman *n.* A sailor. The art of sailing a ship at sea is called *seamanship*.

search (sertsh) *v.* To look for something. *Ex.* You can *search* for a lost ball. You can make a *search* (*n.*) for it. A *searchlight* is a lamp which can send out a beam of light for a very long distance.

season (*see*-zon) (1) *n.* One of the four parts into which the year is divided: spring, summer, autumn, winter. The football season or the holiday season is the part of the year which is suitable for such things. (2) *v.* To season food is to add something such as salt, pepper or spice to improve its taste. These things are *seasonings.* Weather is said to be *seasonable* when it is natural at that time of year.

second (*sek*-ond) (1) *n.* A very small division of time. There are sixty seconds in a minute. (2) *adj.* Next after the first. *Ex.* This is the *second* day of the holidays. *Second-hand* means not new. A second-hand book is one that has belonged to someone else before you bought it.

secret (*see*-kret) *adj.* Hidden, private, known to very few people. *Ex.* Tommy seems to have a *secret* hiding-place for his favourite toy. He keeps the place a *secret* (*n.*).

secretary (*sek*-re-ta-re) *n.* A person employed to attend to the private business of someone else, such as writing letters, helping to keep records and answering the telephone.

section (*sek*-shon) *n.* A part. *Ex.* The hen-house was made in *sections*, which could easily be put together.

secure (se-*kure*) *adj.* Safe. *Ex.* Baby is *secure* in his pram, with a strap fastened round him. To know that you are safe gives you a feeling of *security*.

seize (*seez*) *v.* To take possession of, to snatch. *Ex.* The police *seized* the car, which they thought had been stolen.

select (*se-lekt*) *v.* To choose. *Ex.* Mother has gone to *select* a book from the library. When there are many things to choose from, we say there is a large *selection* (*n.*).

sense *n.* The power of understanding and not being foolish. The five senses are: seeing, hearing, tasting, touching and smelling.

sensible (*sen*-si-bl) *adj.* Having good sense. The opposite of foolish *Ex.* Mary is a very *sensible* girl and can be trusted to look after baby.

sentence (*sen*-tens) *n.* (*a*) A group of words which make complete sense by themselves. *Ex.* "John walked home from school" is a *sentence*, but "when John was walking home" is not. (*b*) The punishment which a judge orders for a prisoner is a sentence. *Ex.* The *sentence* on the burglar was one month's imprisonment.

separate (*sep*-ar-ate) (1) *adj.* Divided, not joined together. *Ex.* The boys' school and the girls' school are quite *separate*. (2) *v.* To divide, to make separate *Ex.* Father *separated* the two dogs which were fighting.

serious (*seer*-i-us) *adj.* (*a*) Thoughtful. Not laughing or gay. *Ex.* Mother looked very *serious* when she scolded Pat. (*b*) Important. *Ex* John made a *serious* mistake in the examination paper. A *serious* illness is one that is bad enough to be dangerous.

serpent *n.* A snake.

service (*ser*-vis) *n.* (*a*) The act of working for someone at regular times. *Ex.* A *servant* (one who gives service) working in a private house is in domestic *service*. (*b*) Public work, such as the Civil *Service*. (*c*) Worship in a church is called a church *service*.

several (*sev*-er-al) *adj.* Some. More than two, but not many. *Ex.* Mary read *several* books in the holidays.

severe (se-*veer*) *adj.* Intense *Ex.* The burn caused mother *severe* pain.

sew (so) *v.* To fasten together with needle and thread. *Ex.* Girls are usually taught how to *sew*. They learn *sewing*.

shallow (*shal*-lo) *adj.* Not deep. *Ex.* The pond is *shallow* in dry weather.

shame *n.* Regret for having done wrong. To feel shame is to be *ashamed* (a-*shamed*). *Ex.* Mary was *ashamed* of arriving so late for her music-lesson. A thing is said to be *shameful* when it is very wicked.

share *n.* & *v.* A part of, or to divide in parts. *Ex.* Here is your *share* of the toffee. We will all *share* it equally.

sharp *adj.* Having a fine point or edge for cutting. You can have a sharp knife, or a sharp pencil. When you make your pencil sharp you *sharpen* it.

shave *v.* To remove hair from the face (of a man) with a razor.

shed *n.* A small wooden house or hut usually made of wood. *Ex.* We keep our fire-wood in the *shed*.

sheet *n.* A thin flat piece of paper, cloth, metal or wood. *Ex.* Steel is made in huge *sheets* and passed through machines which are like great mangles.

shell *n.* (*a*) The hard outer covering of several eatable things, such as eggs, nuts, almonds, and shell-fish such as oysters, mussels and cockles. Snails and some other creatures such as tortoises and turtles have shells too. (*b*) A metal case in which explosive material is placed and then fired from a gun.

shelter (1) *n.* (*a*) Protection. *Ex.* We took *shelter* from the rain, under a tree. (*b*) A place in which one shelters. (2) *v.* To protect from danger or weather. *Ex.* Father *sheltered* Nancy under his umbrella.

shepherd (*shep*-erd) *n.* The man who looks after the sheep on a farm.

shield (sheeld) (1) *n.* A piece of armour worn in olden times as protection from sword-cuts. (2) *v.* To protect from harm. *Ex.* In hot countries, men and women wear large white hats to *shield* their heads from the sun.

shift (1) *n.* Groups of men working on the same job, but at different times of the day, are called "shifts." There may be a day shift, and a night *shift*, or there may be three shifts in the twenty-four hours, working eight hours each. (2) *v.* To change or move. *Ex.* Mother has *shifted* the table to the other side of the room.

shine *v.* To give out light as the sun does. The past tense of shine is *shone* (shon).

shiver (*shiv*-er) *v.* To shake or tremble because of feeling cold or frightened. To feel *shivery* (*shiv*-er-e) is to feel cold.

shock (1) *n.* (*a*) An unpleasant surprise or fright. *Ex.* Mother got a *shock* when she heard of her sister's accident. (*b*) A *shock* of hair means a mass of thick hair which is not well brushed and tidy. (2) *v.* To be shocked is to feel disgusted or offended, or much grieved. *Ex.* Everyone was *shocked* to hear of the loss of the aeroplane. It was a *shocking* (terrible) accident.

shore *n.* The land at the edge of the sea.

shoulder (*shole*-der) *n.* The joint which connects the arm to the body.

shovel (*shuv*-el) *n.* A tool used for lifting coal, earth and sand.

shower (*show*-er) *n.* A fall of rain that is soon over. When several showers follow each other, we say it is a *showery* day.

shriek (*shreek*) *n.* A sharp scream of pain, or surprise or even laughter.

shrill *adj.* Making a loud high sound. *Ex.* We heard *shrill* laughter coming from the play-ground.

shrub *n.* A bushy plant which has several branches growing from the root. Gorse and broom are well-known shrubs. A *shrubbery* is a piece of land planted with many shrubs.

shun *v.* To avoid.

shy *adj.* Timid. Not inclined to speak to strangers, or make friends easily. *Ex.* Baby is still very *shy*.

sigh (sy) *n.* & *v.* To take a deep

breath rather loudly, when one feels sad or very tired.

sight (site) *n.* (*a*) The power of seeing. *Ex.* John has very good *sight* (eyesight). (*b*) The thing that is seen. *Ex.* The rose garden was a beautiful *sight* during June.

sign (sine) (1) *n.* A movement of the hand or a nod of the head might be a sign; that is, it may convey a meaning. A written or printed notice such as "Keep Off the Grass" is a sign. (2) *v.* To write your name at the end of a letter or statement. That is your *signature* (*sig*-na-tewr).

signal (*sig*-nal) (1) *n.* (*a*) A sign (*see* sign) that has been agreed upon. (*b*) A post with two movable arms, used on railways to show the train driver whether the line is clear. (2) *v.* To send a message. *Ex.* The submarine *signalled* for help.

signature. *See* sign.

silence (*sy*-lens) *n.* Complete quietness, and absence of sound. *Ex.* In a library reading-room there is usually a notice saying "*silence.*" All readers in the room must be *silent* and make no noise.

silk *n.* A fine, glossy kind of cloth made from threads produced by the silk-worm. A *silken* garment is one made of silk.

silly *adj.* Foolish without sense. *Ex.* The first story in this book is a *silly* one about a horse that can talk.

silver *n.* A valuable white metal used for making spoons, forks, jewellery and ornaments.

simmer *v.* To boil gently and slowly.

simple *adj.* (*a*) Easy. *Ex.* A *simple* sum. (*b*) Plain. *Ex.* *simple* food, *simple* clothes. A person who likes simple clothes like *simplicity* (sim-*plis*-i-te) in dress. To make a thing simple is to *simplify* (*sim*-pli-fy) it.

since *adv.* After that time. *Ex.* I have not seen Aunt Mary *since* I was in London

sincere (sin-*seer*) *adj.* True, reliable. *Ex.* A *sincere* friend.

single (*sing*-gl) *adj.* One, or for one only. *Ex.* We did not see a *single* car on the road. An unmarried man or woman is said to be *single*. To do something *singly* (*sin*-gle) is to do it one at a time. *Ex.* We went into the room *singly*.

sink (1) *n.* A kind of small bath fixed in the kitchen in which dishes are washed. (2) *v.* To go gradually down as a stone does in water. To sink is the opposite of to float.

sir *n.* (*a*) A word of respect used when speaking to a man. A title. *Ex.* *Sir* Mohd. Iqbal.

sire *n.* The old form of sir.

site *n.* The position or piece of ground where a building stands. *Ex.* The new hospital is being built on a very convenient *site*.

situated (*sit*-yew-ate-ed) *n. adj.* Placed. *Ex.* Grandfather's cottage is *situated* on a hillside near a river.

situation (*sit*-yew-a-shion) *n.* (*a*) Position. *Ex* The cottage is in a beautiful *situation*. (*b*) Employment. *Ex* To get a *situation* as a nursemaid or a clerk.

skate (1) *n.* (*a*) A steel edge which can be fitted on to boots so that the person wearing them can move quickly and easily over ice. (*b*) A large flat fish. (2) *v.* To move on ice by means of skates.

skill *n.* Cleverness, especially in doing something that needs care and knowledge. *Ex.* The doctor showed great *skill* in performing the operation. He was *skilful*, highly *skilled*

skim *v.* To take off the surface layer from a liquid. *Ex.* To *skim* the cream off milk.

skin *n.* The outer surface of any animal, fish or fruit. A person or animal who is very thin is sometimes said to be *skinny*.

skip *v.* (*a*) To jump. (*b*) To pass over, in the sense of to omit. *Ex.* Our history teacher told us we could *skip* page 51 as it was too difficult for us.

skirt *n.* The lower part of a woman's dress, from the waist to the hem.

slave *n.* A servant who has been captured or bought by his master, and belongs to him. In America there were slaves until 1865, when Abraham Lincoln made *slavery* (*slave*-er-e) illegal.

slay *v.* To kill. The past tense of slay is slew. *Ex.* In the fairy-tale Jack *slew* the giant. The giant was *slain* by Jack.

sleepy (*sleep*-e) *adj.* Inclined to sleep. To be sleepless is to be unable to sleep at night.

sleeve *n.* The part of a garment which covers the arm.

slender *adj.* Narrow, graceful. *Ex.* A *slender* birch tree.

slice *n.* A piece of something that has been cut off. *Ex.* A *slice* of cake.

slide *v.* To move smoothly. *Ex.* This window *slides* up and down very easily. The boys love to *slide* on the ice.

slight (slite) *adj.* Little, not important, not much. *Ex.* Tommy has a *slight* cold.

slipper *n.* A loose shoe for wearing indoors.

slippery *adj.* A slippery surface is one on which a person or thing is inclined to slide. *Ex.* The frost made the streets *slippery*, and I saw two people fall down.

slope *v.* To slant. *Ex.* A *sloping* roof. There was a *slope* (*n.*) down to the sea near the harbour.

slumber *n.* & *v.* Sleep.

sly *adj.* Untruthful and deceitful. *Ex.* I do not trust that man; he has a *sly* look.

smart (1) *adj.* Well dressed, nice-looking, clever. *Ex.* A *smart* woman. (2) *v.* To have a feeling of sharp, though not severe, pain, such as is caused by a slight burn. *Ex.* My finger is much better, but it still *smarts*.

smoke (1) *n.* The cloud that rises into the air from a fire. (2) *v.* To give out smoke, to breathe tobacco smoke from a pipe or cigarette.

smooth *adj.* Having a flat, even surface without any roughness. Silk has a smooth surface. When there is no wind the sea is said to be smooth. To *smooth* (*v.*) something is to make it smooth. *Ex.* The gardener *smoothed* the flower-bed with a rake.

snake *n.* A reptile. Poisonous snakes are found in some hot countries.

snatch *v.* To seize quickly and perhaps roughly. *Ex.* The thief *snatched* the woman's handbag.

sneeze *v.* To make a kind of cough in one's nostrils.

sniff *v.* (*a*) To smell. (*b*) To

breathe noisily through the nose when one has a cold. *Ex.* Don't *sniff*, but use your handkerchief.

snow (snoh) *n.* Rain that has been frozen and falls to the ground in small white flakes. A pile of snow heaped up by the wind is a snow-drift.

sober (*so*-ber) *adj.* Not drunk, calm and serious.

society (so-*sy*-e-te) *n.* (*a*) A group of people engaged in business or some special work such as a debating society. (*b*) People in general, or wealthy and titled people in particular.

sock *n.* A short stocking, worn by men, boys and small children.

soften *v.* To make soft.

soil (1) *n.* The earth in which plants grow. (2) *v.* To make dirty. *Ex.* Nancy *soiled* her new dress when she fell off the swing.

soldier (*sold*-yer) *n.* A man who is a member of the army.

sole (1) *n.* (*a*) A flat fish which is almost circular, and is good to eat. (*b*) The under-part of the foot on which we walk. (2) *adj.* Only. *Ex.* He was the *sole* survivor of the wreck.

solemn (*sol*-em) *adj.* Very serious. *Ex.* The church service in memory of the late actor was a very *solemn* one.

solicitor (sol-*lis*-it-er) *n.* A person trained to advice on matters of law.

solid (*sol*-id) *adj.* Firm all the way through. Not hollow. *Ex.* Bicycle tyres used to be *solid*, but now they are filled with air.

solitary (*sol*-i-ta-re) *adj.* Sole. Alone or lonely. *Ex.* He led a very *solitary* life after his wife died.

solitude (*sol*-i-tude) *n.* Quietness or loneliness.

solve *v.* To explain or find the answer, and the answer is the *solution*. You may find the solution of a mystery or of a puzzle, or of a sum in arithmetic.

somewhat (*sum*-whot) *adv.* Slightly, rather. *Ex.* Although it was an August day it was *somewhat* cold.

soup (soop) *n.* A liquid food made from meat and vegetables boiled in water and served hot.

sour (sowr) *adj.* Tasting sharp or bitter, not sweet. *Ex.* The juice of a lemon tastes *sour*. So does milk when it is some days old.

source (sorce) *n.* The point at which a river begins—usually a lake, or a spring in the ground. *Ex.* The *source* of the Thames is a spring in the Cotswold Hills.

sow *n.* Female pig. *Ex.* The *sow* has a litter of six.

space *n.* (*a*) Room for something. *Ex.* Mother says she has not enough *space* for her dishes in the kitchen. (*b*) The great open distance in the heavens. *Ex.* The planets move round the sun in *space*.

spade *n.* A long-handled tool for digging.

spare (1) *adj.* Extra, not needed at the time. *Ex.* A *spare* bedroom for occasional guests, and a *spare* tyre for a motor-car in case one is punctured. (2) *v.* (*a*) To be able to give up or do without. *Ex.* Mother cannot *spare* any sugar, as we have so little. (*b*) To show mercy to. *Ex.* Harry wanted to *spare* the life of the mouse that was caught in the trap.

spark *n.* A small quick flash of light or heat. *Ex.* When th-

blacksmith hammered the red-hot iron, *sparks* flew out.

sparkle *v.* To shine or glitter. *Ex.* Diamonds *sparkle*, and so do stars in the sky.

sparrow (*spar*-ro) *n.* A small brown bird, very common near houses.

spear *n.* A long pole with a sharp iron point used as a weapon.

special (*spesh*-al) *adj.* Of a different or particular kind, or intended for a particular purpose. *Ex.* A *special* bus was provided for the Sunday School outing. A *specialist* (*spesh*-al-ist) is one who has made a special study of one branch of knowledge. *Ex.* An ear *specialist* is a doctor who has made a special study of the ear He has *specialised* in that subject, just as an engineer may specialise in aeroplane engines.

speech (speetsh) *n* (*a*) The power of being able to talk and express our thoughts in words. (*b*) A talk by one person on a definite subject to a number of people. When we say a person was *speechless* we mean that he was unable to speak, perhaps because of surprise or some other strong feeling, such as thankfulness.

speed *n.* Quickness of movement. *Ex.* The *speed* of an aeroplane is much greater than that of a car. To be quick is to be *speedy* —to do something *speedily*.

spell (1) *v.* To name the letters that are in any word. (2) *n.* (*a*) A magic charm such as we read of in fairy-tales. (*b*) A period of time. *Ex.* Mary did a long *spell* of practising on the piano.

spend *v.* (*a*) To use money for buying things. *Ex.* I *spent* a shilling on a Christmas present for baby. (*b*) To use time for some purpose. *Ex.* I *spent* an hour doing one sum. A *spendthrift* is one who spends too much money and wastes it.

sphere (sfeer) *n.* A completely round object such as a ball.

spice *n.* Pepper, nutmeg and cinnamon are spices used to give food a more pleasant taste.

spider (*spy*-der) *n.* A small animal with eight legs, which makes webs to catch flies for food.

spin *v.* (*a*) To make thread by twisting strands of cotton or wool in a machine. (*b*) To make a thing, such as a top, move round very quickly.

spirit (*spir*-it) *n.* (*a*) Ghost. (*b*) The soul or inward part of a person. (*c*) A mood. *Ex.* You may do a thing in a kindly *spirit* or you may be in high *spirits* (very cheerful). (*d*) A chemical liquid which is the chief part of whisky and brandy. (*e*) Courage. To be *spirited* is to be full of courage and energy.

spite *n.* An unkind wish to harm someone. A *spiteful* person is one who likes to see other people unhappy. *In spite of* means paying no attention to. *Ex.* You might go for a walk in *spite* of the rain, or in *spite* of having a bad cold.

splendid *adj.* Magnificent, very fine. *Ex.* The Horse Guards in Hyde Park were a *splendid* sight.

split *v.* To divide into parts. *Ex.* To *split* a log before putting it on to the fire, or to *split* a class into two parts and teach each part separately.

spoil (1) *n.* Things stolen or captured in war. *Ex.* The enemy took

away much *spoil* from the captured city. (2) *v*. To do harm to. *Ex*. Flowers may be *spoiled* by rain, or a child may be *spoiled by* being allowed to have too much of his own way.

sponge (spunj) *n*. (*a*) The soft skeleton of a kind of sea animal. It holds water easily, and is much used for washing. (*b*) A kind of soft cake. (2) *v*. To wash with a sponge. *Ex*. To *sponge* baby's face.

spool *n*. A reel on which thread is wound.

sport *n*. A game played in the open air ; hunting and fishing are called sports too.

spray (1) *n*. (*a*) A quantity of very small drops of liquid. *Ex*. When a wave of the sea breaks on rocks it sends up a shower of *spray*. (*b*) A small branch with flowers on it. *Ex*. A *spray* of apple blossom. (2) *v*. To scatter a liquid in this way. *Ex*. Father *sprays* the rose-bushes in dry weather.

square (skware) *n*. Anything that is square has four sides of the same length. A table might be square, or a garden might be square.

squire (skwire) *n*. A man who owns much land and a large house in the country.

squirrel (*skwir*-rel) *n*. A small furry animal with long bushy tail, very active in climbing trees.

stable (*stay*-bl) *n*. The shed in which a horse is kept.

stack (1) *n*. (*a*) A tall chimney (*b*) A large pile or heap of something such as hay. (2) *v*. To make into a pile or heap. *Ex*. The boy's job was to *stack* the boxes in the shop.

staff (stahf) *n*. (*a*) A stick such as that used by a shepherd, or a pole to which a flag can be fastened. (*b*) The group of people employed in a business, shop, school or large house.

stage *n*. The platform in a theatre, where the acting is done.

stagger *v*. To walk unsteadily as if about to fall.

stain (1) *n*. A mark, usually a dirty mark. (2) *v* To make such a mark. *Ex*. The raspberries *stained* mother's hands when she was making jam.

stair *n*. The steps by which you go from the lower part of a building to the upper part. You go *upstairs*.

stake *n*. A stick with a sharp point. *Ex*. Father has tied the rose trees to *stakes* so that they will not be blown down.

stale *adj*. Not fresh. *Ex*. Bread which is more than a day or two old is said to be *stale*.

stalk (stawk) (1) *n*. The straight part of a plant, sometimes called the stem, from which the leaves or flowers grow. (2) *v*. To walk quietly towards a person or an animal so that they do not hear you coming.

stall (stawl) *n*. (*a*) The part of a stable in which a horse is kept. (*b*) A table or bench from which things are sold at a market or a fair. (*c*) A seat near the stage in a theatre.

stamp *v*. (*a*) To strike the ground heavily with the foot. *Ex*. The horse was *stamping* in the stable. (*b*) To fix a postage stamp on to an envelope containing a letter. *Ex*. Please *stamp* this letter for me.

stand *v*. To be upright, on the feet.

star *n*. One of the shining bodies

in the sky, visible at night when it is dark.

starch *n.* A white substance which is the chief part of flour, and is also contained in potatoes and rice. One kind of starch is used for stiffening men's collars, tablecloths and cotton dresses after they are washed.

stare *v.* To look at some person or thing with wide-open eyes for a considerable time. *Ex.* Children are taught that it is rude to *stare* at people.

start *v.* (*a*) To begin. *Ex.* Mary has *started* to knit a pair of socks. (*b*) To make a sudden movement, from surprise or fear. *Ex.* Mother *started* when the door-bell rang so late at night.

starve *v.* To be in great need of food, and in danger of dying for want of it. *Ex.* Travellers in the desert sometimes lose their way and are in danger of *starving*. They may die of *starvation*.

state (1) *n.* (*a*) Condition. *Ex* This carpet is in a bad *state* It is nearly worn out, and needs mending. (*b*) A country or nation. *Ex.* In Britain the railways are now owned by the *State*. (2) *v.* To say. *Ex.* The headmaster *stated* that there would be a half-holiday next week.

stately (*state*-le) *adj.* Dignified, noble-looking. *Ex.* The Princess was tall and *stately*.

statement (*state*-ment) *n.* What has been stated, or said in public. *Ex.* The Prime Minister made a *statement* about the new taxes.

statesman *n.* A Member of Parliament who has an important position in the Government. *Ex.* Mr. Gladstone was a famous *statesman* in the time of Queen Victoria.

statue (*stat*-yoo) *n.* The figure of a person made in metal or stone. *Ex.* There is a famous *statue* of Nelson in Trafalgar Square, London.

steady (*sted*-e) (1) *adj.* Firm, not moving. *Ex.* This table is not *steady*, for one leg is shorter than the others. (2) *v.* To make or hold steady.

steak (stak) *n.* A thick slice of meat or fish.

steal (steel) *v.* To take what belongs to someone else. *Ex.* One of the Commandments in the Bible is "Thou shalt not *steal*."

steam (steem) *n.* Water turned into gas by boiling. This gas can be very powerful. A *steam-engine* is an engine which is driven (made to move) by steam. A ship which is moved by the power of steam is a *steam-ship* or *steamer*.

steel *n.* Iron that has been made specially hard and strong. *Ex.* Many knives and saws are made of *steel*.

steer *n.* A young bullock not more than four years old.

steer *v.* To make a boat, aeroplane or car move in a certain direction. *Ex.* When a ship is coming into harbour it has to be *steered* very carefully.

stern (1) *n.* The back end of a ship or boat. (2) *adj.* Having a serious and severe expression or manner. *Ex.* The headmaster looks very stern if we are naughty.

stiff *adj.* Difficult to bend or move. *Ex.* Father's legs is *stiff* and he has difficulty in walking. The wincow is *stiff* and mother cannot open it. To make a thing stiff is to *stiffen* it. *Ex.* Father's collars are *stiffened* with starch.

still (1) *adj.* Quiet, peaceful,

without movement. *Ex.* A warm, *still* afternoon. Baby is never *still* except when he is asleep. (2) *adv.* Even now. *Ex.* Do you *still* mean to go abroad ?

sting ( ) *n.* The sharp organ which some insects, such as bees and wasps, have. With this organ they can prick and injure other insects or human beings. (2) *v.* To prick in this way.

stingy (*stin*-je) *adj.* Mean, selfish, the opposite of generous. A person is said to be stingy when he dislikes giving anything away, especially money.

stir (1) *n.* Excitement or much moving about *Ex.* There is always a great *stir* in the town on market day. (2) *v.* (*a*) To mix something, specially with a spoon. (*b*) To move. *Ex.* Don't *stir* from that seat till I come back.

stitch *n.* One loop made in sewing or knitting.

stock *n.* A quantity or supply. *Ex.* Mother keeps a *stock* of jam in the pantry.

stool *n.* A small chair which has no back to lean against.

stoop *v.* To bend. *Ex.* When people grow old, their shoulders are inclined to *stoop.* Father has to *stoop* when he enters the low door of the cottage.

store (1) *n.* (*a*) A collection of things kept together. *Ex.* A *store* of jam or of coal. (*b*) A shop in which goods of different sorts are kept in order to be sold. (2) *v.* To collect and keep things for use in the future. *Ex.* Father is *storing* the potatoes he has grown in the garden.

storey (*stor*-e) *n.* The rooms in a house or other building which are all on the same floor or level. Many houses have two storeys, but large buildings, especially in America, may have twenty or more storeys.

storm *n.* Bad weather such as strong wind, or heavy rain or snow or thunder and lightning, or any of these together. A *stormy* sea is one that has large waves caused by wind.

stout (stowt) *adj.* A stout person is a fat person. A stout heart is a brave heart.

stove *n.* A sort of metal box or case containing a fire, for heating or cooking. *Ex.* Our kitchen stove gives out great heat.

straight (strate) *adj.* Direct, not bent or curved. You might draw a straight line, or walk along a straight road. To go straight home means to go home without delay. To make straight is to *straighten.* *Ex.* Mother *straightened* the bent pin. To be *straightforward* is to be frank and honest.

strain (1) *n.* The tired feeling which is a result of straining or making a great effort *Ex.* Mother suffered from the *strain* of nursing baby when he had measles. (2) *v.* (*a*) To stretch or make the greatest use of or make a great effort. *Ex.* You might *strain* your ears to hear a faint sound. (*b*) To put through a sieve. *Ex.* Mother always *strains* the tea to get rid of the tea-leaves.

strait (strate) *n.* A narrow piece of water between two seas. *Ex.* The *Straits* of Gibraltar are between the Mediterranean Sea and the Atlantic Ocean.

strap *n.* A narrow band of leather. Straps are often used for holding books together or for fastening luggage.

straw *n.* The dried stalk of corn after all the grain has been removed. *Ex.* Summer hats are often made of *straw*.

strawberry (*straw*-ber-e) *n.* A sweet red fruit, growing close to the ground and very good to eat.

stray (1) *v.* To wander. *Ex.* Tell Tommy not to *stray* from the path in the wood. (2) *adj. Ex.* We found a *stray* dog that had wandered from its home and got lost.

stream (1) *n.* A sma l river. (2) *v.* To flow or come out like a stream. *Ex.* After the concert, the people *streamed* out of the hall.

strength *n.* The quality of being strong. To strengthen is to make stronger. *Ex.* The bottom of the boat had to be *strengthened* after it was damaged by the storm.

stretch *v.* (*a*) To make longer or wider by pulling out. *Ex.* Mary's new gloves had to be *stretched* before she could put them on. (*b*) To reach or hold out. *Ex.* Harry *stretched* out his hand for a piece of cake.

strict *adj.* Paying great attention to rules. *Ex.* The English master is very *strict*, and allows no talking in his class.

stride (1) *n.* A long step. (2) *v.* To walk with long steps.

strife *n.* Quarrelling or fighting. *Ex.* Some hundreds of years ago there used to be frequent *strife* between the Scots and the English.

strike *v.* (*a*) To hit, or knock against. You might strike a ball, or one of your friends, or strike a match against the match-box. (*b*) When a clock rings a bell at each hour, we say it strikes the hours. (*c*) To stop work in order to get higher wages or fewer hours of work. When workers do this, we say they go on *strike* (*n.*). (*d*) We also say "It strikes me" meaning "I think." *Ex.* It *strikes* me that I have heard that story before.

string *n.* Cord or very thin rope. *Ex.* Tie the parcel with *string*.

strip (1) *n.* A long narrow piece of any material. *Ex.* Mother put a *strip* of clean cotton on Tommy's cut finger. (2) *v.* (*a*) To take or pull off. *Ex.* The workmen *stripped* the old paper off the walls. (*b*) To undress. *Ex.* Harry *stripped* quickly and had a bathe.

stripe *n.* A strip of a different colour

strive *v.* To try very hard. *Ex.* John is *striving* to become a good swimmer.

stroke (1) *n.* (*a*) The act of striking. *Ex.* A good *stroke* in golf or cricket. (*b*) A mark made by a pencil or pen. (2) *v.* To rub gently with the hand as one strokes a cat.

strong *adj.* Powerful. *Ex.* The cart was drawn by two *strong* horses.

struggle (*strug*-l) *v.* To try hard or make a great effort. *Ex.* The farmer was *struggling* to save a sheep that had fallen into the pond. He had a hard *struggle* (*n.*).

student (*stew*-dent) *n.* One who studies especially at a university.

study (*stud*-e) (1) *n.* The room in which one studies. *Ex.* The minister's *study* has book-cases on every wall. (2) *v.* To give one's mind to reading and learning from books. *Ex.* John will have to *study* hard if he means to be a doctor.

stuff (1) *n.* (*a*) Cloth. *Ex.* Father has chosen a piece of nice *stuff* for his new overcoat. (*b*) Almost any collection of things can be called stuff. *Ex.* Carry this *stuff* upstairs for me. What is all this *stuff* in your cupboard? (2) *v.* To fill with something. *Ex.* To *stuff* a cushion with feathers; to *stuff* your handkerchief into your pocket. In museums one sees *stuffed* birds and animals which almost look alive.

stumble *v.* To trip and almost fall. *Ex.* The old lady *stumbled* when crossing the street.

stump *n.* (*a*) One of the wooden posts used in cricket. (*b*) The part of anything left after the rest has been cut or broken off. *Ex.* The *stump* of a tree or of a pencil.

stupid (*stew*-pid) *adj.* Not clever or intelligent. Slow to learn. *Ex* It is *stupid* to cross a street without watching the traffic in both directions.

style *n.* A fashion or way of doing anything. *Ex.* Some famous golfers have an awkward *style* of hitting the ball.

subdue (sub-*dew*) *v.* To conquer or get the better of. *Ex.* William the Conqueror *subdued* the English after the Battle of Hastings in 1066.

subject (*sub*-ject) *n.* (*a*) One who is under authority of another. *Ex.* We are all *subjects* of the Queen. (*b*) The *subject* of a sentence or of a speech or lecture or book is the person or thing spoken or written about.

submit (sub-*mit*) *v.* To give way to or yield. *Ex.* When Tommy had toothache he had to *submit* to having his tooth taken out.

substance (*sub*-stance) *n.* The material of which anything is made, or a thing itself which has qualities of its own. *Ex.* Sugar is a *substance*, so is wood, and so is sand.

substitute (*sub*-sti-tewt) (1) *n.* A person or thing put, or used, in place of another. *Ex.* Saccharin is a useful *substitute* for sugar in cooking. You can *substitute* (*v.*) it for sugar.

subway *n.* A road or path underground.

succeed (suk-*seed*) *v.* (*a*) To follow after. *Ex.* King Edward VII *succeeded* Queen Victoria, or succeeded to the throne of Queen Victoria. (*b*) To get on well, and manage to do what one wanted to do *Ex.* John *succeeded* in swimming 100 yards. To succeed is to have *success* (suk-*sess*) or to be *successful* (suk-*sess*-ful).

suck *v.* To draw into the mouth as one sucks the juice of an orange.

sudden *adj.* Quick, not expected. *Ex.* A *sudden* thunderstorm gave us a fright. It came on so *suddenly*.

suffer *v.* To bear pain. *Ex.* Tommy is *suffering* from tooth ache.

suffice (suf-*yce*) *v.* To be enough. *Ex.* One pound of flour will *suffice* for making a small loaf of bread. It will be *sufficient* (suf-*ish*-ent).

suggest (suj-*est*) *v.* To advise or to make a person consider an idea. *Ex.* The headmaster *suggests* that John should learn French. He made this *suggestion* (suj-*est*-yon).

suite (sweet) *n.* (*a*) A set of furniture for one room. (*b*) A set

of rooms. *Ex.* The Queen's *suite* in the Palace.

sullen *adj.* Inclined by nature to be sulky.

summer-house *n.* A small house or room built in the garden, in which one can sit in summer.

summon *v.* To send for. *Ex.* The General *summoned* his officers to discuss plans for the battle.

Sunday *n.* The first day of the week.

superior (soo-*peer*-e-or) *adj.* Higher, better in quality. *Ex.* Father has now got a *superior* position in his office.

supply (sup-*ly*) *v.* To give or sell for use. *Ex.* Our grocer *supplies* us with dog biscuits. We get a *supply* (*n.*) of them every month.

support (sup-*ort*) (1) *n.* Help. *Ex.* The lame man needed the *support* of a stick. (2) *v.* (*a*) To hold up. *Ex.* The table is *supported* by four legs. (*b*) To provide for. *Ex.* Our aunt, who is a widow, works hard to *support* her two children.

suppose (sup-*ose*) *v.* To think or believes to be true. *Ex.* I did not see Mary at the lecture, but I *suppose* she was there. *Supposing* is sometimes used in the sense of if. *Ex.* What will you do *supposing* you miss the train ?

supreme (sew-*preem*) *adj.* Highest or greatest. *Ex.* The Queen is the *supreme* ruler of our country.

sure (shoor) *adj.* Certain, having no doubt. *Ex.* I am *sure* this is the pencil I lost yesterday.

surface (*sur*-face) *n.* The upper or outside skin of anything. *Ex.* The *surface* of the silver teapot had been scratched.

surgeon (*sur*-jon) *n.* A doctor who cures or relieves illness not by giving medicines but by operations. All such work is *surgical* (*sur*-ji-cal) and the instruments used by the surgeon are surgical instruments.

surprise (sur-*prize*) *n.* Something unusual or unexpected or the feeling caused by this. *Ex.* The snow yesterday morning was a *surprise* to the children. It *surprised* (*v.*) them.

surrender (sur-*ren*-der) *v.* To give in after being defeated. *Ex.* After the battle, the enemy troops all *surrendered*.

surround *v.* To be all round. *Ex.* The children *surrounded* the man who was selling ice-cream at the fair. The house is *surrounded* by a pretty garden.

survey (sur-*vay*) *v.* To look at or look over. *Ex.* We *surveyed* the countryside from the top of the hill.

suspect (sus-*pekt*) *v.* To be inclined to believe something without having certain knowledge. Especially to think a person may be guilty of having done some wrong. *Ex.* Father *suspects* that it was the boy next door who picked all our apples off the tree.

sustain (sus-*tane*) *v.* To keep up, support. *Ex.* During their long march, the men were *sustained* by tinned food and chocolate. Their courage was *sustained* by the cheerfulness of the younger members of the party.

swallow (*swol*-o) (1) *n.* A small bird with forked tail, which comes to this country only during the summer months. (2) *v.* To allow food or drink to pass down the throat into the stomach.

swamp (swomp) *n.* A bog or marsh

Ex. There are many large *swamps* in Burma.

swan (swon) *n.* A large and powerful bird with long graceful neck, to be found chiefly on lakes and rivers.

swarm (swarm) (1) *n.* A great number of insects such as bees, midges or ants. (2) *v.* To come together in great numbers like a swarm. *Ex.* Children *swarmed* all over the beach on Bank Holiday.

sway (1) *n.* Rule or power. *Ex.* The British held sway in India for over 100 years. (2) *v.* To move from side to side. *Ex.* The branches of the apple tree *swayed* in the wind.

swear (sware) *v.* (*a*) To promise solemnly. *Ex.* The young thief *swore* (past tense of swear) that he would never steal anything again. (*b*) To use bad language.

sweat (swet) *n.* A natural moisture which rises on the skin after hard bodily work, or in hot weather. This is called perspiration (*pers*-pir-*ay*-shon), and to *sweat* (*v.*) is to perspire.

sweater (*swet*-er) *n.* A thick knitted garment.

swell *v.* To grow larger. *Ex.* If you soak rice in water it *swells*. A *swelling* is a lump on some part of the body, such as one on the gum caused by a bad tooth.

swift (1) *n.* A bird very like a swallow. (2) *adj.* Quick. *Ex.* John is a very *swift* runner.

swim *v.* To move in water by using the arms and legs. Fishes *swim* by using their fins.

sword (sord) *n.* A weapon like a very long knife formerly carried by soldiers in war.

symbol (*sim*-bol) *n.* An emblem. *Ex.* When a king is crowned, the crown is a *symbol* of his being appointed to rule over the nation.

sympathetic (*sim*-pa-*thet*-ik) *adj.* Having a kindly feeling for someone who is in trouble. To have this kindly feeling is to *sympathise*, to show *sympathy* (*sim*-pa-thee). *Ex.* Our neighbours were very *sympathetic* when Tommy was ill.

system (*sis*-tem) *n.* A scheme or plan. *Ex.* Scientists have helped farmers to try out new *systems* of growing crops.

table (*tay*-bl) *n.* (*a*) A piece of furniture having a flat surface and usually with four legs. It is used in houses for working or having meals on. (*b*) A list of facts or dates or numbers, such as the multiplication table or the Table of Contents at the beginning of a book.

tablet (*tab*-let) *n.* (*a*) A flat piece of wood, metal or stone fixed to a wall and having an inscription on it. (*b*) A piece of soap is sometimes called a tablet, and medicine is sometimes put into tablets which look like small sweets.

tack *n.* A small nail with a flat head, such as is used for nailing down carpets.

tailor (*tail*-or) *n.* One who makes suits of clothes, especially for men.

tale *n.* A story. *Ex.* All children love fairy-*tales*.

talent (*tal*-ent) *n.* The ability to do something well. *Ex.* James has a *talent* for drawing.

tame *adj.* An animal that is said to be tame is one that is naturally wild but has become accustomed to man. *Ex.* There are *tame* elephants in the zoo on whose backs children can have rides.

These elephants have been *tamed* (*v*).

tank *n.* (*a*) A large box or vessel for holding water, oil or other liquids. *Ex.* We have a *tank* for rain water at our backdoor. (*b*) An armed vehicle which can move over very rough country, used in war.

tap *n.* A short pipe by which water or any liquid can be run off as wanted. *Ex.* Baths usually have *taps* for hot and cold water.

tap *v.* To hit or strike gently. *Ex.* Father *tapped* me on the shoulder when it was time for us to go.

tar *n.* A thick, black, sticky liquid made from coal. *Ex.* The roof of the shed was painted with *tar* to make it waterproof.

tardy (*tar*-de) *adj.* Slow, late. *Ex.* John missed the first song because of his *tardy* arrival at the concert.

task (tahsk) *n.* A piece of work that has to be done. It might be an essay to write for school, or shopping to do for mother.

tasty (*tayst*-e) *adj.* Having a pleasant taste. *Ex.* A *tasty* pudding.

tavern (*tav*-ern) *n.* *See* public house.

teacher *n.* A person who teaches. Often one who teaches children at school. *Ex.* Did your *teacher* show you how to do your sums ?

team *n.* (*a*) Two or more horses pulling a vehicle or machine. (*b*) A group of people acting together either in a game or at work.

tear (teer) *n.* A drop of water which comes from the eye, caused by some strong feeling, usually sorrow. To be *tearful* is to be inclined to go on weeping.

tear (tair) *v.* To pull apart or pull to pieces. *Ex.* Our puppy tried to *tear* the curtain with its teeth.

tease (teeze) *v.* To annoy or make fun of. *Ex.* Harry was *teased* when he first went to school because his hair was curly and not cut very short.

telegram (*tel*-e-gram) *n.* A message sent by telegraph.

telegraph (*tel*-e-graf) *n.* An electrical instrument for sending quick messages over a long distance without speech.

telephone (*tel*-e-fone) *n.* An electrical instrument which makes it possible for people to speak to each other across a great distance.

telescope (*tel*-e-spoke) *n.* An instrument which makes it possible to see things from a long way off. *Ex.* *Telescopes* are much used at sea, and also by people who study the stars.

television (*tel*-e-*visj*-on) *n.* A television set is like a radio or wireless set, except that we see what is happening as well as hearing it.

temper *n.* A state of mind, such as a good temper or a bad temper.

temperate (*tem*-per-ate) *adj.* Moderate. *Ex.* Britain has a *temperate* climate compared with the Arctic regions or the tropics.

temperature (*tem*-per-a-tewr) *n.* The amount of heat or cold in a place or in the human body, or in a liquid.

tempest (*tem*-pest) *n.* A very bad storm including strong wind.

temple *n.* A building used for worship.

tempt *v.* To try to make a person

do something which he ought not to do. *Ex.* Do not *tempt* Tommy to eat too many sweets or he will be ill.

tenant (*ten*-ant) *n.* A person who pays a rent for using, or living in, a house or other building.

tend *v.* (*a*) To look after or take care of. *Ex.* Nurses *tend* sick people. (*b*) To be inclined to. *Ex.* In December the weather *tends* to become very cold The weather has this *tendency* (*ten*-den-se) to become cold.

tender *adj.* (*a*) Easily injured. *Ex.* Nancy has a very *tender* skin and her face and hands suffer in frosty weather. (*b*) Soft and well cooked. *Ex.* We had a *tender* chicken for dinner. A tender heart is a kind heart that feels pity for all who suffer *Tenderness* means gentleness, kindness.

tent *n.* A shelter made of canvas stretched over poles and fastened with ropes. *Ex.* The Boy Scouts put up their holiday *tent* near a stream.

term *n.* (*a*) A definite period of time such as the summer term at a school or college. (*b*) A word used as the name of a particular action or thing. *Ex.* Polar Region is a *term* applied to the region round either the North Pole or the South Pole. (*c*) A price or condition. *Ex.* Father is finding out the *terms* on which we can get a cottage for the holidays.

terrible (*te*-ribl) *adj.* Dreadful. *Ex.* There was a *terrible* storm in which several ships were wrecked.

terror *n.* Fear or fright. *Ex.* Baby woke up in *terror* from a bad dream.

test *v.* To try or examine. *Ex.* John *tested* his bicycle tyre for a puncture. He made a *test* (*n.*) by putting it in water.

text *n.* (*a*) The words contained by a book. *Ex.* The *text* of this book amounts to 50,000 words. (*b*) A verse or phrase from the Bible. *Ex.* "God is love" is a *text.*

theatre (*thee*-a-ter) *n.* (*a*) A building in which plays are acted. (*b*) The room in a hospital where operations are performed. It is called the operating *theatre.*

thence *adv.* From that place. *Ex.* We are going to London and *thence* to Brighton.

thermometer (ther-*mom*-e-ter) *n.* An instrument used for measuring temperature. *Ex.* Mother always tests the heat of baby's bath with a *thermometer.*

thigh (thy) *n.* The thick part of the leg between the knee and the body.

thimble *n.* A small metal cap worn on the middle finger to enable it to push a needle through cloth when sewing.

thirst *n.* The desire to drink. One who feels this need is *thirsty.*

thorn *n.* A prickle or sharp point found on the stems of some roses and other plants. *Ex.* John found that the puncture in his bicycle tyre had been caused by a *thorn.*

thorough (*thur*-ro) *adj.* To be thorough in your work means to take trouble and care to do it well—to do it *thoroughly.* *Ex.* Mary dusted the dining-room *thoroughly.*

thoroughfare (*thur*-o-fare) *n.* A road which is open at both ends and leads somewhere. A road marked "No Thoroughfare" means that there is no way through.

thousand (*thou*-zand) *n.* Ten hundreds.

thrill *n.* A feeling of pleasure or excitement. *Ex.* It gave us all a *thrill* to see the great ship arriving after her long voyage. It was a *thrilling* moment. An exciting book or story is now called a *thriller*.

thrive *v.* To keep healthy and well and grow up strong. *Ex.* We have twenty chickens and they are all *thriving*.

throne *n.* A special chair, reserved for a King or Queen.

throng *n.* A crowd of people. We can also say that streets were *thronged* (*v.*) with people.

through *prep.* (*a*) From end to end. *Ex.* All *through* the long night. (*b*) Because of. *Ex.* It was *through* Mary's remark to Joan that we heard of Joan's adventure.

throughout (throo-*owt*) *prep.* *Ex.* The weather was good *throughout* the week.

thunder *n.* The noise that comes after a flash of lightning. When we say that a person is *thunderstruck* we mean that he is very much surprised.

tick *v.* (*a*) To make the small noise that a clock or watch does when it is going. (*b*) To make a small mark beside a word on a list. *Ex.* The master *ticked* the names of the boys who were to play in the match.

ticket *n.* A card giving the right to travel by a train (a railway ticket) or to go into a theatre (a theatre ticket).

tide *n.* The movement of the sea (not only the waves) backward and forward. This happens twice during each period of twenty-four hours, and is called high tide and low tide.

tidy (*ty*-de) (1) *adj.* Neat and in good order. *Ex.* Mary always keeps her room *tidy*. (2) *v.* To make neat and put in good order. *Ex.* Mary *tidies* her room every day.

tie (1) *n.* A strip of cloth or silk worn round the neck. (2) *v.* (*a*) To join and twist two ends of a rope, cord or ribbon. (*b*) To fasten *Ex.* The boat was *tied* to the pier.

tiger (*ty*-ger) *n.* A large and fierce wild animal with black stripes on its yellow skin, found in Africa and other hot countries.

tight (tyte) *adj.* Fitting very closely. *Ex.* Nancy says her new shoes are too *tight*. To make tighter is to *tighten*. *Ex.* To *tighten* your shoe-lace.

tile *v.* To cover with tiles. *Tiles* (*n.*) are thin pieces of hard material used for this purpose. Red tiles are often used for covering roofs and white tiles are often used for covering the walls of bathrooms and kitchens.

till (1) *n.* A box or drawer in which shopkeepers keep the money they get for the things they sell. (2) *v.* To cultivate the land.

timber (*tim*-ber) *n.* Wood that has been cut off a tree, usually large pieces to be used for building.

timid (*tim*-id) *adj.* Inclined to be afraid. *Ex.* Tommy is still a little *timid* when he meets a big dog

tiny (*ty*-ne) *adj.* Very small. *Ex.* The midge is a *tiny* insect.

tip (1) *n.* (*a*) The pointed end of something. *Ex.* The *tip* of your nose. (*b*) A small extra payment to one who has done something for you, such as a waiter or a railway porter. (2) *v.* (*a*) To give a tip. (*b*) push or knock. *Ex.* He *tipped* his glass over by mistake.

title (*title*-l) *n.* (*a*) The name of a book or play. *Ex. Macbeth* is the *title* of one of Shakespeare's plays. (*b*) A name showing the rank or position of someone, such as Admiral or a Duke. The *title*-page of a book is its first page, which contains the title.

toast (1) *n.* Bread browned on both sides by the heat of the fire or gas. (2) *v.* To do this to bread.

tobacco (to-*bak*-o) *n.* The dried leaves of a plant used for smoking in a pipe or cigarette. One who sells tobacco is a tobacconist (to-*bak*-o-nist).

toddle *v.* To walk with small steps as a child (sometimes called a *toddler*) does when learning to walk.

toil *v.* & *n.* Work.

toilet (*toil*-et) *n.* The actions of washing, dressing and shaving.

token (toh-ken) *n.* A sign. *Ex.* A gift may be a *token* of friendship between two people.

tomb (toom) *n.* A grave. The stone set up on a grave, with an incription on it, is a tomb-stone.

ton (tun) *n.* A weight of 2.240 pounds. *Ex.* We can store a *ton* of coal in our cellar.

tone *n.* Sound, especially of a voice or musical instrument such as a piano or violin.

tongue (tung) *n.* An organ in the mouth by which we taste food, and which we use in speaking.

tool *n.* A thing which helps one to do or make something. *Ex.* A hammer is a *tool.* When a plumber comes to mend a water-pipe he brings a bag of *tools* with him.

top *n.* A toy shaped either like a pear or a mushroom, and usually made of wood, which is made to spin on the ground.

torch *n.* A light that can be carried in the hand, usually an electric one.

torment (*tor*-ment) *n.* Extreme pain of body or mind. To tor-*ment* (*v.*) is to cause pain or worry to someone. *Ex.* Mary was *tormented* by toothache.

torture (*tor*-tewr) *n.* & *v.* Very great pain, or to cause very great pain for cruel reasons.

total (*to*-tal) *adj.* All, complete, whole. *Ex.* Henry's *total* wages are two pounds per week. They amount to a *total* (*n.*) of two pounds.

touch (1) *n.* A way of touching. *Ex.* The nurse had a gentle *touch*. (2) *adj.* A *touching* story or poem is one that makes us sympathetic or a little sad. (3) *v.* To come against gently. *Ex.* Mother *touched* my arm.

tow (toh) *v.* To pull a car or boat with a rope.

towel (*tow*-el) *n.* A cloth on which one dries oneself after washing.

tower (*tow*-er) *n.* A tall narrow building such as the tower on a Church.

trace (1) *n.* A mark left by something. *Ex.* We found *traces* of footsteps. The police found *traces* of finger-marks on the safe. (2) *v.* To follow by looking for

marks or signs. *Ex.* The police are trying to *trace* the man who stole the van.

track *n.* A rough path. *Ex.* There was only a rough *track* across the moor. The word track is also used in the same sense as trace.

trade *n.* The business of buying and selling or the work a man does. *Ex.* There was a great *trade* in clothes and groceries at the weekly market. What is your father's *trade* ? He is a carpenter. One who trades (buys and sells) is a *trader.* A shopkeeper is a *tradesman.*

traffic *n.* The coming and going of people in cars, trains, boats, or aeroplanes. *Ex. Traffic* is always very great on August Bank Holiday.

tragedy (*traj*-e-de) *n.* A very sad event, or a play written about such a thing. *Ex.* Shakespeare's play *King Lear* is a famous *tragedy.* It tells a *tragic* (*traj*-ik) story.

train (1) *n.* A railway engine with coaches or trucks. (2) *v.* To teach or educate. *Ex.* My cousin is being *trained* as a hospital nurse. Her *training* is nearly finished.

traitor (*tray*-tor) *n.* One who betrays his country.

tramp *n.* (*a*) A long walk, usually for pleasure. (*b*) A person who has no fixed home but goes from one place to another, begging for food and shelter.

trample (*tramp*-l) *v.* To walk heavily over. *Ex.* We were afraid the cattle from the farm would *trample* over the flowerbeds.

transfer (trans-*fer*) *v.* To move or hand over from one place or person to another. *Ex.* The luggage was *transferred* from the station to the ship.

translate *v.* To change a letter, book or poem from one language into another. *Ex.* The New Testament was *translated* from Greek into English. What has been translated is a *translation.*

transport (trans-*port*) *v.* To convey. *Ex.* Many ships are required to *transport* food across the oceans. The ships are used for transport (*trans*-port) (*n*).

trap *n.* An instrument for catching wild animals.

travel (*trav*-el) *v.* To go, especially to a foreign country or distant place. *Ex.* John would like to *travel* to Italy when he is older. He is sure he would enjoy *travel* (*n*). One who travels is a *traveller.*

treason (*tree*-zon) *n.* The crime committed by a traitor.

treasure (*tresj*-ur) *n.* Anything of great value. It might he gold or jewels as in many adventure stories.

treasurer (*tresj*-ur-er) *n.* The treasurer of a society or club is the person who looks after all the accounts and money belonging to it.

treat (treet) (1) *n.* A pleasure. *Ex.* The donkey-ride was a *treat* for Harry. (2) *v.* (*a*) To act to a person or animal in a certain way. *Ex.* Parents *treat* their children with kindness and affection. (*b*) To deal with illness or suffering. *Ex.* Doctors *treat* their patients. (*c*) To pay for something that gives pleasure to someone else. *Ex.* Uncle Henry *treated* Tommy to a ride on a donkey at Margate.

treatment (*treet*-ment) *n* The way a person or animal is treated. *Ex.* Kind *treatment*, or *treatment* at the hospital for an illness.

tremble (*trem*-bl) *v*. To shake with cold or fear or excitement.

tribe *n*. A small nation, or part of a nation, usually not civilised.

trick *n* (*a*) Something done to surprise and amuse others, such as the things a conjurer does. (*b*) Something done to deceive. *Ex.* We read in the Bible of the *trick* that Jacob played on his father, Isaac.

trip (1) *n*. A journey taken for pleasure. *Ex.* A *trip* to Brighton (2) *v*. To knock one's foot against something and fall, or nearly fall. *Ex.* Tommy *tripped* over a loose stone.

trolley (*troll*-e) *n*. A sort of box or tray on wheels pushed by hand, and used for moving things that are too heavy to carry. A trolley-bus is a bus which is driven by electric power coming from overhead wires.

troop *n*. A number of people, especially soldiers.

trot *v* To run with short steps. We speak of a horse trotting, or a child trotting.

trouble (*trub*-l) (1) *n*. Anything which troubles is a *trouble* (*n*.). A person or thing that causes trouble is said to be troublesome. (2) *v*. To disturb, annoy, worry. *Ex.* I am sorry to *trouble* you while you are so busy.

trousers (*trow*-zers) *n*. A garment worn by boys and men, covering the lower part of the body and legs.

truck *n*. A vehicle for carrying heavy things. *Ex.* The coal-*trucks* on a railway.

trumpet *n*. A metal musical instrument which is played by blowing into it.

trunk *n*. (*a*) The main part of anything such as a tree or the human body. A "trunk call" is a telephone call over a long distance. (*b*) The long snout of an elephant. (*c*) A large box used for carrying clothes on a journey.

trust *v*. To rely on or have faith in. *Ex.* Mother says she can *trust* Mary to look after baby in every way Mary is so *trustworthy* (worthy of being trusted).

truth (trooth) *n*. The real facts about anything. One who speaks the truth is said to be truthful.

tube (tewb) *n*. A hollow length of metal, rubber or glass. *Ex.* The inner part of a bicycle tyre is a rubber tube.

tug (1) *n*. A steamboat which is used for pulling other boats or ships behind it. (2) *v*. To pull hard.

tumble *v*. & *n*. Fall.

tune (tewn) *n*. Musical notes arranged together so as to form a complete musical story which can be repeated and remembered just as a word-story can.

turkey (*tur*-ke) *n*. A large bird, much liked as food, especially at Christmas.

turtle (*tur*-tl) *n*. A creature like a very large tortoise.

twice *adv*. Two times.

twig *n*. A very small branch of a tree or bush.

twilight (*twy*-lite) *n*. The time when daylight is fading and darkness is coming on. *Ex.* Rabbits come out to feed in the *twilight*.

twin *n*. One of two children

born of the same mother at the same time.

twine (1) *n.* Strong thread or string. (2) *v.* To turn itself round. *Ex.* Ivy had *twined* itself round the old oak tree.

twinkle *v.* To shine with a sparkling light as stars do.

twist *v.* To twine or bend. *Ex.* Rope is made by *twisting* lengths of cord together. Mary *twisted* her ankle when she fell.

type (1) *n.* (*a*) A kind or sort. *Ex.* Mother does not like that *type* of hat. (*b*) Letters made in wood or metal to print from. *Ex.* Different kinds of *type* are often used for one printed page. (2) *v.* To print on a typewriter.

typewriter (*type*-ry-ter) *n.* A small machine, worked by hand, for writing with type. One trained to use such a machine is a *typist*.

ugly (*ug*-le) *adj.* Unpleasant to look at. A famous fairy-tale tells the story of an ugle little bird which grew up to be a beautiful swan.

umbrella (um-*brel*-a) *n.* A circular piece of silk stretched over a light metal frame, held over the head as protection from rain. *Ex.* Susan used her new *umbrella* when it rained yesterday.

un is a prefix which means *not*, when placed before adjectives or adverbs. *Ex. Unfair* means *not fair*. When placed before a verb it makes the meaning just the opposite of what it was. *Ex.* To *un*fasten, to *un*dress.

understand *v.* To know the meaning of or to know all about. *Ex.* To *understand* French. To *uderstand* dogs, gardening.

undertake *v.* To agree to do something. *Ex.* James has *undertaken* to weed the garden once a week.

undertaker *n.* A tradesman who manages funerals.

uniform (*yew*-ni-form) (1) *n.* The dress worn by all members of any service such as the Air Force or police. (2) *adj.* Exactly the same, not varying. *Ex.* All the benches and desks in our school are *uniform*.

universe (*yew*-ni-verse) *n.* The whole world. Any thing that applies to the whole world is *universal* (yew-ni-*vers*-al). *Ex.* The desire among nations for peace is *universal*.

university (yew-ni-*vers*-i-te) *n.* A number of colleges joined together for the education of men and women.

upright (*up*-rite) *adj.* (*a*) Standing straight up. *Ex.* An *upright* pole. (*b*) Honourable and good. *Ex.* An *upright* man.

urge (urj) *v.* To urge a person to do something is to advise him to do it, or even insist that he shall do it. *Ex.* Mother *urged* John to go to the dentist.

usual (*yewz*-u-al) *adj.* Generally done, ordinary. *Ex.* Father has gone out for his *usual* evening walk.

utmost *adj.* The most that is possible. *Ex.* Go for the doctor with the *utmost* speed.

utter (1) *v.* To utter words is to speak. To utter a cry is to call out or scream. *Ex.* A speech is an *utterance*. (2) *adj.* Complete or extreme. *Ex. Utter* nonsense or *utter* poverty.

vacant (*vay*-kant) *adj.* (*a*) Empty. *Ex.* A *vacant* house. (*b*)

Having no meaning. *Ex.* He gave me a *vacant* look. A *vacancy (vay-kan-se)* is a situation that is not filled. *Ex.* There is a *vacancy* in the office.

vacation (va-*kay*-shon) *n.* Time that is not filled with work. A holiday. *Ex.* Father has three weeks *vacation* each year.

vain *adj.* (*a*) Conceited. *Ex.* Margaret is a nice girl but inclined to be *vain.* (*b*) Useless. *Ex* James has made a *vain* search for his penknife. He cannot find it anywhere.

valley (*val*-e) *n.* A piece of land lying between hills. *Ex.* The Thames *valley* contains many good farms.

value (*val*-yu) *n.* The price of a thing, or its importance. *Ex.* The chief *value* of my bicycle is that it lets me get about so quickly. It has been *valued* (*v.*) at £10. I find it very *valuable* in many ways.

vanish (*van*-ish) *v.* To disappear. *Ex.* As the sun rose, the mist *vanished.*

vanity (*van*-i-te) *n.* The state of being vain or conceited.

vapour (*vay*-por) *n.* Steam, mist, cloud or fog.

vary (*vair*-e) *v.* To change. To differ. *Ex.* The amount of sunshine *varies* each day, being sometimes greater and sometimes less. The temperature varies also. It is *variable.* To say that you met *various* (*vair*-e-us) people when you were out means that you met several different people. You might buy a *variety* (va-*ry*-e-te) of different things from a shop. A variety performance in a theatre or on the radio is one which includes several different sorts of turns (song, acts, dances and conjuring).

veal *n.* The flesh of a calf when used as food.

vein (vane) *n.* One of the small tube-shaped vessels which carry blood through the body.

vengeance (*ven*-jans) *n.* Revenge.

venture (1) *n.* An adventure. (2) *v.* To dare or to take a risk. *Ex.* John *ventured* on to the ice before it was frozen hard enough.

verify (*ve*-ri-fy) *v.* To check or prove the correctness of. *Ex.* We are taught to *verify* all the facts we want to use in an essay.

vessel *n.* (*a*) A boat or ship. (*b*) Anything that holds liquid such as a cup, jug, kettle or bowl. Our veins are blood-vessels.

veto (*vee*-to) *v.* & *n.* To forbid. *Ex.* The headmaster *vetoed* Sunday games. He put his *veto* (*n.*) on them.

vex *v.* To cause sorrow or disappointment or annoyance. *Ex.* We all try not to *vex* mother.

vice *n.* A wicked habit such as telling lies. A person who has vices is said to be *vicious* (*vish*-us). An animal is called vicious when it is bad-tempered and dangerous.

vice is a prefix meaning in place of.

victim *n.* A person who suffers from the action of others, or from a bad habit in himself, or from a disease. *Ex.* There were four *victims* of the aeroplane accident.

victor *n.* The one who wins a battle or a competition or any trial of strength or skill. *Ex.* John was the *victor* in the first race at the Sports. The success won by the victor is *victory.* He was *victorious* (vik-*taw*-re-us).

view (vew) (1) *n.* What is seen. Scenery. *Ex.* We get a lovely *view* of the hills from the upstairs windows. (2) *v.* To look at carefully. Mother went to *view* a cottage in the country.

vigour (*vig*-ur) *n.* Strength and health. One who has this is *vigorous*. *Ex.* Grandfather is still *vigorous* though he is no longer young.

vile *adj.* Evil, horrible. *Ex.* A *vile* action or a *vile* smell.

vine *n.* The plant on which grapes grow. A *vineyard* (*vin*-yard) is a field or garden in which grape-vines are planted.

vinegar (*vin*-e-gar) *n.* A sour acid liquid used in cooking.

violence (*vy*-o-lens) *n.* Rough or cruel behaviour. The use of force to injure others. To use or show great force and roughness is to be *violent*. There might be a violent quarrel or a violent storm at sea.

violin (*vy*-o-*lin*) *n.* A musical instrument with strings, played with a bow. One who plays the violin is a *violinist*.

virtue (*vir*-tew) *n.* Goodness. To have *virtue* is to be virtuous, good.

visible (*viz*-i-bl) *adj.* Anything that can be seen is visible. *Ex.* When the kettle boils, steam is *visible*.

vision (*visj*-on) *n.* (*a*) The power of seeing. (*b*) Something seen either in a dream or in fact. *Ex.* The New Testament tells of St. Paul having a *vision* on the way to Damascus.

visit (*viz*-it) (1) *v.* To go to see someone. *Ex.* To *visit* Aunt Mary. (2) *n.* Instead of saying "to visit" we can say "to pay a visit" (*n.*) One who pays a visit is a *visitor* (*viz*-it-or).

voice *n.* The sound made through the mouth when speaking, singing or shouting.

void *adj.* Completely empty. *Ex.* We think of the space between the stars as being *void*.

volume (*vol*-yewm) *n.* A book.

vote *v.* To express one's wish either by marking a paper or by raising hands.

vow *n.* A solemn promise. *Ex.* When a man and woman are being married they make *vows* to love and cherish each other.

voyage *n.* A journey by sea, especially between different countries. *Ex.* The *voyage* to America can be done in about five days.

wage (wayj) *v.* To wage war is to make war, to fight against another nation.

wagon *n.* (*a*) A vehicle for carrying hay on the roads. (*b*) A railway wagon carries heavy things like machinery and also carries animals such as horses and cattle.

waist *n.* The narrowest part of the body, below the ribs. *Ex.* You may wear a belt round your *waist*.

wait *v.* (*a*) To stay in one place. *Ex.* *Wait* here till I come back. (*b*) To watch for, to expect. *Ex.* John is *waiting* for the result of his examination.

wake or **waken** (*wake*-en) *v.* (*a*) To come out of sleep, to be awake. (*b*) To make someone else do this. *Ex.* John asked me to *waken* him at 7 o'clock.

wander (*won*-der) *v.* To walk or move about without a plan, not keeping to a straight road. *Ex.* We *wandered* through the park.

want (wont). (1) *n.* Need, poverty. *Ex.* These people are in *want* of food. They are living in *want.* (2) *v.* To wish for, to need. *Ex.* Baby *wants* his rattle. Father's socks *want* mending.

ward *n.* A long bedroom for patients in a hospital. A *warder* is an attendant or guard in a prison or asylum. A *wardrobe* is a cupboard in which clothes are kept.

warn *v.* (*a*) To advise against. *Ex.* The boys were *warned* not to go on the ice as it was still too thin.

warren *n.* A piece of ground in which there are many burrows.

warrior (*wo*-re-or) *n.* A man who has fought in wars.

waste (wayst) (1) *adj.* Useless. *Ex. Waste* paper. (2) *v.* To use foolishly and without care. *Ex.* Do not *waste* hot water by forgetting to turn the tap off. It is wrong to be *wasteful.*

watch (wotsh) (1) *n.* A small clock to be carried in the pocket or worn on the wrist. A *watchman* is a man who watches (takes care of) offices or other buildings during the night. A *watchword* is a word or phrase used by one side in a battle, and not known to the other side. It is used as a password. (2) *v.* To look at carefully. *Ex.* To *watch* a tennis match. *Watch* baby, so that he does not fall out of his pram.

wave (1) *n.* A movement of the surface of the sea. (2) *v.* To shake in the air. *Ex.* To *wave* a handkerchief. The flag *waves* in the wind.

wax (1) *n.* A yellow substance made by bees and used in making the honeycomb in which they keep their honey. (2) *v.* (*a*) To become. *Ex.* To *wax* fat. (*b*) To grow larger, as the moon seems to do after "new moon."

wealth (welth) *n.* A large supply especially of money. Riches. A man who has wealth is *wealthy.*

weapon (*wep*-on) *n.* Anything that can be used for defending oneself or attacking someone else is a weapon. A gun is a weapon, but an umbrella might be a weapon too.

wear (wair) *v.* When we have put our clothes on, we wear them. When we have worn them for a long time they begin to *wear out,* which means that they are old and *worn* and need to be mended.

weary (*weer*-e) *adj.* Tire.

weather (*weth*-er) *n.* The condition of the atmosphere around us, which changes frequently and may be cold, warm, wet or dry.

weave (weev) *v.* To make cloth by means of threads crossing each other on a loom and being twisted together. This is done by *weavers.*

web *n.* The trap made by a spider for catching flies. He *weaves* it as men weave cloth. *Webbed* feet are like those of ducks and frogs, with skin stretched between the toes to enable them to swim.

wed *v.* To marry. The day on which two people wed is called their *wedding-day.*

weed *n.* A plant growing wild, especially one that has sown itself in a garden.

weep *v.* To cry or shed tears. The past tense is wept.

weigh (way) *v.* To find how heavy a thing is. The heaviness of a thing is its *weight* (wait). *Ex.* I *weighed* this parcel and its

weight is two pounds (2 lb.).

welcome (*wel*-kum) *v*. To show pleasure when someone comes *Ex*. Aunt Mary *welcomed* us warmly, gave us a warm *welcome* (*n*.).

welfare (*wel*-fare) *n*. The state of having good health and sufficient comfort. *Ex*. Mothers look after the *welfare* of their families.

well (1) *n*. A deep hole dug in the ground, from which water can be drawn up. (2) *adj*. In good health. (3) *adv*. In a good, satisfactory, or successful way. *Ex*. Harry draws *well*.

wheat *n*. A very important grain from which we get flour for bread.

whirl *v*. To move or turn quickly. *Ex*. The strong wind *whirled* the dead leaves round and round in the garden.

whisper *v*. To speak in a very low voice.

whistle (1) *n*. A sharp musical sound made by forcing the breath through one's lips when they are almost closed. (2) *v*. To make the sound either in the above way or with a small instrument made for the purpose.

whole (hole) *adj*. All ; the complete amount *Ex*. The *whole* class, the *whole* box of books.

wholesome (*hole*-sum) *adj*. Good ; good for the health. *Ex*. *Wholesome* food.

wide *adj*. *See* width

width *n*. The distance between the sides of a thing. *Ex*. The *width* of the table is four feet. The table is four feet *wide*.

wife *n*. A woman who is married.

will *n*. (*a*) The power of the mind by which one decides what one means to do. *Ex*. Baby has a strong *will* already. (*b*) A written document stating what a person wishes to have done with his property after his death.

willow (*wil*-o) *n*. A tree usually growing near rivers. Cricket bats are often made from the wood of the willow.

wind (1) *n*. (win-d). Air that is moving. *Ex*. There is a cold *wind* today. (2) *v*. (wine-d). To roll up or make tight. *Ex*. To *wind* wool, or to *wind* the spring of a clock. We say a river winds, when it flows round corners and not in a straight line. A *wind*-mill is a mill whose machinery is worked by a wheel turned by the wind.

wing *n*. The wings of birds are like arms which enable them to fly.

wink *v*. To open and close one eye quickly.

wire *n*. Metal drawn out into long threads. *Ex*. Telegraph *wires*.

wise *adj*. Sensible. Having the sense to do things in the right way. *Ex*. It was *wise* of mother to keep Tommy indoors while he had a cold.

witch *n*. A woman who is supposed to have magic power to do evil. There are witches in many fairy-tales.

witness (*wit*-nes) *n*. A person who sees a thing happen. *Ex*. Mother was a *witness* of the accident at the street-corner. She *witnessed* (*v*.) it.

woe (wo) *n*. Grief, sorrow. To be *woeful* (*wo*-ful) is to be sad.

wolf (woolf) *n*. A fierce wild animal like a large dog.

wonder (*wun*-der) *n*. A feeling of surprise and admiration. A thing that causes this feeling is said to be *wonderful* or *wondrous* (*wun*-

drus). *Ex.* The *wondrous* stars in the sky at night.

wool *n.* The hair that grows on a sheep's skin, and the thread made from this. *Ex.* Socks are made of *wool.* A thing made of wool is *woollen* (*adj*).

word (wurd) *n.* A number of sounds denoting an object or idea, forms a spoken word. When these sounds are written down by means of letters, they make a written word. *Ex.* Small children can say *words* before they can read or write them.

workman (*werk*-man) *n* A man who works with his hands, such as a carpenter or plumber.

worry (*wu*-re) *v.* To feel anxious and troubled. *Ex.* Mother worries about Tommy's cough. It is a *worry* (*n.*) to her. She feels *worried* about it.

worship (*wur*-ship) *v.* To love and honour, especially to love and honour God. A church service is public *worship* (*n.*).

worthless (*wurth*-less) *adj.* Of no use or value. *Ex.* The half-crown which the old man paid for his ticket was found to be an imitation one and quite *worthless.*

worthy (*wur*-the) *adj.* To be worthy of respect or love means to deserve it.

wound (woond) *v.* & *n.* To injure so as to cause bleeding. *Ex.* Uncle Henry was *wounded* in the war. His *wound* (*n.*) was not serious.

wrap (rap) *v.* To put a cover round something. *Ex.* Please *wrap* this book in paper. Mother put a *wrap* (*n.*) round her shoulders.

wrath (rawth) *n.* Great anger.

wreath (reeth) *n.* Flowers and leaves arranged in a circle.

wreck (rek) *n.* When a ship strikes a rock and breaks up, it becomes a *wreck.* It has been *wrecked* (*v.*).

wretched (*retsh*-ed) *adj.* Unhappy, miserable

wrinkle (*rink*-l) *n.* A fold in the skin, especially on the face. Old people generally have wrinkles on their faces.

wrist (rist) *n.* The joint between the arm and the hand.

yard *n.* (*a*) A length of 36 inches. (*b*) An enclosed piece of ground, usually adjoining a building. *Ex.* A farm-*yard.*

yawn *n.* & *v.* A long breath with one's mouth wide open, usually due to sleepiness.

yonder *adv.* Over there. *Ex.* You see that hill *yonder*?

zeal *n.* Keenness or eagerness in doing good work. *Ex.* Robert's zeal as a missionary is remarkable.

zero (*zeer*-o) *n.* nothing ; the figure nought.

EXERCISES

Explain the various meanings expressed by each of the following words & use them in each of these senses in separate sentences of your own :

(*For* **Board** *Classes*)

Fireman, fit, general, dress, hero, companion, clever, charm, mail, principal, square, well.

(*For* **University** *Classes*)

Hail, hind, air, common, detail, construction, contend, corner, convict, commit, book, blood, beat, form, flourish, foot, firm, bill, address, worm.

CHAPTER XXIV

IMPORTANT INSTRUMENTS OF THOUGHT

1. Words are important instruments of thought. The words you have learnt in the previous chapter are those without which you can never do in English. They are simple words which should and do constitute everyone's vocabulary. Nevertheless they are inadequate for the expression of higher ideas, although it is only the expression of higher ideas which makes all the difference between a cultured and an uncultured person. It is for this reason that you must also learn the highbrow words besides the indispensable ones you have already learnt. Here follow some classified lists of such words with brief explanations :

SOME USEFUL NOUNS (1)

agnosticism. The doctrine that no one can ever know the metaphysical truths or the mysteries of creation.

altruism. Unselfish regard for, and devotion to, the interests of others.

atheism. The doctrine that God, or for the matter of that, all deities are just figments of human imagination.

chauvinism. Patriotism carried to an illogical or ludicrous extreme.

conservatism. The right wing of any government ; the creed of sticking to established traditions. Extreme conservatives are called *reactionaries* or *diehards*.

egoism The attitude of indifference to the feelings of others and wanton pursuit of self-interest.

epicureanism. The doctrine of the Greek philosopher Epicurus, according to whom pleasure is the highest value in the world.

fatalism. The belief that all human and other actions are predestined.

jingoism. A creed, the adherents of which brag of their country's war potential and have a habit of raising war cries.

liberalism. The left wing of any government ; the creed of breaking away from the past.

stoicism. The doctrine of the Greek philosopher Zeno, who taught in the *Stoa Polipile* (the painted porch) that one should lead a

very hard life, be resigned to fate even in the worst of circumstances and rise above the petty considerations of pleasure and pain.

radicalism. The extreme form of liberalism.

SOME USEFUL NOUNS (2)

ambiguity. Vagueness ; an expression whose meaning can be taken in two or more ways.

analogy. Partial agreement or resemblance between things somewhat different ; similarity in certain aspects.

anticlimax. A gradual or sudden decrease in the importance or impressiveness of what is said ; the opposite of climax ; drop in thought and expression, sometimes from the sublime to the ridiculous.

cliche. A stale, worn-out or stereotyped phrase, either written or spoken.

epigram. A pithy saying in prose or verse that crystallizes a wise or witty thought.

euphemism. A pleasing expression used in place of one which is plainer or more accurate but which might be offensive, embarrassing, or in bad taste.

non sequitur. An inference, or conclusion, that does not follow from the facts as stated.

persiflage. A light, flippant style of conversation or writing ; banter ; raillery.

redundancy. Unnecessary repetition or the employment of more words than are necessary.

simile. A rhetorical figure expressing comparison or likeness.

SOME USEFUL NOUNS (3)

antipathy. An instinctive feeling of aversion or dislike.

benevolence. Desire for well-being or comfort of others ; charitableness.

compunction. Self-reproach for wrong-doing ; slight regret.

enervation. Being deprived of physical and nervous energy.

ennui. A feeling of listless weariness resulting from satiety.

frustration. Failure in attainment.

lethargy. Morbid stupor ; state of apathy or indifference.

nostalgia. Severe or morbid homesickness ; a longing for past pleasant occurrences.

satiety. Being filled beyond natural desire.

weltshmerz. Sadness from a gloomy view of world philosophy (literary "world pain.")

SOME USEFUL NOUNS (4)

anomaly. A deviation from type ; an irregularity.
banality. Dullness, triteness.
braggadocio. Pretentious boasting.
chicanery. Trickery.
fiasco. Complete or humiliting failure.
idiosyncrasy. A characteristic peculiarity.
imbroglio. A troublesome complication of affairs.
jingoism. Favouring a demonstrative foreign policy.
megalomania. Delusions of grandeur.
penury. Extreme poverty or want.
malingering. Feigning illness in order to escape work.

SOME USEFUL NOUNS (5)

amnesia. Loss or impairment of memory ; morbid forgetfulness.
dipsomania. An uncontrollable craving for alcoholic drink.
electra-complex. A complex involving an early and abnormal attachment of a girl for her father, with hostility towards her mother.
hypochondria. Morbid melancholy and anxiety about one's health.
insomnia. Chronic inability to sleep.
kleptomania. An insane or uncontrollable propensity to steal.
manic-depression. Moods of violent excitement and mental depression.
megalomania. Insanity in which the subject thinks himself great or exalted.
melancholia. Mental derangement characterized by continued gloom and depression.
monomania. Mental derangement confined to one idea.
Oedipus-complex. The electra-complex as applied to a boy's attachment to his mother.
paronoia. Chronic mental unsoundness ; dementia with delusions.
pyromania. An insane propensity to set fires.
schizofrenia. A form of mental derangement characterized by a loss of touch with reality ; a split personality.
somnambulism. The act or state of walking and performing other actions during sleep.

SOME USEFUL VERBS (1)

dominate. To have control over
dramatise. To make vivid or moving.
emulate. To follow the example of.

very hard life, be resigned to fate even in the worst of circumstances and rise above the petty considerations of pleasure and pain.

radicalism. The extreme form of liberalism.

SOME USEFUL NOUNS (2)

ambiguity. Vagueness ; an expression whose meaning can be taken in two or more ways.

analogy. Partial agreement or resemblance between things somewhat different ; similarity in certain aspects.

anticlimax. A gradual or sudden decrease in the importance or impressiveness of what is said ; the opposite of climax ; drop in thought and expression, sometimes from the sublime to the ridiculous.

cliche. A stale, worn-out or stereotyped phrase, either written or spoken.

epigram. A pithy saying in prose or verse that crystallizes a wise or witty thought.

euphemism. A pleasing expression used in place of one which is plainer or more accurate but which might be offensive, embarrassing, or in bad taste.

non sequitur. An inference, or conclusion, that does not follow from the facts as stated.

persiflage. A light, flippant style of conversation or writing ; banter ; raillery.

redundancy. Unnecessary repetition or the employment of more words than are necessary.

simile. A rhetorical figure expressing comparison or likeness.

SOME USEFUL NOUNS (3)

antipathy. An instinctive feeling of aversion or dislike.

benevolence. Desire for well-being or comfort of others ; charitableness.

compunction. Self-reproach for wrong-doing ; slight regret.

enervation. Being deprived of physical and nervous energy.

ennui. A feeling of listless weariness resulting from satiety.

frustration. Failure in attainment.

lethargy. Morbid stupor ; state of apathy or indifference.

nostalgia. Severe or morbid homesickness ; a longing for past pleasant occurrences.

satiety. Being filled beyond natural desire.

weltshmerz. Sadness from a gloomy view of world philosophy (literary "world pain.")

SOME USEFUL NOUNS (4)

anomaly. A deviation from type ; an irregularity.
banality. Dullness, triteness.
braggadocio. Pretentious boasting.
chicanery. Trickery.
fiasco. Complete or humiliting failure.
idiosyncrasy. A characteristic peculiarity.
imbroglio. A troublesome complication of affairs.
jingoism. Favouring a demonstrative foreign policy.
megalomania. Delusions of grandeur.
penury. Extreme poverty or want.
malingering. Feigning illness in order to escape work.

SOME USEFUL NOUNS (5)

amnesia. Loss or impairment of memory ; morbid forgetfulness.
dipsomania. An uncontrollable craving for alcoholic drink.
electra-complex. A complex involving an early and abnormal attachment of a girl for her father, with hostility towards her mother.
hypochondria. Morbid melancholy and anxiety about one's health.
insomnia. Chronic inability to sleep.
kleptomania. An insane or uncontrollable propensity to steal.
manic-depression. Moods of violent excitement and mental depression.
megalomania. Insanity in which the subject thinks himself great or exalted.
melancholia. Mental derangement characterized by continued gloom and depression.
monomania. Mental derangement confined to one idea.
Oedipus-complex. The electra-complex as applied to a boy's attachment to his mother.
paronoia. Chronic mental unsoundness ; dementia with delusions.
pyromania. An insane propensity to set fires.
schizofrenia. A form of mental derangement characterized by a loss of touch with reality ; a split personality.
somnambulism. The act or state of walking and performing other actions during sleep.

SOME USEFUL VERBS (1)

dominate. To have control over
dramatise. To make vivid or moving.
emulate. To follow the example of.

facilitate. To make easier.

gesticulate. To make gestures or motions as in speaking.

immortalize. To make live forever.

patronize. To exercise condescension toward.

penalize. To make pay a fine, or suffer punishment.

pander. To minister to the gratification of other person's passion for one's own profit.

plagiarize. To appropriate and give out as one's own the literary work of another.

rationalize. To explain away one's weakness by specious reasoning.

recuperate. To get better.

sublimate. To purify one's baser instincts and change them into better ones.

SOME USEFUL VERBS (2)

deprecate. To be ashamed of the acts of his associates.

expiate. To possess a lively conscience, to atone for a sin.

importune To be an insistent beggar.

impute. To ascribe unworthy motives.

mulct. Not to mind cheating others.

procrastinate. To be too indolent to get his work done on time.

scintillate. To be gay and witty.

rusticate. To be on a vacation at a farmhouse.

vegetate. To be in a rut and leading a lazy life.

vet. To subject to careful examination.

SOME USEFUL ADJECTIVES (1)

crass. Coarse in structure ; heavy ; dull.

desultory. Passing irregularly from one thing to another ; changeable ; without method.

dogmatic. Marked by positive or authoritative assertion.

intermittent. That which ceases and starts again, that which proceeds at intervals.

macabre. Pertaining to, indicative of, or suggesting death.

sardonic. Insincere and derisive ; sneering.

subversive. Tending to overthrow from the very foundations.

vitriolic. Corrosive ; burning ; caustic.

vicarious. That which is done or suffered by one or behalf of someone else ; that which is enjoyed indirectly through some other medium.

wanton. (*a*) Lewd, lascivious, lustful (person, usually a woman).
(*b*) Recklessly inconsiderate, heartless or unrestrained (act).

SOME USEFUL ADJECTIVES (2)

abortive. Coming to naught ; failing.
flagrant. Openly scandalous ; heinous.
inane. Senseless ; silly ; empty.
maudlin. Made foolish by liquor ; tearfully affectionate.
obsequious. Cringing and servile in manner.
perfunctory. Done mechanically and without interest ; superficial and careless.
plebean. Common ; inferior.
presumptuous. Unduly confident or bold ; audacious ; arrogant ; insolent.
sadistic. Inclined to cruelty ; getting pleasure out of hurting others.
surreptitious. Accomplished by secret or improper means.

TYPES OF PERSONS (1)

an adonis. Extremely handsome.
agnostic. One who is not sure whether or not God exists.
amazon. Man-like woman.
ascetic. One who lives a simple and austere existence.
atheist. One who does not believe in God.
clairvoyant. One who says he can see things that you cannot.
connoisseur. Authoritative judge and critic in some fine art.
a Circe. Destructive siren (woman).
coquette. Flirt (woman).
egoist. One who lives only for himself.
demagogue. One who is a false leader of the common people.
esthete. One who has an unusual appreciation of beauty.
futilitarian. One who claims that life is completely futile.
gourmet. One who has good taste in food.
a Judas. One who will betray a friend.
numismatist. One who collects rare coins.

pedant. One who is ostentatious about his learning.

philologist. Student of words.

philatelist. One who collects stamps.

sycophant. One who bootlicks the rich and powerful.

tyro. Beginner in profession.

virago. A woman who has a sharp, bold tongue and temper.

virtuoso. Skilful practitioner of some art.

vulgar. Coarse and uncouth.

martinet. Offensive stickler for discipline.

TYPES OF PERSONS (2)

ambivert. Finding his satisfactions both within himself and in the outside world.

diffident. One possessed with self-distrust ; shy ; timid.

effervescent. Giving off bubb'es (liquid); sparkling (gay persons).

egocentric. One looking at everything from a personal point of view.

exhibitionist. One who loves putting on an act in front of others.

extrovert. One whose chief interests are outside of oneself and who makes friends easily.

gregarious. Habitually living or moving in company with others, or wishing to.

inhibited. Not able to have fun because of his conscience and early training.

introvert. One whose interest is directed inward, who is turned in upon himself and who is much alone.

quixotic. Idealistic but impractical.

saturnine. Morose, gloomy, heavy, dull.

truculent. Of savage character, awakening terror.

TYPES OF PERSONS (3)

complacent. Completely self-satisfied and contented.

erudite. Very learned, scholarly.

esthetic. Appreciating or loving the beautiful.

gullible. Credulous, easily deceived.

iconoclastic. One who assails traditional beliefs.

indefatigable. Not exhausted by labour ; unflagging.

loquacious. Terribly talkative, garrulous.

misanthrope. One who hates mankind.

opinionated. Unduly attached to one's own opinions.

phlegmatic. Not easily perturbed ; emotionaly sluggish.

pompous. Pretentious.

puerile. Characteristic of childhood, immature.

punctilious. Very exact in the observance of forms of etiquette or ceremony.

suave. Smooth and pleasant in manner.

taciturn. Habitually silent or reserved.

vapid. Having lost sparkling quality ; dull ; insipid.

TYPES OF PERSONS (4)

catholic. With liberal views and wide tastes.

chauvinistic. Exaggeratedly patriotic.

defeatest. Always expecting failure.

dilettante. A dabbler in art matters.

epicurean. Believes that pleasure is the chief good.

parsimonious. Unduly sparing in money.

philistine. Narrow-minded ; uncultured.

profligate. Recklessly extravagant.

uxorious. Foolishly devoted to one's wife.

UNCOMMON WORDS

2. Printed below are alphabetically arranged lists of some uncommon words which you should commit to memory and use as frequently as possible. They will increase your power of expression, lend grace to your style and mark you out for a person of culture and learning.

(1)

amend. To grow or make better.

amends. Compensation, reparation.

alfresco. (*lunch*, etc). Taken in the open air.

asphalt. Hard, black material used in making roads.

asseverate. To declare solemnly.

augury. Signs of the future.

casuistry. Quibbling, a confusing of issues.

chick. (pronounced sheek): Charming and new in dress and manners; also clever at seeing how to gain money.

connote. To have another meaning besides the main one.

cute. Attractive.

cynosure. An object looked upon by everyone with admiration.

devious. Indirect, going round about.

dilatory. Causing delay.

execrable. Very bad, deserving to be cursed.

expostulate. To reason with a person and urge a different idea.

extradite. To send back to his own country a law-breaker who has escaped to a foreign land.

histrionic. Relating to the dramatic art; hence not real or honest.

homily. Speech about God being good; hence a long uninteresting talk on virtue.

immune. Safe, exempt.

innate. Inborn, natural.

insidious. Doing harm secretly.

insinuate. 1. Bring gradually or subtly into favour. 2. Hint the idea that—

internecine (war). Causing great harm to both sides.

interpolate. Make misleading insertion in a text.

interpellate Interrupt Assembly proceedings to demand a reply from some Minister.

maritime. 1. Bordering on the sea. 2. Coastal.

mascot. Thing, person or animal supposed to bring good luck.

martinet. Person who demands exact obedience.

mash. *n*. Any soft food. *v*. To make into a soft wet mass as *mashed potatoes*.

mime. Kind of play acted by dancing, with little or no speech.

pantomime. Fairy play acted in a theatre during Christmas.

palliate. 1. To lessen the pain without setting right the cause. 2. To make things seem less wrong.

premonition. A feeling that something is going to happen.

presentiment. A feeling that some evil is about to take place.

pristine. Belonging to earlier times; hence in pure original state.

quandary. State of doubt or difficulty.

querulous. Full of complaints.

quondam. formerly.

quota. Share which one must receive or pay.

scintillating. Sparkling; hence very clever and amusing (talk).

specious. Seeming to be but not really good.

subterfuge. Something done to escape blame or difficulty.

subvention. Money given as help.

subvert. To overthrow a government or explode a belief.

sultry. Muggy, *i.e.*, hot and airless.

supine. Lying on one's back; hence lazy or quiescent.

urbane. Very polite.

urbanity. Great politeness.

venal. Person who can be made to do wrong by paying him some money.

venial. (Offence) which it is easy to forget.

vivid. Full of life; hence clear.

vernal. Relating to springtime.

virile. Manly.

virulent. Poisonous.

vituperate. To scold; to speak angrily about.

whip out. To pull out quickly (sword, knife, etc.)

(2)

actuate. 1. Serve as motive to (a person). 2. Communicated motion to (a machine).

animosity. Enmity, hostile spirit.

animus. Bitter feeling regarded as influencing speech or action.

annuity. Money paid to someone every year.

anodyne. Drug which lessens pain.

callow. Young and inexperienced.

captious. Eager to find fault.

caustic. Burning.

commodity. Article of trade.

conduce. To help to produce; hence **conducive** to a thing means leading to it.

contemplate. To look at and think about.

cynical. Not believing in people's goodness; always pointing out to the evil in them.

dissimulate. To hide one's feelings.

drastic. Thorough; strongly operative (like forceful drama).

eclair. Finger-shaped cake filled with cream.

ecstasy. Rapture, exalted state of feeling.

emaciate. To cause to become very lean.

enigma. Riddle; hence thing or person difficult to understand.

ephemeral. Living only for a day.

exuberant. 1. Full of life and high spirits. 2. (Painting etc.) having too much ornament.

faculty. Power of doing anything.

fatuous. Foolish.

felicity. 1. state of happiness; 2. Use of *felicitous* (*i.e.*, well-chosen and apt) phrase.

fulsome. Disgusting by excess.

grotto. Small cave (usually with frescoes).

grotesque. So strange as to appear silly.

homogeneous. Of the same nature.

heterogeneous. Of many different kinds.

orthodox. Holding the right or accepted opinions.

heterodox. Unorthodox.

implicit. 1 Understood but not expressed, as *implicit acceptance*. 2. Unquestioned, as *implicit obedience*.

innocuous. Causing no harm.

insipid. Possessing no taste or interest.

jocund. Merry.

lacerate. To wound.

larceny. Theft.

malediction. Speaking ill against.

malevolent Desirous of doing harm to others.

metamorphosis. Change of shape or character.

mortify. To chasten (the flesh, passions, etc.) by repression, to control desires by leading a hard life.

nascent. Beginning to grow.

nefarious. Unlawful ; very bad.

noisome. Very harmful and unpleasant.

option. Choice; to *have an option* on a thing means to have the first right to buy it.

paradox. A saying which, though it sounds foolish, is nevertheless true.

parentheses. Words put inside brackets.

poltroon. Dastard, extremely coward.

posthumous. (Child) born after father's death ; thing received after owner's death ; work published after author's death.

prerogative. Special powers enjoyed by a ruler.

prevaricate. To try to hide truth by refusing to give straight or clear answers.

quibble. *n*. Clever answer intended to deceive or help escape from telling the truth. *v*. To answer like that.

redolent. 1. Smelling strongly *of* ; 2. Suggestive *of*.

remand. To send back to prison or police lock-up until trial proceeds.

sententious. Expressing much meaning cleverly in a few words.

solicitude. 1. Anxiety about. 2. Eagerness to do.

sophistry. Clever but false reasoning.

stupor. 1. State of unconsciousness. 2. Slowness of mind.

tortuous. (Road) having many bends ; (reasoning) difficult to understand ; (character) full of tricks.

trite. Not fresh or new.

vacuous. Empty ; as *vacuous book* means one having no meaning.

versatile. Able to change readily from one occupation to another; hence capable of dealing with many subjects.

vilify. To speak evil of.

vitiate. 1. To make impure and unfit for use. 2. To destroy the force or value of.

volatile. 1. Liquid which easily changes into gas. 2. Person quickly changing his ideas.

voluble. Talking with a great flow of words.

voluminous. Filling much space.

(3)

abortive. Premature; hence miscarried or fruitless (attempt).

abrupt. Sudden; steep; an *abrupt manner* is another name for an impolite manner.

anathema. Solemn curse.

anomalous. Irregular, not according to natural law.

apostasy. Abandonment of one's religion; one who does so is called an apostate.

aquarium. Place made for keeping fish, water plants or water animals.

artifice. Trick.

artificer. Skilled workman.

astral. Stellar, of stars.

austral. 1. Of the morning. 2. Of the south.

debutante. Young woman in the first year of her being invited as a guest to other than children's parties.

demagogue. A leader of the common people who plays upon their feelings.

demur. To draw back from action and give reasons against doing it.

demure. (A girl) quiet and serious in manner.

discomfit. To cause a person's plans to fail; to give him an unpleasant shock.

disdain. To look down upon as unworthy of respect.

docile. Easily taught or led.

dog days. Very hot days in summer.

eclat. (Pronounced ek-*lah*) brilliant success, prestige.

egoist. One who always thinks about himself; **egoism** (*abst. n.*)

egotist. One who talks too much about himself; **egotism** (*abst. n.*)

egress, ingress. Right or power of going out and coming in.

eject. To throw out with force.

eke out. To cause a small supply to last long by being careful.

evict. To make a person go out of house or land by using the power of law.

evince. To show (a feeling).

freak. Peculiar or unusual act or thing (as a sheep with five legs.)

fresco. A mural painting.

fretful. Ill-tempered and difficult to please (as in illness)

gregarious. Living in herds.

gruff. Rough and unpleasant in voice or manner.

imagery. 1. Figures of men and animals made of stone on metal. 2. Use of words which cause pictures to come into the mind.

imbroglio (pronounced im-*brohl*-yoh). Complicated situation; difficulty caused by ideas or plans getting mixed up.

indigent. Very poor.

intrinsic. Having to do with the real nature of a thing.

jetsam. Goods thrown into the sea out of a ship to make it light.

jettison. To throw goods out of a ship like that.

laconic. Expressed in a few words.

lachrymose. Tearful, easily made to weep. **lachrymal**. Relating to tears. **labial**. Relating to lips; **oscular**. Relating to mouth.

litigate. To make a claim in a court of law; a *litigant* is one who makes such a claim; a *litigious* person is one who is always filing law-suits.

lour, lower. To look at a person as if one hated him.

pert. (A child) who tries to amuse, but forgets to show respect to others.

pertinent. Well-fitted to the subject.

pervade. To spread through.

pennon, pennant. Long narrow triangular flag.

pendant, pendent. A hanging ornament.

phlegm. (بلغم); Hence heavy slowness of character.

pillion. Seat on a motor-cycle to carry a second person.

pilfer. To steal small things.

platitude. Uninteresting fact or opinion so well known as not to be worth repeating.

plutocrat. Wielding power because of wealth like the land-lords of our own country.

profuse. Poured out freely. **profusion**. Plently.

quixotic. Generous, full of imagination and taking no care of one's own business interests.

recrimination. Blaming each other.

referendum. Asking all the persons of a country to give their opinion on a law point or on the issue of the type of government.

retrograde. Moving backward.

sacerdotal. Having to do with priests and their work.

stellar. Having to do with stars.

staunch, stanch. *v.* To stop the flow of blood (from a wound).

stem *n.* Root. *v.* To check the flow of water.

stereotype. *v.* Printing plate made by pressing wet paper and pouring moulten metal on the pressed paper.

stigma. Burnt sign on slave; hence mark of disgrace.

transpire. To come to light, to become known.

tinsel. Tin foil; hence things bright but having little value.

trustee. Person in charge of a dead man's money and goods supposedly to carry out the latter's will but actually perhaps serving his own ends.

ubiquitous. Omnipresent, found everywhere.

ulterior. Further; an *ulterior motive* is a reason for behaviour other than the one that is shown.

unconscionable. Unreasonable, without sense of fairness; hence *unconscionable delay* is great and unreasonable delay.

vandalism. Destruction of works of art as was caused by the Vandals.

vapid. Insipid, spiritless, uninteresting (talk).

virtuoso. One having great skill in art, specially in music; **virtuosity** is the abstract noun from it.

visionary. (person) Cherishing impracticable ideas and schemes.

warp. *n.* Threads running along the length of cloth (as against **woof** which runs along its breadth); *v.* To bend (as wood *warped* by heat); a *warped mind* is a mind made unreasonable by special likes and dislikes.

zeal. Eagerness; **zealous**: eager; **zealot**: a person who is too eager and fixed in his beliefs.

zenith. Part of the sky just above you (as opposed to **nadir** which is the part just below you).

zest. Something added to the food to give it a pleasant taste; hence to *add zest to* means to make more interesting or exciting; to *enter into the work with zest* means to execute it with eager enjoyment.

(4)

articulate. (*a*) To utter clearly (*b*) To join together.

attainder. Loss of all rights because of breaking the law.

audacity. (1) Daring. (2) Shamelessness.

Auld lang syne. (Scottish words meaning "old days gone by") a song sung at midnight on December 31.

bickering. Quarrel about small matters.

bout. (1) (*a*) Short time during which there is action; hence *bout of illness* is بیماری. (2) Trial of strength, hence a *wrestling bout*.

chattel(s). Movable things in a house.

chequered. Variegated like **chequers** or **checkers** (chessboard); hence a *chequered career* is a life in which there have been changes of career, good and bad.

coalesce. To grow together; to unite.

compliance. Act of agreeing or yielding.

contraption. Any new strange-looking machine; (compare **gadget** which denotes any useful instrument).

delude. Deceive, dupe.

derelict. Anything left to decay; broken ship with none on board; *dereliction of duty* denotes failure to do it.

desist. To cease from doing.

diffident. The opposite of *confident*.

distract. To cause one's mind to wander in many directions; hence **distraught** means crazed with grief.

distrait (pronounced dis-tray). A man whose thoughts are engaged on something else.

elaborate. Worked out with great care.

elite (pronounced el-*eet*). The pick of (a class, town, etc.).

elude. To escape, especially by trick; hence an *elusive word* is one which baffles us.

exorbitant. Unreasonably high (price or demand).

emancipate. To free a slave.

equivocal. Of doubtful meaning.

explicit. Clearly and fully expressed (as opposed to **implicit** which means implied and not expressed).

extortionate. Demanding too much money.

facetious. Amusing or trying to be so.

fad. Pet notion, craze; hence **faddist** is one who has such a craze.

fastidious. To be careful about small details; hence difficult to please.

filibuster. *v*. One who engages in unauthorized warfare against a foreign State. *n*. To do so.

filial. Of or befitting a son or daughter, hence *filial piety* is the love and duty one ought to give to one's parents.

futile. Having no effect.

ghoulish. A person who delights

in doing horrible acts like a **ghoul** which is an evil spirit feeding on the dead.

gratuitous. (1) Free. (2) Unwanted, uncalled for.

hallucination. Thinking that one sees things which are not there.

hoodwink. (1) To cover an animal's eyes. (2) To deceive.

humbug. *n*. Act done to deceive others *v*. To act like that.

impair. To weaken.

import. (1) The opposite of export. (2) Meaning, importance.

impregnable. Proof against attack.

indemnify. To repay for a damage ; **indemnity** means such payment.

infatuate. To cause one to love or admire so passionately as to lose all judgment or reason.

inhere. To belong as a quality ; to be a necessary part of ; hence **inherent** in a person means belonging to him as a permanent quality.

integrity. Honesty.

intensity. Being very great or very strong.

intrepid. Fearless.

jaded. Tired and ill (horse)

jeopardy. Danger.

lavish. Generous.

lethargy. State of torpor or apathy ; lack of interest and energy.

lugubrious. Sad.

meagre. Thin, not enough.

minimize. To make seem small.

missile. Anything thrown ; but **missive**, a letter or message.

morbid. Diseased.

munificent. Generous.

new-fangled. Of a new kind not liked by the speaker (as *new-fangled fashions*).

niggardly. Parsimonious, miserly, stingy.

oscillate. To swing from side to side ; but **vacillate** is to be uncertain in one's opinion.

overtures. Offers made in expectation of agreement.

paroxysm. Sudden fierce attack of pain.

peregrinations. Wanderings, travels.

phenomenal. Strange and unusual.

plausible. Specious ; seeming to be true but perhaps not so ; having a show of truth or reason ; clever at making out a case.

predicament. Dangerous or unpleasant difficulty.

quell. To suppress (some fear or revolt).

reinstate. To put back as before.

reiterate. To repeat.

renounce. To give up (all claim to a thing).

rotund. Round and fat.

sally. *n*. 1. Sudden attack from inside a town. 2. A short clever speech or answer. *v*. 1. To launch such an attack. 2. To go out (as for a walk).

sarcasm. Bitter wounding words.

satellite. 1. Heavenly body revolving round a bigger one of its kind. 2. Follower of a great man.

scathing. Very fierce or wounding (speech or writing).

sepulchral. Of a sepulchre ; hence *sepulchral voice* denotes a solemn voice coming as from a grave.

serenity. Calmness.

tryst. Promise to meet.
upbraid. To scold.
whim. Passing and usually strange idea or wish; hence whimsical means either capricious or fantastic.

(5)

The meanings of the words contained in the last of these lists are given in Urdu in order to help you form an idea of their *status*, for you must realise that words have a social standing in their own community quite as well as human beings have in theirs. This status can best be judged by the association of ideas they have formed. We are all familiar to some extent with such associations in the case of Urdu which is as good as our mother-tongue. It is believed that the Urdu words given here will serve to create similar associations in the case of their English equivalents.

abrogate (قانون یا رواج) منسوخ کرنا -
acme عروج - اوج - انتہاء -
acquaintance ملاقاتی، شناسائی -
actuary ماہر بیمہ -
acumen زیرکی، تیز فہمی، دقیقہ رسی -
advocate *n.* وکیل *v.* 1. وکالت کرنا 2. تائید حمایت کرنا -
aesthetic جمالیاتی -
affinity 1. (بذریعہ مناکحت) تعلق - 2. رغبت -
affliction مصیبت، دکھ درد -
aggressive جارحانہ، آمادۂ پیکار، جنگجو -
alienate 1. منتقل یا بیع کرنا - 2. برگشتہ کرنا -
ambiguous. 1. مشکوک، مبہم 2. گنجلک -
amnesty. ہر ایک کے لئے عام معافی -
anonymous. گمنام -
alight اترنا -
antipathy. نفرت، تنفر -
apathy. بے حسی، مردہ دلی -
apprehend. 1. ڈرنا - 2. گرفتار کرنا - 3. سمجھنا -
arbitrary. قانون کے مطابق نہیں بلکہ مرضی کے مطابق -
artificial. مصنوعی -
atrocity. ظالمانہ یا پاجیانہ فعل -
attribute. *v.* وصف - *n.* کسی شخص کے کردار کا کوئی خاص حصہ -
autocrat. مطلق العنان -
autobiography. خود نوشت سوانح عمری -
avarice لالچ، طمع -
aversion. ناپسندیدگی، کراہت، بیزاری -
awry. ٹیڑھا، ترچھا -
axiom. بدیہی اصول -
beholden to. ممنون -
benevolent. فیض رساں، کریم النفس -
benign. 1. (شخص) مہربان، شفیق 2. (مرض) خفیف -
bequeath. (وصیت کے ذریعے) ورثہ میں دینا -
bewray بے خیالی میں افشاء راز کر دینا -
blatant اودھم مچا کر مخل ہونے والا -
blemish جسمانی یا اخلاقی دھبہ -
blond. 1. (بال) سنہرے 2. سنہرے بالوں والا (مرد) -
blonde. سنہرے بالوں والی (عورت) -
bias. 1. بے جا طرف داری - 2. میلان خاطر

biased جنبہ داری' بے جا طرفداری -
bigot, bigoted. کٹر، متعصب -
boisterous. 1. تند و تیز 2. اودھم مچانے والا -
bunkum, buncomb. ابلہ فریبی - وہ بات یا تقریر جو واہ واہ سننے کے لئے کی جائے' فضول بکواس -
brevity. اختصار -
bucolic. 1. دیہاتی 2. چرواھوں کی یا دیہی زندگی کے متعلق -
burke. کسی خبر یا معاملہ کو دبا دینا -
callous. سنگدل -
candid. دیانتدار' سچ بولنے والا -
carnage کشت و خون' سفاکی' خونریزی -
charlatan. بددیانت شخص جو علم نہ رکھنے پر بھی علمیت کا دعویٰ کرے -
chicanery. قانونی حیلہ بازی -
chimera. ہوا' خیال باطل -
chimerical. غیر ممکن (منصوبہ) -
chronic. مزمن (مرض یا مریض) -
compassion. ترس' رحم -
condign. مناسب' واجبی (سزا یا انتقام) -
controversy. مباحثہ' مناقشہ -
corporal. *n.* نائک *adj.* جسمانی سزا -
corporation. 1. برطانوی بلدیاتی کمپنی 2. مجلس -
demise. 1. انتقال' وفات - 2. خطاب یا جائداد کا منتقل ہونا -
deplorable افسوسناک -
deplore ماتم کرنا' تاسف کرنا -
despicable. ذلیل' حقیر' سفلہ -
dextrous. چابک دست' طباع -
diagnosis. تشخیص -
diagnose. تشخیص کرنا -
diatribe. گالی گلوچ والی مخالفانہ تقریر -
didactic. معلمانہ یا ناصحانہ طرز -
dole. *v.* ہاتھ روک کر بانٹنا *n.* ایسی خیرات -
dotage سٹھیایا پا ; **dote upon** کسی پر لٹو ھو جانا -
dub نام یا چھیڑ کا نام دینا -
dubious. 1. مبہم 2. دبدھا میں ڈالنے والا -
effeminate. نفس پرست- بوالہوس' زنخا -
effigy شبیہ' مورت' بت ; **hang or burn a person's effigy** جادو کے لئے کسی کا پتلا بنا کر جلانا یا پھانسی پر لٹکانا -
emulate. ھمسری کی رشک کرنا' کوشش کرنا -
enamour. فریفتہ کرنا -
entail. 1. ناقابل انتقال ورثہ دینا 2. بوجھ ڈالنا -
epitaph. لوح مزار' قبر کا کتبہ -
epithet. صفت' وصف' لقب -
epitome. (کتاب کا) لب لباب
exodus. ھجرت -
expatiate. کسی موضع پر تفصیل سے لکھنا بولنا -
fanatic. مذہبی جنون والا
fiasco. سخت' فش' ٹائیں ٹائیں ناکامی -
flagrant. 1. آشکارا 2. برملا' سنگین (جرم) -
forensic عدالتی' قانونی ; **forensic medicine** طب قانونی -
foster. 1. اپنا دودھ پلا کر پالنا - محبت سے پالنا .
fraternity. 1. برادرانہ روابط 2. دینی جماعت -
frivolity. 1. ھرزہ سرائی 2. سبکی -

funk. (عامیانہ) *n.* ڈر *v.* جی چرانا -
funky. (عامیانہ) بزدل، کام چور -
galaxy. 1. کہکشاں 2. اندر کا اکھاڑا -
grizzled. خاکستری بھورے بالوں والا -
guarantee. 1. ضامن 2. مکفولہ شے
gorilla. بن مانس، گوریلا ;
guerilla warfare. جنگ چپاول، جنگ گریز، کھل کر لڑنے کی بجائے چھپ چھپ کر لڑنا -
harass بار بار کے حملوں سے پریشان کرنا -
heinous. وحشیانہ، نفرت انگیز (جرم)
heresy. بدعت -
homage. (جاگیردارانہ نظام میں) عظیم احترام -
homicide. کسی انسان کا قتل یا قاتل -
ignoble. 1. (شخص) کم اصل 2. ذلیل (حرکت) -
ignominious. شرمناک، موجب رسوائی -
impenetrable. 1. دشوار گزار 2. فہم و ادراک سے بالا -
indolent. کاہل، آلکسی -
indulgent. 1. مہربان شفیق (شخص) 2. (انداز) مشفقانہ -
inestimable. بے بہا، بے انداز -
infested. (حشرات الارض یا چور اچکوں سے) بھرپور -
inflexible. 1. اثر نا پزیر 2. بے لوچ
instinct *n.* جبلت *adj.* لبریز، بھرپور -
interminable. لامتناھی -
invest. 1. پوشاک پہنانا 2. محاصرہ کرنا 3. تجارتی حصوں میں لگانا .

invidious. عداوت انگیز
invoke. کسی کی دھائی دینا، کسی کا نام لے کر دعا کرنا -
jargon. وہ بولی یا بات جو سمجھ میں کم آئے -
jejune. ناکافی، حقیر
jocular, jocose مسخرا -
juvenile. طفلانہ -
kindred. 1. قرابت، رشتہ داری 2. اتحاد مذاق -
kith and kin. اقربا، اعزہ و احباب
knight-errant. مہم جو بانکا، خدائی فوجدار -
laborious. 1. (کام) مشقت طلب 2. (اسلوب) مشکل پسندانہ تصنع والا
laggard. پھسڈی -
lampoon. 1. ھجو قبیح 2. خاکہ اڑانا -
languid. بے کیف، بے جان، نڈھال
lank. 1. (شخص) لاغر، سوکھا 2. (گھنگریالے کے مقابلے میں) سیدھے بال،
lapse. گر کر پہلی سی حالت پر آ جانا، بدتر ہونا
latent. بالقوہ موجودہ پوشیدہ
laudable. قابل تعریف
lax. 1. (شخص) آزاد منش 2. (اسلوب) مبہم
legislate. قانون سازی
lagitimate (اولاد) جائز حلالی
liable قانوناً ذمہ دار -
libertine عیاش -
livid نیلگوں - سرمئی رنگ کا -
lower, lour, 1. تیوری چڑھانا - 2. گھٹا کا بندھ کر آنا -
ludicrous. مہمل - مضحک -
lucubration. مطالعہ - نیم بشی .
luminous. 1. روشن - تاباں - 2. بصیرت افروز -

luscious. 1. حد سے زیادہ خوشبودار رنگینی بیان میں حد سے .2 - یا شیریں بڑھا ہوا (اسلوب) -
magnanimity. فراخ دلی -
marsupial. کنگرو کی طرح کا تھیلی والا جانور -
mart. ھراج خانہ نیلام گھر -
martial حربی، جنگی -
melody. موسیقی کے لحاظ سے الفاظ یا سروں کی ترکیب، لے، آھنگ -
militant. جھگڑالو ; **militate**. 1. واقعات یا) .2 - شریک جنگ ھونا شہادت کا) مخالفانہ اثر ڈالنا -
moribund. جاں بلب، نیم مردہ -
mortgage. *v*. رھن رکھنا *n*. - رھن نامہ -
municipal. بلدیاتی -
negligence. سہل انگاری -
nestling پرندے کا بے پر و بال بچہ جو گھونسلے سے باھر نہ نکل سکے -
neurotic. اعصابی خلل کا مریض -
nonentity. غیر اھم شخص -
null. 1. کالعدم .2 - بے رنگ -
obituary. اخبار میں کسی کی موت کی خبر -
oblivion. فراموشی -
obloquy. بد گوئی، تنقیص -
obliterate. نام و نشان مٹا ڈالنا -
obstreperous. دنگا فساد کرنے والا -
offensive. *n*. جارحانہ اقدام - *adj*. 1. جارحانہ .2 - دلشکن، ناگوار -
ostentatious. 1. نمائش پسندانہ .2 طمطراق والا -
panancea. ھر مرض کی دوا -
panegyric. *n*. مدح - *adj*. مدح والا -
parasite. طفیلی - کاسہ لیس -
parasol. عورتوں کا چھاتا -
pathos. (تقریر و تحریر میں) رقت سوز و گداز، انگیزی -
patronize مربیانہ سر پرستی کرنا، التفات سے پیش آنا -
pedant. اشیاء کی اضافی اھمیت سے نا آشنا، غیر ضروری باتوں پر زیادہ زور دینے والا -
pedestrian. 1. پیادہ، پیدل .2 - شعریت سے خالی (اسلوب) -
pedigree. نسب نامہ - **pedigreed** نسل دار، اچھی نسل کا -
penury تنگدستی -
peripatetic. 1. ارسطو کا پیرو، مشائی .2 - سفری ایجنٹ یا تاجر -
peroration. تقریر کا خلاصہ جو آخر میں فصاحت سے ادا ھو -
pester. ستانا، دق کرنا -
philippic. ھجویہ تقریر -
pittance. قلیل وظیفہ یا معاوضہ -
posterity. اخلاف، آئندہ نسلیں -
precendent. نظیر -
prejudice (مخالف یا موافق) میلان خاطر -
premature. خام، نورس -
prevalent. رائج، متداول -
primitive. 1. ابتدائی .2 بھونڈا سا -
prodigal. *n*. مسرف، فضول خرچ - *adj*. مسرفانہ -
prodigy. *adj*. عجیب و غریب - *n*. اچنبھا -
profligate. اوباش -
progeny. نسل -
proletariat. کسان، غریب عوام، مزدور، صنعتی مزدوروں کا طبقہ، پرولتاریہ -
promiscuous. (جنسی طور پر) مخلوط -
propitious. ساز گار -
propriety. خوش معقولیت،

- اسلوبی

proximity. قرب، نزدیکی -

psychical. روح یا روحانی کوششوں ; **psychological** سے متعلق . نفسیاتی

pugilist. 1. سخت بحث .2 - مکا باز - کرنے والا

pulverize. 1. سفوف بنانا - .2 منہدم کرنا -

pusillanimous. بزدل، بودا، کم ظرف -

qualms (*pl.*) 1. متلی، عارضی .2 خود اپنی دیانت پر - گھبراہٹ - شبہہ

quest. جستجو، جیوری کی یا سرکاری - تحقیقات

quintessence. کسی غیر مادی شے - کا مظہر اتم، لب لباب

quizzical. - انوکھا، طرفہ

ransack. 1. تاخت و تاراج کرنا - .2 ڈھونڈ نکالنا -

raucous. (آواز) - بیٹھی ہوئی

ravenous. 1. حریص، غارتگر، لٹیرا - .2 بے حد بھوکا -

redress. تلافی کرنا، چارہ سازی

renovate. تجدید کرنا -

reprieve. *n.* & *v.* مجرم کے قتل کا - التواء یا موقوفی

reprimand. سرکاری طور پر - سرزنش

retribution. پاداش -

reverberation. آواز، حرارت یا - جذبہ کی) بازگشت

rhetoric (pronounced *ret*-rik). - بلاغت - لسانی

ritual. مذہبی رسوم (یا ان کی - کتاب)

rubicund. سرخ و سفید (چہرہ یا - رنگ)

rudiments. مبادی -

ruminate. 1. سوچنا .2 - جگالی کرنا -

salt-cellar. چاندی یا بلور کا - نمکدان

sardonic. (ہنسی یا چہل) - بناوٹی

satire. (نثر یا نظم میں) ہجو -

saturate. تر بہ تر کرنا -

scoff. طعن یا طنز کرنا، مضحکہ - اڑانا

scrupulous 1. محتاط .2 - متامل -

scrutiny. بغور معائنہ -

secular. غیر مذہبی -

sinister. 1. بائیں ہاتھ کا - .2 خطرناک یا منحوس -

soliloquy. خود کلامی -

specific. صرف ایک خاص موضوع - سے متعلق

sully. آلودہ کرنا، داغ لگانا -

subsidy. (تجارت، صنعت یا جہازوں کو) نقصان سے بچانے کے لئے مالی - امداد

terrestrial. 1. ارضی (بمقابلہ فلکی) .2 - حیوان بری (بمقابلہ بحری)

testator. موصی، وصیت کرنے والا - شخص

tragedy. المیہ، حزنیہ -

trilogy. ایک موضوع پر ایک ساتھ شائع ہونے والے تین مقالے یا - نظمیں

trivial. ادنیٰ، خفیف، نکما

turmoil. ہلچل، ہنگامہ -

unanimous. متفقہ -

uncouth. بے ڈھنگا، گنوارو -

undulating. لہریا -

ungainly. بے ہنگم، بے ڈول، بھدا

unsophisticated. سادہ دل، بے - میل

untimely. بے موقع -

usurp. غصب کرنا، دبا لینا -

utilitarian. *n.* افادیت پسند - *adj.* افادی -

valetudinarian. سدا روگی، جسے بیماری کا وہم رہے -

vassal. (نظام جاگیر داری) اسامی، غلام -

veneer. 1. عمدہ لکڑی کی باریک تہہ جو فرنیچر پر چڑھائی جائے 2. نئی تہذیب کا رنگ و روغن 3. ردی چیز پر قیمتی پتر -

venom. زہر -

verbose. *adj.* پرگو - *n.* طول نویسی -

vernacular. 1. محکوموں کی زبان 2. علاقائی بولی 3. دیسی زبان -

vicissitudes. (*pl.*) تغیر حالات، دولت و عزت کا نشیب و فراز -

vigilant. چوکس، ہوشیار، خبردار -

vindicate. دعویٰ یا کردار صحیح ثابت کرنا -

vindictive. صدمہ کے بدلے صدمہ پہنچانے کا خواہاں، کینہ پرور، انتقام جو

vital. 1. مہلک (غلطی یا زخم) 2. اہم -

vivacity. زندہ دلی، گرما گرمی -

voracious. پیٹو، ندیدہ، بے حد حریص -

vulnerable. غیر محفوظ -

wastrel. 1. نکھٹو، فضول خرچ 2. کارخانے میں تیاری اور آوارہ بچہ کے وقت خراب ہو جانے والا مال -

wholesome. جسمانی یا اخلاقی حیثیت سے) مفید، صحت بخش -

winnow. غلہ پچھوڑنا - 2. چھان پھٹک کرنا -

wondrous. 1. عجیب - 2. حد درجہ -

wrangle. جھگڑا، تو تو میں میں -

yeoman چھوٹا زمیندار -

zealous. پر جوش، سر گرم -

EXERCISES

Use the following words in sentences of your own to show that you correctly understand their meaning:

(*For* **Board** *Students*)

Cickering, inherent, morbid, satellite, whimsical, vacillate, filial, peremptory, sinuous, querulous, penury, indict, rationalize, gullible, obsequious, nostalgia, blonde, elite, animosity, scintillating, prodigal.

(*For* **University** *Students*)

Ubiquitous, uxorious, elite, eclat, clan, chic, cute, vet, suave, vicarious, radical, intelligentsia, introvert, dilettante, chicanery, debutante, gullible, invidious, burke, cadaverous, altruism, bunkum, humbug, casuistry, histrionics, presentiment, execrable, desecrate, alfresco.

CHAPTER XXV

USEFUL TERMINOLOGY

The third method suggested earlier for increasing one's vocabulary is to learn words in groups related to particular subjects of general interest. An attempt has been made in this chapter to put the student on the right road. The lists given below, it is hoped, will facilitate his task in the choice of useful terms.

1. GENERAL

agenda List of matters to be discussed at a meeting.

albinos. Beings lacking the natural pigment of the skin.

alias. Other than a lawful name.

alma mater. One's University.

almanac. A year-book containing valuable data.

amateur. One who indulges in sport as a pastime—not for monetary gain.

amphitheatre. Roman building for public entertainment.

anagram. Words or sentences formed by changing the order of letters.

anarchy. No government.

angling. Catching fish with rod, line and bait.

archives. A collection of official papers and documents. Also, the building where they are kept.

aviary. Place where birds are kept in captivity.

barrage. (1) Volume of artillery fire directed on an area. (2) Bar made across a river to increase the depth of water, *e.g.*, the Sukkur Barrage.

bastinado. Punishment by means of blows on soles of the feet.

beacon. Light placed on shoals or rocks to warn mariners at night.

belligerent. A person or a nation engaged in war.

belvedere. A summer house in a garden.

bibliography. Grouping together of works on some particular subject, place or period.

blackmail. Crime of demanding money with menaces.

bohemianism. Unconventional way of living sometimes adopted by artists and literary men.

book-makers. Professional betting men who offer to lay odds on races.

bootlegger. Person who sells intoxicating liquor in a country where its sale is prohibited.

Borstal system. Reclamation of juvenile adult offenders—youths from 16 to 21 years of ago. First introduced at Borstal, near Chatham (England).

boycotting. Social and commerical isolation of an individual or an incitement thereto.

Braille system. System of printing which enables the blind to read by means of touch. Invented by Louis Braille (1809-52).

brochure. Small treatise or pamphlet.

cabaret. A small inn or a wine shop.

cadet. A young man in training for officership in the army or navy.

camouflage. Artificial means of hiding things, employed to deceive the enemy's observation.

caricature. A drawing of a person made grotesque and ludicrous by means of pronounced exaggeration of features, etc. The likeness is, however, preserved.

cartoon. A sketch of a topical interest.

carnival. A great festival ; wild revelry.

cascade. Series of small waterfalls.

casino. Public building in a pleasure resort.

catacomb. Subterranean place of sepulchre.

cataract. Gigantic waterfall.

cat-call. Shrill whistle expressing disapproval.

catgut. String of great strength prepared from intestines of sheep, horse or ass (not cat) for musical instruments, rackets, etc.

causeway. Path raised above ground level across marshy or low-lying ground.

cenotaph. Monument to persons whose remains are irrecoverable or buried elsewhere.

centenary. One hundredth anniversary of an event.

charivari. Hissing and groaning directed against some unpopular person.

cipher. Secret method of communication by the use of letters or figure combinations.

collusion. Secret understanding between two or more parties to prejudice another's rights.

commutation. The payment of a large sum of money to cancel a periodical charge of any kind, *e.g.*, a pension. Also used to describe reduction in a criminal sentence.

contemporary. One living at the same time.
contraband. Prohibited traffic ; smuggling ; smuggled goods.
convener. One who calls together a meeting.
cortege. Train of attendants ; procession.
cosmetics. Substances used for beautifying the skin.
creche. Institution where working mothers leave their children.
culvert. Subterranean pipe for the conducting of water underground.
curator. Officer-in-charge of a museum or an art gallery.
curfew. Custom of ringing bell every evening as a signal to put out fire, introduced in England by William the Conqueror.
customs. Duty levied on imports and exports.
dam. Structure of earth or masonry built across rivers to create storage reservoirs.
docks. Enclosed water spaces where ships can rest when being loaded.
dog-watch. Time between 6 and 8 p.m.
effigy. Likeness or impression of a person, especially on a coin or medal.
el dorado. Legendary region supposed to abound in gold.
embargo. Government order prohibiting ships from leaving ports.
epoch. An important point of time.
eponym. Person after whom something is named.
era. A period of time.
epitaph. An inscription on a tomb.
eureka. "I have found it !" (Archimedes). Denotes triumphant discovery.
excise. Duty charged on home goods.
facsimile. An exact copy of a document.
fathom. Linear nautical measure equal to 6 ft.
fauna. Denotes animal life of a given geographical region.
first aid. Assistance given in case of emergency before medical aid is available.
flora. The plant life of a given geographical region.
flotsam. The portion of a wreck which floats of its own action.
foolscap. Common name for a sheet of paper 17″ × 13½″.
fourth estate. The Press.
franking. Free use of postal service.
genealogy. Pedigree or family tree.
gloss. Explanatory remark.
goodwill. Advantages other than the material assets, buildings, furniture, etc., which go with a running business or profession.

guillotine. Instrument of decapitation of criminals used in France. Also used to indicate the procedure by which the discussion of a measure in the Parliament is cut short.

gusher. An oil well.

hangar. Shed for housing aircraft.

holograph. Document written entirely by one who signs it.

hosiery. Knitted goods.

hush money. Bribe to secure silence.

hypnotism. Artificially induced state resembling sleep in certain respects.

insignia. Marks or badges of office or honour.

investiture. The ceremony of conferring titles, honours, office, etc.

ironmonger. Dealer in hardware.

jamboree. Merry gathering of tribes. International rally of boy scouts.

jetsam. The act of throwing cargo or fittings overboard to lighten a ship in distress ; the cargo thus overthrown.

jockey. One who rides in a horse-race.

jingoism. Provocative patriotism.

kindergarten. System of educating young children introduced by G. W. Frochell based upon exercise of creative faculties.

labyrinth. A confusing network of paths and passages. A maze.

lacquer. A kind of varnish.

lava. Molten rock discharged from volcanoes.

leaven. Substance that causes fermentation.

leeward. Opposite to the side from which the wind blows.

levee. A state reception attended by gentlemen.

life-boat. A boat for saving life from shipwreck.

life-buoy. Float for the support of persons in water.

livery. Uniform worn by a man-servant of a person of position.

log-book. A book in which a record of events is kept.

manuscript. Text written for publication.

mausoleum. A tomb or cenotaph of unusual size and importance.

mayor. President of a municipal corporation.

managerie. Collection of wild animals for circus.

Mendelism. Laws of heredity based on the discoveries of Mendel.

metric system. Connected decimal system of weights and measures based upon the metre.

mint. Government office where money is coined.

minutes. Summary of the proceedings of a meeting of a body.

mirage. Optical illusion—on deserts, lakes become visible, on sea inverted ships.

mistletoe. Evergreen parasitic plant—a feature of Christmas decorations.

moat. Large trench round a fortified place for defensive purpose.

Montessori method. Method of teaching young children developed by Madam Montessori, in Rome.

mother of pearl. Inner coating of shells.

mulatto. Offspring of a white and a black.

mummy. Dead body embalmed with preservative substances.

national anthem. Musical composition with words officially adopted for ceremonial use.

organ. Largest and most powerful of all musical instruments.

pantomime. Art of acting without words by gestures and facial expression only.

patent. Exclusive right or privilege.

pier. A structure of iron or wood running out into the sea and used as a promenade and landing stage.

pool. Taking of votes.

polling booths. Places where votes are recorded.

polytechnic. An institute which affords practical training in arts and sciences.

pop shop. A pawn-broker's shop.

prohibition. Movement for the prohibition of the manufacture and the sale of alcoholic liquors for beverage purposes.

quarantine. Period during which ships, goods or persons coming from countries where infectious diseases prevail are interdicted from communication with the shore.

quarrying. Excavation of stone, etc., from an open pit.

queen. A woman ruler. A queen in her own right. A **queen consort** is the wife of the ruler. A **queen dowager** is the wife of a deceased king.

quinquennium. A period of five years.

quire. 24 sheets of paper.

rationing. Assignment of a fixed quantity of food per head, in the case of national shortage.

reds. Popularly applied to Bolshevists.

regalia. Emblems belonging to the sovereign as such.

regent. One who rules temporarily for a king.

regicide. A murder or murderer of the king.

renaissance. Revival of classical learning.

rotary. Movement amongst rich persons which takes its motto "Service, not self." Originated with Paul Harris—a Chicago lawyer.

rural. Concerned with villages.

salvage. Term for the saving of any property from loss or destruction usually employed in connection with wrecks or earthquakes.

shibboleth. Test word, behaviour or principle of a party or nationality.

silhouette. A shadow portrait in profile.

sky-scrapers. Very lofty building in the U.S.A.

smuggling. Offence of defrauding revenue by evading the customs duty, or by importing, or exporting prohibited goods and also the illicit distillation of liquor.

stop press. Space reserved in newspapers for latest news.

subsidy. Annual grant by Government in aid of something.

tatooing. Producing durable designs under the human skin with pigments.

third degree. Use of violence and maltreatment to extort confession of crime.

underworld. Lowest social stratum.

underwriter. Originally one who insured ships and cargoes, but now one takes all sorts of insurance risks.

urban. Population of both towns and cities.

vendetta. Blood feud.

ventriloquism. Art of making human voice appear to come from a distance or another place than the true source.

wharf. Wood or stone platform for mooring, loading and unloading ships.

2. ART

aureole. The radiance placed by an artist round a holy figure.

band. Consists of a number of performers using various kinds of musical instruments.

cloister. An arched way or covered walk running round a courtyard in ecclesiastical buildings.

comets. Heavenly bodies with tails emitting light.

contralto. Female voice approximating to the male alto.

cromlech. An ancient monument in the form of a huge stone supported on vertical stones.

crypt. A subterranean cell or vault.

curator. A person in charge of a museum or art gallery.

fresco. A wall-painting.

moat. A ditch dug round a fortress.

monolith. A prehistoric structure consisting of a single upright stone of gigantic proportions.

mosaic work. Work done by fitting together pieces of glass, stone, etc.

nave. The body of a church.

nebulae. Misty patches in the heavens.

nimbus. Halo surrounding the head of a holy figure.

notation. Written symbolisation of musical sounds. Systems are Tonic Sal-fa and Paris Galin-Cheve.

opera. Drama set to music.

oratorio. Musical drama of a sacred type.

orchestra. A band of instrumental musicians.

palette. A thin oval-shaped plate used by artists for holding or mixing their paints.

pantomime. Acting with gestures and facial expressions only.

pigments. Dry earthy substances, which being mixed with liquids, form colours.

prima donna. Chief female singer.

3. LITERATURE

allegory. Narrative description of a subject under guise of another suggestively similar subject.

anthology. Collection of selected works of various authors in a single book.

aphorism. Concise sentence embodying an important truth.

apologia. A statement by a writer in the nature of a defence.

blank verse. Unrhymed verse.

comedy. A work that has a happy ending.

dialogue. Conversation between two persons.

diatribe. Bitter criticism.

epic. A heroic narrative poem dealing with important events and introducing supernatural features.

epigram. Short, pithy and witty statement.

epilogue. Short address to round off a dramatic performance.

euphemism. Substitution of refined and delicate words for coarse ones conveying the same idea.

limerick. Form of nonsense verse in five lines.

malapropism. Ludicrous misuse of word, esp. in mistake, for one resembling it.

masque. Theatrical entertainment of an allegorical nature.

metaphor. Application of a name to an object which is not literally applicable.

poetic license. Poet's irregularity in grammar and metre.

pun. Play upon the similarity of sound in words of different significance.

renaissance. Revival of classical learning.

rhythm. Measured flow of words and phrases.

saga. A Scandinavian legend.

simile. A figure of speech by which an object or action is compared with another by means of a comparative conjunction.

solecism. Incorrect language.

trilogy. A series of three dramas.

4. TRADE AND COMMERCE

above par. Price above nominal value.

accommodation bill. A bill of exchange accepted without any consideration.

actuary. A statistician whose duties are chiefly concerned with applying the law of mathematical probability to such matters as life insurance, annuities, etc.

advice. Notification of business transaction.

ante-date. To give a date on a cheque, bill of exchange, etc., prior to the date on which it is written.

annuity. A fixed sum of money paid yearly or in certain portions at fixed periods of the year.

arbitrage. Traffic in bills to take advantage of difference in prices of stocks, bills of exchange and currency, etc., in the home and foreign market.

assets. Whole of the funds, money, goods and other property which may be liable for debts.

at sight. On bills, denoting that they are payable on demand without allowing days of grace.

balance of trade. Difference between the aggregate value of the imports and exports of a country.

balance-sheet. Document showing the financial position of a company, etc., wherein on the debit side are its debts and liabilities and on the credit side all its assets.

bank-bill. A Bill of Exchange drawn by a bank payable to bearer on demand.

bank note. Promissory notes issued by a bank payable to the bearer on demand.

bank rate. Rate of discount allowed from time to time by the Central Bank of a country. It regulates the rate of interest charged by the bankers, which is usually one per cent. above the bank rate.

'**bear**.' Speculator for a fall at the stock exchange. One who sells the stock for future delivery hoping to buy it cheap meanwhile, and therefore tries to bring prices down.

bill of exchange. An unconditional order in writing, adressed by one person to another, signed by the person giving it, requiring the person to whom it is addressed to pay on demand or at a fixed determinable future time a certain sum to the order of a specified person or the bearer.

bill of lading. An acknowledgment of shipment of goods and terms of their transport.

bimetallism. Name used for a monetary system in which two

metals, usually gold and silver, are employed as currency standards.

bonus. An occasional or gratuitous addition to wages, salaries and dividends.

'bull.' One who buys or contracts to buy shares in expectation of a rise in price.

'buyers over.' A term indicating that buyers are in excess of sellers.

bullion. Gold and silver as articles of merchandise, not as coin.

bye-laws. Special rules or regulations made by any company or corporation for the carrying on of its affairs.

call. An instalment due on shares not fully paid up, payable according to the terms of the Articles of Association.

capitalization. The act of providing money to be used as capital in a commercial or other under-taking.

carat. Degree of purity of gold. Pure gold is 24 carats.

cartel. A big industrial combine or the list of prices agreed to by the firms constituting it.

cash on delivery. (*C. O. D.*) System by which goods are supplied at a distance by agents, payment being made on delivery.

cheque. Document duly drawn and signed by which money is conveyed from one person to another through the medium of a bank.

collectivism. National ownership of land and other means of production.

consul. Official who looks after the trading interests of his country in foreign towns.

convoy. Escort or protecting force for shipping.

copyright. Exclusive right of an author, artist, composer, or his representative, to produce or reproduce his works in any meterial form.

crossed cheque. A cheque which cannot be cashed across the counter, but can be credited in one's account.

customs. Duty on goods imported.

debenture. Form of mortgage by which joint-stock companies raise money. Debenture-holders have a prior right.

deflation. Reduction in the amount of paper-money in circulation.

demurrage. Amount payable to ship-owner or a Railway for failure to load or unload goods within time allowed.

discount. Any amount allowed off a bill.

dividend. A percentage of company's profits set apart for distribution among shareholders.

double entry. A method of book-keeping in which every transaction is kept in two parts—debits or credits.

draft. An order to a person to pay a certain sum to a certain person.

dumping. Exporting goods to a country to be sold at prices lower than prevailing for home consumption, with a view to undercut the producers in the importing country.

earnest money. 'Faith deposit, money paid to confirm the contract.

endowment policy. In insurance, a policy for which the number of premiums payable is defined.

equated time. Time when several debts due at different times may be paid together.

exchange. Transformation of currency of one country into that of another. The rate of exchange depends upon the demand and supply of bills in payment of international debts.

exchange bank. A bank concerned only with monetary transactions with foreign countries.

excise. Tax levied on goods produced within a country.

face value. The par value, the nominal value marked on the face of a security.

fiduciary note issue. An issue of bank notes without the provision of a money reserve.

floating debt. Debt, part of which is repayable on demand or at stated time.

freeboard. Distance from the main or upper deck to the load water-line of a vessel.

free port. A port at which no duties are levied provided goods are brought to be transferred into other ships, *e.g.*, Karachi.

freight. Charges for carrying goods.

"**future.**" Goods not yet on the market.

gilt-edged securities. Stocks on which interest is absolutely safe.

ginning. Separation of cotton fibres from cotton seeds.

gold standard. 'On the gold standard' means that gold is the basis of currency, and that if need be, the country will export gold in payment of debts abroad. Gold standard is the proportion of weight of fine metal and alloy in the gold coin.

goodwill. Connection or reputation attached to a business, regarded as an asset.

hall-mark. Mark used by assay offices for making standard gold and silver.

index numbers. Numbers compiled as an index to prices.

inflation. Increase in the amount of paper money. Raises prices.

inventory. A list of goods or other property.

I. O. U. An informal written and signed acknowledgement of indebtedness requiring no stamp.

joint stock company. A company which accumulates capital by

subscription of shareholders. The shares are transferable.

'laissez faire.' State policy of allowing free latitude to private competition and profit motive in trade and commerce.

legal tender. Form of money which can be used as a legal quittance for a debt.

letter of indemnity. A letter undertaking to be responsible for any loss or damage sustained in circumstances specified.

liabilities. Pecuniary obligations or debts which one is under obligation to pay.

lien. A right by which a person holding personal property of another can retain possession of it until some claim that he has against the original owner is satisfied.

limited company. A company in which the liability of the shareholders is strictly limited to the amount of shares for which they have subscribed, or agreed to be responsible.

liquidation. The process of paying off debts.

Lloyd's Register. A register containing particulars of all vessels afloat of over 100 tons.

local option. System by which inhabitants of a district may prohibit sale of liquor in it.

lock-out. The closing of a workshop or factory by an employer to the employees or labourers.

mint par exchange. The rate which expresses the relation between the quantities of gold obtainable by the units of currency of two countries.

national debt. Money owed by a state.

negotiable instruments. Documents, the transference of which conveys the legal right of property.

novation. Replacement of a debtor by another who assumes responsibility for paying the debt.

par. The price equal to the nominal value. *Above par* is the price above the nominal value and *Below par* the one below the nominal value.

par of exchange. When money of the same standard and weight yields similar money in another country the exchange is said to be at par.

patent. Exclusive right or privilege. In Pakistan it is obtained by applying to the Patent Office, Karachi.

pawn-broker. Person licensed to lend money on the security of articles deposited with him.

pool. An association of firms manufacturing the same product, formed for the purpose of regulating and controlling the selling prices of the products.

premium. Something above the nominal or fixed price. Also used for periodical payment to insurance company in respect of the policy insured.

promissory note. Unconditional promise to pay a certain sum on demand.

protection. The policy of fostering home manufactures and produce by imposing taxes (protective duty) on imports.

quota. Quantities of essential commodities for which export and import licences are issued respectively by the countries concerned.

quorum. The number of members of a body or company necessary to be present at a meeting for the transaction of the business.

rates. Money raised by a local authority.

rationalisation. Improved methods of manufacturing.

rebate. Deduction from sum to be paid.

royalty. Payment made in return for some privilege.

rupee ratio. Ratio of a rupee to a sterling for purposes of exchange.

safeguarding. Protection of industry against foreign competition.

sinking fund. Fund created by regularly setting aside sums to provide for a repayment by instalments of a definite liability, e.g., a National Debt.

stabilisation. Basing a nation's currency on a recognised standard or value.

standard gold. 22 carats gold and 2 carats copper.

stock-exchange. Building in which stocks, shares and negotiable securities are bought and sold.

strike. Stoppage of work by workmen to enforce their demands.

subsidy. Grant-in-aid.

surrender value. That value of a life insurance policy in a lump sum, when the life insurance is not fully paid up and the holder of the policy wants to be paid back.

tender. An offer to supply things at a specified rate or to perform certain acts or pay a specifed sum. The tender is not binding until accepted.

token money. Any redeemable coin circulated at a higher value than that of the metal it contains.

trade bill. A bill of exchange in respect of which value in goods has been actually received by the drawee or acceptor.

trade mark. A distinguishing mark on goods to indicate the manufacturer, proprietor, etc.

trade unions. Association of workers formed for the purpose of mutual help, and improvement of their condition.

truck. Payment of wages in goods instead of in money.

underwriter. Originally, one who dealt with marine insurance. Nowadays all risks.

5. LAW

accessory. A person who has incurred criminal responsibility in the commission of an offence.

act of God. Any event beyond human prevention, such as shipwreck, earthquake, lightning which absolves the captains of ships, drivers, etc., from criminal liability in case of the loss of life.

adjudication order. The order of Court declaring the bankruptcy of an insolvent debtor and investing his property in a trustee.

affidavit. A statement put into writing, and then sworn to and signed by a witness.

alibi. The plea that an alleged act took place when one was away.

alimony. Maintenance allowance to divorced wife from husband's estate.

arbitration. The decision of a matter in dispute by an uninterested party, called the arbitrator.

arson. Setting fire to buildings.

assessor. Person called in a court to assist in technical matters.

attorney. One who acts for another in legal matters under a deed called the power-of-attorney.

bailable offence. Offence for which release pending trial is permissible on the production of surety.

bailiff. An official to serve writs, carry out distraints, make arrests, collect fines, etc.

by-laws. Rules and regulations made by a body other than a legislative body, under authority from the legislature.

close time. Period in which it is unlawful to kill certain birds.

code. Systematic and complete body of laws.

codicil. Supplementary addition, especially modifying or revoking a will.

coroner. Officer of a county or district holding inquest on bodies of persons supposed to have died of violence or accident.

decree nisi. Order for divorce unless cause is shown for rescinding it within appointed time, when it is made absolute.

detenu. Person detained in custody.

deed. A writing under seal.

defendant. A person resisting a charge brought against him. Also respondent.

disclaimer. A renunciation or denial.

distraint. A seizure without legal process of a personal chattel from the possession of the occupant.

easement. A legal term applied to a privilege enjoyed by anyone over another's property, such as the right of way, etc.

habeas corpus A writ for getting the body of a person under restraint

or imprisonment into Court for full inquiry into the legality of the restraint.

heir-presumptive. One whose right of inheritance is liable to be defeated by the birth of a nearer heir.

indemnity. An undertaking to make good any possible loss or damage.

indenture. Agreement between two persons.

indictment. A written statement showing the crime for which the prisoner is charged.

injunction. Court order prohibiting a defendant from doing a particular thing.

inquest. Judicial inquiry, by a Coroner and Jury to ascertain the cause of sudden, violent or unnatural death.

intestacy. Dying without leaving a will.

jury. Persons sworn to return true verdict in accordance with the evidence before them.

larceny. The unlawful taking and carrying away of things personal with intent to deprive the rightful owner of the same.

lease. Letting of land, etc., for a certain period.

legacy. A gift of personal property by will.

libel. Defamation by written words, etc.

martial law. Suspension of administration by normal civil laws and their replacement by military authority.

moratorium. An emergency law authorising a Government bank to suspend payment.

mortgage. The creation in property of an interest which ceases when a certain sum of money has been paid.

naturalisation. Process by which an alien becomes a subject.

non-cognizable. An offence for which a culprit cannot be arrested by the police without a warrant.

official receiver. Public official who manages affairs of bankrupts.

perjury. Making a false statement on oath.

plaintiff. One who seeks to establish his rights in a law court.

probate. Official proof of the legality of a will.

pronote. A written promise to pay a stated amount to a specified person or to bearer at specified date or on demand.

proxy. Person who acts for another and the authority by which he acts.

receiver. Person who looks after the property of one unable to meet his liabilities himself.

right of way. Right of the public to use private land as path.

sedition. Incitement against established Government.

stay of execution. Order of Court suspending execution of a decree until an appeal filed has been heard.

sub-poena. Writ commanding person's attendance in Court of Justice.

surety. Person who makes himself responsible for another's appearance in court.

treasure trove. Gold found hidden in earth of unknown ownership.

tort. A wrongful act, other than breach of contract.

warrant. A document authorising arrest or search, etc.

ward. A child under guardianship.

6. POLITICAL SCIENCE

aide-memoire. A diplomatic note sent to a foreign state. It is generally in the nature of a reminder.

adjournment. Connotes the postponement of legislative business to some other time.

ambassador. Representative of one great power in the capital of another.

attache. Junior official in the diplomatic service.

ballot. System of secret voting, wherein the voter makes a cross on a paper against the candidate he desires to vote for.

bye-election. Choosing of a representative on the death or resignation of one formerly elected.

cabinet. Body of ministers who control the Government. It embodies collective responsibility.

casting vote. The deciding vote of the chairman in the case of a draw.

civil war. War between parties in the same country.

closure. Closing of debate before all intending speakers have been heard.

coalition. Ministry of members of two or more parties.

counsel, pro-counsel, vice-counsel. Diplomatic officers represening their state in foreign territories.

commonwealth. Countries with a common democratic form of government.

confederation. Union of states retaining a large amount of independence.

constituency. Body of electors who form an electoral district to return one or more members.

convention. An assembly of representative persons delegated to discuss or decide certain important questions. Also an international agreement.

coup d'etat. Sudden change of government forcibly effected.

covenant. Mutual compact, as the League Covenant.

disarmament. International movement for restriction of armaments.

demagogy. Instigation of people by lies and misused half-truths.

democracy. The government of the people, by the people, for the people.

dictator. A statesman who obtains power without constitutional means.

disenfranchisement. Depriving a person of the right to vote.

dispatch. Official communication of a diplomatic nature.

demarche. A diplomatic political step or proceeding.

dossiers. State documents containing a person's antecedents.

de facto. A political or historical situation as it is and not as it should have been.

de jure. Rightful, by right.

election. Choosing of representatives.

envoy. A special diplomatic officer sent to a foreign state to perform a special service such as the negotiation of a treaty, etc.

extradition. Surrender of fugitive prisoners by one state to another.

extra-territoriality. The status of a person who, even in foreign territory, is immune from jurisdiction of local laws and courts. Enjoyed by sovereigns and diplomats.

federalism. Form of government in which several states form a union but retain a certain amount of independence in internal affairs.

franchise. Right to vote.

high commissioner. Representative of other countries in positions of importance. All Empire units have their representatives in London.

legation. Used for the minister to a foreign country and his staff. Also for the building in which they reside.

lobbying. Practice of calling upon members of a legislature in the lobby (*i.e.*, the passage to the House) to secure their support for a measure.

mandate. A definite course enjoined upon a representative by his electors.

plebiscite. A popular vote on clearly defined political or national issue involving the answer *yes* or *no*.

plenipotentiary. A diplomat and an ambassador invested with full powers to act at discretion.

prohibition. Forbidding sale of liquors by law and thus enforcing temperance.

protocol. Original draft of a treaty.

prorogue. To discontinue the meetings of the Parliament without dissolving it.

protectorate. The subordination of a weak state by a strong state.

quorum. The minimum number of the members of an assembly required at each session for legislative purposes.

referendum. The reference of laws passed by the legislature, or legislative proposals to the electors for acceptance or rejection.

republic. Form of state opposed to monarchy. It may be federal or centralized.

returning officer. Officer responsible for an election.

sanction. Penalty for the violation of international agreement.

select committee. A committee of a few members of the general House formed constitutionally to which a legislative measure may be referred for deliberation, addition, alteration, etc.

'sine die'. It relates to the adjournment of a legislative assembly indefinitely or without date, *e.g.*, the East Bengal Assembly has adjourned *sine die*.

speaker. President of a legislative body.

strike. Refusal to work as a protest against certain grievances.

veto. Power of checking proposed legislation.

whip. An official whose duty is to see that the members of his party vote as they should.

7. WAR & PEACE

arsenal. Establishment for the manufacture, repair, receipt, storage and issue of arms, ammunition and other stores.

battalion. A unit of infantry.

battery. Administrative unit of horse and field artillery.

billeting. Quartering of troops on the inhabitants of a country.

blockade. In war, the closing of enemy coasts by preventing ships from leaving or reaching it.

blitzkrieg. It is a German word meaning lightning war. It is applied to the theory that brisk, quick, sudden attack outwits the enemy.

calibre. The bore of a gun.

canteens. Liquor bars for soldiers.

cavalry. Mounted troops.

chatterbug. A term applied to people who spread rumours in conversation in war time.

chevron. V-shaped mark, worn by sailors, soldiers and airmen to indicate rank.

camouflage. Disguise of guns, troops, ships, etc., by colouring same as the surrounding or by smoke screens or otherwise.

cartel. An agreement for exchange of prisoners.

commissariat. In army, arranges for food supplies.

conscription. Method of raising armed forces by lot from all able-bodied males, allowing for substitution.

collective security. Security for all against war and for each against aggression.

convoy. Escort with armed force.

court martial. Military tribunal for the trial of officers and soldiers for breaches of the Army Act, and of civilians for offences against Defence of Realm Act.

cruiser. Warship designed for speed.

cash and carry. The American neutrality law, which prohibited purchase of arms from U. S. A. by all belligerents except on cash and carry basis.

detonator. Chemical composition for exploding.

depot. Store for the supplies of food, medical stores, and ammunition.

depth charges. Bombs for dropping on submerged submarines set to explode at desired depth.

destroyer. Abbreviation for Torpedo Boat Destroyer.

dirigible. An aerial vessel capable of being steered.

draft. A body of soldiers sent on a joint action.

embargo. A ban on the export of certain goods.

enlistment. Voluntary contract to render military service as a private soldier.

espionage. Practice of using spies.

evacuee. One who evacuates his fatherland and settles in another country.

flagship. A warship which has an admiral on board.

flotilla. A group of submarines or destroyers under one command.

fusillade. Continuous discharge of firearms.

guerilla. Irregular warfare.

infantry. Foot soldiers.

isolationist. One who is adverse to his country's intervention in war.

knapsack. A bag containing necessary articles which a soldier carries strapped to his back.

machine-gun. Firearm which discharges rifle bullets or small shells with great rapidity.

martinet. Strict (esp. military or naval) disciplinarian.

mine. Explosive engine used in warfare.

mobilisation. Process by which an armed force passes to a war footing in preparation for war.

navy. The collection of men and ships that form the force of a country on sea.

ordnance. General name of all guns.

parachute. Umbrella-like apparatus for descending.

regiment. Body of soldiers.

revolver. Pistol with a revolving chamber capable of firing a number of shots without reloading.

seaplane. Aeroplane fitted with floats to enable it to rise from and alight on sea.

shell. Hollow projectile discharged from guns, etc.

submarine. Vessel which is capable of operating below the surface of the sea when required.

stirrup-pump. Method employed in A. R. P. for putting out fires.

tank. Tractor-propelled armoured car, able to traverse open country and natural obstacles.

tattoo. A military display given at night.

torpedo. Cigar-shaped vessel carrying a charge of high explosives and used as a weapon by aircraft and all naval war-craft.

tommy-gun. A self-loading gun.

trench. An excavation to prevent the enemy's fire reaching the troops.

volunteers. Those who offer to serve the state in military capacity.

war of nerves. Keeping the enemies under constant threat of an organised invasion, by simply manoeuvring the army or ships, etc.

zero hour. Point of time at which the start of war is imminent.

8. GEOGRAPHY

altitude. Height of a place above sea-level.

alluvial soil. Soil made by river deposits. Very fertile.

antarctic. The South Pole region.

antipodes. Places which are at the ends of a diameter of the earth.

apogee. The point in the moon's orbit where distance from the earth is maximum.

archipelago. Sea with group of islands.

artesian well. Perpendicular boring into strata producing constant supply of water rushing to surface.

atoll. A circular coral reef enclosing a lagoon.

avalanche. Huge mass of snow rushing down the steep side of a mountain experienced at high altitudes.

bore. A great river wave rising from the estuary of the river and looking like a huge wall of water. The phenomenon is exhibited in various big rivers.

canyon. A very deep ravine cut into a rocky region by a river.

clinometer. An instrument for the measurement of vertical angles and contour lines.

contours. Imaginary lines connecting places of equal height above sea-level.

coral islands. Made by the deposit of the dead coral within the sea.

continental shelf. The floor of the ocean beginning from the coastline and extending out into the open sea till the depth reaches 600 ft. mark.

date line. 110° longitude on passing which ships going east repeat a day while those going west detract a day to allow for motion of the earth.

defile. The narrow passage made by a stream or a river through the rocks.

delta. A triangular alluvial deposition at the mouth of a river.

denudation. Wear and tear of rocks by natural agents.

eclipse. A shadow of one heavenly body falling on another.

escarpment. It is the edge of a plateau that descends abruptly to a plain.

equator. The imaginary line drawn round the earth midway between the poles.

equinoxes. The two periods in a year when days and nights in all parts of the earth are of equal duration. This happens when the Equator lies in the same plane as that of earth's revolving orbit round the sun.

fault. The falling of a rock vertically down along a fissure.

geysers. Hot springs which send out columns of water a hundred feet high or more at regular intervals.

glaciers. Consolidated masses of snow which descend very gradually down the valleys and slopes of mountains and after passing the snow-line melt and run off in streams.

Gulf Stream. Issues out of the Gulf of Mexico as a current of warm water, across the Atlantic. It washes the shores of Western Europe. It is 300 miles wide near Newfoundland and it makes the climate of Great Britain and Norway warmer.

hinterland. Land lying behind a coast.

icebergs. Huge masses of floating ice cut off the glaciers of the Polar regions drifting out to sea.

isobars. Lines on map joining places of equal average barometric pressure.

isobaths. Map lines joining places of equal depth.

isobyets. Map lines connecting places of equal rainfall.

isotherms. Imaginary lines connecting places of equal temperature, reduced to sea level.

isthmus. A narrow strip of earth joining two mainland areas, *e.g.*, Isthmus of Panama joining the two Americas.

latitude. The angular distance measured North or South from the equator.

longitude. Meridian distance in degrees measured east and west of Greenwich.

nadir. It is the point of the heavens which is directly below our feet, lowest point.

peninsula. Piece of land surrounded nearly on all sides by water—Spain, Scandinavia S. A.

relief map. A map showing land surface and its varying heights.

rift valley. A long and narrow opening with steep edges caused by subsidence of the intervening land.

river basin. The total area drained by the river including its tributaries.

sand dunes. Sandhills formed on a sandy plain by the action of the winds.

snow line. The limit above which the snow does not melt throughout the year—16,000 feet above sea-level is the snow line on the southern slopes of the Himalayas.

stratosphere. The layer of atmospheric air in which the temperature ceases to fall with height.

tornado A severe wind storm travelling at a terrific speed on a mainland.

typhoon. A severe whirlwind travelling at great speed on sea.

volcano. A hole in the earth's crust out of which hot liquid lava flows.

watershed. Dividing line of two river systems.

zenith. It is the highest point in the heavens which is directly above our head.

9. ASTRONOMY

asteroid. A small planetary body.

aurora, Luminous phenomenon seen in the sky during the night.

comet. Luminous heavenly body with a tail.

constellation. Groups of fixed stars named after the shape formed by lines linking their chief components.

eclipse. The passing of one celestial body between another and the observer. *Solar eclipse* occurs at new moon, when the sun, moon and earth are in the same straight line. *Lunar eclipse* occurs at full moon.

Lucifer. Morning star.

meteor. Small incandescent body.

Milky Way. The luminous band which appears to stretch across the sky at night. Consists of innumerable stars.

moon. Satellite of the earth. Causes tides.

nebula. Cluster of stars or a patch of incandescent gaseous matter.

planets. Celestial bodies which revolve round the sun in elliptical

orbits. They are distinguished from fixed stars by having apparent motion of their own.

satellite. A companion body to a planet or a star revolving round it.

10. PHYSICS

accumulator. In which electrical energy is stored.

aerial. In wireless the wires which transit or collect electrical waves whereby communication is set up.

beam system. System of directional wireless telegraphy in which the waves sent out are concentrated in the form of a beam on a distant station.

brake. Contrivance for retarding speed.

broadcasting. Sending out of wireless message to be received by those who have the necessary apparatus to listen-in.

cinematograph. Apparatus employed for projecting animated pictures on to screen.

developer. Substance used in photography for rendering visible the invisible effect of light on a sensitive plate.

Diesel engine. Slow speed combustion engine.

horse-power. A unit of work used to estimate the working power of an engine.

knot. A unit of speed at sea equal to 1·6 miles.

motor-car. Self-propelled vehicle worked by an internal combustion engine.

ohm. A unit of electrical resistance.

phonogram. Talking machine which records and reproduces sound.

proton. It is the unit of positive electricity, forming a part of the nucleus of atom.

radio-activity. Term applied to substances like radium which emit radiations possessing certain characteristics.

telephone. Device for transmitting sound to a distant place by means of electricity.

television. Transmission of recognisable images of moving objects over a telephone line.

voltage. Electromotive force expressed in volts.

watt power. Rate of working in circuit when electromotive force is one volt and intensity of current one ampere. It is a unit of electric power.

11. CHEMISTRY

acetylene. Given off when calcium carbide is mixed with water. Illuminating value. Oxy-acetylene flame is the hottest flame known ; used in welding.

agate. Form of silica. On account of hardness used as bearings in scientific instruments.

alabaster. Translucent from of gypsum. Used as ornamental stone.

alcohol. Inflammable, pungent substance.

alkali. Basic, soapy compound, *e.g.*, soda, potash.

alloy. Mixture of metals, *e.g.*, brass, bronze, solders, called *amalgam* when mercury enters as a constituent.

amber. Fossil resin, takes high polish.

amethyst. Green stone.

asbestos. A fire-proof mineral.

bleaching. Process of whitening fabrics by exposure to light or chemicals.

celluloid. Semitransparent, inflammable substance.

cement. Mixture of chalk and clay, used in masonry.

chloroform. An anaesthetic.

combustion, spontaneous. Catching fire, without visible cause, of minerals and vegetable matter.

concrete. Composite mass of materials such as broken bricks, gravel, and sand bound together by some adhesive substance like lime or cement.

cordite. Standard smokeless explosive.

dextrin. Sticky substance obtained from starch used as gum for postage stamps.

dynamite. High explosive, used for blasting operations.

glass. Transparent mixture of fused silicates.

graphite. Black lead used for making pencils and crucibles.

gun cotton. High explosive.

helium. Non-inflammable, inert gas used as lifting gas in airships.

laudanum. Tincture of opium and as a relief for pains.

laughing gas. Nitrous oxide. An anaesthetic.

malt. Produced by germination of cereals like barley. Used by brewers and distillers.

mica. Shiny substance characterised by ready cleavage into thin plates.

neon light. Of glowing red colour, capable of penetrating fog.

paper. Aqueous deposit of vegetable fibre.

pig-iron. Iron run out of the blast furance and cast into rough moulds.

pitch-blende. An impure uranium oxide, chief source of Uranium and radium.

rennet. Used for curdling milk.

resins. Used in varnishing, lacquer work, soaps, waxes, printing inks, greases, etc.

rubber. Milky juice of certain trees.

saccharin. Intensely sweet compound used in aerated waters.
sal volatile. Aromatic spirit of ammonia. Used as a stimulant in fainting.
silk. Fibres derived from the cocoon of silk-worms.
soap. Cleaning agent produced by the action of caustic soda on animal oils or fats.
starch. White glistering powder ; constituents of foodstuffs.
tar. Black oily liquid, obtained from destructive distillation of coal. Used in road-repairs.
tungsten. Rare metal. Filament used in electric lamps.
water-gas. Gas produced when steam is passed over red-hot coke.
wine. Fermented grape-juice made as drink.

12. BIOLOGY

amoeba. Tiny shapeless jelly-like mass of protoplasm.
amphibious. Living both on land and in water.
anthropoid. Resembling man.
anthropophagi. Man-eaters of N. E. Caspian.
baboon. Monkey.
black-bird. British song-bird.
carnivora. Flesh-eating animals.
cellulose. Substance forming sold framework of plants.
chlorophyll. Colouring matter of leaves—green and yellow.
chimpanzee. Anthropoid apes in Africa.
cuckoo. English bird which lays eggs in other birds' nests.
deciduous. Trees shedding leaves annually.
emu. Large bird found in Australia.
eucalyptus. Gum tree of Australia.
evolution. Process wherein one kind of living creature or plant gives rise to another kind.
fossil. Traces cf plants and animals found in the earth's crust.
gill. Organ of respiration in fish, etc.
gorilla. Largest of anthropoid apes.
hemp. General name for textile fibres.
hermaphrodite. Organism in which both sexes occur.
hippopotamus. Large herbivorous animal.
ivy. Climbing shrub.
kangaroo. Pouched mammal of Australia.
larva. Young of an insect when it leaves the egg.
latex. Milky juice of plants.
mammals. Animals which suckle their young.
mite. Small creature.
mule. Hybrid of a male ass and a mare.

mushroom. A fungus growth.

myrrh. An aromatic plant.

parasite. Organism which lives on others.

perennial. Plant that lives for years.

pigment. Colouring matter in animals.

pollen. Fine, powdery substance contained in the anthers of flowers. It is the male element that fertilizes the ovules.

protoplasm. Living substance constituting the cells of plants and animals.

protozoa. Lowest form of life.

pythons. Huge serpents that crush their prey.

rodent. Animals gnawing hard substance, *e.g.*, squirrels, rats, mice, beavers, rabbits.

ruminant. Animals which chew their cud, *e.g.*, cow.

sponge. Aquatic animal of low order with pores in the bodywall.

13. HYGIENE

abscess. Collection of pus within any tissue of body.

acne. A chronic inflammatory skin disease.

actinotherapy. Method of treatment in which body is exposed to ultra-violet rays.

adenoids. Overgrowth of lymphatic tissue at the back of nasal passages.

anaemia. Want of blood.

anaesthetic. A drug which produces insensibility.

antidote. A medicine to counteract poison or disease.

anti-septic. Substances which destroy bacteria or arrest their growth.

anti-toxin. Substances which neutralize the action of bacterial poisoning or toxins. These are *serums.*

appendicitis. Inflammation of the appendix—a small blind prolongation of the large intestine.

apoplexy. A sudden loss of consciousness.

asthma. A spasmodic affection of the bronchial tubes.

astigmatism. Defect in the refracting surface of the eye, which causes the vision to be blurred.

bacteria. Living organism grouped into *cocci* (or spheres), *baccili* (or straight rods) and *spirilla* (or twisted forms). Discovered by Pasteur.

beriberi. Disease affecting nervous system due to loss of vitamins.

blood. Fluid which conveys food and oxygen to various organs of the body during its circulation. It also carries the waste product of tissues. It consists of a fluid part, *plasma* in which float blood

cells or *corpuscles*—red and white. The circulatory system consists of heart, arteries, veins, capillaries and lymphatic vessels.

bronchitis. Acute inflammation of the bronchical mucous membranes.

cancer. A malignant growth.

carbuncle. An inflammatory tumour or boil.

catarrh. Common cold.

chloroform. An anaesthetic.

cholera. A disease, characterised by copious, colourless stools and cramps in legs.

clinic. Institution for medical treatment.

colic. Severe gripping abdominal pains of a paroxysmal nature.

coma. A disease in which one swoons.

convulsions. Violent spasms of muscles.

dandruff. Scurf.

delirium. Condition of mental disorder, accompanied by hallucinations.

diarrhoea. A disease of the bowels.

diabetes. Immoderate flow of urine.

diagnosis. Act of ascertaining from signs and symptoms, what a patient is suffering.

diaphoretic. Drugs increasing perspiration.

diphtheria. Infectious disease characterised by discharge from throat and nose.

disinfection. Process of destroying germs, disinfectants are : sulphur, perchloride of mercury, etc.

dispepsia. Indigestion.

emetic. A drug which causes vomiting.

endemic. A disease which is prevalent or regularly found in a region.

enema. A liquid injected into the rectum.

enteric. Typhoid or gastric fever.

epidemic. A disease which attacks many people in a region at one time and spreads quickly.

epilepsy. Disease of nervous system characterised by convulsions and unconsciousness.

febrifuge. Medicine to reduce fever.

fistula. A kind of ulcer.

gland. An organ that manufactures a physiologically active substance.

gout. An acute inflammation of smaller joints.

haemorrhage. Discharge of blood.

haemoglobin. Colouring matter of blood

heart. Centre of circulating system. Consists of 4 chambers—two auricles and two ventricles. It beats 72 times per minute in healthy persons.

hernia. A rupture.

hydrocele. A swelling consisting of collection of sacrotum.

hydrophobia. Rabies. Disease caused by the bite of infected dogs, jackals, etc.

hypermetropia. Long-sightedness.

hypodermic. Introduced or lying beneath the skin.

hysteria. A nervous disease, usually in women.

immunity. Power of resisting disease.

incubation period. Interval between infection and the appearing of symptoms.

influenza. Highly infectious epidemic disease, affecting respiratory organs. Running at the nose.

inoculation. Introduction of a virus, usually a micro-organism into the system through an abrasion of skin, in order to communicate disease, thereby rendering the subject immune to an attack.

insomnia. Inability to sleep ; sleeplessness.

jaundice. Morbid state caused by obstruction of bile and marked by yellowness of skin.

lactation. Suckling.

leprosy. A chronic, infectious skin disease.

malaria. A fever caused by a parasite carried by Anopheles mosquito.

measles. A contagious fever accompanied with eruptions of small red spots on the skin.

meningitis. Inflammation of the membraneous covering of brain.

microbe. Minute living bacteria causing diseases and fermentation.

mumps. Contagious swellings of salivary glands.

myopia. Short-sightedness.

narcotic. Drug inducing sleep.

nausea. Disposition to vomit.

neuralgia. Nervous pain.

obesity. Excessive fatness.

opthalmia. Severe inflammation of eyes.

paralysis. Loss of power in and part of the body.

paraplegia. Paralysis of lower part of body.

pharmacopoeia. A book containing a description of products used in medicine.

pituitary gland. Gland which secretes phlegm.

pthisis. A disease characterised by low fever due to infection of the lungs by tubercle bacilli.

plague. Severe epidemic characterised by high fever and buboes in the armpit or groin.

pleurisy. Inflammation of lungs.

prophylactic. Methods of warding off disease.

retina. Internal coating of eye.

rheumatism. Inflammatory affection of joints.

rickets. A disease in children characterised by the softening of bones.

relapse. The return of a disease after apparent recovery.

scrofula. Tubercular inflammation of lymphatic glands.

scabies. Itching of skin.

sciatica. A disease due to neuralgic affection of the sciatic nerve.

sedative. A drug tending to soothe.

serum. Clear fluid that separates from the blood when it coagulates.

small-pox. A disease characterised by high fever and red rashes which appear after two or three days, which are filled with a fluid. The infection is conveyed through breath and through scales when they fall off or through clothes.

sunstroke. Disease characterised by high fever on exposure to excessive heat.

tetanus. A disease marked by contraction of voluntary muscle of face.

thyroid gland. Large ductless organ of no known function situated on larynx and trachea.

tuberculosis. An infectious disease caused by the tubercle bacillus, characterised by the formation of nodular masses (tubercles) which spread in all directions.

tumour. Local swelling from morbid growth.

typhoid fever. Enteric, three weeks' fever.

ulcer. An open wound or sore resulting from destruction of surface tissue.

varicocele. An enlargement of varicose veins of spermic cord.

vitamins. 'Accessory food factors.' Of the class of substances present in foodstuffs, which are essential for the promotion of good health.

whitlow. Abscess of the finger or thumb about the root of the nail.

(14) OTHERS ARTS & SCIENCES

acoustics. Science of sound.

aeronautics. Science and practice of piloting in the air.

aesthetics. The science of beauty, mental as well as visual. It deals with beauty not only in art but in science and metaphysics as well.

allopathy. Treatment of diseases by producing effects exactly opposite to those produced bv the disease itself.

anatomy. Study of the structure of man or other animals.

anthropology. Science which reveals man's place in nature and describes the mental and physical peculiarities of mankind.

archaeology. Science of ancient remains.

astrophysics. Science of physical properties of stars.

bacteriology. Study of bacteria or microbes.

ballastics. Military science which deals with the study of projectiles and other hurling apparatus. It includes gunnery.

bibliography. Art of writing about books. Usually reference to available literature.

biochemistry. Science dealing with the structure of constituents of living matter.

botany. Science of plant life.

calligraphy. The art of beautiful hand-writing.

callisthenics. Art of bodily exercises.

ceramics. Study of the potters' art.

chieromancy. Science of palmistry.

chronology. Science of computing periods of time by orderly divisions and of assigning to events their proper relative dates.

cosmology. Science dealing with the evolution of the universe.

cosmography. Science dealing with the description and mapping of general features of the universe or the earth.

criminology. Science of crime, dealing with the origin, development and punishment of crime.

crypotography. Art of secret writing.

demography. Statistics of births, diseases, etc., illustrating condition of communities.

demagogy. The art of oration which especially appeals to the cupidity, ignorance or prejudice of the masses.

dendrology. Science dealing with the formation of trees and mosses and other vegetable matter into stones and minerals.

ecology. Studies in relation of plants and animals to their environment.

elocution. Art of speaking effectively in public.

embryology. Study of the development of animal from the egg to the mature stage.

entomology. Science of insects.

epidemiology. Science of epidemics.

epigraphy. Study of inscriptions on stones, metals and wood, etc.

ethnography. Study, description and classification of human races and people according to geographical distribution.

ethnology. Study of characteristics and distribution of races of mankind.

etymology. Deals with origin and meaning of words.

eugenics. Science of breeding. Perpetuation of healthy, physical and mental attributes in the human race.

eurhythemics. System dealing with the harmony of bodily movements developed with the aid of music. It includes the art of dancing.

gastrology. Art of cooking.

gastronomy. Art of good eating.

genealogy. Science of family descent.

genetics. Science treating of heredity and descent.

geodesy. Science of the measurement of the globe.

geography. Study cf the description of the earth, as 'home of man,' 'of man's place in nature' and 'his work.'

geology. Science of the study of the earth's crust.

graphology. Character-reading from hand-writing.

gynaecology. Deals with ailments of women.

homoeopathy. System of curing diseases, propagated by Hahnemann, by giving drugs in minute quantities to produce in the patient's system symptoms similar to those the same drugs produce in healthy persons.

horticulture. Art of gardening.

hydrography. Science of water measurement as applied to sea, rivers, lakes, current, etc.

hydropathy. Treatment of diseases by water.

hydrostatics. Science of pressure and equilibrium of fluids.

Ichthyology. Study of fishes.

jurisprudence. Science of law.

lexicography. The art of dictionary-making.

limnology. Study of physical phenomena of lakes and of pond life.

lithography. The art of drawing or writing on a kind of yellow slaty limestone so that impressions in ink can be taken. Used in the publication of Urdu and other scripts which do not possess a good press type of their own.

logistics. The art of moving and quartering troops; concerns military strategy and tactics.

metallurgy. Science of extracting metal from their ores.

metaphysics. Study concerned with nature and its relation to human beings.

metempsychosis. The metaphysical system relating to the transmigration of the souls of human beings and other animals at death into a new body of the same or different species.

metrology. Science relating to the system of weights and measures.

meteorology. Science of atmospheric phenomena included in the term weather.

minerology. Science of minerals.

mycology. Science of mushrooms and fungi.

neology. The system of coining new words.

nephology. The science relating to the study of clouds.

necromancy. Divination by communication with the dead.

numismatics. Science by coins and medals.

ochlocracy. Political system indicating mob-rule.

orthoepy. Science of correct pronunciation.

obstetrics. Deals with child-birth and delivery.

ornithology. Science of birds.

orthography. Art of correct spelling.

optics. Investigates nature of light.

palaeography. Study of ancient hand-writing.

palmistry. Art of hand reading.

pathology. Study of essential nature of disease.

pedagogy. Science of education.

periphrasis. The art of speaking in a roundabout way, often cultivated by statesmen.

philology. Study of words.

philately. Art of stamp collecting.

phonetics. Study of articulate sounds.

phrenology. A doctrine derived from study of the skull and brain to illustrate the brain functions in different individuals.

physiology. Deals with functions of living organisms.

physiognomy. Science of character-reading from the face.

prosody. Act of versification, scanning.

psycho-analysis. Method of investigating the processes of the mind and the fundamental motives of conduct.

psychology. Science which analyses the phenomena of human mind.

psycho-therapy. Treatment of mental disorders by influencing the mind.

radiology. Science dealing with radiant energy.

radium therapy. Healing by means of radio-active substances.

refrigeration. Art of preserving food by the application of cold.

seismography. Study of earthquakes.

statistics. Science of aggregates and figure interpretation.

sociology. Scientific study of human life in organised community.

stenography. Art of shorthand writing.

taxidermy. Art of skinning, preserving, stuffing and mounting animals.

telepathy. Communication between two minds apart from the ordinary sense channels.

terminology. Science of proper use of terms.

theology. Science of religion.

typography. Art of printing.

veterinary science. Science of treating the diseases of domestic animals.

EXERCISES

(*For* **Board** *Students*)

Explain the following words and use them in sentences of your own.

Anthropology, Archeology, Astronomy, Biology, Ethnology, Etymology, Geology, Philology, Psychology, Theology.

(*For* **University** *Students*)

Write down at random five technical terms of each of the following branches of learning, and use them in sentences of your own to bring out their meaning clearly :

Physics, Literature, Geography, Hygiene, Arts, Astronomy.

CHAPTER XXVI

ONE-WORD SUBSTITUTIONS

1. Paradoxically enough, even the most profuse writers have been very sparing with the use of words. They have achieved everlasting fame simply because even though they wrote a lot, they never wasted even a single word. It was on the felicity of phrase rather than verbosity of style that they depended on their effects. They always agreed with Shakespeare in regarding brevity as the soul of wit. And brevity must be even our constant aim, if we are to write anything like good English.

2. "Never use two words where one will do equally well," should be your motto. But to slash the number of words, you must know the apt words. It is for this purpose that various lists of words have been given in the preceding pages. If you know all the words contained in them, you should have no difficulty in substituting the apt word for a phrase based on a round-about way of expression. Here are some additional words. Together, they should well equip you for answering the usual examination questions on *One-Word Substitutions.*

Formally renounce crown. (**Abdicate**).

The people found in a country at the time of the earliest known settlement. (**Aborigines**).

To do away with a rule. (**Abrogate**).

To make more rapid in speed. (**Accelerate**).

To increase the gravity of an offence or the intensity of a disease. (**Aggravate**).

Dread of public places. (**Agoraphobia**).

To turn friends into enemies. (**Alienate**).

Allowance due to a wife from her husband on separation. (**Alimony**).

A tank for fishes or water-plants. (**Aquarium**).

A representative of a government in another country possessed of full authority to deal with every situation. (**Ambassador**).

He is able to use his left hand as well as his right. (**Ambidexterous**).

(Limb) cut off by a doctor. (**Amputated**).

Animals equally at home on land and sea. (**Amphibia**).

Mistake of mentioning things decisively of a later age in an earlier period. (**Anachronism**).

A person who is out to destroy all government and order. **(Anarchist)**

Belonging to one's ancestors. **(Ancestral).**

To completely destroy or blot out of existence. **(Annihilate).**

Deviation from the common rule or standard. **(Anomaly).**

A person who easily believes whatever is told him. **(Credulous).**

Government by the nobles. **(Aristocracy).**

Government by the people. **(Democracy).**

Rule by Mob. **(Mobocracy).**

Government by the few. **(Oligarchy).**

Government by rich people. **(Plutocracy).**

A government in which all rule. **(Pantisocracy).**

Government by the gods. **(Thearchy).**

Cessation from arms before a formal treaty is signed. **(Armistice).**

To understand completely or to absorb food completely. **(Assimilate).**

(He is a) man who does not believe in the existence of God or in after-life. **(Atheist).**

The whole mass of air surrounding the earth. **(Atmosphere).**

To make thin or fine or to reduce the strength of. **(Attenuate).**

The life-history of a man written by himself. **(Autobiography).**

A woman with dark skin and brown hair. **(Brunette).**

Government by officials. **(Bureaucracy).**

Secretly exerted (influence). **(Backdoor).**

(A man who is) fond of fighting. **(Bellicose).**

One who is a great lover of books. **(Bibliophile).**

The crime or the state of having two wives or husbands at once. **(Bigamy).**

A man with narrow and prejudiced religious views. **(Bigot).**

People who speak two languages. **(Bilingual).**

The act of talking impiously about sacred things. **(Blasphemy).**

A man with skin and hair of auburn colour. **(Blond).**

A woman with skin and hair of auburn colour. **(Blonde).**

The science of vegetable life. **(Botany).**

A disagreeable sound. **(Cacophony).**

(A mind) insensible to kind thoughts or sympathetic feelings. **(Callous).**

Of hair, thin as a hair. **(Capillary).**

Eater of flesh. **(Carnivore).**

To sear by hot iron or electricity. **(Cauterize).**

A state of complete continence. **(Celibacy).**

A state of complete continence on the part of a woman. **(Virginity).**

State of being married. (**Matrimony**).
Find fault with one's ways. (**Censure**).
An insect with many legs. (**Centipede**).
(A man) who is always inclined to find fault. (**Censorious**).
A round about way of speaking. (**Circumlocution**).
Sail round the globe. (**Circumnavigate**).
To restrain by force or to impel a person (to do a thing) by force. (**Coerce**).
Men who work in the same department of an office, etc. (**Colleagues**).
Income sufficient to live on. (**Competence**).
Belonging or pertaining to an individual from birth. (**Congenital**).
Walk for the sake of health. (**Constitutional**).
To finish by completing what was intended. (**Consummate**).
Living in the same age. (**Contemporary**).
Countries touching each other at the border. (**Contiguous**).
Wilful and persistent resistance to lawful authority. (**Contumacy**).
To utter slanderous words with a view to injuring a man's reputation. (**Defame**).
To give one's authority to another. (**Delegate**).
To carefully think about a matter. (**Deliberate**).
To express disapproval of. (**Deprecate**).
To lower the value of. (**Depreciate**).
To deprive (a thing) of its sacred character. (**Desecrate**).
To wander from the point at issue or topic of discussion. (**Digress**).
The circuit or extent of a bishop's jurisdiction. (**Diocese**).
The art practised by statesmen and ambassadors. (**Diplomacy**).
Morbid craving for alcohol. (**Dipsomania**).
Belief in independent principles of good and evil. (**Ditheism**).
An animal that can be tamed. (**Domestic**).
Extreme old age when a man often behaves like a fool. (**Dotage**).
(A game or battle) in which neither party wins. (**Drawn**).
Want of rain. (**Drought**).
Capable of being drawn out into wires. (**Ductile**).
That which will last a very long time. (**Durable**).
(A constitution which is) of the people, by the people, and for the people. (**Democratic**).
(Behaviour) marked by open and effusive exhibition of feelings. (**Demonstrative**).
Capable of being proved. (**Demonstrable**).

(Do a thing) of set design. **(Designedly, Deliberately)**.
A man of unusual habits. **(Eccentric)**.
(A thing that is) fit to be eaten. **(Edible)**.
(He is so much) like a woman (that people detest him). **(Effeminate)**.
(A plan) which will produce the intended effect. **(Efficacious)**.
A man who thinks only of himself. **(Egoist)**.
To work out (a plan) in all its details. **(Elaborate)**.
To clear up something difficult or mysterious. **(Elucidate)**.
A man who thinks of the freeing of the lower classes from their disabilities. **(Emancipationist)**.
To lay special stress on. **(Emphasize)**.
One who relies only on experience and observation. **(Empiric)**.
(A disease) peculiar to a country. **(Endemic)**.
The study of insects. **(Entomology)**.
Specify by name, one by one. **(Enumerate)**.
Surround on all sides. **(Envelope)**.
Mental weariness from lack of occupation. **(Ennui)**.
A person very fond of refined sensuous enjoyments. **(Epicure)**.
Words incribed on the tomb of a man. **(Epitaph)**.
(Statue) of a person on horse-back. **(Equestrian)**.
(Mind) not easily disturbed by sudden misfortune. **(Equanimous)**.
A state of perfect balance. **(Equilibrium)**.
Lasting only a very short time. **(Ephemeral)**.
(To) root out an evil, a disease, etc. **(Eradicate)**.
That which will last for ever. **(Eternal, Everlasting)**.
The science which deals with the derivation of words. **(Etymology)**
To unearth by digging. **(Excavate)**.
Giving and receiving. **(Exchange)**.
(Mr. A.) was freed from the charge framed against him by the police. **(Exculpated)**.
The part of the Government which preserves the law and order and carries out the laws made by the legislature. **(Executive)**.
To free (a person) from all blame in a matter. **(Exonerate)**.
To make atonement (for one's sins). **(Expiate)**.
(An) absolutely clear (statement). **(Explicit)**.
(This addition of) Hamlet (is one) from which all objectionable matters have been removed. **(Expurgated)**.

(A speech) made without any previous preparation.
(Extempore, Impromptu, Unpremeditated, Improvised).
A man filled with excessive and mistaken enthusiasm in matters of religion. **(Fanatic).**
(One who is) not easily pleased by anything. **(Fastidious).**
One who believes implicity in fate. **(Fatalist).**
A man who thinks of the welfare of women. **(Feminist).**
A person residing in a country of which he is not a citizen.
(Foreigner).
Fruit-eating animals. **(Frugivorous).**
Dashed to the ground. **(Frustrated).**
Purify or disinfect with fumes. **(Fumigate).**
A day of gaiety and festivity. **(Gala day).**
(A rule that is) true in most cases. **(General).**
A medicine that kills germs. **(Germicide).**
A person who mends broken window-panes. **(Glazier).**
Grass-eating (animals.) **(Graminivorous).**
Unwarranted, most uncalled for, and quite motiveless.
(Gratuitous).
One who can be easily duped or fooled by a swindler. **(Gullible).**
Animals which live on herbs. **(Herbivorous).**
The killing of a man. **(Homicide).**
An office for which salary is not paid. **(Honorary).**
(I a n) in a state of antagonism with him. **(Hostile, *to*).**
One who is very careful about one's health. **(Hygienist).**
A breaker of images. **(Iconoclast).**
A personal peculiarity of constitution or temperament.
(Idiosyncracy).
Worship of idols. **(Idolatry).**
(A writing) that cannot be read. **(Illegible).**
(A trade) that is prohibited by law. **(Illicit).**
A man who does not know how to read and write. **(Illiterate).**
(A thing that is) not subject to alteration. **(Immutable).**
A small part of beard left growing beneath the lower lip.
(Imperial).
(A scheme) that cannot be put into practice. **(Impracticable).**
(A comparison) that is out of place. **(Inapt).**
(A sound) that cannot be heard. **(Inaudible).**
(A thing) which can hardly be believed. **(Incredible).**
(Conduct) which can by no means be defended. **(Indefensible).**
(That which) cannot be measured. **(Immeasurable).**
(Handwriting which) is not very clear to read. **(Illegible).**

One who is not fit according to the rules, for something. **(Ineligible).**

To involve (one) in accusation. **(Incriminate).**

(Value) so high that it cannot even be estimated. **(Inestimable).**

Beyond all price. **(Invaluable).**

Something which is entirely beyond belief. **(Incredible).**

Not giving or paying any attention. **(Inattentive).**

That which cannot be escaped from. **(Inescapable).**

Something which cannot fail to come to pass. **(Inevitable).**

One who cannot be tired out. **(Indefatigable).**

(A remedy) which never fails. **(Infallible).**

The murder or murderer of infants. **(Infanticide).**

The murder or murderer of one's own mother. **(Matricide).**

The murder or murderer of one's own father. **(Parricide).**

The murder or murderer of one's own brother. **(Fratricide).**

The murder or murderer of a king. **(Regicide).**

Liable to catch fire easily. **(Inflammable).**

(A prob'em) never likely to be solved. **(Insoluble).**

(A person) who is unable to pay his debts. **(Insolvent).**

To urge to commit a crime. **(Instigate).**

(A statement) which it is impossible to contradict. **(Irrefragable).**

(An argument) perfectly beyond answer. **(Irrefragable).**

Not to be refuted. **(Irrefutable).**

(Damages) which cannot be recovered. **(Irrecoverable).**

Walking from one place to another on business. **(Itinerant, Peripatetic)**

To insert passages in an author's work so as to give a false impression as to its date, etc. **(Interpolate).**

To exclaim against a person or thing. **(Inveigh).**

That which cannot be hurt or wounded. **(Invulnerable).**

A person who dies without making his will. **(Intestate).**

(A desire) that cannot be suppressed. **(Irrepressible).**

(Remarks) which do not really apply to the subject in hand. **(Irrelevant).**

Beyond all power of time to destroy. **(Imperishable).**

That which nothing can avail to appease. **(Implacable).**

(A person) given to airs and graces or affectedly languishing. **(Lackadaisical),**

(A person) lacking in zeal, especially in religion or politics. **(Laodicean).**

(A person) given to continual talking. **(Loquacious).**

The clouds are threatening. **(Lowering).**

(This needle) has the property of attracting iron. (**Magnetic**).
The first (speech) delivered by a man. (**Maiden**).
(Metals) that can be hammered into sheets. (**Malleable**).
Land belonging to a lord or a nobleman. (**Manor**).
A rigid disciplinarian, especially in the army or navy. (**Martinet**).
A society where money or gain is the most important consideration. (**Materialistic**).
(Of an age) fit to marry at. (**Marriageable**).
Apply another's money fraudulently to one's own use. (**Misappropriate**).
That which belongs to men and not to women. (**Masculine**).
Soul much too lofty ever to harbour petty feelings. (**Magnanimous**).
Morning prayer in the Church of England. (**Matins**).
A cinema show which is held in the afternoon. (**Matinee**).
Belonging to the Middle Ages. (**Mediaeval**).
(A bird) that comes and goes with the seasons. (**Migratory**).
To detract from the importance of an event. (**Minimize**).
A hater of mankind. (**Misanthrope**).
A hater of women. (**Misogynist**).
A hater of the institute of marriage. (**Misogamist**).
The practice of being married to one at a time. (**Monogamy**).
A plurality of wives. (**Polygamy**).
Women having many husbands at one and the same time. (**Polyandry**).
A state in which the succession is through women alone. (**Matriarchy**).
A hater of learning or knowledge. (**Misologist**).
Worship of one god without denying the existence of others. (**Monotatry**).
A building where dead bodies are kept. (**Mortuary**).
Plain clothes worn by one who has a right to wear a uniform, as a policeman, etc. (**Mufti**).
One who has been admitted to another country's citizenship. (**Naturalized**).
A medicine that induces sleep. (**Narcotic**).
Admitting a person to the citizenship of a state to which he does not belong. (**Naturalization**).
A labourer employed in excavating, etc., for canals, railways, roads, etc. (**Navy**).
A new word coined or used by an author. (**Neologism**).
Undue favour from a high official or holder of patronage to his relatives. (**Nepotism**).

A person suffering from nervous disorder. (**Neurotic**).

(A man) with an evil reputation. (**Notorious**).

Ecstasy or frenzy caused by a desire of the unattainable. (**Nympholepsy**).

A word no longer in use. (**Obsolete**).

An eight-sided figure. (**Octagon**).

One who is all powerful. (**Omnipotent**).

(God is) present everywhere. (**Omnipresent**).

A person who always takes the brightest possible view of things. (**Optimist**).

One inclined to take chiefly the gloomy side of things into consideration. (**Pessimist**).

A remedy for all diseases. (**Panacea**).

Dramatic performance with dumb show. (**Pantomime**).

A lady's umbrella. (**Parasol**).

The creeper that can exist only by living upon and drawing sustenance from a tree. (**Parasite**).

Property inherited from one's father or ancestors. (**Patrimony**).

To appropriate public money or goods entrusted to one's care. (**Peculate**).

One who walks on foot. (**Pedestrian**).

Something obtained from a place or office over and above the settled wages. (**Perquisite**).

To preserve from extinction. (**Perpetuate**).

One who takes a dark view of things. (**Pessimist**).

A person who amuses himself by love-making. (**Philanderer**).

A man who loves his fellowmen and works for them. (**Philanthropist**).

One who does not care for literature or art. (**Philistine**).

A person who is a lover of women. (**Philogynist**).

A lover of learning, especially of mathematics. (**Philomath**).

Animals which feed on fish. (**Piscivorous**).

A writer who borrows words and ideas from another author and tries to pass them off as his own. (**Plagiarist**).

Ordinary and commonplace remarks. (**Platitudes**).

Easy to carry over long distances. (**Portable**).

An ambassador deputed to act at his discretion and invested with full powers for the purpose. (**Plenipotentiary**).

Tyres functioning by means of air. (**Pneumatic**).

The direct vote of all the electors of the State. (**Plebiscite** *or* **Referendum**).

(Decree) made known to the public. (**Promulgated**).

Organized schemes of popularising something. (**Propaganda**).

A believer in the doctrine that the total abolition of war is both possible and desirable. (**Pacifist**).

The lowest class of a community, *e.g.*, indigent wage-earners, labourers, penniless agriculturists (against the) possessors of the capital used in production. [(*a*) **Proletariate** (*b*) **Capitalists**].

A very sad condition. (**Predicament**).

To take for granted. (**Postulate**).

Work of a writer appearing after his death. (**Posthumous**).

Medical examination of a body held after death. (**Post mortem**).

A victory gained at too great an expense. (**Pyrrhic**).

One who or that which precedes an event and indicates its approach (**Precursor**).

(A beast) that prays upon other animals. (**Predacious**).

Right of succession belonging to the first-born. (**Primogeniture**).

A person who is particular about the purity of his language. (**Purist**).

The purest and most essential (part). (**Quintessence**).

Give and receive mutually. (**Reciprocate**).

To restore to life from apparent death. (**Reanimate**).

People who take up arms against the government. (**Rebels**).

Too much official formality. (**Red-tapism**).

The sum paid to a man for a piece of work. (**Remuneration**).

(To be) very reserved in speech. (**Reticent**).

Having reference to what is past. (**Retrospective**).

A person who helps a stranger or a helpless person in difficulties. (**Samaritan**).

A person who is indifferent to pleasure or pain. (**Stoic**).

An office with no work but high pay. (**Sinecure**).

One who talks in sleep. (**Somniloquist**).

One who walks in sleep. (**Somnambulist**).

The act of speaking aloud one's thoughts when alone. (**Soliloquy**).

To render safe from germs. (**Sterilize**).

(They fired) at one and the same time. (**Simultaneously**).

To send large sums of money as military aid. (**Subsidize**).

To take place at same time as another event. (**Synchronize** *with*).

Marking the skin with indelible patterns by inserting pigments in punctures. (**Tattoo**).

To wait on events. (**Temporize**).

To rise and fall in waves. (**Undulate**).

The ceremony of shaving the crown or the whole head. (**Tonsure**).

Very pleasing to eat. (**Toothsome**).

The power of reading the thoughts or mind of others immediately. (**Telepathy** or **Thought-Reading**).

A believer in the doctrine that human souls are incarnated in other bodies. (**Transmigration**).

The two or (three, four, five) (brothers were) both born at one and the same time. (**Twins**, or **Triplets, Quadruplets, Quintuplets**).

Without any variation. (**Uniform**).

A measure (which it is not possible to justify. (**Unjustifiable**).

That which cannot be tamed. (**Untameable**).

Averse to mixing in society. (**Unsociable**).

That which cannot be deciphered at all. (**Undecipherable**).

To rise and full in waves. (**Undulate**).

To make up one's mind one day and change it the next. (**Vacillate**).

A man who always thinks he is ill. (**Valetudinarian**).

One who eats vegetable only. (**Vegetarian**).

One who may be ready to sell one's life for money. (**Venal**).

A fault that may be forgiven. (**Venial**).

A man who can disguise the direction from which his voice is coming. (**Ventriloquist**).

(I repeated all that he had told me) word for word. (**Verbatim**).

(A style) full of words. (**Verbose**).

Evening prayer in the Church of England. (**Vespers**).

A person who had a long experience of military service or of any occupation. (**Veteran**).

This cloth is able to keep water out. (**Water-proof**).

An animal that cannot be tamed. (**Wild**).

EXERCISES

(*For* **Board** *Students*)

Substitute appropriate single words for the words given in italics in *five* of the following sentences, rewriting the whole sentence where necessary : (Panjab Inter.)

1. His writing is *such as cannot be read.*
2. Rashid is *too ready to believe anything that is told him.*
3. Some of the representatives are *persons who cannot read or write.*
4. Our Badminton Club has a Secretary *who does not get any salary.*
5. The king formally *renounced the crown* in favour of his eldest son.
6. The argument advanced by the counsel was *off the point.*
7. The plan suggested was *such as could not be put into practice.*

(*For* **University** *Students*)

(*a*) For each of the following italicized phrases substitute a single word of equivalent meaning : (Panjab B.A.)

1. That man who *can use either hand with ease.*
2. Both fell *at the same moment.*
3. He is *unable to pay his debts.*
4. A voice *that can hardly be heard.*
5. A style *that cannot be imitated.*

(*b*) Substitute one word for the expressions in italics : (Panjab B.A. Bsc.)

1. The post *for which no salary is paid.*
2. Your work *goes from bad to worse.*
3. When he arrived they *decorated* the building *with light.*
4. Your writing is *such that it cannot be read.*

CHAPTER XXVII

WORD RELATIONS

1. **Check-up.** The practice in one-word substitution given in the preceding chapter in fact aimed at checking up your knowledge of words. It is far easier to know the general sense of a word than to be able to pick it up when a reference is made to it in a somewhat circuitous way. Here are some more methods of breeding familiarity with words.

2. **Homonyms, Antonyms and Synonyms.** These methods consist in studying the relationship that exists between various words. In the first place there are words which sound alike but differ altogether in their meaning. They are called **homonyms** or namesakes. Then there are words which are the exact opposites of other words in their meaning. They are termed **antonyms** or contraries. Lastly, there are words which differ in form, but are almost identical in their meaning. They are known as **synonyms**.

3. **Crabb's 'Synonyms.'** The last of these categories deserves particular notice because of its importance. The study of synonyms will not yield any tangible results unless we learn to differentiate between the various shades of meaning represented by them. This forms a very interesting study and one should form a life-long habit of pursuing it. There are many books on the subject, but one of the earliest, which has perhaps become a classic by now, can still safely be recommended to the student as being the best. This book is written by George Crabbe and is titled, *English Synonyms Explained in Alphabetical Order with Copious Illustrations and Examples Drawn from the Best Writers.* Compiled in the last century, *Crabb's Synonyms*, as the book is usually known, should still prove very useful.

4. **Grammatical Relation.** The word relations we have so far discussed are based on the affinity or diversity of their sense or sound. There can, however, exist other relations as well. These latter are based on grammar. The same stem or root, we know, may and often does yield us a noun, a verb, an adjective and an adverb. In Chapter XXII we had an occasion to study the affixes which go to form some of these parts of speech. Here we will see copious examples of such grammatical metamorphoses.

☞ 5. **Roget's 'Thesaurus.'** A wonderful compilation listing a large number of words along with all the sense, sound and grammatical relationship referred to above is Peter Mark Roget's *International Thesaurus of English Words and Phrases.* Like Crabb's Synonyms, this book, shortly known as *Roget's Thesaurus,*

has passed into a classic. It is indeed indispensable and, along with one of the Oxford dictionaries, it should be on the shelf of every student of English who is true to his professions.

6. **Homonyms**. Here is a list of words which, though pronounced exactly alike, differ a lot in their meaning. They are called homonyms.

1. Accept, *to agree, to take*; Except, *save, leaving apart.*
2. Access, *approach, entry*; Excess, *superfluity.*
3. Ail, *to be ill*; Ale, *beer.*
4. Air, *the mixture of gases we breathe*; Heir, *one who inherits.*
5. All, *everyone*; Awl, *a sharp tool used by cobblers.*
6. Alter, *to change*; Altar, *place of sacrifice.*
7. Ant, *an insect*; Aunt, *a parent's sister.*
8. Arc, *part of a circle*; Ark, *ship.*
9. Augur, *to foretell*; Auger, *a tool for boring*
10. Aught, *anything*; Ought, *should.*
11. Bad, *not good*; Bade, *ordered.*
12. Bail, *surety*; Bale, *a bundle of goods.*
13. Bait, *a lure*; Bate, *to lessen.*
14. Bald, *without hair*; Bawl'd, *cried out.*
15. Ball, *a round substance*; Bawl, *to cry* out.
16. Bare, *naked*; Bear, *a rough savage animal.*
17. Baize, *a coarse cloth*; Bays, *bay trees, bay horses.*
18. Barren, *not fertile*; Baron, *a peer, a lord.*
19. Base, *mean*; Bass, *music.*
20. Be, *to exist*; Bee, *an insect.*
21. Beach, *the sea shore*; Beech, *a tree.*
22. Bean, *a sort of pulse*; Been, *of the verb to be.*
23. Beat, *to strike*; Beet, *a plant.*
24. Beau, *a fop*; Bow, *to shoot with.*
25. Beer, *malt liquor*; Bier *a frame for the dead.*
26. Bell, *a sounding instrument*; Belle, *a fine lady.*
27. Berry, *species yielding small juicy fruits*; Bury, *to inter*
28. Birth, *being born*; Berth, *a place for sleeping on.*
29. Blew, *did blow*; Blue, *a colour.*
30. Boar, *the male swine*; Bore, *to make a hole*
31. Board, *a thin plank*; Bored, *did bore.*
32. Bold, *courageous, rude*; Bowled, *did bowl.*
33. Bole, *a corn measure*; Boll, *a round stalk or stem*; Bowl, *a large basin.*
34. Bough, *a branch*; Bow, *to bend.*
35. Boy, *a young lad*; Buoy, *an anchor mark.*

36. Braid, *hair twisted*; Brayed, *did bray.*
37. Bread, *food made of ground corn*; Bred, *brought up.*
38. Break, *to smash into pieces*; Brake *apparatus for checking the motion of a vehicle.*
39. Brews, *he breweth*; Bruise, *a hurt.*
40. Bridle, *reins of a horse*; Bridal, *relating to a wedding.*
41. Bruit, *report*; Brute, *a beast.*
42. But, *except, besides*; Butt, *a large cask.*
43. Buy, *to purchase*; By, *near.*
44. Calendar, *register of the year*; Calender, *roller machine for pressing cloth; to press cloth in it.*
45. Call, *to name*; Caul, *net work of a wig.*
46. Can, *am able*; Can, *a jug.*
47. Cannon, *a big gun*; Canon, *rule, law.*
48. Canvas, *a coarse cloth*; Canvass, *to solicit votes.*
49. Caste, *a hereditary class*; Cast, *to throw.*
50. Cede, *to surrender territory*; Seed, *reproductive part of a plant.*
51. Cemetery, *graveyard*; Symmetry, *due proportion.*
52. Cession, *surrender of territory*; Session, *term of work.*
53. Chair, *to sit on*; Char, *work done by the day.*
54. Cheque, *order for drawing money*; Check, *restrain, withhold.*
55. Cite, *to summon*; Sight, *seeing*; Site, *situation.*
56. Clause, *a section*; Claws, *talons.*
57. Climb, *to get up*; Clime, *climate.*
58. Coarse, *not fine*; Course, *race*; Corse, *a carcase or dead body.*
59. Compliment, *polite expression of praise*; Complement, *that which completes.*
60. Cord, *string*; Chord, *straight line bordering an arc.*
61. Core, *heart or the innermost part*; Corps, *a large body of troops.*
62. Council, *deliberative assembly*; Counsel, *advice, pleader(s).*
63. Councillor, *member of a council*; Counsellor, *adviser.*
64. Colonel, *army officer commanding a regiment*; Kernel, *soft part within the hard shell of a nut.*
6 . Courtesy, *politeness*; Curtsy, *women's act of ceremonious deference by bending the knees and lowering the body.*
66 Creak, *to make a harsh noise*; Creek, *a small inlet of the sea.*
67. Dam, *barrier to check flow of water*; Damn, *to condemn.*
68. Dear, *costly*; Deer, *a forest animal.*
69. Dew, *a thin cold vapour*; Due, *owing.*
70. Descent, *lineage, act of descending*; Dissent, *to disagree, disagreement.*

71. Desert, *to forsake* ; Dessert, *fruit taken after dinner.*
72. Dire, *dreadful* ; Dyer, *one who dyes cloth.*
73. Doe, *a female deer* ; Dough, *leaven or paste.*
74. Done, *acted* ; Dun, *a troublesome creditor.*
75. Draft, *a bill* ; Draught, *a drink.*
76. Dual, *twofold* ; Duel, *fight between two persons.*
77. Dye, *to tinge with some colour* ; Die, *to expire.*
78. Emerge, *to come out suddenly* ; Immerge, *to plunge into.*
79. Eminent, *famous* ; Imminent, *impending.*
80. Edition, *publication* ; Addition, *increase.*
81. Exercise, *to practise* ; Exorcise, *to drive away evil spirits.*
82. Fain, *willingly* ; Feign, *to dissemble.*
83. Faint, *languid* ; Feint, *a pretence.*
84. Fair, *beautiful* ; Fare, *diet, hire* ; Fair, *an annual market.*
85. Feat, *an exploit* ; Feet, *parts of the body.*
86. Fellow, *associate* ; Fallow, *untilled.*
87. Fir, *a tree* ; Fur, *soft hair.*
88. Fisher, *one who fishes* ; Fissure, *an opening.*
89. Flea, *an insect* ; Flee, *to run from danger.*
90. Flew, *did fly* ; Flue, *of a chimney.*
91. Flower, *blossom* ; Flour, *ground cereals.*
92. Fore, *front* ; Four, *a number.*
93. Forth, *onward, forward* ; Fourth, *in number.*
94. Foul, *nasty, unclean* ; Fowl, *a bird.*
95. Frays, *quarrells* ; Phrase, *mode of speech.*
96. Freeze, *to congeal* ; Frieze, *a coarse cloth* ; Frees, *sets free.*
97. Gait, *manner of walking* ; Gate, *an entrance.*
98. Gilt, *with gold* ; Guilt, *sin.*
99. Glaire, *white of an egg* ; Glare, *a bright light.*
100. Grate, *fire-place* ; Great, *large.*
101. Groan, *a deep sigh* ; Grown, *increased.*
102. Hail, *frozen rain* ; Hale, *to draw by violence.*
103. Hair, *of the head* ; Hare, *an animal.*
104. Hall, *a large room* ; Haul, *to pull about.*
105. Hart, *male deer* ; Heart, *the seat of life.*
106. Heal, *to cure* ; Heel, *of the foot or shoe.*
107. Hear, *to hearken* ; Here, *in this place.*
108. Heard, *of the verb to hear* ; Herd, *a drove.*
109. Hew, *to cut* ; Hue, *shade of colour* ; Hugh, *a man's name.*
110. Him, *that man* ; Hymn, *a holy song.*
111. Hire, *to take on rent* ; Higher, *of greater altitude.*

112. Hoard. *to store for selling at higher rates* ; Horde. *a marauding tribe.*
113. Hole. *a cavity* ; Whole. *not impaired.*
114. Holy. *sacred* ; Wholly. *entirely.*
115. Hoop. *for a cask* ; Whoop. *to shout.*
116. I. *myself* ; Eye. *the organ of sight.*
117. Aisle. *of a church* ; Isle. *an island.*
118. Idle. *lazy* ; Idol. *an image for worship.*
119. In. *within* ; Inn. *a house of entertainment.*
120. Key. *for a lock* ; Quay. *to land goods on.*
121. Kill. *to deprive of life* ; Kiln. *for drying corn.*
122. Knap. *the down on cloth* ; Nap. *short sleep.*
123. Knave. *a rogue* ; Nave. *of a wheel.*
124. Knead. *to work dough* ; Need *poverty.*
125. Knew. *did know* ; New. *not old.*
126. Knight. *a title of honour* ; Night. *time of darkness.*
127. Know. *to understand* ; No. *not so.*
128. Knows. *he knoweth* ; Nose. *of the face.*
129. Lade. *to load* ; Laid. *placed.*
130. Layer. *surface* ; Lair *den.*
131. Lead. *a metal* ; Led. *did lead.*
132. Leak. *to let out* ; Leek. *an herb.*
133. Lesson. *instruction* ; Lessen. *to make less.*
134. Lightning. *flash* ; Lightening. *making light.*
135. Lo. *behold* ; Low. *humble.*
136. Loan. *something lent* ; Lone. *solitary.*
137. Made. *did make* ; Maid. *a woman servant.*
138. Mail. *armour, bag of postal letters* ; Male. *masculine.*
139. Main. *principal, chief* ; Mane. *of a horse.*
140. Mare. *female of horse* ; Mayor. *chief of a municipal corporation.*
141. Meat. *flesh, food in general* ; Meet. *fit, proper* ; Mete. *to measure.*
142. Medal. *coin bearing some sign* ; Meddle. *to interfere.*
143. Minor. *one who is not yet of age* ; Miner. *one who works in a mine.*
144. Mite. *an insect* ; Might. *power.*
145. Moan. *to lament* ; Mown. *cut down.*
146. Moat. *ditch round a castle* ; Mote *small particle.*
147. Muse. *to think* ; Mews. *inclosures* ; *seagulls.*
148. Naughty. *badly beheaved* ; Knotty. *having knots* ; *complicated.*
149. Nay *no* ; Neigh. *the voice of a horse.*

150. None, *no one* ; Nun, *female counterpart af a monk.*
151. Not, *not so* ; Knot, *a fastening* ; Nought, *nothing.*
152. Oar, *of a boat* ; O'er, *over* ; Ore, *unwrought metal.*
153. Of, *concerning* ; Off, *from.*
154. One, *in number* ; Won, *of the verb to win.*
155. Pail, *a vessel for water* ; Pale, *whitish.*
156. Pain, *torment* ; Pane, *a square of glass.*
157. Pair, *a couple* ; Pare, *to cut* ; Pear, *a fruit.*
158. Pause, *a stop* ; Paws, *a beast's feet.*
159. Peace, *quietness* ; Piece, *a part.*
160. Peal, *sounds of bells* ; Peel, *rind of fruit.*
161. Peer, *a nobleman* ; Pier, *the column or support of an arch.*
162. Place, *situation* ; Plaice, *a flat fish.*
163. Plain, *clear, evident* ; Plane, *a flat surface.*
164. Plait *a fold* ; Plate, *wrought silver.*
165. Pole, *a long stick* ; Poll, *the head.*
166. Populace, *people* ; Populous, *thickly populated.*
167. Pour, *to cause to flow* ; Pore, *minute opening in skin.*
168. Praise, *commendation* ; Prays, *beseeches* ; Preys, *seizes, plunders.*
169. Pray, *to beseech* ; Prey, *victim.*
170. Pries, *searches into* ; Prize, *a gift.*
171. Rain, *water* ; Reign, *to rule* ; Rein, *of a bridle.*
172. Raise, *to lift* ; Rays *of the sun* ; Raze, *to demolish.*
173. Rap, *a knock* ; Wrap, *to fold up.*
174. Read, *of the verb to read* ; Red, *a colour.*
175. Rear, *the back part* ; Rare, *uncommon.*
176. Rest, *ease* ; Wrest, *to force.*
177. Right, *correct* ; Rite, *a tenet* ; Wright, *a workman* ; Write, *with a pen.*
178. Ring, *for the finger* ; Wring, *to twist.*
179. Road, *the highway* ; Rode, *did ride* ; Rowed, *did row.*
180. Roe, *of a fish* ; Row, *a rank.*
181. Role, *character* ; Roll, *to turn over.*
182. Root, *part of a plant which attaches it to the earth* ; Route, *way taken in going to a place.*
183. Rote, *by heart* ; Wrote, *did write.*
184. Rough, *uneven, unpolished* ; Ruff, *for the neck.*
185. Rye, *corn* ; Wry, *crooked.*
186. Sail, *of a ship* ; Sale, *selling*
187. Scene, *of a stage* ; Seen, *beheld.*
188. Sea, *the ocean* ; See, *to observe.*

189. Sees, *he beholds* ; Seize, *to catch hold* ; Cease, *to stop.*
190. Seem, *to appear* ; Seam, *line of junction between two edges.*
191. Sent, *did send* ; Scent, *a smell* ; Cent, *a hundred.*
192. Serge, *a kind of woollen cloth* ; Surge, *wave* ; *to swell.*
193. Sheer, *downright* ; Shear, *to clip fleece.*
194. Sign, *a token* ; Sine, *a line in geometry.*
195. Sloe, a wild fruit ; Slow, *tardy.*
196. So, *thus* ; Sow, *to sow seed* ; Sew, *with a needle.*
197. Soar, *to rise high* ; Sore, *a diseased part.*
198. Sole, *of a shoe or foot, alone* ; Soul, *spirit.*
199. Some, *a part of* ; Sum, *an amount of money.*
200. Son, *a male child* ; Sun, *the luminary that makes the day.*
201. Stare, *to look earnestly* ; Stair, *a step.*
202. Stationary, *not moving* ; Stationery, *writing material.*
203. Stayed, *stopped* ; Staid, *sober demeanour.*
204. Steal, *to thieve* ; Steel, *refined iron.*
205. Stile, *steps in a field* ; Style, *manner.*
206. Story, *tale* ; Storey, *a stage of a building.*
207. Straight, *not crooked* ; Strait, *narrow.*
208. Suit, *a set of clothes stitched from the same cloth* ; Suite, *set of rooms, retinue.*
209. Tacks, *small nails* ; Tax, *a rate.*
210. Tail, *of an animal* ; Tale, *a story.*
211. Tare, *an allowance in* ; Tear, *to rend.*
212. Team, *of horses* ; Teem, *to abound.*
213. Their, *of them* ; There, *in that place.*
214. Threw, *did throw* ; Through, *quite through.*
215. Throne, *a seat of state* ; Thrown, *hurled.*
216. Tier, *a row of guns* ; Tear, *from the eye.*
217. Told, *related* ; Toll'd, *did toll.*
218. To, *unto* ; Too, *also* ; Two, *in number.*
219. Toe, *of the foot* ; Tow, *to drag along.*
220. Treatise, *written discourse* ; Treaties, *formal agreements.*
221. Vain, *conceited* ; Vein, *a blood vessel.*
222. Vale, *a valley* ; Veil, *a covering.*
223. Wade, *to walk through water* ; Weighed, *in a scale.*
224. Wale, *a rising part* ; Whale, *the largest of all fish.*
225. Ware, *merchandise* ; Wear, *to have on.*
226. Waste, *to squander* ; Waist, *middle of the body.*
227. Wave, *billow* ; Waive, *to set aside, reject.*
228. Way, *a road, passage* ; Weigh, *to poise, to judge.*
229. Weak, *feeble, unfortified* ; Week, *seven days.*

230. Wean, *to snatch from mother's breast* ; Ween, *to think*.
231. Weight, *heaviness* ; Wait, *to stay*.
232. Wood, *timber* ; Would, *was willing*.
233. Yew, *a tree* ; You, *yourself* ; Ewe, *a female sheep*.

7. **Heteronyms**. The opposite of *homonym* is *heteronym*. The term signifies words spelt exactly alike but differing a lot from each other in their sound and in the sense conveyed by them. Such words are generally derived from different sources but have fortuitously come to be spelt alike. Here are some examples

Word	Pronunciation	Meaning
(*i*) (*a*) Bow	boh	Weapon for shooting arrows.
(*b*) Bow	bow	To bend down.
(*ii*) (*a*) Row	roh	To propel a boat.
(*b*) Row	row	Dispute, disturbance.
(*iii*) (*a*) Slough	sluff	The cast skin of a serpent.
(*b*) Slough	slow	Marsh

8. **Antonyms**. The following is a list of antonyms or words of opposite meaning. They are arranged in groups each of which represents a distinct part of speech.

(*a*) **Nouns**

attack	*defence*
ancestor	*descendant*
abundance	*dearth*
analysis	*synthesis*
aristocracy	*democracy*
affluence	*penury*
anterior	*posterior*
arrival	*departure*
benefactor	*malefactor*
benevolence	*malevolence*
belief	*doubt*
bravery	*cowardice*
body	*soul*
civility	*rudeness*
concord	*discord*
country	*town*
debtor	*creditor*
debit	*credit*
day	*night*
ebb	*flow*
economy	*prodigality*
elevation	*depression*
freedom	*slavery*
fame	*infamy*
giant	*dwarf*
gain	*loss*
glory	*shame*
hope	*despair*
humanity	*brutality*
head	*tail*
heaven	*hell*
import	*export*
ingress	*egress*
interior	*exterior*
knowledge	*ignorance*
majority	*minority*
maximum	*minimum*
mistress	*maid*
miser	*spendthrift*
master	*servant*
monarchy	*anarchy*
motion	*rest*

night	*day*	smile	*frown*
optimist	*pessimist*	synonym	*antonym*
orthodoxy	*heterodoxy*	simplicity	*duplicity*
pleasure	*pain*	sea	*land*
presence	*absence*	tragedy	*comedy*
plenty	*scarcity*	truth	*fiction, falsehood*
pride	*humility*		
prosperity	*adversity*	top	*bottom*
poetry	*prose*	temporary	*permanent*
plaintiff	*defendant*	universal	*particular*
rear	*van*	use	*abuse*
rigour	*leniency*	victory	*defeat*
reward	*punishment*	weal	*woe*
recovery	*relapse*	war	*peace*
sympathy	*antipathy*	youth	*age*

(*b*) **Adjectives**

active	*passive*	general	*particular*
ancient	*modern*	guilty	*innocent*
attractive	*repulsive*	grave	*cheerful*
barren	*fertile*	great	*small*
beautiful	*ugly*	hard	*soft*
civilized	*savage*	hot	*cold*
confident	*diffident*	indigenous	*outlandish*
clever	*stupid*	intentional	*accidental*
clean	*dirty*	important	*trivial*
cheap	*dear*	loud	*low*
convex	*concave*	loquacious	*taciturn*
cheerful	*gloomy*	masculine	*feminine*
difficult	*easy*	material	*spiritual*
domestic	*wild*	moral	*physical*
dense	*rare*	natural	*artificial*
deep	*shallow*	native	*foreign*
deficient	*proficient*	offensive	*defensive*
economical	*extravagant*	odd	*even*
explicit	*implicit*	progressive	*retrograde*
early	*late*	public	*private*
friendly	*hostile*	rash	*deliberate*
faithful	*treacherous*	religious	*secular*
full	*empty*	rich	*poor*
far	*near*	rough	*smooth*
fat	*thin*	round	*flat*

sacred	*profane*
simple	*artful*
singular	*plural*
slow	*prompt*
sober	*drunk*
solid	*hollow*
stern	*mild*
strict	*lenient*
superior	*inferior*
sublime	*ridiculous*
straight	*crooked*
temporary	*permanent*
transparent	*opaque*
temporal	*spiritual*
thick	*thin*
uniform	*varied*
vulgar	*refined*
voluntary	*compulsory*
vertical	*horizontal*
vigorous	*feeble*
written	*verbal*
wild	*tame*
wise	*foolish*
warm	*cool*
wide	*narrow*

(c) Verbs

accept	*reject*
ascend	*descend*
agree	*differ*
advance	*retreat*
affirm	*deny*
allow	*forbid*
arrive	*depart*
assemble	*disperse*
begin	*end*
believe	*disbelieve*
conceal	*reveal*
create	*destroy*
discharge	*convict*
enthrone	*dethrone*
enrich	*impoverish*
expose	*conceal*
gather	*scatter*
go	*come*
help	*hinder*
hide	*seek*
hurt	*heal*
insert	*extract*
inhale	*exhale*
include	*exclude*
invest	*divest*
lend	*borrow*
lead	*follow*
laugh	*weep*
offer	*refuse*
open	*shut*
omit	*insert*
recognise	*ignore*
resist	*submit*
rise	*fall, set*
remember	*forget*
smile	*sigh* or *frown*
sleep	*wake*
sink	*swim*
teach	*learn*
wax	*wane*
wake	*sleep*

(*d*) Adverbs

at home	*abroad*	often	*seldom*
above	*below*		

Antonyms can also be formed by the use of proper prefixes. Here are examples.

appear	*disappear*	literate	*illiterate*
arm	*disarm*	noble	*ignoble*
associate	*dissociate*	pious	*impious*
believe	*disbelieve*	polite	*impolite*
close	*disclose*	pure	*impure*
continue	*discontinue*	regular	*irregular*
honour	*dishonour*	rational	*irrational*
join	*disjoin*	legal	*illegal*
merit	*demerit*	fold	*unfold*
mount	*dismount*	fortunate	*unfortunate*
obey	*disobey*	kind	*unkind*
please	*displease*	lock	*unlock*
attentive	*inattentive*	tie	*untie*
firm	*infirm*	truth	*untruth*
limitable	*illimitable*	safe	*unsafe*

9. Synonyms. Here is a list of some synonymous words of every-day use. They are groups of words which agree in general sense but differ in their application. The words themselves are printed in Roman type and suggestions pointing out the distinction between them are printed in italics.

1. Abandon *iniquity*; Leave *England*; Forsake *in resentment or neglect*; Relinquish *a claim*; Desert *treacherously*; Quit *business*; Abdicate *a throne*; Renounce *error*; Resign *an office*.
2. Abase *to a lower state*; Degrade *from higher rank*; Disgrace *from decent company*; Humble, *to cause to repent*; Humiliate. *to make one resent the implication of superiority*.
3. Abate *in eagerness*; Diminish *in number*; Decrease *in quantity*; Lessen *in value*; Relax *in industry*; Impair *in vigour or intellect*.
4. Abhor *a crime*; Hate *affectation*; Detest *treachery, meanness*; Loathe *food*.
5. Abolish *customs*; Disannul *a contract*; Abrogate *a law*; Revoke *a promise*; Repeal *a statute*.
6. Accept *services*; Take *money*; Receive *favours*.
7. Accost *a person*; Approach *a place*.
8. Acquiesce *under authority*; be Resigned *from a sense of duty*; Agree *in disposition or opinion*; Consent, *by persuasion*.

9. Augment *in number* ; Add *together.*
10. Adjust *matters* ; Reconcile *animosities.*
11. Affirm *a position* ; Assert *a right or opinion* ; Aver *a sentiment* ; Attest *in evidence* ; Declare *openly* ; Swear, *by oath* ; Avouch, *from positive knowledge* ; Protest, *from conscience* ; Maintain *by argument.*
12. To Fear *God* ; To Dread *punishment.*
13. To be Apprehensive *of loss* ; Afraid *of danger.*
14. Ask *a favour* ; Inquire *for information* ; Interrogate, *examine by questions.*
15. Assist *those in want* ; Help *in labour* ; Relieve *in distress* ; Succour *in danger.*
16. Avoid *disputes* ; Shun *bad company* ; Fly *from danger.*
17. Awake *from sleep* ; Awaken *curiosity.*
18. Abilities, *mental powers* ; Ingenuity *of invention* ; Cleverness *to perform* ; Parts, *natural talents.*
19. Sagacity *to discern* ; Capacity *to grasp*; Acuteness to *distinguish* ; Subtlety *to refine* ; Ability *to execute* ; Capacity *to comprehend* ;
20. Abject *in thought or resolution* ; Mean, *as wanting generosity* ; Low *in situation* ; Beggarly *in circumstances*
21. A Learned *lawyer* ; A Skilful *physician* ; A Profound *scholar* ; An Acute *reasoner* ; A Judicious *historian* ; A Subtle *sophist* ; An Enlightened *philosopher.*
22. Abstemiousness *in eating or drinking* ; Temperance, *moderation in all pleasures* ; Sobriety, *self-government and serious discipline of the soul.*
23. Absent *in company from inadvertency* ; Inatttentive *from indolence or indifference.*
24. Absurd, *ridiculously opposite to reason* ; Unreasonable *in one's request* ; Inconsistent, *contradictory.*
25. Abundance, *overflowing plenty* ; Competency, *adequate sufficiency.*
26. Abuse, *scurrilous language* ; Affront, *wilful rudeness* ; Insult *by scornful reproof.*
27. Acid, *sour, sharp*; Poignant, *keen, piercing* ; Sour, *sullen, morose* ; Caustic, *acrimoniously severe and cutting* ; Sharp, *quick at repartee.*
28. Acknowledgment *of mistake* ; Confession *of guilt.*
29. Acquainted, *by a slight knowledge of* ; Familiar, *by long habit* ; Intimate, *closely connected with.*
30. Act, *action, deed* ; Exploit, *successful exertion* ; Action, *the performance of anything* ; Deed, *anything performed.*
31. Address, *mode of behaviour, manner of conversation* ; Air,

quality of appearance; Mien, *expression of countenance*; Behaviour, *conduct in company*; Deportment, *external demeanour*; Manners, *general habits*; Carriage *of the body*.

32. Adjacent, *lying near to*; Contiguous, *close adjoining*.
33. Administration *of justice*; Management *of public concerns*; Conduct *of business*; Government *of the country*; Direction, *order with instruction*.
34. Admonition *to reprove*; Advice *of a friend*; Counsel, *deliberate instruction*.
35. Advantageous, *subservient to our temporal interest*; Profitable, *conducive to our general welfare*; Beneficial, *useful in any respect*.
36. Affairs, *circumstances or transactions in general*; Business, *particular employment*.
37. Agreeable *conversation*; Pleasing *address*.
38. Agreement, *in verbal promise*; Contract, *in written testimony* Bargain, *in relation to sale*.
39. Aim, *endeavour*; View, *object proposed*; Design, *intention*.
40. All *men*; Every *man*.
41. Allurements *to entice*; Attractions *to engage*; Charms *to fascinate*.
42. Alone, *in solitude*; Only, *one*.
43. Also, *in addition*; Likewise, *in comparison*.
44. Always : *God is* always *present*. Ever : *Man is* ever *regardless*. Continually : *Death approaches* continually. Perpetually : *The good shall rejoice* perpetually.
45. Amazed *at what is marvellous*; Astonished *at what is grand*; Surprised *at what is unexpected*; Consternation. *Struck with* consternation *at scenes of horror*.
46. Ambiguity, *uncertainty of signification*; Equivocation, *intentional duplicity*.
47. Amusement *in reading*; Diversion *in playing*.
48. Ancient *date*; Old *age*; Antique *piece of art*.
49. Angry, *resenting a provocation*; In a Passion, *actually irritated*; Passionate, *very apt to be irritated*; Choleric, *surly and ill-tempered*.
50. Apartment *to dwell in*; Chamber *to sleep in*; Room *of a house*.
51. Apartments, *suite of rooms*; Lodgings, *hired apartments*.
52. Apparition, *to the senses*; Vision, *of the imagination*.
53. Arrogance, *undue self-importance*; Pride *of heart*; Vanity, *silly affectation*; Haughtiness *of behaviour*; Presumption, *arrogance*.
54. Artifice *to deceive*; Stratagem *to disguise*; Trick *to elude*; Device, *contrivance*; Cunning, *crafty*.

55. Ashamed of *our faults* ; Bashful *when spoken to.*
56. Assiduous, *diligently employed in business* ; Expeditious *in our business* ; Quick *in our motions.*
57. Attachment, *from esteem* ; Passion, *vehement love* ; Devoted to, *from reverence or affection.*
58. Audacity, *impudence* ; Effrontery, *shamelessness* ; Impudence, *vulgar sauciness* ; Boldness, *undaunted courage.*
59. Austerity *of living* ; Severity *of thinking* ; Rigour *of punishing.*
60. Authority *of a Governor* ; Jurisdiction *of a Magistrate* ; Dominion *of a Prince.*
61. Avaricious, *unwilling to part with money* ; Covetous, *eager to obtain it* ; Niggardly, *mean, saving.*
62. To Be *healthy* ; To Exist, *and not be only imaginary*; To Subsist, *continue still.*
63. To Beat *for a long time* ; To Strike *a blow.*
64. To Behold *with attention*; To Look at *a distant object* ; To View *with exactness* ; To See *distinctly.*
65. To Bid, *invite* ; To Order, *command.*
66. To Bind *the hands* ; To Tie *him to a stake.*
67. To bring *what one has with him* ; To Fetch *what he is sent for* ;
68. Bad *not good* ; Vile, *base, hateful.*
69. Battle, *a general engagement* ; Combat, *between two persons* ; Fight *to conquer.*
70. Beautiful *woman* ; Handsome *house* ; Pretty *cottage.*
71. Banediction *of the priest* ; Blessing *of God.*
72. Beneficince, *actual goodness*; Benevolence, *the desire of doing good.*
73. Bias, *partiality* ; Inclination *to aid the unfortunate* ; Propensity *to vice.*
74. Big, *in bulk* ; Large, *in extent* ; Great, *exalted.*
75. Bliss, *eternal* ; Happiness, *high prosperity*; Felicity, *exalted state of happiness.*
76. Boggy *quagmires* ; Marshy *lands.*
77. Bounds *of moderation* ; Limits *of a kingdom* ; Confines *of the grave.*
78. Bounty, *in acts of giving* ; Generosity, *in acts of greatness* ; Liberality, *in candid sentiment.*
79. Bravery, *in battle to face danger* ; Courage, *to make us advance* ; Intrepidity, *coolly daring certain danger* ; Resolution, *steady firmness.*
80. Brighrness *of the moon* ; Light *of the stars* ; Splendour *of the sun.*

81. Brilliancy *dazzles* ; Radiancy *glitters* ; Lustre *shines*.
82. Broad *cloth* ; Wide *room*.
83. Brook, *a small stream* ; Rivulet, *between banks* ; Stream, *a running water*.
84. Burden *of sticks, &c.* ; Load *of hay*.
85. Buttress, *a suport laterally* ; Prop, *a vertical support* ; Support, *to prevent falling*.
86. To Call *for help* ; To Name, *to distinguish*.
87. To Cease *from labour*; To Finish *his business* ; To Leave off *work*.
88. To Chastise *a child* ; To Punish *a malefactor* ; To Discipline *a regiment* ; To Correct, *for amendment*.
89. To Elect *a candidate* ; To Make choice *of wife* ; To Choose *what pleases us* ; To Prefer *what pleases us best*.
90. To Compel, *by authority* ; To Constrain, *by fear* ; To Oblige, *by necessity* ; To Force, *by strength*.
91. To Complete *a piece of mechanism* ; To Conclude *an oration*; To End *a journey* ; To Finish *any undertaking*.
92. To Comprehend *sciences* ; To Understand *languages* ; To Conceive, *To imagine*.
93. To Conceal *our designs*; To Dissemble *our thoughts*; To Disguise *our intentions*.
94. To Concern *our interests* ; To Touch *our feelings*.
95. To Conduct *an affair* ; To Lead *an infant* ; To Guide *a traveller*.
96. To Conquer *our enemies* ; To Subdue *our passions* ; To Overcome *any obstacle*.
97. To Cry *like children* ; To Weep *like grown persons*.
98. Calamity, *deep distress* ; Misfortune, *loss of friends, &c.* ; Disaster, *deplorable incident*.
99. Cannot, *personal inability*; Impossible, *not in nature practicable*.
100. Care, *thought* ; Caution, *in acting warily* ; Discretion, *in governing or directing* ; Prudence, *in applying wisdom to practice*.
101. Case, *particular situation* ; Circumstance, *accidental* ; conjuncture, *concurrence of things* ; Occasion, *opportunity or exigency* ; Occurrence, *an event or incident*.
102. A Cave *is dug* ; A Cell *is built*.
103. Celebrated *for his abilities* ; Famous *for his great exploits* ; Renowned *in history* ; Illustrious *family*.
104. Chance, *accident* ; Fortune, *events of war*.
105. Change *our dress* ; Vary *our opinions* ; Alter *our manner of living*.
106. Changeable *in appearance* ; Inconstant *in resolution* ; Fickle *in his attachments* ; Unsteady *in his pursuits*.

107. Charm, *fascinating influence* ; Enchantment, *preternatura control* ; Spell, *power of magic or witchcraft.*
108. Charm *of virtue* ; Graces *of a Christian spirit.*
109. Chief *commander* ; Head *boy.*
110. Choked *by eating too greedily* ; Suffocated *by smoke* ; Smothered *by violence.*
111. Circumspection *in speaking to strangers* ; Regard *to truth* ; Consideration *for people of ability*
112. Clearness, *distinctness of ideas* ; Precision, *accuracy of langu e.*
113. Clothes *which cover the body* ; Dress *which makes us gay* ; Hence *usually of women.*
114. Clock *strikes the hour* ; Dial *shows it.*
115. Clownish, *from want of education* ; Impolite, *owing to a bad one.*
116. Colours *of a regiment* ; Flag *of a ship.*
117. Commerce *with other nations* ; Trade *among ourselves* ; Traffic, *exchange of merchandice.*
118. Compassion, *general concern for all who are wretched* ; Commiseration, *joining in the sorrows of others* ; Pity *the distress of another* ; *sometimes used in contempt.*
119. Complaisant *in address* ; Gallant *lover* ; Polite *courtier* ; Well-bred *gentleman.*
120. Complete *design* ; Perfect *beauty* ; Finished *workmanship.*
121. Complete, *in wanting nothing* ; Entire, *in not being broken.*
122. Complicated *affairs* ; Involved *in much misery.*
123. Conclusion, *the close* ; Sequel, *the succeeding part.*
124. Condition *of a thing* ; State *of health* ; Situation *of affairs.*
125. Constancy *in affection* ; Resolution *against obstacles or dangers* ; Steadiness *in continuance.*
126. Content *of mind* ; Satisfaction *in obtaining what we desired.*
127. Contented *in our station* ; Satisfied *with our possessions.*
128. Continual *noise* ; Continued *stream.*
129. Continuance *in any office* ; Continuation *of the same subject.*
130. Conversation *on general subjects* ; Discourse *on any particular topic.*
131. Copy *of a writing or painting* ; Model *of a building.*
132. A coward *is unwilling to face danger* ; Poltroon *will basely avoid it.*
133. Crime *against the laws* ; Vice *against morality* ; Sin *against religion.*
134. Crooked *tree* ; Deformed *in shape* ; Hump-backed, *by a local protuberance.*
135. Cure *is performed* ; Remedy *is procured.*
136. Current *of air* ; Stream *of light.*

137. Customs, *the general practice of the people* ; Manners, *their way of life* ; Fashions *of their dresses.*
138. To Detain *what he has taken* ; To Keep *what he possesses.*
139. To Disclose *intrigues*; To Reveal *something unknown*; To Divulge *a secret* ; To Tell *for information.*
140. To Disguise, *by false appearance* ; To Mask, *to hide.*
141. To Disperse, *separate* ; To Scatter *loosely.*
142. To Dwell *in a large house* ; To Live *in London.*
143. Danger, *real appearance of mischief* ; Hazard, *fortuitous loss* ; Risk, *exposure, to misfortune* ; Venture, *trial for loss or gain.*
144. Darkness, *want of light* ; Obscurity, *indistinctness.*
145. Death, *extinction of life*; Decease, *a law termd, signifying death*; Departure *from one life to another.*
146. Defamation, *false report* ; Detraction *from deserved good fame.*
147. Defect *of character* ; Imperfection *of human nature* ; Fault *of the workmen.*
148. Dejected, *sad from apprehension* ; Dull, *stupid, heavy* ; Low-spirited *from bodily infirmity* ; Melancholy *from disappointment of sorrow.*
149. Delicate, *not vulgar* ; Fine, *excellent.*
150. A Delicate *compliment* ; A Fine *poem.*
151. Delight *in doing good* ; Pleasure, *gratification of the senses.*
152. Derision, *sportive insult* ; Ridicule, *contemptuous merriment.*
153. Design *is the soul of action* ; Intention *is the effect of reflection.*
154. Design, *what we propose to execute* ; Project, *often chimerical.*
155. Destiny *ordains* ; Lot *decides.*
156. Determination, *of a point* ; Resolution, *of a difficulty.*
157. Detriment *implies loss of property* ; Harm, *a small degree of hurt* ; Injury, *malignant wrong* ; Hurt, *a great degree of harm (generally applied to bodily pain)* ; Mischief, *much damage.*
158. Devotion, *fervent prayer* ; Religion, *faith and worship* ; Piety, *to set God always before us.*
159. Difference, *we make up the* difference ; Dispute, *we end the* dispute ; Quarrel, *we appease the* quarrel.
160. Discerning *(sensible) mind* ; Knowing *(cunning) man.*
161. Discernment, *to distinguish* ; Judgment, *to compare.*
162. Discovery *of the properties of the magnet*; Invention *of the art of printing.*
163. Disdain *of others'*; Haughtiness, *self-importance.*
164. Sickness *is called indisposition* ; Disease *in man* ; Distemper *in brutes.*
165. Disgraceful, *as an object of reproach* ; Scandalous, *as giving public offence.*

166. Ditch, *usual boundary of a field* ; Trench, *for carrying off the water.*
167. Diversity *of colours* ; Varietv *of amusements.*
168. Divinition *brings to light* ; Prediction *foretells.*
169. Doubt *requires consideration* ; Uncertainty, *caution* ; Suspense, *patience.*
170. Dregs *of wine* ; Sediment *of water.*
171. Duty, *that which ought to be done* ; Obligation, *that which binds us to do it* ; Duty *of life* ; Obligation *of conscience.*
172. To Found *a hospital* ; To Endow, *give property for its support* ; To Institute *a law* ; To Establish *on a lasting basis.*
173. To Enlarge *a town* ; To Increase *our expenses.*
174. To Excel *all others* ; To Be Excellent, *but not exclusively so.*
175. To Expect, *with little doubt* ; To Hope, *but not so certainly.*
176. To Extol *human ability* ; To Praise *human conduct.*
177. Easy *to perform* ; Ready *to come at.*
178. Effectual *stop* ; Efficacious *remedy.*
179. Effigy, *representation by picture or sculpture.*
180. Image, *molten or graven* ; Statue, *resemblance effected by the chisel.*
181. Effort *attempt* ; Endeavour, *a striving to accomplish.*
182. Elegant *implies superior taste* ; Genteel, *above the vulgar.*
183. Emolument *of office* ; Gain *of trade* ; Lucre, *dishonourable gain* ; Profit *of labour.*
184. End *of life* ; Extremity *of a kingdom.*
185. Enormous *crime* ; Immense *expanse* ; Huge *giant* ; Vast *tract of land.*
186. Enough *to have* ; Sufficient *to employ.*
187. Epistle *of St. Paul* ; Letter *of correspondence.*
188. Erudition, *depth of knowledge* ; Literature, *polite instruction* ; Learning, *school instruction.*
189. Esteem *him who does good* ; Regard *a quiet neighbour*, Veneration *for his eminent qualities* ; Respect *to his rank and dignity.*
190. Excuse *a fault* ; Pardon *an offence* ; Forgive *an injury.*
191. Experiment, *to prove* ; Trial, *to choose* ; Proof, *the effect of experiment.*
192. Faded, *decayed in brilliancy of colour* ; Withered, *shrivelled by the loss of juices.*
193. To Find *what we sought after* ; Meet with *things unsought for.*
194. To Feel *a blow* ; To Handle *a staff.*
195. **Falsehood, *a civil term of reprobation applied to an untruth;* Lie, *an uncivil and vulgar one.***

196. Fashion, *shape, pattern*; Figure, *carved or painted*; Form, *outline*.
197. Fatigued *with walking*; Wearied *with standing*; Tired *with success*.
198. Fervency *of mind*; Warmth *of devotion*.
199. Flat, *deficient in spirit*; Insipid, *tasteless*.
200. Frankness, *without disguise*; Plainness, *without dissimulation*; Ingenuousness, *artlessness*; Sincerity, *without deceit*.
201. Frequently, *many times*; Often, *still more frequently*.
202. To give *to our servants*; Present *to princes*; Offer *to God*.
203. Gaiety, *lightness of spirit*; Joy, *of the heart*; Mirth, *excited by humour*.
204. Gallantry, *complimentary attention to the ladies*; Love, *affection founded on esteem*.
205. General, *most men*; Universal, *all mankind*.
206. Genius *for poetry*; Talent *for speaking*.
207. Gentle, *animals gentle from nature*; Tame, *made so by discipline*.
208. Glory *to God*; Honour *to good men*.
209. Good fortune *is the effect of chance*; Prosperity *is the success of conduct*.
210. Good-humour, *cheerful, pleasing manner*; Good-nature, *a disposition to promote the good of others*.
211. Grave, *through unpleasant events*; Serious, *from reflection*.
212. Great *knowledge*; Sublime *expressions*.
213. To Hanker after, *desire without great eagerness*; To Wish *for things at a distance or not*; To Long for *with great desire*; To Lust after *with unjustifiable desires*.
214. To Have *an estate*; To Possess *riches*.
215. Hasty *in his actions*; Passionate *in his words*.
216. Headstrong, *not to be advised*; Obstinate, *unconvinced*; Opinionated *in his notions*; Prepossessed *in his affections*; Infatuated, *foolishly misled*.
217. However, *he was an excellent author*; Nevertheless, *he was a bad speaker*; Yet *he acquired fame*; In the meanwhile *he lost esteem*.
218. To Instruct *in science*; Learn *an animal to play tricks*; Teach *to read*.
219. Imagination, *brilliant* imagination; Notion, *singular* notion.
220. Immediately, *without delay*; Instantly, *without intervention of time*; Presently, *soon after*; Now, *at the very instant*.
221. Impediment *stays*; Obstacle *resists*; Obstruction *puts an entire stop to*.
222. Impertinent *implies intrusion*; Impudent, *want of modesty* Saucy, *pert familiarity*.

223. Indigence, *a situation in which the necessaries of life are scantily supplied* ; Poverty, *where its conveniences are [wanting]* ; Need, *pressing urgency* ; Want, *scarcity* ; Necessity, *accidental but urgent want.*
224. Indolent, *averse to exertion* ; Lazy, *averse to labour.*
225. Ineffectual, *unable to complete* ; In vain, *useless* ; To no purpose, *having wholly failed.*
226. Joining *of streams* ; Union *of families or states.*
227. Justice, *by authority* ; Right *of disposal.*
228. To Learn *to read* ; To Study *science.*
229. Level *country* ; Smooth *marble.*
230. Little *man* ; Small *twig.*
231. Lover, *professed suitor to a lady* ; In Love, *truly loving her.*
232. Luxury, *love of pleasure, extravagant indulgence* ; Voluptuousness, *sensual gratification.*
233. To Manifest, *to show openly* ; To Publish *to the world* ; To Proclaim *it to all men.*
234. To Muse *deeply, intensely* ; Think, *to consider of anything* ; Study, *to acquire learning.*
235. Methodical *in our affairs* ; Regular *in our conduct.*
236. Modest *in our dress* ; Reserved *in our words and actions.*
237. Near *relation* ; Nigh *the brink.*
238. It is Necessary, *not to be neglected* ; We Ought, *it is our duty* ; Should, *it is proper.*
239. New *clothes* ; Fresh *butter* ; Recent *events.*
240. No, *he has* no *patience at all* ; Not, *he has* not *enough.*
241. To Observe *what is doing* ; To Remark *what he said.*
242. Opinion, *a favourable* opinion *of* ; Sentiment, *a just* sentiment ; Thought, *a chimerical* thought.
243. To Permit *by consent* ; To Suffer *abuse* ; To Tolerate *evil* ;
244. Peace *among the nations* ; Quiet *family* ; Tranquil *mind.*
245. Prerogative *of a ruler* ; Privilege *of a subject.*
246. Prospect, *a confined* prospect ; View, *an extensive* view.
247. Qualities, *good or bad* ; Talents, *abilities.*
248. To Restore *what we have taken* ; Return *what has been lent us* ; Surrender *what we have in trust.*
249. Riot *of a mob* ; Uproar *of a drunken man* ; Tumult *of the people.*
250. Road, *the beaten way of travellers* ; Way, *the passage from place to place.*
251. Robust *constitution* ; Stout *make.*
252. To Reprimand *a child* ; To Reprove *a friend* ; To Check *a servant.*
253. The Rogue *steals in secret* ; The Sharper *steals by finesse* ; The Thief *steals by every method.*

254. To Shake *with cold* ; Tremble *with fear*.
255. Servitude *of a hired servant* ; Slavery *of the negroes*.
256. Sociable *qualities* ; Social *virtues*.
257. Value, *price* ; Worth, *desert*.

10. **Clarity** and **Variety**. Synonyms serve the dual purpose of lending clarity of thought and variety of meaning to a piece of writing. An example of both these functions is provided by the various synonyms of the verb **say** in its various tenses. This word is so often repeated in works of fiction that unless some substitute for it is occasionally used, the dialogue will lose all its point owing to monotony. Thus synonyms for **say** will give variety and colour to the piece of writing. And it will also give it a clarity of meaning and vividness of expression, because the synonyms replacing **say** will be more definitive.

Say is used sometimes in the *affirmative* and at other times in the *negative* sense. It may lead to a *positive statement* or an *expostulation*. Again, feelings of *pleasure*, *displeasure* or *hesitation* may accompany it. In the various combinations of these situations, the words that may more aptly replace **say** are legion, if ever you try to hunt them out. Here are some of them :

(*i*) **Affirmative**: accede, accept, acknowledge, acquiesce, admit, affirm, agree, allude, apologize, assent, assert, asseverate, assure, attest, aver, avouch, avow, chime in, confess, confirm, consent, note, nod, own, pledge, support, think, vouch.

(*ii*) **Negative** : belie, contradict, controvert, correct, demur, deny, disagree, disavow, disclaim, disown, doubt, gainsay, object, oppose, rebut, recant, refuse, regret, rejoin, repudiate, retort, revoke, traverse.

(*iii*) **Statement** : account, announce, calculate, claim, communicate, confide, contend, declaim, declare, depose, direct, describe, enumerate, enunciate, exclaim, greet, hail, inform, mention, name, narrate, observe, offer, notify, predict, proclaim, reckon, recite, recount, remark, report, state, speak, tell.

(*iv*) **Further statement :** begin, broach, commence, comment, conclude, continue, emphasize, end, iterate, join in, proceed, pursue, put in, reiterate, repeat, resume, supplement.

(*v*) **Argument** : advise, answer, argue, ask, charge, concede, cut in, debate, decide, determine, defend, elude, equivocate, evade, excuse, explain, finish, follow, grant, guess, hint, ignore, illustrate, imply, impugn, infer, interpolate, inquire, insist, instruct, interject, interpose, interrogate, interrupt, itemize, join issue, judge, lecture, maintain, modify, plead, prompt, propose, propound, puzzle, query, question, quibble, quizz, reason, remind, reply, respond, retort, return, second, soliloquize, speculate, surmise, tease, tantalize, venture.

(*vi*) **Expostulation** : adjure, admonish, beg, beseech, caution, complain, console, counsel, exhort, implore, importune, intercede, invite, moralize, promise, protest, reassure, rebuke, remonstrate, reprove, request, suggest, threaten, urge.

(*vii*) **Pleasure** : bandy, banter, chatter, chuckle, coo, croon, crow, encourage, flatter, gloat, grin, jest, jubilate, laud, laugh, mimick, prate, purr, salute, sing out, smile, soothe, tease.

(*viii*) **Displeasure** : bark, bawl, bellow, blaze, bluster, boast, boom, brag, bristle, break in, burst out, call, challenge, chide, command, cry, croak, denounce, deplore, despair, dissemble, demand, deride, ejaculate, enjoin, entreat, explode, flame out, flare, flutter, fume, grate, groan, gush, hasten, hiss, hoot, hurl, growl, grumble, grunt, incite, jeer, jerk out, lie, order, pipe, rail, rant, rasp, rave, roar, rumble, scoff, scold, scream, screech, shout, shriek, sibilate, snap, sneer, snicker, snigger, snort, sparkle, spout, splutter, spurt out, sputter, squeak, storm, sweep in, swear, taunt, threaten, thrust in, thunder, titter, vilify.

(*ix*) **Hesitation** : Babble, blubber, bluff, blunder, blurt out, breathe, cackle, chant, cogitate, consider, drawl, echo, falter, gasp, gulp, gurgle, hazard, hum, indulge, insinuate, jabber, lament, lisp, meditate, moan, mumble, murmur, muse, mutter, palaver, pant, parley, ponder, quaver, resent, ruminate, shrug one's shoulders, stammer, sigh, stutter, venture.

11. **Nouns**. Now we come to grammatical relations, consisting in the formation of nouns, adjectives, adverbs and verbs from various parts of speech. The adverbs are formed by the addition of *ly* to the corresponding adjectives. So we will leave them out because of their regular formation. The examples of other transformations are given below. We will take up the nouns first, dividing them into various groups.

(*a*) *Nouns formed from* **other nouns**. They will be grouped under two heads. Abstract Nouns and Diminutives. Abstract Nouns are nouns denoting state or quality. Diminutive are nouns denoting smallness. The latter are formed from ordinary nouns and may be used for expressing endearment, contempt or just smallness of size.

(*i*) **Abstract Nouns**

Original Noun	Abstract Noun	Original Noun	Abstract Noun
act	*action*	friend	*friendship*
beggar	*beggary*	king	*kingship*
bond	*bondage*	man	*manhood*
broker	*brokerage*	patriot	*patriotism*
cart	*cartage*	pilgrim	*pilgrimage*
coin	*coinage*	servant	*service*
cook	*cooker*	speaker	*speech*
coward	*cowardice*	woman	*womanhood*
creature	*creation*		

(ii) Diminutives

Original Nouns	Diminutives Nouns	Original Nouns	Diminutive Nouns
animal	*animalcule*	lamb	*lambkin*
ankle	*anklet*	lance	*lancet*
arm	*armlet*	lass	*lassie*
ball	*bullet*	leaf	*leaflet*
baron	*baronet*	lock	*locket*
brook	*brooklet*	lord	*lordling*
book	*booklet*	maid	*maiden*
bull	*bullock*	man	*manikin*
babe	*baby*	mole	*molecule*
bird	*birdie*	mouth	*muzzle*
cabin	*cabinet*	nose	*nozzle*
cart	*chariot*	nurse	*nursling*
cat	*kitten*	pack	*packet*
change	*changeling*	park	*paddock*
cigar	*cigarette*	part	*particle*
circle	*circlet*	pile	*pillow*
city	*citadel*	pill	*pilule*
cock	*chicken*	pipe	*pipkin*
corn	*kernel*	poet	*poetaster*
crown	*coronet*	puss	*pussy*
cut	*cutlet*	pouch	*pocket*
dog	*doggy*	ring	*ringlet*
dame	*damsel*	river	*rivulet*
dear	*darling*	root	*rootlet*
duck	*duckling*	rose	*rosette*
eagle	*eaglet*	sack	*satchel*
eye	*eyelet*	seed	*seedling*
fat	*fatling*	shade	*shadow*
flower	*floweret*	star	*asterisk*
fourth	*farthing*	sign	*signet*
front	*frontlet*	spade	*spaddle*
globe	*globule*	statue	*statuette*
goose	*gosling*	story	*storyette*
hill	*hillock*	stream	*streamlet*
home	*hamlet*	swan	*cygnet*
hump	*hummock*	spark	*sparkle*
hire	*hireling*	table	*tablet*
ice	*icicle*	throat	*throttle*
isle	*islet*	thumb	*thimble*

Original Noun	Diminutive Noun	Original Noun	Diminutive Noun
top	*tip*	weak	*weakling*
tower	*turret*	young	*youngling*
verse	*versicle*	year	*yearling*

(*b*) *Nouns formed from* **verbs** :

(*i*) **Verb**+*ment*

Verb	Noun	Verb	Noun
amuse	*amusement*	enchant	*enchantment*
acknowledge	*acknowledgement*	escape	*escapement*
attach	*attachment*	judge	*judgment*
accomplish	*accomplishment*	move	*movement*
banish	*banishment*	manage	*management*
conceal	*concealment*	nourish	*nourishment*
confine	*confinement*	refine	*refinement*
commit	*commitment*		

(*ii*) **Verb**+*tion* or *sion*

Verb	Noun	Verb	Noun
assume	*assumption*	move	*motion*
apprehend	*apprehension*	narrate	*narration*
admit	*admission*	object	*objection*
consume	*consumption*	occupy	*occupation*
concede	*concession*	oppose	*opposition*
compel	*compulsion*	presume	*presumption*
contend	*contention*	protect	*protection*
decide	*decision*	provide	*provision*
diminish	*diminution*	quote	*quotation*
expel	*expulsion*	redeem	*redemption*
expect	*expectation*	reveal	*revelation*
except	*exception*		

(*iii*) **Verb**+*ance* or *ence*

abound	*abundance*	endure	*endurance*
comply	*compliance*	offend	*offence*
defy	*defiance*	obey	*obedience*
disturb	*disturbance*	pretend	*pretence*
depend	*dependence*	rely	*reliance*
excel	*excellence*	repent	*repentance*
exist	*existence*	sustain	*sustenance*

(iv) **Verb**+*al*

Verb	Noun	Verb	Noun
avow	*avowal*	refuse	*refusal*
approve	*approval*	remove	*removal*
betray	*betrayal*	try	*trial*
deny	*denial*		

(v) **Verb**+*th*

heal	*health*	steal	*stealth*

(vi) *By certain other changes*

advise	*advice*	know	*knowledge*
abuse	*abuse*	laugh	*laughter*
bite	*bit*	learn	*learning, lore*
bless	*biss. blessing*	lend	*loan*
bind	*bond*	lose	*loss*
bear	*birth*	live	*life*
break	*breach*	please	*pleasure*
burn	*brand*	practise	*practice*
contain	*contents*	pass	*passage*
carry	*carriage*	receive	*receipt*
choose	*choice*	remain	*remainder*
deal	*dole*	respond	*response*
drive	*drove*	recede	*recess*
deceive	*deceit*	sit	*seat*
do	*deed*	seize	*seizure*
drink	*draught*	strike	*stroke*
dig	*ditch*	speak	*speech*
eat	*eatable*	strive	*strife*
exceed	*excess*	slay	*slaughter*
envelop	*envelope*	stick	*stitch*
float	*fleet*	sow	*seed*
flow	*flood*	succeed	*success*
feed	*food*	tell	*tale*
furnish	*furniture*	trace	*track*
fly	*flight*	thieves	*thief*
gape	*gap*	think	*thought*
give	*gift*	urge	*urgency*
grow	*grief*	vacate	*vacancy*
go	*gait*	wake	*watch*
grow	*growth*	weave	*web*
hate	*hatred*	weigh	*weight*
hold	*hilt*	write	*writing, writ*

(c) *Nouns formed from* adjectives

(i) Adjective+*ity* (without any change)

Adjective	Noun	Adjective	Noun
brutal	*brutality*	rapid	*rapidity*
civil	*civility*	rigid	*rigidity*
equal	*equality*	stupid	*stupidity*
fluid	*fluidity*	special	*speciality*
inferior	*inferiority*	solid	*solidity*
liberal	*liberality*	special	*speciality*
local	*locality*	timid	*timidity*
mortal	*mortality*	uniform	*uniformity*
popular	*popularity*	valid	*validity*
public	*publicity*	vital	*vitality*
real	*reality*	vulgar	*vulgarity*.

(ii) Adjective+*ity* (after removing the final) *e*

fertile	*fertility*	pure	*purity*
fragile	*fragility*	rare	*rarity*
human	*humanity*	scare	*scarcity*
immense	*immensity*	severe	*severity*

(iii) Adjective+*ty*

certain	*certainty*	frail	*frailty*
casual	*casualty*	royal	*royalty*
loyal	*loyalty*	subtle	*subtlety*

(iv) Adjective+*ty* (with certain changes)

able	*ability*	humble	*humility*
brief	*brevity*	necessary	*necessity*
capable	*capability*	notorious	*notoriety*
curious	*curiosity*	proper	*propriety*
double	*dublicity*	pious	*piety*
electrical	*electricity*	poor	*poverty*
enormous	*enormity*	prosperous	*prosperity*
ferocious	*ferocity*	vain	*vanity*
generous	*generosity*	very	*verity*
gay	*gaiety*		

(v) Adjective+*ness* (words ending in **y** change it into **i** before *ness*)

bold	*boldness*	busy	*business*
base	*baseness*	calm	*calmness*
bad	*badness*	cheap	*cheapness*

Adjective	Noun	Adjective	Noun
eager	*eagerness*	mean	*meanness*
fresh	*freshness*	quick	*quickness*
frank	*frankness*	sweet	*sweetness*
great	*greatness*	ugly	*ugliness*
good	*goodness*	weak	*weakness*
happy	*happiness*	white	*whiteness*
holy	*holiness*		

(*vi*) **Adjective + *th***

broad	*breadth*	strong	*strength*
deep	*depth*	slow	*sloth*
dear	*dearth*	true	*truth*
long	*length*	wide	*width*
merry	*mirth*	young	*youth*

(*vii*) **Adjective + *dom***

free	*freedom*	wise	*wisdom*

(*viii*) **Adjective + *ance* or *ence***

abundant	*abundance*	elegant	*elegance*
acquainted	*acquaintance*	eminent	*eminence*
absent	*absence*	innocent	*innocence*
clear	*clearance*	magnificent	*magnificence*
diligent	*diligence*	obedient	*obedience*
dependent	*dependence*	vigilant	vigilance
excellent	*excellence*		

(*ix*) **Adjective + *acy* or *cy***

accurate	*accuracy*	private	*privacy*
adequate	*adequacy*	supreme	*supremacy*
bankrupt	*bankruptcy*	secret	*secrecy*
constant	*constancy*	urgent	*urgency*
emergent	*emergency*	vacant	*vacancy*
frequent	*frequency*		

(*x*) **Adjective + *ry* or *y***

brave	*bravery*	rival	*rivalry*
gallant	*gallantry*	honest	*honesty*
knave	*knavery*		

(xi) *By other changes*

Adjective	Noun	Adjective	Noun
candid	*candour*	proud	*pride*
compulsory	*compulsion*	perfect	*perfection*
false	*falsehood*	splendid	*splendour*
grand	*grandeur*	solitary	*solitude*
high	*height*	short	*shortage*
hot	*heat*	vicious	*vice*
just	*justice*	waste	*wastage*
moist	*moisture*		

12. **Adjectives**. Various suffixes are appended to nouns for turning them into adjectives. Here are examples.

(*a*) *Adjectives formed from* **nouns** :

(i) **Noun**+*ous*

Noun	Adjective	Noun	Adjective
adventure	*adventurous*	lustre	*lustrous*
bounty	*bounteous*	licence	*licentious*
calamity	*calamitous*	merit	*meritorious*
courage	*courageous*	mystery	*mysterious*
contempt	*contemptuous*	moment	*momentous*
conscience	*conscientious*	nerve	*nervous*
censor	*censorious*	odour	*odorous*
capacity	*capacious*	office	*officious*
chivalry	*chivalrous*	population	*populous*
danger	*dangerous*	price	*precious*
delirium	*delirious*	prodigy	*prodigious*
fable	*fabulous*	ruin	*ruinous*
fallacy	*fallacious*	vigour	*vigorous*
fiction	*fictitious*	sedition	*seditious*
gas	*gaseous*	space	*spacious*
glory	*glorious*	study	*studious*
grief	*grievous*	vice	*vicious*
joy	*joyous*	virtue	*virtuous*
labour	*laborious*	zeal	*zealous.*

(ii) **Nouns**+*y*

air	*airy*	brine	*briny*
blood	*bloody*	clay	*clayey*
bush	*bushy*	dew	*dewy*
brass	*brassy*	earth	*earthy*

Noun	Adjective	Noun	Adjective
ease	*easy*	leaf	*leafy*
feather	*feathery*	milk	*milky*
fire	*fiery*	meal	*mealy*
fault	*faulty*	might	*mighty*
fish	*fishy*	moon	*moony*
flesh	*fleshy*	oil	*oily*
frost	*frosty*	red	*ruddy*
flower	*flowery*	sand	*sandy*
grass	*grassy*	silver	*silvery*
greed	*gredy*	snow	*snowy*
glass	*glassy*	star	*starry*
gloom	*gloomy*	summer	*summery*
gore	*gory*	sun	*sunny*
gout	*gouty*	smoke	*smoky*
gum	*gummy*	stone	*stony*
hair	*hairy*	storm	*stormy*
hard	*hardy*	sponge	*spongy*
head	*heady*	thirst	*thirsty*
heart	*hearty*	vapour	*vapory*
haste	*hasty*	water	*watery*
haze	*hazy*	winter	*wintry* or *wintery*
hill	*hilly*		
iron	*irony*	worm	*wormy*
ice	*icy*	worth	*worthy*

(*iii*) **Noun** + *ly*

body	*bodily*	king	*kingly*
brother	*brotherly*	knight	*knightly*
coward	*cowardly*	lord	*lordly*
day	*daily*	leisure	*leisurely*
dead	*deadly*	love	*lovely*
earth	*earthly*	maiden	*maidenly*
father	*fatherly*	man	*manly*
friend	*friendly*	month	*monthly*
ghost	*ghostly*	mother	*motherly*
god	*godly*	week	*weekly*
heaven	*heavenly*	world	*worldly*
home	*homely*	woman	*womanly*
hour	*hourly*	year	*yearly*

(iv) **Noun+*al***

Noun	**Adjective**	**Noun**	**Adjective**
accident	*accidental*	navy	*naval*
ancestor	*ancestral*	neuter	*neutral*
autumn	*autumnal*	night	*nocturnal*
brute	*brutal*	number	*numeral*
centre	*central*	orator	*oratorial*
colony	*colonial*	office	*official*
condition	*conditional*	origin	*original*
ceremony	*ceremonial*	ornament	*ornamental*
crime	*criminal*	palace	*palatial*
detriment	*detrimental*	practice	*practical*
empire	*imperial*	prejudice	*prejudicial*
essence	*essential*	professor	*professorial*
face	*facial*	society	*social*
habit	*habitual*	tribe	*tribal*
line	*lineal*	tutor	*tutorial*
medicine	*medicinal*	verb	*verbal*
nation	*national*	voice	*vocal*
nature	*natural*		

(v) **Noun+*ful***

awe	*awful*	joy	*joyful*
beauty	*beautiful*	law	*lawful*
bounty	*bountiful*	mouth	*mouthful*
brim	*brimful*	mirth	*mirthful*
cheer	*cheerful*	mercy	*merciful*
disdain	*disdainful*	need	*needful*
duty	*dutiful*	peace	*peaceful*
fear	*fearful*	play	*playful*
fruit	*fruitful*	sorrow	*sorrowful*
faith	*faithful*	truth	*truthful*
hope	*hopeful*	use	*useful*
harm	*harmful*	will	*wilful*
hand	*handful*	youth	*youthful*

(vi) **Noun+*less*** (meaning 'without')

care	*careless*	hope	*hopeless*
cause	*causeless*	house	*houseless*
fruit	*fruitless*	harm	*harmless*
feature	*featureless*	law	*lawless*

Noun	Adjective	Noun	Adjective
life	*lifeless*	sleep	*sleepless*
mercy	*merciless*	thought	*thoughtless*
need	*needless*	work	*workless*
sight	*sightless*	worth	*worthless*

(*vii*) **Noun**+*ish* (meaning somewhat like)

black	*blackish*	girl	*girlish*
book	*bookish*	red	*reddish*
boy	*boyish*	slave	*slavish*
child	*childish*	sheep	*sheepish*
dog	*doggish*	salt	*saltish*
England	*English*	thief	*thievish*
fever	*feverish*	woman	*womanish*
fool	*foolish*		

(*viii*) **Noun**+*tic* (meaning 'of')

character	*characteristic*	sympathy	*sympathetic*
emphasis	*emphatic*	system	*systematic*

(*ix*) **Noun**+*en* (meaning 'made of')

brass	*brazen*	silver	*silveren*
earth	*earthen*	wood	*wooden*
gold	*golden*	wool	*woollen*
silk	*silken*		

(*x*) **Noun**+*ed* (meaning 'having' or 'like')

gift	*gifted*	limit	*limited*
famine	*famished*	letter	*lettered*
head	*headed*	renown	*renowned*
land	*landed*	wretch	*wretched*

(*xi*) **Noun**+*ical* or *cal* (meaning 'of')

alphabet	*alphabetical*	machine	*mechanical*
economy	*economical*	practice	*practical*
enemy	*inimical*	type	*typical*
iron	*ironical*		

(*xii*) **Noun**+*ar*

angle	*angular*	particle	*particular*
circle	*circular*	table	*tabular*
joke	*jocular*	title	*titular*
muscle	*muscular*		

(*xiii*) **Noun** + *ary*

Noun	Adjective	Noun	Adjective
custom	*customary*	moment	*mementary*
discipline	*disciplinary*	money	*monetary*
example	*exemplary*	solitude	*solitary*

(*xiv*) **Noun** + *ic* (meaning 'like')

angel	*angelic*	hero	*heroic*
atmosphere	*atmospheric*	idiot	*idiotic*
comedy	*comic*	metal	*metallic*
class	*classic*	ocean	*oceanic*
drama	*dramatic*	tragedy	*tragic*
dynasty	*dynastic*		

(*xv*) **Noun** + *able* or *ible*

advice	*advisable*	memory	*memorable*
account	*accountable*	move	*movable*
comfort	*comfortable*	notice	*noticeable*
damage	*damageable*	profit	*profitable*
drink	*drinkable*	question	*questionable*
eat	*eatable*	sense	*sensible*
favour	*favourable*	service	*serviceable*
force	*forcible*	terror	*terrible*
honour	*honourable*	value	*valuable*
laugh	*laughable*		

(*xvi*) *By certain other changes*

adhesion	*adhesive*	trifle	*trifling*
authority	*authoritative*	burden	*burdensome*
figure	*figurative*	trouble	*troublesome*
talk	*talkative*	quarrel	*quarrelsome*
east	*eastern*	prose	*prosaic*
north	*northern*	science	*scientific*
south	*southern*	pride	*proud*
west	*western*	heat	*hot*
ignorance	*ignorant*	heir	*hereditary*
valour	*valiant*	picture	*picturesque*
college	*collegian* or *collegiate*	passion	*passionate*
		life	*lifelike*
elephant	*elephantine*	war	*warlike*
serpent	*serpentine*	six	*sixth*
merchant	*mercantile*	seven	*seventh*
bind	*binding*	school	*scholastic*

13. Latin Adjectives. Forming a class by themselves are the Latin adjectives of certain English nouns. Take the word **water** for example. The Latin equivalent for it is *aqua*, but this word is never used in English except in prescriptions, and in certain technical terms as a part of some Latin phrase. The English word *water* forms its adjective by the addition of *y*. But the adjective derived from the Latin word *aqua* is also much in use. Thus we find that the English word *water* has the following two adjectives in use in English.

English Noun	English Adjective	Latin Adjective
Water	Watery	Aquatic

These Latin adjectives are used either in high-flown language or in technical language. In neither case can their importance be ignored. Here is a list of the commoner Latin adjectives :

Noun	Adjective	Noun	Adjective
air	*aerial*	hand	*manual*
blood	*sanguinary*	head	*capital*
body	*corporal* / *corporeal*	heart	*cordial*
		heaven	*celestial*
		hell	*infernal*
brother	*fraternal*	home	*domestic*
cat	*feline*	hope	*sanguine*
city	*civic*	horse	*equine*
day	*diurnal*	husband	*conjugal*
death	*mortal*	king	*royal, regal*
daughter	*filial*	life	*vital*
dog	*canine*	light	*lucid*
eagle	*aquiline*	lion	*leonine*
ear	*auricular*	male	*masculine*
earth	*terrestrial*	man	*mental, psychical*
east	*oriental*		
egg	*oval*	moon	*lunar*
end	*final*	mother	*maternal*
eye	*ocular*	mouth	*oral*
father	*paternal*	name	*nominal*
flesh	*carnal*	night	*nocturnal*
flower	*floral*	nose	*nasal*
foot	*pedal*	ox	*bovine*
friend	*amicable*	place	*local*
god	*divine*	root	*radical*
hair	*capillary*	salt	*saline*

Noun	Adjective	Noun	Adjective
sea	*marine*	water	*aquatic, aqueous*
sheep	*ovine*	war	*martial, bellicose*
side	*lateral*	wife, husband	*conjugal*
sight	*visible*	will	*voluntary*
sky	*ethereal*	woman	*feminine, effeminate*
spring	*vernal*		
son	*filial*	womb	*uterine*
sun	*solar*	wood	*sylvan*
tree	*arborial*	word	*verbal*
tooth	*dental*	world	*mundane*
town	*urban*	wheel	*rotatory*
village	*rural, rustic*	youth	*juvenile*

14. **Verbs**. The affixes used for the formation of verbs from other parts of speech are many and varied. Here are some examples.

(a) *Verbs formed from* Nouns

(i) Noun+*ize* or *ise*

Noun	Verb	Noun	Verb
advice	*advise*	magnet	*magnetize*
alphabet	*alphabetize*	memory	*memorise*
apology	*apologize*	monopoly	*monopolize*
animal	*animalize*	nation	*nationalize*
authority	*authorize*	neuter	*neutralize*
capital	*capitalize*	practice	*practise*
character	*characterize*	price	*prize*
critic	*criticize*	patron	*patronize*
colony	*colonize*	sermon	*sermonize*
climate	*acclimatize*	sympathy	*sympathize*
economy	*economize*	system	*systematize*
harmony	*harmonize*	utility	*utilise*
idol	*idolize*		

(ii) Noun+*fy*

air	*aerify*	electricity	*electrify*
beauty	*beautify*	fruit	*fructify*
class	*classify*	gas	*gasify*
deity	*deify*	glory	*glorify*
example	*exemplify*	horror	*horrify*

Noun	Verb	Noun	Verb
justice	*justify*	terror	*terrify*
peace	*pacify*	verse	*versify*
right	*rectify*		

(iii) **Noun**+*ate*

centre	*concentrate*	population	*populate*
crime	*incriminate*	person	*personate*
creation	*create*	society	*associate*
gesture	*gesticulate*	substance	*substantiate*
grain	*granulate*	table	*tabulate*
habit	*habituate*	term	*terminate*
lustre	*illustrate*	vacancy	*vacate*
necessity	*necessitate*	vapour	*evaporate*
office	*officiate*	vice	*vitiate*
origin	*originate*	vigour	*invigorate*

(*iv*) **Noun**+*en*

black	*blacken*	light	*lighten*
fright	*frighten*	red	*redden*
haste	*hasten*	strong	*strengthen*
height	*heighten*		

(*v*) **Noun**+*le*

fond	*fondle*	spark	*sparkle*
hand	*handle*	top	*topple*
nest	*nestle*		

(*vi*) *en*+**noun**

cage	*encage*	slave	*enslave*
camp	*encamp*	snare	*ensnare*
circle	*encircle*	throne	*enthrone*
courage	*encourage*	title	*entitle*
danger	*endanger*	tomb	*entomb*
force	*enforce*		

(*vii*) *em* or *im*+**noun**

battle	*embattle*	bed	*imbed*
body	*embody*	prison	*imprison*
bosom	*embosom*	power	*empower*

(*viii*) *be* or *de*+noun

Noun	Verb	Noun	Verb
cloud	*becloud*	cipher	*decipher*
dew	*bedew*	fame	*defame*
fool	*befool*	fraud	*defraud*
guile	*beguile*	part	*depart*
head	*behead*	port	*deport*
night	*benight*	throne	*dethrone*

(*ix*) By certain other changes

bath	*bathe*	gold	*gild*
belief	*believe*	half	*halve*
breath	*breathe*	heir	*inherit*
blood	*bleed*	health	*heel*
brood	*breed*	island	*insulate*
cloth	*clothe*	knee	*kneel*
calf	*calve*	knot	*knit*
custom	*accustom*	life	*live*
drop	*drip*	mass	*amass*
food	*feed*	sale	*sell*
frost	*freeze*	service	*serve*
famine	*famish*	shelf	*shelve*
flower	*flourish*	society	*associate*
glass	*glaze*	sooth	*soothe*
grass	*graze*	voice	*vociferate*
game	*gambol*		

(*b*) Verbs formed from adjectives

(*i*) Adjective+*en*

Adjective	Verb	Adjective	Verb
black	*blacken*	mad	*madden*
broad	*broaden*	moist	*moisten*
cheap	*cheapen*	red	*redden*
dark	*darken*	short	*shorten*
deep	*deepen*	sick	*sicken*
fat	*fatten*	sweet	*sweeten*
glad	*gladden*	thick	*thicken*
hard	*harden*	white	*whiten*
long	*lengthen*	wide	*widen*

(*ii*) Adjective+*fy*

Adjective	Verb	Adjective	Verb
clear	*clarify*	right	*rectify*
false	*falsify*	special	*specify*
fort	*fortify*	stupid	*stupify*
liquid	*liquefy*	vile	*vilify*
pure	*purify*	very	*verify*

(*iii*) Adjective+*ate*

alien	*alienate*	perpetua	*perpetuate*
brief	*abbreviate*	proper	*appropriate*
different	*differentiate*	solid	*consolidate*
double	*duplicate*	timid	*intimidate*
humble	*humiliate*		

(*iv*) Adjective+*ize* or *ise*

artificial	*artificialise*	general	*generalize*
civil	*civilize*	particular	*particularize*
equal	*equalize*	popular	*popularize*
familiar	*familiarize*	real	*realize*
fertile	*fertilize*		

(*v*) *en*+Adjective

able	*enable*	noble	*ennoble*
dear	*endear*	rich	*enrich*
feeble	*enfeeble*	sure	*ensure*
large	*enlarge*		

(*vi*) By other changes

abundant	*abound*	finite	*finish*
base	*debase*	full	*fill*
bold	*embolden*	fond	*fondle*
bitter	*embitter*	grip	*grapple*
cool	*chill*	little	*belittle*
certain	*ascertain*	low	*lower*
clean	*cleanse*	mean	*demean*
calm	*becalm*	new	*renew*
dense	*condense*	poor	*impoverish*
fine	*refine*	public	*publish*
fresh	*refresh*	stable	*establish*
firm	*confirm*	strange	*estrange*
foul	*defile*	secret	*secrete*

EXERCISES

(*For* Board *Students*)

1. Write down as many synonyms of the following words as you can. (You may consult Roget's *Thesaurus*) :

Abolish, destroy, empty, insult (*n.*), pull, wicked, conduct (*n.*), fit (*adj.*), propose, zealous.

2. Consult Crabb's *Synonyms* to distinguish between the words you have written down in answering the previous question.

(*For* University *Students*)

Use Crabb's Synonyms to distinguish between the words in each of the following groups, and use them in sentences of your own to bring out that distinction :

1. Vacate, forego, surrender, desert, abandon.
2. Able, gifted, talented, capable, clever.
3. Admit, avow, confess, allow, permit.
4. Benefit, good, boon, profit.
5. Cast, project, fling, throw, hurl.
6. Control, repress, curb, check.
7. Contest, argue, contend, debate, dispute.
8. Passion, feeling, agitation, excitement, emotion.
9. Open, candid, frank, sincere.
10. Germ, bud, origin, seed.
11. Idiot, fool, imbecile.
12. Rent, employ, engage, hire.
13. Scoff, taunt, sneer, jeer.
14. Class, species, genus, kind.
15. Tall, majestic, eminent, high, sublime, lofty.
16. Think, ponder, brood, muse.
17. Tender, moving, pathetic.

CHAPTER XXVIII

WORDS LIABLE TO BE CONFUSED

We are all aware of the need to use the right word in the right place. But the categories of words discussed in the last chapter should have convinced the student that even after acquiring a wide and varied vocabulary, the choice of the most apt word is not possible unless he learns to distinguish between synonyms. A similar difficulty is inherent in the homonyms. Between the Scylla and the Charybdis of the two, the vessel of expression runs the grave risk of floundering any moment. How to steer clear of this danger is the question. Here is an attempt to provide the answer by pointing out the confusion that is liable to be caused by the similarity of sound or sense or both between various groups of words. The examples in many cases are drawn from great authors, but unless they are in verse form, it has not been considered necessary to credit them to their source.

A

1. **Able, Capable**. The former takes the infinitive whereas the latter is followed by the gerund. We are *able to do* a thing when we have power in general but are *capable of doing* it when we are equal to that particular task ; *e.g.*, "He is *able* to swim" ; "He is *capable* of swimming two miles at a stretch."

2. **Ability, Capacity**. *Ability* is power to do something ; skill in the use of physical powers or intellectual faculties. *Ability* is developed through exercise. "Men are promoted on the basis of the *ability* that they show" ; "He has unusual *ability* as a mechanic." *Capacity* is power to receive, hold, or contain. As applied to intellectual faculties *capacity* means power to take in knowledge as distinguished from power to express in doing. It usually implies native power as distinguished from acquired. "His *capacity* for mathematics is very limited."

3. **Abstain, Refrain.** We *abstain* from a thing but *refrain* from an action ; *e g.*, "He *abstained* from food for three days after the death of his son" ; "O King, *refrain* from oppressing the poor and God will help you."

4. **Accede, Concede**. The former means *to yield*, and the latter *to admit as true* : "It is so kind of you to *accede* to my request" ; "The teacher reluctantly *conceded* the truth of what the student said."

5. **Accept, Except**. We *accept* a thing that is given to us or a statement that is made but we *except*, that is, 'exlude' a thing

from a general statement or enumeration, etc., *e.g.*, "I *accept* your kind gift thankfully"; "We do not know why he has been *excepted* from the general pardon."

6. **Access, Excess, Accession**. We have *access* to a place, and there is *accession* to the throne. *Excess* means 'superabundance,' 'extreme degree,' etc., *e.g.*, "I had free *access* to the office room"; "*Excess* of anything is bad"; "After his *accession* to the throne he introduced some beneficial measures."

7. **Accessary, Accessory**. An *accessary* is a helper in any act or one privy to it. *Accessory* is usually an adjective, (as a noun it is usually used in the plural) and means 'additional,' 'adventitious,' etc. *e.g.*, "If he is not the principal he is at least an important *accessary*"; "We may dispose of the *accessory* matters later; let us now deal with the main problem."

8. **Adapt, Adept, Adopt**. We *adapt* ourselves to circumstances and we *adopt* a course of action. *Adept* means *skilful*; *e.g.*, "We must *adapt* ourselves to the changing circumstances of twentieth century life or we would fail"; "He is an *adept* in the art of painting still life"; "I do not know which course I should *adopt*."

9. **Admission, Admittance**. *Admission* means 'entrance,' not simply into a place, but generally; but *admittance* signifies 'physical entrance,' usually into a place; *e.g.*, "*Admission* to the debating society meeting is restricted to those students who have been *admitted* to the first year class"; "I gained *admittance* into the house by breaking a window pane."

10. **Admit, Acknowledge, Confess**. *Admit* is a more general term than acknowledge, and *acknowledge* is a stronger term than *admit*. To *confess* is to acknowledge something wrong; *e.g.*, "I am ready to *admit* that what you say may be true"; "I *acknowledged* the receipt of the letter." "I am always ready to *acknowledge* his kindness to me"; "The arrested man *confessed* his guilt before the City Magistrate."

11. **Adverse, Averse**. *Adverse* means contrary or hostile (to something) but *averse* means disinclined or unwilling (to do a thing); *e.g.*, "I can no longer fight against *adverse* circumstances"; "*Adverse* opinions were many against the proposal"; "Being a shy man, he is *adverse* to society"; "He is a man of methodical habits, hence he is *averse* to doing a thing in a haphazard manner."

12. **Adventitious, Adventurous**. The former means 'coming from without,' 'accidental,' and the latter means 'venturesome,' 'enterprising' (*adj.* from 'adventure'); *e.g.*, "Coleridge was never capable of systematic thinking. While discussing poetry he would be led away by some *adventitious* detail of metaphysics"; "The young men today do not seem to be very *adventurous*."

13. **Advice, Advise.** The former is the noun and the latter the verb ; *e.g.*, "His *advice* is always helpful" ; "I *advised* him not to accept the offer."

14. **Affect, Effect.** *Affect* means to *pretend* or to *act upon* ; *effect* means *result*, and *to effect* something is *to accomplish* something, *e.g.*, "The famine *affected* only a part of the district"; "In order to gain his end, Hamlet *affected* madness for some time" ; "What will be the *effect* of this measure ?" He *effected* his purpose by tireless efforts."

15. **Affected, Affecting.** *Affected* means *unnatural*, and *affecting*, moving, pathetic ; *e.g.*, "He talks in an *affected* manner and is disliked by everyone" ; "The audience were greatly moved by that *affecting* scene in *Othello*."

16. **Affection, Affectation.** *Affectation* means *artificiality* of manner or *pretence*, and *affection* has nothing to do with it ; (*e.g.*, "His *affection* for his younger brother was strong" ; "He is all pose and *affectation*. There is no sincere feeling in him."

17. **Afflict, Inflict.** The idioms are : "*afflict* a person *with* a thing, *inflict* a thing (*upon*) a person." In the passive the confusion of the two words is more common than in the active. We say, "A person is afflicted *with* a thing, and a thing is inflicted on a person."

18. **Aggravate, Annoy.** *Annoy* means to *irritate* ; *aggravate* means to *make more heavy* or *grave*, or to *intensify troubles* already existing ; *e.g.*, "His sickness was *aggravated* by his mental suffering."

19. **Ago, Since, Before.** They are all used for a *point* of time, not for a *period* of time. *Ago* is an adjective and also an adverb, and always follows a noun or an adjective (*e.g.*, *ten years ago*, *long ago*). *Since* has many uses. It is used as an adverb, as a preposition and also as a conjunction (*e.g.*, **Adv.** Last year he was given a lift of Rs. 50, but his salary has *since* been cut down I met him last Monday but have not seen him *since* ; **Prep.** I have eaten nothing *since* yesterday ; There has been no remarkable religious movement in this country *since* 1900 ; **Conj.** What have you done *since* we met ?) *Before* is an adverb ; *e.g.*, "He has been here *since* noon" ; "He did not come *before* noon."

Between *ago* and *since* there is this distinction that the former is usually used when remote events are referred to, and the latter in the case of more recent events ; *e.g.*, "Many centuries *ago* there ruled a king in Iran" ; "I have not seen him *since* January" ; "It is now two months *since* I have been working on this subject."

20. **Allow, Permit.** *Allow* denotes more or less a negative action, it means 'to abstain from refusal,' whereas *permit* means 'to give a decided assent' and denotes a positive action ; *e.g.*, "The students were *allowed* to talk in the class by the teacher" ;

"He was *permitted* to take his examination as a non-collegiate student by the University."

21. **All ready, Already**. *All ready* means *quite prepared*; *e.g.*, "I am *all ready* to go." *Already* means *by this* or *that time*; *e.g.*, "He has *already* performed the task."

22. **Allude, Refer**. To *allude* is 'to refer indirectly or delicately or incidentally'; *e.g.*, "The speaker was cautious; he *alluded* to that scandalous affair skilfully as he dared not *refer* to it openly."

23. **Allusion, Illusion**. *Allusion* means *an indirect reference* and *illusion* means a *deceptive appearance*; *e.g.*, "The *allusions* in this poem are obscure"; "At last the frightful phantom was known to be just an *illusion*."

24. **Altar, Alter**. The former is *an elevated place of worship*, and the latter is a verb and means *to change*; *e.g.*, "He knelt down by the *altar* in the church and prayed ferv-ntly to God"; "There is no reason why I should *alter* my opinion about him."

25. **Alteration, Altercation, Alternation**. *Alteration* means *change*, and *altercation* means *quarrel* or *contention*. *Alternation* means '*the act of being by turns*.' It is derived from alternate; *e.g.*, "Some *alterations* were made in the building to suit the requirements of the new owner"; "There was a severe *altercation* between the landlord and the tenant about the increase in house-rent"; "Joy and sorrow come in *alternation* with each other in human life."

26. **Alternate, Alternative**. *Alternate* means *being by turns*, and *alternative* means 'one of the two courses or things between which there is a choice'; *e.g.*, "The doctor sees the patient on *alternate* days"; "There is no *alternative*, he must go to jail."

27. **Amiable, Amicable**. *Amiable* means *lovable* and *amicable* means *friendly*; *e.g.*, "He did not appear to be *amiable* as before; perhaps he knew all about the misdeeds of the man and there was an expression of anger in his face"; "He is an exceedingly *amiable* man, every one likes him"; "We need not quarrel, let us come to an *amicable* settlement."

28. **Ancient, Old**. The former is *opposed to modern* and the latter, to *new*; *e.g.*, "In *ancient* times there lived a king in Mesopotamia named Hammurabi"; "I prefer a new coat to an *old* one." However the phrases *in old days* and *in olden days* are quite idiomatic.

29. **Antic, Antique**. *Antic* as an adjective means *odd*; *antique* means *old fashioned*; *e.g.*, "His gestures was *antic*, nay grotesque"; "Digging in the fields the cultivator found a few pieces of *antique* gold coins."

30. **Anticipate, Expect**. To *anticipate* means to forestall; as,

"His opponent *anticipated* the blow"; "The counsel *anticipated* part of his argument"; "England *expects* every man to do his duty."

31. **Apposite, Opposite.** *Apposite* means *proper*, and *opposite* means 'standing in front' or 'contrary'; *e. g.*, "He made some very *apposite* remarks on the present system of administration in the college"; "There was a small house *opposite* the office building."

32. **Aptitude, Aptness.** *Aptitude* means *fitness*, but also *natural propensity for something*, whereas *aptness* means *suitability*, *e. g.*, "I have no *aptitude* for arithmetic"; "His expressions have an admirable *aptness*."

33. **Art, Artifice.** *Art* is the application of skill or an occupation requiring skill. *Artifice* usually means a cunning, crafty, sly, or designing use of skill. An *artifice* is similar to a trick, a device, or a stratagem. "An artist who respects his *art* will not resort to *artifice* in order to please his patron."

34. **Artist, Artiste, Artisan.** An *artist* is a person who has to do with a fine art; a painter or a sculptor or a poet is an artist. But an *artiste* is a professional singer, dancer, acrobat, etc. An *artisan* practises some handicraft, such as carpentry; *e.g.*, "Chelsea is the home of the English *artists*"; "There were 90 *artistes* in that opera company"; "Those *artisans* are very hard-working and skilful."

35. **Artistic, Artful, Artificial.** *Artistic* means *beautiful* or 'having aesthetic powers,' etc. *Artful* means *cunning* or *clever*. *Artificial* is opposed to *natural*; *e.g.*, "His design is a highly *artistic* one"; His *artful* projects did not help him in the long run"; "Town life is *artificial*."

36. **As, Like.** *As* and *like* are not interchangeable. *As* as a conjunction is used to compare action or existence and is followed by a noun or a pronoun (expressed or understood) and by a verb (expressed or understood). *Like* is used to compare things or persons and though it is followed by a noun or a pronoun, there need be no verb after that; *e. g.*, "People do not drink milk *as* they used to do"; "He is *like* me."

37. **Ascendant, Ascendancy.** "His star is in the *ascendant* (supreme, dominating or rising"; and "His strength of character gives him the *ascendancy*."

38. **Ascent, Assent.** *Ascent* means *going up* and *assent* means *concurrence* or to *agree*; *e.g.*, "The *ascent* to the summit of the hill is a difficult one"; "He gave his *assent* to the proposal"; "I cannot *assent* to what you say."

39. **Assay, Essay.** We *assay* (attempt) *to* do a thing and we *essay at* doing a thing. *To assay* also means 'to test the purity of metals,' and *essay* as a noun means 'a short prose composition on any subject'; *e g.*, "He *assayed* the gold ornaments"; "He *essayed* at climbing the tree but failed."

40. **Asset, Advantage**. The word *asset* is a false form. Most of those who use it are probably unaware that, though now treated as plural, *assets* is itself singular ; the *-s* is not a plural termination ; French *assez* (enough) being its source, *-ts* represents the French -z ; and the right sense of the word is—what suffices or should suffice to meet liabilities. The false singular originates in incorrect uses to mean a variety of things. "Long hands are *something of an asset* (serviceable) in cricket" ; "A clear head is a *distinct asset* (great help) in an examination."

41. **Assumption, Presumption**. Both of these nouns involve supposition and the act of taking certain things for granted. An *assumption* may be made without any evidence, simply as a starting-point for a process of reasoning. A *presumption* is based upon probable evidence or upon generalizations that are usually true. Our original *assumption* is that the man is innocent, but the facts already disclosed in this case create a very strong *presumption* of guilt.

42. **Assure Ensure, Insure**. The constructions are : (*i*) *assure* life, assure the future ; assure a person *of* a fact, etc., or *that* a thing is so ; (*ii*) *ensure* a person, thing, *against* or *from* risks, etc. ; *ensure that* something shall happen ; *ensure* something *for* or *to* a person. *Insure* is the legal commercial variant of *ensure*, as to insure a house or person, or to insure *against* fire, burglary, death. In commercial idiom, the noun assurance is used of life (though you *insure* against death) and *insurance* of property, etc.

43. **Astonishment, Surprise, Wonder**. *Astonishment* is stronger than *surprise* and *wonder* is 'surprise, mingled with admiration, curiosity or bewilderment' ; *e. g.*, "I was *astonished* to see the famous statesman in such company" ; "Your failure has *surprised* me" ; "When Ferdinand met Miranda for the first time in that magic island he was full of *wonder*."

44. **At, In**. 'At' relates to a small extent of space or time, 'in' to a wider extent : "The end is *at* hand (*i.e.*, very close)" ; "The work is *in* hand (*i e.*, being done, stage of completion unspecified)" ; "He will start *at* six *in* the morning" ; "Dundee and the Highlanders utterly defeated a royalist army *at* Killie Crankie *in* Perthshire."

45. **Attenuate, Extenuate**. *Attenuate* means 'to make slender or thin,' and *extenuate* means 'to lessen seeming magnitude of guilt or offence by partial excuse' ; *e.g.*, "The heavy work at his office *attenuated* the clerk considerably" ; "Nothing can *extenuate* his offence."

46. **Auger, Augur**. An *auger* is *a boring instrument* and an *augur* is a *diviner*; *e g.*, "The carpenter uses his *auger* to make a hole in the beam" ; "The ancient Romans always consulted their *augur* before setting out on any expedition."

47. **Aught, Ought**. *Aught* means *anything*, it has nothing to do with *ought* ; *e.g.*, "Every man *ought* to do his duty."

Or taught my soul to fancy *aught*.
But a white, celestial thought. —Waughan.

48. **Avenge, Revenge, Vengeance**. To *avenge* is to inflict just punishment upon a person or persons for a wrong or injury done to ourselves or to some one else ; it does not imply any personal feeling of anger or malice. To *revenge* is however to inflict just punishment for an injury or wrong done to ourselves and it always implies a personal feeling of animosity or anger. *Vengeance* is 'punishment inflicted, retribution exacted' for wrong to oneself or to person, etc., whose cause one espouses ; *e.g.*, "He *revenged* himself on his enemy for the great wrong done to him" ; "He took a bloody *vengeance* on the murderer of his son (or on the tyrant who oppressed the people cruelly)."

Avenge O Lord ! Thy slaughtered saints whose bones
Lie scatter'd on the Alpine mountains cold. —Milton

49. **Avocation, Vocation**. *Vocation* is *career* or occupation, and *avocation* is 'diversion from usual occupation or minor occupation' ; *e.g.*, "His *vocation* is medicine, but painting is his *avocation*."

B

1. **Bad, Bade**. *Bad*, inferior, wicked ; *bade*, commanded. "Pilate *bade* Jesus stand up" ; "His design was not *bad* but the others were better."

2. **Barbarism, Barbarity**. *Barbarism* means *uncivilised condition* and *barbarity* means *cruelty*, *e.g.*, "In some parts of India absolute *barbarism* prevails. Bombing the open *Algerian* towns from the air was *barbarity* on the part of the Frenchmen."

3. **Barbarian, Barbaric, Barbarous**. We say "a *barbarian* king," "a king of *barbarians*," "a *barbarian* custom." *Barbaric* is used in a favourable sense to mean unsophisticated, rough, rude, unchastened, as "*barbaric* finery." *Barbarous* is used in an unfavourable sense to mean cruel, as a *barbarous* custom, words.

4. **Bare, Bear**. *Bare* (adj.) means uncovered, *bare* (verb) means to uncover ; *bear* (noun) is a kind of animal, *bear* (verb) means to carry ; *e.g.*, "His *bare* body was scorched by the midday sun" ; "The wolf *bared* its fangs" ; "In the zoo you can see a large polar *bear*" ; "The woman *bore* a heavy load on her head."

5. **Base, Bass**. *Base*, ignoble ; *bass*, lowest part in harmonized music. *Base* motives ; and let the *bass* of heavier deep organ blow.

6. **Battle, Fight, War**. A *battle* is a contest between opposing armies ; a *fight* is a combat between a small number of men ; *war* is a contest, more prolonged than a battle, between opposing armies ; *e.g.*, "The Normans defeated the Saxons in the *battle of Hastings* in 1766" ; "A policeman was killed and forty labourers

wounded in the *fight* between a band of strikers and the police yesterday" ; "In the last world *war* millions of men lost their lives."

7. **Beach, Beech.** *Beach* means *shore*, and *beech* is a kind of tree ; *e.g.*, There was a row of *beech* trees in front of the rectory.

> To watch the crisping ripples on the *beach*
> And tender curving lines of creamy spray —Tennyson.

8. **Begin, Commence, Start.** *Begin* is the familiar and usual word in speech and writing ; *commence* is the word of official and formal language ; *start* which is the same root as *startle*, is best restricted to the idea of actual physical motion. "Exercises and operations *commence* in the army ; a train *starts* ; a runner *starts* from scratch." In all other uses and for all other senses use *begin*.

9. **Beneficent, Beneficial.** *Beneficent* means *kind*, and *beneficial* means *useful*, *advantageous* ; *e.g*, "A *beneficent* ruler always attracts the loyalty of his people" ; "Education is *beneficial* to all."

10. **Berth, Birth.** *Berth* means a *sleeping place* in a train or on board a ship whereas *birth* means *coming to life* ; *e.g.*, "He reserved a first class *berth* in the Pakistan Mail" ; "The *birth* of a son in an Arab family was a great event."

11. **Beside, Besides.** *Beside* means *by the side of*, and hence sometimes *outside of*. *Besides* means *in addition to* ; *e.g.*, "John came and sat *beside* me (*i.e.*, by my side)" ; "Your answer is *beside* the question (*i.e.*, outside of, irrelevant)" ; "He was *beside* himself with fear" ; "*Besides* helping me with his advice, he lent me some money."

12. **Between, Among.** *Between* is generally used in reference to two things, and *among* in reference to more than two ; *e.g.*, "John and Harris agreed *between* themselves to do the work jointly" ; "John, Harris, Jones and Philip agreed *among* themselves to do the work jointly."

*The *Oxford Dictionary*, however, points out that *between* "is still the only word available to express the relation of a thing to many surrounding things severally and individually, *among* expressing a relation to them collectively and vaguely. We should *not* say "The space lying *among* three points" ; or "A treaty *among* three powers" or "The choice lies *among* three candidates," or, "To insert a needle *among* the closed petals of a flower." We reproduce below a few examples of this use of *between* given by Nesfield : "A friendly intercourse is opened *between* the most distant lands" ; "England has earned her supremacy in Arabian waters by honest attempts to put a stop to the slave trade, in accordance with the treaties *between* the Powers."

13. **Blew, Blue.** *Blew*, past tense, of blow ; *blue*, a colour *e.g.*, "The policeman *blew* his whistle" ; "The ink was *blue*."

14. **Blunder, Error, Mistake.** A *mistake* is the taking of one thing or person for another. A *blunder* is a gross or serious mistake. An *error* is a departure from what is recognised as right or correct ; *e.g.*, "The continuation of Safety Laws was a grave political *blunder* on the part of the Government" ; "This essay is full of grammatical *errors*"; "It is a *mistake* to suppose that every American is rich."

15. **Boldness, Bravery, Courage, Daring, Audacity.** *Boldness, daring* and *audacity* are attributes of a lower order, whereas *courage* and *bravery* are noble attributes. *Boldness* is a transient, occasional thing ; *daring* is suggestive of rashness and is venturesome, whereas *audacity* suggests impudence. *Bravery* is daring of a noble kind and *courage* is generally a permanent and praiseworthy attribute ; *e.g.*, "*Boldness* is ever blind, for it sees not dangers and inconvenience ; whence it is bad in council though good in execution" ; "He has *daring* but no prudence, that is why he ventures to do things no wise man would ever do" ; "I am astonished at your *audacity*, a mere boy like you should not point out the fancied errors of your superiors" ; "The *bravery* founded on hope of recompense, fear of punishment, experience of success, on rage, or on ignorance of danger, is but common *bravery*, and does not deserve the name. True *bravery* proposes a just end ; measures the dangers, and meets the result with calmness and unyielding decision" ; "*Courage* is, on all hands, considered an essential of high character."

16. **Born, Borne.** *Born* means 'given birth to' and *borne* means *carried, sustained* ; *e.g.*, "He was *born* in a rich *family*" ; "The child was *borne* on the shoulders of the servant."

17. **Bourne, Bourn.** *Bourne*, limit, destination ; *bourn*, a stream. "The land from whose *bourne* no traveller returns" ; "This is a small *bourn*."

18. **Brake, Break.** *Brake* means some checking apparatus, and *break* means 'to come apart' ; *e.g.*, "This stick is so frail that it would *break* into two if you beat the dog with it" ; "The driver applied the *brakes* and the car pulled up a few inches off the dog."

19. **Bridal, Bridle.** *Bridal*, (noun) wedding, wedding-feast ; (adjective) of bride or wedding ; *bridle* rein, etc. ; to control a horse ; *e.g.*, "The *bridal* gown was of a deep blue" ; "The horse broke the *bridle* and ran away."

20. **Broach, Brooch.** *Broach*, to open and start using, to moot ; *brooch*, an ornament ; *e.g.*, "Who will *broach* this topic ?" "The *brooch* looks beautiful in her *sari*."

C

1. **Calendar, Calender.** A *calendar* is a table showing months and days of the year and to *calender* is to press cloth, paper, etc., in a calender or *roller machine* ; *e.g.*, "I consult the wall *calendar*

almost every day" : "*Calender* this coat." *Calender* also signifies a mendicant 'dervish'.

2. **Cannon, Canon**. A *cannon* is a great gun used in war, and a *canon* is a practice that has become binding like a law through long usage or a *church decree* ; *e.g.*, "The loud report of a *cannon* disturbed the soldiers who were taking rest" ; "The *canons* of morality are as binding as the laws of the State."

3. **Canvas, Canvass**. *Canvas* is a kind of coarse cloth, and *to canvass* is to discuss thoroughly or *solicit votes*, etc ; *e.g.*, "Sails are made of *canvas*" ; "When elections drew near, many persons are seen busily canvassing for their candidates."

4. **Capable, Capacious**. *Capacious* means *roomy*, and *capable* means able to do a particular thing ; *e.g.*, "He is *capable* of riding sixty miles a day" ; "There was a large gathering in the *capacious* hall."

5. **Cast, Caste**. *Cast* (*n.*) list of actors taking part in a play, or mould, *cast* (*v.*) to *throw*. *Caste* means an exclusive class like the castes amongst Hindus in the neighbouring country of India ; *e.g.*, "The *cast* includes some well-known actors" ; "Pandit Nehru is a Brahmin by caste."

6. **Casual, Causal**. The former means 'accidental or occasional,' and the latter means 'relating to or denoting cause' ; *e.g.*, Is there any *causal* connection between the sins of men and an epidemic ?

> My days among the dead are passed ;
> Around me I behold.
> Where'er these *casual* eyes are cast.
> The mighty minds of old. —Southey.

7. **Cautionary, Cautious**. There may be *cautionary* advice but a *cautious* man ; *e.g.*, "My friend gave me *cautionary* advice in time" ; "He is a *cautious* man who never takes any risks."

8. **Ceiling, Roof**. *Ceiling* is the inner roof, and *roof* the whole upper covering of a house ; *e.g.*, "You should whitewash the *ceiling* of your house" ; "There were four men on the *roof* of the house."

> Why should we only toil, the *roof* and crown of things ?
> —Tennyson.

9. **Cellar, Seller**. *Cellar*, underground room ; *seller*, one who sells, *e.g.*, "Put the wine in the *cellar*" ; "He is a fruit-*seller*."

10. **Censer, Censor, Censure**. *Censer*, vessel in which incense is burnt, *censor*, an official examiner of plays, films, news, etc.; *censure*, adverse judgment, expression of disapproval, to blame reprove or criticize unfavourably ; *e.g.*, The Assembly *censured* the Government."

11. **Centre, Middle**. *Centre* is often misused for *middle*, as, in "the *centre* of the road." *Middle* applies to mere linear extension

and to time but *centre* does not. *Centre* implies an object of definite outline and is more precise than *middle*. "We may find the *centre* of a ball, a box, or a picture; we put a chair in the *middle* of a room, keep to the *middle* of the road, wake in the *middle* of the night, stop in the *middle* of a speech, and live in the *middle* of the city."

12. **Cereal, Serial.** *Cereal*, edible; *serial*, a story published in instalments; *e.g.*, "The French eat a lot of *cereal*"; "This is a *serial* story."

13. **Ceremonial, Ceremonious.** *Ceremonial* means 'relating to ceremony' and *ceremonious* means 'particular in observing forms'; *e.g.*, "The old man is strict in the performance of *ceremonial* duties"; "Why should you be so *ceremonious* with an old friend?"

14. **Cession, Session.** *Cession* is from 'cede' and means 'a yielding up.' *Session* is the time when a court, or public body sits; *e.g.*, "By demanding the *cession* of a part of Pakistan territory, Afghanistan wants to serve India's nefarious ends"; "Not much work is done in the summer *session* in colleges."

15. **Change, Alter.** To *change* is 'to substitute one thing for another' and to *alter* is 'to make some difference in the same thing'; *e.g.*, "The moderate politicians in the country do not want a wholesale *change* of government"; 'The Principal *altered* the time-table to suit the requirements of the Senior Professor of English." But we use the expression *a changed man* in the sense of 'a wholly transformed man.'

16. **Check, Cheque.** To *check* is to arrest the motion of something or to test something. A *cheque* is a written order to a banker to pay named sum on drawer's account to the bearer of the cheque or to the named person. Now-a-days *cheque* is at times spelt as *check*, especially in America; *e.g.*, "Please *check* your horse, otherwise it will run away with the carriage"; "The auditor *checked* the accounts of the bank and found everything satisfactory"; "He gave me an order *cheque* for Rs. 200."

17. **Childish, Childlike.** The former is generally used in a bad sense and means *silly, trifling*, and the latter is used in a good sense and means *innocent* or *pure* or *simple* (like a child); *e.g.*, "Your conduct was silly, almost *childish*"; "I like the *childlike* simplicity of his character."

18. **Choir, Coir, Quire.** A *choir* is a *chorus* or band of singers; *coir* is the *fibre* of the husk of cocoanut; and *quire* is a collection of twenty-four sheets of paper; *e.g.*, "The church service began with the hymn sung by the village *choir*"; "Door-mats are usually made of *coir*"; "The cheapest foolscap paper sells at four annas per *quire*."

19. **Choler, Collar, Colour.** *Choler* is *anger*; a *collar* is a neckband of a coat, dress, etc., or a band of linen completing

the upper part of costume ; and *colour* is a particular *hue* like yellow or blue or red, etc. ; *e.g.*, "The *choler* of the valiant knight was excited by the rude words of the village churl" ; "He could not find the stud for his *collar*" ; "The deep blue *colour* of the Pakistan sky soothes the tired eye."

20. **Chord, Cord**. A *chord* is a *string* of a musical instrument and a *cord* is a thin rope ; *e.g.*, "Gray's *Elegy* touches a *chord* in every sympathetic bosom" ; "He tied the *cord* in a knot."

21. **Cite, Sight, Site**. To *cite* is to *quote* ; *sight* is *view* ; a *site* is a *place* chosen for any particular purpose ; *e.g.*, "He *cited* several stanzas from Shelley's *Ode to the West Wind*" ; "The *site* for the new college building was selected by the Principal of the college" ; "The river is in *sight*."

22. **Coarse, Course** *Coarse* (adj.) means rough, and *course* (n.) a part of a dinner or a line of action ; *e.g.*, "He is rather *coarse* in his bearing and is disliked in polished society" ; "The dinner consisted of seven *courses*" ; "What *course* are you going to adopt ?"

23. **Collision, Collusion**. *Collision* means *dashing together* and *collusion*, a *secret, fraudulent agreement* ; *e.g.*, "In a *collision* between a tram-car and a bus two persons were killed and sixteen seriously injured" ; "The thief was in *collusion* with the servant of the house."

24. **Coma, Comma**. *Coma* is *stupor* resulting from some serious illness, and *comma* is a punctuation mark ; *e.g.*, "The patient was in a state of *coma* for three hours" ; "No *comma* is needed in this place."

25. **Compare with, Compare to**. Two men are *compared with* each other, but a man is *compared to* a tree and *vice versa*. Things belonging to the same class are *compared with* each other ; different things are *compared to* each other ; *e.g.*, "*Compare* this essay *with* the other and say which is better" ; "He is often *compared to* a goat as he is all whiskers and beard."

26. **Comparison, Contrast**. *Comparison* denotes *likeness* in the quality and *difference* in the degree of the quality, and *contrast* denotes *difference* in the quality and *likeness* in the degree. Two good men may be *compared* to find out who is better, and a very bad man be *contrasted* with a very good man. When we say *compare and contrast* Akbar and Aurangzeb as statesmen, we mean that the likeness between them as also the difference should be pointed out ; *e.g.*, "*Compare* this mosque with the other" ; "*Contrast* the policy of Gladstone with that of Disraeli" ; "There is no *comparison* between Milton and Shelley ; there is a lively *contrast* between these two poets."

27. **Compensation, Remuneration**. *Compensation* is what is given or received for some loss sustained, and *remuneration* is the

payment received or given for some service ; *e.g.*, "The working-man who was disabled by the sudden fall of masonry on his lower limbs has received *compensation* from the company" ; "He received insufficient *remuneration* for the work he did for Mr. Jones."

28. **Complacent, Complaisant.** *Complacent* means *pleased* and *complaisant* means *polite, obliging* ; *e.g.*, "Villagers are notoriously *complacent* in their outlook" ; "The young wife was always *complaisant*, but at heart she disliked the new surroundings."

29. **Complement, Compliment.** *Complement* is that which completes or makes full, and a *compliment* is a praise or an expression of admiration, civility, etc. ; *e.g.*, "These four men form the *complement* to the band of labourers now engaged in road building ; when they join up the work will be properly regulated and speeded up" ; "He paid the girl a nice *compliment* and pleased her immensely."

30. **Complete, Finish.** The distinction is subtle. Students should note the difference in the examples given below : "He expects to *complete* the building of the house in two weeks more" ; "He *finished* his dinner in a hurry."

31. **Comprehensive, Comprehensible.** *Comprehensive* means *extensive* and *comprehensible* means 'capable of being understood' ; *e.g.*, "This book is quite *comprehensive*, it contains almost everything about the subject" ; "His words are not comprehensible."

32. **Compulsion, Obligation.** There is *compulsion* when we have to do a thing against our will, and there is *obligation* when we have to do a thing as a duty ; *e.g.*, "People will pay this unjust and exorbitant tax only under *compulsion*, not otherwise" ; "It is an *obligation* to help him, for did he not help me out of my difficulty last year !"

33. **Condemn, Contemn.** To *condemn* a man or thing is to pronounce him or it to be grievously wrong ; to *contemn* is to *despise* (*cf.*, *contempt*) ; *e.g.*, "The conduct of the police official was *condemned* by the Magistrate" ; "We should not *contemn* the little things."

34. **Confess, Admit.** To *admit* is to acknowledge or concede as true ; to give assent to ; *e.g.*, "He *admitted* that he was present when the accident took place." To *confess* is not only to concede that a fact is true, but also to acknowledge responsibility or guilt ; *e.g.*, "He *confessed* that he caused the accident."

35. **Confidant, Confident.** A *confidant* is a person who is entrusted with secrets, and *confident* means 'having confidence' ; *e.g.*, "The girl had no *confidant* to whom she could tell her secret" ; "He is *confident* of success."

36. **Conscious, Conscience, Conscientious, Consensus.** The word *conscious* is an adjective and means 'aware' ; *conscience*

is a noun, and means 'moral sense of right and wrong'; *conscientious* is an adjective from conscience, and means *scrupulous*; *consensus* means *agreement* of opinion, testimony, etc.); *e.g.*, "I am *conscious* of my defects. Our *conscience* is not a marketable thing; we cannot sell it"; "He will easily be content and at peace whose *conscience* is pure"; "He is a dutiful, *conscientious* man"; "There is a wide *consensus* of opinion in this country regarding the desirability of holding early general elections."

37. **Considerable, Considerate.** *Considerable* means 'much,' 'moderately large' or 'important,' and *considerate* means 'thoughtful for others'; *e.g.*, "A *considerable* sum of money has been spent in improving this locality"; "Being a *considerate* man, he always looks to the comfort of others."

38. **Contagious, Infectious.** A *contagious* disease is one that is caught by contact; an *infectious* disease is liable to be transmitted through air or water, etc.; *e.g.*, "Smallpox is a *contagious* disease, but Malaria is an *infectious* one."

39. **Contemptible, Contemptuous.** *Contemptible* is applied to that which is the object of contempt, and *contemptuous* is applied to that which expresses contemt. Both are adjectives; *e.g.*, "He is a *contemptible* fellow, he would do anything for money"; "He dismissed the man with a *contemptuous* gesture."

40. **Contented, Satisfied.** A *contented* man does not want anything more, and a *satisfied* man has obtained all that he wanted. Contentment means something fuller than satisfaction; *e.g.*, "A *contented* mind is the greatest blessing a man can enjoy in this world"; "I wanted a new coat and my father gave me one; so I am perfectly *satisfied*."

41. **Contentment, Satiety.** *Satiety* is the glutted or satiated state, the feeling of having had too much of something. *Contentment* is on the other hand, a calm and pleasant feeling; *e.g.*, "True *cantentment* depends not upon what we have; a tub was large enough for Diogenes, but a world was too little for Alexander"; "Some are cursed with the fullness of *satiety*; and how can they bear the ills of life, when its very pleasures fatigue them?"

42. **Continuance, Continuation, Continuity.** *Continuance* is the *going on* or *duration* of something, and *continuation* is the *carrying* or *resumption* of an action, course, story, book, etc. *Continuity* is the state of being continuous; *e.g.*, "The *continuance* of the British rule in Pakistan depends upon the willing co operation of tke people"; "The further *continuation* of this financial policy will ruin the country"; "This chapter which contains irrelevant matter breaks the *continuity* of the story."

43. **Continuous, Continual, Contiguous.** *Continuous* is applied to that which is not interrupted so long as it lasts.

Continual is that which is constantly renewed, though interrupted. *Continuous* means *adjoining* ; *e.g.*, "It has been raining *continuously* from ten o'clock in the morning" ; "There was a *continual* shower of rain in Lahore during the last week" ; "*Contiguous* to the former Punjab was the former state of Bahawalpur."

44. **Cool, Cold**. *Cold* is opposed to warm, and *cool* just denotes absence of warmth. A *cool* breeze is delightful, but not a *cold* breeze : *e.g.*,

> Here are *cool* mosses deep. —Tennyson
>
> *Coldly*, sadly descends
> The autumn evening. —Arnold.
>
> *Cold* in the earth—and the deep snow piled above thee,
> Far, far, removed, *cold* in the dreary grave.
> —E. Bronte

45. **Coporal, Corporeal**. The former means pertaining to the body or a non-commissioned officer in the army. The latter means having a body ; *e.g.*, "Nowadays it is not the custom to inflict *corporal* punishments in schools" ; "Shelley's skylark, like Wordsworth's cuckoo, is an idealised creature which has hardly any *corporeal* existence."

46. **Corps, Corpse**. A *corps* is a division of an army, and a *corpse* is a dead body ; *e.g.*, "The Punjab University Training *Corps* has given a good account of itself" ; "*Corpses* littered the streets of Algiers during a recent French bombardment."

47. **Council, Counsel**. A *council* is an *assembly*, and a *counsel* means an *advice* or a *lawyer* engaged by a party ; *e.g.*, "Truth is not to be found in the *councils* of men" ; "The kingdom of Israel was first rent and broken by ill *counsel* ; upon which there are set, for our instruction, the two marks whereby bad *counsel* is ever best discerned—that it was young *counsel* for the persons and violent *counsel* for the matter." —Bacon.

48. **Credible, Credulous, Creditable**. *Credible* means *believable*. *Credulous* means 'apt to believe without sufficient evidence.' *Creditable* is derived from credit and means 'worthy of praise'; *e.g.*, "What you say is hardly *credible*" ; "It is a *creditable* performance on the part of a first year student, and he should get some recognition for it" ; "The most positive men are the most *credulous*, since they most believe themselves, and advise most with their falsest flatterer and worst enemy—their self-love." —Pope

49. **Crime, Sin, Vice**. A *crime* is an act committed against the laws of the state ; *sin* is committed against the laws of religion, and a *vice* against the law of morality ; *e.g.*, "*Crime* is not punished as an offence against God, but as prejudicial to society" ; "*Sin* is essentially a departure from God" ; "*Crimes* sometimes shock us too much ; *vice* almost always too little."

50. **Cue, Queue**. *Cue* means a signal, specially the last words in a speech in a play, serving as signal to another actor to enter or speak. *Queue* means 'line of persons or vehicles, etc., awaiting their turn to be attended to or proceed'; *e.g.*, "A long *queue* was formed before the booking office as there was a great rush of passengers."

Were it my *cue* to fight, I should have known it
Without a prompter. —Shakespeare : Othello.

51. **Custom, Habit**. *Custom* means *usual practice*. *Habit* is settled tendency or practice, a mental or bodily constitution. We acquire a *habit*, but we follow a *custom*; *e.g.*

Man yields to *custom* as he bows to fate.
In all things ruled, mind, body, and estate. —Crabbe.
How use doth breed a *habit* in a man. —Shakespeare.

52. **Cymbal, Symbol**. *Cymbal* is a kind of musical instrument, and *symbol* is a thing that represents or typifies another thing; *e.g.*, "The Pyramids of Egypt are a *symbol* of the power and greatness of the ancient Egyptians."

The earnest trumpets spake, and silver trills
From kissing *cymbals* made a merry din—
'Twas Bacchus and his kin! —Keats.

D

1. **Dear, Deer**. *Dear* means *expensive or precious to a person*; but *deer* is a species of wild animals. Thus we say, "This table is very *dear* at this price," or "My *dear* daughter," but "He shot at a *deer*."

2. **Dearness, Dearth**. *Dearness* means *high price*, *dearth* means *scarcity*; *e.g.*, "The present *dearness* of wheat is due to the prevalence of a kind of past a few months back" "There is a great *dearth* of wheat in this area."

3. **Decided, Decisive**. *Decided* means *definite*, and *decisive* means 'that which terminates something finally'; *e.g.*, "It is my *decided* opinion that we cannot get any concession from the college authorities by going on strike"; "The first Battle of *Panipat* was a *decisive* one."

4. **Declaim, Disclaim**. *Declaim* means to speak rhetorically and pompously in public, as "He *declaimed* against civil liberties." *Disclaim* means to renounce, or to disavow any interest in, connection with, or responsibility for something.

5. **Decry, Descry**. To *decry* is to *disparage* or cry down; to *descry* is too see dimly or to discover; *e.g.*, "We should not *decry* his honest though unsuccessful attempts"; "Across the waste of waters we could *descry* a palm tree dimly outlined against the horizon."

6. **Deduce, Deduct**. To *deduce* is to *infer*, and to *deduct* is to take something away from something; *e.g.*, "*Deduce* whatever

conclusions you like from what I have said, but pray believe that I am sincere"; "A sum of Rs. 20 was *deducted* from his allowance."

7. **Defective, Deficient.** *Defective* implies faultiness or unsatisfactory quality; *deficient* implies insufficient quantity or total lack. A person's muscles or his knowledge of mathematics may be *defective* (or *deficient*, *i.e.*, not sufficient or quite wanting), whereas he himself may be *deficient* in muscle or in the knowledge of mathematics. Thus both of these epithets may be applied to the same noun, but with a difference in meaning.

8. **Defend, Protect.** A person or thing is *defended* against present danger, but *protected* from an approaching danger; *e.g.*, "They *defended* the fort against the assaults of the Royal Army heroically"; "England is more or less *protected* by the waters of the sea from any sudden and decisive attack."

9. **Deference, Difference.** *Deference* means *regard*, and *difference* means *dissimilarity*; *e.g.*, "As I was his teacher the newly-appointed Deputy Commissioner treated me with *deference*"; "What is the *difference* between this tree and that?"

10. **Definite, Definitive.** *Definite*, precise; *definitive*, final, as "I will not marry; this is *definite*"; "The reply is *definitive*."

11. **Defy, Deify.** To *defy* is to *challenge*, and to *deify* is to worship as a deity or to make a god of; *e.g.*, "I *defy* all to prove that I did anything wrong"; "Stalin was once *deified* by his countrymen."

12. **Delicious, Delightful.** *Delicious* refers to the pleasures of the senses only, particularly *taste* and *smell*; *delightful* refers both to the pleasures of the senses (except *taste*) and those of the mind; *e.g.*, "This is a *delicious* dish"; "This is indeed a *delightful* book."

13. **Deliverance, Delivery.** *Deliverance* means rescue from bondage, etc., and *delivery* means uttering of speech or handing over etc.,; *e.g.*, "He prayed to God for *deliverance* from the bondage of sin and ignorance"; "His *delivery* is not attractive"; "I want immediate *delivery* of this letter; you should start at once with it."

14. **Dependant, Dependent.** A *dependant* is one who depends on another for his maintenance, and *dependent* is an adjective, meaning 'relying on'; *e.g.*, "I have a large number of *dependants* to look after"; "Napoleon was *dependent* upon his own miraculous mind for devising every plan of campaign."

15. **Dependence, Dependency.** The former means *reliance*, and the latter means a *colony*; *e.g.* "*Dependence* on self is the only way to success, and *dependence* on God the only way to salvation"; "Algeria is a *dependency* of France."

16. **Deny, Refuse.** We *deny* the truth of a statement or fact,

but we *refuse* a thing or to do something ; *e.g.*, "I *denied* ever having been helped by him" ; "I *refused* to go with him."

17. **Depositary, Depository**. The former is a person with whom antyhing is deposited, a trustee ; *depository* is a *storehouse* ; *e.g.*, "He is the trusted *depositary* of the ornaments and other valuable movables of the widow" ; "He is a veritable *depository* of learning."

18. **Depreciate, Deprecatc**. To *deprecate* is to cry against and to *depreciate* is to undervalue ; *e.g.*, "He *deprecated* my attempt at helping her and tried to discover some selfish motive behind it" ; "The authorities *depreciated* the plan submitted by the young man."

19. **Descent, Dissent**. *Descent* is *fall* or *derivation* and *dissent* means 'to differ' or 'disagreement' : *e.g.*, "They trace their *descent* from the Mongols" ; "One member of the committee submitted a minute of *dissent* as he did not agree to some of the proposals."

20. **Desert, Deserts, Dessert**. A *desert* is a barren place, and *deserts* means 'what one deserves' ; *dessert* is the fruit course at the end of the dinner ; *e.g.*, "The Sahara is the largest *desert* in the world" ; "He was rebuked by his boss and thus got his *deserts*" ; "The *dessert* course was liked by all."

21. **Desire, Need, Require, Want, Wish**. *Desire* is unsatisfied appetite or longing for something, and *wish* is a remote and generally weak and idle desire ; *e.g.*, "I *desire* his company more then ever" ; "I *wish* he would come." *Need* is the imperative demand for something, and *want* is the lack of something or absence of it. *Require* is a verb and means to need or ask in words ; (*e.g.*, "My presence is *required*" or "They *require* my presence" *e.g.*, I *want* many things but I *need* only a few of them."

22. **Destination, Destiny**. *Destination* means *goal*, and *destiny* means *fate* ; *e.g.*, "My *destination* is Lahore" ; "Man is the maker of his own *destiny*."

23. **Device, Devise.** The former is the noun and the latter the verb (*e.g.*, advice, advise) ; *e.g.*, He *devised* many plans but all of them came to naught.

> It was a miracle of rare *device*,
> A sunny pleasure-dome with caves of ice ! —Coleridge.

24. **Dew, Due**. *Dew*, moisture on grass ; *due*, owing, ascribable to ; *e.g.*, "The *dew* had fallen" ; "Give the devil his *due*."

25. **Die, Dye**. *Die*, to cease to live ; *dye*, to colour.

26. **Diligence, Industry**. The former denotes serious application to some special object for some time, and the latter denotes habitual devotion to labour ; *e.g.*, "He is very *diligent* in his studies and will certainly pass" ; "*Industry* is the mother of success."

27. **Diminish, Minimize.** *Diminish* means to 'make or become less' ; *minimize* means 'to make least,' *i.e.*, to reduce to the lowest amount. So when a man's income is reduced 20 per cent it *diminishes* ; but when you try to save a boy from punishment you *minimize* his guilt.

28. **Dinghy, Dingy.** *Dinghy*, a small boat ; *dingy*, drab-looking. "Tom sat in a *dinghy*" ; "I live in a dingy room."

29. **Disbelief, Unbelief.** *Unbelief* is just the absence of belief, but *disbelief* is positive denial of the truth of something ; *e.g.*, "I think *disbelief* is more honest than *unbelief* ; the former is due to conviction, the latter to ignorance."

30 **Disclose, Expose.** *Disclose* means to reveal any fact, whether good or bad. *Expose* means to place in a dangerous situation, as "to *expose* one's self to storm."

31. **Discover, Invent.** To *discover* something is to find out something which existed before but was unknown ; we *invent* that which did not exist before ; *e.g.*, "The *discovery* of America by Columbus led to momentous changes in European life" ; "The *invention* of the printing press is attributed to the Chinese."

32. **Disease, Decease.** *Disease is malady* or *illness*, and *decease* means *death* ; *e g.*, "He is suffering from an incurable *disease*" ; "Due to the sudden *decease* of his father he had to give up his studies."

33. **Disinterested, Uninterested.** *Disinterested* means freedom from bias or prejudice, freedom from personal or selfish motives. A *disinterested* person is one who has no axe to grind, no 'interest' in the sense of expectation or advantage ; a *disinterested* action is one performed without hope of any return. *Uninterested* means merely lacking in interest. A poor spectator may feel *uninterested* in cricket when he finds that a batsman takes an hour to score ten runs.

34. **Displace, Replace.** To *displace* is to put out of the natural or customary place ; as to *displace* a book in the library. To *replace* is to fill the place of something ; *e.g.*, "The lost book must be *replaced* by a new copy."

35. **Divers, Diverse.** *Divers* means several or sundry ; as, "*Divers* men tried to solve the problem" ; "*Divers* plans were suggested." *Diverse* means markedly different or unlike ; as "Their views were as *diverse* as London and Paris."

36. **Doubt, Suspect.** To *doubt* is to waver between belief and disbelief, to *suspect* is to imagine (a person, etc.) to be guilty ; *e.g.*, "I have no manner of *doubt* that Shakespeare was a great thinker" ; "He is *suspected* to be the murderer."

37. **Draft, Draught, Drought.** A *draft* is a rough sketch ; *draught* is the quantity drunk at a time or a current of

air ; *drought* is the want of rain ; *e.g.*, "Here is a *draft* of the application I want to make."

> O, for a *draught* of vintage ! that hath been.
> Cool'd a long age in the deep-delved earth. —Keats.
>
> And every tongue, through utter *drought*,
> Was withered at the root. —Coleridge.

38. **Draughtsman, Draftsman**. The former prepares drawings and plans for buildings, etc., whereas the latter drafts documents ; *e.g.*, "The *draughtsman* prepared the plan of this building" ; but "Jennings was the *draftsman* of the Pakistan constitution."

39. **Drown, Sink**. *Drown* is used of animate objects, and *sink* of both animate and inanimate objects, *e.g.*,

> Like one that hath been seven days *drowned*,
> My body lay afloat.' —Coleridge.
>
> Upon the whirl, where *sank* the ship,
> The boat spun round and round. —Coleridge.

E

1. **Economic, Economical**. *Economic* is associated only with *economics*, and *economical* only with *economy*. An *economic* rent is one in the fixing of which the laws of supply and demand have had free play ; an *economical* rent is one that is not extravagant ; in practice the first generally means a rent not too low for the landlord, and the second one not too high for the tenant.

2. **Efface, Deface**. To *efface* is to *blot out*, and to *deface* is to *disfigure* ; *e g.* "Nothing could *efface* the blot on the white wall" ; "You should not *deface* the walls by sticking handbills."

3. **Effectual, Effective, Efficacious, Efficient**. *Effectual* applies to action apart from the agent, and means 'not falling short of the complete effect aimed at.' "The means he employed were *effectual* (*i.e.*, produced the desired effect)." *Effective* means 'having a high degree of effect.' "The medicine he took was *effective* (operative)." *Efficacious* means 'sure to have the desired effect' It is used of things, principally medicines. "Quinine is *efficacious* (produces the desired result) in malarial fever." *Efficient*, productive of effect ; (of person) competent, capable. "He is an *efficient* teacher."

4. **Elemental, Elementary**. The former means 'pertaining to elements,' and the latter means 'rudimentary' ; *e.g.*, "Lear was exposed to the *elemental* fury on the heath at night" ; "Your knowledge of geography is nothing but *elementary*."

5. **Elicit, Illicit**. *Elicit* is a verb meaning to draw out, to educe ; *e.g.* "Cross-examination failed to *elicit* any cogent reason for his being present at the critical moment." *Illicit* is an adjective meaning unlawful ; *e.g.*, "He had *illicit* relations with her" ; "*Illicit* distillation of wine is punishable by law."

6. **Eligible, Illegible.** *Eligible* means fit to be chosen, and *illegible* means 'indistinct' ; *e.g.* "No retired person is *eligible* for this post" ; "He writes an *illegible* hand and the officers have warned him on many occasions to be more careful.

7. **Ellusive, Illusive, Illusory.** *Elusive* means baffling, escaping from grasp etc. *Illusive* means *deceptive*, and *illusory* means the same thing ; *e.g.*, "Shelley's language is often *elusive*" ; "The will-o'-the-wisp is an *illusive* or *illusory* light seen in marshy places."

8. **Emigrant, Immigrant.** The former is a person who leaves his own country and goes to live in another, and the latter is a person who comes to one country from another to live there ; *e.g.*, "Many *emigrants* leave England every year for Australia" ; The *immigrants* in Canada do not enjoy full rights and privileges of the country these days."

9. **Eminent, Imminent.** *Eminent* means *distinguished* ; *imminent*, *impending* ; *e.g.*, "Dr. Raziuddin Siddiqui is an *eminent* scientist" ; "He is in *imminent* danger of losing his job."

10. **Empty, Vacant.** "An *empty* room is one that has no furniture or other contents. A *vacant* room may be well furnished but it is unoccupied by persons. *Empty* is the literal term, as an *empty* house ; *Vacant* is less literal, as a *vacant* stare.

11. **Endemic, Epidemic.** An *endemic* disease is one habitually prevalent in a particular place ; an *epidemic* disease is one that breaks out in a place and lasts for a time only.

12. **Enough, Sufficient.** *Enough* indicates a greater quantity than *sufficient*. When our wants are just satisfied we use *sufficient*, but when even our desires are satisfied we use *enough* ; *e.g.*, "For an ambitious politician even a place in the Cabinet is not *enough*" ; "For an average Pakistan an income of Rs. 100 per months is *sufficient*, though no educated Pakistani would think it *enough*."

13. **Envelop, Envelope.** *Envelop*, to surround, to wrap up ; *Envelope*, the cover of a letter ; *e.g.*, "The mist *envelolped* us" ; "Put this typed letter in the *envelope* and post it."

14 **Enviable, Envious.** *Enviable* means arousing envy ; *envious* means feeling envy ; *e.g.*, "His *enviable* position makes many people *envious* of him."

15. **Eruption, Irruption.** *Eruption* is bursting out, *irruption* is sudden invasion ; *e.g.*, "Some years back there was an earthquake in Japan attended with volcanic *eruption*" ; "The *irruption* of the Huns destroyed the fabric of the Roman Empire."

16. **Especially, Specially.** *Especially* means 'to an exceptional degree' ; *specially* means 'for one purpose and no other' ; "The weather has been *especially* cold" ; "I came *specially* to see you" ; "He made a *special* trip" ; "He came *specially* for this

meeting" ; "You have an *especial* opportunity" ; "Conditions are *especially* favourable."

17. **Eternal, Everlasting, Perennial.** *Eternal* is applied to that which has no beginning or end ; *everlasting*, to that which has a beginning but no end ; *perennial* means *perpetual*, *never failing* ; *e.g.*, "Contentment is a *perennial* source of happiness."

> That, deaf and silent, read'st the *eternal* deep,
> Haunted for ever by the *eternal* Mind. —Wordsworth.

> Where the sunshine falls
> Upon the *everlasting* hills. —Christina Rossetti.

18. **Euphemism, Euphuism.** *Euphemism* means such words or phrases or the use of such words or phrases as soften down offensive expressions, as "Mistress is a *euphemism* for a concubine." "*Euphuism* means artificial or affected style of writing in imitation of Lily's *Euphues*, 1580."

19. **Event, Accident.** An *event* is an occurrence of some importance not necessarily unexpected ; *e.g.*, "The murder of Julius Caesar was an *event* that influenced the history of the Roman Empire." An *accident* is something that is unexpected and happens by chance and often carries with it the idea of misfortune ; *e.g.*, "He met with an *accident* and broke his leg."

20. **Exceptional, Exceptionable.** The former means *rare*, *unusual*, and the latter means *objectionable* ; *e.g.*, "In some *exceptional* cases a candidate who has failed to secure pass marks may be promoted" ; "Your speech contained *exceptionable* passages and some people are not at all pleased with you"

21. **Excessive, Exceeding.** *Excessive* applies to that which goes beyond just or reasonable amount or measure ; *e.g.*, "*Excessive* leisure leads to vice." *Exceeding* applies to that which is unusual or extraordinary in quantity or extent ; *e.g.*, "Your *exceeding* kindness is greatly appreciated."

22. **Excite, Incite.** To *excite* is to produce some agitation, and to *incite* is to arouse to action. The latter is used in a bad sense ; *e.g.*, "He was so *excited* that he could not speak for some time" ; "Being an unscrupulous man he *incited* his followers to stage a demonstration."

23. **Excuse, Forgive, Pardon.** *Excuse* is the weakest of the three and is used with reference to trifling matters ; *forgive* is used in case of slightly graver offences and we ask for *pardon* in case of a serious offence ; *e.g.*, "He that is good for making *excuses*, is seldom good for anything else" ; "The man who *pardons* easily, courts injury." "Never does the human soul appear so strong and noble as when it forgives revenge, and dares to *forgive* an injury."

> To err is human ; to *forgive* is divine. —Pope.

24. **Excuse me, I am sorry, Pardon me, I beg your pardon**. The phrases *Excuse me* and *I beg your pardon* are in the first place used for very slight offences and the apology is only purfunctory. *Excuse me* is also used for posing questions which it might be undesirable to ask or inconvenient to answer. Thus we say, "*Excuse me*, could you tell me where you were last night ?" *I beg your pardon* is further used either before correcting oneself or for asking the other person to repeat what he has said just now. "*I beg your pardon* ; I will read it out to you again." Here forgiveness is asked for one's mistake before one corrects it himself. "*I beg your pardon*." This implies that I did not quite get what the other person was saying to me. So I asked him to be good enough to repeat the words he had said earlier. *I am sorry*, on the other hand, is used when one is tendering an apology for some serious offence.

25. **Exhausting, Exhaustive**. *Exhausting* means producing exhaustion in a literal sense ; *e.g.*, "*Exhausting* work, exercise, or other activity." *Exhaustive* means thorough ; *e.g.*, "An *exhaustive* investigation, report or study."

26. **Expedient, Expeditious**. The former is nearly always used predicatively and means 'advantageous' ; the latter means 'done (or doing) speedily, prompt,' *e.g.*, "It is *expedient* that we should use *expeditious* means of putting condemned criminals to death."

27. **Expenditure, Expense**. *Expenditure* means generally the 'act of spending' whereas *expense* means that 'which is spent' ; *e.g.*, "*Expenditure* and income should be proportionate to each other" ; "I cannot defray the *expenses* of my journey."

28. **Extract, Extricate**. Here are examples of their use : "Honey is *extracted* from flowers" ; "The poor coolie was, however, soon *extricated*(*i.e.*, disentangled or released) from the debris."

F

1. **Facetious, Factious, Factitious, Fictitious**. *Facetious* means witty, jocular ; *factious* means quarrelsome, turbulent ; *factitious* means artificial, designedly got up ; and *fictitious* means counterfeit, not genuine ; *e g.*, "He is very popular because he is always *facetious* and cheerful" ; "He is by disposition *factious* and is disliked by everybody" ; "He advanced a *factitious* argument" ; "He presented a *fictitious* document in the court."

2. **Fain, Feign**. The former denotes willingness, the latter means 'to pretend,' ; *e.g.*, "I would *fain* see my friend again" ; "He *feigned* deafness and that saved him from a lot of trouble."

3. **Faint, Feint**. As an adjective *faint* means indistinct, as a verb, 'to swoon.' *Feint* means *pretence* ; *e.g.*, "I heard a *faint* murmur" ; "He *fainted*" ; "He made a *feint* of doing it, but I knew he was not sincere."

4. **Fair, Fare**. *Fair*, beautiful, just ; *fare*, charge for conveyance of a passenger. A *fair* woman ; a *fair* proposal ; the railway *fare*.

5. **Falsehood, Lie.** *Falsehood* does not necessarily indicate any intention of deception, whereas *lie* is an intentional violation of truth, calculated to deceive others ; *e.g.*, "It is more from carelessness about the truth, than from intention of *lying*, that there is so much *falsehood* in the world."

6. **Famous, Illustrious, Notable, Noted, Notorious**. *Famous, illustrious* and *notable* are always used in a good sense. *Illustrious* means *distinguished*, and *notable* means 'worthy of note.' *Noted* is used in a good or in a bad sense, as the case may be. *Notorious* is always used in a bad sense ; *e.g.*, "New York is *famous* for its sky-scrapers" ; "He was an *illustrious* son of the soil" ; "The Pyramids are *notable* monuments of Egyptian architecture"; "He is *noted* for his piety" ; "He is *noted* for his habit of lying" ; "He is *notorious* for his laziness and sloth."

7. **Farther, Further**. "To use these words interchangeably is not a serious violation of precision of speech. *Far, farther, further, farthest, furthest*—all of these may be used in referring to space covered. *Further* has another meaning. It means *additional*. The best writers and speakers use *far, farther, farthest*, in referring to space. They use *further* to mean *additional* and they seldom use *furthest*."—(*Hadida*) ; *e.g.*, "Jones walked *farther* than I"; "Have you anything *further* to say ?"

8. **Fatal, Fatalist, Fateful**. *Fatal* means *deadly*, and *fatalist* is a man who believes that everything depends on fate ; *fateful* means 'producing important results' ; *e.g.*, "It was a *fatal* wound"; "I am temperamentally a *fatalist*"; "It was a *fateful* decision."

9. **Fate, Fete**. *Fate*, that which is preordained ; *fete*, to entertain, or entertainment ; *e.g.*, "One cannot will away *fate*"; "A *fete* to celebrate the Jubilee"; "He was *feted* on the occasion."

10. **Felicity, Facility**. The former means *happiness*, and the latter means *ease, opportunity* ; *e.g.*, "True *felicity* cannot be enjoyed by a sinner"; "What *facilities* do you enjoy there ?"

11. **Festal, Festive**. *Festal* means pertaining to a feast or a holiday ; as, "a *festal* occasion." *Festive* means joyous, gay, mirthful ; as "a *festive* company."

12. **Fetch, Bring** *Fetch* means *to go and bring* (something); *e.g.*, "He went to *fetch* a lamp from the hall" ; "He should *bring* his brother with him when he comes."

13. **Fewer, Less**. *Fewer* applies to *number*, as "*fewer* books." *Less* applies to *size*, or "*less* money." When the amount is thought of as a unit, *less* is used, as "*Less* than five rupees"; "I ordered *fewer* horses and *less* corn."

14. **Financial, Monetary, Pecuniary**. *Financial* generally applies to public funds, *monetary* and *pecuniary* to private transactions. In *monetary* transactions money is actually involved, in *pecuniary* offers, indirectly so; *e.g.*, "The *financial* affairs of the new Government as not being well managed"; "One should be careful in all *monetary* transactions to give a receipt or to ask for one"; "My *pecuniary* difficulties are not of a serious character."

15. **Flagrant, Fragrant**. We always speak of "*flagrant* (glaring, notorious, scandalous) crimes" and "*fragrant* flowers."

16. **Flee, Fly**. Birds never *flee*, but defeated enemies *flee*. But *fly*, *flying* are nowadays generally substituted for *flee*, *fleeing*; etc. We *flee from* a dangerous person or thing, as "He *fled from* the enemy (or from the tiger)"; but we simply *flee* a place, as "He fled the country," or "He fled down the street." *i.e.*, in order to escape from someone pursuing him or hunting him down.

17. **Flour, Flower**. *Flour*, ground grain; *flower*, a bloom.

18. **Forceful, Forcible**. *Forceful* means full of or possessing force; as, "The speaker had a *forceful* personality." *Forcible* means done by force or compulsion; as "The police made a *Forcible* entry."

19. **Fore, Four**. *Fore*, in front; *four*, a number. Shaukat Ali came to the *fore* in the debate; "Two and two always make four."

20. **Forego, Forge, Forgo**. *Forego*, to precede in place or time, as a *foregone* conclusion; *forge*, make way, advance gradually or with difficulty as *forge* ahead steadily; *forgo* to abstain from, or go without, as "I glady *forgo* this luxury."

21. **Formalism, Formality**. *Formalism* means habitual observance of rules or rites, and *formality* means ceremony; *e.g.*, "*Formalism* is not religion, just as the body is not the soul"; "You should not observe *formalities* when you are receiving an old friend."

22. **Formally, Formerly**. *Formally*, with the usual forms or ceremony; *formerly*, at an earlier period; *e.g.*, "The exhibition was *formerly* opened by the Governor"; "*Formerly* there was no railway station here."

23. **Foul Fowl**. *Foul* is an adjective and means *dirty*; *fowl* is a noun and means a bird; *e.g.*, "The beasts of the field and the *fowls* of the air."

> Fair is *foul* and *foul* is fair.
> Hover through the fog and filthy air.
>
> —Shakespeare : *Macbeth*.

24. **Fourth, Forth**. *Fourth*, a numeral; *forth*, forward.

25. **Freedom, Liberty**. *Freedom* has reference to a personal and private privilege, whereas *liberty* is that which is enjoyed by a

country or people, etc., *e.g.*, "In England every citizen enjoys *freedom* of action in private affairs" ; "Full *liberty* for their country is the dream of the Algerian people."

26. **Frequent, Common** The following sentences illustrate the difference between these two words : "Mispronunciation was *common* in their talks" ; "Cases of mispronunciation were *frequent*."

27. **From, Since, For**. *Since* is used before *point of time* ; or before *period of time* ; *e.g.*, "He worked *from* morning till evening." "He has been working *since* two o clock": "He has been working *for* the last two days."

28 **Funeral, Funereal**. Funeral means 'pertaining to a burial,' and 'funereal' means *dismal* ; *e.g.*, "I attended the *funeral* ceremony of my friend's mother yesterday" ; "He had a gloomy, *funereal* look which made me anxious."

G

1. **Gage, Gauge, Gaze**. *Gage* is a thing deposited as security, pledge ; *Gauge* is the standard measure to which things must conform, and as a verb, it means 'measure exactly.' To *gaze* is to *look* ; *e.g.*, "These valuable ornaments were given as a *gage*" ; "Take the *gauge* of this thing and let me know."

Gazed at each other with a wild surmise. —Keats.

2 **Gamble, Gambol**. *Gamble* is a game of chance, to *gambol* is to frisk about ; *e g.*, "*Gambling* is bound to ruin a man in the long run"; "Young lambs were *gambolling* in the meadow."

3. **General, Universal, Common** *General* refers to the greater part or number, etc., of anything and *universal* refers to the whole of anything. *Common* means ordinary, or belonging to more than one or all ; *e.g.*, "It is *generally* true that men are led to do things by selfish motives" ; "That man is mortal is a *universal* truth" ; "Early marriage was a *common* practice in this country, though it was not *universal*."

4. **Genius, Talent**. The poet Coleridge once "drew the distinction between *talent* and *genius* by comparing the first to a watch and the last to an eye ; both were beautiful, but one was only a piece of ingenious mechanism, while the other was a production above all art. *Talent* was a manufacture ; *genius* a gift that no labour nor study could supply ; nobody could make an eye but anybody, duly instructed, could make a watch" ; *e.g.*, "The poet Southey was a *talented* man, but Wordsworth was a *genius*."

5. **Genteel, Gentle**. The former means 'graceful in form,' and the latter means *mild* or *well-born* ; *e g.*, "The young man had a *genteel* appearance and he pleased us all" ; "He is a *gentle* and sober man, and never likes to enter into a quarrel."

6. **Got up, Get up**. "I *got up* from bed early in the morning."

But *get-up* means 'general appearance, binding,' etc ; *e.g.*, "He admired the *get-up* of this book."

7. **Ghastly, Ghostly**. *Ghastly* means *pale, shocking*, etc., and *ghostly* means 'pertaining to spirit' ; *e.g.*, Hamlet was shocked to see the *ghostly* figure of his father.

> Each turned his face with a *ghastly* pang.
> And cursed me with his eye. —Coleridge.

8. **Gild, Guild**. To *gild* is to apply a thin covering of gold or some other metal, and a *guild* is a society of men belonging to a particular profession ; *e.g.*, "The *gilded* domes of the mosque glittered in the sunlight" ; "In mediaeval times, all the artisans were organized into *guilds* which looked after their interests."

9. **Go, Come**. Study the following example : "I hear that you are *going* to the pictures." Will you *come* with me ?"

10. **Goal, Gaol.** *Goal* is the end or aim, and a *gaol* is a *jail* ; *e.g.*, "We must reach our *goal*" ; "He was sent to *gaol* for stealing a watch."

11. **Godlike, Godly**. *God-like* means 'like God,' and *godly* means *pious* ; *e g.*, "He is a *God-like* man"; "The clergyman led a *godly* life."

12. **Good, Goodly**. *Good* means *possessing desirable qualities*, *e.g.*, "He is a good man." *Goodly* mean large, as "a *goodly* number," or graceful, *e.g.*, "a *goodly* person."

13. **Graceful, Gracious**. *Graceful* means 'handsome or agreeable,' and *gracious* means merciful ; *e.g.*, "He has a *graceful* appearance."

> God save our *gracious* King,
> Long live our noble King ! —*The British National Anthem*

14. **Grate, Great**. *Grate*, fireplace, *great*, big, distinguished ; "Put coals in the *grate*" ; "He is a *great* fighter."

15. **Greed, Avarice, Avidity, Ambition.** *Greed* means the desire for more than one's needs ; *e.g.*, "*Greed* brings one to ruin." *Avarice* means the love of money for its own sake ; *e.g.*, "*Greed* and *avarice* are always ignoble" ; "His *avarice* brought about his ruin." *Avidity* is used in a good sense to express mental greed or eagerness. "The book was read with *avidity*." *Ambition* denotes the *desire for success, fame or* power with personal advancement or preferment as its end ; *e.g.*, "Everybody must be fired by *ambition*."

16. **Guess, Suppose, Think.** To *guess* is to estimate without detailed calculation or exact knowledge ; to *suppose* is to presume on information that is probable, it is something stronger than mere guess ; to *think* is to form an opinion after some deliberation, and it is stronger than mere supposition ; *e.g.*, "*Guess* who he is" ; "I *suppose* I met you the other day at Mr. Johnson's party" ; "I *think* he is guilty."

H

1. **Habit, Custom**. An individual has a *habit*, but a group of persons or a society has a *custom* ; *e.g.*, "It is my *habit* to walk in the morning" ; "It is the *custom* among the poor classes of urban Muslims to keep their women behind the Pardah."

2. **Hail, Hale.** *Hail* signifies frozen rain-drops or to greet ; *hale* means vigorous ; *e.g.*, "All *Hail* ! Caesar" ; "The land of *hail* and snow" ; "He is *hale* and hearty."

3. **Hanged, Hung**. In modern idiom we say *hanged* of the death penalty ; as, "The criminal was *hanged*." In all other senses *hung* is the correct form ; *e.g.*, "She *hung* out the garments" ; "The picture was *hung* on the wall."

4. **Hardly, Scarcely**. *Scarcely* usually refers to quantity, and *hardly* to degree ; *e.g.*, "I can *hardly* go there at this time of the day." "I have *scarcely* what I want for myself, so I cannot lend you anything."

5. **Hasten, Hurry**. Both these words denote quickness of motion, but *hurry* also suggests confusion of the mind ; *e.g.*, "I *hastened* to the office" ; "He heard that his son was dying, so he left everything and *hurried* home."

6. **Hate, Dislike**. *Dislike* is much milder than *hate* ; *e.g.*, "Personally I *dislike* the man, but if you trust him it is all right" ; "I *hate* him, don't utter his name in my presence."

7. **Healthful, Healthy**. That which promotes health is *healthful*, and *healthy* generally means 'possessing or enjoying' ; *e.g.*, "A long walk in the evening is *healthful* for all" ; "He is a *healthy* man."

8. **Hear, Listen**. *Listen* denotes a degree of *attention* which *hear* does not ; *e.g.*,

> O hark O *hear*,
> How thin and clear,
> And thinner, clearer ; —Tennyson.
>
> I *listened* and looked sideways up,
> Fear at my heart as at a cup,
> My life-blood seemed to sip. —Coleridge.

9. **Hew, Hue** To *hew* is to cut down, and *hue* means colour ; *e.g.*, "The *hewers* of wood and drawers of water" ; "Black will take no other *hue*."

10. **Hoard, Horde**. *Hoard* means a store, a treasure, and *horde* means a gang ; *e.g.*, "The miser loves to see his *hoard* once every night" ; "A *horde* of hillmen attacked the fort."

11. **Honorarium, Salary**. *Honorarium* does not mean ordinary salary ; it is an honorary reward ; as He gets an *honorarium* of Rs. 200 per month, although his *salary* is Rs. 1,000 per month."

12. **Honorary, Honourable**. *Honorary* means 'holding office without any remuneration,' and *honourable* means worthy of honour'; *e.g.*, "He was appointed *Honorary* Magistrate."

Brutus is an *honourable* man. —Shakespeare : *Julius Caesar*.

13. **Hope, Expect**. *Expecting* is stronger than *hoping*. Then, we *hope* for that which is welcome to us, and we *expect* that which is certain, though we may not like it. (Usually when we expect something bad, we say 'fear') ; *e.g.*, "I *hope* he will come" ; "I *expect* him to turn up at any moment."

14. **House, Home**. *House* is any building intended for habitation. *Home* means fixed residence of family ; *e.g.*, "Every *house* where love abides and friendship is a guest, is surely *home*, and home, sweet home ; for there the heart can rest."

15. **Human, Humane**. *Human* means belonging to mankind, and *humane* means kind ; *e.g.*, "*Human* nature cannot tolerate this" ; "This *humane* measure will be welcomed by the poorer classes."

16. **Humiliation, Humility**. *Humiliation* means *abasement*, and *humility* means modesty. Everyone likes *humility*, but no one likes *humiliation* ; *e.g.*, "He could never forget the *humiliation* which he suffered at the hand of that official on that day" ; "By *humility* I mean not the abjectness of a base mind, but a prudent care not to overvalue ourselves."

I

1. **Ice, Snow**. *Ice* is frozen water which can be artificially prepared. *Snow* is atmospheric vapour frozen into crystals and falling to earth in white flakes or spread on it as a white layer; *e.g.*, "*Ice* sells at two annas a seer at Lahore these days"; "The *snowy* peaks of the Himalayas have a sublimity of their own."

2. **Idle, Lazy**. *Laziness* indicates a greater degree of *idleness*, and is always held in contempt. Idleness may be due to circumstances, but a man is lazy from habit ; *e.g.*, "To be *idle* and to be poor have always been reproached"; "*Laziness* grows on people ; it begins in cobwebs and ends in iron chains."

3. **Ill, Sick**. *Ill* means 'out of health,' and *sick* means incapacitated by illness,' 'feeling effect of some disease,' *e.g.*, "He is *ill* these days" ; "He is a *sick* man and should take particular care of his health" ; "I am feeling *sick*," however means that I am feel like vomiting. "I am *sick* of it means that I am fed up with it."

4. **Illusion, Delusion, Allusion**. *An A. B. C. of English Usage* says : "A *delusion* is a false impression accepted by the whole mind as the truth ; an *illusion* is also a false belief, but being based upon imagination it 'awaits full acceptance' by the mind. We speak of the *delusions* of lunacy, but of the *illusions* of childhood. 'That the sun moves round the earth' was once a *delusion*, and still is an *illusion*, (*i.e.*, it seems to the senses to go round ; but the mind,

on stronger evidence, rejects the belief). So the thing that deludes is a *delusion* ; the thing falsely supposed to exist is an *illusion*. 'What a conjuror actually does—his real action—is a *delusion* ; what he seems to do is an *illusion*.' *Allusion* means an indirect reference in speech or writting to a person, character, legend, book, etc."

5. **Imaginary, Imaginative**. *Imaginary* is opposed to real, and means 'existing only in imagination.' *Imaginative*, however, means 'full of imagination' ; *e.g.*, "He is always afraid of *imaginary* evils" ; "He is an *imaginative* man and can write beautiful lyrics."

6. **Imminent, Immanent**. *Imminent* means threatening, near at hand. It applies especially to danger or misfortune that threatens to happen immediately ; as, "He was saved from *imminent* death." *Immanent* means inherent in. Referring to God it means *God* permanently pervading the universe ; *e.g.*, "The world is *immanent* in consciousness" ; "God is *immanent*."

7. **Immunity, Impunity**. "*Immunity* means a state of freedom from liability of any kind, but is most commonly applied to pain and disease ; as '*immunity* from measles.' *Impunity* means 'freedom from punishment or loss,' *e.g.*, 'Even a man with *immunity* from military service cannot with *impunity* display his pacificism.'"

8. **Impassable, Impassible, Impossible**. *Impassable*, that cannot be crossed ; *impassible*, not subject to suffering, incapable of feeling or emotion ; *impossible*, that which is not possible ; *e.g.*, "Napoleon did not find the Alps *impassable* ; no patient is *impassible* ; nothing is *impossible* in this world."

9. **Imperial, Imperative, Imperious**. *Imperial* means 'pertaining to an empire or emperor'; *imperative* means peremptory, urgent, and *imperious* means authoritative; *e.g.*, "Nothing can equal the *imperial* glory of ancient Rome" ; "It is *imperative* that you should do it" ; "He is very *imperious* and does not want to be contradicted."

10. **Impetus, Impetuous**. *Impetus* is a noun meaning stimulus, incentive, as "The prize gave the boy the *impetus* to work harder." *Impetuous* means eager, hasty, headlong, precipitate, as, "Her *impetuous* manner of speech made her many enemies."

11. **Implicit, Explicit**. *Implicit* literally means 'folded up in,' or 'implied' ; as, "His attitude was *implicit* in the answer he gave you (*i.e.*, it was folded up or hidden, in)." So the secondary meaning of this word is 'implied.' As an adjective qualifying nouns like faith, obedience, confidence, it means 'complete,' 'absolute.' *Explicit* means 'unfolded,' stated in detail, expressly stated and not merely implied, hence definite, outspoken ; *e.g.*, "He was glad to have had this opportunity of speaking out ; what had before been *implicit* in this strange relationship was now *explicit*."

12. In, After. *In* is used to denote some period of time in the *future, e.g.*, "He will come *in* four days, *i.e.*, at the end of four days." *After* is used to denote some period of time in the *past*; as, "He came *after* four days."

13. In, Into. *In* implies motion or rest inside a place. *Into* implies motion from exterior to interior. "He walked *in* the room" means that he walked around the interior of the room; but "He walked *into* the room" means that he walked from the exterior of the room to the interior.

14. In, Within. The former denotes the close of a period, the latter some period short of the close; *e.g.*, "He will return *in* (*i.e.*, at the close of) a week's time"; "He will return *within* (*i.e.*, at some period short of) a week's time"; "All this progress was jeopardised when Lord Salisbury undertook to evacuate Egypt *in* two years' time."

15. Incident, Accident. *Incident* means *event, occurrence* or (detached event attracting general attention; as, "This was the most important *incident* in his life." *Accident* means unexpected or unforeseen course of event; *e.g.*, "Her life is a chapter of *accidents*"; "He met with a serious *accident*."

16. Incredible, Incredulous. *Incredible* means beyond belief; as, "Your report that you killed a tiger with a knife is *incredible*." Only a person can be *incredulous*, that is, unbelieving, doubtful, or sceptical; as, "I have not seen such an *incredulous* person as you are"

17. Inculcate, Inoculate. "He *inculcates* false doctrines"; "Get yourself *inoculated* against plague."

18. Indict, Indite. To *indict* is to accuse; to *indite* is to compose or write; *e g.*, "Whatever my fault, there need be no general *indictment* against me"; "The clerk *indited* a letter but it was not approved by the official."

19. Industrial, Industrious. The former means 'relating to industry,' and the latter means diligent or laborious; *e.g.*, "The British Government was never sympathetic towards the *industrial* progress of this sub-continent"; "The Chinese are all *industrious* people."

20. Inflammatory, Inflammable. *Inflammatory* means tending to kindle, irritate, or excite; as, "An agitator delivered an *inflammatory* speech." *Inflammable* means easily enkindled, irritated, or excited; as, "Strikers constitute an *inflammable* audience."

21. Informant, Informer. The former is the person who supplies some information. An *informer* is a spy. The former is used in a good sense, but the latter has bad associations; *e.g.*, "My *informant* in the matter is my friend Nazir"; "People have come to know that he is a wretched *informer*."

22. Ingenious, Ingenuous. *Ingenious* means clever, but *ingenuous* means frank and simple ; *e.g.*, "He is an *ingenious* man, always forming clever plans" ; "He is so *ingenuous* that no one dislikes him."

23. Innocent, Innocuous. *Innocent* means pure, blameless, and *innocuous* means harmless in effect ; *e.g.*, "He is an *innocent* man" ; "This drug is perfectly *innocuous*, so you may take it without any fear."

24. Insensible, Insensate, Senseless. *Insensible* means 'not having feeling,' 'not susceptible of emotion,' 'callous.' *Insensate* means stupid. *Senseless* means 'unconscious' or 'contrary to reason,' etc., *e g.*, "He is *insensible* to all decent feelings" ; "You could expect only an inept decision from an *insensate* person like him" ; "He fell down *senseless*."

25. Intelligent, Intelligible. An *intelligent* statement is one that contains good sense and reveals intelligence on the part of the speaker. An *intelligible* statement is one that is clear and understandable.

26. Intend, Mean. To *intend* is to purpose or design, and to *mean* is to signify ; *e.g.*, "What do you *intend* to do ?" "What does this *mean* ?"

27. Interpellate, Interpolate. "The president allowed time for *interpellations*" ; "This passage seems to have been *interpolated*."

28. Intolerable, Intolerant. *Intolerable* usually applies to things and conditions that are unbearable, as "*intolerable* cold, delay, or waste." *Intolerant* usually applies to persons who are illiberal or narrow-minded ; as, "He is *intolerant* of any opinions that differ from his own."

29. Invaluable, Valueless. *Invaluable*, 'not able to be valued,' *i.e.*, beyond value ; *valueless*, 'without value,' *i.e.*, worthless, or not valuable ; *e.g.*, "A book that we considered *valueless* proved *invaluable* to the library."

30 Irruption, Eruption. An *irruption* is a violent breaking, or rushing in, often in the sense of an invasion, as "the Mongol irruption into Persia." Here the motion is inward. An *eruption* is a violent breaking, bursting, or rushing out, as of a volcano, geyser, passion, or disease. It is rarely used in the sense of a sudden movement of armed troops. The motion in it is outward.

J

1. Judicial, Judicious. *Judicial* means 'pertaining to a judge or court of justice,' and *judicious* means prudent, wise ; *e.g.*, "In Pakistan the *judicial* power is vested, to some extent, in the Executive which is not an ideal state of affairs" ; "By *judicious* investment he increased his wealth."

2. **Junction, Juncture**. *Junction* means 'place of union,' especially 'railway junction.' *Juncture* is a critical point of time, *e.g.*, "Karachi is the largest railway *junction* in Pakistan"; "I met him at the *junction* of Beadon Road and The Mall"; "At this *juncture* the arrival of his friend saved the situation."

K

1 **Key, Quay**. *Key*, instrument for opening lock; *quay*, wharf.

2. **Kill, Assassinate, Murder**. To *kill* is simply to put to death, and to *murder* a person is to put him to death intentionally. I *kill* a bird, but I *murder* a man. To *assassinate* is 'to murder by surprise, design or secret assault'; *e.g.*, "King James was *assassinated* in his palace while he was enjoying the company of his queen"; "One *murder* makes a villain; millions a hero; numbers sanctify the crime."

Like flies to wanton boys are we to gods,
They *kill* us for their sport.'—Shakespeare: *King Lear*.

L

1. **Last, Latest**. The difference will be clear from the following example: "I have read his *latest* novel to the *last* page."

2. **Latter, Last**. "He brought a knife and a watch, the *latter* being broken"; "He brought a pen, a knife, and a watch, the *last* being broken."

3. **Laudable, Laudatory**. *Laudable*, passive, 'worthy to be praised'; *laudatory*, active, 'praising, giving praise'; as a *laudable* ambition, but a *laudatory* speech.

4. **Lay, Lie**. To *lie* (present tense) is to recline; to *lay* (present tense) is to place an object. *Lay* is also the past form of *lie*; the past form of *lay* is *laid*. The following table should be carefully studied:

	Present	*Past*	*Pr. Participle*	*Pt. Participle*
(*a*) *Lie* (to recline)	lie	lay	lying	laid.
(*b*) *Lay* (to place an object)	lay	laid	laying	laid.
(*c*) *Lie* (uttering falsehood)	lie	lied	lying	lied.

Here are Examples:

"He is *lying* in bed"; "The mother is *laying* the son on the bed"; "The hen *laid* ten eggs."

5. **Lea, Lee**. *Lea*, meadow land; *lee*, windward side of a ship; *e.g.*, "Anne wandered all day in the *lea*"; "The ship lay to the *lee*."

6. **Lead, Led**. *Lead* (noun), a metal; *lead* (verb), to guide, to

induce ; *led*, conducted ; *e.g.*, "This vessel is made of *lead*"; "Into temptation *lead* us not."

7. **Leant, Lent.** *Leant*, past tense of *lean* ; *lent*, a church season ; *e.g.*, "He *leant* against the wall" ; "All Catholics fast in *Lent*."

8. **Learn, Teach.** To *learn* is to *acquire knowledge*, to *teach* is to convey knowledge to others ; *e.g.*; "I have *learnt* my lesson"; "The teacher has *taught* me arithmetic."

9. **Less, Lesser.** *Less* is the comparative form of little, and *lesser*, though in the form of double comparative, is always used as an adjective and means 'Not so great as the other or the rest, minor' etc. ; *e.g.*, "I cannot accept anything *less* than Rs. 200 in settlement of the dispute" ; "All of us should bear calmly the *lesser* evils of life."

10. **Lessen, Lesson** *Lessen* is a verb and means to reduce or to grow less ; *lesson* is the work set for a pupil ; *e.g.*, "Nothing can *lessen* my misery, I am a ruined man." "He learnt his *lesson* carefully and was praised by the teacher."

11. **Lifelong, Livelong.** *Lifelong* means 'during the whole length of life' ; as 'a *lifelong* friendship,' 'a *life-long* interest in politics,' 'a *life-long* illness.' *Livelong* means entire as applied to any period of time and implies show, dragged out, and tedious ; as 'the *livelong* day,' 'the *livelong* night.'

12. **Lightening, Lightning.** The former means making lighter and the latter is the electric discharge in clouds ; *e.g.*, "He appealed to the High Court for *lightening* the sentence" ; "There was a thunderstorm and *lightning* flashed incessantly in the sky."

13. **Limit, Limitation.** *Limit* means boundary, and *limitation* means restriction or inability ; *e.g.*, "This is the *limit* of his land" ; "His *limitations* are many."

14. **Literally, Actually.** "Whatever I say is *literally* (following word by word) true" ; "He *actually* told a lie."

15. **Little, A little.** *Little* means not much ; a *little* means some.

16 **Loath, Loth, Loathe.** *Loath* and *loth* both means unwilling (adj.) ; but to *loathe* is to dislike greatly ; *e.g.*, "Nothing *loath*, he did as he as he was told"

Hence! *Loathed* Melancholy. —Milton.

17. **Lonely, Solitary.** A person who is *solitary* need not be *lonely*. *Lonely* means forsaken, desolate, etc. ; *e.g.*, "It was a *lonely* place where no man ever came" ; "A *solitary* figure was seen coming across the fields."

18. **Loose, Lose.** *Loose* is an adjective and means slack, relaxed, and we *lose* a thing ; *e.g.*, " Her hair was *loose* " ; "I have *lost* my pen."

19 **Lovable, Lovely.** *Lovable* means worthy of love ; *lovely* means beautiful. " He has a *lovable* character " ; "It is a *lovely* child."

20. **Low, Lowly.** *Low* implies *inferiority of any kind* ; *e g.*, "A man of a *low* mind ; a *low* voice." *Lowly* means *meek, humble, e g.*, "Those who are meek and *lowly* will inherit the kingdom of God."

21. **Luxuriant, Luxurious.** *Luxuriant* means 'rich in growth,' but *luxurious* means 'given to luxury.' The latter has a bad sense ; *e.g.*, " The girl has a *luxuriant* growth of hair " ; "The *luxurious* habits of the Indian princes are notorious."

M

1. **Male, Manly, Masculine.** *Male sex* but *masculine gender*. *Manly* means, 'having a man's virtues, courage, frankness etc' ; *e.g.*, " He has a *manly* bearing."

2. **Mane, Main.** *Mane*, long hair on the neck of an animal, *main*, chief. " This is the *main* plank in their programme of reform" ; " The *mane* of the lion was a beautiful thing to look at.

3. **Maze, Maize.** *Maze*, a network or tangle ; *maize*, Indian corn; *e.g.*, "Horses eat *maize*"; "Theseus lost himself in the *maze*."

4 **Mantel, Mantle** *Mantel*, enclosure for a fire-place ; *mantle*, loose cloack ; *e g.*, " Put this picture on the *mantel* " ; " Brutus's *mantle* fell on Caesar."

5. **Marshal, Marshall, Martial.** *Marshal*, an official, or to arrange ; *Marshall*, an incorrect spelling of the same ; *martial* means relating to war. " He *marshalled* the French armies into position " ; "He was the field-*marshal* " ; " Who is the Air Marshall ? " " He belongs to a *martial* race."

6 **Mead, Meed.** *Mead* means meadow, but *meed* means reward ; *e.g.*, " The valorous knight received his *meed* of praise from the fair ladies.

> I met a lady in the *meads*.
> Full beautiful—a fairy's child.
>
> —Keats : *La Belle Dame Sans Merci*.

7. **Mean, Mien.** *Mean*, stingy, low ; *mien*, personal bearing ; *e g.*, "The Jews are generally *mean* " ; "His *mien* and demeanour were dignified."

8. **Medal, Meddle.** *Medal*, a metal disc ; *meddle*, to interfere ; *e.g.*, " He won a gold *medal* " ; " Don't *meddle* in other people's affairs."

9. **Meet, Mete.** *Meet*, proper ; to come together ; *mete*, to

allot ; e.g., "*Meet* me at 6" : "*Mete* out a square to each of these men."

10. **Memorable, Memorial**. *Memorable* means worth remembering, *memorial* means a statue, festival, etc., which serves to commemorate ; e.g., "The Battle of Hastings is a *memorable* incident in English history" ; "There are many relics in this old church which acts as *memorials* of the dead."

11. **Mendacity, Medicity**. *Mendacity*, lying ; *mendicity*, begging ; e.g., "The chairman was not above *mendacity*" ; "Mendicity should be stopped by law."

12. **Metal, Mettle**. *Mettle* means spirit, courage, etc. ; e.g., "Iron is a *metal*" ; "Show your *mettle* by fighting against your enemies."

13. **Meter, Metre**. *Meter* and *metre* both mean rhythm of verse, but *meter* has another meaning, *viz.*, a measuring instrument ; e.g., "What is the *metre* of Gray's *Elegy* ?" "We have a gas-*meter* in our house."

14. **Miner, Minor**. A *miner* is a man who works in a mine ; a *minor* is a person under age, or (adj.) lesser ; e.g., "The *miners* of Cornwall are on a strike" ; "Women and *minors* enjoy special protection of the law" ; "What you say is of *minor* importance."

15. **Mitigate, Alleviate, Remove**. *Alleviate* means to lighten the burden of the bearer. *Remove* means to take it away altogether. *Mitigate* means to make mild the burden of the other. "We *alleviate* pain but we *mitigate* punishment."

16. **Moat, Mote**. A *moat* is a ditch surrounding a castle. A *mote* is a particle of dust ; e.g., "The knight crossed the *moat* by the drawbridge and reached the gate of the castle."

As thick and numberless
As the gay *motes* that people the sunbeams. —Milton.

17. **Momentary, Momentous**. *Momentary* means belonging to the moment, lasting for a short time, but *momentous* means important ; e.g., "A man should not purchase lifelong pain for *momentary* pleasure" ; "On that *momentous* occasion all the patriots in the land joined hands and opposed the tyrannical government."

18. **Monetary, Monitory**. *Monetary* is from money and *monitory* from monitor. The former means 'relating to money,' and the latter, 'giving warning or admonition, ; e.g., "*Monetary* motives should not guide us always ; "I did not neglect the *monitory* advice of my friend."

N

1. **Naught, Nought**. They are both archaic and are practically indistinguishable. They mean 'nothing' or 'zero'; *e.g.*,

> The body and I pulled at one rope,
> But he said *naught* to me.' —Coleridge.

2. **Necessaries, Necessities**. *Necessaries* are things we require for the very maintenance of life; *necessities* are the imperative needs of a man; *e.g.*, "The *necessities* of the case demand this step"; "The economists distinguish between the *necessaries*, comforts and luxuries; no one can do without the first, but we may do without the rest."

3. **Necessity, Need**. *Need* indicates some temporary want, *necessity* is that which is indispensably necessary; *e.g* "I am in *need* of a good servant"; "We cannot conquer fate and *necessity* yet we can yield to them in such a manner as to be greater than if we could."

4. **Negligent, Neglectful**. A man is *negligent* in particular things but one is *neglectful* as a matter of habit; *e.g.*, "He is always *negligent* in the matter of punctuality"; "He is so *neglectful* that he never cares even for his personal interest."

5. **News, Tidings**. *Tidings* also means *news*, but it has now chiefly a literary use; *e.g.*, "What's the news, dear?" "The glad *tidings* was received with acclamation by the anxious multitude."

O

1. **Oar, Ore**. *Oar* is used for rowing a boat, and *ore* is the mineral from which metal can be extracted; *e.g.*, "By smelting, iron is extracted from *ore*."

> I took the *oars*: the Pilot's boy,
> Who now doth crazy go,
> 'Ha! Ha!' quoth he, 'full plain I see
> The Devil knows how to row.' —Coleridge.

2. **Observance, Observation**. *Observance* is strict and attentive performance, and *observation* means *remark* and *perception*; *e.g.*, "The illiterate populace is much given to the *observance* of meaningless ceremonies"; "He made a significant *observation* on that occasion"

3. **Official, Officious**. *Official* as a noun means an officer, and as an adjective means 'pertaining to an office.' *Officious* has a bad sense and *means* 'meddling'; *e.g.*, "There is something called *official* secrecy; and it is the duty of every *official* to remember it"; "He is so *officious* that he has made himself unpopular within a very short time."

4. **Order, Command**. *Command* denotes greater authority and formality than *order*, though both denote authority; *e.g.*, "I have placed an *order* with the Kitabistan Publishing Co. to supply me with a copy of their *New College Composition* as early as possible"; "The *command* of the General was not liked by many, but the whole army had to obey it."

5. **Ordinance, Ordnance**. *Ordinance* is a rule made by a government, and *ordnance* is a gun or cannon; *e.g.*, "Many *ordinances* have been promulgated by the Government"; "*Ordnance* was fired on that ceremonial occasion"; "There is an *ordnance* factory at Wah."

6. **Ostensible, Ostentatious**. *Ostensible* is opposed to real, and *ostentatious* means ceremonious, showy; *e.g.*, "France is fighting Algeria on the *ostensible* ground of protecting the interests of Frenchmen but the real reason is that it still wants an empire, in Africa"; "The *ostentatious* display of some of the former princes was a byword in western countries."

P

1. **Pare, Pair**. *Pair* means a set of two, but *pare* means to cut down. Thus we say, "*Pare* your nails before you wear that new *pair* of gloves."

2. **Pair, Couple**. *Pair* means a set of two persons or things that usually go together; *e.g.*, "A *pair* of shoes, a *pair* of gloves." *Couple* is applied to persons of different sexes, bound to each other by ties *of affection* or *matrimony*, *e.g.*, "What a lovely *couple* the Saleems form!"

3. **Pallet, Palate, Palette**. A *pallet* is a straw bed; *palate* means roof of mouth, also 'sense of taste'; and *palette* is an 'artist's flat tablet for mixing colours on'; *e.g.*, "From the king's royal bed sleep flies to the poor man's *pallet*"; "He was so moved that his tongue stuck to his *palate* and he could not utter a single word"; "He mixed the colours on the *palette* and began to paint."

4. **Part, Portion**. *Part* means a *section* but *portion* means a part taken from a whole for allotment; *e.g.*, "A *part* of my duty here is to look after this child"; "What *portion* of your father's property have you received after the partition?"

5. **Peace, Piece**. *Peace*, absence of strife; *piece*, part of a whole; *e.g.*, "The *peace* of a desert"; "a *piece* of bread."

6. **Peaceful, Peaceable**. *Peaceful* applies to places and conditions as well as to persons. A person or place that is already quiet, tranquil, and free from strife or excitement is *peaceful*. *Peaceable* applies to persons or animals but not to places or conditions. A person who seeks and contributes to a condition of peace is *peaceable*.

7. **Peal, Peel.** *Peal*, ringing of bells ; *peel*, rind ; *e.g.*, " This is the *peal* of the wedding bells " ; " *peel* of an orange."

8. **Pendant, Pendent, Pennon, Pennant.** *Pendant*, an ornament for the ear ; *pendent*, hanging. " It is a beautiful *pendant*." I saw the boy *pendent* by a beam." *Pennon*, or *pennant* is a long narrow flag on a car or on the mast of a ship.

9. **People, A people, The people.** *People* means persons generally ; *a people* means a nation and has it 'plurals as the peoples; *the people* means 'the popular classes,' 'the masses' ; *e.g.*, " I don't like your saying things to *people* without meaning them " ; " The Germans are *a* proud *people* " ; " *The people* want peace."

10. **Persecute, Prosecute.** To *persecute* is to *harass* or *oppress* or *continue* ; to *prosecute* is to bring before a court ; *e.g.*, " The Afghan money-lenders *persecute* their debtors in a heartless fashion " ; " He was *prosecuted* on a charge of trespass."

11. **Person, Individual.** *Person* and *individual* both mean a single person ; but the latter is used when there is an explicit or implicit comparison with a crowd or a body of men ; *e.g.*, " Any *person* could have seen this " ; " Society does not tolerate the crimes of an *individual*, though there is none to punish *its* crimes."

12. **Personality, Personalty.** *Personality*, distinctive personal character ; *personalty*, personal esate ; *e g.*, " The principal has a *personality* of his own " ; " Sixty acres are the *personalty* of Sharif."

13. **Personate, Impersonate, Personify.** To *personate* or *impersonate* a man is to pretend, by disguise and gesture or simply by using his name, to be the man ; to *personify* a thing, an abstract quality, is to endow it, metaphorically, with the characteristics of a human being.

14. **Perspicacious, Perspicuous.** *Perspicacious* means ' having or showing insight,' and is generally used of ; persons ; *perspicuous* means, 'clearly expressed,' and is generally used of speech or writing. " A *perspicacious* person (*i.e.*, one who has a clean insight into a matter) will probably be capable of making a *perspicuous* statement about it."

15. **Physic, Physique.** *Physic* means *medicine* (archaic) and *physique* means bodily health or natural constitution of a person ; *e.g.*, "No *physic* could cure Lear of his madness " ; " He has a fine *physique* "

16. **Picket, Piquet.** *Picket*, soldiers on police duty ; *piquet*, a card game. A *picket* was on duty on the Mall " ; " They are playing *piquet*. "

17. **Piteous, Pitiable, Pitiful.** *Piteous* means 'likely to excite pity,' and *pitiable* means 'deserving pity.' *Pitiful* means *compassionate* or *calling for pity*, even *contemptible* ; *e.g.*, " At the

piteous cry of the calf, the mother cow rushed to its rescue"; "The condition of the peasants in India is *pitiable*"; "He shows a *pitiful* lack of understanding."

18. **Plain, Plane**. *Plain*, clear, simple; *plain*, level surface, to smooth; *e g.*, "He is a *plain* man"; "*Plane* this piece of wood."

19. **Pole, Poll**. *Pole*, a long piece of metal or wood; *poll*, taking of votes at election; *e.g.*, "Buried with a *pole* in his breast"; "A serious riot broke out when the *poll* was being taken."

20. **Polite, Politic**. *Polite* means courteous. *Politic* means well devised, having reference to a policy, *e.g.*, "He was very *polite* in carrying out his *politic* schemes."

21. **Politic, Political**. *Political* means 'pertaining to politics,' *politic* means *sagacious*, *prudent*; *e.g.*, "It is not *politic* to contradict him as he flies into a passion easily"; "Quaid-i-Azam had a marvellous *political* insight and moral integrity."

22. **Popular, Populous**. *Popular* is that thing or person which or who pleases the people. *Populous* means 'full of people,' 'crowded'; *e.g.*, "Some of the *popular* leaders of the country were put behind the bars to suppress the movement"; "Lahore is a populous city."

23. **Practical, Practicable**. *Practical* is the antonym of *theoretical* or ideal, and *practicable* means *feasible*, that which can be done; *e.g.*, "He made a few *practical* suggesstions which were liked by all"; "What you suggest is not *practicable*."

24 **Practice, Practise**. *Practice* is the noun, and *practise* the verb; *e.g.*, "It was my *practice* there to get up quite early in the morning"; "I *practised* early rising."

25. **Pray, Prey**. To *pray* is to offer prayer to God, etc., and a *prey* is a victim, *to prey* (upon) is to hunt and kill; *e.g.*,

> The self-same moment I could *pray*. —Coleridge
> The shark at savage *prey*—the hawk at pounce —Keats.

26. **Precede, Proceed**. The former means 'to go before,' and the latter 'to go on'; *e.g.*, "He was *preceded* by his brother"; "*Proceed*, and you will soon find the house you want."

27. **Prescribe, Proscribe**. To *proscribe* is to *prohibit*, to *prescribe* is 'to lay down,' or 'to give directions,' etc.; *e.g.*, "The doctor examined the patient carefully and *prescribed* medicine for him"; "The Deputy Commissioner has *proscribed* all meetings and processions within the city for a period of two months from today."

28. **Precipitate, Precipitous**. *Precipitate* (adjective) means violently hurried, rash, unconsidered; *precipitous* means steep (like a precipice). We speak of the *precipitate* flight of an army after defeat, and of a *precipitous* path.

29 Presumptive, presumptuous. *Presumptive* is almost exclusively a legal term, meaning ' that which may be assumed to be valid or true until the contrary is proved.' Thus we speak of *presumptive* evidence, proof, or heir. The heir-*presumptive* to a throne or an estate is the heir pending the birth of the heir-apparent. *Presumptuous* means ' full of presumption,' 'talking too much of oneself,' 'unduly confident,' ' arrogant ' ; *e. g.*, " He was *presumptuous* to attempt that task " ; " Her manner is altogether too *presumptuous.*"

30. Principal, Principle. We have the *principal* (noun) of a college, or the *principal* (adjective) men of the city ; *principle* is a noun and means 'a settled rule of action ' or a fundamental truth, etc ; *e.g.*, " Expedients are for the hour ; *principles* for the ages" ; " The value of a *principle* is the number of things it will explain ; and there is no good theory of a disease which does not at once suggest a cure."

31. Probable, Possible. *Probable* is that which may be *expected* to happen or *prove* true. *Possible* is that which can exist or can be done or happen. *Probable* is stronger than *possible*, *e.g.*, "In human life everything is *possible*" ; "It is *probable* that he dislikes you, for did you not insult him the other day ? "

32. Profit, Prophet. *Profit*, gain ; *prophet*, one who predicts ; *e.g.*, "What shall it *profit* a man if he gain the whole world and lose his own soul ? " "Mohammad (peace be on him) was the last and greatest of the prophets."

33. Prophecy, Prophesy. The noun *prophecy*, meaning a forecast or prediction, should be distinguished from the verb *prophesy*, meaning to foretell. "A man who *prophesies* makes *prophecies*.

34. Proportional, Proportionate. *Proportional* means 'in due proportion,' and *proportionate* means 'corresponding in degree or amount ' ; *e.g.*, "Women political workers want *proportional* representation " ; "The punishment has been *proportionate* to the offence."

35 Protagonist, Antagonist. *Protagonist* is not the opposite of *antagonist*. It means 'the actor who takes the chief part in a play' a sense readily admitting of figurative application to the most conspicuous personage in any affair, as, "He a is *protagonist* of world-wide peace." An *antagonist* is an opponent in a struggle or a combat, as "Our *antagonist* is our helper."

36. Provident, Providential. *Provident* means *thrifty* or showing foresight ; *providential* means 'strikingly opportune ' or 'pertaining to Providence' ; *e.g.*, "He is by nature *provident*, hence he is never in a fix " ; "His arrival at that time was quite *providential* ; it was not unexpected and it saved us."

Q

1. Quaint, Queer. *Quaint* is old-fashioned and attractive ;

queer is abnormal and repellant. We speak of a *quaint* person in a good sense, but of a *queer* person in a bad sense.

2. **Quantity, Number**. We have a *quantity* of that which can be measured but not counted, and a *number* of that which can be counted but not measured. We speak of a *quantity* of milk, but not of a *number* of milk; again, we speak of a *number* of books, not of a *quantity* of books.

R

1. **Raise, Raze**. The former denotes elevation, the latter destruction. We say, "It will *raise* your status in public life if you can successfully *raze* to the ground this house of intrigue."

2. **Rare, Scarce**. A *rare* thing is that only a few of which are found at any time. A thing is *scarce* when for the time being it is not found in abundance; *e.g.*, "A large-sized emerald is a *rare* gem"; "Drinking water is *scarce* this year in our village because of insufficient rainfall."

3. **Rebellion, Revolt, Rising, Revolution, Mutiny, Insurrection, Strike, Riot, Rout**. *Rebellion, revolt* and *rising* all mean 'open opposition to lawful authority with a view to end it.' A *revolution* means a total change of Government; it may or may not be accompanied by a *rebellion*. A *mutiny* is a rebellion of sailors or soldiers against their superiors (*e.g.*, The Sepoy *Mutiny* of India, '*Mutiny* on the Bounty'). An *insurrection* is an incipient rebellion in which soldiers usually take part. A *strike* is a refusal on the part of working men to continue their work. A *riot* means an 'outbreak of lawlessness.' A *rout* means an assemblage or company of revellers; *e.g.*, "The *rebellion* spread rapidly from one province to another"; "The *revolt* of the distant provinces could not be suppressed"; "The *rising* was at first suppressed by the Government"; "The French *Revolution* wrought a momentous change in European history"; "Many Englishmen lost their lives during what is known as the Sepoy *Mutiny*"; "The Spanish Civil War began at first as an *insurrection* on the part of the followers of General Franco"; "A *strike* was declared and the mills had to close down"; "A communal *riot* took place in the city the other day"; "The *rout* of the followers of Bacchus has been described in classical mythology."

4. **Reclaim, Re-claim**. To *reclaim* is 'to win back or away from vice or error'; and to *re-claim* is to claim again; *e.g.*, "He was *reclaimed* from the ways of sin by his devoted wife"; "He *re-claimed* the property on another ground."

5. **Recollect, Remember**. To *recollect* is 'to succeed in remembering.' A thing which we have almost forgotten is *recollected*. To *remember* is 'to retain in memory,' 'not to forget'; *e.g.*, "He *recollected* the half-forgotten dim memories of his childhood"; "*Remembered* joys are never past."

6. **Recover, Re-cover**. To *recover* is to regain (as health is *recovered*), and to *re-cover* is to cover again; *e.g.*, "My mother has

completely *recovered* from her recent illness" ; "*Re-cover* the dishes ; do not keep them uncovered."

7. **Register, Registrar.** A *register* means 'a written record of something,' and a *registrar* is one who keeps an official record ; *e.g.*, "His name was entered in the *register*" ; "He is the *Registrar* of the Panjab University."

8. **Regret, Sorrow.** *Regret* is due to a thing done or left undone, and *sorrow* is due to some loss or occurrence of evil ; *e.g.*, "In our old age we *regret* having done many things in the thoughtless days of our youth" ; "God is our only comforter in the *sorrows* of life" ; "The mother's *sorrow* at the death of her only child knew no bounds."

9. **Regretful, Regrettable.** *Regretful* means 'full of regret for' ; *regrettable* means 'causing regret' ; *e.g.*, "A person who does a *regrettable* action is often *regretful* afterwards."

10. **Repel, Repulse.** The person who feels repulsion is *repelled*, not *repulsed* ; *repulsed* means '*rejected*,' driven back by force of arms. That is *repellent* which keeps one at arm's length ; that is *repulsive* from which one recoils ; *i.e.*, the second is a much stronger word.

11. **Resource, Recourse.** "When all his *resources* (means of supplying a want) were exhausted, he was obliged to have *recourse* (resort) to begging."

12. **Respectful, Respectable, Respected, Respective.** *Respectful* means 'full of respect,' *respectable* means 'worthy of respect,' *respected* means looked upon with respect, and *respective* means 'relating to a particular person, thing' etc. ; *e.g.*, "It is our duty to be *respectful* to our parents" ; "He comes of a *respectable* family" ; "*Respected* Sir,' he said, addressing the venerable old man" ; "After the game was over the boys returned to their *respective* houses."

13. **Respectfully, Respectively.** *Respectfully* means in a respectful manner, *respectively* refers to persons or things thought of singly ; *e.g.*, "He behaved *respectfully* towards his parents" ; "The names of the boys are, *respectfully*, Altaf, Tahir and Hasan."

14. **Rest, Wrest** *Rest* means repose ; *wrest*, to take by force ; *e.g.*, "*Rest, rest* perturbed spirit" ; "He *wrested* the book from me."

15. **Restless, Restive.** *Restless* means without rest, that is, uneasy, discontented, and agitated. *Restive* means stubborn, obstinate, intractable, and refractory ; *e.g.* "The servants are *restive* under the new mistress of the house" ; "We passed a *restless* time awaiting our fate."

16. **Reverend, Reverent**. The former means 'worthy of reverence,' and the latter, 'expressing reverence'; *e.g*' "The *Reverend* Father stood up to deliver the sermon"; "His attitude towards me was quite *reverent*."

17. **Rhyme, Rime**. *Rhyme*, agreement of sound in verse; *rime*, hard frost. In a poem the *rhymes* should be correct; there is *rime*, on the leaves. Lately, however, there has been an effort to replace the traditional form of spelling "*rhyme*" by "*rime*."

18. **Right, Rite**. *Right* as an adjective means 'just,' 'true,' as a noun it means a privilege enjoyed by some one. *Rite* means 'ceremony or observance'; *e g.* "No man has a *right* to do as he pleases, except when he pleases to do *right*"; "Religion does not consist in observing certain *rites* and ceremonies."

19. **Righteous, Rightful**. *Righteous* means *just*; *rightful* means 'having a just claim'; *e.g.*, "The Pakistanis were filled with a *righteous* indignation when the Afghans offered an insult to their flag"; "I am the *rightful* owner of this house though my cousin lives here now."

20. **Ring, Wring**. *Ring*, circlet, circular enclosure; *wring*, to squeeze, to extort; *e.g.*, "The crowd pressed around the *ring*"; "*Wring* the last drop of water from this cloth."

21. **Rob, Steal**. To *rob* a person is to take a thing from him by force; to *steal* is to take a thing secretly; *e.g.*, "Some merchants travelling by bus were *robbed* by highwaymen"; "My fountain pen has been *stolen*. I do not know by whom or how."

22. **Rode, Road**. *Rode*, past tense of *ride*; *road*, a made way, a route; *e.g.*, "He *rode* six miles"; "Does the *road* wind uphill all the way?"

23. **Rout, Route**. *Rout* is the defeat of an army, or a crowd of revellers. *Route* is the course followed in a journey; *e.g.*, "A small band of trained European soldiers put the army of the Nizam to the *rout*"; "I do not know what *route* the army will follow for going to Chadragona."

S

1. **Safety, Security**. *Safety* is the state of being free from danger; *security* is the sense of feeling safe; *e.g.* "Everything should be done to ensure the *safety* of the people of the frontier, though it is too much to expect that they would ever feel *secure*."

2. **Sail, Sale**. *Sail* is a sheet of canvas to contain wind; *sale* signifie the selling of an article; *e.g.*, "This took the wind out of his *sails*"; "A clearance *sale* is on."

3 **Salubrious, Salutary**. *Salubrious* means *healthy* and *Salutary* means 'producing good effects; *e.g.*, "The place has a *salubrious* climate"; "The rowdy tribes have been taught a *salutary* lesson."

4. **Same, Similar**. *Same* means *identical*, and *similar* only indicates likeness; *e.g.*, "I am the *same* man whom you helped once some two years back"; "My brother is *similar* to me in many respects."

5 **Sanguine, Sanguinary**. *Sanguine* means *hopeful*, and *sanguinary* means 'attended with much bloodshed'; *e.g.*, "He is *sanguine* of success"; "A *sanguinary* battle was fought at Flodden between the Parliamentary party and the King's party."

6. **Sanitary, Sanatory**. *Sanitary* means 'pertaining to health,' and *sanatory* means 'healing,' 'conducive to health'; *e.g.*, "The *sanitary* conditions of our village are deplorable"; "*Sanatory* measures should be immediately adopted to combat the spread of the disease."

7. **Say, Speak, Talk, Tell**. To *say* is to declare or assert. It governs direct objects only. To *speak* is to utter words to express thoughts. To *talk* is to carry on conversation. To *tell* is to inform, or narrate. It governs both direct and indirect objects; *e.g.*, "He *said*: 'What a man has done a man can do"; "He *speaks* in such a low voice that no one can hear him"; "We *talked* for some time and took leave of each other"; "He *told* us all he knew about the affair"; "He *told* us the story in an attractive manner"; "I *told* you not to do this" This last is a mild command.

8. **Scatter, Spread, Sprinkle**. *Scatter* means to throw or send a number of separate bodies in different directions; *e.g.*, "The farmer *scatters* the seed in the field," *Spread* means to cover a certain area with a given substance; *e.g.*, "The servant *spread* the carpet on the floor." *Sprinkle* means to scatter in small drops or particles, as "The roads are *sprinkled* with water."

9. **Scene, Seen**. *Scene*, a view; *seen*, beheld; *e.g.*, "This is a beautiful *scene*"; "She was *seen* by her father."

10. **Scenery, Sight, Appearance**. *Sight* is a general term and means anything seen; *scenery* means a view of a landscape; *appearance* of a person or thing is what he, she or it looks like; *e.g.*, "The natural *scenery* of the Malabar Hills is charming"; "He presented a horrible *sight* with his mutilated body"; "*Appearances* are often deceptive."

11. **Scent, Sent**. *Scent*, fragrance; *sent*, told to go, dispatched; *e.g.*, "The *scent* of the rose"; "I sent him a message."

12. **Scull, Skull**. *Scull*, a small oar; *skull*, the bones of the head; *e.g.*, "Pull hard at the *sculls*"; "A man's *skull* was dug out from there."

13. **Sculptor, Sculpture**. *Sculptor*, a person who sculptures; *sculpture*, a work of art; *e.g.*, "Michael Angelo was a great *sculptor*"; "This *Night and Dawn* is a great piece of *sculpture*."

14. **Sea, See.** *Sea*, a tract of salt water ; *see* (noun) a diocese ; (verb) to observe ; *e.g.*, "The fish that live in the *sea*" ; "Several new *sees* were created" ; "*See* the truth before you."

15. **Seam, Seem.** *Seam* is a line (in a coat, etc.) where two edges are joined. To *seem* is to appear to be ; *e.g.*, "His old coat has many frayed *seams*" ; "He *seems* to be an honest man, but I do not know if he is really so."

16. **Sear, Sere, Seer.** *Sear* means to burn or denotes the mark of a burn ; *sere* means withered ; *seer* is a prophet ; 'Seer' is also a measure of weight.

17. **Search, Seek.** To *seek* is to look for something that is hidden or absent. To *search* means, to look round, to find, also to examine, to inspect, etc. ; *e.g.*, 'Only the *seeker* findeth truth" ; "The police *searched* the office of the labour union for two hours."

18. **Seasonable, Timely.** *Seasonable* means 'in keeping with the season' or 'occurring in good time.' *Timely* means 'occurring at the right time ; *opportune* means fitting directly into a set of circumstances ; *e.g.*, But for his *timely* help I would have been ruined. It was the *opportune* moment to strike.

> ......the *seasonable* months endows.
> The grass, the thicket, and the fruit-tree wild. —Keats.

19. **See, Look, Watch, Witness.** To *see* is observe or perceive by the eye ; to *look* is to turn the eyes toward something so as to see ; to *watch* is to observe closely or to keep waking, etc. ; to *witness* is to see an event, which is important, or later acquires importance ; *e.g.*, "I witnessed the ghastly scene" ; "I *saw* him coming from a distance" ; "*Look* ! There he goes."

> Then felt I like some *watcher* of the skies,
> When a new planet swims into his ken. —Keats.

> *Watch* thou and pray.' —C. Rossetti.

20. **Senseless, Meaningless.** *Senseless* means unconscious or unreasonable ; *meaningless* means 'without any meaning or signification' ; *e.g.*, "He fell down *senseless*" ; "A *senseless* man cannot distinguish between right and wrong" ; "What he says is utterly *meaningless*."

21. **Sensible, Sensitive.** *Sensible* means *intelligent, reasonable*, etc., and is used in a good sense ; *sensitive* means 'easily affected,' 'touchy' ; *e.g.*, "He is a *sensible* man and he should not take any exception to what you say" ; "He is so *sensitive* that the slightest allusion to this affair makes him angry."

22. **Sensuous, Sensual, Sensational.** *Sensuous* is used in a good sense and means 'pertaining to the senses' ; *sensual* means 'appealing

to the baser senses.' *Sensational* means 'exciting'; *e.g.*, "Keats is the most *sensuous* of all the English poets"; "He is a vile, *sensual* beast; we cannot expect him to check himself"; "He made a *sensational* discovery."

23. **Sequel, Sequence.** "What is the *sequel* (result) to this story?" "Can you trace the *sequence* (succession) of events?"

24. **Servitude. Servility.** *Servitude* means 'state of being slave'; *servility* means 'state or quality of being slavish, cringing,' etc.; *e.g.*, "Though some countries of the world are in a state of *servitude* to conquering nations, they should not fall into a state of *servility*."

25. **Shade. Shadow.** *Shade* is opposed to light, a spot sheltered from the sun, *e.g.*, "This tree provides a good *shade*." *Shadow* is the patch of shade projected by a body; *e.g.*, "The tree cast long *shadows* in the morning and in the evening."

26. **Shear, Sheer.** *Shear*, clip wool, etc.; *sheer*, absolute; *e.g.*, "We *sheared* our sheep yesterday"; "It is *sheer* nonsense."

27. **Sick, Sickly.** *Sick* denotes temporory ill-health; *sickly* denotes a permanent state of the body; *e.g.*, "He is *sick* these days"; "His wife is so *sickly* that nothing seems to do her any good."

28. **Significance, Signification.** "There is often much *significance* (importance) in small things"; "These are the *significations* (implications) of the mathematical signs."

29 **Simulation, Dissimulation.** *Simulation* is pretending what one is not; and *dissimulation* is hiding what one really is; *e.g.*, "The teacher *simulated* anger in order to restore order in the class"; "A detective has often to practise *dissimulation*."

30. **Sleight, Slight.** *Sleight*, dexterity (as *sleight of hand*); *slight* slender, inadequate. "The juggler's tricks depend upon his *sleight of hand*"; "The *slight* web broke into pieces."

31. **Soar, Sore.** *Soar*, to rise high; *sore*, injury to skin.

32 **Social, Sociable.** *Social* means 'pertaining to society'; *sociable* means 'fit for company' or 'fond of company'; *e.g.*, "Some *social* reforms are urgently needed in our country"; "He has a *sociable* temperament and is liked by all."

33. **Son, Sun.** *Son*, one's male child; *sun*, heavenly body that gives light and warmth to the earth.

34. **Sooth, Soothe.** The former is a noun and means *truth*, and the latter is a verb and means '*to calm*,' 'to console'; *e.g.*, "*Sooth* to say, he was indeed a perfect gentle knight"; "The gentle breeze produced a *soothing* influence on my heat-oppressed brain."

35. **Spacious, Specious.** *Spacious* means having ample space or

room ; *specious* means apparently pleasing, attractive or right, but not really so ; *e.g.*, "In the *spacious* hall of the castle all the knights were assembled" ; "How can his *specious* arguments ever convince me ?"

36. **Specie, Species**. *Specie*, coins as opposed to paper money ; *species*, class, kind ; *e.g.*, "The bank can issue only a certain amount of *specie* money" ; "This animal is a *species* by itself."

37. **Spoiled, Spoilt**. *Spoiled* means stripped, took away the possession of ; *spoilt* means damaged ; *e.g.*, "The west has *spoiled* the East" ; "A new hat is *spoilt* by rain."

38. **Spiritual, Spirituous** *Spiritual* means 'pertaining to divine things' ; or the soul ; *spirituous* means 'containing *spirit*' ; *e.g.*, "Clergymen are expected to look after the *spiritual* welfare of their parishioners" ; "One should avoid all *spirituous* liquors as poison."

39. **Stake, Steak**. *Stake*, a heavy pointed stick, a risk or wager; *stake*, a piece of meat or fish for grilling ; *e.g.*, "A *stake* was driven through his body" ; "Have a beef ***steak***."

40. **Stationary, Stationery**. The former is an adjective and means 'fixed' ; the latter is a noun and means 'the articles sold by a stationer' ; *e.g.*, "People used to believe in old days that the earth was *stationary* and that the sun revolved round the earth" ; "He has opened a *stationery* shop in a busy locality."

41. **Statue, Statute, Stature**. *Statue* is an image ; a *statute* is a law expressly enacted by the legislature (as distinguished from a customary law) ; *stature* means a person's height ; *e.g.*, You cannot now see the *statue* of Queen Victoria at Charing Cross" ; "There is a *statute* in England to this effect that one cannot marry one's sister-in-law" ; "She has a manly *stature*."

42. **Stile, Style**. *Stile* is a step or set of steps for climbing over a wall or fence ; *style* is the manner of writing of a particular writer ; *e.g.*, "I helped the lady over the *stile*" ; "Intense study of the Bible will keep any man from being vulgar in point of *style*, says Coleridge."

43. **Stimulant, Stimulus**. Spirits and tonics calculated to excite the body or mind are *stimulants* ; anything that urges a man or 'stimulates' him, is a *stimulus* ; as "The schoolboy may think of an approaching examination as a *stimulus* to greater effort."

44. **Stop, Stay**. To *stop* a thing is to arrest its motion ; to *stay* is to remain for some time after the motion has been arrested ; *e.g.*, "I *stopped* him in the street and engaged him in conversation ; he *stayed* in my company for some time, and then went away."

45. **Straight, Strait**. *Strait* means *narrow*, and *straight* is opposed to curved ; *e.g.*, "This is a ***straight*** road" ; "Draw a

straight line" ; "*Strait* is the path and narrow is the way that leadeth unto truth."—*The Holy Bible*.

46. **Stringed, Strung**. *Stringed* means 'furnished with a string or strings,' and is formed from the noun *string* ; *strung* is the past participle of the verb.' Hence we say, "*stringed* instruments ; gut *stringed* racket ; highly *strung* nerves ; over-*strung* piano."

47. **Substitute, Replace**. *Substitute* means to make a person or thing fill a place or discharge a function for another. *Replace* means to be succeeded or have one's or its place filled up by ; *e.g.*, "An oar was *substituted* for the broken mast" ; "The broken mast was *replaced* by an oar."

48. **Surplice, Surplus**. *Surplice*, white robe worn by clergy and choristers ; *surplus*, that which is left over ; *e.g.*, "The clergyman put on his *surplice* and administered baptism" ; "There is no *surplus* in this year's budget."

49. **Suspense, Suspension**. *Suspense* means 'uncertainty, indecision' ; *suspension* means 'act of suspending,' 'interruption,' etc. ; *e.g.*, "Please tell me what your decision is, do not keep me in *suspense*" ; "There has been a temporary *suspension* of hostilities between the two States."

T

1. **Tale, Tail**. *Tale* means a story, *tail* is a part of an animal's backbone projecting outside its body ; *e.g.*, "Don't tell *tales*" ; "Don't twist the cat's tail."

2. **Take, Receive**. To *take* a thing is to lay hold of it; to *receive* a thing is to accept its delivery when it is offered ; *e.g.*, "He took a pen from the table" ; "He has *received* a letter from his brother asking him to come home immediately."

3. **Tamper, Temper**. To *tamper* is to practise secretly and unfairly *with* a thing ; to *temper* means to soften or modify by blending or mixture. As a noun it means the constitution of the body ; *e.g.*, "I have a shrewd suspicion that the new clerk has *tampered* with the accounts" ; "He easily loses his *temper* and starts a quarrel" ; "*Temper* your courage with discretion."

4. **Team, Teem**. A *team* is a number of persons, cattle, etc., associated for doing something together. To *teem* is to abound ; *e.g.*, "Our Cricket *team* gave a good account of itself in yesterday's match" ; "This jungle *teems* with wild birds."

5. **Temperament, Temperance, Temperature**. *Temperament* is disposition, *temperance* means moderation and *temperature* is 'the degree of any quality, especially of heat or cold' ; *e.g.*, "He has the artistic *temperament* which is so uncertain" ; "*Temperance* gives nature her full play, and enables her to exert herself in all her force

and vigour" ; "The *temperature* of Lahore rises to 118 in summer."

6. **Temporary, Temporal.** *Temporary* means lasting for a short time only; *e.g.*, "He was offered a *temporary* job." *Temporal* means as opposed to spiritual, *e.g.*, "The *temporal* (of this life ; secular) power of the clergy."

7. **Tenor, Tenure.** *Tenor* is course or purport, *tenure* is holding, or conditions under which land is held by persons who occupy and use it ; *e.g.*, "The *tenor* of all his criticism is that Milton was not such a great poet as people think him to be" ; "The land *tenure* system in both the wings of the country requires the immediate attention of the legislators."

8. **Testimony, Evidence.** *Testimony* is a declaration (often written) to prove some fact ; *evidence* is information, given personally or otherwise, to establish some fact. Thus the *testimony* of a person may not tally with his *evidence*.

9. **Their, There.** *Their*, of or belonging to them ; *there*, that place ; as "This is *their* property" ; "Go *there*."

10. **Timid, Coward.** *Timid* means naturally fearful or afraid of danger, and a *coward* is one who can never be courageous, though a timid person may show courage on certain occasions ; *e.g.*, "The *timidity* of the villagers is a by-word ; but when they are provoked they show a good deal of courage."

Cowards die many times before their death ;
The valiant never taste of death but once. —Shakespeare.

11. **Ton, Tun.** *Ton*, twenty cwt.; *tun*, wine cask ; *e.g.*, "This carriage weighs ten *tons*" ; "Roll that *tun* over here."

12. **Trade, Commerce.** *Trade* is carried on within or without a country on a large or small scale ; *commerce* is carried on between different countries on a large scale ; *e.g.*, "In transactions of *trade* it is not to be supposed that, as in gaming, what one party gains the other must necessarily lose" ; "*Commerce* tends to wear off those prejudices which maintain destruction and animosity between nations."

13. **Trancendent, Transcendental.** *Transcendent* means superior or supreme, as "a matter of *transcendent* importance" ; "an idea of *transcendent* worth" ; *Transcendental* means vague, visionary, or absurdly speculative ; as, "His ideas are too *transcendental* for me."

14. **Transient, Transitional, Transitory, Transitive.** *Transient* means 'of short duration', 'not lasting' ; *transitional* means 'interim,' *i.e.*, the period lying between two distinct periods ; *transitory* means 'going or passing away,' 'speedily vanishing' ; *transitive* is a grammatical term for verbs the action of which extends to their objects ; *e.g.*, "The impression produced by his eloquent speech was only *transient*" ; "We were then passing through a *transi-*

tional period of history" ; "Man should not care much for his *transitory* existence here, but should think of his eternal home in heaven" ; "This is a *transitive* verb."

15. **Transpire, Happen.** *Transpire* means to become known. *Happen* means to occur ; *e.g.*, "The whole story at length *transpired*, and we all knew what had *happened*" ; "The conditions of the contract were not allowed to *transpire*."

16. **Trifling, Trivial.** *Trifling* means 'of small importance' ; a *trivial* thing is that which is insignificant in itself ; *e.g.*, "What you have discovered is after all of *trifling* value" ; "Don't waste time by paying too much attention to *trivial* matters."

17. **Truce, Treaty.** *Truce* is just a suspension of hostilities between two armies ; and *treaty* is a more formal and prolonged arrangement than truce ; *e.g.*, "On Christmas Eve there was a *truce* between the two armies ; but hostilities were resumed after two days" ; "By a *treaty* Germany agreed to concede certain islands in the Pacific to Japan."

U

1. **Ugly, Clumsy, Awkward.** *Ugly* refers to appearance, *clumsy* to action ; *e.g.*, "She has an *ugly* face and *clumsy* manners." *Awkward* signifies something ill-adapted for use, or hard to deal with ; *e.g.*, "He was faced with an *awkward* situation." *Awkward* is also used as synonymous with *clumsy*.

2. **Ultimate, Final.** *Final* means last, conclusive ; *ultimate* means furthest ; *e.g.*, "He is now taking his *final* examination in law" ; "When you do a thing you should think of its *immediate* as also of its *ultimate* consequences."

3. **Union, Unity.** *Union* means 'concord' or 'that which is formed by the combination of parts or individual things or persons.' *Unity* means oneness or agreement. Thus we may say 'the *union* of Scotland and England,' but we should say '*unity* between two States.'

V

1. **Vacation, Vocation, Avocation.** *Vacation* means holiday, *vocation* means profession, *avocation* means minor profession ; *e.g.*, "When does the summer *vacation* begin ?" "Teaching is his *vocation* and painting his *avocation* which he does in his moments of leisure."

2. **Vain, Vane.** *Vain*, conceited ; *vane*, weathercock ; *e.g.*, "She is not *vain* of her looks" ; "The hailstone struck the *vane* first."

3. **Vale, Veil.** *Vale*, valley ; *veil*, covering for face ; *e.g.*, "The world is a *vale* or tears" ; "She peeped at me through the *veil*."

4. **Variance, Variation.** *Variance* means disagreement, and *variation* means difference, change ; *e.g.*, "I am at *variance* with

him in this matter" ; "The *variation* of temperature in this season is remarkable."

5. **Venture, Adventure.** *Venture* applies chiefly to a business undertaking, especially such as involves chance, hazard, and speculation ; as, "He lost all his money in the first *venture*." *Adventure* applies chiefly to bold and daring experiences in the meeting of danger as ; "Her brief life is full of *adventures*."

6. **Verbal, Verbose.** *Verbal* means 'relating to words' ; *verbose* means 'abounding in words' ; *e.g.*, "There should be no fundamental difference between these two principles : the difference is merely *verbals*" ; "He has a *verbose* style, he does not know that 'brevity is the soul of wit."

7. **Venal, Venial.** *Venal* means lending services for money, for reward; as, "A *venal* crew of scribblers." *Venial* means pardonable, trivial; as, "A *venial* fault is one that has not much wrong in it"

8. **Virtual, Virtuous.** *Virtual* means 'in effect but not in form.' A *virtual* promise is one that is such for practical purposes, though not formally given ; *virtuous* signifies possessing moral goodness, blameless, as "*virtuous* deeds," "*virtuous* conduct."

9. **Visitor, Visitant.** *Visitor* is applied to human beings, and *visitant* to heavenly beings ; *e.g.*, "I am expecting some *visitors* this evening" ; "The heavenly *visitant* woke up Abou Ben Adhem and talked to him."

10. **Voracity, Veracity.** The former means 'truthfulness' or 'truth,' and the latter implies 'greediness' ; (so *veracious* and *voracious*) ; *e.g.*, "I do not call into question the *veracity* of his statement" ; "His *voracity* is amazing ; he is always ready to swallow things."

W

1. **Wages, Fee, Salary, Pension, Income, Fare, Tax, Duty.** *Wages* denote the money paid to workmen and servants, *e.g.*, "The rich millowners believe in paying starvation *wages* to the poor labourers." *Fee* is the sum paid to a professional man for special service, *e.g.*, "Have you paid the doctor's *fee* ?" *Salary* is the money paid at regular intervals to professional people such as officials, clerks and soldiers. "What is the *salary* of a Deputy Commissioner ?" *Pension* is the sum paid at fixed periods to servants who have retired from service ; *e.g.* "His father gets a *pension* of Rs. 100 a month" *Income* is total money earned or received, *e.g.*, "What is the monthly *income* of your father ?" *Fare* is the money paid for a journey or voyage ; *e.g.*, "What is the railway *fare* from Lahore to Karachi ?" *Tax* is the sum levied by the authorities on income, property or goods ; *e.g.*, "Every person whose yearly income is more than Rs. 4,200 has to pay income-*tax* to the Government." *Duty* is a sum levied on the value of goods

received, used, or imported ; *e.g.* "There is a heavy *duty* on goods imported from U.K."

2. **Waist, Waste.** *Waist*, part of body ; *waste*, unused, superfluous, of no use. Gulnar has a beautiful *waist* ; don't *waste* your admiration on her.

3. **Wave, Waive.** *Wave* means to move ; *e.g.*, "He *waved* his hand to me." *Waive* means to relinquish or forego a right, claim, opportunity, legitimate plea ; *e g.*, "He *waived* his claims to the estate."

4. **Whet, Wet.** *Whet*, to sharpen ; *wet*, rainy, damp ; *e.g.*, "Franklin helped the man to *whet* the knife" ; "It was a *wet* day."

5. **Whit, Wit.** *Whit*, jot ; *wit*, intelligence, clever expression ; *e.g.*, "The remedy is past the *wit* of man to devise" ; "He cares not a *whit* for his colleagues."

6. **Wilful, Willing.** *Wilful* means obstinate, and *willing* means 'having the will,' 'inclined to a thing' ; *e g.*, "He is so *wilful* and headstrong that he does not care to listen to anybody's advice" ; "He is quite *willing* to help me."

7. **Without, Unless.** "I will not go *without* you" ; "I will not go *unless* he goes."

8. **Womanly, Womanish.** The former is used in a good sense, the latter in a bad sense ; *e g*, "She is endowed with all the fine *womanly* qualities that are everywhere appreciated" ; 'There are many students who try to be as *womanish* in their appearance as possible."

9. **Wreath, Wreathe.** *Wreath* is the noun, *wreathe* is the verb ; *e.g.*, "The Greek poets were honoured with a *wreath* of leaves being placed on their head" ; "*Wreathe* a garland of roses."

10. **Wreck, Wreak.** To *wreck* is to ruin or destroy, to *wreak* is to avenge or to put in operation (vengeance, rage, etc.) ; *e g.*, "The house was *wrecked* by earthquake" ; "He *wreaked* vengeance upon his enemies."

Y

1. **Yearn, Crave.** To *crave* is to beg for something ; to *yearn* is to be filled with longing or compassion, etc. ; *e.g.*, "The mother *yearns* for a sight of her absent child" ; "The villain *craved* for pardon."

Z

1. **Zealot, Devotee.** A *zealot* is a fanatic, a *devotee* is just a pious person, he need not be a fanatic ; *e.g.*, "There are more *zealots* than peaceful *devotees* there ; so the chances of their listening to reason are very slender."

EXERCISES

(*For* **Board** *Students*)

1. Distinguish between the meanings of the following pairs of words:

Adapt, adopt; Cession, session; Depreciate, deprecate; Gage, gauge; Genius, talent; Illusion, delusion; Moat, mote; Person, individual; Prescribe, proscribe; Team, teem; Visitor, visitant.

(*For* **University** *Students*)

1. Construct short sentences to illustrate the difference in meaning or usage between the following pairs of words:

Able, capable; Affect, effect; Ancient, old; Astonish, Surprise; Bail, bale; Beach, beech; Canon, cannon; Choler, collar; Complement, compliment; Contagious, infectious; Cool, cold; Course, coarse; Defy, deify; Descent, dissent; Discover, invent; Drown, sink; Eligible, illegible; Exceptional, exceptionable; Faint, feint; Gamble, gambol; Hear, listen; Hope, expect; Informant, informer; Jealous, zealous; Lovable, lovely; Metal, mettle; Order, command; Part, portion; Precedent, president; Rare, scarce; Reverend, reverent; Safety, security; Sensual, sensuous; Spacious, specious; Temporal, temporary; Trade, commerce; Verity, variety; Zealot, devotee.

2. Write sentences to illustrate the difference between the words in each of the following groups:

Access, excess, accession; Artistic, artful, artificial; Battle, war, fight; Blunder, mistake, error; Cite, site, sight; Continuous, continual, contiguous; Crime, vice, sin; Effective, effectual, efficacious; Esteem, estimate, estimation; Financial, monetary, pecuniary; Greed, avarice, ambition; Guess, suppose, think; Rebellion, revolt, rising, revolution, mutiny, riot, strike; Say, tell, speak, talk.

CHAPTER XXIX

ODDS AND ENDS ABOUT WORDS

1. **The Choice of Words.** The student who has carefully studied the foregoing chapters of this part should never be at a loss for words. But, as we have already pointed out, it is not merely the number of words you know which will take you a long way on the road to acquiring an expressive and vigorous style of writing. Much depends on your choice of words. The best guidance in this respect is provided by the famous lexicographer, Fowler, who lays down the following rules in the very opening chapter of that wonderful compilation which goes by the name of *The King's English.* The piece of advice is still fresh, although with the accession of a woman (*Her* Majesty *Queen* Elizabeth II) to the British throne the title of the book, *The* **King's** *English*, has already begun to smack of the obsolete.

2. **Fowler's Rules.** Here is what Fowler says on this point :

" *Any one who wishes to become a good writer should endeavour, before he allowed himself to be tempted by the more showy qualities, to be direct, simple, brief, vigorous and lucid.*

" *This general principle may be translated into practical rules in the domain af vocabulary as follows :*

(*a*) " **Prefer the familiar word to the far-fetched** ;

(*b*) " **Prefer the concrete word to the abstract** ;

(*c*) " **Prefer the single word to the circumlocution** ;

(*d*) " **Prefer the short word to the long** ;

(*e*) " **Prefer the Saxon word to the Romance.**"

No beginner, it must be remembered, can ever afford to ignore any of these rules.

3. **Malapropism.** The most unpardonable mistake in the use of words is that which has now come to be known as *malapropism.* The term is derived from the name of a female character in Sheridan's play, *The Rivals*, although her characteristic faults were first witnessed in English drama in the interesting character of a police official, Dogberry, in Shakespeare's *Much Ado About Nothing.* Here is an example of the silly bureaucrat's misuse of words. The correct word which he ought to have used but never does, is in every case given in parentheses after the italicized wrong word actually used by him.

DOGBERRY. Dost thou not *suspect* (respect) my place ? Dost thou not *suspect* (respect) my years ? O that he were here to write

me down an ass ! But masters, remember that I am an ass ; though it be not written down, yet forget not that I am an ass.

Here is another extract :

DOGBERRY. You have : I knew it would be your answer. Well, for your favour, sir, why, give God thanks, and make no boast of it ; and for your writing and reading, let that appear when there is no need of such *vanity* (ability) You are thought here to be the most *senseless* (sensible) and fit man for the constable of the watch ; therefore bear you the lantern. This is your charge : you shall *comprehend* (apprehend, *i.e* , arrest) all *vagrons* (vagrant) men ; you are to bid any man stand in the prince's name."

Dogberry is funny enough, but the character who "out Dogberries " Dogberry himself is Sheridan's Mrs. Malaprop. She is the aunt, and guardian of Lydia Languish and is noted for her aptitude for misapplying long words. She describes a man "as headstrong as an *allegory* on the bank of the Nile. " By allegory she meant undoubtedly an alligator. A sentence spoken by her runs as follows : " Sure if I *reprehend* anything in this world, it is the use of my *oracular* tongue and a nice *derangement* of *epitaphs*." By *reprehend* she meant, *comprehend*, by *oracular*, *vernacular*, by *derangement*, *arrangement* by *eptiaphs*, *epithets*. Such misuse of words is termed Malapropism, and it is this which you must avoid.

Less serious, none the less a mistake to be avoided is the careless use of one synonym for another which should be more apt. With this type of mistake we have already dealt at some length in the chapters on *Word Relations* and *Words Liable to be Confused*.

4. **Obsolete Words**. Words, like animate organisms, have a tenor of life. They become decrepit or meet with their death, thus passing out of use. Words which are no longer in use are termed *obsolete*, those which are falling out of use are termed *archaic*. They are generally met with only in the writings of authors who lived in some previous age. Certain archaic words, however, are still current in poetic diction. Here is an example from *The Prologue* to *The Canterbury*, *Tales* by the great English poet Chaucer, who lived in the fourteenth century of the Christian era.

A good *wyf* was ther of *bisyde* Bathe
But she was *some-del* deef and that was *scathe*.
Of clooth-makying she hadde swich an *haunt*.
She passed hem of Ypres and of Gaunt.

We have italicised the obsolete words, but have left alone those used even now, although spelt (and sometimes even pronounced) by Chaucer in a different way. Those words which were current in Chaucer's time have fallen out of use, and the beginner must avoid them. He should not be led away into the mistake of

taking them for modern words, even when he finds a modern poet like Keats writing in the same vein as Chaucer.

Als writith he of swevenis,
Men han beforne they wake in bliss,
Whanne that hir friendes thinke him bound
In crimped shroude farre under grounde ;
And how a litling child mote be
A saint er its nativitie,
Gif that the modre (God her bless !)
Kepen in solitarinesse,
And Kissen devoute the holy croce.
Of Goddes love, and Sathan's force,—
He writith ; and things many mo
Of swiche thinges I may not show.
Bot I must teken verilie
Somdel of Sainte Cicilie,
And chieflie what he auctorethe
Of Sainte Markis life and dethe...

—Keats : *Eve of St. Mark.*

In this passage there are many words (*swevenis*, *somdel*, *mo*, *mote*, etc.) which are obsolete, and others which are spelt in an obsolete fashion.

5. **Archaic words**. Archaic words are those which are no longer in popular use but are retained for some special purpose. Writers often make use of archaic words to give a flavour of the by-gone to their writings. Charles Lamb, for example, makes a fine use of archaic words.

Words like *albeit*, *anon*, *brook*, *damsel*, *don*, *doff*, *ere*, *methinks*, *nabob*, *prithee*, *thither*, *wassail*, *zounds*, etc., are frequently used either with a humorous intention or for the sake of their archaic flavour.

Novelists and authors dealing with the past have to make a judicious use of archaic words. Scott is full of this kind of archaism. Take these passages from Scott's *Kenilworth* :

(*a*) " How now, Sir Francis Denning," he whispered, in answer to his exulting salutation, " that smile *hath* made *thy* face shorter by one-third than when I first saw it this morning.—What, Master Bowyer, stand you back, and think you I bear malice ? You did but your duty this morning ; and if I remember *aught* of the *passage* betwixt us, it shall be in thy favour."

(*b*) "What, ho ! *John Tapster.*"
"At hand, *Will Hostler*," replied the man of the spigot...

"Here is a gentleman asks if you *draw* good ale," continued the hostler.

"*Beshrew my heart else*," answered the tapster, "since there are but four miles *betwixt* us and Oxford—*Marry*, if my ale did not convince the heads of the scholars, they would soon convince my *pate* with the pewter flagon."

(c) "*Thou hast* taught him a secret, kinsman," said Giles Gosling, "to decoct, *an* that be the word, his pound into a penny, and his webs into a thread.—Take a fool's advice, *neighbour Gold Thred*. Tempt not the sea, for she is a devourer. Let cards and *cockatrices* do their worst, *thy* father's bales may *bide a banging* for a year or two *ere* thou *comest to the Spital*."

Thus the novelists have kept many archaic words alive which would otherwise have died a natural death. The Bible exerts a great influence in this respect. Old forms like *hath, hast, thou, thee, thine, ye*, words like *unto, chode* (chid), *duke* (chief), *meat* (food), *tale* (number) *etc.*, cannot be forgotten, because of the Holy Bible. Note the following passages from the *New Testament* :—

1. 'And when they saw some of his disciples eat *bread* with defiled, that is to say, with *unwashen* hands, they found fault."

[Here *bread* means food, and *unwashen* is an archaic form.]

2. "He answered and said *unto* them, Well *hath* Esaias prophesied of you hypocrites, as it is written. This people *honoureth* me with their lips, but their heart is far from me.

"*Howbeit* in vain do they worship me, teaching for doctrines the commandments of men."

Students may admire the style of Charles Lamb or relish the quaint flavour of the archaic words in the writings of other men, but they should not use these words in their writing.

6. Tautology. We have tautology when the same word or words are repeated without any purpose, or when the same meaning is expressed twice or more, in different words. In the following passage the superfluous words have been given in italics :

"In the Attic Commonwealth it was the privilege, *and birthright* of every citizen *and poet* to rail *aloud and* in public." —Swift.

But repetition is not always a crime. Some great stylists, notably Matthew Arnold, make use of repetition to drive home their point. Here is a passage which will bear out our point :

"The pursuit of perfection, then, is the *pursuit of sweetness and light*. He who *works* for *sweetness and light works* to make reason and the will of God prevail. He who *works* for *machinery*, he who *works* for *hatred*, *works* only for confusion. *Culture* looks beyond *machinery*, *culture* hates *hatred* ; *culture* has one great *passion*, the *passion* for *sweetness and light*." —Arnold.

Tautology, it should be remembered, is not mere repetition of words and phrases, for repetition is an effective weapon in the hands of stylists and orators.

7. **Pleonasm.** We have *pleonasm* or *redundancy* when we needlessly add what is already implied. Many people say, "I saw it *with my own eyes*." Now 'with my own eyes' is an example of pleonasm. Examine the following cases :

(*i*) I did not request him, he *voluntarily* offered to stand security.

(*ii*) Queen Elizabeth first allowed certain companies to enjoy the *entire* monopoly of certain trades.

(*iii*) He looks down upon us with *an eye of* contempt.

8. **Verbosity.** Verbosity consists in using a multiplicity of words when just a few would do. One can cut out the superfluous words and phrases in a redundant or tautologous sentence, but a verbose sentence cannot thus be treated. It should be condensed or rewritten. Read carefully the following cases of verbosity :

1. POLONIUS : This business is well ended.—
My liege, and madam, to expostulate
What majesty should be, what duty is,
Why day is day, night night, and time is time,
Were nothing but to waste night, day and time.
Therefore, since brevity is the soul of wit,
And tediousness the limbs and outward flourishes
I will be brief. Your noble son is mad :
Mad call I it is ; for, to define true madness,
What is't but to be nothing else but mad ?
But let that go.

QUEEN. More matter, with less art.

POLONIUS. Madam, I swear I use no art at all.
That he is mad, tis true ; 'tis true 'tis pity ;
And pity 'tis 'tis true ; a foolish figure ;
But farewell it, for I will use no art.
Mad let us grant him then ; and now remains
That we find out the cause of this effect,
Or rather say, the cause of this defect,
For this effect defective comes by cause ;
Thus it remains, and the remainder thus."

—Shakespeare : *Hamlet.*

While committing all the offences against brevity which he himself defines as the 'soul of wit,' Polonius means to say that

Hamlet is mad and that they should try to find out the cause of his madness.

9. **Circumlocution**. It is also a form of verbosity. When Cowper says of tea,

The cup that cheers but not inebriates.

or when another poet calls a shoe,

The shining leather that encaseth the limb.

we have instances of circumlocution.

10. **Digression**. It may be defined as a tediousness of style due to too many clogging details or digressions which tend to make the main point obscure. Let us have examples:

(i) "She always was clever" said poor Mrs. Nickleby, brightening up, "always from a baby. I recollect when she was only two years and a half old, that a gentleman who used to visit very much at our house—Mr. Watkins, you know, Kate, my dear, that your poor papa went bail for, who afterwards ran away to the United States, and sent us a pair of snow shoes, with such an affectionate letter that it made your poor dead father cry for a week. You remember the letter? In which he said he was very sorry he couldn't repay the fifty pounds just then, because his capital was all out at interest, and he was very busy making his fortune, but that he didn't forget you were his god-daughter, and he should take it very unkind if we didn't buy you a silver coral and put it down to his old account? Dear me, yes, my dear, how stupid you are! and spoke so affectionately of the old port wine that he used to drink a bottle and a half of every time he came. You must remember, Kate?"

"Yes, yes, mama; what of him?"

"Why, that Mr. Watkins, my dear," said Mrs. Nickleby slowly, as if she were making a tremendous effort to recollect something of paramount importance; "that Mr. Watkins—he wasn't any relation, Miss Knag will understand, to the Watkins who kept the Old Boar in the village; by the by, I don't remember whether it was one of Old Boar or George the Third, but it was one of the two, I know, and it's much the same—that Mr. Watkins said, when you were only two and a half years old, that you were one of the most astonishing children he ever saw."—Dickens.

(ii) "Marry, if thou wert an honest man, thyself, and the money too. Thou didst swear to me upon a parcel-gilt goblet, sitting in my Dolphin-chamber, at the round table, by a sea-coal fire, upon Wednesday at Whitsun week, when the prince broke thy head for liking his father to a singing-man of Windsor; thou didst swear to me, then, as I was washing thy wound, to marry me, and make me my lady thy wife. Canst thou deny it? Did not goodwife Keech, the butcher's wife, come in then, and call me gossip Quickly? coming in to borrow a mess of vinegar; telling us she had a good dish of prawns; whereby, thou didst desire to eat some; whereby I

told thou they were ill for a green wound! And didst thou not, when she was gone downstairs, desire me to be no more so familiar with such poor people: saying, that ere long they should call me madam? And didst thou not kiss me, and bid me fetch the thirty shilings? I put thee now to thy book-oath: deny it, if thou canst."—Shakespeare.

11. **Dialect**. Many writers make use of dialect in order to give a 'local colour' to their stories and novels. Scott, Burns, Stevenson, John Buchan, and J. M. Barrie use Scottish words and phrases. Miss Edgeworth makes a generous use of Irish in her writings. Writers like Miss Gaskell, Sheila Kaye-Smith, Baring Gould, etc., also make use of dialectal words and expressions.

The students should aviod them for many reasons. For one thing, these words are current within certain areas only and will not be understood by many people. Then, they are not expected to be so familiar with them as to make us of them freely or correctly. Note the dialectal words and expressions in the following passages:

(*a*) "Reckon it ain't everyone I'd show em to. But you've done me a kindness to-day, Mass' Sheather, and it aint the first. I often wish as my poor Ellen cud see my teeth, for many's the times she's said: 'If we cud only get you fitted for a set of teeth, master' ......May be it's that wot put the notion into my head, and I'am larmentable sorry she didn't live to see wot I done. Howsumdever, they may have told her where she's gone. There's my dog barking—reckon the sheep's uneasy, I mun be off, or I'll never be over the hill by sundown. Thank you kindly for the tea, Mass ' Sheather. " —Sheila Kaye-Smith.

(*b*) "Ewgh! The pains I suffer in that old back of mine you'll never believe, my son, not till the appointed time when you come to suffer 'em yoursel'. Well-a-well! Says I just now, up among the larches, 'Heigh, my sonny-boys, I can crow over you, anyways: for I was a man grown when Squire planted ye; and here I be, a lusty gaffer, markin' ye down for destruction.' But hallo! Where's the dinner?"

"There bain't none."

"Hey?"

"There bain't none."

"How's that? Dam me? William Henry, dinner's dinner, an' don't you joke about it. Once you begin to make fun o' sacred things like meals and vittles—."—Quiller-Couch.

12 **Americanisms**. Just as we should avoid provincialisms and dialects, so should we scrupulously avoid Americanisms. There are three types of Americanisms which we may be tempted to use.

(i) American spellings, as *honor* instead of *honour*, *endeavor* for *endeavour*, *luster* for *lustre*, etc.

(*ii*) Words and expressions which have peculiar American meanings ; *guess, reckon, allow* meaning think or suppose, *poppa, soft drink, greaser* (Mexican), *guy* (fellow, man).

(*iii*) American slang words. American vocabulary is rich in slang. Some of them, however, have been inrcoporated into modern English.

As far as possible Americanisms are to be avoided, although they are gaining much popularity through Hollywood pictures and owing to America's rise to power. Note the Americanisms in the following passage :

"Pears as if they'd a prejudice against eggs here anyway...I'm gettin' kind of mad!...Pardon me, sir ; I'd like to have you tell me why you called that little bit of a feller 'Herr Ober.' Reckon you would know what that means ? Mr. Head Waiter......What 'pears to be one up to democracy......I judge you go in for brotherhood ?...I take considerable stock in Leo Tolstoi myself. Grand man—grand-souled apparatus. But I guess you've to pinch those waiters some to make 'em skip."—*John Galsworthy*.

13. **Long Words**. We should also avoid the use of long words as far as possible. Whenever a short synonym is available for a long, polysyllabic word, it will be found to lend vigour to the style. The use of long words is liable to make the style difficult and laborious. Most of the long words in the English language are of Romance origin ; hence Fowler's advice to avoid long and unfamiliar words and words of Romance origin. In the hands of a great writer, such words are often graceful gems ; but in the hands of the ordinary student of this country they are dangerous weapons which would only serve to confuse the meaning of what they write.

14. **Circumlocution.** A round-about expression is known as circumlocution. There was a time when it was fashionable to call a **spade** the *broad-bladed digging implement*, but nowadays it is not regarded as good sense to call a spade anything but a spade. Here is an interesting example from Dickens :

"The present communication is penned within the personal range (I cannot call it the society) of an individual, in a state closely bordering on intoxication, employed by a broker."

What he meant was simply this :

"I write this letter while sitting near a broker's servant who is almost drunk."

☞15. **Mixed Metaphors**. The worst fault in the use of words is the use of mixed metaphors. A flowery style is by no means condemnable. But there is no reason why one should go about changing the metaphor in the same context. Metaphor means implied likeness. It lends a vividness and pictorial quality to the

style of one's writing. Nevertheless, it would be incongruous to talk of the likeness of a thing to things which are entirely unlike each other. To talk of the *ship of State faced with an uphill task* is sheer nonsense. Yet this is the type of mistake most often committed by students who aim at writing flowery language. They seldom realize that when we liken the state to a *sea-going vessel*, we should not give our readers the shock of their life by assigning this vessel the task of *ascending a hill*. This is what is known as a *mixed metaphor*. It should be avoided at all costs if we are to avoid confusion in speech or writing. If we are to employ metaphors we should employ only such as are derived from things with which everybody including us and our readers are quite familiar, so that the possibilities of mistakes is minimized. We should also be careful not to labour the metaphor.

16. **Metaphorical use of Words**. The use of words in transferred sense is quite frequent in every language. English is no exception to the rule. When we employ the adjective *sweet* for a girl, we are using it in this transferred or metaphorical sense, for the girl is made of flesh and blood, and not of sugar or honey. Similarly when we hear a person's *maiden* speech, we are just hearing words which possess no sex and hence the question of the speech being *maiden* or *married* does not arise. Such metaphorical use of words often gives rise to idioms which we shall discuss in the next part of the book. Here it must suffice us to say that words used in the metaphorical sense should not be based on very far-fetched resemblances.

*17. **Slang**. The metaphorical use of words has given rise to those popular words which are called *slang*. They are actually words belonging to illegitimate colloquial speech. Slang consists of metaphorical use of words and it is related to topicality. It helps to make the style unconventional and racy. It was looked down upon in the last century, but in the present it has come into its own and has found access even to the best of literature. It is so matter-of-fact and expressive that Carl Sandberg says of it that "it is a language which takes off its coat, spits on its hands and goes to work."

18. Slang can be good or bad. Good slang is almost poetical. Here are examples: *Wife in water-colours* signifies a temporary mistress; *to go west* means to die; so does *to push up daisies* in the army slang. Here are certain examples of bad slang: *Ace of spades* means a widow; *altogethery* means drunk; *booth-burster* is a ranting barn-stormer; *machiner* signifies a coach horse; *everlasting shoes* denote feet; a *furniture picture* is one having no artistic merit; *head-guard* means a hat; *scripturience* denotes the itch to write.

19. Most slang consists of old words changed in form or sense. The basic words in the slang usage are: *do* meaning to kill, rob or swindle; *make* meaning to steal; *go* signifying an event, incident

or occurrence ; *out* meaning to render senseless ; *off* meaning to depart.

Mark the successive slang names applied to a man of fashion : *trig, blood, macaroni, buck, incroyable, dandy, dude, swell, toff.*

Here are some slang uses of the adjective *funny* :

(*i*) I will have none of your *funny* (dishonest) tricks.

(*ii*) He looks *funny* (ill or drunk).

(*iii*) I'll *funny* you (teach you not to play practical jokes).

(*iv*) There comes the *funny* man of the show (the comedian or clown).

20. Slang differs with the different walks of life. Every profession has its own slang for objects peculiar to it. Here are some examples :

(*a*) **Army**. Slang before the World War I consisted of Urdu and Arabic words in the main, as for instance *rooty* for bread, *pawny* for water, *wallah* for fellow. *Blighty* for England, *bint* for girl, *malish* for 'never mind,' *bukshee* for free. Later, words from other sources also crept in and now we have *strafe* to machine-gun from German, *bocoo* for much from French, *dead-meat ticket* for identity disc from Cockney words, *cobber* for friend from the dominions and *to hop the bags* for attack as a neologism or newly coined word or phrase. Certain general slang words used in the forces are : *Tommy* or *Tommy Atkins* for a private, *George* for an airman and *Jack* for a sailor. An *irk* is an air-mechanic. An *angel-face* is a good-looking young commissioned officer in the forces ; *hickaboo* is an air raid. Talking of aeroplanes, we use *zoom* meaning to cause a plane to dive and then ascend sharply, and *stall* meaning to lose steadiness through diminishing one's speed.

(*b*) **Sports**. We in this country might feel interested in cricket slang. *Duck* or *Duck's egg* means zero score, *spectacles* means two zero scores in a match, *sitter* or *dolly* signifies an easy catch, *tosh* means lose and easily hit bowling as in *tie up tosh* or *hit up tosh*, *to tie up* means to put the batsman in difficulty, the *sticks* means the stumps, *bowler's double* means a hundred wickets taken and a hundred runs scored in a season.

(*c*) **Miscellaneous**. *Fuddlement* means intoxication, *upon my Sam* is an oath. *Yankee, sham, banter*, and *bamboozle* are also slang words. *Barrikin* means chattering unintelligibly, *nonacker*, *mouniker* or *monnicker* is one's name or signature, and *weak in the arms* is a short measure drink or a barmaid that serves like that. Sometimes slang words and their meaning are connected not by sense but merely by rhyme, as *Chatham and Dover* meaning over, *hot-potater* denoting waiter, *Scotch peg* meaning leg, *Gawd forbids* meaning kids, *trouble and strife* meaning wife, *typewriter* meaning fighter, *tumble down the sink* meaning to drink. Sometimes the actual rhym-

word is missing in the slang, as *elephant's* (standing for elephant's trunk) meaning drunk, *China* (standing for China plate) meaning mate; and *plates*, (standing for plates of meat) meaning feet.

(*d*) Below is a list of slang-words commonly used in English.

To barrack, (Australian cricket slang)—to shout derisively at a player or a team (of spectators).

To boost (American) is to praise highly, to advertise a thing or person, to increase its or his price or value

Bootlegger (American)—illicit importer of alcoholic liquor into U. S. A. (from smuggling bottles of alcoholic liquor in the leg of a riding or other long boot).

Brass-hat—an army staff officer, a bigwig (from the gold braid on the cap of some officials).

Coal-box (army)—a kind of shell emitting, on bursting, a dark cloud of smoke.

Cracksman or **crack**, a burglar.

Crook (thieves' argot)—a criminal.

Dago (Spanish)—a slang name for a member of the Southern Latin races, usually a dangerous Italian.

Dole—the money drawn weekly by unemployed workmen under the Unemployed Insurance Act.

Dud (army)—a shell that does not explode (*a.*, defective, useless).

Eye-wash—humbug, deception.

Fan (American)—an enthusiastic spectator or supporter of some sport, *e.g.*, cricket-fans, football-fans, film fans, etc.

Flivver (American)—small cheap motor-car.

Gadget—an appliance or contrivance for getting something done.

Graft (American)—"1. Self-advancement or profit by unfair means, *esp.* through official or political privilege, a swindle. 2 that obtained by graft."

Grouse—to grumble, to complain, and *n.* complaint.

Gunman (American)—one of a class of city ruffians given to a free use of firearms.

Hick (American)—a rustic, "one of the semi-educated class to whom the cinema and other such entertainments chiefly appeal."

Highbrow—*a.* intellectual, *n.* an intellectual, a superior person.

Hike—to walk, tramp especially in organised walking for pleasure. So we have the *hiker*.

Jay-walker (American)—a careless pedestrian in a street beset by motor trafic.

Johnny—man, fellow.

Row—disturbance, quarrel.

Packet—trying experience.

Walk-over—easy victory.

Knock-down — overwhelming blow.

Pussyfoot (American)—an advocate of total prohibition (nickname of the famous American prohibitionist, Johnson).

Rubber-neck (American)—an inquisitive, curious person, especially a tourist eager to see every important sight.

Ruction—disturbance, row.

Scrounge (army)—to pilfer, to

obtain by some means or other.

Snow—cocaine or other narcotic drug in dry, powdered form (criminals' argot).

Stunt—a spectacular effort. *Cf.*, stunt-flying, stunt-men, etc.

To wangle—to manage in an indirect skilful way.

Wash-out—a failure, an unsuccessful business.

(*e*) There are numerous slang words which occasionally pass for standard English. Note the following :

Brass (effrontery), *Bracelets* (handcuffs), *Bunkum* (nonsense talk), *Governor* (father), *Fluke* (chance), etc.

There are other words which are used only in conversation :

Cheek (audacity), *Skunk* (a hateful person), *Fag* (cigarette), *Ripping* (first class), *Bosh*, *Rot* (nonsense), *Jolly* (as in '*jolly* good', 'must *jolly* well do it' etc.), *Tip* (hint), *Funky* (nervous), *Chump* (fool, blockhead), *Rummy* (strange), *Pal* (friend), *Dinky* (pretty, neat), *To pinch* (to steal), *Brick* (generous or kind person).

(*f*) Here we are giving a short list of slang phrases :

To be **broke** or **to be stone broke** (to be penniless).

To draw quits is to balance accounts.

The man is **a big noise** here (is much talked of or admired).

To get the hang of something is to understand it.

To fire a man is to dismiss him.

To give a man the sack is to dismiss him.

To give a man a leg up is to help him.

A corking time (pleasant, entertaining hours).

A Dutch-treat (when a man has to pay for himself).

To be in the soup (to be in difficulty).

To get the tails up (to quarrel).

To pop off (to die suddenly).

To kick the bucket (to die).

Off colour (not quite well).

To own up (to admit).

To lie low (to hide oneself, not to make oneself prominent).

To get a line on a man (to get some evidence against him, some clue that leads to him).

To pull one's leg (to have a joke with one).

He is booked for **a long stretch** (a long term of imprisonment).

To do one's time is to serve one's term of imprisonment.

Back-chat, retort, recrimination.

Back-number (out-of-date method or person).

To blow in is to arrive unexpectedly.

To be sweet on one is to be fond of one.

To cry ditto is to support unquestioningly.

To be on the rock (to be worried).

A deuce of a time (a very long time).

(*g*) Below we give *a collection* of slang and colloquial words and phrases which are used freely by lower clasess of people as also by the upper classes :

To be bowled over is to be disconcerted, to be helpless.

To come a cropper is to fail, to sustain a fall.

A knock-out blow is a telling blow that finishes the fight.

To come to the scratch is to put in one's appearance at the right time.

Yankee (an American).
Paddy (an Irishman).
Sawney (a Scotchman).
Gothamite (a New Yorker).
Bobby (a British constable).
Cop (policeman).
Bob (shilling).
Quid (pound).
Chum (friend).
Cat game (burglary).
Swag (stolen property).
An old lag (an old convict).
Biff (American) a smart blow.
To pay the bill (to die).
A game arm (a disabled arm).

21. **Cries of Animals**. Students often make mistakes of this kind : 'A dog was *crying* at a thief' or 'The bees were *singing* in the garden' or 'Pigeons were *singing*.' The bees may sing in poetry, as birds always do. But in prose dogs *bark*, bees *murmur* and the pigeons *coo* Here are the verbs which denote cries of various animals :

Apes *gibber*.
Asses *bray*.
Bears *growl*.
Bees *hum* or *murmur*.
Beetles *drone*.
Birds *sing*, *twitter* or *chirp*.
Bulls *bellow*.
Camels *grunt*.
Cats *mew*, *purr*, *caterwaul*.
Cattle *low*.
Cocks *crow*.
Cows *low*.
Crickets *chirp*.
Crows *caw*.
Dogs *yelp*, *bark*, *whine*, *growl*, *howl*, *bay*.
Doves *coo*.
Ducks *quack*.
Eagles *scream*.
Elephants *trumpet*.
Flies *buzz*.
Foxes *yelp*, *bark*.
Frogs *croak*.
Geese *cackle*, *gobble*, *hiss*.
Goats *bleat*.
Hawks *scream*.
Hens *cackle*, *cluck*.
Horses *neigh*, *snort*, *whinny*.
Jackals *howl*.
Kittens *mew*.
Lambs *bleat*.
Larks *sing*, *warble*.
Lions *roar*.
Magpies *chatter*.
Mice *squeak*.
Monkeys *chatter*, *gibber*.
Nightingales *sing*, *warble*.
Owls *hoot*, *screech*, *scream*.
Oxen *low*, *bellow*.
Parrots *talk*.

Pea-fowls *scream*.
Pigeons *coo*.
Pigs *grunt, squeal*.
Puppies *yelp*.
Ravens *croak*.
Rooks *caw*.
Seagulls *scream*.
Serpents *hiss*.
Sheep *bleat*.
Small birds *chirp, twitter, pipe*.
Snakes *hiss*.
Sparrows *chirp, twitter*.
Swallows *twitter*.
Swans *cry*.
Thrushes *whistle*.
Tigers *growl, roar*.
Turkeys *gobble*.
Vultures *scream*.
Wolves *howl, yell*.

22. **Offspring of Animals.** Students often write 'The young one or ones' of a bird, of a lion, of an elephant, of practically every animal created by God. Though this is correct practice, it is not idiomatic. Here are the correct words :

Animal	Offspring	Animal	Offspring
Bear	... *cub*.	Hare	... *leveret*.
Buffalo	... *buffalo calf*.	Hen	... *chicken*.
Cat	... *kitten*.	Horse	... *colt*.
Cow	... *calf*.	Sheep	... *lamb*.
Dog	... *puppy* or *pup*.	Swan	... *cygnet*.
Duck	... *duckling*.	Tiger.	... *cub*.
Frog	... *tadpole*.	Lion	... *cub*.
Goat	... *kid*.	Wolf.	... *cub*.

23. **Words Indicating Various Sounds.** Here are verbs expressing the sounds made by various objects.

Arms *clang*.
Babies *lisp*.
Bells *ring, jingle* or *tinkle*.
Brakes *rasp*.
Bugles *blow*.
Chains *clank*.
Coins *jingle*.
Clouds *thunder*.
Doors *creak*.
Drums *beat*.
Footsteps *sound*.
Guns *roar* or *explode*.
Hoofs *clatter*
Leaves *rustle*.
Railway engines *roar* or *whistle*.
Silk *rustles*.
Steel *clinks*.
Teeth *chatter*.
Trees *sigh*.
Water *ripples*.
Wind *whistles* or *sighs*.

24. Group Terms. Here are terms indicative of various groups :

An *assembly* of people.
A *bunch* of keys.
A *bunch* of grapes.
A *bunch* of plantains.
A *bundle* of sticks.
A *bundle* of hay.
A *brood* or *flock* of chickens.
A *bunch* or *bouquet* of flowers.
A *band* of musicians.
A *brace* of pistols.
A *brace* of pigeons.
A *bevy* of ladies.
A *brew* of beer.
A *board* of directors.
A *box* of cigars.
A *brood* of hens.
A *basket* of fruit.
A *bench* of magistrates.
A *battery* of guns.
A *covey* of partridges.
A *chain* of mountains.
A *clump* or *grove* of trees.
A *crowd* or *throng*, or *concourse*, or *multitude* of people.
A *cluster* or *galaxy* of stars.
A *collection* of relics or curiosities.
A *crew* of sailors.
A *cellar* of wine.
A *clique* of people.
A *clutch* of eggs.
A *colony* of people.
A *course* of lectures.
A *company* of actors.
A *council* of advisers.
A *congregation* of worshippers.
A *commission* of enquiry.
A *conference* of delegates.
A *constellation* of stars.
A *drove* of cattle (*i.e.*, cattle being driven).
A *division* of troops.
A *detachment* of soldiers.
A *flock* of geese.
A *flock* of sheep.
A *flight* of steps.
A *flight* of birds.
A *fall* of snow or rain.
A *flight* or *swarm* of locusts.
A *fell* of : air.
A *flock* of birds.
A *faggot* of sticks.
A *family* of sardines.
A *flight* of stairs.
A *flotilla* of boats.
A *fleet* of cars or ships.
A *group* of islands.
A *gang* of labourers.
A *gang* of thieves or robbers.
A *group* of figures in a painting.
A *galaxy* of beauties.
A *gallery* of pictures.
A *gathering* of people.
A *genus* of animals or plants.
A *herd* of deer.
A *herd* of swine.
A *hive* or *swarm* of bees.
A *heap* or *mass* of ruins.
A *heap* of stones or sand.
A *herd* of cattle (*i.e.*, cattle pasturing).
A *hoard* of gold.
A *horde* of savages.
A *host* of men.
A *jamboree* of boy scouts.
A *kennel* of dogs.
A *leash* of hounds.
A *litter* of puppies.

A *library* of books.
A *museum* of art.
A *muster* of peacocks.
A *muster* of soldiers.
A *nursery* of plants.
A *nosegay* of flowers.
An *outfit* of clothes.
An *orchard* of fruit trees.
A *pair* of shoes.
A *pack* of wolves.
A *pack* of hounds.
A *pile* of arms.
A *posy* of flowers.
A *packet* of cigarettes.
A *panel* of jurymen.
A *posse* of constables.
A *parade* of soldiers.
A *party* of people.
A *quiver* of arrows.
A *regiment* of soldiers.
A *range* of hills or mountains.
A *shoal* of fish.
A *stack* of corn.
A *stack* of wood.
A *stack* of arms.
A *swarm* of flies.
A *shower* of rain.
A *suit* of clothes.
A *sheaf* of wheat.
A *series* of events.
A *sheaf* of grain.
A *sheaf* of arrows.
A *string* of camels.
A *stud* of horses.
A *staff* of officials.
A *squad* of soldiers.
A *suite* of rooms.
A *squadron* of cavalry.
A *shrubbery* of shrubs.
A *syndicate* of merchants.
A *tribe* of Arabs.
A *team* of players.
A *team* of oxen.
A *throng* of people.
A *troupe* of actors.

25. **Words Used in a Bad Sense.** We are giving here some words in common use which are always used in a bad sense. Students should be careful in using these words. Where a good sense or a praise or compliment is meant these words should not be used.

Accident. It is something never welcome (*mishap*).

Accomplice. A partner in *crime*.

Addicted to some *bad* habit.

Adventurer. A man who enters upon *rash* projects, who has no fixed principles, etc. *Adventurous*, however, is used in a good sense.

Airs. It always means sort of *conceit* or *pretence*.

Apprehensive. Of some *trouble* or *harm*.

Artisan. One who practises some *inferior* art. An **artist** is one who practises some *fine* art.

Audacious. Bold, but *impudent* and *presumptuous*.

Blunder. A *gross* mistake.

Bode. Things *bode* only *harm*.

Brook. Tolerate or endure something *bad*.

Catastrophe. A *disastrous* conclusion.

Commit. To do something *wrong*.

Conceit. An *extravagant* notion.

Conventional. Guided by

fashion, not by logic, truth or taste.

Counterfeit. Always indicates a *dishonest* purpose.

Cowardly. Timid in an *unworthy* way.

Credulity. A *foolish* readiness to believe anything and everything.

Cunning. It is *crooked* cleverness and is employed for an *evil* purpose.

Demagogue. An *unprincipled* popular leader.

Desert. *To abandon* something which ought not to have been left.

Despot. A *tyrannical* ruler.

Doom. Always denotes an *evil* fate.

Effeminate. Unmanly, womanish. 'Feminine' has a good sense.

Equivocal. *Intentionally* ambiguous.

Fabricate. To invent with a *bad* motive.

Faction. A political party with some *selfish object* in view.

Fancy indicates a *lawless* kind of mental activity.

Ghost. A spectre or *evil* spirit.

Glaring. A glaring *error* or *fault*.

Gossip. An *idle* talker.

Gross has the sense of *coarse* and *vulgar*.

Grotesque has the sense of *extravagant* and *whimsical*.

Hasty. Rash, easily excited.

Implicated in something *evil*.

Lie. A deliberate falsehood.

Loiter. *To linger* when haste should have been made.

Lonely. Alone, *depressed* and *sad*.

Lumber. Household stuff *of little* or *no value*.

Maudlin. Sentimental to the extent of *weakness*.

Notorious. Possessing *evil* reputation.

Officious. Troubling men with *unwelcome attentions*.

Peculiar. Often used in the sense of *strange* or *eccentric*; *e.g.*, 'a man of *peculiar* habits,' '*a peculiar* name.'

Plausible. *Apparently but not really* worthy of applause.

Plight. *Sad* or *painful* condition.

Possessed. 'Possessed of *evil* spirits.'

Prone to some *vice* or weakness.

Prejudice. There can be no wholesome prejudice.

Retaliate. Pay back an *injury*.

Sanctimonious suggests an *affectation* of godliness.

Sensual. Appealing to the *lower* or *carnal* senses.

Sentimental. *Affectedly* tender or emotional.

Servitude. Service of a *slavish* kind.

Sheer. Always used in reference to something *bad*, like 'sheer nonsense,' 'sheer folly.'

Specious. Same meaning as 'plausible.'

Tempt. Suggests the intention of *seducing* or leading to sin.

Totally. Always used for something bad as 'totally wrong.'

Trivial. *Paltry*; *e.g.*, 'A trivial matter not worthy of your consideration.'

Utter. Always used for something bad ; *e.g.*. ' an utter failure.'

Voluble. 'Said of a fluent, but rather *empty* talker.'

Wiseacre. Used ironically, meaning a fool.

26. **Abbreviations**. Numerous abbreviations are used in speech, writing and printing these days. Below we have given a brief list :

Abbr. (abbreviated).
Abd. (abdicated).
Ab init. (*ab initio, from* the beginning).
Abr. (abridged).
Ad inf. (*ad infinitum*, to infinity).
Adm. (Admiralty, Admiral).
A. D. C. (aid-de-camp).
Advt. (advertisement).
Ald. (alderman).
Alt. (altitude).
Anon. (anonymous).
Ans. (answer).
App. (Appendix).
Asst. (assistant).
B. A. (Bachelor of Arts).
Bart. *Bt*. (baronet).
B. B C. (British Broadcasting Corporation).
B. Com. (Bachelor of Commerce).
Bel . *Belg*. (Belgian, Belgic).
Bkg. (banking).
B. L. (Bachelor of Laws).
B. O. (branch office).
Bor. (borough).
Bp. (bishop).
Brit. (Britain, British).
Bro. (brother).
B. Sc. (Bachelor of Science).
Cantab (*Cantabrigensis*, of Cambridge).
Capt. (Captain).
Cert. *Certif*. (certificate).
Chap. (chapter).
Cir. *Circ*. (*circa, circum*, about).
Cl. (clergyman).
Co. (company).
C/o. (care of).
Col. (colonel).
Coll. (college, collector, etc.).
Comp. (compare, compound).
Con. (against).
Const. (constable).
Dau. (daughter).
D. D. (Doctor of Divinity).
Dec. (December).
Def. (definition).
Deg. (degree).
Del. (delegate).
Demon. (demonstrate).
Dep., *Dept*. (deputy, department).
Dial. (dialect).
Dict. (dictionary).
Div. (division).
D. Litt. (Doctor of Literature).
D. L. O. (Dead Letter Office).
Do. (ditto, same).
Doz. (Dozen).
Dpt. (Department).
D. Sc., *Sc. D*. (Doctor of science).
Ed. (editor).
Ency. (encyclopaedia).
Eng. (England, English).
Esp (especially).
Esq. or *Esqr*. (esquire).
Etc (et cetera, and so forth, and others).
Et seq. (et *sequentes*, and the following).
Fcp. (foolscap).
Feb. (February).
Fem. (feminine).

Fig. (figure, figuratively).
Fr. (France, French).
Ft. (foot, feet).
Gent. (gentleman).
Ger. (German).
Gov. (Governor).
G. P. O. (General Post Office).
H. (hours, high).
Hon (Honourable, honorary).
H. P. (horse-power, half pay).
Ind. (India, Indian).
Inf. (infinitive, infantry).
Int. (interest).
Jan. (January).
Jr. (junior).
Jul. (July).
Kt. (knight).
Lat. (Latin, latitude).
Lieut. or *Lt.* (Lieutenant).
Lit. (literature, literary).
Lon., *Long.* (longitude).
M. (mile, minute, Monday, month).
M. A. (Master of Arts).
Mag. (magazine).
Maj. (Major).
Mar. (March).
Math. (mathematics).
M. C. C. (Marylebone Cricket Club).
Med. (mediaeval).
Mfd. (manufactured).
Mod. (modern).
Mos. (months).
MS. (manuscript).
MSS. (manuscripts).
Naut. (nautical).
Neg. (negative).
Neut. (neuter).
No. (number).
N. O. P. (not otherwise provided).
Nov. (November).
N. T. (New Testament).
O/a. (on account of).
Obj. (objection, objective).
Oct. (October).
O. K. (all right, all correct).
O. T. (Old Testament).
Oxon. (Oxford, of Oxford).
Oz. (ounce).
Pam. (pamphlet).
P. C. (post card).
Pd. (paid).
Ph.D. (Doctor of Philosophy).
Plff. (plaintiff).
P. M. (Postmaster, afternoon).
P. N. (promissory note).
Pp. (pages).
Prof. (professor).
P. S. (postscript).
P. T. O. (please turn over).
Qt. (quart, quantity).
Ques. (question).
Recd. (received).
Ref. (reference).
Recpt. (receipt).
Retd. (returned).
Rev. (Reverend).
Rhet. (Rhetoric).
R. S. V. P. (*repondez s'il vous plait*; reply, if you please).
Rt. Hon. (Right Honourable).
Ry. (railway).
Sans.; *Skt.* (Sanskirt).
Sat. (Saturday).
Sec. (Secretary, section).
Sep. (September).
Ser. (series).
Sh. (shilling).
Sr. (senior).
S.S. (steamship).
St. (saint, street).

Sun. (Sunday).
Supt. (superintendent).
Supp. (supplement).
Syn. (synonym).
Tech. (technically).
Temp. (temporal).
U. K. (United Kingdom).
Univ. (university).
U. S. A. (United States of America.

Val. (value).
Vb. (verb).
V. C. (Vice-Chancellor).
Vet. (veterinary surgeon).
V. imp. (very impersonal).
Vs. (*versus*, against)
Wk. (week).
Wt. (weight).
Yd. (yard).
Yr. (year, your).

EXERCISES

Rewrite ths following passages without mannerisms in style :

(*For* Board *Students*)

"Well done, father," said Sam, "take care, old fellow, or you'll have a touch of your old complaint, the gout."

"I've found a sov'in' cure for that, Sammy," said Mr. Weller setting down the glass.

"A sovereign cure for the gout," said Mr. Pickwick, hastily producing his note-book—"What is it."

"The gout, sir," replied Mr. Weller, "the gout is a complaint as arises from too much ease and comfort. If ever you're attacked with the gout, sir, jist you marry a widder as has got a good loud voice, with a decent notion of usin' it, and you'll never have the gout again. It is a capital prescription, sir. I takes it reg'lar, and I can warrant it to drive away any illness as is caused by too much jollity." Having imparted this valuable secret, Mr. Weller drained his glass once more, produced a laboured wink, sighed deeply, and slowly retired. —Dickens : *The Pickwick Papers.*

(*For* University *Students*)

"That 'ere your governor's luggage, Sammy?" "inquired Mr. Weller of his affectionate son, as he entered the yard of the Bull Inn, Whitechapel, with a travelling-bag and a small portmanteau.

"You might ha' made a worser guess than that, old feller," replied Mr. Weller the younger, setting down his burden in the yard, and sitting himself down upon it afterwards. "The governor himself'll be down here presently.

"He's a-cabbin' it, I suppose ?" said the father.

"Yes, he's a-havin' two mile o' danger at eight-pence," responded the son. "How's mother-in-law this mornin' ?"

"Queer, Sammy, queer," replied the elder Mr. Weller, with impressive gravity. "She's been gettin' ryther in the Methodistical order lately, Sammy; and she is uncommon pious, to be sure. She's too good a creetur for me, Sammy. I feel I don't deserve her."

"Ah," said Mr. Samuel, "that's very self-denyin' o' you."

"Very," replied his parent with a sigh. "She got hold o' some invention for grown up people being born again. Sammy—the new birth, I think they calls it. I should very much like to see your mother-in-law born again. Wouldn't I put her out to nurse ! "

"What do you think them women does t'other day," continued Mr. Weller, after a short pause, during which he had significantly struck the side of his nose with his forefinger some half-dozen times. "What do you think they does, t'other day, Sammy ? "

"Don't know," replied Sam.

"Goes and gets up a grand tea drinkin' for a feller they calls their shepherd," said Mr. Weller.

—Dickens : *The Pickwick Papers.*

CHAPTER XXX

ENGLISH SPELLING

1. **Difficulties**. English spelling is etymological rather than phonetic. The result is that it is very difficult to spell the words correctly unless one has a working knowledge of Latin, French and German. Were it not for the fact that every English schoolgoing youngster learns at least two of these languages, it would be very difficult even for Englishmen to spell English words correctly. In fact as far as spelling is concerned, they would be at a great disadvantage even as compared to foreign students of English. This is because the foreigners get to know this language mainly through their eyes, whereas unlettered Englishmen get to know it through their ears, and have a great temptation to adopt the phonetic spelling. Jestingly, yet aptly enough, Mark Twain pointed out once that foreigners always spelt English better than they pronounced it.

2. **Spelling Reforms**. Various attempts have been and are being made to reform the English spelling system. The letter *u*, for instance, has been dropped in America in words like *colour*, *labour*, etc., which are spelt there as *color* and *labor*. This dropping of *u* was adopted even by some of the greatest British writers like George Bernard Shaw. Such reforms are, however, only piecemeal. Against this, it is argued that if words like *nation* which are common to all European languages are spelt in English phonetically, it would be difficult for the tyro in linguistic studies to recognize them in other languages. Perhaps English will have to wait for spelling reforms till all languages written in the Roman Script adopt the international phonetic alphabet of which some symbols and specimens have been given on pages 41 and 42 of this book.

3. **Spelling Guide.** There are no hard and fast spelling rules in English. All that can be done is to give some hints for the student's guidance. It is, however, strongly recommended that they should study *Kitabistan's Guide to English Vocabulary and Spelling*. With its wealth of detail, the book should be a boon to every student of English who is keen to learn the intricacies of its spelling unravelled in a very simple and interesting manner.

☞4. **Rules**. Here then are rules and hints for spelling English words correctly :

(*i*) All verbs ending in *single* **e** drop the final **e** when *ing* is added, as **abate**, *abating* ; **embrace**, *embracing* ; **write**, *writing*.

* The following, as has already been pointed out, are the only exceptions to this rule : **dye**, *dyeing* (to distinguish from *die*,

dying) ; **eye**, *eyeing* ; **hoe**, *hoeing* ; **shoe**, *shoeing* ; **singe**, *singeing* (to distinguish from *sing*, singing) ; **springe**, *springeing* (to distinguish from *spring*, *springing*) ; **tinge**, **tingeing** (to distinguish from *ting*, tinging).

(*ii*) Verbs ending in **two consonants** never double the last consonant on adding *ed* or *ing*, as **extract**, *extracted*, *extracting* ; **learn**, *learned*, *learning*. This rule has *no exception.*

(*iii*) Verbs ending in **one consonant preceded by two vowels** never double that consonant on adding *ed* or *ing*, as **clear**, *cleared*, *clearing* ; **entail**, *entailed*, *entailing*. This rule has *no exception.*

(*iv*) All verbs of **one syllable** ending in **one consonant preceded by one vowel**, always double that consonant on adding *ed* or *ing*, as **drop**, *dropped*, *dropping* ; **beg**, *begged*, *begging*. This rule has *no exception.*

(*v*) All verbs of **more than one syllable** ending in **one consonant preceded by one vowel and accented on the last syllable** always double that consonant, on adding *ed* or *ing*, as **allot**, *allotted allotting* ; **submit**, *submitted*, *submitting* ; **refer**, *referred*, *referring*. This rule has *no exception.*

(*vi*) Verbs of the same kind as are described in (*v*) above, but which are **not accented on the last syllable**, do not double the last consonant on adding *ed* or *ing*, as **differ**, *differed*, *differing*; **limit**, *limited*, *limiting* ; **reason**, *reasoned*, *reasoning*.

*There are many exceptions to the rule, which we will consider later.

(*vii*) Verbs ending in **y preceded by a consonant**, change *y* into **i** on adding *ed* and into **ie** on adding *s*, but retain it on adding *ing*, as **deny**, *denies*, *denied*, *denying* ; **spy**, *spies*, *spied*, *spying*. This rule has *no exception.*

(*viii*) Verbs ending in **y preceded by another vowel** do not change the *y* on adding *s*, *ed* or *ing*, as **annoy**, *annoys*, *annoyed*, *annoying* ; *destroy*, *destroys*, *destroyed*, *destroying*.

*The only exceptions to this rule are : **lay**, *laid* ; **pay**, *paid* ; and **say**, *said*.

(*ix*) Verbs ending in **ie** change *ie* into **y** on adding *ing* and drop *e* on adding *ed*, as **die**, *died*, *dying* ; **tie**, *tied*, *tying* ; **vie**, *vied*, *vying*. This rule has *no exception.*

(*x*) Verbs ending in a **double letter** or in **a**, **o** or **w**, retain the same on adding *ed* or *ing*, as **agree**, *agreed*, *agreeing* ; **kill**, *killed*, *killing* ; **huzza**, *huzzaed*, *huzzaing* ; **echo**, *echoed*, *echoing* ; **allow**, *allowed*, *allowing*. This rule has no exception.

(*xi*) Nouns generally form their plurals by adding **s** to the singular, as **hand**, *hands* ; **horse**, *horses*.

(*xii*) Nouns ending in **s**, **ss**, **ch** (soft), **sh**, **x**, and single **o** form their plurals by taking *es*, unless they end in **io** when they add simply *s*, as **Jones**, *the Joneses*, **class**, *classes*; **church**, *churches*; **sash**, *sashes*; **potato**, *potatoes*; but **folio**, *folios*.

*This rule has many exceptions.

(*xiii*) Nouns ending in **y preceded by a consonant** form their plurals by changing **y** into *ies*, as **lady**, *ladies*; **cherry**, *cherries*; **Henry**, *Henries*.

(*xiv*) Nouns ending in *y* preceded by **a**, **e** or **o** form their plurals by adding *s* only, as **joy**, *joys*; **holiday**, *holidays*.

(*xv*) Adjectives ending in **y preceded by a consonant** form their degrees of comparison by changing *y* into *i*, as **happy**, *happier*, *happiest*; **early**, *earlier*, *earliest*.

(*xvi*) Adjectives ending in **y preceded by a or o** do not change the *y* when forming their degrees of comparison, as **gay**, *gayer*, *gayest*.

(*xvii*) Nouns and adjectives ending in **y** do not change the *y* on adding *ish*, *ism* or *ite*, but the *y* is dropped on adding *ist*, as **Tory**, *Toryism*; **copy**, *copyist*.

(*xviii*) Adjectives ending in a **simple consonant preceded by a single vowel** double the last consonant on adding *er* or *est*, as **hot**, *hotter*, *hottest*.

(*xix*) Adjectives ending in a **simple consonant preceded by two vowels** do not double this consonant on adding *er* or *est*, as **sweet**, *sweeter*, *sweetest*.

5. **Double Consonants**. These are very troublesome. *The A. B. C. of English Usage* makes the following important observations on them :

Double consonants form one of the chief difficulties in spelling. They may be

(*a*) natural—*i.e.*, part of the stem or 'body' of a word ;

(*b*) formed directly by the addition of a prefix (often with assimilation), or a suffix ;

(*c*) the result of doubling a single consonant before a suffix beginning with a vowel.

(a) a**bb**ot, a**bb**ess; desi**cc**ated, toba**cc**o, va**cc**inate; co**ff**ee, da**ff**odil, gira**ff**e, para**ff**in, to**ff**ee; ba**gg**age, exa**gg**erate; para**ll**el, ca**ll**ous; consu**mm**ation, su**mm**ary; Brita**nn**ia (but note Bri**tt**any), tyra**nn**ous; ba**rr**el, ba**rr**icade, ca**rr**iage, co**rr**idor, emba**rr**ass, qua**rr**el; aby**ss**, admi**ss**ion, amba**ss**ador, a**ss**a**ss**inate, care**ss**, ce**ss**ation dismi**ss**al, emba**ss**y, hara**ss**, interce**ss**ion, ma**tt**re**ss**, nece**ss**ary, omi**ss**ion, ta**ss**el.

(b) **With prefixes** :

ad-: ac-complish, ac-commodate, ac-cept, ac-cidental, ad-dition, ad-dress, as-sent, at-traction, an-nouncement ap-pearance, ap-pointment, ab-breviation, al-literation, al-lusion, ag-gravate, ag-gregate.

con-: col-lapse, col-laborate, col-league, col-lection, col-lision com-mand, com-missioner, com-memorate, com-mittee, com-modity, con-nexion, cor-rection cor rugated, cor-ruption.

dis-: dif-ference, dif-ficulty, dif-fidence, dis-satisfied, dis-satisfaction, dis-section, dis-sension, dis-senter, dis-similar, dis-sipation, dis-solution, dis-suade.

in-: im-movable, im-mediate, im-minent, im-moral, im-mortal, ir-religious, ir-rigation, ir-reverent, ir-responsible, il-legal, il-literate, il-logical, il-legible, il-legitimate in-nocent, in-numerable.

inter-: inter-rupt.

ob-: oc-casional, oc-cur.

sub-: suf-fer, sup-posed, sup-port, sup-plant.

un : un natural, un-necessary.

(c) **With suffixes**.

green-ness, clean-ness, and other words ending in *n* followed by the suffix *-ness* ;

natural-ly, general-ly, and other words ending in *l* followed by the adverbial suffix *-ly*. Note especially : fully, dully, wholly ;

with-hold, soul-less.

The rule is :

(i) When a suffix beginning with a vowel is added to a word of one syllable ending in a single vowel + a single consonant, the consonant is doubled.

(ii) When a suffix beginning with a vowel is added to words of more than one syllable ending in a single vowel + a single consonant, the consonant is doubled only if its syllable bears the stress.

The consonant *l* does not conform to the rule. It is *always* doubled before a suffix beginning with a vowel, except in the one word *unparallel-ed*. The consonant *p* does not conform to the rule (*a*) in words whose final syllable, though unstressed, retains the quality of a stressed syllable : *kidnap* and *handicap* are the most important of them ; (*b*) in words compounded with monosyllables ; e.g. *horsewhip*, *sideslip*. In such words, and in one isolated word *worship*, the *p* doubles before a suffix beginning with a vowel : *kidnapped*, *handicapped*, *horsewhipped*, *sideslipping*, *worshipper*. The few words in single vowel + *g* always double the *g* before a suffix beginning with a vowel, irres-

inconsequent, inconsiderable, inconsolable, inconstant, incontrovertible, indisputable, indistinct, indistinguishable, ineffaceable, inefficient, ineradicable, inescapable, inexplicable, inflexible, ingratitude, inhospitable, inopportune, inquietude, insanitary, insoluble, insupportable, insurmountable, insusceptible.

(*b*) *Words taking un–* :

Unacceptable, unadaptable, unalterable, unapparent, unappeasable, unauthentic, uncharitable, uncommunicative, uncongenial, unconsidered, uncontrollable, uncontroverted, uncorrupted, undecipherable, undeniable, undiscriminating, unescapable, unessential, unexceptionable, unexpressive, unexpurgated, ungrammatical, unobjectionable, unobliging, unobservance, unobtrusive, unpractical, unpronounceable, unquenchable, unquotable, unresponsive, unscientific, unsociable, unsubstantial, unsubstantiated, unverifiable, unwholesome.

(*xiii*) *for–* or *fore–* : Except *forward*, all words containing the idea *in front of* should take *fore*, as *forearm*, *forebears*, *forehead*. Words taking **for**– are small in number, the commoner ones among them being, *forbear*, (verb), *forbid*, *forfeit*, *forgather*, *forget*, *forgive*, *forgo*, *forlorn*, *forsake*, *forsooth*, *forswear*.

(*xiv*) Nouns ending in **o** add *es* in the plural when the word is either a monosyllable or a thoroughly Anglicized word. Thus we have **hero,** *heroes*, **potato,** *potatoes* ; **cargo,** *cargoes*. In other words, the addition of **s** only is the rule, **commando,** *commandos*. Contracted forms like *photo* and *piano*, and proper nouns simply add **s,** as *photos*, the *Romeos*.

• (*xv*) **All** and **full** drop an **l** when forming compounds, as *almost*, *already*, *altogether*, *plentiful*, *beautiful*. But we have *all right*. *All together* also survives, but with a meaning different from that of *altogether*.

(*xvi*) The plurals of compounds with *ful* and phrases with *full* are formed as follows : (*a*) Two *spoonfuls* of milk ; (*b*) Two *spoons full* of milk. The form *spoonsful* is, however, incorrect.

(*xvii*) Verbs ending in **l**, take a **double l** after **a,** but a **single l** after other vowels, as *install*, *annul*.

(*xviii*) Monosyllables ending in **l** with a single vowel before it have only one **l,** but those with two vowels have **double l.**

These rules have so many exceptions and apply to such a small number of words that they cannot come to the help of a student always. We should, therefore, like to give them a list of words which are frequently misspelt along with their incorrect spellings that are commonly found :

Correct	Incorrect
abhor	abhorr, abbor.
abhorrence	abhorence.
abominable	abbominable.
absorption	absorbtion.
abundant	abandunt. abundunt.
abyss	abiss.
acceleration	accelaration. accilaration.
access	acess, acces.
accident	accidant.
accommodate	acomodate, accomodate
accumulate	accummulate.
achieve	acheive.
acquaintance	acquintance, acquaintence.
acquiesce	acqiesce, acquiese.
advantageous	advantagious.
advertisement	advertisment.
aeon	aon.
aerial	airial.
aeroplane	airoplane (airplane is American).
affect	afect (often confused with effect)
afloat	aflote.
aggregate	aggregrate, agrerat.
aisle	aile.
alcohol	alchohol.
alliteration	allitieration.
almighty	all mighty.
altar	alter.
aluminium	alluminium, alumminium.
amateur	amature.
analysis	analisis.
antique	antic, antick.
appellation	apellation. appelation.
appropriate	apropriate.
ascertain	assertain, acertain
ascetic	asetic.
autumn	autum, autamn.
avenue	avenu.
balloon	baloon.
banana	bannana.
banquet	banqet, banquette
barrier	barier.
bazaar	bazar.
beauty	buty.
beautiful	butiful, beautyful
believe	beleive.
beneficent	beneficient.
bequeath	bequethe.
besiege	beseige.
bicycle	bycicle, bicicle.
bier	byer.
biscuit	bicit biskit.
bosom	bossom.
bounteous	bountious.
bouquet	boquet, boquette.
breathe	breath.
bungalow	bunglow.
buoyant	boyant, bouyant.
bureaucracy	buraucracy, beuraucracy.
business	bussiness, busyness.

Correct	**Incorrect**	**Correet**	**Incorrect**
calendar	calender.	*cypress*	cipress, cypres.
calibre	caliber.	*daffodil*	daffocill, dafodil
callous	calous	*damn*	dam, damm
calumny	calumly. callumny.	*decease*	desease.
		disease	decease.
candour	candure, candor.	*diphthong*	dipthong.
canvas	canvass.	*deceive*	decieve.
canvass	canvas.	*defendant*	defendent.
career	carrier, carreer.	*defence*	defense (American).
carcass	carcas		
casualty	casaulty.	*deference*	deferance.
catalogue	catalog.	*deficiency*	defeciency.
caterpillar	catterpiller.	*deify*	diety, dify.
cemetery	cemetry, cemetary	*defy*	deify.
causal	casual.	*deity*	ditty, diety.
casual	causal.	*delete*	delit, delite.
centenary	centinary. contenery	*delinquent*	deliquent, delinquet.
certain	certen.	*delirium*	deliriam.
chew	choo.	*deliverance*	diliverence.
chronicle	cronicle.	*demagogue*	demagog.
cipher	cifer, ciffer.	*demoniac*	demonaic
coalesce	coalese, coalece.	*depth*	defth.
coffee	coffe, cofee.	*descant*	decant.
coincide	concide.	*descend*	decend.
collapse	colapse.	*descendant*	descendent.
colleague	colleag.	*desecrate*	dececrate. desicrate.
commemorate	comemorate.		
commission	comission.	*desperate*	desperete, desparate.
committee	comittee.		
compete	compit, compet	*dessert*	desert.
competition	compitition, compatition.	*detector*	detecter.
complement	compliment.	*deteriorate*	deterorate, deterriorate.
compliment	complement	*develop*	develope
conscious	consious, concious, etc.	*devise*	device.
		diagnosis	dignosis, dianosis
conscience	consience, conscious etc.	*diagonal*	digonal.
		dial	dail.
curiosity	curia-ity, curiocity.	*diamond*	dimond.
		diary	dairy.

Correct	Incorrect	Correct	Incorrect
dairy	diary.	*feudal*	fudal.
dais	dias.	*fibre*	fiber.
director	directer.	*field*	feild.
discernible	discernable	*fiend*	feind.
discreet	discrete	*fiery*	*firy. fiery.*
dishevelled	disheveled.	*forfeit*	forfit.
dissipate	disipate.	*freight*	fregth, freit.
disservice	diservice.	*freak*	frik, freek.
draught	draft	*frolic*	frolick.
drought	dowt.	*fulfil*	fulfill, fullfil.
dynasty	dinasty.	*fusion*	fushion.
ecclesiastic	eccleciastic.	*furniture*	farniture.
ecstacy	ekstasy, extasy, ecstazy.	*galloping*	gallopping
		gauge	gage, gaze.
edgy	edgey.	*genealogy*	geneology.
element	eliment.	*gorgeous*	gorgus, gorgious.
elementary	elementery	*grammar*	gramar.
elegiac	elegaic.	*guarantee*	garantee.
elysium	elysiam.	*gassy*	gasy.
embarrassed	embarassed, embarrased.	*gaseous*	gassious.
		gaiety	gayty, gaity.
endeavour	endevour endeavor.	*gordian*	gordion.
		gorilla	gorrilla, gorrila.
enfranchise	enfrankise.	*grotesque*	groutesk. grotesқe.
equilibrium	equilibriam.		
etiquette	etiquet.	*gruesome*	grusome.
exaggerate	exagerate.	*gullible*	gullable, gulible.
exalt	exult.	*gyrate*	girate.
excrescence	excresense, excrecence.	*hallow*	halow, hollow.
		halcyon	halycon.
exhilerate	exilerate. exilerate.	*hammer*	hammar.
		handicap	handicup.
exult	exalt.	*handicraft*	handcraft.
exultation	exaltation	*harangue*	harrangue. haran.
faerie, fairy	faery, fairie.		
fallacy	falacy.	*harass*	haras, harras.
fallible	falible.	*heinous*	hineous.
favourite	favorite.	*hindrance.*	hinderance.
fascinate	facinate; fasinate.	*holiday*	holyday.
felicity	falicity.	*humour*	humor. (American).
fetish, fetich (e)	fetishe	*humorist*	humourist. (old)

Correct	Incorrect
humorous	humourous.
hybrid	hibreed, hibrid.
hysteria	histeria.
hygiene	hygine, hygeine
idyll	idyl.
ignominy	ignonimy.
illiterate	ilitterate, illitarate.
impostor	imposter.
inaccessible	inaccessable, inaccesible.
inalienable	inallienable, inaleinible.
indigenous	indeginous.
indiscretion	indiscreetion.
inflammation	inflamation.
influential	influensial.
ingenious	ingenius.
ingenuity	ingeneity.
ingenuous	ingenus.
irresistible	irresistable.
itinerant	itenerrant itinerent.
jealous	jelous.
jester	jestor.
jugglery	jugglary
juvenile	juvinile.
kaleidoscope	kaledoscope.
kerosene	kerosin, kerosine.
knack	nack.
knead	nead.
knell	nell.
knuckle	nuckle.
laboratory	labratory.
language	langage. langauge.
legitimate	ligitimate
leopard	lepard.
leper	lepar.
liaison	laison
library	libary, liberary.

Correct	Incorrect
licence	license.
license	licence.
lieutenant	leftenant, lietenant.
Lilliputian	lilputian.
lily	lilly.
limited	limitted.
literary	litarary.
livelihood	livilihood
lovable	loveable.
lovely	lovly.
lorry	lory
lozenge	lojenge, lozenje.
lustre	luster.
lynch	linch.
maintenance	maintainance.
manageable	managable.
manoeuvre	manovre.
marketed	marketted.
marshal	martial.
martial	marshal.
marvellous	marvelous.
mercenary	mercenery.
mileage	milage.
millionaire	millioner.
minstrel	ministrel.
miscellaneous	miscellanious.
mischief	mischeif.
modelled	modeled.
moneyed	monied.
mountainous	mountenous.
moustache	mustache. mustash.
mystery	mystry.
naked	nacked, necked.
narration	naration.
nasal	nazal.
nausea	nautia.
navy	navvy.
navvy	navy
nebulous	nebulaus.

Correct	Incorrect	Correct	Incorrect
necessity	neccessity.	*pamphlet*	pamplet.
neighbour	neighbur. neibour.	*pepper*	peper.
niche	nishe.	*perennial*	perenial.
niece	neice.	*persecute*	prosecute.
ninth	nineth.	*prosecute*	persecute.
noticeable	noticable.	*persuade*	parsuade. pursuade.
nuisance	nusance.	*perversion*	pervertion.
neural	nural	*phantom*	fantom.
neutral	nutral	*philosophy*	phylosophy.
obedient	obident.	*phthisis*	thysis. thisis.
oblique	obliq. oblick.	*physique*	physic.
obsequies	obsiquies.	*pillage*	pilage.
occasion	occassion. ocassion.	*pleasant*	plesant.
occurred	occured.	*plebeian*	plebian.
occurrence	occurence.	*pneumonia*	neumonia. pnumonia.
Odyssey	odyssy. oddysey	*pollute*	polute.
odour	odor.	*poach*	poch. pooch.
offspring	ofspring.	*precede*	preceed.
offence	offense.	*proceed*	procede.
offensive	offencive.	*precis*	preci.
offered	offerred.	*pretension*	pretention.
offering	offerring.	*pretentious*	pretensious.
Olympian	olympian.	*prevention*	prevension.
Olympic	olympic.	*professor*	proffessor
omelette	ommelette. omellette.	*profession*	proffession.
ominous	omenous.	*proprietor*	propitor. proprieter.
omitted	omited.	*proletariate*	proletariat.
opportunity	oppurtunity.	*promisor*	promiser.
opprobrium	opprobium.	*psalm*	salm.
orchestra	orkestra. orcestra	*purse*	parse.
orator	orater.	*pursue*	persue. parsue.
outcast	outcaste.	*pyhorrhoea*	pierrohaea.
paean	pean.	*quarrel*	quarrell.
palatial	palacial.	*quarrelled*	quareled.
patter	pattar.	*quinine*	quinin.
panacea	panasea.	*quotation*	quottation.
parallel	paralel.	*rabbit*	rabit.
parlour	parlor.	*rabid*	rabbid.

Correct	Incorrect	Correct	Incorrect
railing	railling.	*rhyme, rime*	ryme.
raillery	railery, raillary.	*righteous*	rightous.
rally	raly.	*sacrilege*	sacrilage.
rapture	rupture.	*sacrilegious*	sacrilageous.
rupture	rapture.	*salutary*	salutory.
realm	relm.	*satellite*	satelite.
recede	receed	*saviour*	savior.
receive	recieve.	*savoury*	savory.
receipt	receit.	*scene*	sceen, seen.
receivable	receiveable.	*sceptic*	skeptic, septic.
reconcile	recoincile.	*septic*	sceptic.
reconciliation	reconcileation.	*schedule*	shedule.
recur	recurr.	*scholar*	scholer.
recurred	recured.	*scissors*	sccissors.
recurrence	recurence.	*scythe*	scithe.
referee	refferee, referree	*secede*	seceed.
referred	refered.	*sedentary*	sedentory.
reference	referrence.	*seize*	sieze.
refinery	refinary	*separate*	seperate.
regeneration	regenaration.	*separable*	seperable.
regrettable	regretable.	*sepulchre*	sepulcre.
relieve	releive.	*several*	sevarel.
reiterate	riterate.	*shield*	sheild.
reminiscence	reminisence.	*shyly*	shily, shiely.
remittance	remitance.	*siege*	seige.
removable	removeable.	*sieve*	seive.
repetition	repeatition, repetation.	*similar*	similer.
		sinecure	sinicure, sincure.
replaceable	replacable.	*siren*	syren.
repository	repositary.	*skilful*	skillful, skilfull.
reprieve	repreive.	*smoky*	smokey.
reprovable	reproveable.	*soliloquy*	soliliqui.
respite	respit.	*sombre*	somber.
resurrection	ressurrection.	*souvenir*	sovenir.
retrievable	retreivable.	*spectre*	specter.
reverie	revery.	*sponge*	spunge.
rhapsody	rapsody, rapshody	*stillness*	stilness.
rhetoric	retoric.	stupefy.	stupify.
rheumatism	rumatism, rhumatism.	*subduing*	subdueing.
		subsistence	subsistance.

Correct	Incorrect	Correct	Incorrect
successful	sucessful. succesful.	*unmistakable*	unmistakeable.
		un til	untill.
sufficient	suficient.	*uptill*	uptil, uptill.
suitor	suiter.	*urine*	urin.
summary	summery.	*usable*	useable.
superintendent	superintendant.	*utterance*	utterrance. utterence.
surname	sirname.		
susceptible	susceptable.	*vaccinate*	vaxinate.
symmetrical	symetrical.	*vacillate*	vaccillate. vaccilate.
synopsis	sinopsis.		
technique	technic.	*valley*	vally.
temperament	temparament.	*veil*	vail.
tenor	tenour.	*venison*	vension.
tentacle	tenacle.	*ventilator*	ventilater.
thief	theif.	*verandah*	veranda.
tolerance	tolerence.	*verify*	varify.
tournament	turnament.	*vicissitude*	viccissitude.
tragedy	trajedy.	*victuals*	vittles.
tranquillity	tranquility.	*vigorous*	vigourous.
transcend	transend.	*visitor*	visiter.
transcendent	transcendant.	*wander*	wonder.
transferred.	transfered.	*wonder*	wander.
tremor	tremour.	*Wednesday*	Wedensday.
tributary	tributory.	*weird*	wierd.
tuition	tution.	*welcome*	wellcome.
tuberculosis	tubarculosis.	*Westminster*	westminister.
tunnelled	tunelled.	*wield*	weild.
turbulent	turbulant.	*wilful*	willful, wilfull.
Turk	Tark.	*yacht*	yaght.
umbrella	umbrela.	*yearn*	yarn.
unintelligible	unintellgable.	*yield*	yield.
unitary	unitory.	*zealot*	zeelot.

9. **Word-division**. The division of words at the end of lines causes a lot of trouble. The students are prone to follow the demands of pronunciation in this respect. This often results in a mistake because such division is often effected on etymological basis. The fundamental principle is to keep the root and affix as separate entities. The following further rules have, however, been suggested in this connection by grammarians :

(*a*) (*i*) If a vowel sound is long and accented as in **cat**er, m**i**ner, rep**u***d*iate, a single following consonant as *t, n, d*, here or an unbreakable group as in *father* belongs to the following

syllable and must go with it. Such words would, therefore, be divided as *ca-ter*, *mi-ner*, *repu-diate*, *fa-ther*.

(*ii*) If in such cases the vowel sound be short, the consonant (or group of consonants) belongs (or belong) to the preceding syllable, as *orig-inal*, *aris-en*, *heav-enly*.

(*iii*) If the vowel sound is unaccented, the consonant(s) following it belong(s) to the next syllable as *hospi-tal*, *sepa-rate*, *combi-nation*.

(*iv*) A prefix should not ordinarily be divided from its stem. It is not customary to divide *in-apt*, *circum-stance*.

(*v*) Letter groups corresponding to pronunciation groups *shun*, *zher*, *cher*, etc, are always kept together. No one ever divides *division* at divis-ion.

* (*vi*) An obscure, unaccented vowel may take the following syllable along with it, as *custum-ary*, *system-atic*. This rule helps the keeping of stems together.

(*vii*) When there are two or more different consonants between, and those consonants do not form a unit of pronunciation, the division occurs between them, as *chil-dren*, *skil-ful*; but *de-crease*, *de-scent*, *de-struction*.

(*viii*) When there is a double consonant representing one sound one consonant goes to each syllable, as *dif-fer*, *ad-dress*, *sug-gest*.

(*ix*) The suffixes **able**,, **ible**, **ed**, **ing**, **er**, **est**, **y**, **iness**, **ish**, when following a double consonant in the stem, do not divide it, as *bless-ed*, *pass-ing*, *accept-able*.

(*x*) When, however, the stem contains a single final consonnant, and has only doubled it on the addition of one of these suffixes, the consonants are divided, as *compel-ling*, *deter-ring*.

(*xi*) The general rule in all such cases is to divide the consonants with Latin suffixes, but to let them stand together with Latin suffixes.

(*xii*) When the sound has two consonants, but the writing has only one, the written consonant goes to the second syllable, as *Eng-land*, *fin-ger*.

(*xiii*) This rule is not observed when dealing with words adding the adjectival suffixes **er** and **est**. Thus nobody divides *stronger* and *strongest* as stron-ger and stron-gest. They are divided as *strong-er* and *strong est*.

(*xiv*) Greek words are divided according to their etymology, as *bio-logy*, *bio-graphy*. In America, however, they are divided as pronounced, as *biol-ogy*, *bio-graphy*.

* A hyphen is used to indicate that a certain word has been divided.

☞ 10. Hyphen has other uses as well. It serves to join various parts of the same word. There are no absolute rules in this respect,

except those of the currency of a word and of facilility in reading it.

(i) The best guide, short of a good dictionary, is the rule to omit the hyphen from a single word which is quite familiar and in the pronunciation of which no mistake is likely.

(ii) Monosyllabic words like *busy live*, should not be broken.

(iii) Merely one letter of a word should not be separated from it or hyphenated in case of division.

(iv) Prefixes are joined without a hyphen unless there is a danger of confusion, as *recover*, *prerequisite*.

(v) A hyphen may be used after a prefix when one wants to put emphasis on the meaning of the prefix, as *recover* and *re-cover*; *recreate* and *re-create* ; *non-paying*.

(vi) A compound word comprising two or more nouns of equal value has each of its components set off with a hyphen, as *actor-manager*, *pupil teacher*.

(vii) When in such compounds, one noun modifies the other, the hyphen is not used between the two, as *classroom*, *taxpayer*.

(viii) Hyphen is used in adjective phrases, as a *four-mile* walk, a *ten-year-old* lady.

(ix) A hyphen is used in simple fractions, as *two-thirds*, *four-fifths*.

(x) When, however, the first figure is already written as a hyphenated word, the hyphen between the first and the second figure is not used, as *seventy-three hundredths*. But this is a very rare use, since in such case the word cent would be substituted.

11. The following should be written as one word : *afterward(s)*, *almost*, *altogether*, *already*, *always*, *anyhow*, *anything*, *anywhere*, *anybody*, *cannot*, *everybody*, *everything*, *however*, *headmaster*, *postmaster*, *postman*, *football*, *nobody* *nowhere*, *notwithstanding*, *myself*, *moreover*, *schoolboy*, *schoolroom*, *newspaper*, *otherwise*, *into*, *instead*, *somebody*, *sometimes*, *throughout*, *within*, *without*.

12. The components of the following should be written as separate words : *all right*, *all round*, *at least*, *at once*, *do not*, *in fact*, *in order to*, *in spite of*, *no one*, *per cent*, *of course*, *well done*, *young man*.

13. **British Style**. We have already pointed out that for words ending in + **ize**, British printers always use **-ise**. This is wrong etymologically but may be adopted for the sake of convenience and uniformity For those who want to adopt that system, as is done by newspapers published in this country, we reproduce below the spelling instructions issued to lino operators working on the British pattern :

(a) (i) Adjectives ending in **-ous** and derived from words that have **ou** in the root, drop the **u**, as *humour* + *ous* is contracted into *humorous*.

(ii) Adjectives ending in **-able** are exceptions to this rule, as *honour* + *able* remains unchanged as *honourable*.

(*iii*) All words with the prefix **self** are hyphenated, as *self-control.*

(*iv*) The nouns **pallor**, **stupor** and **tremor** never take the **u**.

(*b*) Here is a list of doubtful words :

acclimatise
accoutre
accoutred
accoutring
accoutrement
aggrandise
amphitheatre
analyse
anathemise
antagonise
anybody
any one
anything
anywhere
apologise
appal
arbour
ardour
armour
armoury
asendency
atropine
authorise
axe
aye (forever)
ay (yes)
bandana
baptise
behaviour
belabour
bevelled
bevelling
boulder
brusque
brutalise
buccaneer
calibre
cancellation
candour
carolled
carolling
catechise
cauterise
centralise
centre
characterise
chloride
chlorine
civilisation
civilise
clamour
clangour
clue
cognisance
cognisant
colonise
colour
co-operate
co-ordinate
coralled
coralling
councillor
counsellor
cosy
criticise
crystallise
debris
debut
debutante
defence
demeanour
demoralise
discolour
disfavour
dishevelled
dishonour
disillusionise
disorganise
distil
duelling
author
economise
emphasise
employé
enamelled
enameller
enamelling
enamour
endeavour
energise
enrol
enrolment
enthrall
enthralment
equalled
equalling
equalise
eulogise
evangelise
everyone
everything
everywhere
familiarise
favour
favourable
favourite
fertilise
fervour
fibre
flavour
fossilise
fulfil
fulfilment
fulness
galvanise
gauge
gaiety
gaily
generalise
glamour
good-bye
grey
grovelled
groveller
gipsy
harbour
harmonise
hearken
honour
humour
humorist
hypnotise
idealise
idolise
immortalise
instalment
instil
italicise
itemise
jewelled
jeweller
jewelling
kidnapped
kidnapper
kidnapping
labelled
labelling
labour

laboured
labourer
legalisation
legalise
levelled
levelling
libelled
libelling
libellous
liquorice
litre
localise
lustre
magnetise
mamma
manoeuvre
manoeuvred
manoeuvring
marvelled
marvelling
marvellous
materialise
meagre
mediaeval
memorise
metre
minimise
mitre
mobilise
modelled
modeller
modelling
mould
moult
monopolise
moralise
moustache
naive
naivete
naturalise
neighbour
neighbourhood
neutralise
nitre
northeast
northwest
ochre
odour
offence
organisation
organise
ostracise
panelled
paralyse
parcelled
parcelling
parlour
partisan
patronise
pedlar
pencilled
philosophise
plebeian
plough
popularise
portiére
practice (*n.*)
practise (*v.*)
pre-eminence
pre-emption
pre-engage
pre-establish
pre-exist
pretence
programme
proletariat
pulverise
quarrelled
quarrelling
rancour
rationalise
ravelled
realise
recognise
reconnaissance
reconnoitre
redoubt
re-echo
re-elect
re-inforce
re-establish
regime
regularise
reorganise
revelled
revelling
revolutionise
rigour
rhyme
rivalled
rivalling
role
rumour
sabre
saltpetre
saviour
savour
scandalise
sceptre
scrutinise
sensualise
sepulchre
shovelled
shrivelled
signalled
sceptic
skilful
smoulder
solemnise
soliloquise
sombre
some one
something
sometimes
southeast
southwest
specialisation
spectre
spiritualise
splendour
sterilise
stigmatise
strychnine
subsidise
succour
summarise
symbolise
sympathise
systemise
tabour
tantalise
temporise
terrorise
theatre
theorise
to-day
to-morrow
to-night
trammelled
tranquilise
tranquillity
travelled
traveller
travelling
tumour
tunnelled
twenty-five (etc.)
tyrannise
utilisation
utilise
valour
vapour
vaporisation
vigour
visor
visualise
vitalise

vocalise	woful	worshipped	zoology
wilful	woollen	worshipper	

EXERCISES

(*For* **Board** *Students*)

1. Complete the following words by adding 'ance' or 'ence' or ense' :—

Clear—, sembl—, remember—, nons—, inadvert—, susp—, penit—, exp—, off—, pret—. (*Punjab Intermediate*)

2. We give below groups of spellings commonly met with in the written work of candidates. Each group contains the correct spelling also. *Choose the correct spelling and write down as your answer :*

(*i*) Villege, villisge, village.
(*ii*) Servent, servant, servint.
(*iii*) Writing, writting, writeing.
(*iv*) Gether, gather, gaithar.
(*v*) Centre, center centar.
(*vi*) Benifit, benefit, banifit.
(*vii*) Decision, dicession, deceision, dicesion.
(*viii*) Liabrary, library, liberary. (*Punjab Intermediate*)

(*For* **University** *Students*)

Rewrite the following passages after correcting the spelling mistakes :

(*a*) Some years ago, in conversation with an artist whose works, perhaps, alone, in the present day, unite perfection of drawing with resplendance of colour, the writer made some inquiry respecting the general means by which this latter quality was most easily to be attained. The reply was as coincise as it was comprehensive,—'Know what you have to do, and do it'—comprehensive, not only as regarded the branch of art to which it temporarily applied, but as expressing the great principle of success in every direction of human effort ; for I believe that failure is less frequently attributeable to either insufficiency of means or impatience of labour than to a confused understanding of a thing actually to be done ; and therefore while it is properly a subject of ridicule, and sometimes of blame, that men propose to themselves a perfection of any kind, which reason, temparately consulted, might have shown to be impossible with the means at their command, it is a more dangerous error to permit the consideration of means to interfere with our conception, or, as is not impossible, even hinder our acknowledgment of goodness and perfection in themselves.

(*b*) There are, perhaps, no such laws peculiar to any one art. Their range necessarily includes the entire horizon of man's action. But they have modified forms and operations belonging to each of his persuits, and the extent of their authority cannot surely be considered as a diminution of its wieght. Those peculiar aspects of them which belong to the first of the arts, I have endevoured to trace in the following pages, and since, if truly stated, they must necessarily be, not only safeguards against every form of error, but sources of every measure of success, I do not think that I claim too much for them in calling them the Lamps of Architecture, nor that it is indolence, in endevouring to acertain the true nature and nobility of their fire, to refuse to enter into any curious or special questioning of the inummerable hinderances by which their light has been too often distorted or over-powered.

PART IV
WRITE THE NATURAL WAY
CHAPTER XXXI
IDIOMATIC USAGES : (1) VERBS

1. **Grammar and Idiom**. Grammar lays down the rules of logical expression. It is doubtlessly the prerequisite of writing *correct English*, but the fact of the matter is that for writing *good English* we have occasionally to go far beyond it. It is the *felicitous phrase* and not merely the correct grammatical expression which makes for good writing. What we have termed the felicitous phrase is sometimes ungrammatical rather than grammatical. What commends its adoption by us is the fact that though sometimes far from logical, it is the natural way of expression with those for whom English happens to be the mother-tongue. The vagaries of this natural way are called the **idiom** of a language. It is this all important idiomatic usage of various English words and phrases to which this part of the book is devoted.

2. **Not Necessarily Illogical**. The word **idiom** is derived from a Greek word which signifies *a manifestation of the peculiar*. It is, however, not necessarily illogical. Fowler's observation on this point is very illuminating. "English idiom," he says, "is the same as natural or racy or unaffected English ; that is idiomatic which it is natural for a normal Englishman to say or write ; to suppose that grammatical English is either all idiomatic or all unidiomatic would be as far from the truth as that idiomatic English is either all grammatical or ungrammatical ; *grammar and idiom are independent categories* ; being applicable to the same material, they sometimes agree and sometimes disagree about particular specimens of it ; the most that can be said is that what is idiomatic is far more often grammatical than ungrammatical." Since grammar is nothing but logic applied to language, it would not be incorrect to conclude from what Fowler says that idiom is not unnecessarily illogical.

3. **Classification**. Idioms then may be either peculiar grammatical constructions like the introductory **it** and **there**, or ungrammatical but natural usages like "**Its me**" (for "It is I"). Quite a large number of English idiom is formed by the use of various prepositions along with certain nouns, verbs and adjectives. Next to that are the idioms formed by the metaphorical use of words. They are drawn from various walks of life, as weather, food and arts. Slang in fact falls under this category of words and phrases which serve to illustrate the otherwise dull and drab

language by proving it with a colourful and attractive picture-gallery. They are what Archbishop Trench has described as "lightning flashes of genius......fixed and arrested." The more important of these idiomatic expressions are explained in the following pages.

4. **Avoid the Cliches**. But here is a piece of warning before you embark on the study of idioms. Grammatical idioms are quite safe to use. By the use of ungrammatical idioms, however, you run the risk of displaying certain mannerisms which are quite delectable if employed sparingly, but display a lack of good manners in speech and writing if used too frequently. The best type of idioms, *viz.*, the metaphorical, expose you to greater dangers. In the first place, they may give rise to mixed metaphors, as the one inadvertantly used on an occasion by a British Prime Minister about a quarter of a century ago :

"The *torrent* of *marching* feet......"

Again they may be used too often, and cause boredom instead of producing variety by becoming stereotyped. Such overworked metaphors are termed *cliches* (pronounced *klee*-shayz). Diction incurs the danger of losing all its freshness if it is overloaded with cliches. Here is a dialogue quoted from an American periodical. Entitled *The Cliche Expert Takes His Stand*, it has all the cliches printed in italics, and runs as follows :

Question. Mr. Arbuthnot, you are an expert in the use of cliche, are you not ?

Answer. Yes, sir, I am a *certified cliche expert*.

Question. Would you answer a few questions on uses of the cliche ?

Answer. *I should be only too glad to.*

Question. Thank you. Now, just for the record—you live in New York ?

Answer. I like to visit New York but *I wouldn't live there if you gave me the place.*

Question. Then where do you live ?

Answer. *Any old place I hang my hat* is *home sweet home to me*.

Question. What is your age ?

Answer. I am *fat, fair and forty*.

Question. And your occupation ?

Answer. Well, after *burning the midnight oil* at an institution of higher learning, I was for a time *tiller of the soil*. Then I *went down to the sea in ships*. I have been a *guardian of the law*, *a poet at heart*, a *prominent clubman* and *man about town*, an eminent—

Question. Now then, Mr. Arbuthnot, what kind of existence do you lead ?

Answer. *A precarious existence.*
Question. And what do you do to it ?
Answer. I *eke it out*.
Question. How do you cliche experts *reveal* yourselves, Mr. Arbuthnot ?
Answer. *In our true colours*, of course.
Question. And you expect *to live to......*
Answer. *A ripe old age.*
Question What do you *shuffle off* ?
Answer. *This mortal coil.*
Question. What do you think ?
Answer. *My lucky stars.*
Question. What do you do to *hasty retreats* ?
Answer. *I beat them.*
Question. What kind of a dog are you ?
Answer. *A gay dog.*
Question. And how do you *work* ?
Answer. *Like a dog.*
Question. And you *lead* ?
Answer. *A dog's life.*
Question. Now, Mr. Arbuthnot, when you are naked, you are......
Answer. *Stark naked.*
Question. In what kind of a light ?
Answer. *Broad daylight* ?
Question. What kind of outsider are you ?
Answer. I'm a *rank outsider*.
Question. How right are you ?
Answer. I am *dead right.*
Question. What meals do you like ?
Answer. *Square meals.*
Question. What do you *do to them* ?
Answer. *Ample justice.*
Question. When you buy things, you *buy them for......*
Answer. *A song.*
Question. You are *as sober as...*
Answer. *A judge.*
Question. And when you are drunk ?
Answer. I can be *as drunk as a coot, or a lord, or an owl, or a fool.*
Question. Very good. Now, how brown are you ?
Answer. *As brown as a berry* ?
Question. Ever see a brown berry ?

Answer. Oh, no. Were I to see a brown berry, I should be *frightened.*
Question. To what extent ?
Answer. *Out of my wits.*
Question. How fit are you ?
Answer. *As fit as a fiddle.*
Question. How do you wax ?
Answer. I *wax poetic.*
Question. How about *the fate* of Europe ?
Answer. It *is hanging in the balance.*
Question. What happens to landscapes ?
Answer. *Landscapes are dotted.*
Question. How are you *attired* ?
Answer. *Faultlessly.*
Question. What kind of precision and order are you partial to ?
Answer. *Clocklike precision* and *apple-pie order.*
Question. When you travel, what do you combine ?
Answer. I *combine business with pleasure.*
Question. And you are *destined.*
Answer. *To go far.*
Question. And what is it you *save* ?
Answer. *Wear and tear.*
Question. What goes with "*pure*" ?
Answer. *Simple.*
Question. That word "*sundry*" ?
Answer. *Diverse.*
Question. What are ranks ?
Answer. *Ranks are serried. Structures are imposing. Spectacles are colourful*
Question. Thank you, Mr. Arbuthnot. What kind of beauties do you like ?
Answer. *Raving beauties.*
Question. How generous are you ?
Answer. *Generous to a fault.*
Question. How is *corruption* these days ?
Answer. Oh, *rife*, as usual.
Question. What time is it ?
Answer. *It is high time.*
Question. How do you point ?
Answer. I *point with pride*, I *view with alarm*, and I *yield to no man.*

Question. What do you *pursue?*
Answer. *The even tenor of my way.*
Question. What do you throw—and where?
Answer. *I throw caution to the winds.*
Question. As a cliche-user, have you any pets?
Answer. Yes, I *have pet aversions.*
Question. Any *tempests?*
Answer. Oh, yes. *In teapots. In china shops I have bulls.*
Question. What kind of cunning do you affect, Mr. Arbuthnot?
Answer. *Low, animal cunning.*
Question. And when you are *taken*, you are *taken......*
Answer. *Aback.*
Question. I see. Well, Mr. Arbuthnot, I think that everyone who has listened to you here today will be a better cliche-user for having heard you. Thank you very, very much.
Answer. Thank you. It's been a pleasure, I assure you, and *I was only too glad to oblige.*

5. **Verbal Phrases**. Here are some important verbal phrases of everyday use:

(i) Be

To be after something, is to be in pursuit of it. He *was after* a good job, but unfortunately he did not get one.

To be in for a thing means to be involved in it or committed to it (usually something unpleasant, especially when we say '*To be in for it*'), engaged in competition for (race, prize etc.) "A culprit *is in for* some crime (in prison)." "He *is in for* a sound beating (will surely get it)." "The boy *is in for* his degree.

To be half seas over is the colloquial for being almost drunk or tipsy.

'**It is all over with** or **all up with** a person' means 'he is undone.'

To be up to is to be equal to, as in 'He is *up to some mischief*' to be playing something.

To be well up in a subject is to be well-instructed in it. "He *is well up* in mathematics."

To be born with a silver spoon in one's mouth means to be born in a rich family. "*He was born with a silver spoon in his mouth* but fell on evil days in his youth and soon after died in tatters."

To be born under a lucky star is to be fortunate in life. This phrase is derived from the belief in the influence of the stars on

human life. "You must have been *born under a lucky star* to win such laurels."

To be sick of a thing is to be disgusted and wearied of it. "I *am sick* of all the quirks and turns, the loves and doves they sing."

To be worth while (or worth-while, or **worth one's while)** is to be worth the time spent on it. "It *is worth my while* to try to see him ; I expect him to help me." "As against it we have phrases like **To be little worth, To be not worth much**, etc.

To be worth its weight in gold is to be extremely valuable. "At times a cup of water *is worth its weight in gold.*"

To be better for wear (or **the worse for wear)** is to be in better (or worse) condition because of wear. We often say, "His clothes are *the worse for wear.*"

To be ill at ease is to be disturbed in mind, not feeling happy or comfortable. "He *was ill at ease* in my company because he expected that I would refer to his past during our conversation."

To be lost in the clouds is to be in a fog, in a confused and muddled condition.

To be caught napping is to be caught in an unguarded moment ; because a watchman if *caught napping* (sleeping), feels uncomfortable or is helpless.

To be caught red-handed, *i.e.*, in the very act of committing crime.

To be all ear. "I *was all ear* to what he said (to listen to it very attentively)."

To be Greek (or **double Dutch) to one** is the colloquial for being absolutely unintelligible. "What you say is *all Greek to me*. Please explain yourself clearly."

To be a host in oneself is spoken of a person of great powers or attainments. "He does not require any help, he *is a host in himself.*"

To be a slave to a thing is to be hopelessly addicted to it. "He is a slave to drink."

To be off one's head is to be insane.

To be under a cloud is to be for the time being under suspicion, not to be in good repute "He is *under a cloud* now over the Pakistan National Bank Scandal.

To be down in the mouth is colloquially to feel depressed. "He was *down in the mouth* being rebuked by his guardian."

To be at the beck and call of another person is to be very subservient to him. "He is not the type of person *to be at the beck and call* of any one ; he has a will of his own."

To be at daggers drawn is to be at open and bitter enmity. "These two neighbours are now *at daggers drawn* and each tries his level best to injure the other."

To be at home in a subject (is to be fully acquainted with it); *to be at home* **with a person** is to be familiar with him, to be comfortable in his company. "I *was at home with him* soon as he appeared to be very friendly and frank." "Sometimes we use the expression, *to feel at home with a person*."

To be at a loss is to be unable to decide, to be puzzled. "The speaker suddenly stopped as he *was at a loss for* the appropriate word."

To be at one with somebody is to be in harmony with him. "I *am at one* with him in the matter."

To be at sea is to be in a confused and uncertain state of mind.

To be at sixes and sevens denotes a lack of agreement, a continuation of strife between persons. "The husband and wife are always *at sixes and sevens*; they cannot agree with each other in any matter."

To be at one's wit's end is to be greatly perplexed, not to know what to do. '*I was at my wit's end* when I was asked by the teacher to write an essay on *Perseverance* within half an hour."

To be in bad odour with, to be in good odour with, or **to get into bad odour with** mean to be unpopular with certain persons by giving offence. "He *got into bad odour with* the authorities for pressing the just demands of his colleagues.

To be in one's element is to be in congenial surroundings, doing agreeable work. As opposed to it we have **to be out of one's element**. "Keats *was in his element* in the company of Leigh Hunt and his poet friends, but he *was out of his element* in a hospital."

To be in keeping with something is to be in harmony with, or to correspond to it. "This cruel act of yours is *in keeping with* your unfeeling disposition; nothing better could be expected of you." The opposite of this phrase is **to be out of keeping with**. "The jollity of his companions was *out of keeping with* his heaviness of heart"

To be in one's line, to pertain to one's calling or business. It is a colloquial expression "It is not *in my line* to repair a car; I am an electrician."

To be in a person's good books is to be in his favour. The opposite is **to be in one's bad books**. "This student *is in the bad books of the principal* for his misconduct on the Founder's Day."

To be in a pretty pass is to be in a difficulty. Compare **to be in a mess**. Also **to come to a pretty pass**. "Things have *come to a pretty pass* due to his brother's indiscretion."

To be in the wind is to be rumoured. Compare **to be in the air**. "It *is in the wind* that he will soon make a statement on the political situation in the country."

To be in the wrong box is to be in uncongenial circumstances. "I had expected that things would turn out to be in my favour after the meeting, but very soon I found myself *in the wrong box.*"

To be on the alert is to be watchful and ready for any emergency. Compare **to be on one's guard against, to be on the watch, to be on the look-out for**. "Now that he *is on the elert*, it is no use trying to take him in."

To be on the wane is to be gradually diminishing. The Eastern Roman Empire was long *on the wane* when the Turks attacked and captured Constantinople.

To be on the carpet is to be under consideration. So, **to bring on the carpet, to come on the carpet**.

To be on the eve of, on the verge of doing a thing, is to be about to do it.

To be on one's last legs means metaphorically to be about to collapse. "Orthodoxy is *on its last legs* in progressive communities of the East."

To be out of the question is to be quite impracticable. "My going there at this time of the night is *out of the question*." Note the definite article before *question*.

To be out of place is to be unsuitable or inappropriate. "His remarks on the political situation were *out of place* in his lecture on Keats."

To be full of oneself is to be self-conceited. "He is *so full of himself* that he cannot bear to listen to anything about any other person."

To be one's father's son is the colloquial for being like one's father. "He is *his father's son* all right; you cannot deceive him."

To be a chip of the old block has a similar meaning. "The father was a great hero, and the son, even in his boyhood, gave promise of being *a chip of the old block*."

(ii) Break

To break ground means, metaphorically, to commence an undertaking.

To break the ice is to get over the initial shyness or reserve. "At first we all felt constrained and shy, but Mr. Jones *broke the ice* by a witty remark on fat men, and we all chatted away freely."

To break one's mind to another person is to disclose one's feelings and anxieties to him.

To break the news to a person is to communicate an unexpected and disagreeable news to him. "Who would **break the news of** her son's accidental death to her?"

(*iii*) To Bring

To bring home to a person is to convince him of something. "The guilt of his son *was brought home to him*."

To bring into play is to cause to operate. "All his faculties *were brought into play* by the difficulties of the situation."

To bring to bear on is to apply influence, etc., on something. "All his enormous strength *was brought to bear on* the door and it gave way."

To bring to book is to exact an account from (an offender). "The defaulter was soon *brought to book*).

To bring down the house is to elicit a great applause in a pictures house. "She *brought down the house* by her clever acting of the role of the Shrew."

(*iv*) Call

To call into being is to create.

To call in question is to dispute. "His authority in this matter was *called in question* by the official."

To call attention to something is to draw attention to it.

To call somebody names is to swear at him. "He *called me names* and I slapped him for it."

To call to account is to take to task, or to demand an explanation.

To call a spade a spade is to call things by their true names, to speak plainly and bluntly. As he was in the habit of *calling a spade a spade* he described Mr. Jones as a fool.

(*v*) Carry

To carry all before one is to succeed, to win a sweeping victory. "He *carried all before him* in the election and was returned with a thumping majority."

To carry one's point or **to gain one's point** is to defeat the opposition and attain the goal. "He *carried his point* in the meeting even against the fiercest opposition by dint of his personality."

To carry weight (or **authority**) is to be influential. Whatever he says *carries weight* with it.

To carry into effect is to accomplish. "His wishes were *carried into effect* by his sons."

To carry the hearers with one is to persuade them.

(*vi*) Cast

To cast an eye (or **a glance** or **a look**) **upon** a thing. "He *cast an eye upon* me and seemed to be sizing me up."

To cast a spell on is to bewitch. "The woman seems *to have cast a spell on him*."

To cast (or **throw**) **light** (or **a flood of light**) **on** a thing. This

evidence *casts good deal of light on* this obscure affair (illuminates, makes clear).

To cast something **in one's teeth** is to reproach him with it. "He is always *casting it in my teeth* that once I did not come to his help."

To cast into (or **put into** or **throw into**) **the shade** is to render less attractive. "His achievements were *cast into the shade* by the glorious deeds of his rival."

To cast (or **put**) **a slur upon** one is to impute some blame to one. *A slur was cast upon* his reputation when people came to know of his ignoble deed.

To cast in one's lot with a person is to share his fortunes. "The rich girl *cast in her lot with* her poor husband."

(*vii*) Catch

To catch one's eye is to be noticed by one. **To catch the Speaker's eye** is a Parlimentary phrase meaning, to succeed in being called on to speak in the House of Commons.

To catch one at (or **in**) **something or to catch one doing something** is to surprise or detect. "He *was caught* stealing a glance at her."

To catch a glimpse of is to see for a moment.

To catch a Tartar is to meet with a person who is more than a match for one. "Germany *caught a Tartar* in Soviet Russia when she tried to bully her."

(*viii*) Come

To come into the world is to be born.

To come to an end is to cease, to be over. "The meeting *came to an end* after a vote of thanks to the chair."

To come to hand is to reach. "Your letter *came to hand* the day before yesterday."

To come to pass is to happen. "*It came to pass* that after three days the young prince was not found anywhere in the place."

To come to blows is to fight. "From words they soon *came to blows.*"

To come to a head or **to gather head** is to be mature. "The boil *came to a head* and was operated upon."

To come to light is to be revealed. "His part in the conspiracy *came to light* during the investigation."

To come home to a person is to be realized by him. "It *came home to me* that I was really unfit for the post."

To come to one's knowledge is to be known by him. "It *came to my knowledge* that he was carrying on propaganda against me."

To come to harm is to be injured. **To come to grief** is to meet with a disaster. "His plans *came to grief* as he had to do without the support of his friends."

To come down in the world is to fall, to be humbled, to lose one's caste or place in society.

To come down upon a person is to rebuke or punish him. "He *came down upon me* for insulting his son."

To come short of or **to fall short of** is to be less than is required or expected. "My profits in the new business undertaking *came short of* or *fell short of* my expectations."

To come off with flying colours is to come out of a conflict with a brilliant success. "He *came off with flying colours* in the fight."

To come to one's senses is to recover from a fainting fit.

(ix) Cry

To cry muffins, (or **to cry stinking fish**) is the colloquial for condemning one's own words.

To cry one's heart out is to cry very bitterly. "The poor girl *cried her heart out* over the spoilt dress."

To cry over spilt milk is to waste one's regrets over something. "It is no good *crying over spilt milk*, think of the future."

To cary for the moon is to ask for the impossible.

To cry halves is to claim a share in something.

To cry shame upon an act (or person) is to protest against it (or him).

To cry wolf too often is to raise false alarms again and again, till genuine ones are disregarded. The allusion is to the well-known story in *Aesop's Fables* where a shepherd boy used to alarm the villagers in sport by crying 'wolf' so often, that when one day a wolf actually came no one came to his help when he shouted for it.

(x) Cut

To cut both ways is to tell for both sides. "Your argument *cuts both ways*."

To cut one to the heart or **to the quick**, is to cause acute pain. "The sight of his brother's disgrace *cut him to the quick*."

To cut and run is to run away.

To cut short is to shorten by cutting or to interrupt. "His speech was *cut short* at the approach of his father."

To cut one's coat according to one's cloth is to adapt expenditure to income or to one's resources. "Many students do not know how *to cut their coat according to their cloth*; that is why they run into debt."

To cut off with a shilling is to disinherit by bequeathing a nominal sum.

To cut a figure is to attract attention by doing something conspicuous.

To cut a sorry figure means to make oneself conspicuous by failing to do something. **To cut a dash** (slang) is to make a vain show.

To cut the Gordian knot is to solve a very difficult problem in an irregular but effective way. It was a knot tied by Gordius, a king of Phrygea, in the thong which connected the pole of his chariot to the yoke, and which was so very intricate that there was no finding where it began or ended. An oracle declared that he who should untie this knot should be master of Asia. Alexander the Great fearing that his inability to untie it would prove an ill augury, cut it asunder with his sword. Hence a *Gordian knot* is an inextricable difficulty; and to cut the *Gordian knot* is to remove a difficulty by bold or unusual measures.

To cut up is to cut into pieces, or to destroy utterly. Figuratively, it means to criticize severely. In passive form (**to be cut up**) it means to be distressed greatly. "He *cut up* my poem in a severe manner."

To cut up rough is to show resentment. "He *cut up rough* when he was arrested on a charge of defalcation."

(*xi*) Do

To do one credit is to reflect credit on him. "His generosity towards his enemy *does him credit.*"

To do one good. "It *does one good* to look upon your face after such a long time."

To do a room is to tidy it up, as a housemaid does. **To do a city** is to see the sights of the city.

To do a thing by hook or by crook is to do it by any means, fair or unfair. Compare, **by fair means or foul**. "He was bent upon getting that diamond *by hook or by crook.*"

To have to do with is to have to deal with. "I *had nothing to do with him*, he was not my client."

To do away with is to remove or to murder. "He *did away with his* enemy."

To do one a good turn is to do some good to him on an occasion. Compare, **to do one a bad turn**.

(*xii*) Draw

To draw one into talk is to induce one to join in coversation.

To draw a man out is to make him reveal information. "By clever and persistent efforts he *drew the new man out.*"

To draw the line at something is to refuse to go as far as or beyond it. "One must *draw the line somewhere*, though hospitality is a good thing."

To draw a blank is to be unsuccessful in any enterprise.

(*xiii*) Fall

To fall to the ground is to fail or to be abandoned. "His plans *fell to the ground* owing to lack of official support."

To fall a prey (or **sacrifice**) **to** is to be the victim of. "The innocent traveller *fell a prey* to the machinations of the cheat."

To fall back upon is to have recourse to. "In that extremity he *fell back upon* the proffered help of his brother-in-law."

To fall foul of is to come into collision with, to quarrel with, to attack. "He *fell foul of me* on my alleged insult to his uncle."

To fall in with is to agree with. "I *fell in with* his views in order to please him."

(*xiv*) Feel

To feel quite oneself is to be fit self-possessed, etc. "After a few days' rest I *felt quite myself*."

To feel up to some work is to consider oneself equal to it.

To feel something **in one's bones** is to have a vague, emotional conviction of something. "I *feel it in my bones* that something untoward will happen soon."

(*xv*) Get

To get the upper hand (or **start**, or **advantage** or **better**) **of** a person is to get the ascendency or superiority over him. He *got the advantage of him* in the contest as he was helped by an official." "He *got the start of me* and naturally reached the place earlier." "He *got the better of me* not by ability but by sheer cunning."

To get the best of it is to be victorious.

To get knowledge (or **wind**) **of** a thing is to learn or hear rumours of it. "The widow *got wind of* the bank's tottering condition and rushed to the manager to withdraw the amount she had deposited."

To get into one's head is to be convinced of what gets into one's head. "It *has got into the King's head* that the old minister is not faithful to him."

To get a person (or **a thing**) **on the brain** is to think of him or it exclusively. "He *has got* Pelmanism *on his brain* and is always lecturing about it to his friends."

To get the boot (or **sack**, or **mitten**) is the slang for being dismissed from employment. "He *got the boot* through excessive zeal."

To get clear (or **rid** or **quit**) **of** something is to get free from it. "I *got rid of* that unsatisfactory servant by sending him to a cousin of mine who had once done me a bad turn."

To get out of the bed on the wrong side is to be in a bad temper. "This morning *he must have got out of the bed on the wrong side*; he is snapping at every one."

To get out of one's depth is to be in too deep water to stand. It is also used figuratively. "I *got out of my depth* when studying Metaphysical Poetry."

To get out of hand is to break from control. "The French settlers *got out of hand* and massacred thousands of innocent Moroccans."

To get the wind up is the slang for being afraid. "*He got the wind up* at the sight of a policeman who appeared to be following him."

To get into hot water is to get into difficulty. Compare, **to get into a mess** or **to get into a scrape**. "I *got into hot water with* my employer." "He *got into a scrape* with a neighbour of his over some petty matter."

(*xvi*) To Give

To give the boot, sack or **mitten to a person** is the slang for dismissing him from his service.

To give one's word is to give a pledge, or guarantee. "I *give you my word* that no harm will befall your son."

To give as good as one gets is to retort adequately in words or blows. Compare **to give a Roland for an Oliver.**

To give a person his due is to admit any merits he may have. "You may say anything you like about him, but *give him his due* ; you must admit that he has been a faithful friend to you." Compare. **to give the devil his due.**

To give a person a piece of one's mind is to scold or reproach him. "I *gave him a piece of my mind* over his conduct at the meeting."

To give out to the world is to publish. "He *gave it out to the world* that he was a bankrupt."

To give a person to understand or **know** is to inform or assure him. "I *gave him to understand* on your authority that his debts will be paid off by the Society"

To give oneself airs is to be pretentious. "He *gave himself the airs of* a nobleman."

To give ear to is to listen.

To give rise to is to occasion. "His novel proposal *gave rise to a* good deal of bitterness in certain circles."

To give way is to yield, to succumb. "The dyke *gave way* and the flood water rushed in."

To give way to. "Do not *give way to* despair, however dark the prospects may appear to be."

To give up the ghost is to die. "The wounded soldier *gave up the ghost* after suffering for a few hours."

To give or show a person the cold shoulder is to treat him

coldly, without any warmth or cordiality. "Many men who grow rich or renowned *give a cold shoulder to* the their former friends."

To give one the slip is to evade one who is seeking for you. "He saw the Principal coming and *gave him the slip* by hiding behind a fence."

To give a thing a wide berth is to keep at a distance from it. "I know what a quarrelsome person he is, so I always try *to give him a wide berth.*"

To give countenance or **lend countenance to** a project is to favour it with one's support or approval. "As no one in the city would *lend countenance to* my project, I approached the District Magistrate."

To give a false colouring to is to misrepresent. "Mr. Hartley who never liked me *gave a false colouring to* my statement by omitting certain portions of it."

To give vent to is to express. "I *gave vent to my pent-up feeling* of grief when I found myself alone."

To give the go-by is to outstrip, to leave behind.

(*xvii*) **Go**

To go far is to reach one's distinction. "I tell you this intelligent boy *will go far.*" "You will not *go far* in this way."

To go west is the army slang for being killed. "Buddy took it to heart when his chum Tom *went west* in a raid on the enemy trenches."

To go with the tide (or **times**) is to do as others do. "Those who *do not go with the tide* often find themselves in an awkward position."

To go phut is the slang for collapsing. "His business *went phut* when my support was withdrawn."

To go under the name of is to be known as. "He *goes under the name of* Philip Owen, but I do not know if that is his real name.

To go well with one is to turn out to one's advantage. "The elections *went well with* him." The opposite is **to go ill** (or **hard**) **with one**. "If the river is in spate, it *will go hard with* the citizens of Lahore."

To go to the wall is to be hard pressed, to get the worst in a contest, or in a general sense, in the struggle for existence. "When the crush begins, the weakest *go to the wall.*"

To go the way of all flesh is to die. *Flesh* here means 'living beings.'

To go to Jericho (or **to Bath** or **to blazes** or **to hell**) is to be off, out of the speaker's presence. "The infuriated official shouted, '*Go to blazes*, I don't care a hang what you do'."

To go the whole hog is to do the thing thoroughly. "I will go *the whole hog* in supporting you, come what may."

To go a long way to is do nearly sufficient for. "Your help *will go a long way to* solving my difficulty."

To go brown, blind, mad, etc., is to become brown, blind or mad.

To go to seed is to cease flowering, to become shabby.

To go hot and cold is to have accesses of shame. "He *went hot and cold* at the mention of the girl's name."

To go it is the slang for acting vigorously, furiously. "He was *going it* all right."

To go the pace is to indulge in dissipation. "He was *going the pace* with his father's money."

To go to pieces is to break up. "His scheme *went to pieces* when the president attacked it vigorously"

To go back from or **upon** one's word is to fail to keep it. I never expected him *to go back upon his word*; he appeared to be the soul of honour.

To go in for something is to take it as one's object, pursuit, principle, style, etc.. "He *goes in for* out-of-the-way words and phrases in writing." "He *goes in for* popular favour."

To go to the dogs is to be spoilt, ruined. "You don't realise how fast you are *going to the dogs* in the company of your evil associate."

To go to rack and ruin is to be utterly ruined. "Owing to mismanagement, his business *went to rack and ruin.*"

To go on a fool's errand is to go on a foolish or fruitless expedition. "You are *going on a fool's errand* if you are going to save him; he is too far gone in moral depravity."

To go through fire and water is to undergo any risk or danger. "He *went through fire and water* to serve his dear friend."

(*xviii*) Grind

To grind the faces of the poor is to oppress or harass them with exactions. Compare *a grinding tyranny.*

To grind out an oath is to utter it while grinding teeth.

To have an axe to grind is to have some private ends to serve, "Though he professes to be a staunch party-man *he has an axe to grind*; therefore, he should not be trusted."

(*xix*) Hold

To hold a thing over one is to threaten one constantly with it. "His dismissal *was held over him* to make him do what the manager wanted."

To hold one to one's promise is to make one adhere to it.

"I *held him to his promise of* giving my brother a job, and he could not say 'No'."

To hold it good is to think it advisable. "I *hold it good to* join hands with the new party."

To hold a thing dear is to regard it with affection. Compare *to hold a thing cheap.*

To hold one's head high is to behave proudly. "He *held his head high* in the company of others for he always remembered his proud descent."

To hold up one's head is not to be downcast. "Even in his misery he *held up his head.*"

To hold one's ground or **to hold one's own** is not to give way. "Though attacked on all sides, *he held his ground* for a considerable time."

To hold water is to be sound, to bear examination. "This evidence *will not hold water*; it is so flimsy that the defence counsel will easily knock the bottom out of it."

(*xx*) **Have**

To have no Greek or Latin, he does not know Greek or Latin, or he has not learnt the classics. "Ben Jonson said of Shakespeare, 'He *has little Latin and no Greek*'."

To have the impudence to say is to show by action that he possesses the impudence, etc. "He *has the impudence to say* that he is as good a poet as Milton."

To have it that, is to maintain that. "He *will have it that* the Aryans originally lived in Siberia.

To let one have it is to punish or reprimand one.

To have at a person is to make an attack upon him.

To have it over with a man is to settle a dispute with him.

To have clean hands is to be perfectly innocent.

To have a hand (or **voice**) **in** a thing is to have some part or authority in doing it. I *had no voice in the matter* as I was just a clerk at that time.

To have a finger in every one's pie is to act like a meddlesome fellow.

To have an eye upon a thing. "He *had his eye upon* that office for a long time, but ultimately it went to another person."

To have the field to oneself is to be the sole worker in any particular matter. "After the death of his partner he *had the field to himself.*"

To have a crow to pluck with one is the colloquial for having a long-standing dispute or difference requiring explanation. "I know you *have a crow to pluck with me* for what I did to you two years back But let us forget the past and be friends again."

To have too many irons in the fire is to have so much work in hand that all of it cannot be done well. "He *has too many irons in the fire*; he won't be able to do the work entrusted by you to him satisfactorily."

To have the true or **the right ring** is to be genuine. "The address delivered by him does not seem to *have the right ring* about it."

(*xxi*) **Keep**

To keep an open house is to entertain all comers.

To keep a good table is to habitually provide excellent food for oneself as also for one's guests.

To keep the ball rolling is to do one's part in talk, etc.

To keep one's hair on is the slang for keeping cool. "*Keep your hair on*, no one is insulting you."

To keep one's counsel is to conceal one's purposes, to be silent about them. "He knew how *to keep his own counsel* so that no one knew anything about it."

To keep oneself to oneself is to live by oneself, to shun the company of others.

To keep one's hand in is to be in practice.

To keep up appearances is not to betray the real state of affairs and maintain an outward show of prosperity or friendly relations.

To keep the wolf from the door is to keep away extreme poverty or starvation. "With most of the peasants in this poor land, the main concern is how *to keep the wolf from the door*."

(*xxii*) **Lay**

To lay heads together is to confer. "They *laid heads together* and evolved a good plan."

To lay great store upon is to value highly. "He *lays great store upon* the work done by this man."

To lay hands on is to seize, to appropriate, also to do violence to.

To lay a person under contribution is to make him contribute.

To lay by the heels is to confine, to imprison. "The thief was *laid by the heels*."

To lay (a blame) **at** (or **to**) **a man's door** is to impute some fault or blame to him. "As he was responsible for the safety of the boy, when he was wounded all *the blame was laid to his door* by the relatives."

To lay it on thick or **to lay with a trowel** is to use obvious flattery. "He *laid it on thick* in order to curry favour with the king."

To lay (or **put**) **on the shelf** is to lay aside as no longer fit for use. "This outdated project was laid on the shelf."

(*xxiii*) **Look**

To look before one leaps is to avoid hasty action.

To look one through and through is to examine one thoroughly.

To look daggers at a man is to look angrily at him. "Though she did not say anything she *looked daggers at* the intruder."

To look a fool, or **to look every inch a king**, is to appear to be so.

To look small is to be exposed as mean. "When his activities were disclosed in the meeting he *looked small* indeed."

To look round is to examine possibilities before making plans.

To look down one's nose is the colloquial for regarding with covert displeasure.

To look down on or **upon a man** is to consider oneself superior to him. "The West used to *look down upon* the East."

To look forward to is to anticipate with pleasure. "I shall keenly *look forward to* his arrival."

To look one up and down is to scrutinize him keenly or contemptuously. "The police officer *looked him up and down* and asked him to accompany him to the police-station."

(*xxiv*) **Make**

To make hay while the sun shines is to utilise an opportunity.

To make headway is to make progress in the face of difficulty. "We could *make* little *headway* against the storm."

To make fun of a person is to trifle with him. "They *made fun of* the little boy."

To make an example of some one is to punish one so as to make it a warning to others. "If you make any more noise in the class I shall *make an example of you*."

To make an exhibition of a fool, of oneself. "He *made a fool of himself* in trying to deliver a speech in that critical gathering."

To make a night of it is to carry on festivity throughout the night. "Singing, feasting and talking, we *made a night of it*."

To make much or **little of something**. "The teacher *made much of* the essay written by the student."

To make the best of something is to derive as much advantage as possible from it. Compare **to make the best of a bad bargain**.

To make a virtue of necessity is to do a disagreeable thing as duty, because there is no escape from it. "Knowing that he would be arrested he *made a virtue of necessity* and surrendered to the police."

To make a hash of something is to spoil it while dealing with it. "He *made a hash of* the business entrusted to his care."

To make it hot for one is to make it uncomfortable for one. "I *made the place too hot for him*, so he had to come to terms with me."

To make away with is to get rid of, to kill.

To make friends with a man. "By his polite ways and sympathetic bearing he *made friends with* many people soon."

To make short work of is to dispose of speedily. "We *made short work of* the excellent dinner served by our host."

To make amends for is to compensate for damage, insult or injury. "He *made amends for* his brother's rudeness this morning."

To make a clear breast of it is to disclose fully. "He *made a clear breast of the whole matter* before the police officer."

To make one's mark is to do some noteworthy work. "He *made his mark* quite early by a volume of verse printed while he was a student."

To make both ends meet is to provide onself with the necessaries of life within the income one has. "These days it is difficult for a low-paid Government official to *make both ends meet*."

To make a mountain of a molehill is to give great-importance to trifles.

To make much ado about nothing is to make a great fuss about an insignificant thing.

To make neither head nor tail of a thing is the colloquial for not understanding any part of it. "His speech was awfully muddled, I could *make neither head nor tail of it*."

To make mouths (or **faces**) **at** is to make grimaces. "One urchin *made faces* at another."

To make a man bleed (or **bleed freely**) is to victimise him, to exploit a miserly sort of man.

To make fish of one and flesh of another is to show partiality towards one by treating two persons differently.

To make bricks without straw is to attempt to achieve something impossible. The reference is to the Biblical incident mentioned in *Exodus* where the Egyptians compelled the Israelites to gather straw for themselves for making bricks.

(*xxv*) Play

To play the fool, or **to play the spy**, etc., is to act like a fool or a spy.

To play a good knife and fork is to eat heartily.

To play upon words is to make puns. "They wasted their time by *playing upon words* like the Elizabethans."

To play ducks and drakes with one's money, etc., is to squander

it. "The minister *played ducks and drakes with* the revenue of the State, and now they are in a fix."

To play fast and loose is to ignore obligations, to be unreliable.

To play fair is to act in a fair way. **To play foul** is to act unfairly.

To play the game is to observe the rules of the game or to keep to the code of honour. "In the public schools of England boys are taught *to play the game* under all circumstances."

To play into the hands of an enemy is to act in such a way as to give an advantage to him. "By protesting his innocence too much *he played into the hands of his opponent* who wanted to prove that he had something on his mind."

To play low down on one is to take a mean advantage of one.

To play one false is to be deceitful to him. "He *played me false* over that contract, I shall never forgive him."

To play a double game or **to act a double part** is to do one thing fairly and openly and another thing in secret.

To play one's cards well is to make good use of opportunities. "I will let you into the characters on both sides. After this, if you do not *play your cards* it is your own fault"

To play off one person against another is to oppose one person against another for one's own advantage. "He *played off one of* his rivals *against another* and cleared his way to success."

To play first (or **second**) **fiddle**. To take a leading or subordinate part. "He is so constituted that he must *play the first fiddle* in every case; he cannot bear to *play the second fiddle* to any man."

(*xxvi*) Put

To put one's oar in is to interfere or meddle. "At this stage he *put his oar in* uninvited by us, and no one liked it."

To put a spoke in one's wheel is to obstruct one's progress. "I was getting on well in business till the other fellow opened a shop near me and *put a spoke in my wheel*."

To put up with is to submit, to tolerate. "Flesh and blood cannot *put up with* this insult."

To put two and two together is to make an inference from the data in hand. "I *put two and two together* and came to the conclusion that his intentions towards me were anything but friendly."

To put a thing out of court is to make it not worth discussing.

To put it to one is to suggest to one. *It* here is impersonal. "I *put it to* you, would any self-respecting man have behaved otherwise than I have done?" "Continuing the cross-examination,

the defence council said to the prosecution witness, 'I put it to you that he came to you with the draft of this secret document'."

To put the wind up one (slang) is to frighten him. I *put the wind up* him by hinting that I know something about his inglorious past.

To put one on one's mettle is to rouse him to do his best. "This challenge *put me on my mettle* and I gave a good account of my capabilities."

To put one's hand to a thing is to undertake it.

To put one's hand to the plough is to undertake a task.

To put the saddle on the right horse is the colloquial for imputing blame to the proper party. "You *put the saddle on the right horse* when you blamed the Corporation authorities for the outbreak of epidemic in the city."

To put the cart before the horse is the colloquial for beginning at the wrong end when doing a thing.

To put (or **lay**) **one's shoulder to the wheel** is to do one's work instead of looking to others for help. The allusion is to the story of Hercules and the waggoner. Once somebody's waggon stuck in the mud. He called on Hercules for help. Hercules appeared before him and asked him to put his shoulder to the wheel.

To put a good face, or **the best construction, on** a thing is to do one's best to make it look well. "As there was nothing else to do the father *put a good face on* the delinquencies of his son."

To put one out of countenance is to make one abashed.

(*xxvii*) Run

To run to meet one's troubles is to anticipate them. "It is good *to run to meet one's troubles* rather than wait for them."

To run in the family means to be found in all the members of it. "Courage *runs in this family* of fighters"

To run like wild fire is to spread rapidly from point to point. "The news of Liaquat's assassination *ran like wild fire*."

To run back over the past is to survey it summarily. "When we *run back over the past* we find in it much that is depressing."

To run cold said of one's blood means to be horrified. "His *blood ran cold* to hear the news."

To run the gauntlet is literally to pass between rows of men who strike one with sticks, cords, etc., as military, naval or school punishment. Figuratively, *one runs the gauntlet of criticism*, etc. "He *ran the gauntlet* of severe public criticism by publishing that foul book."

To run away with is to carry off (a person or property). "The servant *ran away with* some valuable articles of his master."

To run after a thing is to seek it eagerly.

To run to seed is to cease flowering, etc., to grow shabby.

(*xxviii*) Set

To set a thing **on fire** is to set fire to it and make it burn. "He *set the house* of the tyrannical landlord *on fire*"

To set store by something is to value it highly. "He *set much store by* the help he expected to receive from his younger brother."

To set something on foot is to start it. "We *set a fine scheme on foot* but sufficient financial backing was not forthcoming."

To set one's face against a thing is to resist it resolutely. "After the end of his first attempt in a fiasco, *he set his face against* being dragged into the controversy."

To set people by the ears is to provoke them to a quarrel. "He was so fond of *setting people by the ears* and enjoying the fun that people got disgusted with him."

To be set on doing a thing is to be determined to do it. "He is so *set on* going to Calcutta this summer that nothing would induce him to change his programme."

To set one right is to disabuse him of error, correct him. "I *set him right* by telling him the real facts of the case."

To set the fashion, the pace is to determine it by leading. "He *sets the fashion* and thousands follow him."

(*xxix*) Stand

To stand in the breach is to bear the brunt of the attack.

To stand in another's shoes is to occupy his place.

To stand on one's own bottom is to be independent. "He is no longer a hanger-on ; he *stands on his own bottom.*"

To stand at bay. When a hunted animal turns back and shows fight it is said to be *standing at bay.*

To stand one's ground is to maintain one's position literally or figuratively "He *stood his ground* though he was heckled by many of his opponents at the meeting."

To stand a person in good stead is to be of great advantage to him in a time of difficulty "My savings *stood me in good stead* when I was without any employment."

To stand on ceremony is to be too scrupulous about ceremony. "Being friends we should not *stand on ceremony* with one another."

To stand up for is to side with, to maintain, to support a person or cause. "When all my friends had deserted me, Mr. Longman *stood up for* me.

To stand up to one is to meet or face him courageously.

To stand on one's dignity is to maintain a dignified and aloof

attitude. "Some government officials *stand on their dignity* so much that they do not mix with the public."

(*xxx*) **Stick**

To stick up for a person is to uphold his cause or vindicate his character. "He *stuck up for* his absent friend and challenged his detractors.

To stick to the point is not to digress. "*Stick to your point*; don't say anything about others."

To stick to business is to avoid distractions.

To stick it out or to **stick it** is the slang for enduring the conditions "As he could not *stick it* any longer he came to terms with his opponents.

To stick in the mud is to be unprogressive. "His enterprise seems to have *stuck in the mud* these days."

To stick at nothing is to allow nothing, especially no scruples, to deter one. "He is the type that *sticks at nothing*, beware of him."

To stick to one's colours is to adhere firmly to one's cause. "He *stuck to his colours* in all dangers and difficulties, he was no half-hearted idealist."

(*xxxi*) **Take**

To take to task is to reprove or demand an explanation. "I *took* my younger brother *to task* for telling me a lie."

To take advantage of is to use any benefit offered, to overreach a person. He *took* a mean *advantage of her* unprotected condition.

To take people by storm is to captivate them suddenly and unexpectedly.

To take one by surprise is to come upon suddenly and unexpectedly. "He *took me by surprise* when I least expected him."

To take in good part is to receive something without resentment. "Though I reproved him bitterly for his conduct he *took everything in good part* and gave me his word that he would mend his ways."

To take to one's heels is the colloquial for running away. "Hearing a noise the thief *took to his heels*."

To take a leaf out of another's book is to imitate the man, to take a hint from his mode of action and to follow it. "I was no longer at any loss how to play my part so as to put myself on an equal footing with these gentry. That very evening, at supper, I *took a leaf out of their book*, and arrayed myself in the convenient vesture of a wise and prudent outsider."

To take a leap in the dark is to do a hazardous thing without knowing what its consequence may be. "Do you know anything

about the share market? Don't *take a leap in the dark* by taking to speculation."

To take the measure of a man is to form a due estimate of him after careful consideration.

To take the bull by the horns is the colloquial for grappling boldly with a difficulty. "He *took the bull by the horns* by openly challenging his rival to prove his fitness for the post."

To take it into one's head is the colloquial for being bent on doing something. "He *took it into his head* to quarrel with Iqbal on an imaginary grievance."

To take from is to diminish, to weaken. "It *takes from* his reputation to mix with that man."

To take a person into one's confidence is to confide in him.

To take up with is to consort with.

To take nonsense out of a man is the colloquial for curing him of it. "A rigorous regime of hard work and discipline at the camp *took the nonsense out of him.*"

(*xxxii*) **Talk**

To talk tall (or **big**) is to boast. "He is always *talking big*; you should take all that he says with a pinch of salt."

To talk shop is to talk about technical or professional matters which other people may not follow or find any interest in. Whenever two doctors or engineers meet in society they *talk shop.*"

To talk a person round is to persuade him. "At first he did not support us, but I succeeded *in talking him round.*"

To talk a horse's hind-leg off is the colloquial for being very talkative.

To talk through one's hat is the slang for exaggerating or bluffing, or of making wild statements. "Some members of the legislature are fond of *talking through their hat.*"

To talk a person's head off is to bore him with too much talk. "Will you please stop? You *are talking my head off.*"

(*xxxiii*) **Throw**

To throw light on a matter is to help to explain the matter. "His statement *did not throw much light on* the rather mysterious affair."

To throw down the glove is to challenge. "Sir Gondibert *threw down the glove*, and it was decided that he should fight with Sir Nigel the next morning."

To throw dust into a person's eyes is to deceive or delude him. "You cannot *throw dust into my eyes*; I am too clever for you."

To throw cold water upon a project is to discourage it. "Though we expected him to help us, he *threw cold water upon* our project and openly ridiculed it."

To throw good money after bad is to lose more in trying to recoup a loss.

To throw away is to part with needlessly or recklessly, to lose by neglect.

To throw in one's lot with a person is to decide to share his fortunes. "I *threw in my lot with my* friend when we decided to run a joint business."

To throw oneself into a thing is to engage in it vigorously. "I *threw myself* heart and soul *into* the project but others were not equally sincere."

To throw off the mask is to declare one's real intentions after having acted in a deceitful manner. "At first he pretended to be a friend of mine, but now that I am no longer in power he *has thrown off his mask* and is acting openly as an enemy."

To throw up the sponge is to show cowardice and desist from a contest hastily.

To throw mud (or **dirt**) at a person is to revile or vilify him. "He is in the habit of *throwing mud at* celebrities."

(*xxxiv*) **Turn**

To turn turtle is the slang for capsizing. "The car *turned turtle* and fell into a ditch."

To turn the tables on a person is to reverse his success or superiority. "His father asked him questions which he could not answer ; but he *turned the tables on* his father by asking him a difficult question which he, in his turn, could not answer."

To turn one's back upon is to abandon or reject something. "He should not have *turned his back upon* the project which he encouraged at one time."

To turn something over in one's mind is to consider it carefully. "He *turned my proposal over in his mind* and expressed his disapproval of it on certain grounds."

To turn over a new leaf is to change one's course of action completely. "The thief seems to have *turned over a new leaf* after his last conviction."

To turn tail is to retreat in an inglorious fashion. "At the approach of several of my friends he *turned tail* and left me alone."

To turn the scale is to cause the scale to sink. Metaphorically it means to decide a question which is in suspense in either way. "The chances in his favour were not many, but what *turned the scale* was the timely discovery that his rival had taken to dishonest means to oust him."

To turn up one's nose at something is the colloquial for treating it with contempt.

To have a turn for is to have capacity or fitness for. "He *has a turn for music* though he is not much encouraged by his parents."

To turn a deaf ear to something is not to pay any attention to it. "He *turned a deaf ear to* all our entreaties."

To turn an honest penny is to make something by an odd job.

(*xxxv*) **Work**

To work one's will upon something is to accomplish one's purpose with regard to it or despite opposition from it.

To work oneself or the audience **up into a rage** is to invite gradually.

To work upon something is to influence. "His words *worked powerfully upon* our minds."

To work off is to get rid of. "He *worked off* his bad temper *on* his younger brother." "He *has worked off* his debauch by rest and sleep." "He *works off* his old jokes *on* us."

6. **More Verbal Phrases**. The following is a list of phrases built around certain verbs. They are in common use, and questions on most of them are frequently put in the University and Board examinations.

To bandy words with a person is to exchange remarks with him quickly, especially when quarrelling. "He was *bandying words with* the stranger."

To bear the brunt of is to endure the chief stress of the attack, etc. "I had *to bear the brunt of* the attack."

To beard a man is to challenge or oppose a man. "Who would *beard this angry man* ?"

To beat black and blue is to beat so as to inflict bruises. "He *beat them black and blue*."

To beat about the bush is to speak in a roundabout, indirect way. "Please come to the point ; why do you *beat* about *the bush* ?"

To beat the record is to do better than the best that has been done. "He has *beaten the* Panjab University *record* in the B.A. examination."

To beggar description is to be indescribable. "The grandeur of the scene *beggars description*."

To bid one welcome is to welcome one. **To wear out one's welcome** is to stay so long with one's host as to make the latter wish the guest gone. "My cousin stayed so long at my house as to *wear out his welcome*."

To bid fair to is to promise fair prospect of. "He runs so fast *as to bid fair to* break the provincial record."

To bid defiance to is to oppose, to challenge. "He *bid defiance* to the authorities and was punished with dismissal."

To blow one's own trumpet is to exhibit one's own good deeds, to blare forth one's own praises. "In this age one must *blow one's own trumpet* ; otherwise there is no chance of one's making a name for oneself."

To bother oneself (or **one's head) about** something is to worry about it. "Do not *bother yourself about* us ; we are quite comfortable."

To blunt the edge of something is to dull its keenness. "Borrowing *dulls the edge of* husbandry." "A few cups of tea *blunt the edge of* one's appetite."

To breathe one's last is to expire, to die. "The doctor arrived just after the patient had *breathed his last*."

To bury the hatchet is to make peace, to cease from strife. This phrase is derived from the practice of the Red Indians to bury their hatchets and other weapons of war when they smoked the 'peace-pipe' and made peace between warring tribes. "Our quarrel has gone on too long, let us now *bury the hatchet*."

To buy a pig in a poke is the colloquial expression for buying a thing without previously examining it to see what the real value of the article may be. "I must first of all know if this clock is all right, I am not going *to buy a pig in a poke*."

To carry the day is to come out victorious. "It was by steady fighting that the army *carried the day*."

To carry all before one is to surmount all obstacles. "Quaid-i-Azam *carried all before him* by the force of his iron will."

To carry matters with a high hand is to act arbitrarily. "The officer *carried matters with a high hand*."

To change hands is to pass from one owner to another. "This car has *changed hands* recently."

To clip one's wings is to deprive one of power, to render one weak. 'Philosophy will *clip an Angel's wings*.'—*Keats*.

To come true is to turn out to be true. "This news has *come true*."

To come wrong is to be unwelcome. "A good dinner *never comes wrong* (*i e*., is always welcome) to any one."

To commit oneself is to compromise oneself by a rash word or deed. "I cannot say 'yes' or 'no' to your query, because I do not want *to commit myself*."

To cook (or **doctor**) **an account** is to tamper with it in order to deceive people. "As the late secretary had *cooked the accounts*, his body was ordered to be exhumed."

To cook one's goose is to do for one, to settle one's hash (slang). "He has himself *cooked his goose* by admitting that he was in Charlie's company when the incident took place."

To cross (or **pass**) **the Rubicon**. The Rubicon is the name of a stream limiting Julius Caesar's province and crossed by him before his war with Pompey. So the Rubicon is the boundary by passing which one becomes committed to an enterprise. "He has definitely *crossed the Rubicon* by announcing in yesterday's meeting that henceforth he will support the Republicans."

To cry over spilt milk is to cherish useless regrets. One cannot get the spilt mi k back by crying over it. "It is true that you have lost your money, but it is no use *crying over spilt milk.*"

To cut a sorry figure is to make oneself ridiculous. "He *cut a sorry figure* when he rose to address the audience."

To cut short is to bring to an untimely end. "His life was *cut short* by plague."

To dance attendance on one is to pay court to one. This has a contemptuous sense. "He was *dancing attendance on me* at the time ; it was not hard for me to understand his motives."

To drive the nail home is to rebuke a person in such a way as to make him feel its full force. "I *drove the nail home* by telling him what people think of him."

To die in harness is to continue one's occupation till one's death. "Some *wish to die in harness*, while others wish to retire and spend a peaceful old age."

To drink hard is to be a confirmed drunkard.

To be at daggers drawn is to be in a state of hostility. "They *have been at daggers drawn* from the day this quarrel took place."

To err on the safe (or **right**) **side** is to do something which may prove to be an error, but which will keep one safe from harm or risk. "I asked him to supply me with ten sheets of carbon paper ; he *erred on the safe side* by sending me a dozen."

To eat humble pie is to have to humiliate oneself. "Though at first he blustered and swore, later he had *to eat humble pie*"

To eat one's words is to take back what one has said. "He had *to eat his words* although he is very haughty."

To end in smoke (is a colloquial expression for coming to nothing. "For some time we heard tall talk about immediate enquiry into the affair, but it all *ended in smoke.*"

To enter the lists against a person is to accept his challenge. This phrase is derived from the Middle Ages when the knights met each other in the tournament. *The lists* was the open space in which the tournament used to take place. **To enter the field** has the same meaning.

To fall flat is to produce no effects. "His advice *fell flat* on the audience."

To fall (or **run**) **foul of** is to collide with. "The steamer *fell foul* of the rock."

To fan the flame is to aggravate an evil. "In their effort to crush the revolt the foreign rulers only *fanned the flame.*"

To feather one's nest is to provide for oneself in a dishonest manner. "It is seen that the income-tax collectors at times show

more zeal for *feathering their own nests* than for collecting the government revenue."

To fight shy of something is to avoid it. "I *fight shy of* all quarrels."

To find fault with is to blame, to criticise. "Do not *find fault* with any one ; it is a bad habit."

To flash across one's mind is to occur as a sudden thought. "The idea *flashed across his mind.*"

To fish in troubled waters is to make one's pofit out of disturbances. "The fishy Fisher *fished in troubled waters* in pre-partition days by writing a series of articles in favour of Mr. Gandhi."

To follow in the wake of a person is to toe his line or follow his policy. *Wake* is a track left by a ship in the water. **To follow suit** has the same meaning.

To get one's fingers burned or **to burn one's fingers** means to get oneself in o unexpected trouble. "He *burnt his fingers* by meddling with affairs which did not concern him."

To gild (or **sugar**) **the pill** is to make a disagreeable thing appear pleasant by covering it in an attractive way. "Do not try to *gild the pill* by saying that it is manly to come into conflict with the authorities now and then ; it was nothing but a crime that he comitted."

To give (or **lend**) **countenance to** is to support. "How can you *give countenance to such* an impracticable scheme ? "

To give false colouring to something is to misrepresent it. "The Press *gave a false colouring* to the whole affair."

To go hard with somebody is to be a source of distress to him. "That man's death *went hard* with his family."

To hang by a thread is to be in a precarious state (said of a man's life). "He is so ill that his life *hangs by a thread.*"

To hang fire is said of a gun when it is slow in going off. The metaphor is used to denote a pending affair. "The matter *hangs fire.*"

To harp on the same string is to continue to speak or write on the same subject. He *harped on the* same *string* and tired our patience."

To have a voice in is to have a right to express one's opinion by vote. "I *have no voice in* the matter."

To have at one's fingers' ends is to have a thing ready in one's mind. "He *had* all those facts *at his fingers' ends.*"

To have no leg to stand upon is to be weak. "Morality without religion *has no leg to stand upon.*

To have clean hands is to be innocent. "It cannot be said that Bacon as Lord Chancellor *had clean hands.*"

To hold water is to be valid. "Your excuse *will not hold water.*"

To hold out the olive branch is to make offers of reconciliation. "The King *held out the olive branch*, but his opponents rejected every offer."

To husband one's resources is to manage one's means in an economical way. "Every householder should *husband his resources* and should not run into needless expenses."

To keep body and soul together is to sustain life. "The labourers with their scanty means can hardly *keep body and soul together.*"

To kick up a row is to create a disturbance. "The hooligans *kicked up a row* in the street."

To kill two birds with one stone is to accomplish two things by one stroke. "He had asked me more than once to pay him a visit. "As I was short of money I paid him a visit and borrowed some money from him ; thus I *killed two birds with one stone.*"

To laugh to scorn is to treat with contempt. "They *laughed him to scorn*, for they did not believe in what he said."

To lead a person the life of a dog is to give him a miserable time. "She *led her husband the life of a dog* by constant bickerings."

To be in leading strings is to be a mere puppet in the hands of others, always guided by others. "I want to live my own life. I do not want *to be in leading strings* any more."

To lead a cat and dog life is to be in the habit of quarrelling. "The husband and wife lead *a cat and dog life.*"

To learn by heart is to commit to memory; **to learn by rote** is to commit to memory by frequent repetition without understanding the meaning.

To leave the beaten track is to do something not trite and common. "It is the privilege of youth *to leave the beaten track of* life and do something new."

To leave one in the lurch is to leave one in a doubtful condition. "Do not *leave me in the lurch.*"

To leave no stone unturned is to do everything that can be done to attain something. "I *left no stone unturned* to get the place for your son, but all my efforts proved fruitless."

Not to let the grass grow under your feet is to do a thing very promptly and quickly. "Finish your work as quickly as you can, *don't let the grass grow under your feet.*"

To let bygones be bygones is to let things that are past and gone remain untouched. "Should we not *let bygones be bygones* and become good friends again ?"

To let the cat out of the bag (colloquial) is to make a secret known. "The affair was kept a close secret by us all but she *let the cat out of the bag* when he alluded to it in the course of a talk with the Principal."

To lick into shape (colloquial) is to give form and order to. "His projected work on English prosody has not yet *been licked into shape* ; he is still collecting material for it."

To live fast is to lead a dissolute life. "One who *lives fast dies* early."

To live from hand to mouth is to live without provision for the future. "A great number of people in this country live *from hand to mouth.*"

To look blank is to seem puzzled. "He *looked blank* when he was informed of his dismissal."

To look sharp is to make haste. "I hope you will *look sharp* about this.

To lose heart is to lose courage. "The soldiers *lost heart* when they heard that their general was shot dead."

To make good a loss is to compensate. "I have incurred a heavy loss through you which you must now *make good*.

To make little or **light** is to consider a thing of no importance. "You *made little* of my illness (did not consider it serious).

To make much of something is to consider it to be grave. "You *made much* of my illness."

To move heaven and earth to accomplish something is to do everything in one's power. "Though he *has been moving heaven and earth* to prove my complicity in the affair, he will never succeed in achieving his purpose."

To nip in the bud is to destroy in the early stages of growth or development. "The movement was *nipped in the bud*."

To out-Herod Herod is to shout more loudly than Herod himself. King Herod was a blustering tyrant and was represented as such in plays.

To pay one back in one's own coin (or **in the same coin**) is to retaliate, to give tit for tat. "He reviled me and I *paid him back in his own coin* by telling people all about his misdeeds."

To pick holes in another's pocket is to seek faults in him. " He is always *picking holes in my pocket*, forgetting that he himself has a fairly questionable past."

To pick one's pocket is to steal things from his pocket. "I caught the fellow in the act of *picking my pocket*. When I handed

him over to the police I was informed that he was a notorious *pick-pocket.*"

To play ducks and drakes is to waste money foolishly. "He is *playing ducks and drakes* with his fortune."

To play one false is to betray a person. "He *played me false* (deceived me)."

To plough the sands is to occupy oneself with work which cannot lead to any profitable result. "I told him that by trying to organise cottage industry in his village in this age of machinery he was only *ploughing the sands.*"

To plume oneself on a thing is to be proud of it." He *plumed himself on* his petty success in the examination."

To pocket an insult is to swallow it, to receive it without protest. "He had *to pocket the insult* offered to him by the police official, for, being guilty, he had nothing else to do."

To poison the ears of a person is to say somthing to him that goes against another. "She *poisoned the ears of* her husband against his brother."

To pour oil on troubled waters is to say or do something to soothe an angry person. 'His words of conciliation *poured oil on troubled waters.*'

To pull well with. "I do not *pull well with* him," (*i.e.*, we cannot act together in harmony)."

To rack one's brains (colloquial) is to exercise one's brains to the utmost. "He *racked his brains* as best as he could but could not devise any plan that would answer his needs."

To rake into (or **up**) the past is to search the past minutely. "It is no good *raking up the past* once your elders have buried the hatchet."

To rain cats and dogs is to rain in torrents. "It is *raining cats and dogs* today."

To read between the lines is to read carefully so as to understand the implied sense of the writer "If you *read between the lines* you will find that there is a hit against the Government."

To rest on one's oars is to cease work for a time. "Though this society has achieved much it *should not rest on its oars*; it should continue its work as before."

To rest on one's laurels is to rest satisfied with the honours already attained. He is not the type of man who *would rest on his laurels*; you will soon find him working hard for other distinctions.

To ride rough-shod over is to pursue a course regardless of the pain or distress it may cause to others. "He *rode rough shod over* all of us."

To rip up (or **open**) **old sores** is to reopen a bitter quarrel

which is almost forgotten. "It does no one any good *to rip open an old sore.*"

To rise to the occasion is to do one's best so as to cope with an emergency. "My cook *rose to the occasion* and gave my guests an excellent dinner.

To be on the right scent is to be on the right track. "I *was on the right scent* when I suspected him of theft. So, **to put one on the right scent**; **to get the wrong scent** is to be on the wrong track. Compare **to give one a false scent.**

To see a thing through coloured spectacles is to look upon it favourably because of one's illusions. "In youth everyone looks at life *through coloured spectacles* so that every man appears to be honest and every girl a princess."

To show fight is to adopt the attitude of one ready to fight. "It is the readiness *to show fight*, not actual fighting powers, that makes a man feared and respected."

To show the white feather is to show signs of cowardice. "I should not have liked the boy *to show the white feather.*"

To slip through one's fingers (colloquial) is to escape one narrowly. "I was on the point of getting the job, but it *slipped through my fingers*, so to say."

To snap one's fingers at a person is to despise him. "Though the boy was severely punished he *snapped his fingers* at the orders of his father again."

To sound a person is to ascertain his secret wishes. "I have *sounded him* about his possible attitude towards this affair; he appeared to be sympathetic."

To sow broadcast is to scatter widely. "The spirit of freedom has been *sown broadcast* all over the Islamic world."

To speak one's mind is to speak frankly. "I felt that he was up to some mischief and *spoke my mind* to his friends."

To speak volumes is to bear ample evidence for or against. "It *speaks volumes* for the steadiness and discipline of the English that no outward expression was given by them to their agitation and grief over the recent events."

To split hairs is to make subtle and useless distinctions. "I am not going *to split hairs* with you about the time of his arrival: after all, it matters little whether he is expected at ten or a quarter past ten."

To steal a march on is to gain an advantage over another covertly. "I *stole a march* on my rival by arriving earlier for the appointment and thus secured the first interview."

To steer clear of something is to avoid it. "It is my habit *to steer clear of* all controversies."

To strain every nerve is to try one's utmost. "Hercules *strained every nerve* to move the rock."

To strech a point is to go beyond what is normal or legitimate. "Can't you *stretch a point* in our favour by allowing us to travel in the second class with inter-class tickets ? "

To suit a person down to the ground is to suit him perfectly. "Your offer *suits me down to the ground* and I shall accept it."

To swallow the bait is to be caught by specious promises, etc. "I gave a glowing description of this place to him and he *has swallowed the bait*, for he is coming here this afternoon."

To take a thing **to heart** is to feel it deeply. "He *has taken to heart* your calculated avoidance of his company.

To take the bull by the horns is to meet a difficulty boldly. "He was not afraid of the difficulties and obstacles, but *took the bull by the horns*."

To tempt Providence is to court danger by doing something reckless. "It would be *tempting Providence* if you go out in this storm with a temperature."

To throw cold water on is to discourage. "Instead of encouraging me he *threw cold water on* my proposal."

To throw light on something is to make it clear by further information. "He is sure to *throw much light* on this subject, for it is his special study."

To throw down the gauntlet is to challenge. "He *threw down the gauntlet* which his enemies took up."

To tread on the heels of is to follow close behind. Epidemic *trod on the heels of* famine and the whole country suffered intensely.

To tread on the toes or **corns of another** (colloquial) is to pointedly refer to something painful or disagreeable in the conduct of another. You *have trodden on his corns by* giving him a lecture on the evils of drinking.

To tremble in the balance or **to hang in the balance** is to be in a state of great uncertainty. His fate is *trembling in the balance*, for a favourable decision is as likely as an unfavourable one.

To turn over a new leaf is to begin a *better* course of life. "Henry V had been a bad prince, but on ascending the throne he *turned over a new leaf*."

To turn tail is to retreat in a *cowardly* manner. "Though he was boasting of his courage yet when he saw the bear he *turned tail* and ran away."

To wage war on is to make war.

To wash one's hands of something is to sever all connection with it so as to escape the blame. It was a Roman custom to wash one's hands on such on occasion, as the Roman Governor Pilate did

on ordering the crucifixion of Jesus Christ under the pressure of the Jews.

To win laurels is to gain honour. "Allama Iqbal has *won laurels* in the world of literature."

To worship the rising sun is to honour the new incumbent of an office, turning one's back on the former.

7. **Verbs followed by Prepositions.** Prepositions have an important role to play in the English language. They give different shades of meaning to the words to which they are appended. In fact we can never know the exact meaning of a word till we take it upon ourselves to learn the changes wrought by the preposition that goes along with it. In this article is explained the usage of certain verbs followed by various prepositions :

To abide *with* a person, *in* or *at* a place ; **abide** *by* a promise, terms, etc. (Without a preposition, this verb is used either to mean to face, sustain etc., as "to abide somebody's anger," "to abide the storm," or colloquially in negative or interrogative sentences to mean endure, as "I can't abide that fellow."

To abound *in* is to be rich in (used of good things) as "This land abounds *in* milk and honey" ; **abound** *with* is to be infested with (used of bad things), as "This locality abounds *with* reptiles."

To absolve a person *of* sin ; but **absolve** *from* blame or obligation.

To abstain *from* food, etc., *from* some remark, *from doing* something.

To accede *to* a request or proposal ; **accede** *to* an office (accept it) ; **accede** *to* a party (join it).

To accommodate oneself *to* something or some opinion (to adapt it) ; **accommodate** a person with a loan or lodging (supply to) ; **accommodate** two things, one *to* another (harmonize). Used without a preposition, it means to oblige, as "He did it to accommodate you."

To accord *with* is to agree with, as "This does not accord *with* what you said a short while ago" ; **accord** *with* is also to be pleasing or satisfactory to, as "It does not accord *with* me." Used alone, it means to give or grant a welcome, permission or request, as "He was accorded a rousing reception" ; "He will not accord you permission to stay there."

To account *for* one's conduct *to* a person ; **account** *for* money etc., (give reckoning of what is held in trust) ; **account** *for* so many runs (score them), *for* so many wickets (take them), *for* game or quarry (kill it).

To be *much* (or *little*) **accounted** of is to be held in esteem or otherwise.

To accrue (advantage, profits, etc.,) *to* a person *from* a thing.

Used alone, it signifies to come in a natural way, or as a result, as "Interest accrues if you deposit it in a bank."

To accuse a person *of* an offence, or *of doing*, *as* an accomplice. It may also be used alone, as " Your eyes accuse you."

To accustom oneself *to* a thing or *to* do. It is used mostly in the passive, as " I am accustomed to it."

To acquiesce *in* an arrangement, etc., is to accept it. Used alone, it means to agree tacitly.

To acquit a person of a charge or responsibility (absolve); **acquit** oneself of duty, etc. (perform it). Without a preposition, it is used as **acquit** oneself *well* or *ill* (perform one's task thus).

To act *for* a person (on behalf of); **act** *from* or *out* of some motive; **act** *under* a person; **act** *on* or *upon* (either to exert influence upon or to carry out advice, etc.); **act** *up to* a principle, maintain it in practice.

To adhere *to* a person, party, opinion or substance (stick to it).

To admit a person *to* a place or privelege; **admit** *of* doubt (leave room for doubt). Used alone, it means to acknowledge or accept as valid, as "This, I admit, is true."

To affix signature, label, stamp, etc. *to* something.

To agree *to* a proposal; **agree** *with* a person; **agree** *to* differ; **agree** *with* what is said; **agree** *with* (said of climate, medicine, etc.) to suit one's constitution, as " This climate does not agree *with* me."

To aim *at* something, as " The law aims at that "; " He aims the gun at her "; **aim** *at* doing; but according to the American idiom, **aim** *to* do something.

To alight *at* a place, *from* a horse, or carriage, train, etc.; **alight** *on* one's feet, come down on one's feet after a fall or jump; the bird **alighted** *on* a branch of the pine tree (came down from the air).

To allot something *to* a person.

To allude to a thing indirectly known to the hearer.

To alternate *with* something else. "Day alternates *with* night."

To answer *to* a person *for* a thing. "Every one of us will have to answer *to* God *for* what we do in this life."

To apologise *to* a person *for* a misconduct. "I apologised *to* him *for* having insulted him."

To appeal *to* a person *for* help or redress." In my distress I appealed *to* him *for* help."

To appeal *against* a sentence. "I appealed *against* the sentence of the lower court to the High Court."

To apply *to* a person *for* a thing. "I applied *to* the banker *for* a loan."

To appoint a person to a situation. "I have appointed this man *to* the post of the accountant in my firm."

To approve *of*. "I do not approve *of* his conduct though he is a friend of mine."

To arbitrate *between* two parties or persons *in* a dispute. "The Judge arbitrated *between* the millowners and the labourers *in* a dispute."

To argue *with* a person, *for* or *against* or *about* a thing.

To arrive *at* a place, *in* a vehicle, *from* another place.

To ask *about* a thing, *after* a person.

To attend *to* a proposal or stipulation.

To associate *with* people. "You should associate only *with* people of good character."

To atone *for* the sins of mankind.

To attend *to* a counsel or work ; **attend** *on* or *upon* a person. "I attended *to* my work." "The servant attended *upon* his master. Without a preposition it means 'to go to.' as "He cannot attend the college today." Or wait upon a patient, as. "Which doctor is attending you."

To attribute one's success *to* something. "His success is to be attributed *to* his intelligence."

To avail oneself *of*. "He availed himself *of* a holiday to visit Rawalpindi."

To back *out of* is to withdraw from an arrangement or contract. "You cannot back *out* of the contract now."

To back *up* is to support, to sustain. "I am always ready to back *up* my friends."

To balk any one *of* his object. "Balked *of* his prey the lion was very angry."

To bask *in*. "He basked *in* the sunshine of royal favour for some time."

To bear *out* is to establish, confirm. "His statement bears *out* my opinion that he is not guilty." **Bear** *up* is to endure. "It is hard to **bear** *up* when one is beset with difficulties on all sides." **Bear** *with* is to tolerate. "**Bear** *with* the infirmities of old age."

To beat *back* the enemy is to compel him to retire. "Beat *down* the enemy (to subdue, to crush)."

To beg *of* or *from* a person *for* something.

To belong *to*. "This book does not belong *to* me."

To bestow a thing *on* a person.

To beware *of* evil company, etc.

To blame a person *for* something.

To blow *over* is to pass away without injurious effect. "The storm soon blew *over*."

To Blush *at* one's own fault, but *for* the faults of others. "I blushed *at* the mention of my misdeed." "I blush *for* the cupidity of my countrymen."

To boast or **brag** *of* something. "He boasts *of* his strength."

To border *on* or *upon* a place. "His garden borders *on* mine."

To borrow *of* or *from* a person.

To break *away* is to free oneself from restraint. **Break** *down* is to come to a stop "Our car broke *down* near the station." **Break** *in* a horse is to train it. **Break** *into* a house (as thieves do). **Break** oneself *of* a bad habit. **Break** *open* is to open with force of violence. **Break** *up* is to break into pieces. "As the warm wind blew, the ice broke *up*." **Break** *with* a person is to dissolve one's partnership with him. "It is not true that I have broken *with* him; we are still great friends and partners."

To bring *about* is to cause to happen. "How was the reconciliation brought *about*?" **Bring** *forth* is to produce. "A good tree brings *forth* good fruit." **Bring** *forward* is to produce, to introduce, to notice. "He brought *forward* a novel proposal in the meeting of the committee." **Bring** a person *round* (or *over*) is to cause him to change to a different way of thinking. **Bring** *under* is to subdue. **Bring** *up* a child is to rear or train him. "He brought *up* his children with great difficulty."

To burden an animal *with* a load.

To burn *out* or *away*. The fire burnt *away* untended.

To burst *forth* is to issue forth suddenly. "Her tears burst *forth*." **Burst** *into* tears. **Burst** *out* laughing. **Burst** *upon* a country is to invade it suddenly.

To buy a thing *of* a person *from* a shop.

To call *on* a person is to visit him at his house. **Call** *at* a person's house. **Call** *to* a person is to shout to him. **Call** *for* is to demand. "Your conduct calls *for* severe punishment."

To canvass *for* votes.

To care *for* or *about*.

To carp *at* one's conduct.

To carry *off* (is to bear away, to kill). "The bride was carried *off* by Lochinvar." "Small-pox carried *off* half the population of the village." **Carry** *through* is to accomplish (a task).

To cast *about for* is to look for. "He was casting *about for* an opportunity for revenge."

To catch *at* an opportunity. "A drowning man will *catch at* a straw."

To caution a person *against* a danger.

To cavil *at* a word or deed is to raise frivolous, whimsical objectio s, against.

To cease *from* quarrelling.

To censure a man *for* a fault.

To certify *to* a man's character.

To chafe *at* or *under* rebuke, as a horse does under restraint.

To charge a man *with* a crime.

To clamour *for* something. "The labourers were clamouring *for* higher wages."

To clear a man *of* blame.

To cling *to* a person or thing.

To close *with* an offer is to accept it. "You should close *with* this good offer at once."

To coincide *with*. "His opinion coincides *with* mine."

To come *about* is to happen, to take place. "How did it come *about* that your brother got plucked in the examination?" **Come** *across* is to meet with accidently. "I came *across* a valuable book while searching for some other thing in the lumber room." **Come** *at* is to get within reach of, to attain to. **Come** *by* is to gain, obtain. "I came *by* this ring in a curious way." **Come** *in for* is to receive. "He came *in for* a severe punishment for his insolence." **Come** *off* is to take place. "When does the festival come *off*?" **Come** *round* is to recover from illness, to gradually change to an opposite opinion. "Though he opposed me at first, after listening to my arguments he gradually came *round* to my view." **Come** *to* is to arrive at as a result, to amount to. "I came *to* a strange conclusion. It comes *to* this that you are afraid of helping us."

To compare *to* (when dissimilar things are compared) and **compare** *with* (when similar things are compared). "Compare this picture *with* that. The Punjab has often been compared *to* a spearhead."

To compete *with* a person *for* a thing.

To complain *of* a thing, *to* a person, *against* or *of* a person.

To comply *with* (to assent to). "He complied *with* my request."

To concede *to* (to yield to).

To condemn *to* a period of imprisonment; **condemn** *for* a certain crime.

To conduce *to*. "Sunlight conduces *to* good health."

To confer *with* a person *about* or *regarding* a thing. "The Pharaoh conferred *with* his ministers *about* the petition of the Jew."

To confide *in* a person; confide a thing *to* a person. "He usually confides *in* me." "One should not confide dangerous secrets *to* anyone."

To conform *to*. "We should not conform *to* a custom simply because our forefathers did so."

To connive *at*. "He always connived *at* the vicious doings of his nephew, and now he is repenting too late."

To consist *in, of.*

To consult *with* a person.

To contend *with* or *against* an opponent, *for* or *about* an object. He is contending *with* Mr. Amjad Ali *for* a seat in the National Assembly.

To converse *with* a person *on* or *about* or *regarding* a subject.

To convince one *of* something.

To cope *with.* "I was able to cope *with* the difficulties of the situation, thanks to the resourcefulness of my brother."

To correspond (by letter) *with* a person *about* a thing ; **correspond** (resemble, agree) *to, with.*

To count *on* or *upon* is to rely on or upon. "I am counting *upon* you entirely for financial help."

To crave *for* something.

To cry *down* is to decry. "There is no reason why you should cry *down* that great man for a single mistake."

To cry *for* is to desire. "The baby was crying *for* her mother."

To cry *out against* is to complain loudly against.

To cure one *of* a disease.

To cut *down* is to fell, to kill. "He cuts *down* his foemen right and left." **Cut** *off with a shilling* is to disinherit, leaving one the merest trifle. **Cut** *up* is to injure by severe criticism. "He was cut *up* greatly by the news of his death."

To dash *against* a thing.

To dawn *on.* It dawned *on* me that I had heard the story before.

To deal *in* is to trade in. "He deals *in* piece-goods." **Deal** *out* is to distribute. "The king dealt *out* a rough kind of justice to his subjects." **Deal** *with* is to treat well or ill. "He did not deal in a gentlemanly way *with* me."

To decide *on, for* or *against.*

To declare *against* or *for.*

To deduce *from.* "What conclusion do you deduce *from* this"?

To defend *against.*

To delight *in.* "I delighted *in* the sweet songs of my friend"

To deliver *from* bondage ; **deliver** *over* or *up* a thing *to* a person. "He delivered *up* the charge *to* the new officer."

To depend *on* or *upon* a person.

To deprive *of*. "He was deprived *of* all his rights and privileges."

To desist *from*. "I desisted *from* helping him, because I soon realised his true nature."

To despair *of* success, *of* gaining anything.

To deviate *from* (to turn aside from) the right path, right course of action, etc.

To die *away* is to lose strength. **Die** *out* is to come to a complete end. "The mosquitoes die *out* in hot weather." **Die** *of* an illness, **die** *from* a wound.

To differ *from* a person *in* one's opinion or *about* something.

To dip *into* a volume is to look into it here and there.

To disagree *with* a person.

To disapprove *of* a plan or *of* a man's conduct, etc.

To discriminate *between*. "A judge never discriminates *between* the two parties at dispute."

To dispense *with* (do without) a thing or one's services.

To dispose *of* is to sell, to get rid of.

To dissent *from* an opinion.

To dissuade a man *from* an attempt or *from* a course of action.

To divert *from* is to cause to turn aside from.

To divest *of* clothes, etc.

To divide a thing *into* parts, *between* two persons, *among* more than two men.

To do *away with* is to put away, to destroy. "Lord William Bentinck did away *with* many evil practices in this sub-continent." **Do** *for* is to serve the purpose of. "The place would do *for* a playground." **Do one** *out of* a thing (is to deprive one of that thing). **Do** *up* a parcel is to make it. **Do** *up* a room is to clean it.

To domineer *over* is lord it over.

To draw *back* is to recede. "Now it is too late, I cannot draw *back*." **Draw** *near* is to approach. "We drew *near* the railway station." **Draw** *out* is to extract, prolong. **Draw** *up* is to drive, to compose in due form. "Draw *up* an application to the Registrar of the University."

To dream *of* ; **dream** *on* is to continue dreaming.

To drive *on* is to drive further ; **drive** *out* is to banish, to expel.

To drop *off* a tree, **drop** *out* (*of*) the ranks. "The tired soldiers dropped *out* one by one as the army marched on."

To dwell *among* a people, *at* a place, *in* a country. **Dwell** *on* or *upon* a subject is to take up a long time with it, to ponder over it.

To eat *into* is to enter by corrosion. "Rust has eaten *into* my sword."

To egg *on* is to instigate, to urge on. "Egged *on* by his uncle, he quarrelled with his parents and left home."

To eke *out* is to supplement what is scanty so as to have enough. "He eked *out* a living by doing all sorts of odd jobs."

To embark *on* board a vessel, or *on* a new business enterprise.

To emerge *from* water, *from* the forest, *from* obscurity, etc.

To employ *in* a work.

To encroach *on* one's authority, etc.

To engage *in* a battle, *in* controversy.

To enjoin *on* a person. "I enjoin this *on* every student as a solemn duty."

To escape *from*.

To exchange a thing *with* a person *for* an equivalent.

To exclude *from* an examination, a privilege.

To exempt a person *from* a rule.

To explain a thing *to* a person.

To exult *at* success ; **exult** *over* a fallen enemy.

To fall *among* thieves. **Fall** *in love with* a person. **Fall** *in with* one's views is to agree with, concur with. **Fall** *on* the enemy is to attack. **Fall** *out* is to quarrel. **Fall** *out with* a person is to quarrel with him. **Fall** *under* one's displeasure. **Fall** *through* is to miscarry, to fail.

To fawn *on* or *upon* (to court favour) a person. "The flatterers fawn *upon* you, suck you dry and then leave you."

To feed *on* something. Feed (a cow) *with* grass.

To feel *for* a person *in* his trouble.

To fight *for* the weak *against* the strong ; **fight** *with* or *against* a person ; **fight** *for* one's life.

To fill *with* anything. **Fill** *in* a map or picture is to insert the details of the work after an outline has been made.

To fire *on* a fort, city, ship, mob, etc.

To flirt *with* a person.

To fly *at* a person is to attack him.

To free oneself *from* or *of* something.

To fret *at* is to chafe at.

To furnish a thing *to* a person, or **furnish** a person *with* a thing.

To gain *on* or *upon* is to encroach on, come up nearer to. "Though the thief was running very fast, the policeman was gaining *upon* him."

To get *at* (to find out) the facts. "Try as I would I could not get *at* the real facts of the case." **Get** *on with* is to live pleasantly together. "I got *on* quite well *with* the stranger." "Get *over* (is to recover from) an illness. **Get** a task *over* is to finish it. **Get** *out of* debt is to escape from it, to be free from. "**Get** *through with* a work is to finish it up." **Get** *up* a subject is to master it.

To give *forth* is to tell, to announce. **Give** *in* is to yield, to submit. "Though he was vanquished, he would not give *in*." **Give** *out* is to emit. "The rose gives *out* a sweet perfume." **Give** *up* is to abandon. "He gave *up* his studies at last and joined his father's profession."

To glance *at* an object. "Glance *over* something is to look at or look into hastily."

To glory *in* something is to be proud of it.

To go *about* is to move from place to place. **Go** *abroad* is to go to a foreign country. **Go** *with* is to agree with. "I go *with* him in this matter."

To grapple *with* (to enter into contest with) a problem.

To grasp *at* something.

To grieve *at* or *for* or *about* an event ; **grieve** *for* a person. "Grieve *for* Bonaparte."

To grow *upon* one. "Coleridge used to take small doses of opium at first till the habit grew *upon* him."

To grumble *at* one's lot.

To guard *against* a habitual error, a bad habit. "Every student should guard *against* grammatical errors in composition."

To guess *at* something.

To hand *down* is to transmit in succession. "There are glorious traditions in Islam handed *down* from generation to generation."

To hand *over* is to deliver over to another. "Please hand this letter *over* to your elder brother."

To hang *about* is to loiter near a place. "All the day the thief was hanging *about* the house." **Hang** *together* is to be consistent. "These two statements issued by the Ministry of Labour seem to hang *together*." **Hang** *upon* a speaker's words. "Gladstone was such a powerful speaker that all the audience hung *upon* his utterances."

To hanker *after* something. "He always hankers *after* riches."

To happen *to* a person.

To have *it out with* a person is to carry on a contest or argument till it ends

To heal *of* a disease.

To hear *of* an event.

To hesitate *at* nothing, or something.

To hide a thing *from* a person. "A violet by a mossy stone half hidden *from* the eye."

To hinder a person *from* doing something.

To hinge on (to depend on) some event. "My success hinges *on* his timely arrival."

To hint *at* is to allude to.

To hit *out* is to strike out with one's fists. **Hit** *upon* or *on* is to come upon by chance, to light upon. "I hit *upon* a plan which promised to save us all."

To hold *back* is to keep back, to conceal. "I felt that he was holding *back* something, that he did not tell us all." "**Hold** *off* is to keep at a distance **Hold** *out* is to refuse to yield, to endure. "The besieged garrison held *out* for two months, and at last surrendered." **Hold** *to* is to abide by. "I held firmly *to* my decision." **Hold** *together* is to remain united. **Hold** *with* is to agree with. "I do not hold *with* you that he is not a trustworthy man."

To hunt *after* or *for* something

To identify one person or thing *with* another.

To impart a thing *to* a person.

To import goods *into* a country. "Pig-iron was imported *into* England by English merchants." **Import** things *from* a country. "I imported piecegoods *from* Japan."

To impress a thing *on* a person ; **impress** a person *with* a thing.

To impute a bad thing *to* a person. "Bad motives were imputed *to* him by his enemies."

To indulge *in*. "He indulges *in* smoking too much."

To infer *from*. "Can you infer anything *from* his conduct ?"

To inflict punishment *on* an offender.

To inform *against* a person.

To inquire *of* a person, *about*, *after*, or *concerning* a thing, *into* a subject, a matter, *for* a thing sought. "I inquired *of* the policeman the way to the post office." "I inquired *after* his health." "The magistrate has been requested to enquire *into* this matter." "I inquired *for* a letter *of* the postal peon."

To insist *on*. "I insist *on* your going to see him, though I know that you are unwilling to do so."

To intercede *with* a person *for* or *on behalf of* another person.

"He interceded *with* the Deputy Commissioner *on behalf of* Abdul Rahim, political prisoner."

To interfere *with* a person *in* some matter.

To intervene *between* two persons *at* quarrel.

To introduce a man *to* some one, *into* a place or a party.

To intrude *on* a man's leisure, *into* one's house.

To intrust a person *with* a thing ; intrust a thing *to* a person.

To inveigle a person *into* a trap.

To invest money *in* some project ; invest a man *with* authority.

To issue *from* some source.

To jeer *at* a person.

To jest *at* sacred things.

To join *in* a game ; **join** one thing *to* another.

To jump *at* (eagerly accept) an offer, *to* a conclusion.

To keep *at* a thing is to continue doing it. "Keep *from* is to abstain from. **Keep** *to* is to adhere to. **Keep** *together* is not to part asunder). **Keep** *up* is to maintain, to remain unsubdued. "Keep *up* your hopes and all will be well."

To kick *against* authority is to resist it. **Kick** *at* a thing is to reject it scornfully.

To knock *about* is to travel here and there. **Knock** *at* a door. **Knock** *down* a person. **Knock** *off* is to cease from. "He has knocked *off* his work due to bad health." "**Knock** *out* is to beat out. **Knock** *up* is to be fatigued. "I am knocked *up* utterly, I have been working continuously for 12 hours."

To labour *under* a misapprehension. **Labour** *for* the public good. **Labour** *in* a good cause. **Labour** *at* some work.

To lament *for* the dead.

To land *at, in.* "He landed *at* Karachi from the mail boat." "His extravagance landed him *in* debt."

To laugh *at* a person ; **laugh** *to* scorn. "Love I laugh *to* scorn."

To lay *away* or *by* is to store up for future use. "He laid *by* a considerable amount of money against the rainy day." **Lay** a thing *before* one is to present it for one's consideration. **Lay** a person *under* an obligation.

To lean *against* something, *or* a staff, *to* a certain side or opinion.

To lecture *on* a topic.

To let a man *down* is fail a friend at need. "I am sure he will never let me *down*." **Let** *off* is to release.

To light *on* or **to light** *upon* is to chance to find.

To live *at* a place. **Live** *down* an insult or injury is to maintain such a course of conduct as to subdue or eradicate. "I think

he has the courage to live *down* the damaging rumour against him." **Live** *for* is to devote one's life to. "I live *for* my country and I shall die *for* my country." **Live** *on* or *upon*. "The cow lives *on* grass." **Live** *within* one's income is to spend less than one's income.

To long *after* or *for* a thing.

To look *after* a person or thing is to take care of it. **Look** *down on* or *upon* is to treat with indifference or contempt. **Look** *for* is to search for. "I am looking *for* my lost wrist-watch." **Look** *forward to* is to expect with pleasure. "I am looking *forward to* the visit of my friend " **Look** *into* is to examine closely. "Pray, look *into* the matter as soon as you can." **Look** *out for* is to be on the watch for. **Look** *through* is to understand perfectly. "I could look *through* his motives clearly." **Look** *to* is to watch, to take care of. "Look well *to* thy herds." **Look** *up to* a person is to respect him. "We look *up to* our professor always." **Look** a thing *up* is to search for it. "**Look** *up* the word in the dictionary.

To lord *it over* is to domineer. "He is fond of lording *it over* his friends."

To lust *after* something.

To make *after* is to run after. "I made *after* the thief as fast as I could." **Make** *away with* something is to steal it. "**Make** *for* is to move towards or tend to the advantage of. "He made *for* the gate." **Make** *of* is to understand. "What do you make *of* this statement ?" **Make** *off with* is to kill, destroy, get rid of. "The dacoits made *away with* him." **Make** *out* is to discover, to prove. 'I cannot make *out* the meaning of this poem." "He has made *out* a strong case for himself. **Make** *over to* is to transfer to another person "He made *over* his kingdom *to* his eldest son." **Make** *towards* is to go in the direction of. "Like as the waves that make *toward* the shore." "**Make** *up* is to put into form, to supply what is deficient, to compensate or make good. "Have you made *up* the accounts ?" "My losses were made *up* by the postal authorities." **Make** *up for* is to compensate for. "He made *up for* his physical weakness by his wit." **Make** *up to* is to approach. **Make** *it up with* is to settle one's differences with. "I made *it up with* him yesterday and now we are friends again."

To meddle *with* another's affairs.

To mediate *between* two parties.

To meditate *on* some subject.

To meet *with* something.

To merge *into* anything.

To minister *to* other men's wants.

To mourn *for* the dead.

To murmur *at* or *against* anything. "The subjects murmured *at* the unjust decision of the king."

To muse *on* or *upon*. "The philosophers mused *upon* the mortality of man."

To object *to* or *against* something is to oppose in words or argument.

To occur *to* one is to come into one's mind. "It occurred *to* me that he might have taken offence at my words."

To offend *against* good taste, morality.

To officiate *for* some one *in* a post.

To operate *on* a patient.

To originate *in* a thing or place, *with* a person.

To overwhelm a man *with* kindness.

To pack *off* a man is to send him off quickly and unceremoniously "I packed *off* the rude fellow."

To palm *off* something *on* a person is to impose on fraudulently. "He tried to palm *off* a secondhand car on me, but I was too clever for him "

To part *from, with*. Usually we part *from* a person, and *with* a thing.

To partake *of* some food.

To participate *with* a person *in* his gains, or work, etc.

To pass *for* is to have the reputation of, to be regarded as. "He passed *for* a clever man in our society for some time, but at last he was found out." **Pass** *from* one thing *into* another. **Pass** *over* a page is to overlook. **Pass** *by* is to di-regard or omit. "**Pass** *by* that door."

To pay *for* is to make amends for, to suffer. "You will have to pay *for* your misconduct." **Pay** *off* is to recompense and discharge. "All the servants were paid *off*."

To penetrate *into* a secret.

To perish *by* the sword, *with* cold, *for* one's country.

To persevere *in* an effort.

To persist *in* doing something.

To pine *for* a lost child ; **pine** *away* is to languish, to droop.

To play *at* or simply **play** a game **Play** *off* is to display. **Play** a tune *on* a musical instrument. **Play** *upon* one's fears **Play** *with* is to trifle with. **Play tricks** *with* one's health is to trifle with one's health.

To plead *with* a person for a thing. "I pleaded *with* my creditor *for* a longer time in order to be able to pay up the debt."

To plot *against* a man.

To plunge *in* or *into* something. "He plunged *into* the river."

To point *at* a person, **point** *to* some result.

To ponder *on* or *over* a subject.

To prey *for* something. **Pray** *to* God.

To prefer one thing *to* another. "I prefer grapes *to* mangoes."

To prejudice any one *against* some person or thing.

To prepare *for* something. "You should be prepared *for* every emergency."

To present any one *with* something. "He was presented *with* a book by his uncle."

To preserve *from* harm.

To preside *at* a meeting or *over* a meeting.

To prevail *on* (is to pursuade) a person to do something. Also prevail *with* or *over* a person, *against* a thing. "No one can prevail *on* me to go there." "No consideration would prevail *over* his prejudices." "I cannot hope to prevail *with* him." "The might of the sinners cannot prevail *against* the might of the good."

To prevent one *from* doing something.

To prey *upon* one's mind, one's health.

To pride oneself *on* a thing. "He prided himself *on* his knowledge of French."

To proceed *with* a work already commenced, *to* a work not yet commenced, *from* one point *to* another. **Proceed** *against* a person is to prosecute him.

To prohibit one *from* doing something.

To protect one *from* harm.

To protest *against* some injustice, decision, etc.

To provide *for* one's family, children, etc. **Provide** *against* the rainy day. **Provide oneself** *with* something.

To provoke one *to* anger.

To pry *into* somebody's secret is to inspect it closely.

To pull *on* is to draw on. "He pulled *on* his gloves." **Pull** *off*. "He pulled *off* his gloves." **Pull one** *through* is to make one recover, to save one. "The doctor pulled the patient *through*." **Pull** *together* is to co-operate. Note that *pull on* or *pull on together* is incorrect.

To punish anyone *for* a crime or fault.

To push *off* is to move away. "We pushed *off* from the shore."

To put *away* is to discard. "All your bad habits should be put *away*." **Put** *by* is to lay in store. "He put *by* something against the rainy day." **Put** *down* is to suppress. "Slavery has been put *down* all over the world." **Put** *in* is to insert. "He put *in* a word here and there and revised the draft." **Put** *out* is to extinguish. "Put *out* the light." **Put** *up* is to lodge. "Where are you putting *up* these days ?" **Put** *up with* is to endure. "I can hardly put *up with* his insolence."

To quake *with* fear.

To qualify oneself *for* a post.

To quarrel *with* a person *over* or *about* a thing.

To quote something *from* an author.

To rail *at* or *against*, anyone (is to reproach. "It is useless to rail *against* the orders of one's superiors."

To rake *up* a quarrel (is to revive it).

To rank *with*. "There is no poet who can rank *with* Shakespeare."

To reason *with* a person *about* something.

To rebel *against* authority.

To reckon *on* something is to expect confidently. "I am reckoning *on* his support at this juncture." **Reckon** *with* a person is to settle accounts with him. "You will have to reckon *with* your formidable opponent before you get anything done."

To recoil *from* a horrible sight.

To recompense one *for* some service.

To reconcile oneself *to* a loss, *with* an enemy.

To recover *from* an illness.

To refer *to* a subject.

To reflect credit *on* a person. "It reflects great credit *on* you who are the president of the society that the society made such splendid progress during the last few months."

To refrain *from* something

To rejoice *at* the success of another, *in* one's own success.

To relate *to* is to concern. "Whatever relates *to* this affair should be told to the magistrate."

To relapse *into* idleness.

To rely *on* a person or thing.

To remind a person *of* a thing.

To remonstrate *with* a person *against* some proceeding.

To repair *to* is to go to. "At ten we repaired *to* the city."

To repent *of* something

To reply *to* a letter.

To reproach a person *for* a mistake.

To rescue one *from* danger.

To resolve *on* a course of action. "He has resolved *on* a novel course of action.

To rest *on* a couch, *on* facts, etc.

To result *from* a cause. "Great bitterness resulted *from* his words."

To result *in* something "Certainly it shall result in a loss."

To revel *in* vice or in something evil.

To revenge oneself *on* some one *for* some injury. "I revenged myself *on* him *for* the great wrong he did me sometime back.

To revolt *against* a government.

To reward a person *with* something *for* some service done.

To rob a person *of* something.

To rule *over* a country.

To run *after* persons or fashions, etc., is follow them eagerly. **Run** *against* a person is to come into contact or collision with him in speech or action. **Run** *at* a person is to attack him. **Run** *down* is to decry, to disparage. "They tried to run my poems *down*." **Run** *into* debt, danger. **Run** *over* an account is to read it rapidly. **Run** *through* one's money is to waste or to expend. "The prodigal ran *through* his vast fortune in no time."

To save a person or thing *from* harm.

To scoff *at* something. "They scoffed *at* religion not knowing what they were doing."

To search *for* something lost. **Search** *into* a matter is to examine it carefully. Used alone, **search** means to carry out a search. "The police searched the house." "I am searching *for* it."

To see about a thing is to consider it. **See** *into* a matter is to investigate. **See** *through* one's meaning or motives is to understand. "I could see *through* his fine pretensions." **See** *to* a matter is to attend to it. Please see *to* this affair as soon as you are free."

To seek *after* or *for* happiness.

To send *for* some one. "We sent *for* a doctor."

To sentence a man *to* a term of imprisonment, *to* death. "He was sentenced *to* death by the judge for murdering his wife."

To set *about* a thing is to begin working at it. "Set *aside* is to annul. "The verdict of the lower court was set *aside* by the High Court." Set *on* or *upon* a man is to attack him. **Set** *up* is to erect, to put in power. A new king was set *up* in place of the old."

To settle a property *on* someone. "He settled a huge amount of money *on* his little daughter."

To show a person round a place is to take him round to inspect it. "I showed him all round the college."

To shudder *at* something cruel or evil.

To side *with* a person in a dispute.

To slur *over* a matter.

To smack *of* a certain flavour or something. "His protestations smack *of* hypocrisy."

To smart *under* a sense of wrong.

To smell *of* something. "The house smells *of* rotten apples."

To smile *at* a person's actions is to deride. **Smile** *on* or *upon* a person is to favour him. "Fortune seems to have smiled *upon* him of late."

To snap *at* a thing is to seize it eagerly.

To snatch *at* a thing is to try to seize it.

To sneer *at* something.

To speak *of* a subject is to speak briefly. **Speak** *on* a subject is to deliver a lecture on. **Speak** *for* one is to urge his claims. "He spoke *for* me to the Collector."

To stand *against* an enemy is to resist him. **Stand** *by* a friend is to support him. **Stand** *on* one's dignity. "You should not always stand *on* your dignity, but should mix with people freely." **Stand** *to* one's opinion is to maintain it.

To stare *at* a person, or *stare* a person *in* the face. "Poverty stared me *in* the face after my severe business losses."

To start *for* a place.

To stick *at* nothing. "He sticks *at* nothing in trying to gain his end." **Stick** *to* a .point. "Stick *to* your principles whatever happens."

To stoop *to* baseness or meanness. "He never stooped *to* falsehood to gain his objective."

To strike *at* something is to aim a blow at it. **Strike** *for* higher pay is to stop work. **Strike** *on* a rock (as a ship may do). **Strike** *off* one's name, or **strike** one's name *off* the rolls.

To struggle *against* difficulties.

To submit *to* authority.

To subscribe *to* a fund. "Have you subscribed *to* the Famine Relief Found ?"

To subsist *on* scanty food.

To succeed *to* a property is to inherit it. **Succeed** *in* an undertaking.

To succumb *to* difficulties.

To sue a person *for* something. "I sued him *for* damages." Also, **sue** *for* peace.

To supply a thing *to* a person, or **supply** a person *with* a thing.

To surrender *to* the enemy.

To sympathise *with* a person *in* his troubles.

To take *after* somebody is to resemble him. "The boy takes *after* his father." **Take** one *by* the throat. **Take time** *by* the forelock is to seize the opportunity. **Take** *for*. "I took him *for* an official, but I soon realised my error." Take *in* is to deceive. "He has been taken *in* by the crafty barber." Take *to* is to resort to, to be fond of. "He took *to* gambling in his fortieth year." "He does not take *to* me though I am thought to be a universal favourite."

To talk *of* or *about* an event **Talk** *over* a matter is to discuss it. "We talked the matter *over* between ourselves." Talk *to* or *with* a person."

To tamper *with* official records. The professor said, "Some one in this class has been tampering *with* the register in my absence."

To taste *of.* "This water tastes *of* salt."

To tell *of* or *about* an event.

To testify *to* a fact. "He testified *to* my honesty before the magistrate."

To think *of* or *about* anything. **Think** *over* a matter is to consider it.

To threaten a man *with* something. The servant was threatened *with* dismissal."

To tide *over* difficulties. "I tided *over* my difficulties with his help."

To touch *at* a place. "This ship will not touch *at* Malta." **Touch** *upon* (briefly allude to) a matter.

To tower *over* everyone else is to be far greater than.

To trade *with* a country *in* something.

To treat *of* a subject.

To tremble *at* something *with* fear.

To trespass *against* rules. **Trespass** *on* a man's time. "I shall take my leave now, I do not want to trespass *on* your time any longer." **Trespass** *in* a man's house. "He was charged with trespassing in the house of Dr. Ali."

To trifle *with* another's feelings.

To triumph *over* obstacles.

To trust *in* a person. **Trust** *to* a man's character, honesty, etc. **Trust** a man *with* something.

To turn a thing *into* something else. **Turn** *to* somebody *for* help. **Turn** *in* (is to go to bed). **Turn** a person *out* is to expel him. "The boy was turned *out* of the class by the teacher for his rudeness." **Turn** *up* is to come or to happen. "You did not turn *up* to see me." "It so turned *up* that he was away on that day."

To unite *with a person.*

To vie *with* another person. "They were vying *with* each other for the scholarship."

To vote *for* something (in favour of). **Vote** *against* something.

To wait *at* table (as a servant does when a meal is being taken).

To wait *for* a person or thing. **Wait** *on* a person is to attend. "Six servants waited *on* him."

To warn a person *of* danger, *against* a fault.

To wink *at* one's faults is to avoid taking notice of them. "The parents winked *at* the faults of their child at first, but now they are more careful."

To wish *for* something.

To work *at* something. "He was working *at* building a house." **Work** *for* pay. **Work** *off* a debt is to get rid of it by sustained efforts. **Work** *out* is to solve. "He worked *out* the difficult sum in

two minutes." **Work** *up* is to excite. "He worked himself *up* into a fury."

To worm oneself *into* another man's confidence. "He wormed himself *into* the favour of the king by sustained efforts." **Worm** a secret *out of* one is to draw it out of him cautiously.

To yearn *for* or *after* something, is to long for with affection. "The old woman in her hour of death yearned for a sight of her son."

To yield *to* is to submit to, to surrender. "We will not yield to the enemy." "We will not yield ourselves or an inch of our territory to the enemy." "I am not going to yield this position of vantage to anybody." "The disease is yielding to the treatment."

EXERCISES

(*For* **Board** *Students*)

1. Give at least five examples of the senses expressed by the verb **to get** when it is followed by various prepositions.

2. Distinguish between the sentences in each group :—

(*a*) I called at your house but did not find you.
His crimes call for severe punishment.
A lawyer was called in to make the will of the dying man.

(*b*) This pedlar carries about toys and small books for sale.
The hawk carried off a chicken.
I could not carry out the instructions of my leaders.

(*c*) I felt I could not give in.
He gave it out that he was contemplating resignation.
Give up all attempts at humour.

(*d*) I did not like that man hanging about the house.
Hang on to the ladder for some time more.
The audience hung upon the speaker's word.

(*For* **University** *Students*)

1. Explain the verbal phrases in the following sentences :

(*a*) Contrive to be intimate with Mascarini; make a point of *worming yourself into* his friendship.

(*b*) "So good a bargain for Beatrice and myself would not allow of any wavering : I *closed* without delay *on the conditions*."

(*c*) "But nobility, like perishable merchandise, will *run to decay*."

(*d*) "This action was, however, very near *laying me by the heels*."

(*e*) "My dear friend," pursued he, "I advise you not to *stand out against* this proposal."

2. Explain and illustrate the use of prepositions after verbs.

3. How many prepositions are appropriate to the following verbs and what changes are wrought by them in their meaning :
Be, call, get, look, make, pull.

CHAPTER XXXII

IDIOMATIC USAGE: (2) MISCELLANEOUS

1. Importance of Prepositions. In the previous chapter we have seen the importance of the role played by prepositions in giving various shades of meaning to verbs. Their use with certain other parts of speech is no less important, for the use of a wrong preposition after a noun or an adjective will betray one's lack of command of the English language.

2. General Principle. The principle governing the use of prepositions after nouns and adjectives is that the prepositions generally agree with the suffix of the relevant word. Thus the word *expulsion*, whose suffix **ex** means *from*, is followed by the same preposition, and we speak of "someone's *expulsion from* the college." Again the word *admission*, whose suffix **ad** means *to*, is followed by the same preposition, and we speak of "a boy's *admission to* a college." Nobody would ever think of interchanging these prepositions, for it would be sheer nonsense to speak of *expulsion to* or *admission from* a place.

3. Nouns. But this is no infallible guide for the novice who does not know much about the various senses expressed by Latin and other suffixes. He has indeed no alternative but to learn the particular preposition that goes with a particular noun when he learns that noun itself. For the benefit of such students we give below a list of various nouns followed by appropriate prepositions. A change of sense is generally implied when more than one preposition follows a noun:

Abatement of.
Abhorrence of.
Ability for or *in.*
Abstinence from.
Abundance of.
Access to.
Accession to.
Accomplice with (a person) *in* (some crime).
(In) accordance with.
Accusation of.
Acquaintance with (a person or a thing)
Adherence to my plan.
Admission to or *into* (a place, society, etc.)
Admission of guilt.
Advance (progress) *of* learning ; *Advance* (*of* a person) *in* knowledge.
(To take) *advantage of* some one's mistake ; (to gain) *advantage over* some one)
(To have) the *advantage of* a man.
Affection for.
Affinity with something ; *affinity between* two things.
Allegiance to a person.

Alliance with a person or state.

Allusion to.

Alternative to.

Ambition for some distinction.

Analogy of one thing *with* another.

Analogy between two things.

Animosity against a person.

Antidote to some poison ; *Antidote against* infection.

Antipathy to.

Anxiety for one's safety.

Apology for.

Appetite for food.

Application to studies ; *application for* employment.

Approach to.

Aptitude for.

Arrival at a place, and *in* a country.

Ascendency over a person.

Aspiration after or *for* fame.

Assault on a person or thing.

Assent to an opinion.

Assurance of.

Atonement for sin.

Attachment to a person or thing.

Attack on a place.

Attendance on a person, and *at* a place.

Attraction to or *towards* a thing and *for* a person.

Authority over a person, *on* a subject, and *for* saying or doing.

Aversion to, from, for a person or thing.

Bar to.

Bargain with (a person).

Benevolence towards the poor.

Betrayal of.

Bias towards a thing.

Blindness to one's fault.

Candidate for election.

Capacity for.

Care for one's safety, *care of* one's things.

Cause for anxiety, and *cause of* trouble.

Certainty about a matter.

Certificate of.

Cessation from.

Claim on or *against* some one.

Claim to something.

Comment on.

Commerce with.

Compassion for.

Compensation for a loss.

Competition with a person *for* a thing.

Complaint against a person *about* a thing.

Complicity in. He has some complicity *in* the crime.

Concession to.

Confidence in.

Conformity with one's views (*In.*)

Conformity to a rule.

Consciousness of.

Consideration for a person, *of* a thing.

Contemporary of.

Contempt for a person or thing

Contribution to a fund, *towards* some project.

Control over.

Controversy with a person *on* or *about* something.

Conversation with a person.

Conviction of guilt.

Correspondence with a person (epistolatory relations).

Correspondence to a thing (resemblance).

Craving for.

Decision on some case, *of* some dispute.

Degradation from.
Delights in a person or thing.
Deliverance from danger.
Dependence on a person or thing.
Descent from.
Digression from.
Discouragement to a person.
Disgrace to a person.
Disgust at something.
Dissent from a proposal.
Distaste for something.
Distrust of a thing or a person.
Doubt of or *about* a thing.
Drawback to success.
Eagerness for.
Economy of time.
Eminence in something.
Endurance of.
Enmity with a person.
Entrance into a place.
Envy at.
Escape from.
Esteem for.
Estrangement from a person.
Exception to a rule.
Exemption from penalty, duty, etc.
Experience of a thing, and *in doing* something.
Exposure to.
Failure of a plan, *of* a person in something.
Faith in a person or thing.
Familiarity with a person or thing.
Freedom from care.
Freedom of action.
(Have) a genius for mathematics *(Be) a genius in.*
Glance at a person or thing.
Gratitude for a thing *to* a person.
Grief for a person, *at* an event.
Guarantee for.
Geess at.
Hatred of or *for* a person.
Heir of some person.
Heir to some property.
Hope of or *for.*
Hostility to a person or cause.
Impediment to progress.
Implication in some misdeed.
Imputation of guilt *against* some one.
Incentive to.
Inclination for or *to.*
Infliction of punishment *on* the guilty.
Influence over or *with* a person; *on* a man's action.
Inkling of a secret.
Inquiry into.
Insight into.
Intercourse with.
Interview with a person.
Intimacy with a person.
Invitation to.
Justification of or *for* a crime or error.
Key to a mystery.
Laxity in morals.
Libel on a person, *against* his character.
Likeness to a person or thing.
Liking for a person or thing.
Longing for or *after* a thing.
Lust for.
Malice against a person.
Martyr to some disease, *for* a certain cause.
Match for.
Menace to public health.
Motive for.
Obedience to orders, parents, superiors, etc.

Objection to a proposal or action, etc.
Offence against morality.
Offence at something done.
Opportunity for.
Opposition to.
Parody on or *of* a poem.
Partnership in a thing, *with* a person.
Passion for.
Penance for some fault.
Penitence for some fault or sin.
Persistence in something.
Pity for.
Postscript to a letter.
Predilection for a person or thing.
Preface to a book.
Preference for one thing *to* another thing.
Prejudice against a person or thing.
Premium on.
Preparation for something.
Pride in wealth, position, etc.
Profit to the seller.
Progress in.
Prohibition against doing a thing.
Proof of guilt, and *proof against* temptation.
Provocation to or *for* action.
Qualification for something.
Quarrel with a person, *between* two persons.
Reason for a thing, *against* a thing.
Recompence for labour.
Reference to a person or thing.
Reflections on a man's probity or honesty or quality.
Regard for.
Regret for something done.
Relation of one thing to another.
Relation between two things.
Relations with a person.
Reliance on.
Relish for food, drink, amusement etc.
Remedy for or *against* something.
Remorse for a crime or misdeed.
Repentance for sin.
Reply to a letter.
Reputation for.
Resemblance to a person or thing.
Resistance to injustice.
Resolution on a matter.
Respect for a man or his position or office.
Resposibility for action.
Revolt against authority.
Rival in something.
Rivalry with a person.
Satire against.
Search for or *after* something.
Sequel to.
Shame at or *for* one's fault.
Sin against God.
Slur on one's character.
Sorrow for one's misfortunes.
Specific for or *against* a disease.
Spite against a person.
Stickler for trifles.
Submission to authority.
Subscription to a fund or a periodical.
Succession to an estate.
Suplement to a book.
Supremacy over a country.
Suspicion of.
Sympathy with or *for* poor.
Taste (experience) *of* hard work.
Taste (liking) *for* hard work.
Testimony to a man's character or *against* a man's character.
Traitor to one's country, party etc.

Trust in.
(Have) *use for* a thing.
(The) *use of* a thing.
Victim to.
Victory over something.
Want of something.
Witness of or *to* an event.
Zeal for a cause.
Zest for.

4. **Adjectives**. Here are some adjectives and participles followed by appropriate prepositions :

Abhorrent to.
Abounding in or *with.*
Absorbed in.
Acceptable to.
Accessible to.
Accessary to crime.
Accomplished in an art.
Accountable to a person *for* a thing.
Accurate in.
Acquainted with.
Adapted to one's tastes, and *for* an occupation.
Addicted to.
Adequate to one's wants.
Adjacent to.
Afraid of.
Aghast at a horrible sight.
Agreeable to one's wishes, or *to* a proposal.
Akin to a person or a thing.
Alien to.
Alive to.
Allied to a thing *with* a person or country.
Amazed at anything wonderful.
Ambitious of.
Amenable to reason.
Analogous to.
Angry at a thing, *with* a person.
Annoyed at a thing, *with* a person *for* saying or doing something.
Answerable to a person *for* one's conduct.
Anxious for one's safety.
Anxious about the outcome or result of something.
Appalled at.
Apprehensive of danger, injury, trouble, etc.
Apprised of a fact.
Appropriate to.
Ashamed of something bad.
Assiduous in studies, etc.
Associated with a person *in* some business.
Astonished at something.
Averse to or *from* some action. The purists prefer the latter preposition.
Aware of.
Bare of.
Bent on.
Bereft of.
Beset with.
Blessed with something or *in* some one.
Blind to one's faults, and *blind of* an eye.
Born of parents, *in* a place.
Busy with something.
Callous to.
Celebrated for.
Certain of success.
Clamorous for something or *against* something.
Clumsy at.
Co-equal with.
Co-eval with.

Cognisant of.
Commensurate with one's desires.
Common to several persons or things.
Comparable to something else.
Compatible with.
Competent for.
Compliant with one's wishes.
Composed of a material.
Concerned at or *about* some mishap, *for* a person's welfare, and *in* some business.
Conducive to.
Confident of.
Conformable to.
Congenial to my tastes.
Conscious of a fault.
Consistent with.
Conspicuous for.
Contented with.
Contrary to.
Conversant with persons or things.
Convinced of.
Covetous of.
Cured of.
Customary for.
Deaf to.
Defective in.
Deficient in.
Deleterious to health.
Delighted with.
Dependent on a person or thing.
Derogatory to one's character.
Deserving of.
Desirous of.
Despondent of success, victory, etc.
Destined for.
Destitute of some possession.
Detrimental to health.
Devoid of.
Dexterous in or *at* something.
Different from.
Diffident of success, etc.
Disappointed of a thing not obtained, *in* a thing obtained (if it does not come up to one's expectation) and *with* a person.
Disgusted with a thing, *at* or *with* a person.
Displeased with a person for something.
Disqualified for a post, *from* competing.
Distrustful of.
Eager for.
Educated in something, and *for* some profession,
Eligible for employment.
Eminent for some good quality.
Employed in doing something.
Enamoured with a person, *of* a thing.
Endowed or *endued with* something.
Engaged to.
Engaged in some business.
Enraged at something offensive.
Entitled to.
Envious of.
Equal to.
Exclusive of.
Exempt from.
Expressive of.
False of heart.
False to one's friends.
Familiar with a thing.
Familiar (well known) *to* a person.
Fatal to.
Fatigued with some hard work.
Favourable to one's prospects,
Fearful of the consequences of some action.
Fertile in resources, invention, etc.

Fit for a position.
Foreign to.
Free from.
Gifted with.
Glad at.
Good at something.
Good-for-nothing.
Greedy of or *after* some material gain.
Healed of a disease.
Heedless of consequences.
Horrified at a sight.
Hostile to one's plans, etc.
Hurtful to.
Identical with.
Ignorant of.
Illustrative of.
Imbued with confidence.
Imitative of.
Immersed in.
Impatient of reproof, *at* an event, and *for* food or something.
Imperative on person.
Impervious to.
Incidental to.
Incumbent on.
Indebted to a person *for* some kindness.
Indicative of.
Indifferent to heat or cold, praise or blame, etc.
Indigenous to a country.
Indignant with a person *at* something done.
Indispensable to success.
Indulgent in something, and *to* some person.
Infatuated with a person
Infected with germs.
Infested with vermin.
Informed of
Inherent in.
Inimical to.
Innocent of a charge.
Insensible to shame.
Inspired with hope.
Intent on something.
Intimate with a person.
Inured to hardships.
Inveigled into a plot.
Invested with powers, etc.
Involved in difficulties.
Irrelevant to.
Irrespective of consequences.
Jealous of some one, or something.
Lame of one leg.
Lavish of money *in* one's expenditure, *in* praising some one.
Lax in one's principles or morals.
Liable to error.
Liable for payment.
Lost to humane feelings, etc.
Loyal to.
Mad with disappointment, etc.
Material to success.
Mistaken for.
Moved to tears, *with* pity, *at* a pathetic sight, *by* one's entreaties.
Natural to a person.
Neglectful of.
Negligent of.
Notorious for one's misdeeds.
Obedient to.
Obligatory on a person.
Obliged to a person *for* some kindness
Oblivious of.
Obnoxious to a person.
Observant of things.
Occupied with some work, *in* doing something.

Odious to a person.
Offended with a person *at* something done.
Offensive to a person.
Ominous of disaster.
Open to.
Overcome with.
Overwhelmed with grief.
Painful to.
Partial to.
Peculiar to a person or thing or country.
Pertinent to a question.
Popular for a good quality, *with* some person.
Possessed of wealth, *with* a notion.
Preferable to something else.
Prejudicial to one's interests.
Preparatory to something.
Productive of wealth.
Proficient in history, etc.
Profuse of one's money, *in* one's promises.
Prone to idleness or some bad habit.
Prophetic of evil.
Proud of something.
Qualified for.
Quick of understanding, *at* some subject.
Ready for action, *at* accounts or some work, *in* one's answers.
Reckless of consequences.
Reconciled to a position, *with* an opponent.
Redolent of.
Regardless of consequences.
Related to a person.
Relevant to the point.
Remote from a place, etc.
Repentant of one's sin.
Repugnant to one's feelings, one's wishes, etc.
Requisite to happiness, *for* a purpose.
Respectful to or *towards* one's superiors.
Responsible to a person *for* one's actions.
Rich in.
Sacred to man's memory.
Sanguine of success.
Satiated with pleasure.
Satisfied with something.
Secure from harm, *against* an attack.
Sensitive to blame, adverse criticism, beauty, etc.
Serviceable to a person.
Shocked at one's behaviour, *at* a sight.
Shocking to.
Short of.
Sick of.
Similar to a person or thing.
Simultaneous with an event.
Skilful in doing something.
Slow of hearing, *in* making up one's mind, *at* accounts.
Solicitous for one's safety.
Startled at a sight.
Strange to a person.
Subordinate to a person.
Subsequent to another event.
Sufficient for some purpose.
Suitable to the occasion, *for* one's income, etc.
Suited to the occasion, *for* a post.
Synonymous with another word.
Tenacious of one's purpose.
Thankful for.
Tired of doing something, *with* one's exertions.

True to.
Uneasy about.
Useful for a certain purpose.
Vain of.
Veiled in mystery.
Vexed with a person *for* doing something.
Vexed at a thing.
Void of.
Wanting in.
Weak of understanding, *in* one's head.
Weary of.
Worthy of praise.
Zealous for improvement, the happiness of the people, etc.
Zealous in a cause.

5. **Prepositional Phrases**: Here is a list of prepositional phrases in common use :

As to. "Did my servant inquire *as to* what your needs are ?"

At the end of. "He came again *at the end of* two hours."

At home in (familiar with). "I am *at home in* Islamic history."

At the side of (beside).

At the top of (one's voice). "Though I shouted *at the top of* my voice he could not hear me."

At enmity with. "In the Middle Ages the Christians were *at enmity with* the Jews."

At variance with. "What you say is *at variance with* (different from, opposed to) the known facts of the case."

Because of. "He could not reach the place in time *because of* an accident on the way."

By dint of. "He stood first in the examination *by dint of* hard work and steady application."

By force of. "You cannot make me change my mind *by force of* arguments."

By means of. "If he has been successful it has been entirely *by means of* his parents' advice."

By reason of. Has the same meaning as *by means of.*

By the side of means beside.

By virtue of.

By way of "He wrote me a letter *by way of* warning me."

For fear of. "I did not say anything *for fear of* offending him."

For the purpose of. "He has come here *for the purpose of* his son's admission."

For the sake of. "*For the sake of* pleasing him I uttered some words of flattery."

For want of. "We had to be content with what we got *for want of* anything better."

In accordance with. "I went there *in accordance with* what he told me."

In or *on behalf of.* "I saw him and tried to persuade him *on behalf of* my friend."

In case of. "*In case of* an accident ring up the nearest ambulance station."

In common with. "Though we are brothers I have nothing *in common with* him."

In conn ction with. "He gave me some advice *in connection with* the official letter I had received that morning."

In consequence of. "Several houses were destroyed and many lives lost *in consequence of* an air-raid on an unprotected town by the French Air Force."

In consideration of. "*In consideration of* the fact that this was his first offence he was let off with a warning by the magistrate."

In the course of. "*In the course of* a lengthy statement he tried to answer his critics."

In defence of. "This should be said *in defence of* what he has done that his motives are honest."

In defiance of. "He delivered a lecture *in defiance of* the ban recently imposed by authorities."

In favour of. "I am not *in favour of* resigning at this juncture."

In front of. "There is a tube-well *in front of* our house."

In honour of. "We got a holiday *in honour of* the visit of the Inspector."

In keeping with. "This ardour is quite *in keeping with* his youth."

In lieu of. "Students are allowed to submit a thesis *in lieu of* two papers in the M. A. examination of some universities."

In opposition to. "You should not do anything *in opposition to* the wishes of your parents."

In point of. "No place on earth could beat Kashmir *in point of* natural beauty which has now been made a veritable Hell by the Indian army of occupation."

In the place of. He was appointed *in the place of* Mr. Karam Ilahi who had resigned.

In prospect of. "The ploughman works hard in the field *in prospect of* a rich harvest."

In pursuance of. "This step was taken *in pursance of* the resolution adopted by the committee."

In quest of. In the fifties of the last century many people went to California *in quest of* gold.

In respect of. "*In respect of* service he is my senior, though I am older than him."

In the room of means, the same as 'in the place of.'

In search of. " He came to our house *in search of* his little son who was missing."

In spite of. " He did this *in spite of* all my warnings."

Instead of. " *Instead of* singing you should pay some attention to your studies."

In view of. " *In view of* the possibility of an outbreak of epidemic in the city some immediate steps should be taken by the authorities."

In sight of. " After many days of hardship and despair at sea Columbus came *in sight of* land."

In the event of, in case of. " Tel! this to my children *in the event of* my death."

In the face of. "He cannot do this *in the face of* a clear order to the contrary."

In the hope of. "*In the hope of* passing the examination, he took to unfair means but was detected in the examination hall."

In the guise of. "He has cheated people right and left for a long time *in the guise of* a benefactor of humanity."

In the name of. "*In the name of* all that is holy, what do you mean by this ?"

In the rear of. "A transport van was coming *in the rear of* the marching party."

In the teeth of. "He carried his point *in the teeth of* the bitterest opposition imaginable."

In order to "You should study hard *in order to* pass your examination."

In proportion to. "His success has not been quite *in proportion to* his work."

In regard to. " Though he wanted to say something *in regard to* the subject, he was not allowed to do so by the president of the meeting."

In unison with. "As his opinions were *in unison with* those of the president of the board, he was liked by him."

On account of. "I could not see you earlier *on account of* my illness."

On the brink of. "The country is *on the brink of* a famine."

On the eve of. "*On the eve of* his departure he was feted by the people of the town."

On the ground of. "He was dismissed *on the ground of* neglect of duty."

On the part of. "Ignorance of law *on the part of* a magistrate often leads to trouble."

On the point of. "He was *on the point of* saying something when he was checked by his friend."

On the score of means the same 'as on the ground of.'

Out of harmony with. "Some members of this committee are *out of harmony with* others."

Out of keeping with. "This is certainly *out of keeping with* what he had said before."

Out of proportion with or *to.* "His benevolence is *out of proportion with* his capacity."

Under the character of. "He went about and saw people *under the character of* a police official for some time."

Under the name of. "He interviewed me *under the name of* Parvez."

With a view to doing something. "He does everything *with a view to* feathering his own nest.

With the help of. "He could not beat me even *with the help of* his brother."

With the hope of means the same as 'in the hope of.'

With the intention of. "He offered me some presents *with the intention of* currying favour with me."

With reference to. "*With reference to* your letter of the 5th instant, I beg to say that we do not stock the articles mentioned by you."

With regard to. "I have nothing to say *with regard to* this unfortunate affair."

With respect to means the same as 'with regard to.'

6. **Adverbial Phrases**. Adverbs also form various phrases, of which some are given below:

Above all. "This *above all* ; to thine own self be true."

Above board means without anything secret or dishonest about it.

After all means whatever may be said to the contrary. "Whatever he does I cannot forget that *after all* he is my own brother."

Again and again, over and over again, time and again. All these phrases denote frequent repetition. "*Time and again* have I warned you against this course but you have not listened to me."

As it were. "During the rainy season the fields put on, *as it were*, a mantle of green."

As yet means up to the present time. "I have not heard anything of him *as yet*."

At all is usually used in negative or interrogative sentences. "I am not *at all* impressed by his lecture." "Did you do anything *at all*?"

At large means to be unconfined. "That ferocious dogs is *at large* ; be careful how you enter the house." Compare, *to roam at large.*

At once means immediately. "Come *at once*."

At present or *for the present* mean at the present time; *presently* means *shortly* "There are *at present* two hundred labourers working in this mill, but *presently* their number will go up as some extensions are being contemplated."

Before long means in a short time. "He is expected back *before long*."

By and by means soon, after a little while, and *by the by* means incidently. Take this medicine and you will feel better *by and by*.

By and large means on the whole. "It is *by and large* the best of the lot."

Far and away or *out and out* means beyond all comparison. "He is *far and away* the best man for the job."

Far and near, or *far and wide* ; in all directions. "I searched for him *far and near*, but he was nowhere to be found."

Few and far between. "My friend's visits, like angel's visits, have been *few and far between*."

First and foremost means before anything else. "*First and foremost*, let me tell you that I have nothing but approval for what you have done."

For long. "*For long* Blake was known as a half-mad visionary, but now he has come into his own."

For the better, for the worse. "There has been a change *for the better* (or *for the worse*) in the condition of the patient."

In time means at the proper time. "You have come *in time*."

In the long run, or *sooner or later* mean eventually. "Dishonesty is sure to be found out *in the long run*."

Now and then, or *every now and then* mean occasionally, sometimes. "He pays me a visit *every now and then*."

Off and on means irregularly. *On and on* means regularly. "He has been working here *off and on* for seven hours (not continuously). "He has working here *on and on* for seven hours (continuously)."

On the contrary, and *to the contrary* means on the other hand. "He does not like me ; *on the contrary*, he positively hates me." "These are my arguments for the abolition of these black laws ; have you anything to say *to the contrary* (against) ?"

On the defensive. "As he was acting *on the defensive* we cannot take a grave view of his error."

Once again, or *once more*, or *over again* mean the same thing. "*Once again* (or *once more*) listen to what I say." "He did the thing *over again*."

Once and again, or *now and again*. The former means 'repeatedly', and the latter 'occasionally'.

Once for all means finally. "I tell you *once for all* that you must do this."

Over and above. As an adverbial phrase it means moreover. "He was beaten and driven out of the house, *over and above.*"

Through and through means entirely, completely. "He was drenched *through and through* in the rain."

To and fro means backwards and forwards. "He worked *to and fro* for some time and seemed to be greatly disturbed."

Tomorrow is the day following *this* day. *On the morrow* means the day after a particular past day mentioned in the narrative, and therefore means the day following *that* day. They started for Peshawar *on the morrow* leaving Rawalpindi behind.

What not. This phrase is used after a string of nouns or verbs and denotes that many more similar things might be added, but there is no need to mention them. "Steam propels, lowers, elevates, pumps, drains, pulls, and *what not.*"

7. **Phrases Composed of an Adjective and Noun.** The following idiomatic phrases comprise nouns qualified by adjectives :

An able-bodied seaman is a skilled sailor. Such a man is classed in the ship's record as *A. B.*

Animal spirits means natural buoyancy and vivacity of healthy youth. This young man is full of *animal spirits. High spirits* means something similar, and *low spirits* the opposite. "He is in *low spirits* this morning having received no news of his son so far."

Armed neutrality. It is the state of neutrality of a nation which is ready to fight any of the two powers that are at war if there is a provocation.

Argus-eyed means very quick of eye, jealously watchful. *Argus* was a fabled monster with a hundred eyes in Greek mythology. He was set by *Juno* to watch *Io* whom *Zeus* loved. So we have *lynx-eyed*, having sight as keen as that of the lynx.

The Augean stable. In Greek mythology, one of the 'labours' of Hercules was the cleansing of the Augean stables. Augeas, king of Elis, had stables occupied by three thousand oxen which had not been cleansed for thirty years till Hercules turned a river through it. So *to cleanse the Augean stable*, means 'to correct a great abuse, or remove a nuisance or scandal which seemed irremovable.'

Backstairs influence means secret and improper influence.

Bad blood is a state of active enmity. "Do not create *bad blood* between them by inciting one against the other."

A bear garden is a scene of tumult, because, figuratively, a bear means a rough, unmannerly person.

One's better half is one's wife.

One's better self is the higher part of one's nature, and *one's baser self* is the lower part. The former stands for conscience and judgment, and the latter for passions, prejudices, etc. "Though his *better self* was all for my joining hands with the patriots, *his baser self* stood in the way."

A black sheep. Just as a black sheep would be noticed and considered to be out of place in a flock of sheep, so, metaphorically, a black sheep is a person who has a bad reputation in a company for not conforming to its rules or principles or injuring its good name. "*The black sheep* among the strikers were roughly handled by their fellows."

A blind alley is a narrow lane with a wall at the end. It does not lead to another street or lane. It can also be used figuratively.

Blue blood means noble, aristocratic blood. "Though he had *blue blood* in his veins, his conduct often belied his ancestry."

A blue stocking means a lady with literary pretensions. It is derived from the *Blue Stocking Society*, a name given to meetings about 1750 at the houses of Mrs. Montague and others to talk on literature, etc., without playing cards as the ladies of that era usually used to do. Dr. Johnson could not tolerate the *blue stockings.*

The body politic means the state.

A born poet, a born engineer, etc., is a person who seems naturally gifted with the qualities required for his work, without any attempt on his part to acquire them. It is a compliment. "Shelly was as much a *born poet* as Dr. Johnson made himself one."

A bosom friend is a very intimate and trusted friend. Similar expressions are *fast friends, close friends,* etc.

Broad daylight is open, full daylight. Compare, *broad facts, broad distinction,* etc. "As the murder was committed *in broad daylight* there were many witnesses available."

Broken English means imperfect English of persons who are not quite familiar with the language. The *broken English* of the typical Chinese is called *pidgin English.*

A brown study is a reverie. "I found him in *a fit of brown study* and there was no awakening him from that."

A burning question is a matter in dispute or a problem which is of an urgent and important character.

Capital punishment is the punishment of death. So we have *capital sentence* pronouncing death upon a man as his punishment. 'Capital' here is from Latin *caput* meaning 'head'.

The cardinal points are the four points of the horizon—North, South, East and West. Hence the major points.

Casting vote. The vote of the chairman of a meeting when there is a tie (*i.e.*, when the votes for and against a question are equal), and which decides the matter, is known as the casting vote. The speaker's *casting vote* went in favour of the Republican candidate.

A chicken-hearted fellow means a timid, cowardly sort of person.

Circumstantial evidence means indirect evidence. When a crime is committed, though there may not be any actual eye-witness, by putting together many indirect pieces of evidence we may come to know who is guilty These pieces of evidence are called *circumstantial evidence*.

A close-fisted man is a miser, a niggardly person.

A close shave like *a near thing* is colloquially used for a narrow miss or escape. "The car brushed past me ; it was *a close shave* indeed."

A cold-blooded murder is an unprovoked, deliberate murder.

Cold comfort is comfort which pains or irritates rather than consoles "It is *cold comfort* to me to hear that many a man has lost his child like me."

A cool head means a calm judgment, not ruffled or excited by anything.

Creature comforts are things which minister, like food and drink and warm clothing, to our bodily comfort and happiness. "This clergyman does not believe in forgoing *creature comforts* for the sake of piety."

A crying shame means something notoriously shameful. "The way he treats his devoted wife is *a crying shame*."

A curtain lecture is a lecture or admonition by a wife to her husband while in bed (within the bed-curtains). "Husbands in the West are too prone to listen to *curtain lectures* ; although in the East anything like that would provoke them into giving a good hiding to their wives."

A dizzy height is a very great height ; one feels dizzy when one looks down from it.

A dog-eared book is a book in which the corners of the leaves have been turned down to mark particular pages. These turned-down leaves look like the turned-down ears of dogs.

A dog-in-the-manger policy. This is derived from the fable of the dog and the ox in *Aesop's Fables*. Once a dog made his bed in a manger of hay and when the ox came near to eat the hay the dog barked at it. The ox pointed out how the dog was neither eating the hay himself, nor allowing any one else to eat it. So a dog-*in-the manger policy* is that which makes a man disallow others to use a thing which he himself does not want to use.

Dutch courage is courage excited by wine.

Earth hunger is covetous desire to possess more and more territory.

The Emerald Isle is the poetic name for Ireland. *The Eternal City* is Rome.

A fair hand means writing that is easily read.

Fair play means clear and honest game or policy, whereas *foul*

play suggests cheating and underhand tactics. "In the play-field as also in life we should always ask for a *fair-field and no favour* and observe *fair play* without ever indulging in *foul play*."

The fair sex means women generally. Men are *the sterner sex*.

A fair weather friend is a friend who comes in the days of prosperity and leaves us in adversity.

A fair weather sailor is a sailor who has no experience of storms ; hence not a tried and dependable sailor.

Family likeness is similarity of features as in often found in members of the same family.

A family tree is a chart showing the genealogy of a family.

Fast living is luxurious, dissipated living.

A fast man is a spendthrift.

Fast colours are those which do not fade or wash out.

The fine arts are those arts in which mind and imagination are chiefly concerned, as painting, poetry, sculpture, music, etc.

A fly-leaf is a blank leaf at the beginning or ending of a book.

Forty winks is colloquial for a short sleep or nap taken surreptitiously. So we have the policeman's *forty winks* while on duty.

A free lance is a mercenary, one who is ready to hire out his services to any one as he has no settled principles or fixed convictions ; an adventurer. "Among the journalists there is many *a free lance*." "He is a free-lance journalist."

A free port is one where no custom duty is levied on imported articles of commerce.

Free trade is trade which is not interfered with by the imposition of tariff duties.

French leave is absence without permission. "The student took *French leave* from the class when the professor was looking the other way.

A gala day is a happy holiday, a day of festivity and merriment.

A garbled quotation (or version) is an extract from an author which perverts his meaning by reason of the omissions or changes made.

A going concern is a business in active and prosperous operation.

The Golden Age is an age of purity, prosperity and all-round perfection. It is often placed in primitive times. The Romans believed that the reign of Saturn was the Golden Age of the world.

A golden mean means the middle course or position between two extremes recommended by Aristotle as the most logical position.

Golden opinion means highly favourable opinion. "My dear

Haydon, now you are getting *golden opinions* from all sorts of men."

A golden opportunity is a highly favourable opportunity, one which should be utilised by all means.

A golden wedding ; a silver wedding ; a diamond wedding. So a *silver jubilee*, *a golden jubilee* and *a diamond jubilee.* On the twenty-fifth anniversary of the marriage a married couple celebrate their *silver wedding* ; then the friends give silver presents. On the fiftieth anniversary they celebrate their *golden wedding* ; then golden presents are given by the friends. On the sixtieth anniversary they have the *diamond wedding* when presents of diamonds are made. So a monarch celebrates his *silver jubilee* in the twenty-fifth, his *golden jubilee* in the fiftieth and his *diamond jubilee* in the sixtieth year of his reign.

A good Samaritan is a hospitable person who befriends a stranger or helpless person in difficulties. The allusion is to Jesus Christ's parable of the Good Samaritan. The Samaritans were a people who lived in Palestine. The Jews hated them. One day a Jew travelling from Jerusalem to Jericho fell among thieves who stripped him of everything, wounded him and left him. A priest passed by but paid no heed to the cries of the man. A Levite did the same. Then a Samaritan came upon the scene and befriended the wounded man.

The great unwashed means the great mass of the lower classes of people who do not care for washing themselves much.

The green-eyed monster denotes jealousy.

A green horn is a colloquial and vulgar phrase for a raw, inexperienced youth.

A hair-breadth escape is a very narrow escape.

Hall mark is the mark used at Goldsmith's Hall and by Government assay offices for marking standard of gold and silver. So metaphorically it signifies genuine excellence. "Whatever he writes has the *hall mark* of genius."

Hard fare means coarse food which is insufficient in quantity.

A haunted house is a house which is thought to be frequented by a ghost.

A high flier is a man of extravagant pretensions or manners. It is used in a contemptuous sense.

Hush money is a bribe paid to a man to secure his silence.

The Iron Age is a bad age when there is no fellow-feeling between men, every one cares for his own gains only.

A jack tar is a British sailor. It is a humorous term.

A jail-bird is a notorious offender who has been to jail many times.

A jaundiced eye means a prejudiced eye. "If you look at this project with *a jaundiced eye* you cannot see anything good in it."

A knowing look is a significant look suggesting the person's knowledge of the matter at issue. "He gave me *a knowing look* and I kept quiet."

A laughing-stock is a butt of ridicule, one at whom people laugh always. "He has made himself a *laughing-stock* to his friends by his oddities."

A lay figure is a jointed wooden figure of the human body used by artists for arranging drapery on. Hence, metaphorically, it means an unimportant person, a nonentity.

A leading question is one so put to a witness as to suggest to him the answer that he should give. "Counsel often put *leading questions* to witnesses."

A left-handed compliment is a disparaging and sneering personal remark. It is anything but a compliment.

A left-handed marriage is a morganatic marriage. German princes often married when the first wife was alive. This was done by the bridegroom giving his left hand at the time of marriage. The issue of such marriage, though legitimate, did not have any right to the throne.

Legal tender is coin or paper currency which the law authorises to be tendered (given) in payment of debts, etc. "The Indian rupee is *legal tender* in Pakistan."

A light-fingered person is a petty thief. Thieves are sometimes called the *light-fingered gentry*.

Light literature is novels, stories, plays, etc., which do not require much exertion on our part to be understood and enjoyed

A light sleeper is a man who is easily awakened from sleep. *A heavy-sleeper* is not awakened easily.

Livestock are the domestic animals like sheep, buffaloes, horses, cows, etc., kept on a farm.

Lynch law is the practice of punishing criminals or suspects without any trial and by unauthorised persons. It is derived from the name of a Virginian farmer, Lynch, who once punished a person by taking the law into his own hands.

Maiden name is the surname a lady bore before her marriage, when that surname was changed for that of her husband.

A maiden speech is the first speech of a new member in a public body. "The member for the tribal area impressed the Assembly by his *maiden speech*."

A mealy-mouthed fellow is a timid sort of fellow who is afraid of speaking the plain truth in plain language but speaks with feigned delicacy of speech.

The mercantile marine is a collective name for all the ships enaged in commerce. "The best men in the British Navy are supplied by her *mercantile marine*."

A moral certainty. When an event is very likely to take place we speak of its moral certainty. "Your failure is *a moral certainty* if you go on in this way."

Mother wit is natural shrewdness. "He depended on his *mother wit* to see him through the danger ahead."

Natural religion as distinguished from *revealed religion* is the knowledge of God derived from the study of nature. *Revealed religion* is that which God has revealed through certain prophets. Thus Christianty and Islam are *revealed religions*, whereas the ancient Greeks had a *natural religion*.

A nine days' wonder is an unexpected occurrence which creates a good deal of popular interest for a short time and is then forgotten.

An oily tongue is a smooth flattering tongue. "Beware of *the oily tongue* of your new friend, that man is dangerous."

An open-handed man is one who is free and generous with his money. So we have *an open-hearted man* who is frank and simple.

An open mind is a mind not yet made up about a particular thing. "I am ready to listen to what you have to say about this matter, for I have *an open mind* about it."

Original sin is the innate proneness to evil which is there in every man's heart. The Christians believe that this has been due to the original sin of disobeying the command of God committed by Adam and Eve in the Garden of Eden.

A packed jury is a jury composed of men who are thought to be prejudiced in favour of the accused.

Palmy days are prosperous times.

A password is a word privately agreed upon beforehand which must be uttered by one who wants to pass the gate of a fort, of a palace, etc.

A patron saint is a particular saint of the Calendar who is supposed to be the guardian of a country, city, guild or craft, or person. The patron saint of a person is at times called 'The guardian angel.' St. George is the patron saint of England, St. Andrew of Scotland, St. Patrick of Ireland.

A pious fraud is deception carried out in a holy name or cause.

Plain sailing or *smooth sailing* means advancing smoothly, without any obstacles or difficulties. "After his departure all was *plain sailing in the meeting*; no one stood up to oppose my resolution and it was carried unanimously.

Point blank means direct or directly. "His *point blank* refusal was thought to be very tactless."

A practical joke (or *jest*) is a trick played on a person in order to have a laugh at his expense.

A promising youth is a young man whose character and conduct show that he would grow up to be a good or remarkable man.

A queer fish is an old or eccentric person. Compare the colloquial expression, an *odd fish*.

A racy style is a lively, piquant style of writing.

A rainy day is a time of adversity. "Every prudent man lays up something against the *rainy day*."

Raw material is material not yet worked upon or used up in manufacture.

Ready money is cash in hand, available to make immediate payments.

A ready pen is ability to write quickly and easily. "He wields a *ready pen*.

A red-letter day is an auspicious, fortunate day. The reason is that in the old Romish calendars the holy days or saints days were marked with red letters.

Red tape. As official documents are generally tied with red tape, the phrase has come to mean 'excessive official formality.' "Government offices are so much given to *red tape* (or *red tapism*) that nothing is done promptly and in time."

A right-hand man is the chief helper or agent of a man. "He is my *right-hand man*; I cannot do without him."

A river bed is the bottom of a river.

A round robin is a petition to which men attach their signatures in a circle, so that it may not be known who is the leader of them. Generally the name which occurs first in a petition is thought to be that of the leader. To avoid this, people have a round robin.

A saving clause is that which makes a reservation or contains the stipulation of an exemption, etc., a thing which contains a kind of loophole of escape in an agreement or gives some hope in a proclamation, etc.

A screw loose means that there is something wrong (colloquial). "I think he has *a screw loose*, otherwise why should he behave so oddly?"

Sharp practice means knavery. *A sharper* is a rogue, a cheat.

A shooting pain is a quick sharp pain. "I had *a shooting pain* in my leg-joint, the doctor said it was rheumatism."

A short cut is a direct cross path which shortens one's way. Metaphorically it means any device which saves time and energy and gives as much satisfaction as any laborious method.

A side issue is a question akin to the one at issue, but not directly concerning it.

Single blessedness means the unmarried state. It is a term jocularly applied.

A sleeping partner is a partner in a business who has invested money in it but takes no active share in the management of it.

A slow coach is a colloquial expression for a dull, idle fellow who makes but slow progress in everything.

Small fry means children or young or insignificant beings. "He does not care for *the small fry*; he is after a big catch."

Small talk means trivial conversation, gossip. "They spent the whole afternoon in *small talk* in the drawing room."

Society verse means entertaining kind of poetry that amuses polished and refined people.

Sour grapes means a desirable thing which is despised as it is not attainable. This phrase is derived from the fable of the fox and the grapes in *Aesop's Fables.*

A standing army is an established permanent army maintained by the State.

A standing joke is a subject for continuous mirth or ridicule. "His odd appearance on that occasion has been *a standing joke* with his friends."

Stone blind and *stone deaf* mean 'completely blind' and 'completely deaf.'

A strait jacket or *waist-coat.* Orignally this garment used to be put on lunatics to restrain them. Such a garment used to have long sleeves the ends of which could be tied. To say of a man that he ought to be in a strait waistcoat, is a humorous way of saying that he ought to be restrained, for he does not know when to desist: he is most impulsive or passionate.

A strait-laced person is one who is severely virtuous, morally scrupulous or puritanic.

A street Arab means a destitute homeless child who wanders about in the streets. "Dickens in many of his novels has described the pitiful lot of *the street Arabs* of London."

A stump orator is a blatant demagogue, one who makes boastful and noisy electioneering speeches. Originally the phrase meant a person who harangues people from the stump of a tree.

A swan song. It was believed formerly that the swan would sing sweetly before dying. So the last effort of a man who is much appreciated is called his swan song. "*The Testament of Beauty* was the *swan song* of Robert Bridges."

Tall talk is boastful, exaggerated language. "He indulges too much in *tall talk* to be trusted by the electorate."

The upper ten thousand or *the upper ten* means the aristocracy, the men of wealth and fashion in society.

A vexed question is one regarding which there has been much controversy, but no solution has been arrived at.

Virgin soil is soil which has never been tilled.

A white elephant. White elephants are rare. It is said that formerly when the kings of Siam wanted to reduce any of their

courtiers to poverty, they used to present him with a white elephant. Now a royal gift could not be refused. As the up-keep of an elephant costs a good deal, soon the courtier would fall in distress. So a white elephant means an injurious dignity or distinction that proves too costly to support.

A white lie is a harmless evasion, an innocent falsehood.

A wild goose chase is a wild venture which has no clear goal or hope of success. He spent many years of his life in the *wild goose chase* of finding gold in the Himalayas.

A would-be philosopher is a person who wants to be considered as a philosopher, but is really a shallow dabbler. So we have *would-be poets critics*, etc.

A young hopeful is used ironically of a naughty boy or girl.

8. **Idiomatic Noun Phrases**. Here are some phrases formed by the combination of two or more nouns :

An apple of discord. This term is derived from the mythological story that one day *Eris*, the goddess of discord, threw a golden apple on which was inscribed "For the fairest" in the assembly of gods. Three goddesses, *Juno* (goddess of wealth), *Minerva* (goddess of wisdom) and *Venus* (goddess of love) contended for this apple. At last Paris, son of Priam, gave it to Venus. For this he incurred the enmity of Juno and Minerva, and ultimately Troy was destroyed and Paris was killed. So metaphorically this phrase means 'a subject of envy and contention, of strife and discord.'

The apple of one's eye is a thing which is very dear to a man. "This boy *is the apple of his* old father's *eye*."

Apples of Sodom. Sodom was a city of sinful men which was destroyed by God, and where the city was, there a salt lake, the Dead Sea, sprang up. The apples of Sodom are a kind of golden-coloured fruits which taste like ashes. Hence metaphorically the term means ' disappointed expectations,' something attractive which belies hopes.

A baker's dozen is really thirteen.

A bed of roses is a very comfortable situation. "Life is not a *bed of roses*."

A bed of thorns means just the opposite of *a bed of roses*.

A bird's-eye view is a general view which is not minute or detailed, like the view of a bird flying. "One can have *a bird's-eye view* of Lahore from one of the minarets of the Badshahi Mosque."

A bird of passage is a migratory bird. Metaphorically the phrase means a person who roams and does not stick to any one place.

Birds of a feather means persons of like disposition or tendencies. *Cf*. 'Birds of a feather flock together.'

The burden of a song is its *refrain*, *i.e.*, the lines which occur again and again.

A case in point is an apt illustration.

Castles in the air means visionary projects which are not likely to be realised.

A cock and bull story is a highly improbable story or silly rumour. "Don't come to me with your *cock and bull stories* about the Principal being dismissed by the Trust."

The crux of the question is the real difficulty of the question, the central point on which the issue turns.

A diamond of the first water is a perfectly pure diamond. *A rough diamond* means metaphorically an unpolished but really honest and serviceable man, a man of sterling worth though not of attractive appearance.

The three estates of the realm are the Lords Spiritual (the Bishops and higher clergy who sit in the House of Lords), the Lords Temporal, and the Commons. The Press is at times called *the fourth estate.*

A fish out of water is a person in very uncomfortable and uncongenial surroundings. "I felt *like a fish out of water* in the gay and fashionable company of the Lahore students."

Flesh and blood means human nature. "*Flesh and blood* cannot brook this insult."

The gift of the gab is a colloquial expression for fluency of speech. It has a slightly contemptuous sense. "They are thought to have *the gift of the gab*."

God's acre is the burial ground or cemetery.

Hammer and tongs. It is a colloquial adverbial phrase meaning vigorously or violently. "He set about it, *hammer and tongs*, and soon the neighbours had to interfere."

The ins and outs of a thing means the full details of a thing. "He knows *the ins and outs of the share market*."

A jack of all trades (and master of none) is a man who can turn his hand to any kind of business, but is not proficient in any one of them.

The land of the leal is Heaven. *Leal* in this phrase means faithful, true.

The land of Nod is the colloquial expression for the state of sleep. Old Nod is the personification of sleep. He is described as an old shepherd leading a flock of sheep.

A limb of the law is colloquial for a lawyer or a policeman.

The long and short of a thing is the whole of it briefly stated. "*The long and short of the matter* is that we must set about it as soon as we can."

A man in a thousand is a remarkable man.

The man in the street is the ordinary layman.

A man of letters is a man whose work has literary merit.

A man of spirit is a courageous man.

A man of straw is a mere puppet who has no will or independence of his own.

A mare's nest is an illusory discovery. "He boasted of his discovery, but ultimately it turned out to be *a mare's nest.*"

A moot-point is a point or question still open to discussion.

Penelope's web is some work which never seems to come to its end. The reference is to the story of Penelope, the wife of Ulysses, who, in order to put off her suitors, stipulated that she would take a new husband after she had finished the weaving of her web. As she unravelled at night what she had woven during the day, the work was never finished.

The pink of perfection means the supreme excellence, so perfect as to be incapable of further improvement.

The powers that be is a phrase denoting those persons who are in authority.

The pros and cons of a question denote the points *for* and *against* a question, that is, the arguments for and the arguments against it. "After carefully weighing the *pros and cons* of the question the Minister came to the conclusion that the university should get a Government grant."

A rope of sand means delusive security. One cannot make a rope of sand. Such a rope would snap at the lightest touch. "Your hopes of official help are *a rope of sand.*"

The rule of thumb is a colloquial phrase meaning a rule based on experience or practice, not on any nice theory. "Though the thing was done by *the rule of thumb*, it was done quite well.

The sinews of war means money required to carry on war or any *expensive* and difficult undertaking. "You are asking me to begin a campaign, but who is to supply *the sinews of war* ?"

A slip of the tongue or *a slip of the pen* is a slight mistake in speaking or writing which the speaker or writer would know to be wrong on a moment's reflection.

A snake in the grass is a concealed enemy.

A soldier of fortune is a military adventurer who hires out his services.

A son of Mars is colloquial for a military man. Mars was the Roman god of war.

A stone's throw or *stone's cast* is as far as one can throw a stone. "His house is *a stone's throw* from mine."

The sum and substance of something is the whole drift and meaning of it.

The ups and downs of life is the colloquial expression for the changes and vicissitudes of life.

The why and wherefore of a thing is the whole and sole reason of a thing. "Let me know *the why and wherefore* of the matter."

9. **Colour Epithets.** The phrases formed by adjectives denoting colour are an interesting object of study. Note the following :

(*i*) **Black.** *Black ape.* Species of monkeys found in the Celebes.

Black art. Magic.

Black and Tan. Force raised by the British Government in 1920 for service in Ireland, to suppress the rebellion there.

Black Death. Plague which caused many deaths in European countries in the 15th Century.

Black Forest. Mountainous district of Germany. A holiday resort.

Black Friday. May 11, 1866 in England, when financial panic became acute.

Black-leg. A workman who works against the interests of his fellows.

Blackmail. Crime of attempting to obtain money by threats.

Black Maria. Police van in which prisoners are conveyed from the police court to the prison.

Black Prince. Name given to Prince Edward, the eldest son of Edward III of England.

Black Rod. Officer of the royal household and the House of Lords, who summons members.

Black Sea. Inland sea between Europe and Asia.

Black Watch. Popular name of the Royal Highlanders Regiment.

Black water fever. A disease of malarial countries.

(*ii*) **Blue.** *Blue bird.* A song-bird of North America.

Blue Book. Documents printed by order of the British Parliament, so-called because of their covers.

Blue blood. The blood of aristocracy (England).

Blue bottle. Insect like the house-fly.

Blue Cross. Organisation for the care of dogs and horses in warfare, irrespective of nationalities.

Blue Ensign. Flag of the Royal Navy Reserve.

Blue grass. Perennial grass.

Blue jay. A bright coloured bird of U. S. A.

Blue laws. Phrase used in U.S.A., for the laws that interfere with personal freedom.

Blue Peter. Flag flown by British seamen as a signal of the time to sail.

Blue Ribbon. A high distinction of any kind.

Blue stocking. Humorous term for a woman of literary pretensions.

Blue stone. Building stone.

(*iii*) **Green.** *Green eye.* Jealous.

Green wound. Fresh, not healed.

Green gage. Fine flavoured plum.

Green room. Room for actors and actress when off stage.

Green tea. Tea made from dried leaves.

Green back. U. S. Legal Tender Note first issued in 1862.

Green cloth. Lord Steward's department of the royal household.

Green drake. May-fly.

Green horn. Simpleton.

Green man. Golf course-keeper.

Green sickness. A disease.

Green yard Enclosure for stray beasts.

(*iv*) **Red**. *Red Admiral.* A beautiful butterfly.

Red Book. A book containing the names of all persons in the service of the state in Great Britain.

Red Cross. International Agency for the alleviation of human suffering, especially for giving relief to the sick and the wounded in time of war.

Red flag. Symbol of international socialism.

Red-letter day. Any day of auspicious significance.

Red Sea. Name of sea joining Indian Ocean and the Mediterranean by Suez Canal.

(*v*) **White**. *White bait.* Small fish found in Thames estuary.

White City. The stadium erected in London for the Olympic Games, 1908.

White elephant. A thing which costs more than it is worth.

White feather. A sign of cowardice and bad breeding.

White flag. Sign of truce or surrender.

White Hall. London thoroughfare in which the Cenotaph is situated.

White horse. Figure of a horse cut in chalk on a hill-side ; a brand of whisky.

White House. Official residence of the President of the United States.

White Sea. Branch of Arctic Ocean.

White-cat schemes. Bank ventures of an unsound character.

White man's burden. Supposed responsibility of the white races of the world for the care of the coloured people.

(*vi*) **Yellow**. *Yellow boy.* (Slang) gold coin.

Yellow fever. A tropical fever with jaundice and black vomit.

Yellow jacket. A state garment in China for royal persons and subjects selected for high honour

Yellow races. Chinese, Mongols, Japanese, etc.

Yellow metal. Brass.

Yellow peril. The danger that yellow races may overwhelm the white.

Yellow press. Sensational newspapers especially of chauvinistic tendencies.

Yellow spot. Point of acutest vision in the retina.

10. **Proper Nouns**. We will now consider some idiomatic uses of proper nouns. These names are drawn from fact or fiction and belong to individuals, communities or places. The lists are followed by adjectives and verbs formed from such nouns.

(*a*) **Individuals**

An Achates. A faithful friend. *Achates* was a faithful friend of the Trojan hero, Aneas.

An Amazon. A masculine woman. The Amazons in Greek mythology are a fabled race of female warriors. They were reputed to cut off one breast in order to be able to shoot better.

A Bayard. A high-minded and chivalrous gentleman. Bayard (1475–1529) was a knight of the Middle Ages 'without fear and without reproach.'

A Benedick. 'A newly married man.' *Benedick* is a witty character in Shakespeare's *Much Ado About Nothing.* At first he rails against matrimony, but falls in love with Beatrice and marries her. After his marriage his friends Claudio and Don Pedro make fun of him and give him the title of 'The married man.':

A Cassandra. One who prophesies evil or an unregarded prophet. She was a Trojan prophetess who foretold the doom of Troy. But the Trojans did not believe her.

A chimera. A delusion, an imaginary and grotesque conception. In Greek mythology Chimaera was a fabulous monster with the head of a lion, body of a goat, and the tail of a serpent.

A Crœsus. A very rich man. Croesus was a fabulously rich king of Lydia in Asia Minor.

A Daniel. A very wise judge. The prophet Daniel had infallible wisdom as is described in the Holy Bible (Daniel I : vi).

A dryasdust. A dull, laborious antiquary or historian. As an adjective it means 'very dry, uninteresting.' *Dr. Dryasdust* is a fictitious person of Scott's invention.

A dunce. An ignorant or stupid person. The word is derived from *Duns Scotus*, a great scholar of the Middle Ages. His followers called 'Dunces' were looked down upon by those of his famous rival, Thomas Aquinas. Pope composed a satire, *The Dunciad*, against the dunces of his age.

A Don Juan. A rake or libertine (of the upper class) who is very quick at falling in love and attracting ladies. A Don Juan is a wretch of no principles. *Don Juan* was a Spanish nobleman who was famous for his many affairs. He used to live in Seville.

El Dorado. Any imaginary goal or object in life which can never be attained. The expression means 'The City of Gold.' The Spanish explorers in America heard stories of a city of gold where children played marbles with diamonds, and many of them lost their lives in fruitless searches after this imaginary city. R. L. Stevenson has a beautiful essay on *El Dorado.*

An Elysium. A place of ideal bliss. In Greek mythology Elysium was the abode of the blessed after death.

An epicure. One who is choice and dainty in eating and drinking. The word is derived from *Epicurus*, an Athenian philosopher (300 B. C.) who taught that the highest good in life was pleasure in the sense of practice of virtue. An *epicurean* later meant a person devoted to pleasure or sensuous enjoyment.

A Faust. A student toiling after knowledge which is beyond his reach. There is a mediaeval story of a Dr. Faustus who sold his soul to the devil in the hope of attaining all knowledge. Mar-

lowe in *Dr. Faustus* and Goethe in his *Faust* have dealt with his story.

A Friar Tuck. A jolly, self-indulgent clergyman. In mediaeval legends and ballads he figures as a stout follower of Robin Hood, the outlaw of Sherwood Forest. In Scott's *Ivanhoe* King Richard is described as meeting this jolly friar in his cottage in a forest. At first the friar offered his guest very plain fare, but was soon persuaded to produce excellent venison and wine.

Gamp. (Humorously) an umbrella, especially an untidy one from the umbrella of Mrs. Gamp in Dicken's *Martin Chuzzlewit.*

A Goliath. An exceedingly large man, almost giant-like. Goliath is a giant described in the Bible whom David vanquished. 'A Goliath among men' means a very large man.

Mrs. Grundy. A general name for those fault-finders who care too much for respectability and propriety. It also suggests prudery. In Morton's play *Speed the Plough* (1798), we have a character, Mrs. Ashfied, who is constantly asking "What will Mrs. Grundy (a neighbour) say ?"

A Hamlet. A person who is too much given to thought and cannot make up his mind to act. Hamlet is the hero of Shakespeare's famous tragedy, *Hamlet.*

Mrs. Harris. 'A non-existent person,' 'a myth.' Mrs. Gamp, the nurse in Dicken's *Martin Chuzzlewit* is always quoting and referring to Mrs. Harris, her patron, who does not really exist.

Hector. A bully. It is hard to explain how this word came to have this meaning. The Trojan hero Hector was not a 'bully.' Perhaps this sense is due to a wrong conception of the Trojan general's character.

A Hercules. A very strong man, from Hercules, the great hero of antiquity.

A Sherlock Holmes. A very clever detective. This character was created by the famous novelist Conan-Doyle. There are many stories recounting the adventures of Sherlock Holmes and his rather mediocre assistant, Dr. Watson. So a *Watson* means an imaginative and mediocre assistant.

A Jehu A furious driver or simply a driver, from *Jehu*, the driver described in the Bible.

John Bull. The national nickname for an Englishman. He is usually satirized as a pugnacious, kind-hearted and bull-headed farmer.

A Judas. An infamous traitor. Judas Iscariot was a disciple of Christ and betrayed him to his enemies by a kiss.

A Lazarus. A beggar, a poor man, from *Lazarus*, the beggar in the Holy Bible.

A Lilliputian. A diminutive person or thing, from the inhabitants of the country of *Lilliput* described by Swift in his *Gulliver's*

Travels. These were a very small people about six inches high appearing to be like so many dolls to a normal-sized man.

A Lovelace. A heartless rake. *Lovelace* is a character in Richardson's novel *Clarissa Harlowe.* He seduced Clarissa and left her to die.

A Lucretia. A model of chastity, a woman preferring honour to life. She was the wife of Collatinus. As she was violated by Sextus, the son of Tarquin, she committed suicide. Shakespeare wrote his *Rape of Lucrece* on this theme.

A Malaprop or *Malapropism.* A ludicrous misuse of a word, especially in mistake for one resembling it (*e.g.*, 'A nice derangement of epitaphs' for 'a nice arrangement of epithets'). The word is derived from *Mrs. Malaprop*, a character in Sheridan's play, *The Rivals.*

A Man Friday. A constant and submissive attendant, from *Friday*, the savage whom Robinson Crusoe trained as his servant in Defoe's *Robinson Crusoe.*

A Martinet. A strict disciplinarian (especially in military or naval departments) from *Martinet*, a French drill-master in the reign of Louis XIV, who was reputed to have been very strict.

A Mentor. An experienced and trusted adviser, from *Mentor* in Homer who advised Telemachus, the son of Ulysses. He was really the goddess Athena.

A Mephistopheles. A fiendish person, one who tempts people to sin by all sorts of specious promises. A sneering and irreverent sort of person. *Mephistopheles* is a character in Goethe's *Faust* who tempts Faust to sin.

A Merry Andrew. A clown, a buffoon (also in a figurative sense) It is derived from *Andrew Borde*, a physician to Henry VIII of England who was a queer combination of the scholar and the buffoon.

A Nestor. A wise old man, the senior man in a company, from *Nestor*, an old and wise Greek, in Homer. .

A Niobe. An inconsolable bereaved woman, from *Niobe* in Greek legends who was turned to stone while weeping for her children slain by Apollo.

A Pecksniff. An unctuous hypocrite. In Dickens's *Martin Chuzzlewit* we find this character. He is so thoroughly imbued with hypocrisy that it has become a second nature with him. His piousness, knowledge of art, natural kindliness are all skilfully displayed.

A Philippic. A bitter invective or attack. *Philippics* were the orations of the Greek statesman and orator Demosthenes against Philip of Macedon. Cicero's orations against Antony are also known as *Philippic.*

A Samson. A person of great strength, like Samson who was the strongest man among the ancient Israelites.

A sandwich. Two slices of bread with meat or other relish between them. We have chicken-sandwich, ham-sandwich, egg-sandwich, cucumber-sandwich, etc. It is derived from the name of the Earl of Sandwich who is said to have eaten slices of bread and toast while gaming for twenty-four hours.

A Saturnalia. A scene or time of wild revelry and tumult from *Saturnalia,* an ancient Roman festival of Saturn in December observed as a time of unrestrained merry-making with temporary release of slaves.

A Shylock A hard-hearted and exacting money-lender or miser, from *Shylock the Jew,* a character in Shakespeare's *Merchant of Venice.* He stipulated that he should take a pound of flesh from the body of Antonio if he failed to repay a loan in time.

A Sibyl A sorceress, a fortune-teller. *Sibyls* were the women who in ancient times acted at various places as the mouthpiece of some god and to whom many collections and prophecises were attributed.

A Solomon. A very wise man, from *King Solomon,* the wisest of all the men of antiquity.

A Solon. A wise law-giver, from *Solon* the famous Athenian law-giver and statesman.

A Tartuffe. A hypocrite, from Moliere's *Tartuffe,* a comedy which describes the doings of *Tartuffe,* a scoundrel, who becomes a guest in a merchant's house and tries to make love to his wife.

A Termagant. A shrew, a brawling woman, from *Termagant,* an imaginary Mohammadan deity of turbulent character often appearing in the popular morality plays of mediaeval England.

A Timon. A misanthrope, one who hates mankind. He was a celebrated Athenian who, when destitute, turned into a misanthrope. Shakespeare's play *Timon of Athens* may be read to know fully the story of Timon.

Uncle Sam. The national nickname for Americans or the Government of U. S A. (Slang).

A Xanthippe. A shrewish wife from *Xanthippe,* the quarrelsome wife of Socrates, the Athenian philosopher.

A Yahoo. A coarse person of bestial passions and habits, from *Gulliver's Travels.*

(*b*) **Communities**

A Goth. A rude, uncivilized or ignorant person, especially one who destroys works of art. The *Goths* were a German tribe who invaded Eastern and Western Roman Empires in 3rd-5th centuries and founded kingdoms in Italy, France and Spain. They destroyed many valuable works of art, buildings and monuments.

A Greek. A cunning person, a sharper, from the Greeks in the latter times when they were reputed more for their cunning than for their greatness.

A Jew. An exacting usurer, one who drives hard bargains, as the Jews are thought to have these characteristics:

A Pharisee. A self-righteous person, a hypocrite. *The Pharisees* were an ancient Jewish sect distinguished by strict observance of traditional and written law and pretensions to sanctity.

A Philistine An uncultured person, one whose interests are material and commonplace. *The Philistines* were an alien, warlike people in South Palestine who harassed the Israelites

A Spartan. A man of great endurance and simplicity. The ancient Spartans are said to have these qualities.

A Trojan. A person who works, fights or endures courageously, like the ancient *Trojans* who fought heroically against the Greeks for ten years.

A Vandal. A wilful and ignorant destroyer of works of art. The *Vandals* were a Germanic race who ravaged Gaul, Spain, North Africa and Rome, destroying many books and works of art. See under 'A Goth.'

A Yankee. An American, probably from Dutch *Janke*, diminutive of *Jan*, that is, *John.*

(c) Places

A Capua. 'An easy position which tempts to neglect of duty.' Hannibal, the famous general of Carthage, spent a winter in the luxurious town of Capua while invading Italy. This had an enervating influence on his soldiers.

A Mecca (or *one's Mecca*). A place one aspires to visit, from *Mecca*, the place where the Holy Kaaba is situated.

Waterloo. (*To meet one's Waterloo*). Place or incident that thwarts one finally, as Napoleon was finally defeated at *Warterloo.*

Bunkum or *Buncombe.* Humbug, claptrap, sophistry. The story goes that a member from Buncombe in North Carolina (U.S.A.) spoke needlessly in the Congress to impress his constituents.

A Bohemian. A vagabond, a man of unconventional habits. One does not know if the term has anything to do with the country of *Bohemia.*

(d) Adjectives formed from Proper Nouns

Arcadian. Ideally rustic or simple, from *Arcady* or *Arcadia*, an ideal pastoral paradise described by poets. See Sidney's *Arcadia Arkadia* is a mountain district in Peloponnesus.

Bacchic (*frenzy*). Riotous, drunken, from *Bacchus* the Greek God of Wine.

Bacchanalian (*orgy*). Riotous, drunken from *Bacchanalia*, the festival of *Bacchus.*

Ciceronean (utterance). Eloquent, classical, or rhythmical as Cicero's style. Cicero was a famous Roman orator.

Colossal. Vast, like the *Colossus of Rhodes*, a gigantic figure which used to stand astride two islands.

Draconian (laws). Rigorous, harsh, cruel, like the laws of Dracon, the Athenian legislator, who used to live in the 7th century B. C.

Elysian. Perfect, ideal, from *Elysium.*

Fabian (policy or tactics). Employing cautious and dilatory strategy to wear out an enemy, from *Fabius*, the Roman Commander, who harassed Hannibal in this way without actually meeting him in an open battle.

Gargantuan (appetite). Enormous, gigantic, from *Gargantua* the giant of Rabelais creation.

Grandisonian (courtesy). Tiresome and stately (courtesy), after the manner of *Sir Charles Grandison*, the hero of Richardson's novel of that name.

Herculean (strength). Very great (strength), from *Hercules* the famous Greek hero who was the strongest man of antiquity. We also have *Herculean task*, a very difficult task (which only a Hercules can perform) after the famous 'labours' of Hercules.

Hymeneal. Relating to marriage from *Hymen*, the god of marriage among the ancient Romans.

Laconic. Brief, concise (speech), from *Lakon*, *i.e.*, Spartans. The ancient Spartans cultivated this style of speech.

Lilliputian. Petty, small or diminutive, from the *Lilliputians* described by Swift in his *Gulliver's Travels.*

Machiavellian (policy). Unscrupulous (policy) *Machiavelli* was a Florentine statesman and the author of the work *Del Principle* in which unscrupulous statecraft is advocated.

Martial. War-like, from *Mars*, the Roman god of war.

Mercurial (disposition). Volatile, sprightly (disposition) from *Mercury*, the Roman god of eloquence, skill, thieving, etc., and messenger of gods.

Olympian (heights). Magnificent, condescending, superior, from *Mt. Olympus*, the abode of the Greek gods.

Parthian (shaft). Any remark, glance, etc., reserved for the moment of departure, like missile shot backwards by flying Parthian horsemen. Parthia was an ancient kingdom of West Asia.

Pecksniffian (hypocrisy). Unctuous (hypocrisy), prating of benevolence, etc. See under 'Pecksniff.'

Pickwickian (sense). Technical, constructive or esoteric sense, from Pickwick, the immortal hero of Dickens's *Pickwick Papers.*

Platonic (love). Purely spiritual love for one of the opposite sex. Plato was an Athenian philosopher living in the 4th century B. C., whose writings contained this idea.

Puckish (humour). Mischievous, playful, from *Puck* or the goblin *Robin Goodfellow*. See Shakespeare's *A Midsummer Night's Dream* for the pranks of Puck.

Quixotic (scheme or *idea)*. Utterly unpractical and visionary (scheme or idea) after *Don Quixote*, the immortal creation of Cervantes.

Saturnine (temper). Morose, gloomy temper, from *Saturn*, the evil planet who is thought to produce this influence on mankind.

Spartan (endurance). Unflinching and calm (endurance). The ancient Spartans were reputed to have this characteristic.

Tawdry. Showy but worthless. From *St. Audry's* fair held in the Isle of Ely.

Utopian (scheme). Unpractical and ideal (scheme), from *Utopia*, an ideal country described by Sir Thomas More in a book of this name (1516).

(*e*) Verbs formed from Proper Nouns

To boycott. To refuse to have any dealing with (a person, country or thing). The word is derived from one Captain Boycott of Ireland who was similarly treated by the Irish League in 1830 for his anti-Irish activities.

To burke. 'To smother,' 'to pass over in silence'; as, "His newly-published volume of verse has been burked by the critics.' *Burke* was an Edinburgh criminal, and he and his gang used to smother their victims so that the bodies might show no tell-tale marks.

To hector. To bully, due to a wrong conception of the character of the Trojan hero, *Hector*.

To inchcape. To retrench (usually used as 'Inchcaped'), after *Lord Inchcape* who was the chairman of a Retrenchment Commission that came out to this sub-continent in the early twenties of this century.

To meander. To wind, to have an intricate course, from the winding course of the river *Meander* in Phrygia.

To pander. 'To be basely subservient,' to cater to the baser propensities of one, from *Pandarus*, the uncle of Cressida, who acted as a pimp in the story of Troilus and Cressida.

To sandwich. Insert one thing between two different things. See under 'Sandwich' before.

To tantalize. To tease, vex or torment by false hopes. *Tantalus* was a king of Lydia. From his many sins he was tortured by the gods in Hades. He was doomed to be consumed with a raging thirst and an intolerable hunger. He had to stand in a stream of pure water, and over his head hung a branch containing ripe fruit.

As soon as he would stoop down to drink the water, it would sink out of his reach and so the branch would shoot upwards as he tried to catch it.

11. **Names of Animals.** The names of certain animals are also used metaphorically to describe human beings. Given below are the lists of such words used as nouns, verbs or adjectives :

(*i*) **Nouns** : A *bear* (a surly person), a *cat* (a spiteful woman), a *dodo* (a simpleton), a *drone* (an idler who lives on others), a *dotterel* (a silly person), a *dog*, *hound*, *cur*, *puppy*, etc., (are terms of contempt), a *duck* (a term of endearment), a *fox* (a crafty fellow), a *goose* (a silly person), a *gull* (a fool who is easily cheated), a *lamb* (an innocent, harmless person), a *monkey* (one who always imitates), a *parrot* (one who learns by rote), a *pig* (a glutton), a *phoenix* (a person of unique excellence), a *scorpion* (a flatterer), a *viper* (a mischievous or malignant person), a *vixen* (often applied to shrewish women), a *wolf 'in the garb of a sheep'* (a dangerous person).

(*ii*) **Verbs** : *To ape* is to imitate in a ridiculous or ineffective manner ; *to dog a person's steps* is to shadow him ; *to gawk* is to stare at in a foolish manner ; *to gull* is to cheat ; *to hound a man* is to chase one as with hounds ; *to monkey with* is to meddle with, or to play mischievous tricks with ; *to rat* is to hunt or kill rats or to play the rat in politics, *i.e.*, to desert one's party in difficulties as rats desert doomed house or ship ; *to wolf* is to devour greedily.

(*iii*) **Adjectives** : *Apish, cattish, currish, dogged, bearish, elephantine, foxy, hoggish, piggish, mulish, owlish, sheepish.*

(*iv*) **Compounds** : Here are some compound adjectives formed from animal names : *Crocodile tears* is hypocritical weeping ; *dog-cheap* is very cheap ; *horse-radish* is a variety of radish ; *horse-sense* is plain, rough sagacity ; *horse-play* is boisterous play ; *horse-laugh* is loud, coarse laugh ; *hen pecked* is a husband who is domineered over by his wife ; *ox-eye* is large, human eye ; *pig headed* is stupid ; *pigeon-breast* is deformed human chest ; *stool-pigeon* is a confederate in some swindling operation.

(*v*) **Phrases** : Here are some idiomatic phrases containing animal names : *To work like a beaver* ; *to drink like a fish* ; *to puff like a grampus* ; *to chatter like a magpie* ; *to send away with a flea in one's ear* ; *to cry wolf* ; *to nurse the adder in one's bosom* ; *as the crow flies* ; *in a beehive* ; *a bird's-eye view* ; *a wild goose chase* ; *calf love* ; *a wild cat financeering* ; *the lion's share* : *nine lives like a cat.*

12. Pairs. Certain words go about in pairs, according to their idiomatic use. They can be used profitably for particular effect, but one should be sparing with their use, for otherwise they would sound as cliches. It should further be noted that any attempt at freshness through the reversal of their word-order would be just farcical.

(i) Nouns

Alpha and *Omega*.
Bag and *baggage*.
(At) the *beck* and *call*.
Bread and *butter*.
Bread and *cheese*.
(By) *fits* and *starts*.
Fire and *sword*.
(Through) *fire* and *water*.
Flesh and *blood*.
Friend and *foe*.
(Over) *head* and *ears*.
Heart and *soul*.
Heaven and *earth*.
Kith and *kin*.
(Through) *length* and *breadth*.
Light and *shade*.
Male and *female*.
Man and *beast*.
Man and *wife*.
Master and *man*.
Might and *main*.
Mother and *child*.
Part and *parcel*.
Profit and *loss*.
Rack and *ruin*.
Rain or *shine*.
Rank and *file*.
Rhyme or *reason*.
Root and *branch*.
Science and *art*.
Sheep and *goats*.
(At) *sixes* and *sevens*.
Skin and *bone*.
Son and *heir*.
Stuff and *nonsense*.
Sum and *substance*.
Time and *tide*.
Tooth and *nail*.
Use and *abuse*.
Use and *wont*.
Virtue and *vice*.
Watch and *ward*.
Weal or *woe*.
Wear and *tear*.
Whip and *spur*.
Wife and *children*.

(ii) Adjectives

All in *all*.
Ancient and *modern*.
(In) *black* and *white*.
Bright or *dark*.
Cut and *dried*.
Dead and *gone*.
Fair and *square*.
Free and *easy*.
Great and *small*.
Good, *bad* or *indifferent*.
Hard and *fast*.
High and *dry*.
High and *low*.
High and *mighty*.
Lame or *lazy*.
The *long* and *short*.
More or *less*.
Null and *void*.
Past and *present*.
Rich and *poor*.
Right and *wrong*.
Rough and *ready*.
Rough and *smooth*.
Safe and *sound*.
Slow and *steady*.
Slow and *sure*.
Such and *such*.
(Through) *thick* and *thin*.

(iii) Adverbs

Up and *down.*	*By* and *by.*	*First* and *foremost.*
Here and *there.*	*Far* and *away.*	*In* and *out.*
Hither and *thither.*	*Over* and *above.*	*Now* and *then.*
Backwards and *forwards.*	*Far* and *near.*	*Off* and *on.*
	Far and *wide.*	*Out* and *out.*
Again and *again*	*Few* and *far between.*	*Through* and *through.*

13. **Prepositions Again**. This chapter opened with a dissertation on the use of appropriate prepositions, and it is with a recapitulation of points raised in that connection that we propose to close it. The use of appropriate prepositions is extremely important in English. Their misuse would at once mark one for a foreigner who betrays ignorance of even the basic forms of idiomatic English usage. In fact a preposition forms an integral part of the word along with which it is used in a particular sense, and you cannot think of changing the preposition without altering the entire sense conveyed by that word so it is necessary to keep it in mind that the use of the appropriate prepositions has got to be learned whenever we learn a new word. The second point mentioned earlier was that the preposition following a word generally conforms in meaning to the pattern set for it by the prefix appended to that word. Having reiterated these points, we pass on to some of the more frequently used prepostions in respect of which mistakes are likely to take place.

(*i*) The following take **with** and not *at* :

Delighted *with* a gift, disgusted *with* a book, indignant *with* a person.

(*ii*) The following take **at** and not *with* :

Amazed *at* one's folly, puzzled *at* his conduct, preplexed *at* one's silence.

(*iii*) The following take **to** and not *with* :

Acceptable *to*, accommodate oneself *to* circumstances, alternative *to*, appropriate *to*, common *to* both, congenial *to* the taste, indulgent *to* his children, peculiar *to* the case, proportionate *to* the amount.

(*iv*) The following take **with** and not *to* :

Cognate *with*, coincide *with*, comply *with*, compatible *with*, connected *with*, consistent *with* honour, contemporary *with*, identical *with*, synonymous *with*, uniform *with*, sympathy *with* a person (*in* his trouble).

(*v*) The following take **on** and not *for* :

Congratulate you *on* your success, decide *on* a course of action, embark *on* an enterprise, incumbent *on* a person.

(*vi*) The following take **on** and not *over* :

Dawn *on* me, discourse *on* a proposal, dilate *on* his plans,

effect *on* his health, encroach *on* my rights, enlarge *on* a topic, reflect *on* the past, meditate *on* his life.

(*vii*) The following take **over** and not *on* :

Control (noun) *over* actions, muse *over* old friendships, ponder *over* something.

(*viii*) The following take *on* :

Bestowed *on* the poor, confer *on* the applicant, consequent *on* an event, contingent *on* success.

(*ix*) The following take **in** and not *of* :

Defective *in* body, deficient *in* learning, deformed *in* limbs, experienced *in* teaching, firm *in* opinion, failed *in* his attempt, fruitful *in* his attempt, honest *in* his dealings base *in* morals, obstinate *in* disposition, polite in manners, temperate in food, profuse in apologies, slothful in business.

(*x*) The following take **of** and not *in* :

Blind *of* an eye, dull *of* hearing, easy *of* access, infirm *of* purpose, lame *of* one leg, lavish *of* expenditure, subversive *of* discipline, forgetful *of* duty, slow *of* speech, sound *of* limb, envious *of* his fame, jealous *of* his fame.

(*xi*) The following take **with** and not *by* :

Adorned *with* jewels, afflicted *with* lameness, beset *with* difficulties, contented *with* a little, delighted *with* the prospect, distracted *with* pain, drenched *with* rain, endowed *with* talents, fired *with* zeal, infested *with* rats, inflated *with* pride, infused *with* zeal, inspired *with* hope, menaced *with* attack, overcome *with* fatigue, provided *with* money, perished *with* hunger, smitten *with* grief, stained *with* vices, touched *with* pity, transported *with* joy.

(*xii*) The following take **by** and not *with* :

Bound *by* oath, destroyed *by* fire, died *by* poison but died *of* grief, to perish *by* the sword, impelled *by* necessity, struck *by* lightning.

(*xiii*) The following take **in** and not *into* :

To fall *in* love, to come *in* sight, to take *in* hand, dipped *in* water, steeped *in* poverty, immersed *in* pleasure, bathed *in* blood, involved *in* a difficulty, implicated *in* a crime, sunk *in* depression, enlist *in* the army, inspired *in* our hearts, engaged *in* business.

(*xiv*) The following take **into** and not *in* :

Falling *into* a passion, bursting *into* tears, coming *into* the mind, coming *into* a person's presence, taking *into* consideration, penetrating *into* a secret, prying *into* a matter, sinking *into* insignificance, introduce *into* society, imported *into* a country, plunged *into* debt.

(*xv*) Also note the following :

This matter was brought *to* light (not *into*), I cannot call *to* mind

his name (not *into*), come *in* or *into* contact with a man, come *into* collision with a man *on* the road, *on* the way but *in* the street.

EXERCISES

(*For* **Board** *Classes*)

1. Against each of the following sentences are given two words. One of them only fills the blank correctly. With their help complete the following sentences :—
   1. I know him—a cheat. [For, being]
   2. Be careful to guard—danger. [Against, from].
   3. The school was named—his uncle. [After, for].
   4. He agreed—the price asked by the shopkeeper. [To, with].
   5. The loss of her husband kept preying—her mind. [At, on].
   6. He arrived—the nick of time. [At, in].
   7. You can see this—a glance. [With, at].
   8. You should not deprive him—his possessions [From, of].
   9. Vice follows—the train of luxury. [At, in].
   10. They made war—vice. [Against, on].
2. Use the following idiomatic phrases in your own sentences so as to bring out their meaning clearly .

Thankless task, iron hand, maiden speech, oily tongue, to keep up appearances, to curry favour, to live fast, to come to light, cat's paw, square deal.

(Punjab : Inter).

(*For* **University** *Students*)

1. Insert prepositions or phrases in the places left blank :
   1. He was plucked—the surprise—every one.
   2. The owner—this house has lowered his rent—many other houses being vacant—the neighbourhood.
   3. This picture was painted—a good model.
   4. He was a brute—a man—all that you may say—his praise.
   5. A man should always be employed—something, and should not be sparing —labour—anything that he undertakes.
   6. Such work is—a person—my poor abilities.
   7. It was kind—you to say that : for everyone speaks—me as being a rogue —a lawyer.
   8. He never knows a friend—an enemy.
   9. Although he was short—money and timid—disposition, yet— perseverance he conquered.
   10. He is rather severe—the student.
2. Explain the meaning of the following idiomatic expressions :

To cross the Rubicon, a dark horse, a sibyl, a wolf in the garb of a sheep, a Pharisee, a Philistine, an Amazon, green horn, to show the white feather, to out-Herod Herod.

CHAPTER XXXIII

IDIOMATIC USAGE : (3) PHRASES

1. **More Phrases**. The idiomatic expressions we explained in the previous chapter were mainly built round prepositions and were in the form of phrases. But phrases of the type which go by the appellation of **idioms** in this country and about which questions are frequently asked in the University and Board examinations deserve separate notice. This chapter opens with a list of such "phrases" or "idioms." They are culled from the question-papers of various examinations. The students are asked either to use them in sentences of their own, or to explain them, or to use as well as to explain them:

The worship of Mammon (*worship of wealth, bid to amass wealth without any moral scruples whatsoever*). **Mammon** was the god of wealth. Spenser gives a wonderful description of his cave in *The Faerie Queene*. "Crimes against society like hoarding and profiteering all result from the worship of Mammon."

To kill the fatted calf (*to extend a warm welcome*). When my old friend called on me, I killed the fatted calf in his honour.

To wear one's heart upon one's sleeve (*to let all one's feelings appear*). I do not believe in keeping up appearances ; I am a straightforward person and wear my heart on my sleeve.

To keep the wolf from the door (*to ward off extreme poverty*) Life is very hard for the common man these days ; he has to sweat and toil day and night to keep the wolf from the door.

Broken reed (*unreliable person or thing*). Persons who run after office rather than stick to principles are just broken reeds, who would leave you in the lurch at a critical juncture.

Other fish to fry (*other affairs to attend to*). How could he turn up at the party when he has other fish to fry ?

Root and branch (*the whole without leaving out anything*). The new culture has extirpated all old customs root and branch.

Neck or nothing (*staking all on success*). Neck or nothing, he is out to win.

A square peg in a round hole (*a misfit*). The born poet that he was, Keats was a misfit in that inferior medical service.

An all-rounder (*a person of versatile ability*). The new President of the College Union is an all-rounder—a versatile athlete, a brilliant student, and a scintillating speaker.

To hold one's tongue (*to keep mum*). Mum is the word ! You

had better hold your tongue about the shady deal we have had with that bloke. If anything leaks out it will land both of us in jail.

To get it in the neck (*to suffer a heavy blow*). He who prepares a noose for an innocent person is very likely to get it himself in the neck.

To make a virtue of necessity (*to pretend to do something as an act of virtue which one is actually compelled to do*).

To keep at arm's length from (*to keep at a safe distance*). You had better keep at arm's length from him.

A royal road (*an easy path*). As far as I know, there is no royal road to success except through hard and intelligent labour.

To hit below the belt (*to use unfair means against one's adversary*) It is rather unfair to talk ill of a man at his back ; it is hitting him below the belt.

A chip of the old block (*a son very much resembling his father*). William Pitt (the younger) was a chip of the old block, Nothing less could be expected of the son of Chatham.

A sharp tongue (*acrimonious tongue*). Women generally have a sharp tongue.

To have a long tongue (*to talk irresponsibly*).

A far cry (*no short transition*).

Bag and baggage (*with all one's belongings*).

To rough it (*to do without ordinary conveniences*). We have to rough it all for the sake of our country.

To eat the humble pie (*to submit to humiliation*).

To speak with one's tongue in one's cheek (*to speak cynically or ironically*).

Man in the street (*the common man*).

To strut in borrowed feathers (*to show off something which is not one's own*).

To blow hot and cold (*to vacillate*). Those who talk of peace and prepare for war blow hot and cold in the same breath.

To hang about (*to loiter*). As he has no work to do, he hangs about the city's cinema houses.

To build castles in Spain (*castles in the air*). The day-dreamer builds castles in Spain.

To bring a hornet's nest about one's ears (*stir up a host of enemies*).

Hard and fast (*definite*). There is no hard and fast rule relating to such matters.

Rough and ready (*not elaborate*). Alauddin Khilji was illiterate, but a very efficient administrator. His methods were rough and ready but they served the purpose.

Rain or shine (*whatever the weather*). Rain or shine, you must come.

To throw cold water on (*to strike with dismay*). She threw cold water on all my plans.

To be up and doing (*to strive, to be actively engaged*). Let us then be up and doing before he steals a march on us.

The last straw (the final trial of patience and endurance).

Under the rose (*in strict confidence*). Cupid bribed Hippocrates, the Greek god of silence, with a rose not to reveal the indiscreet love affairs of Venus, hence the flower became the emblem of silence.

Out of the frying pan into the fire (*from a bad position into a worse*).

With open arms (*with a warm welcome*). When the prodigal returned home he was received with open arms.

To thank one' stars (*to thank one's good fortune*). I thank my stars for escaping unhurt.

In a fix (*in perplexity*). When I found myself penniless at night in a strange city, I was in a fix.

On the horns of a dilemma (*in a critical position*). He was on the horns of a dilemma ; if he remained in the house he must perish in the flames and if he came out the soldiers would shoot him dead.

To be in one's cup (*in a state of intoxication*). The boss was in his cups when I called on him last night.

To be in bad odour, not to be in a good odour, to get into bad odour (*to be or become unpopular with some one*).

To be in the doldrums (*in a state of low spirits*). Pluck up courage and go about your work with spirit ; you look as though you were *in the doldrums*.

To be in tune (*to be in a happy state of mind*). Are you in tune for study to-day ?

To be in the wrong box (*to be in uncongenial circumstances*). He seems to like the profession of a teacher but he will soon find that he is in the wrong box.

To be in the same box, to be in the same boat (*to be equally embarrassed*). All of us were in the same box thanks to the new situation that had arisen.

To be lost in the clouds (*to get into unintelligible speculations*). I don't follow your arguments at all, you are always lost in the clouds.

To lose ground with (*to become less acceptable to*). Such superstitious beliefs have lost ground with the intelligentsia.

At sixes and sevens (*in confusion*).

Pell-mell (*in confusion, in disorder*).

A dark horse (*a person about whom little is known*).

To start from scratch (*to begin a work with almost no assets*).

At one's wit's end (*at a loss to know what to do*).

In the teeth of (*against*).

Nip in the bud (*bring to a very early end*). Spoken of some evil.

Hand in glove with (*on very intimate terms with*).

To see eye to eye with (*to be in agreement with*).

Above board (*above suspicion*). His conduct was fair and *above board*.

To lose ground (*to concede many points*). They were losing ground in the first test, but rallied magnificently in the third.

Hoping against hope. To hope that China will give up Formosa is hoping against hope

To take to one's heels (*run away*). At the sight of the approaching constable the thief took to his heels.

To make light of (*to belittle*).

To rise to the occasion (*to prove equal to the task*).

To be worth one's salt (*earn one's keep by good service*). You are not worth your salt if in the hour of emergency you are of no use to your country.

To turn a deaf ear to (*to ignore*).

To take to task (*to slate, to reprove*).

To pay off old scores (*to take revenge upon*).

To make up one's mind. I have made up my mind to pay a visit to the States this year.

Through thick and thin (*in all circumstances, good or bad*).

To have an eye to (*to have something as one's objective*).

To have an eye for (*to be a judge of*).

To feather one's own nest (*to make money unfairly*). The Honorary Secretary of the Trust is suspected of having feathered his own nest.

To the back-bone (*thoroughly*). He is a patriot to the back-bone.

Swelled head (*conceit*). She is suffering from a swelled head.

To heap coals of fire on some one's head (*to return good for evil, to make the enemy ashamed of his enmity*). "If thine enemy be hungry, give him bread to eat ; and if he be thirsty give him water to drink, for thou shalt heap coals of fire upon his head and the Lord shall reward thee."

A dead letter (*a law no longer in force*). This Act is already a dead letter.

To pin one's faith on (*to place full reliance upon*). He pins his faith on his friend's help.

Loaves and fishes ((*material benefits*). They soon fell out violently among themselves for the loaves and fishes of office.

Flog a dead horse (to try to arouse energy in an exhausted or feeble person or animal; to revive interest in a subject which is out-of-date)

To kick against the pricks (*to struggle with an overmastering force*). He kicked against the pricks of conscience.

To have two strings to one's bow (*to have more than one resource to rely upon*). You see he has two strings to his bow, he is a photographer and a journalist.

To be on tenterhooks (*to be in a state of painful suspense and anxiety*).

The world, the flesh, and the devil (*love of pleasure, sensual indulgence and vicious propensities*). He has renounced the world, the flesh and the devil, and preaches and prays day and night.

Every inch (*entirely, completely*). He is every inch a king.

Over the heads of (*above the comprehension of*). For some days the new professor lectured over the heads of his pupils.

To stand on ceremony (*to act with reserve, to insist on strict rules of etiquette being observed*). I never *stand on ceremony* with him.

To take the edge off one's argument (*to make one's argument ineffective*). I began to argue with her but she *took the edge off my argument* by showing me the written confession of the culprit.

To serve one's time (*to go through an apprenticeship*). He is serving his time in a bank.

To lie in the bed one has made (*to reap the consequences of one's own acts*). She must lie in the bed she has made.

To mean business (*to be in earnest*). I am sure he means business this time.

On the spur of the moment (*at once, without deliberation*). He did it on the spur of the moment.

To get into hot water (to be in preplexing, difficult, or irritating circumstances). The officers got into hot water with Dr. Khan Sahib for taking part in politics.

To get wind (*to become widely known*). The story of her elopement soon got wind. (*To come to know*). Her father soon got wind of the engagement.

To give or **lend countenance to** (*to encourage, approve, support*). Distinguished scientists from the first gave countenance to the theory of gravitation.

To give loose rein to (*to indulge without restraint*). It is a bad thing to give loose rein to one's anger.

To go a long way towards (*to be nearly sufficient for*). This sum will go a long way towards discharging his debts.

To go to the bad (*to be reduced to poverty*). If you make idle, dissipated people your companions you are sure to go to the bad.

To have no backbone (*to have no strength of character*).

To keep one's head above water (*to avoid getting into debt or trouble*). Though overwhelmed by difficulties on all sides, he was clever enough to keep his head above water.

To stir one's little finger (*to do the least*). These are difficult times I am afraid no country is going to stir its little finger to help another country.

To break out of (*to escape from a place breaking open the locks*). The prisoner broke out of the jail.

To put out (*to extinguish or disconcert*). I was going to wax eloquent on the subject of his honesty, but I was put out when I heard that he was already twice convicted in cheating cases.

To do one a good turn (*to be kind to*). It is the sign of a noble mind to do a good turn to everyone without expecting anything in return.

A bird of passage (*a migratory bird, which spends summer at one place and winter at another*). Government servants are birds of passage. They are subject to frequent transfers.

A cock and bull story (*a story which is unbelievable and foolish*). Children will believe everything. They will even a believe cock and bull story.

A diamond of the first water (*a diamond perfectly pure and of the greatest value*).

Ups and downs of life (*changes of life, prosperity and adversity*). There are many ups and downs in the life of a great hero.

Few and far between (*not many ; a few*). In the past, you used to come to my house often enough but now your visits have grown few and far between.

Part and parcel (*part of a whole*). The phrase is not preceded by *or*. We cannot say *a part or parcel*.

Null and void (*having no power of force*). This agreement is null and void.

To be dead against (*to be forcefully against*). I am dead against this proposal.

To be worth its weight in gold (*extremely valuable*). He regards this book as worth its weight in gold.

To be a host in himself (*to be singly equal to*). Napoleon was a host in himself.

To be under a cloud (*to be under a temporary misfortune*).

To be at home in a subject (*to know that subject very well*).

To be on the wane (*The moon waxes and wanes, that is, becomes bigger and bigger in the bright fortnight and smaller and smaller in the dark fortnight*). The British Empire is on the wane.

To put the cart before the horse (*to reverse the right order*).

To pull a long face (*to make grimaces in order to show dislike*).

To play second fiddle to (*to be subordinate to*).

To burn the candle at both ends (*to spend recklessly*).

To feather one's nest (*to keep an eye on the main chance*).

On the cards (*possible or likely*). It is, I say, on the cards that the next Budget will give relief to the low-paid employees.

To give one the cold shoulder (*to treat indifferently*). Do not allow this fellow to come to you so often. You had better give him the cold shoulder.

To set the Thames on fire (*to distinguish oneself*). He will not set the Thames on fire. (Used in the negative sense).

To come to grief (*to meet with disaster*). Reckless spenders generally come to grief.

To be caught red-handed (*in the very act of some mischief*). The thief was caught red-handed.

To get into a scrape (*to be involved in trouble*). His peevish temper and backbiting has got him into a scrape.

To go to the wall (*to be thrust aside, to fare badly*). The weak go to the wall, the strong survive).

To do away with (*to get rid of, to abolish*). I have done away with that old coat.

To make a clean breast of (*to confess without reserve*). Before the Magistrate, the thief made a clean breast of his guilt.

To have an axe to grind (*to have private ends to serve*). Why should not he support the Bill? Do not you know he had an axe of his own to grind?

To make no bones of or **about doing** (to do without hesitation.

The sword of Damocles (*some constantly threatening danger*). The student's only check is the examination; it is the sword of Damocles hanging over his head.

To look the gift horse in the mouth (*to eye a present with suspicion*). It does not look nice to look a gift horse in the mouth.

To play to the gallery (*to appeal to the vulgar taste*). Desire for real service prevented him from playing to the gallery.

To see red (*slang—to be filled with lust for blood*).

A silver lining to the cloud (*consoling element in misfortune*).

To put it in black and white (*to reduce to writing*).

Hole-and-corner (*secret, underhand*). Ours is not a hole-and-corner policy.

To miss the bus or **boat** (*to let the opportunity slip by*).

To put up a smoke screen (*to camouflage*).

To lay one under an obligation (*to do him a favour so that he feels indebted to you*). You have laid him under a great obligation by recommending his case to the Principal.

To lay up for a rainy day (*to make provision for a time of trouble and difficulty*). When he is getting a decent salary, why should he not lay up something for a rainy day.

To make short work of (*to bring to a sudden end*). The thugs of the nineteenth century used to make short work of their victims.

To make amends for (*to compensate*). By his virtuous life, he has made amends for his past actions.

To make a mountain of a molehill (*to give great importance to trifles*). To give so much importance to this dispute is to make a mountain of a molehill.

To make hay while the sun shines (*to take advantage of a favourable opportunity*). When trade was brisk, he worked hard and made his fortune; he believes in making hay while the sun shines.

To throw of the mask (*to make a revelation of one's true self or intentions*. Uriah Heep was at last obliged to throw of the mask.

To see a thing through coloured spectacles (*to see a thing with a prejudiced mind*). If you want to get at the truth, you must not see the matter through coloured spectacles.

There is no love lost between them (*they are not on good terms, they dislike each other*). Though these two brothers do not quarrel openly, certainly there is no love lost between them.

To live from hand to mouth (*without any provision for the future*). Many people in this country have to live from hand to mouth.

In the long run (*eventually, ultimately*). Hard work is sure to be rewarded in the long run.

In the nick of time (just at the right moment). The police came on the scene *in the nick of time*.

At issue (*in dispute*). What is the point at issue.

To be not fit to hold a candle to (*not to be named in comparison with*). He is not fit to hold a candle to his predecessor.

To burn one's fingers (*to get into trouble*). He burnt his fingers by interfering in his neighbour's affairs.

To strain every nerve (*to use one's utmost efforts*). He strained every nerve to get the prize this year.

To speak volumes for (*to serve as a strong testimony to*). It speaks volumes for your industry that you have built so large a business without any one's help.

To get off easy (*to get a light sentence, to escape lightly*). His guilt was proved to the hilt, but he got off easy.

To have an axe to grind (*a private end to serve, a personal interest in the matter*). I suspect your friend has an axe of his own to grind.

To give one the glad eye (*to cast a smiling glance which indicates a desire for acquaintance*). He gave her the glade ye.

To screw one's courage to the sticking-point (*to muster up enduring strength, to summon courage*). Screw your courage to the sticking-point and you will not fail.

To be penny wise and pound foolish (thrifty in small things, and careless or wasteful in large and more important ones). He is *penny wise and pound foolish.*

To rob Peter to pay Paul (*to take or borrow money from one to give or pay to another*).

A Roland for an Oliver (*tit for tat*). One improbable story for another.

To spread like wild fire (*to spread rapidly*). The news of Quaid-i-Azam's death spread like wild fire in the whole country.

Gall and wormwood (*hateful*). Prohibition is gall and wormwood to distillers.

In the dark (*in ignorance*). For a long time she kept her parents in the dark about the true state of affairs.

At the first blush (*at the first sudden glance*). The scheme appears worthless at the first blush.

To be true to one's salt (*to prove faithful to one's employers*). The Baluchi soldiers were true to their salt.

To be in the air (*prevalent*). A spirit of unrest is in the air.

To a T (*exactly*). This will answer the description to a T.

On the eve of (*just before*). The students gave a farewell address to the professor on the eve of his transfer.

Out of the question (*not worth consideration*). Any proposal to retain English as the official language of Pakistan is simply out of the question.

To weather a storm (*a ship is said to weather the storm when it comes successfully out of a storm*). The Government of Pakistan has weathered many storms in the past. It is growing stronger day by day.

To gather head (*to be ready to burst*).

Point blank (*utter*). I asked for the loan of a book but he refused me point blank.

Put a good face on (*to accept cheerfully*).

To put one's foot down (*to oppose firmly*).

To put one's best foot forward (*to do one's best*).

To risk all one's eggs in the same basket (*put all the money in one venture*). Please do not deposit all your money in one bank, for it is unwise to risk all one's eggs in the same basket.

To reckon without one's host (*to start something without counting the cost or difficulty*).

To rub shoulders with (*to mix freely with*). You must rub shoulders with all if you want to succeed in life.

To talk shop (*to talk of one's office or business*). When you go out for a picnic, do not talk shop. Forget your office or business after working hours.

This day week (*Monday week means next to next Monday. Similarly Tuesday week, Wednesday week, etc.*

Today is Friday. I can't come to your house next Sunday. I will certainly be coming on Sunday week.

Not to touch it with a pair of tongs (*to have nothing to do with it*).

To pay back in one's coin (*to retaliate*).

To throw down the gauntlet (*to challenge*).

To take up the gauntlet (*to accept the challenge*).

To hit the nail on the head (*to give the right explanation*).

To have a finger in the pie (*to take part in a matter*).

To smell a rat (*to conceive suspicions*). Things look fishy. I smell a rat in the affair.

The ins and outs (*minor details*). The police spy-ring keeps itself fully in the know of the ins and outs of the City's bad characters.

A mare's nest (*fancied discovery*).

To rest on one's laurels (*to give up efforts after early success*).

To poison the ears of (*to incite someone against*). The step-mother poisoned the ears of her husband against the poor boy.

To leave in the lurch (*to desert in difficulty*).

To fight shy of (*to hesitate*). Do not fight shy of representing your grievances.

A contradiction in terms (*an anomaly*).

To beat about the bush (*to approach a subject slowly in a roundabout way*). Do not beat about the bush. Come to the point.

To take time by the forelock (*to seize the opportunity*). Do not procrastinate ; take time by the forelock.

To take a cue from (*take a hint from*). Little boys take their cue from their elders for whatever they do or say.

To be in good books (*to be in favour with*). He is in the good books of the Principal.

To clinch the issue (*to decide, to settle finally*).

√ **To burn one s boats** (*to commit oneself irrevocably*). I have burnt my boats ; there is no going back now.

To settle an old score (*to take revenge on*). I have an old score to settle with that fellow : I shall set him right.

To be at logger-heads (*to be on bad terms*). India and Pakistan are at logger-heads with each other.

To turn over a new leaf (*to start on a new career*). The thief has turned over a new leaf after serving out the last sentence.

A wild-goose chase (*absurdly impossible quest*).

For love or money (*whether as a favour or at a price*).

To palm off on (*to pass off as of superior kind*). He palmed off the old edition of the book on him.

To be in the running (*to have a good chance of winning in the competition*). I am told that James is in the running.

To go home to one (*to appeal to one deeply*). Though the old man addressed them for a few minutes only, his earnest words went home to them.

To be at sea (*perplexed, at a loss what to do*). He is quite at sea regarding the choice of a profession.

To stand in one's own light (*to act against one's own interest ; to hinder one's own advancement*). He does not understand that he stands in his own light.

Tooth and nail (*with all the force which one can use*). We shall fight tooth and nail for our rights

To stand one's ground (*to maintain one's position*). He stood his ground against his adversary

To show one's hand (*to reveal one's plan of action*). I told them that I was prepared to show my hand provided he agreed to do the same.

To stand one in good stead (*to prove uesful to one*). This hat will stand me in good stead in summer.

At a pinch (*in case of emergency ; if hard pressed*). We are without a cook, but the dairymaid is not a bad hand at a pinch.

To take one s life in one's hand (*to undergo great risks*). Soldiers in battle take their lives in their hands.

To sit on the fence (*to halt between two opinions, hesitating which side to join*). How can you sit on the fence ? You shall have to join this party or that.

To live by one s wits (*to have no settled means of subsistence but to pick up a living by deceit or fraud*). I suspect the fellow *lives by his wits*.

Into the bargain (*in addition, besides*). He spent much time and energy over it and lost a large sum into the bargain.

To the letter (*exactly, with adherence to every detail*). He insisted on his instructions being carried out to the letter.

To take the wind out of one's sails (*to make somebody's words or actions ineffective by anticipating them*). How cleverly you have taken the wind out of my sails!

To bear a charmed life (*to be invaluable, as he escapes death in an almost miraculous manner*). Stalin seemed to bear a charmed life.

To nail one's colours to the mast (*to refuse to climb down or surrender*). Do your worst! I nail my colours to the mast.

To stick to one's colours (*to refuse to yield, to be faithful to the cause*). Stick to your colours, boys!

A wolf in sheep's clothing (*a hypocrite*). Beware of that wolf in sheep's clothing.

Under-dog (*depressed or suppressed members of society*). All the political parties claim to have full sympathy for the under-dog but few indeed try to better his lot.

Up one's sleeves (*in readiness*). I think the officer has already got a man of his own up his sleeves for the new post.

To appear in true colours (*to appear what one really is*).

To wash one's dirty linen in public (*to discuss disagreeable family matters in public*). When the two brothers quarrelled, they began to reveal family secrets and many ugly things, washing their dirty linen in public.

Wear and tear (*that which gets broken through use*). It has lost much value through wear and tear.

To wind up one's shop (*to shut up one's business*). I believe under the new rules he will have to wind up his shop.

To be in one's element (*to feel happy*). He is in his element when he is at some dinner party.

A nine days' wonder (*something which seems wonderful for the first few days and then appears quite ordinary*). His marriage with an actress proved a nine days' wonder.

A Utopian scheme (*a scheme which is good, but not practicable*).

To laugh in one's sleeves (*to laugh in secret, but not openly*). When the teacher began to sing a song, all the boys began to laugh in their sleeves.

A snake in the grass (*You can't see the snake hidden in the grass. So the idiom means a hidden enemy*).

To lose heart (to be discouraged).

To lose one's head (*to become flustered*). One must not lose one's head in a crisis.

To stick to one's guns (*to maintain one's stand*). We should stick to our guns when we feel that our stand is just.

To be fed up with (*to be disgusted*).

To have a jolly good time (to enjoy).

To be hard up for (*to be short of*).

To fall out (*to quarrel*).

A leap in the dark (*a step whose results are not known*).

Ends of justice (the aim of justice). The ends of justice will be served if the *juvenile culprit* is let off with a light punishment.

To have a cool head (*not to be flustered*). A successful military commander cannot afford to be flurried or excited ; he must keep a cool head.

A man of parts (a very able person). A man of parts will make his way in the world. He is a man of parts Besides knowing three languages, he knows knitting, painting and dancing.

The dead of night (*when nearly every one is in bed*). The thieves broke into the house at the dead of night.

A man of of spirit (*not submissive*). He is a man of spirit and will not tolerate this affront.

A thankless task (*a task earning no thanks*). I helped him out of so many difficulties, but it was all a thankless task. Let alone receive any credit for it, I was in a way abused by him.

An iron hand (*strongly*). He put down the disturbances in the city with an iron hand.

To carry the day (*to win the battle, etc*.). No doubt the match was evenly contested, but it was our college which carried the day.

To come to light (*to transpire, to become known*). It has come to light that all precious stones were removed by the Sikhs from Jehangir's tomb.

To go to law (*to have recourse to legal action*). I have made up my mind not to go to law to recover the outstanding amount.

To turn one's coat (*to change one's political creed*). He watches the rising and declining fortune of the political parties, and turns his coat accordingly.

To make one's mark (*to achieve prominence*). He made his mark early in life.

A man in a thousand (*a man above the ordinary*). He rose to be the head of the Electricity Department ; he was a man in a thousand.

A man in a million (*a unique person*). Helen had a world-famous beauty. She was a woman in a million.

A man of straw (*a worthless man*). Some rich men are men of straw ; they have no personality.

To eat one's words (*to withdraw or to take back one's words.*)

He made an insulting remark against the leader ; later he had to eat his words.

To err on the right side (*to make a mistake, but a mistake which brings more good than harm*).

Moonshine (*beautiful but unreal*).

In lieu of (*in place of*). We had a holiday yesterday, in lieu of the holiday for last Saturday, which we did not observe last week.

On the score of (*because of*). A few are granted fee-concession on the score of poverty.

To talk through one's hat (*boast or bluff*). He is in the habit of talking through his hat. Indeed, tall talk seems to be his hobby.

To play one's cards well (*to make the best use of one's opportunities*). He is brilliant and comes of a big family. If he plays his cards well, he is sure to be a great man one day.

To put a spoke in one's wheel (*to put an obstruction in the path of progress*).

To hang by a thread (*ready to break at any moment*). Peace in the world is hanging by a thread. There may be a world war at any time.

To follow suit (*to do as others do*). When the professor made an objectionable remark, some boys walked out of the class. The others followed suit.

To cast pearls before swine (*to offer to a person things which he cannot appreciate*). To talk on politics to the illiterate is to cast pearls before swine.

To cut off in its bloom (*to destroy a thing in its prime*). Plague has cut off her life in its bloom.

To have nothing to do with (*to have no business with*). I have nothing to do with her.

To fall out of use or **to drop out of use** (*to cease to be used*). These old words have now fallen out of use.

The Schoolmaster is abroad (*education is spreading in every direction and ignorance is diminishing*). Although much still remains to be done in this direction, the gradual increase in the number of students clearly shows that the schoolmaster is abroad.

Above your hook (*beyond your mark or apprehension*). The reference is to hat-pegs placed in rows. The higher rows are above the reach of people of small stature.

A bolt from the blue. (*A disaster that comes too suddenly*). In mythology, Jupiter, the god of thunder, hurled revengeful bolts from heaven).

To butter both sides of one's bread (*to gain advantages from two parties at one and the same time*).

To know on which side one's bread is buttered (*to be fully alive to one's own interests*). Generally used in the negative.

To look as if butter would not melt in his mouth (*to appear to be harmless and innocent*) She smiles and languishes ; you'd think that butter would not melt in her mouth.

Cheek by jowl (*in close proximity*). Here was a doctor, who never had a patient, cheek by jowl with an advocate who never had a client.

To drive one into a corner (*to put one in an embarrassing situation*). At first I had the upper hand of him, but he soon drove me into a corner by his incontrovertible arguments.

All is fish that comes to his net (*i.e., he turns everything to some use or profit no matter by what means*).

To get into a hole (*to get oneself in an awkward or difficult position*).

To give one the sack (*to dismiss one*). He gave his servant the sack.

To put one on one's mettle (*to rouse one to do one's best*). This unexpected misfortune put him on his mettle.

To carry matters with a high hand (*to take strong measures*). The Principal carried matters with a high hand and expelled four students for a very trivial offence.

To win one's spurs (*to make one's reputation*). It was in parliamentary debates that he won his spurs.

To play fast and loose (*to say one thing and do another*). I never trust a man who plays fast and loose.

To make both ends meet (*to live within one's income*). The cost of living has become so heavy now that all find it difficult to make both ends meet.

By hook or by crook (*by fair means or foul*). He is determined to have the house this year by hook or by crook.

To all intents and purposes (*practically, virtually*).

To hold water (*to stand scrutiny*). This argument will not hold water.

To be of a piece with (*in keeping with*). This is of a piece with the rest of her conduct.

To gain ground (*to become more powerful or acceptable*). The belief in the efficacy of vaccination is slowly gaining ground in this country.

To be at one with (*to be of the same opinion*). I am at one with him in this matter.

To be the order of the day (*to be of general or frequent occurrence*. Retrenchment is the order of the day.

To be full of oneself (*to be filled with vanity*). He struts about so full of himself that everybody laughs at him.

To be on good terms with one (*to be friendly with*). I an not on good terms with him.

To be on the right side of twenty (*to be less than twenty years old*).

To be on the wrong side of twenty (*to be more than twenty years old*). Do you know that she is on the wrong side of twenty, or thirty, or forty or so on).

A square deal (*honest bargain*). You should not expect a dishonest fellow to give you a square deal.

An oily tongue (that which can flatter).

The burning question (*issue widely discussed at the moment*).

A fair-weather friend. One who leaves you in difficulties is a fair-weather friend.

A bone of contention (*an apple of discord*). After the death of their father the property became a bone of contention between the two brothers.

Cat's paw (*person used as a tool by another*). Is India gradually becoming the cat's paw of Russia ?

Up to the mark (*up to the standard*). Your general knowledge is not up to the mark.

To move heaven and earth (*to leave no stone unturned*). He moved heaven and earth to get the job and at last succeeded.

To play with fire (*to invite sure trouble*).

To curry favour with (*to try to win favour by flattering*). The subordinate staff naturally curry favour with their superiors.

To be of easy virtue (*to be unchaste*).

To fire a servant (*to snub or even dismiss him*).

To rack one's brain (*to put a strain on one's brain*). I racked my brain to recollect my old friend's name, but in vain.

To follow the beaten track (*to do what ordinary persons do*).

To leave the beaten track (*to do something different from what ordinary people do*).

To plough a lonely furrow (*to be alone in doing a thing*).

To strike the iron while it is hot (*to take the fullest advantage of an opportunity*).

To follow in the footsteps of (*to follow an example*). We should follow in the footsteps of great men.

To fish in troubled waters (*to take advantage of the troubles of others*).

To bear away the palm or **win laurels** (*Both these phrases mean 'to win victory or honour.' In ancient Greece, the winner in games got a prize of laurels or palm leaves*).

A walk-over (*victory without fighting*). Our hockey team was

playing against the Islamia College team. But the rival team did not turn up, and we had a walk over.

Knock down (*to defeat completely, or the last bid in an auction*).

Ne'er-do-well (*a man who is not successful in anything*).

Off-hand (*without preparation*). He can deliver a speech off-hand. He requires no preparation.

To run the gauntlet (*to undergo severe criticism*). "To run the gauntlet is quite distinct from to throw the gauntlet."

To draw a blank (*to fail to draw a prize in a lottery, to meet with failure*).

To give one the slip (*to slip away*). At the sight of the police officer the thief gave him the slip

To go the whole hog (*to do something thoroughly*). He was ready to go the whole hog with her to prove her innocence.

Out and out (*thoroughly*). He is out and out a rogue.

By fits and starts (*spasmodically*). To study by fits and starts is not the way to prepare oneself for the examination.

To be at large (*to be unchained*). The rogue elephant was at large.

On the spur of the moment (*impromptu*). An idea struck me on the spur of the moment, though I was at my wit's end a little earlier.

To be out of pocket (*to have no money*). I am ten rupees out of pocket by this deal.

At the eleventh hour (*at the last moment*). I arrived at the eleventh hour.

In the nick of time (*just in time for something*). We arrived in the nick of time.

To come to a head (*to culminate*). The affair has come to a head and a clash is imminent.

To cut a sorry figure (*to make no impression*).

To fling or **throw mud at** (*to vilify*).

To take the lead (*to be in the forefront*).

To give the lead to (*to blaze the trail for*). The Press gives the lead to the Government

In cold blood (**cold-blooded-murder**) (*to murder without any provocation. When two persons are quarrelling their blood is hot. But a child is killed in cold blood. He is not angry or fighting*). In 1947, thousands of Muslim men, women and children were murdered in cold blood in India.

A close-fisted person (*a miser*).

A slow coach (*one who makes slow progress*). He is a slow coach and will take six months to finish one book.

To cast a slur on (*to bring shame and dishonour to*). He came of a respectable family, but his arrest on the charge of theft cast a slur on the fair name of his family.

A laughing-stock (*one at whom every one laughs*). He is the laughing-stock of the whole college.

A jail bird (*a criminal who has been to jail several times*). The pick-pocket turned out to be an old jail-bird.

To give somebody a piece of one's mind (*to rebuke or scold him*). Of late, my brother had been behaving very foolishly. So I gave him a piece of my mind yesterday.

To put two and two together (*to draw a conclusion from the facts*).

To turn down (*to reject*). The corporation decided to introduce a new tax, but the government turned down the proposal.

To be taken in (*to be deceived*).

To take after (*to look like*). He takes after his father.

To put their heads together (*to think together to find out ways and means*). All the leaders from the different parties should put their heads together and devise ways and means of removing hunger and poverty from the country.

To turn up one's nose at (*to spurn*).

To meet one half-way (*to compromise*).

To mind one's business (*not to meddle with the affairs of others*). Do not poke your nose into the affairs of others. Mind your own business.

It serves him right (*he is rightly punished*).

To stand in good stead (*to be useful*). Your father's advice will stand you in good stead.

To be cut to the quick (*to have one's feelings hurt*). He did not expect this kind of reply from a friend ; naturally he was cut to the quick.

To break the ice (*to broach a topic*). I broke the ice and started the discussion.

To hang in the balance (*to be undecided*). The fate of Kashmir is hanging in the balance.

To die in harness (*to be working till death*).

To show the white feather (*to show cowardice*)

To take with a grain of salt (*to allow for probable exaggeration*). His version of the story must be taken with a grain of salt.

An open secret (*something unsuccessfully concealed*). That his wife beats him is an open secret.

To end in smoke (*to fizzle out, to have no solid result*). All my schemes ended in smoke.

An apple of discord (*something over which there are rival claims*).

The sum and substance (*gist*). The sum and substance of my speech is that you should help yourself.

To keep a good table (*to provide good food*). It is said of

Alexander the Great that he loved to keep a good table though he was himself a spare eater.

To be taken aback (*to be surprised*).

To make a mountain of a mole hill (*to exaggerate*).

A labour of love (*work done not for money but only for love*). The service of the refugees, done by the public, was all a labour of love, they expected no reward.

A feather in one's cap (*a matter of honour*).

To throw dust in one's eyes (*to deceive a person*).

To keep one's head over water (*to keep above debts*). In spite of a small income, the economical farmer was able to keep his head above water.

To be at daggers drawn (*to be sworn enemies*)

To set great store by (*to build great hopes on*). The father set a great store by his very brilliant son.

To take by storm (*to win by a single effort*). His maiden speech in the Parliament took the members by storm.

A cry in the wilderness (*a cry which has no effect*).

A necessary evil (*something which is evil but which in necessary*). Examinations are a necessary evil.

To go without saying (*this thing is quite clear, even without saying*). It goes without saying that when you come to my house, you will be quite welcome.

To put one's shoulder to the wheel (*to do the hard work oneself and not to depend on others*). Do not be idle, expecting that others will help you ; put your own shoulder to the wheel, and success is yours.

To strain every nerve (*to try one's best*). Our hockey team strained every nerve to score a goal in the second half time, but in vain.

To take the bull by the horns (*to face the difficulties bravely*). Hitler defeated the whole of Europe, but Russia took the bull by the horns and saccessfully met his attacks.

To be in keeping with (*to be in a line with*).

An ugly customer (*formidable antagonist*) Dr. Khan Sahib has an ugly customer in Mr. Daultana of whom he must beware.

To mince matters (*to speak with assumed delicacy*). This phrase is generally used in the negative as "*not to mince matters,*" to denote outspokenness). I don't like to mince matters : I would say it to his face that he has tried to play a hoax on us.

A man of straw (*an imaginary person set up to be quoted*). Why are you so gullible ? The official whose palm he wants to grease with your money is only a man of straw ; in fact he has his own axe to grind and wants to enrich himself at your cost.

To dot the i's and cross the t's (*to make the meaning and details quite clear*). He is very scrupulous about the wording of his orders and dots the i's and crosses the t's to make everything crystal clear.

To place on the anvil (*to make something ready for completion*). The new project has been placed on the anvil and will be completed by the end of the year, provided everything keeps to its schedule.

2. **Comparisons**. Englishmen while talking make use of striking comparisons. Many of these pithy phrases do not occur in good written prose. We give below the most frequently used comparisons. These, when judiciously used, give vividness and piquancy to one's language.

As *bitter* as *gall*.
As *black* as *coal*, as a *crow*, or a *raven*, *ink*.
As *black* as *midnight*.
As *black* as *pitch*.
As *blind* as a *bat*
As *blind* as a *beetle*.
As *blind* as a *mole*.
As *blithe* as a *bee*.
As *blithe* as a *butterfly*.
As *brittle* as *glass*.
As *brown* as a *berry*.
As *busy* as a *bee*.
As *changeable* as the *moon*.
As *changeable* as a *weathercock*.
As *cheerful* as a *lark*.
As *clear* as *crystal*.
As *clear* as *day*, *noonday*.
As *cold* as *charity*.
As *cold* as *ice*
As *cold* as *marble*.
As *cold* as a *stone*.
As *cool* as a *cucumber*.
As *cunning* as a *fox*.
As *dark* as *midnight*.
As *dark* as *pitch*.
As *dead* as a *herring*.
As *deaf* as a *post*.
As *deep* as a *well*.
As *dry* as a *biscuit*.
As *dry* as a *bone*.
As *dry* as *dust*.
As *dry* as a *stick*.
As *drunk* as a *fiddler*.
As *drunk* as a *lord*.
As *dumb* as a *statue*.
As *easy* as *A.B.C.*
As *fair* as a *rose*.
As *fast* as a *hare*.
As *fat* as *butter*.
As *fat* as a *pig*.
As *fat* as a *quail*.
As *fat* as a *whale*.
As *fierce* as a *tiger*.
As *firm* as a *frock*.
As *flat* as a *board*.
As *fleet* as a *deer*.
As *free* as the *air*.
As *fresh* as a *rose*.
As *gay* as a *lark*.
As *gaudy* as a *butterfly*.
As *gentle* as a *lamb*.
As *good* as *gold*.
As *graceful* as a *swan*

As *grasping* as a *miser*.
As *grave* as a *judge*.
As *greedy* as a *dog*
As *greedy* as a *wolf*.
As *green* as *grass*.
As *gruff* as a *bear*.
As *happy* as a *king*.
As *hard* as *flint*.
As *hard* as *marble*.
As *hard* as a *stone*.
As *harmless* as a *dove*.
As *heavy* as *lead*.
As *hoarse* as a *raven*.
As *hot* as *fire*.
As *hot* as *pepper*.
As *hungry* as a *horse*.
As *hungry* as a *hawk*.
As *innocent* as a *dove*.
As *large* as *life* (i.e., as large as though he or she were alive).
As *light* as *air*.
As *light* as a *butterfly*.
As *light* as a *feather*.
As *like* as *two beans*.
As *like* as *two drops of water*.
As *like* as *two peas*.
As *loose* as a *rope of sand*.
As *loud* as *thunder*.
As *mad* as a *hatter*.
As *mad* as a *March hare*
As *merry* as a *cricket*.
As *mute* as a *fish*.
As *nimble* as a *bee*.
As *nimble* as a *squirrel*.
As *obstinate* as the *mule*.
As *old* as the *hills*.
As *pale* as *death*.
As *pale* as a *ghost*
As *patient* as *Job*. (Job was a patriarch mentioned in early Bible history remarkable for great patience).
As *patient* as an *ox*.
As *playful* as a *butterfly*.
As *playful* as a *kitten*.
As *plentiful* as *black berries*.
As *plump* as a *partridge*.
As *poor* as a *church mouse*.
As *poor* as *Lazarus* (a beggar mentioned in the Bible).
As *proud* as *Lucifer* (or Satan who rebelled against God).
As *proud* as a *peacock*.
As *quick* as *lightning*.
As *quick* as *thought*.
As *quiet* as a *lamb*.
As *rapid* as *lightning*.
As *red* as *blood*.
As *red* as a *cherry*.
As *red* as *fire*.
As *red* as a *rose*.
As *regular* as *clockwork*.
As *rich* as *Croesus* (an ancient king of Lydia who was very rich).
As *rich* as a Jew.
As *ripe* as a *cherry*.
As *round* as an *apple*.
As *round* as a *ball*.
As *round* as a *globe*.
As *salt* as *brine*.
As *sharp* as a *lance*.
As *sharp* as a *needle*.
As *sharp* as a *razor*.
As *silent* as the *dead*.
As *silent* as the *grave*.
As *silent* as the *star*.
As *silly* as a *goose*.
As *silly* as a *sheep*.
As *slender* as *gossamer*.

As *slender* as a *thread*.
As *slippery* as an *eel*.
As *smooth* as *butter*.
As *smooth* as *oil*.
As *smooth* as *glass*.
As *smooth* as *velvet*.
As *sober* as a *judge*.
As *soft* as *butter*.
As *soft* as *down*.
As *soft* as *wax*.
As *sound* as a *bell*.
As *sour* as a *crab* (*i. e.*, crab-apple).
As *sour* as *vinegar*.
As *steady* as a *rock*.
As *stiff* as a *poker*.
As *still* as *death*.
As *still* as the *grave*.
As *still* as a *post*, a *statue* (*i.e.*, *motionless*).
As *straight* as an *arrow*.
As *strong* as a *horse*.
As *stupid* as a *donkey*.
As *sure* as *death*.
As *surly* as a *bear*.
As *sweet* as a *nut*.
As *sweet* as *sugar*.
As *swift* as an *arrow*.
As *swift* as *thought*.
As *swift* as lightning.
As *swift* as *the wind*.
As *tall* as a *mast* or a *poplar*.
As *tall* as a *steeple*.
As *tame* as a *chicken*.
As *tame* as a *hare* (*i.e.*, harmless).
As *tender* as a *chicken* (in eating).
As *thick* as a *cable*.
As *thick* as *hailstones* (as frequent).
As *thick* as *blackberries* (*i. e.*, plentiful).
As *thick* as *thieves* (*i.e.*, as closely allied).
As *thin* as a *wafer*.
As *timid* as a *hare*.
As *tough* as *leather*.
As *tricky* as a *monkey*.
As *true* as *steel*.
As *ugly* as a *scarecrow*.
As *ugly* as a *toad*.
As *unstable* as *water*.
As *vain* as a *peacock*.
As *warm* as *wool*.
As *watchful* as a *hawk*.
Hs *weak* as a *baby*.
As *weak* as a *cat*.
As *weak* as a *kitten*.
As *weak* as *water*.
As *wet* as a *drowned rat*.
As *white* as a *sheet*.
As *white* as *snow*.
As *white* as *wool*.
As *wise* as a *serpent*.
As *wise* as *Solomon* (a king of ancient Palestine, thought to be the wisest of all men).
As *wise* as *Solon* (an old Athenian statesman and law-giver).
As *yellow* as a *guinea*.
As *yellow* as *saffron*.
As *yielding* as *wax*.

3 Foreign Phrases. Many a foreign word and phrase in used in English. We give below lists of such expressions arranged under the head of each language from which they are derived. Abbreviations, wherever in use, are given in parenthesis at the end of the explanation.

☞**It is important to note that foreign phrases, unless**

used in the abbreviated form, are either italicized, or quoted, as *in toto* **or** 'in toto', **but** *R.S.V.P.* **and certain abbreviations like** *i.e.*, and *e.g.*, **are always italicized.**

(*a*) Greek

Although scientific and philosophical terminology in English is derived entirely from Greek very few idiomatic words or phrases have been borrowed by English from that language. The commonest are:

apologia—an apologetic writing.

Eureka! I have found it! (Exclamation of discovery.)

(*b*) Latin

ab eterno—from eternity.

ab initio—from the beginning.

ab origine—from the origin or beginning.

a dato—from date.

ad extra—in an outward appearance.

ad infinitum—to infinity.

ad interim—from the meantime.

ad nauseum—to the extent of producing disgust.

ad valorem—according to value.

alma mater—benign mother, said of their university by old students (also of any educational institution).

alter ego—the other self, one's second self; also used by an intimate friend or representative.

amicus curiae—a friend of the court, a disinterested adviser.

amor vinbit omnia—love conquers all things.

anno Christi—in the year of Christ (A. C.).

anno Domini—in the year of our Lord (A.D.).

annus mirabilis—year of wonders.

ante meridiem—before noon (A. M.).

aqua—water.

aqua vitae—water of life.

arbiter elegatiarum—a judge in matters of taste.

argumentum baculinum—the argument of the rod.

ars longa, vita brevis—art is long, life is short.

beati pacifici—blessed are the peacemakers.

bene vobis—health to you!

bona—good.

bona fides—good faith. "Establish your *bona fides* first."

bona fide—genuine. "Only *bona fide* agriculturists can buy, this piece of land."

caput—head.

casus belli—the cause that involves or justifies war.

causa sine qua non—an indispensable cause.

cogite, ergo sum—'I think, therefore I am.' (Descartes).

cui bono?—who is the gainer?

culpa levis—a slight fault.

de facto—actual, real.

de jure—by right, rightful. "Though I am the *de jure* owner of the house, my brother who lives there is the *de facto* owner."

de mortius nil nisi bonum—'Say nothing but good of the dead.'

de novo—anew.

deus ex machina—a god out of the machine (on the stage). It was thought to be a bad device by the Roman dramatists to introduce a god to settle the complications in a play. Such a god used to be let down by an apparatus on the stage. So metaphorically the phrase means a too obvious device in an author's plot.

divide et impera—divide and rule.

errare est humanum—'To err is human.'

et s quentes—and those that follow (*et seqq.*).

et sequentia—and what follows (*et seq.*).

ex cathedra—from the chair of office; hence authoritatively, judicially.

excelsior—higher.

exempli gı atia—by way of example (*e.g.*).

ex officio—by virtue of his office. As the Principal of the college, he is an *ex officio* member of the governing body.

ex parte—on one side. "The case was decided *ex parte*."

factum est—it is done.

farrago—a medley.

fiat justitia—let justice be done.

fidei defensor—defender of the faith.

gloria in excelsis—glory to God in the highest.

hic et ubique—here and everywhere.

hic finis fandi—here (was) the end of the speaking, here finishes the story.

hic jacet—here lies.

ibidem—in the same place or thing or case (*Ibid.*)

id est—that is (*i.e.*).

impedimenta—luggage.

imperium in imperio—a government within another.

in abstracto—in the abstract.

in camera—in the (judge's private) room.

index expurgatortius—a list of prohibited books.

in excelsis—in the highest point.

in extenso—at full length.

in extremis—at the point of death.

in loco parentis—in the place of a parent. "I am *in loco parentis* to the poor boy."

in memoriam—in the memory of; in memory.

in rerum nature—in nature.

in statu quo—in the former state, in the same state as before.

inter alia—among other things.

inter se—amongst themselves.

in toto—entirely.

ipse dixit—his mere word, he himself said it.

ipso facto—virtually, in the fact itself.

laesa majestas (L). *lese majeste* (French)—injured majesty, treason.

locus standi—a place for standing, metaphorically, a right to interfere. "He has no *locus standi* in this matter."

magna est veritas et praevalebit—truth is great and will prevail.

magnum bonum—great good.

magnum opus—a great work.

mala fide—treacherously, with bad faith.

materia medica—the science of medicines, or the medicines collectively.

mea culpa—by my own fault.

meum et teum—mine and thine. "He never cared for petty

distinctions of *meum et teum* but took whatever he could lay his hands upon."

modus—mode, manner.

modus operandi—plan of working, mode of operation.

mutatis mutandis—with necessary qualifications or changes. "What applies to the father, applies, *mutatis mutandis*, to the son too."

ne plus ultra—the uttermost point or extreme perfection of something.

nota bene—mark well, take notice (N.B.).

obiter dictum—incidental remark.

O tempora! O mores!—O the times! O the manners!—that is, 'What sad times! What dreadful doings!'

pari passu—with equal pace, together.

post mortem—after death.

quod erat demonstrandum—which was to be demonstrated or proved (Q. E. D.).

quo vadis—whither goest thou ?

requiescat in pace—May he (or she) rest in peace (R.I.P.).

sartor resartus—the tailor retailored.

sic transit gloria mundi—So passes away earthly glory.

status quo—the state in which, the former state.

sub judice—under consideration.

sub poena—under a penalty.

summum bonum—the chief good.

tabula rasa—a smooth or blank tablet. "The mind of the child is a *tabula rasa*.

terra incognita—an unknown country.

ultra vires—beyond one's powers, illegal. "The court gave the verdict that the resolution was *ultra vires*."

vale—farewell.

veni vidi vici—'I came, I saw, I conquered.' (Julius Caesar).

verbatim—word by word.

versus—against ; e.g., The Government College team *versus* the F. C. College team (*v.*).

via—by way of.

via media—a middle course.

vice—in place of.

vice versa—(the terms being exchanged).

videlicet—namely (*viz.*)

virginibus puerisque—for young persons, for maidens and boys.

vide—see (indicates reference to some passage or book, etc)

viva voce—by oral testimony.

vox populi, vox Dei—The voice of the people is the voice of God.

(c) French

affaire d'amour—a love affair.

affaire de coeur—an affair of the heart.

affaire d'honneur—an affair of honour.

agent provocateur—a spy, who professing sympathy, provokes people to commit crimes.

aide—an assistant, a helper.

aide de camp—bodyguard.

a la main—in hand, ready, by hand.

a la mode—according to the custom, in fashion.

a la mort—to the death.

a l'extremite—to the end of one's resources.

amitie—friendship.

ancien regime—the old order of things, especially that before the French Revolution.

a outrance—to the bitter end.

a propos de bottes—with respect to boots, *i.e.*, without any real relevancy.

au fait—expert, well acquainted with a matter.

au revoir—'Adieu until we meet again.'

banalite—triviality.

bel esprit—a fine genius.

bonhomie—good nature.

bonjour—good-day, good-morning.

bon mot—a witty saying.

bon ton—the height of fashion.

bon vivant—a jovial companion.

bon voyage !—(wish) a good journey to you !

borgeois—a townsman, middle class.

cadre—a list of officers, a scheme.

coup d'etat—a stroke of policy, a violent measure of state in public affairs. Also only *coup*.

chef de cuisine or merely *chef*—male head cook.

cul-de-sac—blind alley.

denouement—catastrophe, final solution in a play or novel.

detenu (feminine *detenue*)—a person detained in custody, especially an Indian political prisoner under the Criminal Law amendment Act.

debris—scattered fragments, wreckage.

distrait—absent-minded.

edition de luxe—a splendid and expensive edition of a book, as distinguished from its popular edition.

eclat—conspicuous success, pomp or social distinction.

egalite—equality.

elan—dash, eagerness to advance.

eleve—pupil.

elite—pick, choice. "The *elite* of the town were all at the gathering."

en deshabille—in undress, in careless costume.

enfant terrible—a precocious child whose indiscreet prattle puts his elders to the blush. Also used metaphorically.

en fete—in festivity. "The city was *en fete* on the occasion of His Majesty King Saud's visit."

en masse—in a body, all together.

en route—on the road, on the way (to).

entente—understanding, now-a-days used in a political sense.

fait accompli—a thing already done, an accomplished thing.

faux pas—a false step, a mistake.

fin de siecle—end of the (19th) century, decadent, modern.

flair—scent, keen sense of smell; e.g., He has a *flair* for politics.

gens de condition—people of rank.

gen de monde—people of fashion.

grande passion—a serious love-affair.

grand merci—many thanks.

hors de combat—unfit for fight, disabled.

idee fixe—a fixed idea.

impasse—an insoluble difficulty.

ingenu, *ingenue*—a young person of exceptional simplicity (contemptuously spoken).

le beau monde—the fashionable world.

le style est l'homme meme—"The style is the man himself."

l'etat, c'est moi—'The state? I am the state!' (Louis XIV).

lettre de cachet—a sealed letter, a royal warrant.

maitre d'hotel—a house-steward, a hotel-keeper.

mal a propos—ill-timed.

mariage de convenance—marriage from interest rather than from love.

matinee—a morning recital or show or performance.

melee—a confused scuffle. "In the *melee* a woman received a serious injury on the head."

mesalliance—marriage with one of lower station.

mon ami—my friend.

mot juste—exactly the right word.

noblesse oblige—privilege entails responsibility.

nom de guerre—an assumed name.

nouveaux riches—upstarts (contemptuous).

octroi—duties paid at the gate of a city.

par excellence—eminently.

par example—for example.

esprit de corps—regard for honour and interests of the body one belongs to. "Students of this college should develop the *esprit de corps.*"

personnel—the persons employed in any service, etc.

preux chevalier—a brave knight.

resume—an abstract or summary.

raison d'etre—a reason for existence.

sans peur et sans reproche—without fear and without reproach.

repondez s'il vous plait—reply if you please (R. S. V. P.).

Soiree—social evening, evening gathering for music, etc.

tour de force—a feat of strength or skill.

tete a tete—(adjective) private, confidential; (*noun*) private interview or conversation usually between two persons.

tout ensemble—the whole taken together.

valet de chambre—an attendant, a footman

vis-a-vis—opposite, facing each other.

vive l'empereur!—Long live the Emperor!

voila!—behold!

(*d*) **German**

Dichtung und Wahrheit—fiction and truth.

Eisen und Blut—'iron and blood.'

Lebensraum—living space, *i.e.*, further territory.

Leit motif—'a representative theme used to indicate a certain person, attribute, or idea, in an opera, oratorio, etc.

Wahrheit und Dichtung—truth and poetry.

Weltgeist—the world-spirit.

Weltschmerz—world-sorrow, sympathy with universal misery or complete pessimism.

Zeitgeist—spirit (and tendency) of the times.

(*e*) Italian

al fresco—in the fresh air.

brava—well done! (applied to a woman).

can amore—with love, very earnestly.

donna mobile—woman is changeable.

illustrissimo—most illustrious.

il penseroso—the pensive man.

l'allegro—the cheerful man.

Lingua Franca—"the corrupt Italian once current in the Levant; the mixed language spoken by the Europeans in the East." Now-a-days the phrase is used to signify 'any mixed jargon serving as medium between different peoples.'

Prima Donna—the chief female singer in an opera, etc.

4. **Grouped Expressions**. We now give below certain expressions relating to life, communications, finance and commerce. They make a useful study. Students who may feel interested in the study of such grouped expressions are strongly recommended a careful perusal of Logan Pearsall-Smith's informative book *Word and Idioms*, which tells us how words connected with various walks of life have passed into metaphorical use.

(*a*) **Birth**. **To be born, to see the light of the day, to come into the world, to join the race of life; to be born of** noble parents; **to be born rich, with silver spoon in one's mouth; to be born under a lucky star, to be born to be hanged; to be born to be spoiled; to be born a poet; a born idiot, a born thief, a born orator, etc.** **In all my born days** means in all my life. **The first-born** is the first issue of a couple.

(*b*) **Death**. **To die, to cease to live, to expire, to breathe one's last, to pass away, to be called away, to go the way of all flesh, to pay the debt of nature, to be gathered to one's fathers, to join the majority, to depart this life, to give up the ghost; to die a natural death; to die a violent death; to come to an untimely end.** **His time is come, his days are numbered, his hour has come** mean his life is about to end. **His course is run** means the same. So does **his days are numbered**. **To have one foot in the grave** is to be near death. One may **die by** violence, the sword, one's own hand; **from** a wound, etc., **through** the neglect of the doctor or nurse or parents, **on** scaffold (by hanging), **at** the stake (being burnt), in battle; **for** a friend or cause; **in** poverty, etc. **To die a glorious death** is to die a death which will be the envy of all; **to die a dog's death** is to die miserably; **to die hard** is to die not without struggle; **to die in one's bed** is to die of age or illness; to die **in one s shoes** is to die by violence; **to die in harness** is to die while still at work.

(*c*) **Fire and Light**. We **light** or **kindle a fire,** we **light a lamp** or **a candle**, but we do not kindle a candle or lamp. **To set fire** to one's house is to burn it; **to strike fire** is to elicit sparks by friction or blows. We **put out** a fire, a lamp or a candle. We also **blow out** a candle or **trim** or **snuff** it. The **lamp is out** or

the **fire is out** means it has ceased burning. **Candle-power** is unit of light measurement. **Candlelight** means, figuratively, evening.

(*d*) **Time. On the instant** means at once, **on the spur of the moment** means at once, without any reflection, **in the nick of time** means just at the proper time **In times gone by** means a long time ago. **Times immemorial, in days of yore, time out of mind, ancient times**, all have the same sense. **To be on time**, or **to be in time** or **to be in good time** is to be punctual, to be early enough. **At the eleventh hour** means at the latest possible or available time. **Just in time** means the same. **Time after time** means repeatedly ; **many a time**, often; **at all times**, always; **from time to time**, frequently ; **ever and anon**, repeatedly ; **time and again** and **every now and then** mean time after time. **By and by** means after a little while. (But **by the by** is a formula for beginning some digression.) We say **to pass the time, to spend time. To lose time** is not to utilize it. **To waste time, to idle away** or **while away time, to kill time** means to spend time by doing something useless. **To spare time** is to be able to give some part of one's time for a purpose. **Spare time** means leisure. **To make the best of one's time** is to make the most of it, to put it to the best advantage ; **to take time by the forelock** is not to let any chance slip. **To take one's time** is to do a thing in a leisurely manner, not to be in a hurry; **to bide one's time** is to wait patiently for one's time or opportunity. An apprentice or a man sent to prison **serves his time**.

(*e*) **Time-pieces**. We **wind** or **wind up** a watch or clock. A clock is **too fast** when it is before the proper time, **too slow** when behind the proper time. It **loses time** when it goes slow. A clock or watch **runs down** when not wound up, it **goes** again when wound up. A clock or watch **shows time** or **keeps time**.

(*f*) **Travel. A railway journey** as distinguished from **a sea voyage** or **river trip. To board a train** is to get into it **To miss a train** is to fail to catch it. **To buy a ticket, to book one's luggage**, etc. **To reserve a berth**. We have **rail-road competition** meaning thereby competition between motor cars and trains.

(*g*) **Post**. We **address** a letter **to** a person, and **receive** a letter **from** one. I **missed the morning post** means I could not send a letter by the morning post. He had **a heavy post** to-day means the he had a large number of letters. **By return of post** means by the next mail in the opposite direction. A **post-boat** is a mail-boat ; a **post-bag** is a mail bag ; a **post-boy** is a letter-carrier ; **postman, postmaster**, etc. **Postmark** is the official mark stamped on a letter, especially one giving place, date and hour of dispatch or arrival. **Post free** means carried free of charge by the post-office ; **post-paid** means 'on which postage has been paid'; **postage** is the amount charged for the carriage of letter, parcels, etc., by post, now usually pre-paid by stamp. A letter **miscarries** when it is lost somehow and does not reach the

addressee. A **dead letter** is an undelivered letter at the post office; such letters are kept for some time in the **dead letter office**. Metaphorically a **dead letter** means a law no longer observed. **Letters** written by two correspondents to each other at about the same time will **cross**.

(*h*) **Money**. **Paper money** means rupees, notes, bank notes, cheques etc., as distinguished from **coin**. **Ready money** or **cash** is money in hand available for use. **Credit** is opposed to cash. **To make money** is to make profit in one's business. **To raise money** is to collect it for present use. We open (**savings** or **current**) account with a bank and close it when necessary. We **deposit** or **withdraw** money from a bank. We **draw a cheque (crossed** or **bearer)** on a bank. To be **in debt**; to be **out of debt**; **to get into a person's debt**. The man who borrows is the **debtor**, the man who lends is the **creditor**. The latter **lends** *to* the former, and the former **borrows** *from* the latter. A debtor **owes** money *to* the creditor, and money is **owing** *to* the creditor. **To give credit to** a man is to trust in his ability and intention to pay; **to deal on credit** *with* a man; **short time credit** or **long credit**. **Credit** is the reputation of solvency and honesty that a man enjoys, as in. "His credit is **high** or **good** in the market." **A letter of credit** is that which authorizes a person to draw money from the writer's correspondent to whom the letter is addressed and who belongs to another place. **Bad debts** are those which are not likely to be paid by the creditor. **Debt of honour** is a debt not legally recoverable, etc., a sum lost in gambling. **National Debt** is the sum owed by the State to persons who have advanced money to it.

(*i*) **Remuneration**. One has one's monthly or yearly **salary**; a workman has his **wages**; a professional man gets his **fees**. A doctor gets his *fees*, so does a lawyer; a clerk or a magistrate or a teacher has his *salary*; a labourer has his *wages*.

(*j*) **Commerce**. We have a **rise** in price when the articles are **dear**; a **fall** in price when they are **cheap**. We **deal in** something, **deal with** a person or **refuse to deal with** him. So, **to do business** or **transact business** with another. A man also **carries on a business** or **trade**. **To drive a trade** is to manage one's business successfully; **to do a roaring trade** is to do extraordinarily brisk business; **to be in pocket** through a business transaction is to have made some profit by it; opposed to it is **to be out of pocket**. A rich man is a man **of money**, **of wealth**, **of means**. We speak of a man **worth** two millions. A man is **solvent** when he can pay all the claims on him, or **insolvent** when he cannot do so. Such a man may declare himself **bankrupt** in the bankruptcy court. We **buy** a thing **from** a **dealer**, and **sell** it **to** a **purchaser**. A thing **sells for** so much or **brings in** so much. It may **sell well** or may not. A thing is **put up for sale**. **To put up** a thing for **auction** or **to auction** is **to bring it to the hammer**, to offer it for sale by auction. During an auction men **bid for** the articles, **bid against** each other. **The**

gross profits include expenses, etc. ; **net proceeds** or **profits** are pure profit with all expenses deducted. **To make a bargain** or **to strike a bargain** is to settle the terms of a bargain, to bring it about : **to close a bargain** is to settle it finally. **To drive a bargain** or **to drive a hard bargain** suggests some difficulty.

EXERCISES

(*For* **Board** *Students*)

1. Make sentences to illustrate the use of the following :

A maiden speech, rainy day, an iron hand, to take one to task, the lion's share, at the eleventh hour, to catch red-handed, a bone of contention, to make a virtue of necessity, to keep at an arm's length. (Punjab, Inter.)

2. What do you understand by the following :

i.e, *e.g.* *R.S.V.P.*, A.D.

(*For* **University** *Students*)

1. Explain the meaning of the following idiomatic expressions ;

To catch a Tartar, to mince matters, by fits and starts, to place on the anvil, to dot the i's and cross the t's, a man of straw, an ugly customer, a far cry.

2. What do the following expressions mean :

Modus operandi, au revoir, lese-majeste, ex-officio, ex parte, Eureka, lebensraum, alma mater, post mortem, viva voce, vice versa.

CHAPTER XXXIV

PROVERBS, MAXIMS AND QUOTATIONS

1. **Embalmed Genius.** The pithy and pointed sayings known as proverbs are the embalmed genius of the past ages and the preserved fruits of their long experience. The mighty king and great prophet Solomon has aptly described the purpose of proverbs as to help one "know wisdom and instruction; to perceive the words of understanding; to receive the instruction of wisdom, justice, judgment, and equity." Crowning it all, is his description of the benefits to be derived from pondering over proverbs which "give subtlety to the simple, to the young man knowledge and discretion." The young men, therefore, should undertake a study of proverbs not for learning the English idiom, but simply with a view to acquiring knowledge, discretion and subtlety. These will stand him in good stead when he is writing an essay. Here are some common English proverbs. Explanations are given against each in parentheses.

There is a silver lining to every sable cloud (there is always some ray of hope in the darkest condition of affairs. Sweet are the uses of adversity Misfortune, adversity, depression, however long they last, end in happiness and good fortune. "If Winter comes, can Spring be far behind?")

In for a penny, in for a pound. (In such a position that the penalty, loss, danger, chance, or risk is the same, regardless of the degree of responsibility involved; when the enormity of the offence is not followed by a proportionate increase in punishment or risk; seeking the largest profit. "As well be hanged for a sheep as for a lamb," as another proverb has it).

Little strokes fell mighty oaks. (Little by little we achieve great things).

Slow and steady wins the race.

Barking dogs seldom bite. (Blustering and swaggering bullies do not often carry out their threats. "Thundering clouds seldom rain."

Creaking doors hang the longest. (Sickly persons very often outlive the strong).

Poverty acquaints a man with strange bedfellows. (Nothing stands in the way of companionship among the wretched and needy.)

Caesar's wife must be above suspicion. The reputation of a great man's wife must be without blemish; hence, any one who

moves in select circles must be above reproach or too worthy to be suspected of evil).

A nod is as good as a wink to a blind horse. (It is useless to make signs for those who cannot or will not see ; none are so blind as those who will not see ; one who will not understand cannot be made to do so). *A nod is as good as a wink to a blind horse* : and there are certain conventions in public as well as private life which it is better for all parties not to put in writing.

Great cry and little wool. (Said of a boaster who uses many words but says nothing of any importance.)

Think of the devil and he is there. (Speak of some one and he will come into sight. Said of a person who, being discussed in his absence, suddenly appears.)

Enough is as good as a feast. (Where there is sufficiency there is no need for excess.)

The first stroke is half the battle. (Well begun is half done. The method of attack determines the end ; hence, the way in which a task is approached shows how it will be accomplished.)

Don't hallo before you are out of the wood (Don't rejoice too soon or exult till all danger is over.)

A miss is as good as a mile. (A narrow escape is as real as any other.)

Money makes the mare go. (Much can be accomplished with capital.)

One swallow does not make a summer.

The proof of the pudding is in the eating. (Certainty is the outcome of actual experience.)

Safe bind, safe find. (What is packed carefully will remain secure.)

What is sauce for the goose is not sauce for the gander. (A thing which is good to one may be harmful to another, as men differ greatly.)

Look before you leap. (One should consider well every side of a question before acting.)

Let sleeping dogs lie. (An irritating quarrel should not be revived).

Habit is second nature.

Listen not to all that is spoken. (Those who give ear to every idle rumour about themselves and others will be constantly hearing something to vex and annony them.)

Love me, love my dog. (The idea is that : if a man loves another man he should show his love for everything that belongs to the latter.)

A drowning man catches at a straw. (Men in great danger often try to save themselves by utterly inadequate or futile means.)

A sleeping fox catches no poultry. (An idle man cannot get anything.)

Count not your chickens before they are hatched. (Do not be over-sanguine or precipitate.)

Every dog has his day. (Even to the meanest of us a time of power and prosperity comes.)

Charity begins at home. (One should do kind deeds to one's near and dear ones before thinking of neighbours or strangers.)

Make hay while the sun shines. (Utilise the opportunities when they come.)

Man proposes, God disposes. (Man often makes plans but often these fail. It is God's will which is done.)

Many men many minds. (Every one has got his likes and dislikes, so where there are many men it is natural that there would be varieties of opinions).

There is many a slip between the cup and the lip. (Life is full of chances and even when one is about to attain a thing one may not succeed. We should first have a thing firmly in our grasp and then feel satisfied.)

Marry in haste, repent at leisure. (If a thing is done rashly one will have plenty of time for repenting afterwards.)

No rose without the thorn. (A good or attractive or beautiful thing cannot be acquired without some trouble.)

Nothing venture nothing gain. (If one does not take any risks, one cannot expect to get anything remarkable).

No pains no gains.

Necessity has no law. (Necessity makes a man devise all sorts of ways and means which may not be sanctioned by law.)

Necessity is the mother of invention. (A thing is invented when necessity is felt for it. (Man made boats when he wanted to cross a river and so on.)

Only the wearer knows where the shoe pinches. (The sufferer only can realise the extent and nature of his sufferings. No sympathiser or friend can do it.)

New brooms sweep clean. (A person newly installed in office generally introduces sweeping reforms, and changes.)

Out of sight out of mind. (An absent friend is easily forgotten.)

Prosperity gains friends, adversity tries them. (When a man is prospering he will have a lot of friends, but when evil days come only the genuine friends will stick by him.)

Too many cooks spoil the broth (A business will not be done properly where nobody is singly and solely responsible for it.)

A full purse never lacks friends. (Friends surround a rich man.)

First deserve, then desire. (Everybody should see first whether he deserves a particular thing or not : then he should have a desire for it.)

It is never too late to mend.

Let every herring hang by its own tail. (Let every one attend to his business.)

Jack of all trades but master of none. (He who can turn his hand to many different occupations is an expert in none.)

First weigh then say (consider well before you act.)

Little pitchers have long ears. (Children are listening to what is being said) used in warning.

Make hay while the sun shines. Strike when the iron is hot. (Do not lose an opportunity when it comes.)

Prevention is better than cure. (It is better to prevent a misfortune if you can, than to find a remedy for it after it has taken place.)

Praise a fair day at night. (Do not think that circumstances are favourable to you till you have seen the end.)

Something is better than nothing.

Better alone than in bad company.

Better to-day than to-morrow. (We should not put off till tomorrow what we can do to-day).

Idleness is the rust of the mind. (A man is spoiled if he does not work).

Be slow to promise but quick to perform. (You must reflect long before making a promise but when you have once made one you should not delay in acting up to it.)

Bear and forbear. (Endure patiently and avoid being angry.)

Cut your coat according to your cloth. (Regulate your expenses according to your income.)

Do to others as you would be done by. (Behave towards others as you wish others to behave towards you.)

What cannot be cured must be endured.

Empty vessels make much noise. (A man of no worth brags most).

Those who live in glass houses should not throw stones at others. (One who is himself vulnerable should not blame or attack others).

Throw lots of dirt and some will stick. (Lie about a man profusely and some people will believe some of the lies.)

Watch how the wind blows. (To await developments, to be on the look out for something to happen.)

God tempers the wind to the shorn lamb. (The Almighty softens the afflictions of a sufferer or lightens the burden of the afflicted.)

All water runs to his mill. (Said of a person favoured by fortune.)

Those who dance (or **call the tune) must pay the piper.** (Those who indulge themselves must bear the expenses or consequences.)

Discretion is the better part of valour. (It is foolish to run avoidable risks.)

Where there's a will there's a way. (Difficulties disappear before an unswerving resolution.)

The mills of God grind slowly. (Retribution may be delayed, but it is sure to overtake the wicked).

The best fish swim near the bottom. (Anything which is really valuable and, therefore, worth having, cannot be 'got without trouble.)

Love me little, love me long. (Do not love me too much at once and cease to love me soon.)

Love me, love my dog (If you love me you will have to like all that belongs to me.)

There is small choice in rotten apples. (Where everything is corrupt there is little chance for selection.)

All asses wag their ears. (All foolish persons talk as if they were very wise.)

His bark is worse than his bite. (His are merely angry words and threats with nothing worse to follow.)

One beats the bush, another catches the hare. (One does the work, another reaps the benefit.)

Beauty is but skin deep. (Loveliness is no deeper than the surface.)

Blood is thicker than water. (Kinship is stronger than friendship, for water evaporates but blood does not.)

True blue will never stain. (An upright man will never do wrong.)

You can't eat your cake and have it. (You cannot enjoy the possession of that which you have already given away.)

Care killed the cat. (A proverb emphasizing the deadliness of worry ; a cat is supposed to be very tenacious of life.)

A cat may look at a king. (The humblest have some privileges in the presence of the greatest.)

Rome was not built in a day. (A great work cannot be done overnight, it requires long and patient labour and thought.)

Spare the rod and spoil the child. (If you do not inflict corporal punishment on your child now and then, if you are too soft with him, he will soon be spoilt.)

Short reckonings make long friends. (If you borrow little from your friend and pay back soon, your friendship with him will last long.)

Stolen waters are sweet. (Things which are obtained by stealth appear to be very attractive.)

To sow the wind and reap the whirlwind. (To suffer worse results of bad action.)

To strain at a gnat and swallow a camel. (To make difficulties about small things but to overlook serious things.)

Slow and steady wins the race. (Students should remember the story of the hare and the tortoise in *Aesop's Fables.* People who are impatient or who work by fits and starts rarely succeed.)

Time and tide wait for no man. (One cannot stay the course of time. 'Tide' here means 'time.' One should be prompt in one's work.)

A burnt child dreads the fire. (A man who has suffered from something has a fear for that all through his life.)

Take care of the pence and the pounds will take care of themselves. (We can make a decent saving by avoiding petty extravagances and economising the daily expenses of life than by miserliness or inordinate profits.)

Too much familiarity breeds contempt. (A person who intrudes too much upon our company and makes himself familiar is sure to lose our esteem and respect.)

The second blow makes the fray. (The first blow may be a just chastisement as when a father strikes his son or a master his pupil. But the return blow is often unjust and makes for a fight.)

Virtue is its own reward. (Every good action brings a recompense to the doer in the form of self-satisfaction. It does not matter whether others praise the virtuous man or not. What matters is his own appreciation of his meritorious deed.)

Worth makes the Man, and want of it the Fellow. (A man of no worth should not be called a man in the proper sense of the term. He is a 'fellow.')

When in Rome do as the Romans do. (One should conform) to the habits and manners of the people among whom one lives.

A cobbler should stick to his last. (One should meddle only with matters with which one is familiar.)

Fine feathers make fine birds. (Dress makes the man.)

It's one thing to flourish and another to fight. (It is one thing to make a brave show but another to prove one's courage.)

It is a game at which two can play. (The same course of action is equally open to your opponent.)

All is grist that comes to his mill. (Everything he gets he turns to account.)

Handsome is that handsome does. (Actions appropriate to the occasion, not words, are the test of one's sincerity or merit.)

Heads I win and tails you lose. (Used to characterise a one-sided business proposition.)

Two heads are better than one. (Collective intelligence is superior to individual intelligence.)

It is an ill wind that blows nobody any good. (It is a disastrous event or overwhelming misfortune that brings no good to any one.)

A good lather is half a shave. (Careful preparation reduces the labour required ; things done right to-day mean less trouble to-morrow.)

Don't leap over the hedge before you come at the stile. (Don't be hasty).

The fewer the words the shorter the quarrel. (Least said the soonest mended.)

Lock the stable-door after the horse is stolen. (To take precaution after the harm or mischief has been done.)

A little pot is soon hot. (A small or narrow-minded person is quick-tempered. It takes very little to anger a small mind.)

Scornful dogs will eat dirty puddings. (Necessity knows no law. Need compels deeds no matter how unpleasant. Hungry dogs are not fastidious about their food.)

If the sky fall, we shall catch larks. (When the unexpected happens, we shall profit).

Pigs might fly if they had wings. (What is impossible will never happen. Said in ridicule of visionary schemes.)

There is no smoke without fire. (There is no effect without a cause.)

Two and two make four. (That cannot be controverted; used to emphasize an undeniable and obvious statement).

Carry coals to Newcastle. (To take something where it is already plentiful. To do what is superfluous.)

Better late than never. (It is better to do a thing even after long delay than not to do it at all.)

As you make your bed, so you must lie. (You must accept and bear the consequences of your own actions).

Easy come, easy go. (What is acquired without effort is spent without thought.)

There are wheels within wheels. (The phrase implies secret machinations in a scheme which do not appear on the surface.)

Beggars should not be choosers. (Persons seeking favours must not dictate to the giver what they like best. They must accept what is given to them and be thankful.)

Example is better than precept. (Action is better than teaching. An ounce of practice is better than a ton of theory. A person's moral conduct, is more impressive than his teaching).

A stitch in time saves nine. (When a thing goes wrong it should be mended at the very beginning or it would cost much time and money afterwards.)

A man is known by the company he keeps.

A bad workman quarrels with his tools.

A rolling stone gathers no moss. (An unsteady man never succeeds.)

All that glitters is not gold. (Appearances are often deceptive.)

A friend in need is a friend indeed. (A true friend stands by us in times of adversity.)

To err is human, to forgive divine.

Out of sight, out of mind. (An absent friend is soon forgotten)

Waste not, want not. (If you do not waste things, you will never be in want).

Procrastination is the thief of time. (Most time is lost by putting off a work till a future time).

It never rains but it pours. (When strokes of good or bad fortune come, they come in rapid succession).

Let the dead past bury its dead. Let bygones be bygones. (It is useless to revive unpleasant memories of the past.)

More haste less speed. (Slow and steady wins the race, and the man who is over-hasty always spoils his work and wastes his time. He always does something amiss in haste and has to waste much time in mending it).

Every cock crows on his owns dunghill. (Every one can brag in his own home.)

Early start makes easy stages. (A timely beginning enables one to proceed with leisure, as on a journey.)

Soft words butter no parsnips. (Mere words do not provide the means of livelihood; actions speak louder than words.)

First catch your hare and then cook it. (One must have possession of a thing before one can enjoy it; the present must prepare for the future.)

2 Quotations. Maxims and other apophthegms quoted from famous authors serve the same purpose as proverbs. They enlighten the mind with wisdom and enrich it with experience. To the student their interest lies in the spice and zest they add to one's otherwise insipid style of writing. Here are some important quotations on which they may even be asked to write essays in the examination :

Ability : Ability is poor man's capital (*Anonymous*). It the power to do hard work is not talent it is the best possible substitute for it. (*Garfield*) From each according to his abilities, to each according to his needs, (*Marx*).

Abstinence : Refrain to-night and that shall lend a hand of easiness to the next abstinence ; the next more easy ; for use can almost change the stamp of nature, and either curb the devil, or throw him out with wondrous potency (*Shakespeare*).

Accident : There are chords in the human heart, strange varying things, which are only struck by accident (*Dickens*).

Action : "Say well" is good, but "Do well" is better (*Old saying*).

Adversity : Sweet are the uses of adversity (*Shakespeare*). Adversity is the touchstone of friendship (*Old saying*). To have a right estimate of a man's character we must see him in adversity (*Napoleon*). The virtue of prosperity is temperance. The virtue of adversity is fortitude (*Bacon*).

Affliction : Affliction comes to all not to make us sad, but sober ; not to make us sorry, but wise ; not to make us despondent, but by its darkness to refresh us, as the night refreshes the day ; not to impoverish, but to enrich us, as the plough enriches the field, to multiply our joy, as the seed, by planting, is multiplied a thousand-fold. (*H. W. Beechar*).

Age. Crabbed age and youth cannot live together (*Shakespeare*).

Ambition : I would rather be the first man here than the second in Rome (*Julius Caeser*). Great ambition is the passion of a great character (*Napoleon*).

Art : Life is short, art is long. (*Latin saying*). Art lies in concealing art (*Ovid*). The art is but imitation of nature (*Aristotle and Seneca*).

Beauty : A thing of beauty is a joy for ever (*Keats*). What is beautiful is good and what is good will soon also be beautiful (*Sappho*). Beauty is power ; a smile is its sword (*Reade*).

Books : Some books are to be tasted, others to be swallowed, and some few to be chewed and digested (*Bacon*). A good book is the precious life-blood of a master-spirit embalmed and treasured up on purpose to a life beyond life (*Milton*).

Character : To be worth anything, Character must be capable of standing firm upon its feet in the world of daily work, temptation, and trial ; and able to bear the wear and tear of actual life. Cloistered virtues do not count for much (*S. Smiles*).

Charity : Every good act is charity. Your smiling in your brother's face is charity : an exhortation of your fellow men, to virtuous deeds, is equal to alms-giving ; your putting a wanderer on the right road is charity ; your assisting the blind, is charity ; your removing stones, and thorns, and other obstructions from the road is charity. A man's true wealth hereafter is the good he does in this world to his fellow man. When he dies, people will say, "What property as he left behind him ?" But the angels will ask, "What good deeds has he sent before him ? " (*The Holy Prophet*).

Contentment : It is not for man to rest in absolute contentment (*Southey*).

Country and Town : God made the country and man made the town (*Cowper*).

Courage : Screw your courage to the sticking-place, and we'll not fail (*Shakespeare*). Often the test of courage is not to die but to live (*Alfiers*).

Cowardice : "Cowards die many times before their deaths" (*Shakespeare*).

Death : All men think all men mortal but themselves. (*Young*). Pale death, with impartial step, knocks at the poor man's cottage and the palaces of kings (*Horace*).

Deeds : We live in deeds, not in years (*Bailey*). Whatever is worth doing at all is worth doing well (*Chesterfield*) Give me the ready hand instead of the ready tongue (*Garibaldi*).

Democracy : Government of the people, by the people for the people (*Lincoln*).

Despotism : Despots govern by terror. They know that he who fears God fears nothing else, and therefore they eradicate from the mind, through their Voltaire and Halvetius, and the rest of that infamous gang, that only sort of fear which generates true courage (*Burke*).

Destiny : No man of woman born, coward or brave, can shun his destiny (*Homer*). There is a divinity that shapes our ends, rough hew them how we will (*Shakespeare*).

Discipline : No pain, no palm no thorns ; no throne ; no gall, no glory ; no cross, no crown. (*Penn*).

Duty : Stern Daughter of the Voice of God ! (*Wordsworth*).

Education : "A little learning is a dangerous thing" (*Pope*). The things taught in the schools and colleges are not an education, but the means of education (*Emerson*).

Equality : All men are by nature equal made, all of the same earth by the same Creator, and however we deceive ourselves, as dear to God is the poor peasant as the mighty prince (*Plato*).

Evil : Evil often triumphs, but never conquers. (*The Holy Bible*). The evil that men do lives after them ; the good is oft interred with their bones (*Shakespeare*).

Fools : A fool always finds one still more foolish to admire him (*Boileau*). Young men think old men are fools ; but old men know young men are the fools (*Chapman*). For fools rush in where angels fear to tread (*Pope*).

Freedom : This is what I call the American idea of freedom—a government of all the people, by all the people, for all the people : of course, a government on the principles of eternal justice—the unchanging law of God (*Theodore Parker*).

Friendship : There are three faithful friends : an old wife, an old dog, and ready money (*Franklin*). Most friendship is feigning, most love mere folly (*Shakespeare*).

Gentleman : A gentleman is a man who can disagree without being disagreeable (*Anonymous*).

Government : He that would govern others, first should be the master of himself, richly endowed with depth of understanding and height of knowledge (*Massinger*). No government is respectable which is not just. Without unspotted purity of public faith, without sacred public principle, fidelity, and honour, no mere forms of government, no machinery of laws can give dignity to political society (*Daniel Webster*).

Grief : There is no grief which time does not lessen and soften (*Cicero*). What's gone and what's past help, should be past grief (*Shakespeare*).

Happiness : Happiness lies, first of all, in health (*Curtis*). Virtue alone is happiness below (*Pope*).

Health : The ingredients of health and long life are great temperance, open air, easy labour, little care (*Sidney*).

Heroes : No man is a hero to his own wife ; no woman is a wife to her own hero (*Anonymous*). Hero-worship is strongest where there is least regard for human freedom (*Spencer*).

Home : Mid pleasures and palaces though we may roam,

Be it ever so humble, there's no place like home (*Payne*).

Honesty : An honest man is the noblest work of God (*Pope*). Ay, sir : to be honest, as this world goes, is to be one man pick'd out of two thousand (*Shakespeare*).

Honour : Act well your part, there all the honour lies

(*Pope*). When faith is lost, when honour dies, the man is dead! (*Whittier*).

Humility: Whosoever shall smite thee on thy right cheek, turn to him the other also (*Jesus Christ*). I believe the first test of a truly great man is his humility (*Ruskin*).

Husband and Wife: A good husband should be deaf and a good wife blind (*French Proverb*) Men are April when they woo, December when they wed (*Shakespeare*).

Immortality: Life is the childhood of immortality (*Goethe*).

Impossibility: Few things are impossible to diligence and skill (*Dr. Johnson*).

Joy: The joyfulness of a man prolongeth his days (*The Holy Bible*).

Justice: Man is unjust, but God is just, and finally justice triumphs (*Longfellow*). Judge not that ye be not judged (*The Holy Bible*).

Kings: Kings will be tyrants from policy, when subjects are rebels from principle (*Burke*). There is no king who has not had a slave among his ancestors, and no slave who has not had a king among his (*Keller*).

Knowledge: To be conscious that you are ignorant is a great step to knowledge (*Disraeli*). Knowledge comes but wisdom lingers (*Tennyson*).

Learning: A little learning is a dangerous thing (*Pope*). All wish to be learned, but no one is willing to pay the price (*Jiwenel*). Men learn while they teach (*Seneca*).

Liberty: A day, an hour, of virtuous liberty is worth a whole eternity in bondage (*Addison*). Eternal vigilance is the price of liberty (*J. P. Curran*).

Life: Life is not victory but battle (*Anonymous*). You cannot be everything, if you want to be anything (*Anonymous*). 'Tis not life that matters but the courage that you bring to it (*Anonymous*). It is not what you have to bear, but how you bear it, that matters (*Anonymous*). It is not the future that is to make us but we who are to make the future (*Anonymous*).

Literature: The triumphs of the warrior are bounded by the narrow theatre of his own age; but those of a Scott or a Shakespeare will be renewed with greater and greater lustre in ages yet unborn, when the victorious chieftain shall be forgotten, or shall live only in the song of the minstrel and the page of the chronicler (*Prescott*).

Love: The sweetest joy, the wildest woe is love (*Baily*). Man begins by loving love and ends by loving a woman. Woman begins by loving a man and ends by loving love (*Gournont*).

Loyalty: To God, thy country, and thy friend be true (*Vaughan*).

Marriage : Marriage is a romance in which the hero dies in the first chapter (*Anonymous*). To marry once is a duty, twice a folly, thrice a madness (*Dutch proverb*). Hail, wedded love! mysterious law, true source of human offspring (*Milton*).

Mercy : Blessed are the merciful : for they shall obtain mercy (*The Holy Bible*).

Money : The love of money is the root of evil (*The Holy Bible*). Make all you can, save all you can, give all you can (*Wesley*). When it is a question of money, everybody is of the same religion (*Voltaire*).

Music : Music is the universal language of mankind (*Longfellow*).

What's in a name? that which we call a rose.
By any other name would smell as sweet (*Shakespeare*).

Nature : Nature is a volume of which God is the author (*Harvey*).

Obedience : Obedience alone gives the right to command (*Emerson*). Let thy child's first lesson be obedience, and the second will be what thou will (*Franklin*). Women are prefectly well aware that the more they seem to obey the more they rule (*Michelet*).

Patriotism : To make us love our country, our country ought to be lovely (*Burke*). Patriotism is the last refuge of a scoundrel (*Johnson*).

Peace : Peace hath her victories,
No less renown'd than war (*Milton*).

Poverty : Blessed be ye poor : for yours is the Kingdom of God (*The Holy Bible*). Poverty is no vice, but an inconvenience (*John Florio*).

Praise : Praise undeserved is scandal in disguise.

Pride : Pride ruined the angels (*Emerson*).

Religion : We have just enough religion to make us hate, but not enough to make us love one another (*Swift*). Men will wrangle for religion ; write for it, fight for it ; die for it ; anything but—live it (*Colton*).

Resolution : Attempt the end, and never stand to doubt (*Herrick*).

Science : Science is simply common sense at its best—that is, rigidly accurate in observation, and merciless to fallacy in logic (*Huxley*). Science is a systematic classification of experience (*Lewis*).

Sin : He that falls into sin is a man ; that grieves at it is a saint ; that boasteth of it, is a devil (*Fuller*). Few love to hear the sins they love to act (*Shakespeare*).

Sleep : Nature's soft nurse (*Shakespeare*). Sleep is the best cure for waking troubles (*Cervantes*).

Society : To get into the best society nowadays, one has either to feed people, amuse people, or shock people (*Wilde*).

Success : I have always observed that to succeed in the world one should appear like a fool but be wise (*Montesquieu*). All you need in life is ignorance and confidence, and then success is sure (*Clemens*).

Sympathy : Like will to like, each creature loves his kind (*Herrick*). And whoever walks a furlong without sympathy walks to his own funeral drest in his shroud (*Walt Whitman*).

Truth : O, while ye live, tell truth, and shame the devil (*Shakespeare*). Above all things, to thine ownself be true (*Shakespeare*)

Virtue : Virtue alone is happiness below (*Pope*). The only reward of virtue is virtue (*Emerson*).

War : They wrote in the old days that it is sweet and fitting to die for one's country. But in the modern war, there is nothing sweet nor fitting in your dying. You will die like a dog for no good reason (*Hemingway*). War, he sang, is toil and trouble Honour but an empty bubble (*Dryden*). War is as much a punishment to the punisher as to the sufferer (*Jefferson*).

Wealth : Surplus wealth is a sacred trust which its possessor is bound to administer in his lifetime for the good of the community (*Andrew Carnegie*). Riches either serve or govern the possessor (*Horace*). No good man ever became suddenly rich (*Syrus*).

Women : A virtuous woman is a crown to her husband (*The Holy Bible*). It is a woman's business to get married as soon as possible, and a man's to keep unmarried as long as he can. (*Shaw*). An undutiful daughter will prove an unmanageable wife (*Franklin*). A woman is like your shadow ; follow her, she flies ; fly from her, she follows (*Chamfort*). But what is woman? Only one of nature's agreeable blunders (*Cowley*).

EXERCISES

(*For* **Board** *Students*)

Explain the following proverbs and use them in sentences of your own :

1. Desperate diseases require desperate remedies.
2. When you are in Rome, do as Romans do.
3. Slow and steady wins the race.
4. To rob Peter to pay Paul.
5. It is never too late to mend.

(*For* **University** *Students*)

Complete the following proverbial sayings and express their meaning in your own words as briefly as possible :

1. A rolling stone . ...
2. Necessity is the..................
3. Out of sight......... ....
4. To strain at a gnat.....................
5. A wolf in...................................

(Panjab : B.A. & B. Sc.)

CHAPTER XXXV

TEST YOUR PROGRESS

In this chapter we give a few simple questions to which you should now be able to give correct answers. You will do well to test your progress before proceeding to the next part of this book.

1. Write short sentences in which the following words are used as different parts of speech :

Back, Bark, Box, Fit, Tender, Wrong, Light, Sleep, Cries, Side.

2. Complete the following sentences :—

(*i*) He was warned but..

(*ii*) Whenever he came home he found..................................

(*iii*) Try as hard as ever and..

(*iv*) It is an ill wind that...

(*v*) As you sow so...

3. Write sentences, using one of the following words in each :

Aftermath, Co-operation, Antidote, Understudy, Underdog.

4. Express the following ideas by changing some parts of speech into others.

(*i*) Humble origin is no bar to the attainment of greatness, while pride of birth is a frequent cause of humiliation.

(*ii*) The king favouring the extreme party, in spite of their declaration against the war, gave deep offence to his well wishers.

(*iii*) The result would be a hopeless confusion of thought by such a statement of the theory of evolution without any modification.

5. Complete the following sentences :—

(*i*) Although in those days..

(*ii*) Whether under these conditions...................................

(*iii*) Should you arrive earlier...

(*iv*) However important it is...

(*v*) As a rule, when..

(*vi*) If you were to...

6. What are the different meanings of 'Would' in the following sentences ?

(*a*) You said it would rain.

(*b*) Would that I were dead.

(*c*) He would talk the whole day when in familiar circles.

(*d*) I wished him to go, but he would not.

7. Make sentences showing the meaning of the following words :

Strength ; *Power* ; *Energy* ; *Vigour* ; *Force* ; *Vitality*.

8. In the following sentences fill in the blanks to complete the sense :

(*i*) He—home to—his food.

(*ii*) I hit him——stone——head.

(*iii*) —you eat too much you are—to be ill.

(*iv*) The doctor—him to be suffering—cholera.

(*v*) He is—popular—his class fellows.

9. Replace the blanks in the following passage with the appropriate adjectives.

The—mountains with the—torrent and the—cascades formed a —scene of—beauty. Presently a—mist began to cover the—peaks, and gradually it seemed to climb down the—side until—mountain was blotted out ; as the mist thinned in places we were able to catch glimpses of what was behind this—veil. What was to me an—experience, seemed to make no impression on my—guide. To him there was nothing—in—this change.

10. Say in what sense *Shall* and *Will* are used in these sentences.

(*i*) I will go to the concert to-night.

(*ii*) I shall go home after school.

(*iii*) You shall do your homework.

(*iv*) You will be late.

(*v*) He shall stop that noise.

(*vi*) He will be lame for life.

11. Supply the necessary prepositions :

(*i*) He was quite indifferent—its beauty.

(*ii*) They were unconscious—the danger.

(*iii*) The manager was averse—tampering—the machinery.

(*iv*) They can be ready—a moment's notice.

(*v*) He was endowed—great ability.

12. Fill in all blanks in the following passage.

As the youth—advanced into the area, he turned as the—was, to —to the king ; but he did not think at—of that royal— ; his—were —upon the princess who—to the right of her—. When her—turned and—at her, and his—met hers as she sat there—and—than any one in the vast—of anxious faces about her, he saw that she knew —which door—the tiger, and—which stood the lady. He had—her to—it.

13. Each of the following adjectives goes with one of the nouns below. Combine them suitably and write out the phrases, *e.g.*, *Ivory tusks.*

Adjectives : *Powerful, Green, Hearty, Peaceful, Ivory.*

Nouns : *Laugh, Scene, Tusks, Engine, Cabbages.*

14. Rewrite the following sentences, choosing from the words in brackets, the one which makes sense.

(*i*) My aunt came to look (*after, to*) me.

(*ii*) We went down to the beach to look (*after, to, for*) shells.

(*iii*) I must think (*of, over*) this matter before I decide.

(*iv*) Let us not think (*of, over*) our sorrows.

(*v*) This is how you must set (*about, upon*) it.

(*vi*) While he was returning home robbers set (*about, upon*) him.

15. (*a*) Arrange in groups of two, the words in the following list which are similar in meaning, *e.g.*, *vacant and empty.*

Coarse, mend, stop, climb, repair, fresh, cease, quiet, centre, ascend, new, rough, calm, middle.

(*b* Arrange in groups of two, the words which are opposite in meaning, *e.g.*, *true and false.*

Rich, sharp, fine, long, busy, blunt, coarse, easy, short, idle, poor, difficult.

16. Complete the following proverbs by inserting words in the blank spaces and then explain them briefly.

(*i*) A......stone......no moss.

(*ii*) It's never too late......

(*iii*) ......before you leap.

(*iv*) It takes......to make a quarrel.

(*v*) Out of sight......

(*vi*) When you are in Rome......

17. We often make comparisons by using the word 'like' or 'as' and a suitable phrase ; *e.g.*, The linen was as white as snow. Her eyes shone like stars. Complete the following sentences with as interesting comparisons as you can think of.

(*i*) Dressed in her new clothes, Mary was as proud as......

(*ii*) He drinks like a......

(*iii*) He smokes like a......

(*iv*) That book sold like......

(*v*) You are free as a......

(*vi*) They came down on the forces of the enemy like......

(*vii*) We crept downstairs as quietly......

(*viii*) He swims like......

(*ix*) The old man is deaf as a......

(*x*) He ran like......

(*xi*) As poor as......

(*xii*) He stood still like......

18. Complete the following sentences by selecting in each case one of the words in the brackets.

(*i*) (*Lain. Laid*). The grass was crushed where the cows had ......on it.

(*ii*) (*Began. Begun*) The work was......after Dr. Khan Sahib came into power.

(*iii*) (*Born, Borne*). The soldier has......his sufferings with great fortitude.

(*iv*) (*Goal, Gaol*). The prisoner was kept in......for a week.

(*v*) (*Boys. buoys*). The ship was guided to the harbour by a line of......

(*vi*) (*Proceeding, Preceding*). The......day was mild and dry.

(*vii*) (*Plain, plane*). Watched the horseman galloping over the......

(*viii*) (*Principal, Principle*). In doing analysis you should first find the......clause

19. Complete each of the following words by adding the suffix...*ary*, or...*ery*, or...*ory*.

Rook..., Gran..., Fact..., Libr..., Dormit..., Gloss..., Trick....

20. Find out one word for the following expressions :

(*i*) The quality of being exempt from error.

(*ii*) A rigid disciplinarian.

(*iii*) Love of one's native land.

(*iv*) Belonging to the Middle Ages.

(*v*) Government by the wealthy.

(*vi*) Government by the people.

21. Select the correct form of verb or pronoun :

(*i*) Neither women nor children (*were, was*) admitted.

(*ii*) Only one of the men who (*were, was*) arrested, (is, are) guilty.

(*iii*) Every one that (*See, sees*) him (*love, loves*) him.

(*iv*) Each of your students (*pays, pay*) (*his, their*) tuition fee at the beginning of the month.

(*v*) Day after day (*slip, slips*) past, and still he does not come.

(*vi*) Each member of the club (*have, has*) a vote.

(*vii*) None (survive, survives) to tell the story of that disaster.

(*viii*) Does she ask this of me who (*is, am*) (*his, her*) friend ?

(*ix*) Four-fifths of that money (*go, goes*) to charity.

(*x*) Ten minutes (*was, were*) spent in waiting for the train.

22. Fill in the blank spaces in the following sentences with suitable verb form :—

(*a*) If I......you, I......certainly go home at once.

(*b*) He asked whether he......go or stay.

(*c*) They feared the man......die before the doctor...arrive.

(*d*) I wish he......hurry.

(*e*) If......here earlier, this......not have happened.

(*f*) I.........be shirking a duty if I......to refuse to acccompany you.

23. (*a*) Read the following :

"Is there any letter for me this morning ?"
"No, none yet ; the postman has not come."
"When does he generally come ?"
"About eight o'clock generally ; but this morning he is late."

Put the above into indirect speech as a conversation between John and Henry, using the past tense. Begin with these words : John asked Henry whether...

(*b*) Read the following :

John remarked that there was some one at the door. He though that it might be the postman, but Henry said that it could not have been he, as he had just seen him go past without calling. Then John asked when the next delivery would be, and Henry told him that there would be another in two hours' time.

Put this passage into direct discourse.

24. Copy the following, retaining the articles or omitting them as idiom demands :

(*a*) It is a cold day.
It is a cold weather.
It is a cold season.

(*b*) He makes a joke of it.
He makes a fun of it.
He makes a light of it.

(*c*) He is in the water.
He is in the deep water.
He is a fish out of the water.

25. In the following sentences correct the pronouns wherever necessary.

(*i*) Is this the man who you saw ?

(*ii*) She gave it either to you or I.

(*iii*) If it was not her, it must have been him.

(*iv*) This quarrel is between we visitors, and you family members.

26. Insert suitable descriptive words in the places indicated by the dashes in the following sentences :

(*i*) Those—flowers were gathered by Tom's—sister.

(ii) Two sacks of—flowers were brought to the—mill.

(iii) The—man seemed to be utterly exhausted.

(iv) Several—horses were sold yesterday.

27. Justify or correct the use of *Shall* and *Will* in the following :

(i) When will we have the pleasure of seeing you ?

(ii) Shall I die if I drink this ?

(iii) I will be much obliged, if you will drink this.

(iv) We will see you to-morrow, I hope.

(v) The lecture shall end with a quotation from Burke.

(vi) There shall be a holiday tomorrow.

28. Rewrite the following sentences as directed :

(i) The landlord has served on me a notice to vacate this flat. (Use passive voice).

(ii) There was hardly a prince who did not fall in love with her. (Remove *hardly* witout changing the sense).

(iii) She is by far the prettiest girl in the whole of the town. (Use comparative deg:ee of adjective without changing sense).

(iv) He asked me my name and address. (Use passive voice).

(v) Always follow *your leader*. (Change the underlined phrase into clause).

29. Improve the order of words in the following sentences :

(i) He refused to relieve the beggar with a frown on his face.

(ii) The man waited before saying a word till every one was silent.

(iii) Wanted, a coachman to drive a pair of horses of a religious turn of mind.

(iv) He came to a in the circumstances justifiable decision.

(v) I caught a trout the other day of three pounds weight.

(vi) The purport can be given of his speech in a few words.

(vii) The children saw that it was a fine morning to their delight.

(viii) Everything nearly makes him ill that he eats.

30. Substitute a single word for the expressions italicized in the following sentences.

(i) That person is *able to use either hand with ease.*

(ii) That herb is *fit to be eaten.*

(iii) He is *unable to pay his debt.*

(iv) His motive *was merely to get money.*

(v) Both fell *at the same moment.*

(vi) Jones has *a position in which he is very well paid for doing nothing.*

(vii) A man *that cannot be tired out.*

(*viii*) A disaster *that cannot be made* good.

(*ix*) Something *that is everywhere*.

(*x*) Something *which is difficult to believe*.

(*xi*) A style *which cannot be imitated*.

(*xii*) A man *who thinks only of himself*.

(*xiii*) A person *who is anxious to destroy all government*.

(*xiv*) A *person filled with mistaken enthusiasm in religion*.

(*xv*) *The muderer of a father*.

(*xvi*) A *sin, which is pardonable*.

(*xvii*) A voice *that can hardly be heard*.

(*xviii*) *A man who always thinks he is ill*.

(*xix*) The *art practised by statesmen and ambassadors*.

(*xx*) One who *disbelieves in the existence of God*.

CHECK UP YOUR ANSWERS

Here are the answers. Compare these with yours and make an honest attempt to award marks for your work. Remember that you will need a thorough revision of what you nave so far read, if you secure less than ninety per cent marks in this test.

1. **Back** : (*i*) The last straw breaks the camel's *back* (*Noun*). (*ii*) He went *back* disappointed (*Verb*). (*iii*) I sent for a *back* number of 'Dawn' (*Adjective*). (*iv*) He will get a job only if his uncle *backs* him up (*Verb*).

Bark : (*i*) His *bark* is worse than his bite (*Noun*). (*ii*) His dog always barks at me (*Verb*).

Box : (*i*) A thief stole my *box* at night (*Noun*). (*ii*) I felt like *boxing* the ears of that naughty boy (*Verb*).

Fit : (*i*) He is not *fit* for a doctor (*Adjective*). (*ii*) That coat does not *fit* him (*Verb*). (*iii*) Last night, she had a *fit* of colic (*Noun*).

Tender : (*i*) A boy of his *tender* age cannot earn a living. (*Adjective*). (*ii*) The contractor sent in a *tender* to the Chief Engineer. (*Noun*). (*iii*) He had to *tender* an unqualified apology to his manager (*Verb*).

Wrong : (*i*) He is on the *wrong* side of forty (*Adjective*). (*ii*) Boys at his age generally go *wrong* (*Adverb*). (*iii*) Two *wrongs* do not make a right (*Noun*).

Light: (*i*) The doctor advised him to take *light* diet (*Adjective*). (*ii*) *Light* come, light go (*Adverb*). (*iii*) Lead kindly light (*Noun*).

Sleep : (*i*) I had a fitful *sleep* last night (*Noun*). (*ii*) *Sleep* my son, the sleep of the just. (*iii*) This hotel can *sleep* five hundred (*Ve·b*).

Cries : (*i*) Generally he *cries* on account of pain (*Verb*). (*ii*) A

farmer heard the *cries* of the drowning child and ran to its rescue (*Noun*).

Side : (*i*) I have pain in my *side* (*Noun*). (*ii*) He *sided* with me in that quarrel (*Verb*). (*iii*) This question of closing the college earlier might raise some *side* issues (*Adjective*).

2. (*i*) He was warned but he continued to be careless. (*ii*) Try as hard as ever and you will surely succeed. (*iii*) It is an ill wind that blows nobody good. (*iv*) Whenever he came home, he found his door bolted. (*v*) As you sow, so shall you reap.

3. (*i*) To-day we attended a lecture on the aftermath of World War II. (*ii*) It is only by the co-operation of the staff that a Principal can run a college smoothly. (*iii*) The doctor tried to dissipate the effect of poison by giving the patient an antidote. (*iv*) He is an *understudy* in the Shahnoor Studios. (*v*) We should sympathise with the underdog.

4. (*i*) People can be great, in spite of their humble origin ; but they are frequently humiliated, if they are proud of their high birth. (*ii*) The king deeply offended his well-wishers by favouring the extreme party, in spite of the fact that they declared themselves against the war. (*iii*) If the theory of evolution is thus stated without any modification, it will result in a hopeless confusion of thought.

5. (*i*) Although in those days he was poor he was not stingy. (*ii*) Whether under these conditions you are at all prepared to work cannot be said. (*iii*) However important it is to guard against cold in such weather, he will not listen to your advice. (*iv*) As a rule, when I am going on a journey I keep two or three spare suits with me. (*v*) If you were to leave Lyallpur in a day or so, I might keep you company.

6. (*a*) In this sentence 'would' indicates simple futurity. (*b*) Would here means "I wish." (*c*) Would here means "is in the habit of." (*d*) But he would not means, "He did not go in spite of my wishes to the contrary."

7. (*i*) My *strength* is the strength of ten because my heart is pure. (*ii*) *Power* often demoralises a man. (*iii*) Even in old age, he has a lot of *energy* in him. (*iv*) You cannot deny that his youthful *vigour* is unimpaired. (*v*) The Police unit had to use *force* in order to disperse the mob. (*vi*) Mischief in the young lads in an expression of overflowing *vitality*.

8. (*i*) He *came* home *to take* his food. (*ii*) I hit him *with a* stone *on his head*. (*iii*) *If* you eat too much you are *quite sure* to be ill. (*iv*) The doctor *found* him to be suffering *from* cholera. (*v*) He is *very* popular *with* his class-fellows.

9. The *snowy* mountains with the rapid torrent and the wavy cascades formed a *rare* scene of *exquisite* beauty. Presently a *thick* mist began to cover the high peaks and gradually it seemed to climb down the low sides until the *vast mountain* was blotted out ; as the mist thinned in places, we were able to catch glimpses of what was

behind this *thick* veil. What was to me an enchanting experience seemed to make no impression on my *indifferent* guide. To him there was nothing *striking* in this *pleasant* change.

10. (*i*) *Will* shows determination here. (*ii*) *Shall* stands for simple future. (*iii*) *Shall* siginfies compulsion. (*iv*) *Will* stands for simple future. (*v*) *Shall* denotes a command. (*vi*) *Will* indicates simple future.

11. (*i*) He was quite indifferent *to* its beauty (*ii*) They were unconscious *of* the danger. (*iii*) The manager was averse *to* tampering *with* the machinery. (*iv*) They can be ready *at* a moment's notice. (*v*) He was endowed *with* great ability.

12. As the youth *gradually* advanced into the arena, he turned as the *custom* was, to *bow* to the king ; but he did not think at *all* of that royal *personage* ; his *eyes* were *constantly* upon the princess who *sat* to the right of her *father*. When her *lover* turned and *looked* at her, and his *eyes* met hers, as she sat there *paler* and *whiter* than any one in the vast *ocean* of anxious faces, about her, he saw that she knew *in* which door *crouched* the tiger, and *behind* which stood the lady. He had *expected* her to *know* it.

13. (*i*) Powerful engine. (*ii*) Green cabbages. (*iii*) Hearty laugh. (*iv*) Peaceful scene. (*v*) Ivory tusks.

14. (*i*) My aunt came to look *after* me. (*ii*) We went down to the beach to look *for* shells. (*iii*) I must think *over* this matter before I decide. (*iv*) Let us not think *of* our sorrows. (*v*) This is how you must set *about* it. (*vi*) While he was returning home, robbers set *upon* him.

15. (*a*) Coarse, rough ; mend, repair ; stop cease ; climb, ascend ; fresh, new ; quiet, calm ; middle, centre.

(*b*) Rich, poor ; sharp, blunt ; fine, coarse ; busy, idle ; easy, difficult ; short, long ; true, false.

16. (*i*) A rolling stone gathers no moss. (*ii*) It's never too late to mend. (*iii*) Look before you leap. (*iv*) It takes two to make a quarrel. (*v*) Out of sight out of mind. (*vi*) When you are in Rome, do as the Romans do.

17. (*i*) Dressed in her new clothes, May was as proud as a peacock. (*ii*) He drinks like a fish. (*iii*) He smokes like a chimney. (*iv*) That book sold like hot cakes. (*v*) You are as free as a fawn in the forest. (*vi*) They came down on the forces of the enemy, like a wolf on a fold of sheep. (*vii*) We crept downstairs as quietly as thieves. (*viii*) He swims like a duck. (*ix*) The old man is deaf as a post. (*x*) He ran like a deer. (*xi*) As poor as a church mouse. (*xii*) He stood like a pillar.

18. (*i*) The grass was crushed where the cows had lain on it. (*ii*) The work was begun after Dr. Khan Sahib came into power. (*iii*) The soldier has borne his suffering with great fortitude. (*iv*)

The prisoner was kept in gaol for a week. (*v*) The ship was guided to the harbour by a line of buoys. (*vi*) The preceding day was mild and dry. (*vii*) I watched the horseman galloping over the plain. (*viii*) In doing analysis you should first find the principal clause.

19. Rookery, Granary, Factory, Library, Dormitory, Glossary, Trickery.

20. (*i*) Infallibility. (*ii*) Martinet. (*iii*) Patriotism. (*iv*) Mediaeval. (*v*) Aristocracy. (*vi*) Democracy.

21. (*i*) Neither women nor children were admitted. (*ii*) Only one of the men who were arrested is guilty. (*iii*) Every one that sees him loves him. (*iv*) Each of your students pays his tuition fee at the beginning of the month. (*v*) Day after day slips past, and still he does not come. (*vi*) Each member of the club has a vote. (*vii*) None survives to tell the story of that disaster. (*viii*) Does she ask this of me who am her friend? (*ix*) Four-fifths of that money goes to charity. (*x*) Ten minutes were spent in waiting for the train.

22. (*a*) If I were you, I would certainly go home at once. (*b*) He asked whether he should go or stay. (*c*) They feared the man would die before the doctor could arrive. (*d*) I wish he could hurry. (*e*) If I were here earlier, this would not have happened. (*f*) I would be shirking my duty if I were to refuse to accompany you.

23. (*a*) John asked Henry whether there was any letter for him that morning. Henry replied that there was none for him till then, for the postman had not come. John further asked Henry about the time when the postman generally came. Henry replied that he generally came at about eight o'clock but that morning he was late.

(*b*) "There is someone at the door," said John to Henry, "and I think it is the postman."

"It cannot have been he," replied Henry, "I have just seen him go past without calling."

"When will be the next delivery?" John inquired.

"In another two hours," said Henry.

24. (*a*) It is a cold day. It is cold weather. It is the cold season.

(*b*) He makes a joke of it. He makes fun of it. He makes light of it.

(*c*) He is in the water. He is in deep water. He is a fish out of water.

27. (*i*) When shall we have the pleasure of seeing you? (First person pronouns take 'shall' after them where the writer wants to indicate simple future tense.) (*ii*) Shall I die if I drink this? (The rule given above justifies it.) (*iii*) I *shall* be much obliged, if you drink this. (Two future tenses should not be used in the same sentence). (*iv*) We *shall* see you to-morrow, I hope. (This is again simple future). (*v*) The lecture will end with a quotation from

Burke. (In case of simple future, third person is followed by *will*). (*vi*) There *shall* be a holiday to-morrow. (If it is a command from a principal to students it is correct). *Otherwise* it should be. There will be a holiday to-morrow.

28. (*i*) I have been served with a notice by my landlord to vacate this flat. (*ii*) Almost all the princes fell in love with her. (*iii*) She is far prettier than any other girl in the town. (*iv*) I was asked by him to tell my name and address. (*v*) Always follow the person who is your leader.

29. (*i*) Before saying a word, the man waited till every one was silent. (*ii*) Wanted a coachman, of a religious turn of mind, to drive a pair of horses. (*iii*) He came to a justifiable decision in the circumstances. (*iv*) I caught a trout of three pounds weight the other day. (*v*) The purport of his speech can be given in a few words. (*vi*) The children saw, to their delight, that it was a fine morning. (*vii*) Nearly everything, that he eats, makes him ill.

30. (*i*) Ambidexterous. (*ii*) Eatable. (*iii*) Insolvent. (*iv*) Mercenary. (*v*) Simultaneously. (*vi*) Sinecure. (*vii*) Indefatigable. (*viii*) Irreparable. (*ix*) Omnipresent. (*x*) Incredible. (*xi*) Inimitable. (*xii*) Egoist. (*xiii*) Anarchist. (*xiv*) Fanatic. (*xv*) Parricide. (*xvi*) Venial. (*xvii*) Inaudible. (*xviii*) Valetudinarian. (*xix*) Diplomacy (*xx*) Atheist.

PART V

THE UNSEEN PASSAGE

CHAPTER XXXVI

AN APPROACH TO THE APPRECIATION OF LITERATURE

1. **Paper 'B.'** The questions set in the English Paper 'B.' for the Higher Secondary as well as the degree examination, include a test of the candidate's ability to understand English. This test is carried through in several ways. They are given various *unseen* passages and are called upon to paraphrase, explain, condense or expand them. This part of the book which aims at enabling the students to answer such questions, deals with all these aspects. It contains chapters on paraphrasing, explanation, expansion and precis writing. The opening chapter of the part is devoted to the appreciation of literature. It will equip the student with the basic knowledge which is needed for a proper understanding of all such passages.

2. **English Literature**. We will begin with a short survey of the progress of English Literature through the last fourteen centuries. English is divided into Old, Middle and Modern. The period of Old English lasted from the Anglo-Saxon invasions of Britain in the fifth century A.D. to the Norman Conquest in 1066 A.D. The literature of this period is called Old English or Anglo-Saxon literature. From the Norman Conquest to the beginning of the Renaissance is the period of Middle English. The rest is known as the Modern English period.

3. **Anglo-Saxon Literature**. Anglo-Saxon literature marks the beginning of English literature. Though the period is devoid of any spectacular production of any literary document, yet from the historical point of view, it is the most important period. There are only four manuscripts left, which are rightly attributed to the Anglo-Saxon period, *i.e.* Beowulf, Judith, the biblical paraphrases attributed to Caedmon, and some poems in Vercelli Book. Anglo-Saxon verse is rich in vocabulary of compound phrases and metaphor. The language is best suited to narrative poetry rather than lyric poetry. The verse has vigour and strength, but at times corrupted by awkwardness and periphrasis.

4. **The Age of Chaucer** *(1340—1400)*. Chaucer is rightly called 'the Father of English poetry." With him began the rejuvenation of the English language. Chaucer felt the influence of the Italian renaissance which was slowly and steadily permeating Europe.

In England Chaucer was the first poet, who vigorously felt the influence of the movement and expressed it in his poems. His poetry is realistic, speaks of contemporary life, which was buoyant, nationalistic and vigorous.

Chaucer is the unrivalled story-teller in verse. No other poet rivals him in this respect. While paying great tribute to his intellect and genius, we should not overlook the fact that Chaucer was the first poet who handled the English language so carefully and elaborately that in no time the other languages, such as Latin and French, were completely eclipsed by the English language. This was the greatest achievement of Chaucer.

Chaucer's writings fall into three periods :

(*a*) In this period French influence was the greatest and he used the octosyllabic couplet. He wrote *The Book of the Duchess* and *Ramount of the Rose*.

(*b*) In the second period he was influenced by Dante and Boccaccio. He wrote *The House of Fame*, *Troylus and Cryseyde*.

(*c*) Then he wrote *The Canterbury Tales*, the greatest of his creation.

5. **The Elizabethan Age** (*1557—1603*) : The Elizabethan Age is characterised by national awakening of the country, enhanced by a successful sea-war against Spain, by the expansion of the new world and new regions, by the expansion of trade and commerce and colonization, all of which are represented in contemporary literature.

The influence of the Renaissance was intensely felt, and a new wave for learning spread through the length and breadth of the country. The vocabulary of the English language expanded, due to the incorporation of Latin, Greek, Italian and French words. The blank verse was introduced. Prose became more clear and lucid as is evident from the writings of Bacon and Hooker.

In poetry, Spenser's *The Faerie Queene* is a landmark in the annals of English literature. But who would forget the Elizabethan dramatists ? It was an age of drama, real acted drama.

Shakespeare, Marlowe, Ben Jonson, Webster, Dekker, Massinger and Beaumont and Fletcher enriched the Elizabethan literature by writing the finest dramas ever written.

6. **The Jacobean Age** (*1600—1625*) : This is a transitional period. The monarch becomes corrupt and the court life becomes vulgar and obscene. Donne, Herrick, Vaughan, Herbert and Crashaw represent the age. The poetry is no longer lyrical, it is learned, knotted and scholarly.

7. **The Puritan Revolution** (*1625—1650*). This is an era of armed revolution. There is civil war in the country, a king beheaded, and dictatorship proclaimed. Milton is revolutionary in every respect, in thought, as well as in style. He is the symbol of

revolution. In his hands blank verse becomes perfect, the rhythm more strict, and learned and classical vocabulary is encouraged.

Milton wrote *Paradise Lost*, one of the greatest epic poems in English. His other chief works are: *Paradise Regained* and *Samson Agonistes*.

8. **The Restoration** (*1650—1688*). After the Puritan revolution, comest the Restoration period. The Court life returns, life becomes more gay and happy. The monarch is not absolute, but subject to reason. The poetry is no longer scholarly or intellectual, but social and conversational. Simple metres and courtly elegance reappear in poetry.

(*a*) Dryden, poet, critic and satirist comes on the stage. He began to write satirical and didactic poems. *Absalom and Achitophel*, *The Medal*, *Macflecknoe*, *The Hind and the Panther*. As a critic he wrote *Essay of Dramatic Poetry*.

(*b*) Suckling and Lovelace, both belong to this period. Suckling's chief works are *Fragmenta Aurea* and *Sessions of the Poets*. Lovelace wrote *Lucasta*, odes, sonnets, songs which include the beautiful lyric *On Going to the Wars*.

9. **The Eighteenth Century** (*1688—1750*). It is an era of mercantilism and maffufacture. Capitalism is slowly revolutionising itself. The sharp distinction between the classes has not emerged yet, as would be visible in the next century, life is slowly moving onward, but there is no hurry. The poet is yet a court poet, he is dependant on patronage, has to speak the language of the people upon whom he is dependent—the ruling class. So in this era poetry observes all the conventionalities of the age, good taste and upper class tone.

Poetry becomes classical, and greatest importance is attached to style, measure and polish. Vocabulary is formal, elegant and fashionable.

Alexander Pope is the true representative of this era. He is not only a great poet, but a great critic and eminent satirist.

Some of his chief works are *The Rape of the Lock* and translations of Homer's *Ilaid* and *Odyssey*.

William Blake and Robert Burns strike a new note in English poetry. The former is a mystic and lover of children. His famous poems are *Songs of Innocence*, *Songs of Experience* and *To the Nurses*. The latter is a great lyricist, and representative of peasant life. His famous poems are *Mary in Heaven*, *The Jolly Beggars*, *The Cotter's Saturday Night*, and *Tam O'Shanter*.

6. **The Romantic Revival** (*1778—1832*). With the publication of *The Lyrical Ballads* in the year 1798, a new epoch begins in English literature. It is an epoch of revolutions against all traditions. The rule of the Popes had benumbed the intellects of the people, and checked the growth of imagination.

But now a new wave swept through all Europe. The mind of the poet yearns for a new, fuller life, having no ties or bindings.

The imagination grows fuller, the passions run high and man is not calm, calculated and reasoned as in the eighteenth century, but highly imaginative, a lover of nature, brimmed up with emotion, and gives full expression to his passionate thoughts.

Byron, Shelley, Keats, Wordsworth, Coleridge, all of them gave expression to their thought in their own way.

Byron, an aristocratic revolutionary, a mocker of his own age, and thoroughly perverted man writes some of the best poems in English literature. *Don Juan*, and *Childe Harold* are the notable poems. Shelley, the prophetic revolutionary, "beating his luminous wings in the void," as Matthew Arnold puts it, the poet of clouds, rainbow, dew, west wind, is the greatest singer in English literature. He is a revolutionary poet, who fights for humanity. But above all he is the greatest lyricist among all English poets. Some of his famous poems are *The Revolt of Islam*, *Prometheus Unbound*, *Ode to the West Wind*, *Skylark*, *Adonis*, and *Hymn to Intellectual Beauty*.

Keats is a Greek and a medievalist. He is a poet of beauty and truth, an artist in the real sense. There is no revolutionary tendencies, or prophetic idealism as we find in Shelley. He craves for the life of sensation. His best poems are: *Endymion*, *On a Grecian Urn*, *To a Nightingle*, *To Autumn* and *To Pcyche*.

Wordsworth is a philosopher and lover of Nature. He is a teacher and a great spiritualist. He thinks that only one spirit pervades through man and Nature. His verse is simple in diction, devoid of any artificial rules and a complete reversal of the Classical Age.

Some of his best poems are *Ode to Immortality*, *Tintern Abbey*, *Ode to Duty*, *The Solitary Reaper* and *The Prelude*.

Coleridge is a great super-naturalist, a fine musician in verse and highly imaginative. He wrote only a few poems, but they are some of the best ever written in English. His famous poems are *Kubla Khan*, *Christabel*, *The Rime of the Ancient Mariner*.

To sum up, this age of Romantic revival is lit up with the brightest stars of English poetry. This period stands unrivalled in English literature in the production of so many literary geniuses, and in splendour of literary achievement. Some names will suffice to impress the idea. In the field of poetry Byron, Shelley, Keats, Wordsworth, Coleridge, Scott, Landor, Campbell, Moore, Southey; in the realm of prose Scot, Austen, Hazlitt, De Quincey, Lamb, Wilson and Cobbett.

7. **The Victorian Age** (*1832—1892*). It was an era of progress and prosperity. There was contentment and self-satisfaction. The

prevalent philosophy was utilitarianism. The people aimed at material progress. They were optimist and complacent. But in the realm of literature there was great mental strife, and spiritually they were greatly agitated. By the publication of Darwin's theory of Evolution, people received a shock. Their mental horizon was completely changed. Old views were losing ground, and new ones were to be created or old ones were to be remoulded. Interest in the past ages was again revived. Tennyson, Arnold and Swinburne reincarnated classical myths, and Arnold completely identified himself with the Greeks and the art of Arnold subjectively grew to be Greek.

On the whole the literature of this era breathes a spirit of optimism by laying stress on the fixed codes of morality and conventions, sticking to old orthodox ideas and expressing a general satisfaction on the material progress of the Victorians.

(i) In the field of poetry, Tennyson and Browning are the leading figures. Tennyson wrote much. There was hardly any subject left, on which he did not write. He is an architect in words, a great technicist in verse. In his poems there is music, lot of imagery and sense or romance.

In depicting a mood, a story, an incident, an impression, he is simply superb.

Some of his notable poems are *The Lotos-Eaters*, *The Palace of Art*, *Ulysses*, *Idylls of the King*, *The Princess*, *In Memoriam*, and *Maud*.

Browning is an incorrigible optimist. He is dramatic in form, and supreme in writing dramatic monologues. But most of his poems are obscure and complicated. His *One Word More in Men and Women* is one of the greatest of all love poems.

His other notable works are *Paracelsus*, *Sordello*, *The Ring and the Book*, *Pippa Passes*, *The Statue and the Bust*.

Matthew Arnold is an eminent poet and critic. He is a classicist in spirit, and suffers from melancholia. He is a pessimist, lays stress on the choice of a respectable subject, on form, and carrying it to its logical end. He hates the open, much talked-of Romanticism.

His famous poems are *The Scholar Gipsy*, *Sohrab and Rustum*, and *Rugby Chapel*.

(iii) Novel had assumed gigantic proportions in the Victorian Age. The poetry of that age was not representative in character. It failed to catch the imagination of the common people. On the other hand life could be presented in a novel, with its multifarious colours, with great ease. So the novel began to displace poetry and achieved tremendous importance.

As a novelist, Dickens is the foremost figure in the Victorian era. He is a great character-painter, prolific and spontaneous as

Browning or Shakespeare. He is a master of the grotesque, a great humorist and creator of pathos. He is a social reformer too. Some of his best works are *David Copperfield*, *A Tale of Two Cities*, *Oilver Twist*, *Barnaby Rudge*, and *Pickwick Papers*.

Thackeray is a great cynic. He criticises society forcefully. In Thackeray, the critical faculty is much developed. His characters are not static, but they develop, and their personality is delineated as they move on. He is a stubborn realist and a great satirist. In *Vanity Fair* the hypocrisy and hollowness of the Victorian society is clearly brought out. His notable novels are *Vanity Fair* and *Henry Esmond*.

Other notable novelists are the Brontë Sisters, George Eliot, Charles Kingsley, George Meredith and Anthony Trollope.

Carlyle and Ruskin are among the outstanding personalities of the Victorian era. Carlyle's work is historical and biographical. He is one of the greatest of English historians.

Ruskin is the greatest art critic of England. His famous work is *Modern Painters* in which he enunciates the principles of painting with great insight and thoroughness. The style of Ruskin is rhetorical, not turgid, but passionate and illuminating.

8. Twentieth-Century Literature. Great changes have taken place in the present century. It has been an era of wars and revolutions, of conflicts and challenges, threats and counter-threats. The terrific rumpus of 1914 gave a rude shock to the existing system, and when the effects of the shock were being relaxed, Hitler plunged the whole world into another war, which proved more catastrophic than the previous one. As an author is the product of time, environment and breeding, so literature cannot be an isolated phenomenon : it must breathe the spirit of the times.

The literature of this period is permeated with conflicts and challenges. There is a revolt against conventional morality, against religion, against social codes and against authoritarianism. Literature of this period definitely brings out the existing evils in society and gives suggestions to improve it. Literature of this period engulfs the whole compass of human activities, whether social or political, economic or scientific. In this era, poetry has begun to decline, and the technique of the novel has become perfect. There is a revival of drama, and distinct emergence of two literary forms of literature: (*i*) The Short Story ; (*ii*) The One-Act-Play. These are becoming more and more popular with the public.

(*i*) The poets of this period are not as imaginative as of the Romantic Revival ; there are not great artists like Wordsworth. They do not deal with current life. They live like children, far removed from the cares and worries of the world. They have no philosophy, no great ideal to place before the public, they simply retire to the country and spend their life in appreciating the beauties of unspoiled Nature. To this category belong Walter

De la Mare, W.B. Yeats, W. H. Davies, A. E. Housman, Abercombie and John Masefield.

Robert Brooke, Donald Hunkey, and Ralph Hodgson glorify war, and applaud the life of a soldier.

Lewis, Auden and Spender express a clear revolt against the capitalist system. They belog to the "People's Front." They mostly write in free verse. For them, the question of form takes secondary importance and their poetry breathes the revolutionary spirit of the era.

(*ii*) Novel being the chief vehicle for the expression of contemporary life has greatly improved in technique, matter and style. Different types of novels have emerged during the year. There is the (*a*) biographical novel, (*b*) politico-social novel, (*c*) novel of the generation, (*d*) psychological novel, (*e*) regional novel. The growth of the psychological novel and particularly the novel with a purpose is the vogue of the day.

Hardy is the greatest novelist of this period. He has a philisophy of his own. Primarily he is a tragedian like Shakespeare. The important factor in Hardy's novels is the blind will which is the controlling force in his novels. His hero is like a helpless creature, who can be tossed asunder by the forces of heredity and environment. Some of his famous novels are *Tess*, *Far From the Madding Crowd*, *The Return of the Native* and *Jude the Obscure*.

Kipling, being the product of British Imperialism, is the prophet of imperialism. He is a great short story writer and a novelist. *Kim* is his best novel relating to life in this sub-continent.

Galsworthy is a novelist with a difference. He is the painter of his age. His novels deal with the burning questions of the day. He brings forth into his novels, the rank distrust of upper middle class for the poor, andc learly manifests their hypocrisy and cunning. He describes vividly the conflict between Labour and Capital, but gives us no solution. Galsworthy is a pessimist. His famous novels are *The Man of Property*, *The Country House*, *Fraternity*, *The Dark Flower*.

Wells is a man of versatile genius. He is a novelist of the first rank, an eminent historian, a great short-story writer too. He is a Fabian, and believes that the millennium can be attained, if science is properly applied to every sphere of human life. His style is vivid and colloquial with plenty of humour and satire and quite a well-developed plot. His famous novels are *Kipps*, *Tono Bungay*, *Ana Veronica*, *The History of Mr. Polly*.

9. Influences on English Literature. English literature has drunk deep at many fountains. The first and the foremost among these is the influence of the Holy Bible. It has so moulded the thought and style of English writers that it is almost impossible to appreciate English literature without an acquaintance with the Biblical incidents. But that is not all. The style of its English

translation (Authorized Version, 1611 A.D.) has stamped its indelible mark on much of what constitutes the best part of English literature. The Biblical allusions in English literature should present no difficulty to the Muslim students, since the historical part of the Holy Quran comprises almost the same events as are mentioned in the Holy Bible. So there is hardly any need to give a gist of the more important events of Bible history here. Nevertheless, we cannot overemphasize the necessity of getting familiar with the style of the Authorized Version. The student should read as many parts of it, and as often, as he can.

10. **Classical Influences**. Next in importance are the classical, *viz.*, Greek and Latin, influences on English literature. Classical allusions are the main difficulty experienced by Pakistani students. It is for their convenience that we give below the essential facts about classical mythology. For the purpose of this sketch, we have relied mainly on Hesiodus (or 'Hesiod' as his name is generally spelt in English), a Greek poet who is placed in the latter half of the eighth century B. C. He has chronicled these details in his book *Theogony* which is available in a good many English renderings. For the concordance of Greek and Roman names of the classical deities, reliance has been placed on Ovidus (or Ovid, according to the common English spelling), 43 B.C. to 18 A.C., who has left us a good deal of relevant material in his *Metamorphoses.*'

The most important fact to remember about classical mythology is that it was not composed of mere fanciful legends but was a complete system of religion to them. The Renaissance spread this interest to other European countries at the end of the Middle Ages, and poets avidly studied their writings with these jewels which were the figments of Greek and Roman imagination.

11. **Cosmos comes into shape**. In the beginning of things, according to classical mythology, there was a shapeless welter of mass over which reigned a deity known as Chaos. He had Nyx (Night) for his wife. The confusion of Chaos and the black face of Nyx gave birth to Erebus (Darkness) who supplanted his father and married his own mother. Their conjugal union brought forth two children of quite the opposite complexion, Hemera (Day) and Aether (Light). They gave birth to a child, Eros (Love), who had ravishing beauty and charming manners. Thus with the aid of Love did Light and Day end darkness, Confusion thus came to an end, and the universe began to take shape.

Hemera and Aether, whose procreative efforts found an impetus from the passions engendered in them by Eros, created Pontos (Sea) and Ge (Earth). Eros decorated his young sister Ge with fauna and flora and she was so pleased that she herself decided to do something as good. The result was the birth of Uranus (Heaven) whom Ge first fostered and then married. Thus with the creation of the Heaven and the Earth, and the Light and the Day ended the first phase of creation. That is how Cosmos came into shape out of Chaos.

12. **Titans and gods**. Uranus and Ge who now reigned the whole universe, made Mount Olympus, the supposed centre of the world, their capital and set their throne on its heights. They enjoyed life in the fullness of its bliss and gave birth to three types of children. First came the twelve **Titans**, then three one-eyed giants called the **Cyclopes** and then three hundred-armed creatures known as the **Centimani**. Their father feared rebellion on their part. So he hurled them into **Tartarus**, a part of the universe which was lower and more terrible than even Hell. Their mother, however, did not approve of this atrocity, and with her help the youngest Titan, **Cronus** (Time) managed to escape from the prison. He overthrew his father, but lay under a curse from him to suffer a similar fate at the hands of his own children.

Cronus dismissed the imprecation as a defeated person's meaningless outburst of anger and divided the kingdom of the universe among his brother and sister Titans, taking one of them, Rhea, for his spouse. The Cyclopes and the Centimani were, however, confined to Tartarus because Cronus did not appear to like them.

13. **Birth of the gods**. Cronus and Rhea had several children, including Hestia, Hera, Hades, Poseidon and Zeus. The cruel father devoured each child as soon as it was born but the bereaved mother eventually played a ruse by which she managed to save the youngest, Zeus, who was brought up on Mount Ida in Crete on the milk of a goat named Amalthea. When he grew up, he conspired with his mother, and together they administered a nauseous potion to Cronus who disgorged the swallowed children. Zeus now rallied his forces round him and after a ten-year-long struggle defeated his father Cronus who escaped and set up a separate kingdom in Italy. In this war the Cyclopes and the Centimani fought on the side of Zeus, supplying him with thunderbolts. In appreciation of this service they were released by Zeus, as were the Titans. Prome-

theus (Forethought) and his brother Epimetheus (Afterthought), foreseeing the fall of Cronus, remained neutral in this war.

14. **Greek Pantheon.** Zeus divided the kingdom of the universe among his brothers and sisters and in certain outlying areas allowed the former lords to reign as of old. The Greek Pantheon thus comprised the following deities under Zeus (Thunderer) who was the chief divinity, the god of gods :

Gods

Name	*Domain*	*Name*	*Domain*
Zeus	Heaven and general supervision.	Hephaestus	Industry
		Dionysus	Wine
		Hades	The Lower World
Apollo	The Sun		
Mars	War	Cronus	Time
Hermes	Messenger	Eros	Love
Poseidon	The Ocean	Pan	Flocks, forests and shepherds

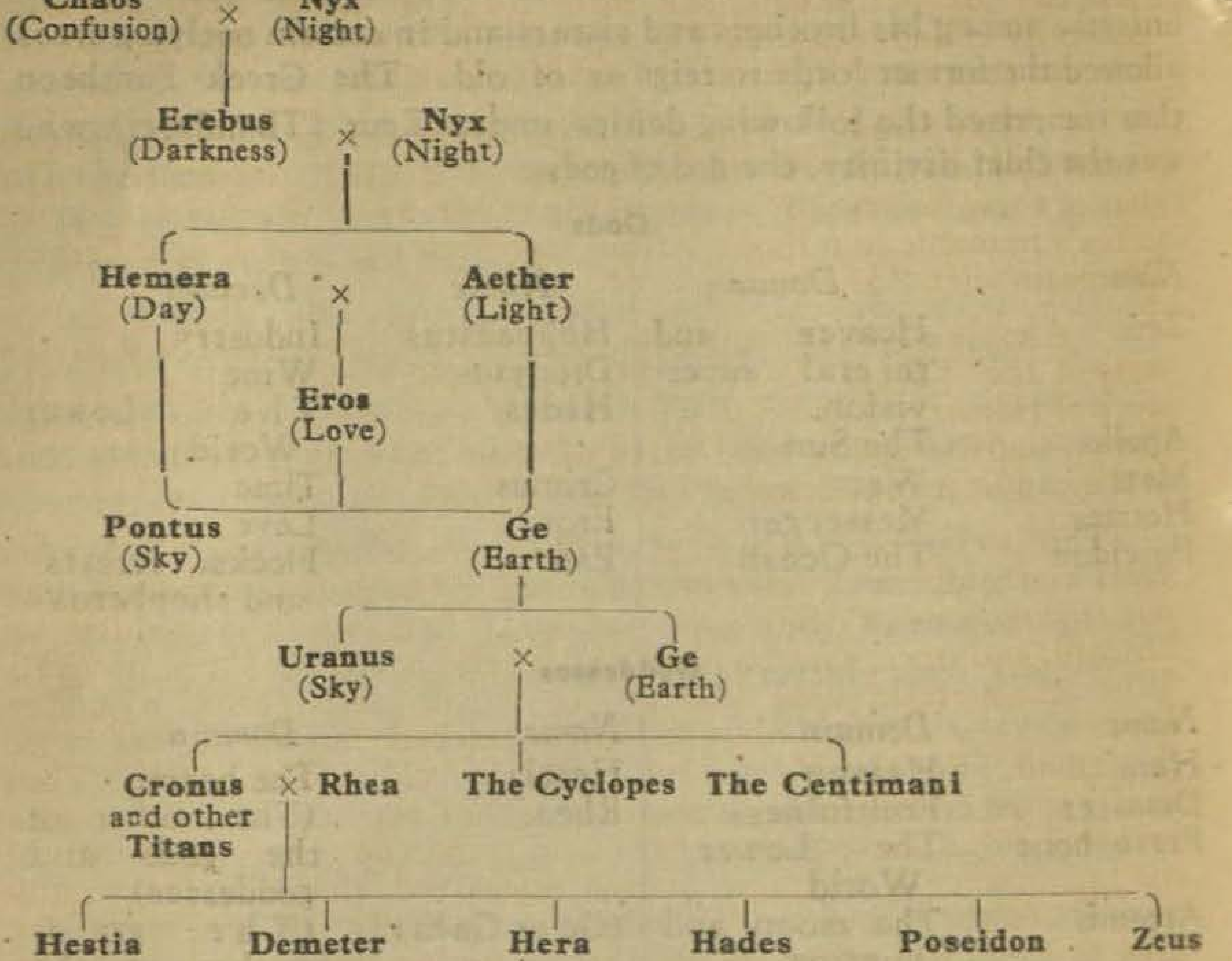
Goddesses

Name	*Domain*	*Name*	*Domain*
Hera	Heaven	Hestia	The hearth
Demeter	Fruitfulness	Rhea.	(The mother of the gods and goddesses)
Persephone	The Lower World		
Artemis	The moon and hunting	(Ge *or* Gaea)	(The grand-mother of the gods and god-desses)
Athena	Wisdom		
Aphrodite	Love and beauty		

15. **Roman gods.** The Roman pantheon was different only in names and not in functions and legends. A concordance of the names of Greek and Roman gods and goddessess is given below :

Greek	*Roman*	*Greek*	*Roman*
Zeus	Jupiter *or* Jove	Pan	Faunus
		Hera	Guno
Apollo	Phoebus	Demeter	Ceres
Ares	Mars	Persephone	Proserpine
Hermes	Mercury	Artemis	Diana
Poseiden	Neptune	Athena	Minerva
Hephaestus	Vulcan	Aphrodite	Venus
Dionysus	Bacchus	Hestia	Vesta
Hades	Pluto	Rhea	Cybele
Cronus	Saturn	Ge *or* Gaea	Tellus
Eros	Cupid		

16. **Genealogical Table.** The following is a genealogical table of the various deities from Chaos to Zeus. The sign of cross indicates marriage of the individuals whose name it connects :



17. **Minor Deities.** In addition to these gods there were semi-divine figures who haunted various objects of nature. They were known as nymphs and were of the following types :

Dryads or Hamadryads	Wood-nymphs
Naiads	Fresh-water nymphs
Oreads	Mountain-nymphs
Oceanids	Ocean-nymphs
Pleiades and Hyades	Stellar-nymphs

There were also the Fauns, the Satyrs and the Sileni who were subservient to Pan, the god of wild life.

18. **Creation of Man.** According to the Greek legends, Cronus soon got tired of ruling over a kingdom which boasted only of beasts. So he asked Prometheus to create something more wonderful. The result was man who was made in the image of the Titans. Since Cronus liked the new creation, Prometheus multiplied the number, and the Titan king infused life into them.

After the victory of Zeus, mankind was neglected because the chief god did not want to have anyone become so mighty as to challenge his suzerainty. But Prometheus defied his explicit orders

and brought man fire from heaven and taught him all the arts. Prometheus was penalized for this defiance of orders and was chained to a rock where a vulture devoured his liver which was replaced every day to perpetuate the torture. The Greek hero Heracles (generally called Hercules) finally rescued him but Shelley has a different story to tell in his *Prometheus Unbound*.

19. 'The Iliad'. Homer's *Iliad* and *Odyssey* have wielded a great influence on the subject matter of English literature. The gists of these books are in the words of Mr. H. J. Wechsler as given in his admirable handbook, *Gods and Godesses in Art and Legend*. We begin with *The Iliad* :

" Almost every schoolboy in every land knows something of the story of the Trojan War, a bloody conflict immortalized by the work of Homer. The *Iliad* was written some thousand years before Christ, and the Greek bard based his epic on what is probably one of the happiest blendings of fact and fiction.

This is the story of a great conflict which raged for all of ten years and might well have been avoided if the gods of Olympus had not slighted one of their own number. Eris was the goddess of Discord, and once when a banquet was given, she was not invited. When the merrymaking was at its height, Eris threw a golden apple into the dining hall, and it was marked for all to see with the legend, ' For the Most Fair '. Many claimed the prize, but finally three contestants remained. Venus was of course one, and Juno and Minerva contested her claim to be the most beautiful of the inhabitants of Olympus. Zeus suggested that the three contestants travel to Mount Ida, where young Paris, son of Priam, the king of Troy, was guarding some flocks for his father He was an excellent judge of feminine beauty, Zeus insisted, and would award the apple fairly.

So one day as Paris was resting under a tree during the noonday's heat, there appeared before him three goddesses of unbelievable beauty who quickly explained their need. Now these goddesses seemed not to trust alone to their bodily charms to win the award Juno promised to make him ruler of vast and rich kingdoms. Minerva promised him military victory against the hated Greeks. But Venus, understanding best a young man's heart, offered him the fairest woman in all the world. To Venus, then, he handed the golden apple.

The fairest woman in all the world was Helen, daughter of Zeus by the beautiful Leda. So many had sought the hand of Helen in marriage that it was agreed that once a decision had been reached and she had selected from the host of suitors one to be her husband, all the rest would pledge themselves to protect this fortunate individual against any future enemies. So the oaths were taken and the pledges made. Menelaus was chosen and won thus for himself a beautiful queen and the rich kingship of Sparta.

Venus directed Paris to the home of the happy couple, where

he was hospitably received. But when Menelaus left on a journey, Paris exercised either strength or charm or perhaps a combination of both, and carried Helen off to Troy.

Menelaus prepared his forces to sail for Troy and reduce that hated city to ashes. A thousand ships were ready at Aulis, but no favourable winds did blow to speed them on their course. Calchas, the seer, then spoke up and announced that some goddess had been offended by Agamemnon, brother to Menelaus. A compensatory sacrifice, therefore must be made.

It was decided that Iphigenia, daughter of Agamemnon who was to command the fleet, must be offered. This was a harsh demand on the brave leader of men, and all of Greece awaited this terrible decision. Agamemnon himself brought his daughter to the sacrificial altar.

Then the winds swung around in the sky and blew favourable, speeding ten hundred ships Troy-ward.

Now for nine long years, this futile war was waged and neither side had any great advantage. The Greeks then began to fight among themselves because Achilles was unwilling to give up Briseis, a beautiful young captive who had been earlier awarded to him. Achilles agreed sullenly to the forfeit, but announced that he would fight no longer in the war against Troy, being determined to return to Greece.

This was a war incidentally in which the gods and goddesses of Olympus took sides and many a battle was won through Olympian intervention. Juno and Minerva naturally fought against Troy and Paris. Apollo helped both sides, varying his support as the caprice of the moment dictated. Zeus remained for the most part impartial and aloof, although on occasion he too made his power felt.

After Achilles retired to his tent, the Trojans attacked and forced the Greeks back to the shores where their ships were anchored. Then the Greeks knew that they needed Achilles at the battle front, and Ulysses and Ajax went to inform the great warrior that Agamemnon had at last consented to the return of Briseis. But Achilles was adamant. The Trojans were again successful in the next day's battle, and won their way to the shore and set fire to many of the Grecian ships. The fight raged and neither side seemed close to victory. Achilles still remained sulking in his tent. The closest and dearest friend of Achilles was his childhood companion, Patroclus. When Achilles learned that Patroclus had been slain by Hector, his rage was terrible to see.

Now Achilles hastened to the field seeking vengeance. When King Priam looked down from the city walls, he saw his forces driven back to the gates, which he ordered quickly opened. Hector alone would not pass through the gates and remained outside the city to meet his sworn enemy. With his family and many of the

survivors watching from towers and battlements, the two great leaders finally met.

Achilles approached, terrible in his wrath, looking more like the great god Mars than like a mortal. Even brave Hector quailed at the sight of so terrible a foe. Then the Trojan threw his spear, and although well aimed, it could not pierce the armoor of Achilles. It bounded back, leaving the Greek unharmed. Then Achilles aimed his spear and loosed it in a mighty throw. It found its mark, and in an instant Hector lay dying on the ground.

As the horrified spectators looked on, this body which but a moment before was so full of life, was stripped of all armour, and lay naked and exposed in the dust. Achilles now took a strong rope and tied it to the feet of his vanquished foe. Then he fastened the cord to his chariot and mounting quickly, beat his horses and dragged the body of dead Hector back and forth before the city.

Then the once haughty king went to a soldier's tent and prostracted himself before Achilles and kissed those same hands which had slain and dishonoured his loved one. Priam said, 'Think at this moment of your own father and what would be his feelings if Achilles and not Hector lay thus dishonoured in the dust.' And Achilles looked at Priam's sad countenance and saw how white was his hair, and he did think of his own father and his heart ached. Then he gave his hand to Priam and raised him to his feet and granted him the body of his favourite son.

At this point peace might have come for Greek and Trojan, for Achilles had seen and become enamoured of Polyxena, daughter of King Priam. This happened during the period of truce allowed for Hector's burial Achilles had visited the temple of Apollo to arrange for the marriage when Paris, never a brave man, saw the great warrior and without warning shot a poisoned arrow at him which pierced his heel, the only part of Achilles which was vulnerable. His mother had dipped him, when he was an infant, into the river Styx, but had held him by the heel which remained the only place where the waters could not work their magic.

The Trojan forces were now encamped within the city which seemed impregnable. Ulysses, however, finally thought of a way to bring the war to an end. He caused to be constructed a huge wooden horse which was hollow and capable of housing a band of armed men. On a dark night the Greeks wheeled the horse before the gates and pretended to have given up the war and set sail. They did indeed take to the ships and anchored only a short distance away in a sheltered cove invisible from Troy's towers. As Ulysses had foreseen, the Trojans planned to bring the horse through their gates. Only Laocoon, a priest of Neptune, warned against such a move, exclaiming, 'Fear the Greeks even when they bear gifts.'

While some might have heeded the priest, an event took place which affected the decision. Two huge serpents came out of the sea and writhed their way to where Laocoon stood with his two sons. The serpents wound their terrible bodies around the group and slowly strangled all life out of father and sons. This the Trojans interpreted as a sign from Olympus that the offering must be drawn into the city.

Amid great celebrations this was done. That night Ulysses and his men stole from the belly of the horse, overpowered the few guards and opened the city's gates. The Greek forces had meanwhile sailed back into port and in a few terrible hours the city was sacked and the long war for Helen was over."

20. **The Odyssey**. "The literary source for this story of Ulysses is, of course, Homer's *Odyssey*. In this immortal work there are chronicled the many adventures of Odysseus (this is the Greek equivalent for Ulysses) after he sailed from Troy.

(*a*) **The Lotus Eaters**. The war for Troy was finally over and a great city lay in ashes. Its heroes were dead. Only Aeneas and a few of his followers succeeded in escaping from the burning town and a Greek army maddened by victory. On that terrible day much offence was given to the gods, for the conquerors forgot all humility and decency.

For evil such as this, the victors were destined to pay. When the ships set sail, great storms arose, sent by Neptune. The fleet was scattered and many a Greek, so recently flushed with victory, sank for ever in the black and angry sea. It was ordained that Ulysses would survive, but not before he had wandered for ten long years, far from Ithaca, his homeland, and his loved ones.

The great storm which arose and dispersed the Greek fleet lasted for nine days, and when it subsided an island was sighted. It was the land of the Lotus, a plant which when eaten resulted in complete loss of memory. Ulysses managed to get his crew away from the strange island without too serious mishap.

(*b*) **The Cyclopes**. When the ship next put into port, it was in the land of the Cyclopes, a breed of giants, huge men with only one eye, which was placed in the middle of the forehead. These Titans lived in caves and spent most of their time guarding the flocks off which they fed. Ulysses and some of his men began to explore the island. Theyhappened to enter one of the caves, the home of the Cyclops, Polyphemus. Ulysses and his followers were about to congratulate themselves on finding so rich a stock of food, when Polyphemus suddenly returned, driving a large flock before him. With the greatest ease, he then rolled an immense boulder in front of the cave's opening and Ulysses and his frightened men knew that all their concerted efforts would never move it. When Polyphemus had milked the goats and ewes, he happened to roll his obscene eye around in its socket, and saw that he had visitors. He asked them who they were and whence they came.

Ulysses stood up as spokesman and told of the Trojan War, and spoke with great humility and begged that he and his men might be received kindly. Polyphemus answered by grasping two of the men and throwing them against the cave wall and dashing out their brains. Then he tore them apart. limb by limb, and devoured them. Having supped so well, he lay down and fell into a deep and relaxed sleep. Ulysses would have attacked him but knew that if they did succeed in slaying the Cyclops, he and his men would be prisoners forever in the sealed cave. In the morning Polyphemus breakfasted off two more of the band, rolled the rock from the opening to allow himself and his flocks an exit, and then sealed it up again. When he was gone, the crafty Ulysses planned his revenge and escape. That evening the giant returned, and again killed and devoured two men. But before he could fall asleep, Ulysses and a group of his most daring followers approached the Cyclops and offered him a jug of wine which they had carried with them from the boat. Polyphemus tasted it and found it good. He announced that as a reward for this delicious drink, Ulysses would be the last to be eaten. "What is your name?" he inquired of the leader. "My name is No Man!" Ulysses replied.

While the Cyclops had been out with his flocks, Ulysses had a great log cut, tapered it at one end to a sharp point, and concealed it in the rear of the cave. When the one-eyed Titan finally fell into a sleep deepened by the drinking of so much wine, the men heated the point of the log in a fire which they had made until it was hot and glowing like a burning coal. Then Ulysses lifted it and placed the point in the giant's single eye. The men jumped to his aid and they twisted the log until the eye was completely burned out of its socket.

A horrible scream of rage and pain filled the cave and the men ran to its corners to be out of reach of the blinded Cyclops. Hearing his cry, other Cyclopes came out of their caves and called to Polyphemus, "Who is it that hurts you?" The agonized giant answered, "No Man!" and the giants reasoned that if no man was harming Polyphemus this must be some divine visitation and they returned to their caves.

In the morning Polyphemus stood at the entrance to the cave and having rolled the stone away only far enough to let the cattle pass through, he felt each creature as it went by, to make sure that no human being escaped. But Ulysses had ordered his men to guide the flock to the exit in groups of three abreast. Clinging to the underside of each middle ram were the surviving members of the band. As soon as they had all escaped, Ulysses being the last, they rushed to their boat beached on the shore. Ulysses, was not satisfied only to be safe. He now addressed the Cyclops in mocking and boastful tones. "O Polyphemus, if you would know who brought this just punishment upon you, it is I, Ulysses, sacker of cities, and to me alone you owe the loss of your monstrous eye!"

(*c*) **The Laestrygonians**. After several uneventful days at sea, the wanderers came to the island of Aeolus, who governed the winds. On their departure from the island, they ran into another great storm.

Finally, the mariners sighted a land which was the habitation of the Laestrygonians. Taking to small boats, they beached in a quiet cove. Only Ulysses remained off shore. The Laestrygonians, a fierce and warlike people, waited until the boats were anchored and then attacked. Many vessels and many men never again sailed out of these quiet waters.

(*d*) **Circe**. The survivors plied their oars and came next to the island of Circe, an enchantress and daughter of the Sun.

When they approached the island of Aeaea, Ulysses ordered a scouting party to investigate the land before the entire party disembarked. Now Circe, as has been mentioned, was a witch and an enchantress who lured men to her by her rare beauty. She entertained them lavishly and bade them sup with her, but once they had eaten of her fare, they were transformed into animals of various kinds, retaining only their human minds, but in all other respects being as the beasts of the fields and forests.

Eurylochus led the group of men toward a palace which was located in the centre of the island. From within they heard the strains of sweet music and a woman's voice, lifted in song. When they called, Circe appeared and bade them welcome. Only Eurylochus, the leader, was suspicious, and remained outside. Circe conducted the men to an impressive banquet hall and served them with wines and tempting foods. But when they had eaten, she touched them one by one with her magic wand, and they were transformed into swine. Then the horrified Eurylochus hurried back to the ship to describe to Ulysses the fate of his men. When the story had been told, Ulysses determined to go alone and attempt single-handed the rescue of his shipmates.

On the way he met a youth of godlike beauty, who announced that he was Mercury and had come to aid Ulysses. He gave the Ithacan a special herb which, once he had eaten of it, would protect him from any harm.

Circe greeted Ulysses as she had greeted his men, and entertained him in the same rich manner. But when she touched him with her wand, no transformation took place. Instead, Ulysses drew his sword, rushed upon her and threatened to kill her unless she immediately released all her prisoners from their beastly shapes.

Then Circe, fearful for her life, restored all the men to their human forms. The rest of the company now came ashore, and a great celebration was held. Circe became enamoured of Ulysses, and he and his companions found life on the island exceedingly good. Soon they had forgotten home, family, the horrors of the war and their many trials. But even with this attractive way of life,

with its luxuries and pleasures, they found themselves finally surfeited. And the thoughts of the brave men turned once more to the sea and adventure.

Circe reluctantly helped with preparations for the journey and supplied the wanderers with food and supplies. She also warned them of dire perils which awaited them, but explained how to evade them.

(*e*) **The Sirens**. First there were the Sirens, a species of sea nymph, who could charm with their irresistible songs all mariners who sailed within earshot of their chants. It was said that sailors hearing the melodies would throw themselves into the sea in their mad desire to join the makers of such seductive melody. Ulysses ordered all his men to fill their ears with wax, so that they would be deaf to the Sirens' song. He then had his companions tie him to the mast, instructing them not to unbind the fetters no matter how he might plead to be free. When they sailed past the rocks where the Sirens dwelt, so alluring was the music which Ulysses alone could hear, that he almost broke his bonds. But his men heeded not his pleas or threats, and after a while, no further sound of singing carried across the water and Ulysses was unloosed from his bonds.

(*f*) **Scylla and Charybdis.** Circe had also warned that a grave danger awaited him when his course compelled sailing between the twin perils of Scylla and Charybdis. Scylla lived high on a stony promontory rising out of the sea. Being equipped with six heads on long necks, she could reach out towards a passing ship and diminish the crew by that number, devouring the helpless mariners in a manner awful to behold.

Close by lay the other danger, the whirlpool Charybdis, which sucked ships and all aboard into its churning depth. Although Ulysses had been forewarned and managed to steer away from the whirlpool, he could not successfully evade the bestial Scylla. The boat came just close enough to permit her to stretch out her serpentine necks and pluck six brave men from their places at the oars, and lift them to her rocky perch, there to make her repast.

(*g*) **Calypso.** After rowing and sailing for many days, the men sighted the island of the Sun God, where grazed the sacred flocks of Hyperion. The members of the crew were too famished to resist the temptation of slaughtering and eating some of the sacred animals. As soon as the voyage was continued, terrible punishment was exacted for this sacrilege. During a prodigious storm lightning struck the boat and shattered it. Every last man of the crew drowned that day, but Ulysses, clinging to the keel and mast, which he had lashed into a raft, finally floated ashore on the island of the sea nymph, Calypso.

This beautiful enchantress may have heard of Ulysses and the victory at Troy and therefore have come quickly to the aid of so great a hero. Or it may be that Ulysses was a man of such virile

charm and attraction that, like Circe and other women, she immediately fell in love with him. But such were her own attractions, that this tired wanderer was tempted to remain forever on the seagirt isle. However, he could not completely put out of mind thoughts of his son, Telemachus, and memories of his dear wife, Penelope. Calypso, although earthbound, was related to the gods and goddesses of Olympus and promised her lover immortality if he remained with her. But in spite of her blandishments and feminine wiles, Ulysses gazed often across the seas, his sad countenance revealing that his thoughts were elsewhere. Then one day, Jupiter, feeling that Ulysses had done enough penance, ordered Mercury to take the message to Calypso that the Ithacan must be released.

Sorrowfully, the nymph conceded to this divine order, and helped Ulysses prepare a raft. She furnished him with ample provisions and one dawn when the sea was calm and the winds blew gently, he bade her farewell and began his last lonely voyage.

But once more was his soul to be tried. Again a storm arose and the raft was tossed high on angry waves and finally destroyed. Ulysses swam until exhausted and was washed ashore, helpless and close to unconsciousness, on the land of the Phaeacians.

(*h*) **Nausicaa**. These people who inhabited the country of Scheria were a good, peace-loving and hospitable folk. Alcinous was the king, and he had a daughter, Nausicaa, who in anticipation of her imminent marriage, had gone with her companions to wash the robes of state at a clear spring not far from where Ulysses had floated ashore. When the princess and her friends had finished with their chores, they bathed their young bodies in the cool waters.

Ulysses was awakened by the girlish screams and laughter and realizing that he was naked and illkempt, he was fearful of appearing thus before these gentlewomen. Then he broke a leaf-covered branch from a nearby tree and holding it before him as a covering, he stepped from his hiding place. No sooner had they seen and heard him than they fled in fright, all but Nausicaa, who, instructed and made fearless by Minerva, listened as Ulysses told his story and made his plea for food and clothing. Then she recalled her friends, telling them that there was naught to fear, and soon Ulysses was fed and washed and clothed. Now he no longer appeared as a shipwrecked derelict, but truly as a hero and leader of men. Nausicca, being a maid of good sense and some knowledge of the world, told Ulysses to remain behind a while and after the party had a good start, to make his way to the city alone, and appear then at the palace and appeal for help to her generous father, King Alcinous.

Ulysses did as she suggested and he told of his sojourn on Calypso's isle and of his ill fortune with the raft. He also related how generously their daughter, Nausicca, had cared for him in his time of dire need.

(*i*) **The Fate of the Suitors**. Alcinous then promised that Ulysses would be furnished with a ship and crew so that he might reach his native land.

The king and his courtiers lavished rich and varied gifts on the ill-fated wanderer and in the morning a crew of the bravest Phaeacians put to sea in a sturdy boat. Before they reached Ithaca, Ulysses fell into a peaceful sleep and the men lifted him and carried him ashore when land was reached and left him there on his own soil, surrounded by the many gifts and presents.

When Ulysses awakened, he was deeply puzzled, for it was twenty years since he had last trod the blessed earth of Ithaca, and he saw nowhere a familiar landmark. Suddenly his steadfast patron, Minerva, appeared to him. She told how Penelope had waited patiently all this time, refusing to believe that her husband was dead, and how she continued to hold off the band of pressing suitors who would not move out of the palace and were eating his food and drinking his wines. She explained that at that very moment, his good son, Telemachus, was travelling from place to place, making futile inquiries for his father. She added that a divine messenger had been sent to recall his son so that together they might plan their vengeance.

Eumaeus, the faithful servant of Ulysses, had refused, like Penelope and Telemachus, to believe that his master would not return ; and Minerva led Ulysses to the old swineherd's hut, having first transformed him into the semblance of an old and ill-clothed itinerant beggar. Eumaeus none the less greeted him with kindness and proffered shelter and food.

When Telemachus returned, having evaded a death trap set for him by the conspirators, he found this strange old man in the company of his father's servant. He, too, greeted him kindly. Then Eumaeus left for the palace to tell Penelope of her son's safe return, and it was this interval which Minerva selected to transform Ulysses back to his true shape. Telemachus gazed in awe and wonderment at the godlike figure standing in his presence. Quickly the tale was told and father and son embraced, the tears wetting their cheeks. But Minerva warned that time was short and speedily the plans were laid. Ulysses again assumed his former shape of a defenceless old beggar, and in this disguise went to the palace to beg some charity of the celebrating revelers.

Penelope had meanwhile announced that a series of contests would be held to determine which aspirant should be her chosen groom to replace the noble Ulysses. She ordered Telemachus to bring the great bow of his father, which had hung unstrung and unused for twenty years. Twelve rings were now arranged in a continuing line, and he who could shoot an arrow through all twelve would have Penelope as the prize. Meanwhile, Telemachus had removed all other weapons from the room.

Now as each suitor stood up to make trial, not one among them could even bend the great bow to string it. When the humble beggar asked to be given a chance, the hall echoed with mocking laughter. But Telemachus insisted that the old man be handed the bow.

The assembled plotters now gasped in bewilderment when, with greatest ease, the scorned old man bent the bow and fitted the string to its notch. In an instant he had loosed an arrow and it winged swiftly through all the rings. Quickly, another arrow was fitted to the bow, but this one pierced the throat of the most arrogant of the suitors. Now all was panic. Telemachus and Eumaeus rushed to the support of a transformed Ulysses, noble once more in appearance, and flaming like a god. Arrows and spears found their marks with death-giving insistence. Blood flowed everywhere as corpse was heaped upon corpse. At last all were dead. Ulysses and his small loyal band gazed in awe at the havoc which they had wrought. But when he laid down his bloody weapons, this hero of wars and perilous adventures knew that at last he was master again of his own domain.

21. The Aeneid. Another account of the adventures and exploits of classical heroes is given in Virgil's *Aeneid*. Its hero Aeneas, born of Aphrodite, is the son-in-law of the last king of Troy, Priam. The Oxford Book of English Literature summarizes the story as follows :

"When Troy was in flames at the end of the Trojan War, Aeneas carried away upon his shoulders his father Anchises and the statues of his household gods, leading his son by the hand and leaving his wife Creusa to follow behind. Creusa was, however, separated from him in the confusion and lost.... .....Leaving Troy with a fleet of twenty ships, he was ship-wrecked near Carthage, where he was kindly entertained by Dido the queen, who fell in love with him. But Aeneas left Carthage by order of the gods, and Dido in despair took her own life.

"Coming to Cumae, Aeneas was conducted by the Sibyl to the nether world that he might hear from his father's shade the fates of posterity. After a voyage of seven years, and the loss of thirteen ships, he reached the Tiber, where he married Lavinia, the daughter of King Latinus, having slain in single combat Turnus, king of the Rutulians, his rival for her hand. Aeneas succeeded his father-in-law as king of the Latins." He is regarded as the founder of the Roman Power.

22 Morte d'Arthur. Another book which has a considerable influence on the shaping of English literature is the Arthurian legend. The English version is Malory's prose rendering of the fourteenth century French poem. It was first printed by Caxton in 1485. "The central story consists of two main elements : the reign of King Arthur ending in catastrophe and the dissolution of the Round Table ; and the quest of the Holy Grail (the vessel used by Jesus Christ at the Last Supper, in which later Joseph of

Arimathea received his blood at the Cross) in which Launcelot fails by reason of his sin and Galahad succeeds."

23. **Three Modern Works.** The books which have exercised the greatest ever influence on lending a new shape to English literature were all written by men who lived in the nineteenth century. The first of these is *The Origin of Species* by the English biologist Charles Darwin. First published in 1859, it brought about a radical change in man's ideas about creation. It presented in a scientific form and established in all fields of knowledge the idea of evolution—the theory which asserts that gradual change and not sudden creation is the law of nature. The second book is *Das Kapital* the first volume of which is by the German economist Karl Marx. It was published in 1867. The book was completed sixteen years after Marx's death by his associate, Engels. A criticism of the capitalist system, it is a plea for the abolition of private property. It is this book which has ushered in communism in its present form. The last of these books are the works of the Austrian Jew, Sigmund Freud, who introduced the system known as psycho-analysis. "The study of neurotic ailments led him to various conclusions relating to the normal mind, which are the basis of psycho-analysis, such as the existence of an unconscious element in the mind which influences consciousness, and of the conflicts in it between various sets of forces (including repression)."

He also arrived at the conclusion stressing "the importance of a child's semi-consciousness of sex as a factor in mental development." Together, these three books have revolutionised modern thought, given new bearings to literature, and made it well-nigh impossible to appreciate any piece of literature without a working knowledge of the theories advanced in these epoch-making publications.

24. **Forms of Literature.** Literature has numerous divisions with regard to its form and content, the main ones being prose and poetry. Without going into the intricacies of controversial points, we shall rest content with accepting Moliere's distinction between the two forms of literature as that of metrical diction. Both of these forms may either be subjective or objective. The subjective forms of prose comprise essays, letters, journals and autobiographies. The objective forms of prose comprise biographies, travel literature, short stories, novels, one-act plays and full-length dramas. The subjective forms of prose are what Dr. Johnson has described as wild outbursts and sallies of imagination. Of the objective forms, biography and travel literature belong to the domain of fact and the rest to that of fiction. The major difference between the novel and the short story on the one hand and the one-act and the full-length plays on the other is that the former are narratives interlarded with dialogues, whereas the latter consist of nothing but dialogues and action. As for their length, the novel and the full-length drama fall in one category, and the short story and the

one-act play in the other. For our purposes, the essay and the letter are the most important forms of prose literature. With them we will deal in appropriate sections.

25. Poetry. According to the O. E. D. (Oxford English Dictionary) definition, poetry is the elevated expression of elevated thought or feeling, especially in metrical form. The definition stresses three points : (*a*) the subject-matter must be elevated ; (*b*) and so must the diction ; (*c*) but the metrical form is by no means indispensable. This sums up the modern notions about the form and functions of poetry and implies that it is not necessarily opposed to prose, for in fact there are works of prose like the Bible which fall within the domain of poetry despite being devoid of metrical form. Nevertheless, the number of such works is very limited and the main bulk of poetical literature is in verse form. We shall now take up the three points in turn and discuss their implications.

Poetry is the highest form of art, in spite of all that Browning has to say against it in his *Abt Vogler*. It is therefore only natural that it should give expression to the highest flights of human imagination and counter-balance the otherwise lop-sided material progress of man. It has human sentiments as its domain and fulfils the spiritual rather than the physical needs of man. The poet expresses his elevated spiritual experience in order to regenerate it in the reader's mind and rouse in him the same sympathies as were felt by him in the course of that experience. It thus goes without saying that the more elevated these sympathies and sentiments are, the greater is the standard of the poetical production incorporating them. That much about the subject-matter of poetry which is its first and foremost distinctive feature.

Now we come to the medium of expression through which this experience is communicated to the reader. Not colour or notes, but words, lofty, sweet and picturesque—that is what the poet employs to express his sentiments. No doubt it is not necessary for them to be arranged in metrical form, but it is inevitable for the diction to be elevated in order to be a befitting vehicle for the lofty sentiments couched in it This theory has been disputed by some of the greatest poets and critics but still it holds water. Whatever its antagonists have said boils down to a condemnation of laboured and not elevated diction. Impassioned speech naturally becomes elevated and even Wordsworth, who is the greatest exponent of simple diction, could not avoid the use of high-faluting language in many of his poems.

The third distinctive feature of poetry is verse form, though every writing lacking this characteristic is not necessarily unpoetical as was believed and shown in his work by the famous American poet, Walt Whitman (1819—92). But since this form contains the bulk of poetical literature, we may consider its various components. They are metre and rhyme. Metre is the measure of verse lines. Whereas in Urdu it is based on the vowel

points, in English it is quite different. There it depends on rhythm (pronounced *rithm*) or flow of sound resulting from the stress variations of spoken language and consists of a regular pattern of accented and unaccented syllables. Each unit of this pattern is called a foot and each line comprises a number of feet.

Rhyme (pronounced *rime*) is still another thing we come across in verse. It is the correspondence in sound of two final syllables of verse lines, like load and rode. But a considerable portion of English poetry is written in blank verse which has no rhyme. And just as there is verse without rhyme, so is there verse without metre which is known as *vers libre* (pronounced *var-leb ray*) or free verse in which modern poets like G. M. Hopkins have made somewhat successful experiments. But though they dispense with metre, they have to rely on their impulse for achieving the rhythm, and the effect is just a conglomeration of various metres with still more varying number of feet.

These are the distinctive features of poetry, some of which are essential and the rest otherwise.

26. Poetical Diction. "There neither is nor can be an essential difference between the language of prose and that of metrical composition," says Wordsworth his preface to *The Lyrical Ballads*. It voices the revolt of the free spirit against the Classicism, and started the movement which has been given the name of Romantic Revival. But all revolts are of necessity extreme in their form and are expressive of the spirit of the age and not of the real truth. It is indeed ironical that the man who decried the use of special poetic diction should himself have used high-flown language in his own outbursts of imagination. And even his views are inconsistent. Writing on the subject in *The Prelude* he recognizes the need for embodying his thoughts "in the mystery of words" and presenting them "through the turnings intricate of verse." It is evident that poetical diction need not be intricate and mysterious if it was not radically different from the language of prose.

So the quotation from Wordsworth in this question is to be taken merely as a war-cry against Classicism, and as such only a half-truth. The fact is that the subject matter of poetry is far more elevated than that of ordinary prose and it is only in the fitness of things that its diction should also be far more elevated. One of the basic principles of literary composition is that its style should be in consonance with its theme and poetry would be violating this principle if it tried to imitate everyday speech which cannot satisfy beyond the needs of humdrum existence. The poet has to recreate his spiritual experience in the reader's mind, and since this experience is born of lofty flights of fancy or deep and intense feelings he would fail to produce the desired effect if his diction had a different tone. In fact it would turn the whole thing into bathos if he did not observe this propriety.

It must, however, be admitted that the needs of metre and

rhyme have preserved some archaic words in poetry and the more they are avoided, the better it would be. But their number is not very large. The second factor which makes the poetical diction different from that of prose is the much too frequent use of rhetorical devices which is to be deprecated if it is laboured. But when used unconsciously, they enhance the effect by making the style vigorous, succinct and suggestive.

In fact what Wordsworth really wanted was to guard against artificial devices trying to create effect when it was never warranted by the subject-matter. The spirit of the Romantic Revolt was crying to

"Let the winged Fancy roam,"

as Keats put it, rather than concentrate on polishing the language even when it had nothing to communicate. Emotion and imagination are the chief ingredients of poetry and they justly demand the use of high-flown language to produce their effect.

27. **Prosody.** The word 'verse' is derived from the Latin word *versus* which denotes turn. It is thus opposed to prose which is derived from the Latin word *prosa* meaning 'straightforward speech.' Whereas prose runs on without any division into lines, verse is divided into lines dependent on metre which is its first essential. Metre is the measure of verse lines which in English poetry takes into consideration the accented and unaccented syllables and its unit is known as a foot which consists of two or, at the most, three syllables. Here is an example from Gray's *Elegy* :

"Their /**sober wish**/es **nev**/er **learn'd**/to **stray**."

This line consists of ten syllables. When read even without any thought as to their being in verse form, we find that some of them are accented (which have been printed in bold type), while the others are not. On closer examination, we find them divided in five pairs of an unaccented (=short) syllable followed by an accented (=long) one. The whole sentence is called a line and each of the five pairs of syllables a foot. The line is thus composed in a five-foot metre

English feet are of four kinds : (*a*) Iambus, (*b*) Anapaest, (*c*) Trochee, (*d*) Dactyl. The first two are of an ascending nature and the last two of a descending one. The first is the commonest in English poetry.

(*a*) Iambus (pronounced *eye-am bas*) consists of a short syllable followed by a long one as in the example from Gray we have just seen. Verse composed in it is called Iambic. Its composition can be remembered by this verse :

"I-**am**/bics **march**/from **short**/to **long**."

(*b*) Anapaest (pronounced *ana peest*) consists of two short syllables followed by a long one. Verse composed in it is called

anapaestic. Its example and formula is given in the following verse :

"With a **leap**/and a **bound**/the swift **aa**/**n**-paests **throng**."

Both of these feet are of an ascending order because they 'march from short to long' syllables.

(*c*) Trochee (pronounced *tro key*) consists of a long syllable followed by a short one It is thus just the opposite of Iambus. Verse composed in it is called trochaic. Here is an example from Blake's *Tiger* :

'**Tiger**/Ti-ger/**burn**-ing/**bright**
In the/-**for**-ests/of the/**night**'

The combined example and formula is :

"**Tro**-chee/ **trips** from/**long** to/short ;
Such a/**foot** is/**called** a-/**tro**-chee."

(*d*) Dactyl (pronounced *dak-til*) consists of one long syllable followed by two short ones. Verse composed in it is called dactyllic. It is the least used foot in English verse. Here is an example :

"**Take** her up/**ten**-der-ly."

(*e*) Spondee is still another foot but it is hardly ever used in English. It consists of two long syllables.

(*f*) Amphibrach is a long syllable sandwiched between two short ones. This too is hardly ever used in English.

Each metre is composed of one to six feet and the various forms are known as monometer, dimeter, trimeter, tetrameter, pentameter and hexameter respectively for one-, two-, three-, four-, five- and six-foot lines.

The commonest English metre is the Iambic, mostly used as a tetrameter or a pentameter. When the iambic pentameter is without any rhyme is is known as blank verse in which are written Shakespeare's dramas and Milton's *Paradise Lost*. Its rhymed couplet is known as the heroic verse because epics are written in it.

The second ingredient of the verse form is rhyme but it is not an essential part of it. It is an identity of sound between the final syllables of two or more lines. There is (i) simple or masculine rhyme (like *stuff* and *enough*, *round* and *frowned*) when only one syllable rhymes and it is long, (ii) weak or feminine rhyme (like *matter* and *flatter*, *greeting* and *meeting*) when the long syllable is followed by a short syllable, and (iii) triple rhyme (like *readily* and *steadily*). There is a type known as the eye rhyme which appears so to the eye and not to the ear like *save* and *have*, *love* and *move*. These specious rhymes are inadmissible. An

example of the simple rhyme may be taken from Pope's *Rape of the Lock* :

> "What dire offence from the am'rous causes springs,
> What mighty quarrels rise from trivial things,
> I sing.—This verse to C—l, Muse ! is due :
> This ev'n Belinda may vouchsafe to view."

Its rhyme scheme would be expressed as *aa*, *bb* which would be interpreted as meaning that the first two lines rhyme together as do the last too, but the rhyme of the first couplet is different from that of the second. This is the simplest rhyme scheme. The more intricate ones are those of the Spenserian stanza which has *ab ab bc bcc* and the sonnet which has *abbaabbacdecdeced*.

The science dealing with all these matters is known as prosody. The division of a line into long and short syllables is known as scansion. We scan a line to know its metre.

28. **Figures of Speech**. The rhetorical devices used in poetry are quite numerous but the following are the ones most in use. They are given here in order of their importance.

(*i*) **Simile** (pronounced *sim-i-lee*) is a direct comparison of two things or objects which have one or more points of resemblance. It is quite different from an ordinary comparison of likes, e.g., he is as his father. A smile is introduced by *like*, *so......as* or *as......as*. Here is an example from Vaughan :

> "I saw Eternity the other night
> Like a great ring of pure and endless light,
> All calm as it was bright."

(*ii*) **Metaphor** is also like the simile, but whereas comparison is made in the latter directly and explicitly, in the former it is only implied or suggested. Here are two instances :

(*a*) There was a spate of questions. (Metaphor)

(*b*) The questions were as numerous as to appear like a spate.

Another example of this figure of speech follows from Tennyson's *Crossing the Bar* :

> "And may there be no moaning of the bar,
> When I put out to sea,
> But such a tide as moving seems asleep,
> Too full for sound and foam,
> When that which drew from out the boundless deep
> Turns home again."

(*iii*) **Conceit** (pronounced *kon-seet*) is a far-fetched compa-rison much used by the Elizabethans, the Metaphysical poets an[d] the Moderns, but disliked by the Classical poets and ignored by th[e] Romanticists. Here is an example from Donne :

> "If they (*i.e.*, our souls) be two, they are two so
> As stiff twin compasses are two ;

Thy soul, the fixed foot makes no show
To move, but doth if the other do.
And though it in the centre sit,
Yet when the other far doth roam,
It leans and hearkens after it,
And grows erect as that comes home."

(*iv*) **Imagery** is the presentation of beautiful word-pictures in the poem. Wordsworth's works furnish ample examples of the use of this device :

"The brook and the road.
Were fellow-travellers in this gloomy strait"

is an instance in point. Tennyson's *Come into the Garden, Maud* is still another example which depicts the state of blossoming and withering of flowers.

(*v*) **Onomatopoeia** is the use of words which suggest their sound. The jovial mood of Pan and his followers is thus aptly described by Shelley :

"From the forests and highlands
We come, we come ;
From the river girt islands.
Where loud waves are dumb,
Listening to my sweet pipings."

(*vi*) **Alliteration** is the frequent repetition of the same letter. In fact in Old English this device enjoyed the same pride of place in verse form as rhyme in later days. The combined example and formula is :

"*A*pt *a*lliteration's *a*rtful *a*id."

Noyes wites :

"And they *m*eet *a*nd they *m*urmer *a*nd they *m*ingle *a*new."

(*vii*) **Personification** consists in referring to and treating inanimate and abstract things as if they were living persons. The name of the personified thing or idea is written with an initial capital letter. In *L'Allegro*, Milton says :

"Sport that wrinkled Care derides.
And Laughter holding both his sides."

(*viii*) **Apostrophe** is the addressing of some idea, inanimate object or absent person as if it were coporate, living and present. In *Il Penseroso*, Milton says :

"But hail ! thou goddess sage and holy !
Hail, divinest Melancholy !"

Similarly Tennysons says in *Oenone* :

"O mother Ida, many fountained Ida
Dear mother Ida, hearken ere I die."

(*ix*) **Hyperbole** (pronounced *hy per-bo-lay*) is exaggeration. In *The Rape of the Lock*, Pope says :

"The living fires come flashing from her eyes
And screams of horror rend the affrighted skies."

(*x*) **Climax** is a gradual ascent to a stronger and still stronger form of expression. Literally, it means a ladder. In *Epipsychidion* Shelley says :

"I pant, I sink, I tremble, I expire."

(*xi*) **Anti-climax** is a sudden and ludicrous descent from the higher to the lower and is often used in satire. It is just the opposite of climax and is also called **bathos**. Here is another example from *The Rape of the Lock*.

"Here Britain's statesmen oft the fall foredom
Of foreign tyrants, and of nymphs at home ;
Here thou, great Anna ! whom three realms obey,
Dost sometimes counsel take—and sometimes tea."

(*xii*) **Euphemism** is to speak of unpleasant things in pleasant words, as Tennyson refers to death as simply *crossing of the bar*.

(*xiii*) **Metonyme** (pronounced *me-to-ni-mee*) is the substitution of an attribute or other suggestive word for the name of the thing meant just as *Shakespeare* is used to mean Shakespeare's works, and *from the cradle to the grave* is used to denote from birth to death.

(*xiv*) **Synecdoche** (pronounced *sin-ek-do-kay*) is the use of a part for the whole. Here is an example from Shelley :

"No keel has ever ploughed that path before."

(*xv*) **Irony** is the saying of just the opposite of what we mean. Antony's repeated references to Brutus as "an honourable man" in Caesar's funeral oration are an instance in point.

(*xvi*) **Litotes** (pronounced *ly-to-teez*) is the use of a negative to express a strong affirmative of the kind. Of Sir Plume, who used such abusive language, Pope says :

"'It grieves me much,' replied the Peer again,
'Who speaks so well should speak in vain'."

(*xvii*) **Antithesis** is the setting of one thing against another to express contrast in an emphatic way. Here is an example :

"To err is human, to forgive divine."

(*xviii*) **Oxymoron** is the combination in one expression of two terms that are ordinarily contradictory. Tennyson, who was particularly fond of this figure, says :

"His *honour* rooted in *dishonour* stood
And *faith unfaithful* kept him *falsely true*."

(*xix*) **Exclamation** is used to emphasize a statement. Here is an example :

"Oh Liberty ! what crimes have been committed in thy name !"

Or, from Shelley :

"How calm it was !"

(*xx*) **Rhetorical question** is a question not calling for an answer but only emphasizing a statement, as in Blake :

"What the hand dare seize the fire ?"

(*xxi*) **Transferred epithet** is an adjective transferred from one word to another which it actually does not qualify. Here is an example from Gray's *Elegy*:

"The ploughman homeward plods his *weary* way."

(*xxii*) **Pun** is the use of words in a double sense to produce a humorous effect just like reference to an emptly match-box as a *matchless* box, or like the cobbler in Shakespeare's *Julius Caesar* describing himself as the "mender of soles (*souls*)".

(*xxiii*) **Epigram** is a brief and witty statement in verse like those in Pope :

'Fools rush in where angels fear to tread."

Or,

"What time would spare, from steel receives its date."

29. **Forms of Poetry** The divisions of English poetry follow the Greek classification of drama, epic, and lyric. The drama was class-represented on the stage, the epic was a narrative poem which was recited, and the lyric was a short poem sung to the accompaniment of the music of the lyre or harp. This method of presentation has undergone a considerable change in the last two forms but the terms are still used to indicate the various categories into which poetry falls.

(*i*) Even the first category, the **drama**, his mainly changed over from poetry to prose and those like Flecker, Sean O'Casey and Synge, who have adopted the former medium have failed to win the fame which attends the names of playwrights in prose like Shaw, Barrie and Galsworthy. Still the greatest names in this branch of literature are of the Elizabethans who adopted the verse-form as their medium of expression. They are Marlowe, Ben Jonson and Shakespeare. The poetical drama has three branches, *viz.*, (*a*) comedy when it has a happy ending like the *Merchant of Venice*, (*b*) tragedy when it ends in disaster like *Hamlet*, and (*c*) a historical play when it falls in neither of the two categories but is just a dramatized portion of history like *Julius Caesar*.

An important form evolved by Browning is a *monologue*. It is in effect a character study in which one lays bare one's mind in a soliloquy or a letter. *Abt Vogler* is an interesting example.

(*ii*) The **epic** is not a drama but something like a verse novel. It is a narrative telling of heroic events like Homer's *Iliad* in Greek, Virgil's *Aeneid* in Latin, Dante's *Divine Comedy* in Italian and Firdausi's *Shahnama* in Persian. In English it has many forms : (*a*) it may be a simple narrative poem like Tennyson's *Princess* and *Maud*, and Chaucer's *Canterbury Tales* ; (*b*) it may be a romance dealing mainly with love and the exploits of knights, etc. Scott's

Lady of the Lake is an instance in point ; (*c*) lastly, it may be the epic proper like Milton's *Paradise Lost* and *Paradise Regained* (written in blank verse) and Pope's almost original translation of Homer's *Iliad* and *Odyssey*. Pope's *Rape of the Lock*, which might be termed a mock-epic, is still another sub-division of epic poetry. It is also called a mock-heroic poem.

(*iii*) The **lyric** is the most natural form of poetry. Its types are so varied that it is not easy to give a comprehensive definition of lyric poetry. It is distinct from dramatic and epic poetry in that whereas they are objective in their nature, *i.e.*, dealing mainly with extraneus matter, lyric poetry is subjective in its outlook, *i.e.*, dealing with the poet's personal feelings. Moreover, it must turn on some single thought, feeling or situation. Thus unity of impression is its further essential. It has also an intensity of emotion. Brevity, as compared to the epic and dramatic forms, is also regarded as one of its distinctive features. Thus a lyric is recognized by its subjectivity, unity, intensity and brevity. Here are its main sub-divisions :

(*a*) **Ballad** is the earliest form of English poetry for it came into being long before literary composition came into vogue. It tells a story in lyric form without any sort of moralization. Later it was produced as a literary form of which Coleridge's *Christabel*, and *The Rime of the Ancient Mariner* are examples. This form is generally composed in iambic trimeter, alternating or interspersed with iambic tetrameter.

(*b*) **Ode** is the most important type of lyric poetry. To the Greeks it meant a song of victory sung by a chorus but in English it is quite different. It is a dignified lyric on an elevated or contemplative theme and is not meant to be sung. It is quite long and is divided into stanzas. Keat's *Ode on a Grecian Urn* is a good example.

Sometimes, however, the Greek model is followed as by Gray in his *Bard*. This is called a Pindaric ode after the name of the famous Greek poet and is divided into three stanzas of unequal length known as strophe, antistrophe and epode. Strophe is sung by half the chorus moving across the stage, anti-strophe by the other half in the same way, and epode by the whole chorus together. But this form has not found much favour with English poets.

(*c*) **Sonnet** is a small love song of 14 lines written in iambic pentameter. The rhyme in Shakespeare is *ab cd cd ef ef gg*, but the commoner one is that adopted by Milton—*abba abba cdcdcd*.

(*d*) **Elegy** is a lyric mourning someone's death or, in extended sense, containing gloomy reflections on death. Milton's *Lycidas* belongs to the first type and Gray's *Elegy* to the second. These are the chief categories into which English poems fall, but it must be borne in mind that these divisions of lyric are not very hard and fast, and only give a general indication as to the nature of the poem.

30. Schools of Poetry. The genius of English poetry is essentially Romantic. The best periods and the greatest names in the history of English poetical literature are such as are imbued with the Romantic spirit. Only th eighteenth century broke away from this tradition and ushered in the Classical age but it failed to bear fruit. This age had so tried to curb the human spirit that soon there was a revolt against it and Romanticism resurged with added vigour. Thus during the last three-and-a-half centuries, the first and the third produced Romantic and the second Classical poetry. The present half-century has tried to effect a synthesis between the two schools. Nevertheless its bias is towards Romanticism.

What are the main characteristics of Romanticism? "The Romantic spirit," says Prof. Louis Cazamian, "can be defined as an accentuated predominance of emotional life provoked or directed by the exercise of imaginative vision, and in its turn stimulating and directing such exercise. Intense emotion coupled with an intense display of imagery such is the frame which supports and feeds Romantic poetry." The essentials of Romanticism are therefore flight of imagination and intensity of emotion. But that is not all. The Romantic poets are also great lovers of nature and humantity. They are mainly subjective in their outlook. This last quality led to the production of so much lyrical poetry.

The Romantic poets have also a freshness of diction. They were not bound down by the shackles of the heroic couplet, and employed a variety of metres. This relieved their verse of monotony and gave it new music.

The Classical poets, on the other hand, were impeded by adherence to rule, reverence for tradition and a high standard of technique. They led a revolt against the lose style, confused thoughts and far-fetched imagery of the Mataphysical poets. The heroic couplet was their chief vehicle for communication of thoughts which were mainly didactic and satirical. Intellect and criticism are the keynotes of their Muse just as emotion and imagination are those of Romanticism. Their poetry is of an objective nature and is moreover concerned with the civilized society of towns rather than the unpolished life of villages.

The modern poets are seeking to bring together the best features of both the Classical and Romantic schools of poetry.

They are convinced of the use to polish their style and are thus staging a come-back to [Classical proprieties in this respect, but, their spirit remains essentially Romantic.

31. Appreciation Though intuition has got such a lot to do with the understanding of a poem, the fact of the matter is that it provides no more than a basis for the appreciation of poetry, or, for the matter of that, of any piece of literature. Intuition can give us just a vague, hazy idea about the appeal of a poem and we can feel exhilerated, but to know exactly the cause of this appeal we have

to analyse the whole thing. For this purpose we have to look for certain points in the poem under study and then set out the relevant findings under each of these points

This analysis will comprise a clear comprehension of the poem, study of its style, evaluation of its subject-matter and a bid to see how far the poet has succeeded in producing the desired effect. For this purpose, we may set out to study the poem on the following lines :

(*i*) We shall write out the theme and the summary of the poem in a simple and lucid style including only the basic points and indispensable details, and cutting out everything else.

(*ii*) Now we shall proceed to study the style. First comes the language. Are the words taken from everyday speech making the style simple and natural, or are they ornate giving the diction an air of artificiality ? And is it concise and obscure, or verbose and boring ? What is the type of expressions used ? What are the rhetorical devices used by the poet ? What is the imagery like ?

(*iii*) What is the subject-matter of the poem like ? Is it subjective or objective ? If objective, how far does it conflict or is in consonance with the philosophical and scientific interpretation of the scheme of existence ? Does it teach a moral lesson and administer a spiritual tonic ? If subjective, how far is it saturated with intensity of emotion, depth of introspection and breadth of sympathy ? How has the poet interpreted life ? How has he responded to nature ? How does he destroy the old ugly world to create a new, beautiful and idealistic world ?

(*iv*) Finally, we shall try to see whether the poet has achieved any measure of success in recreating his experience in the reader's mind, in regenerating in him the same feeling which surged in his heart when he wrote that piece of poetry.

Such an analysis helping one towards an intelligent understanding of the poem is termed a critical appreciation and the major points which we have to seek in the course of this process have briefly been set out above.

EXERCISES

(*For* Board *Students*)

1. Discuss briefly the various forms of literature.
2. What is a Figure of Speech ? Explain the following terms :
   Simile, Metaphor, Imagery

(*For* University *Students*)

1. Name some of the books which have greatly influenced English literature. What is their theme ?
2. What is the difference between prose and poetry ?

CHAPTER XXXVII

PARAPHRASING & INTERPRETATION

1. **Test of Understanding** Present-day examinations rightly insist on testing the candidate's ability to paraphrase difficult passages, because there is nothing like a good paraphrase to reveal how well he grasps the purport of the given piece of writing and comprehends the true significance of words and phrases employed by the poet to convey his ideas to those who peruse his works with a view to seeking inspiration, guidance or pleasure from them.

Unless the reader is sure of the meaning of what the poet is assaying to communicate to him, he will not find it possible to respond to his call and the exquisite pieces of literature wrought in the form of those verses will fail to create in his mind the intended impression. This through no fault of the poet; since it is presupposed that in order to appreciate a piece of writing the reader must be conversant with the language in which it is couched. The working knowledge of language is thus the incantation without which one may in vain expect its literary treasures to throw their portals open for one's enjoyment.

2. **Difficulties.** Nevertheless, a lack of understanding of the English language is the very obstacle which foreign students encounter in the study of English poetry. They endeavour to cram the critical appreciations of the various poems contained in the anthology prescribed for them, learning the more important among them even by rote. This method of learning the way to appreciate poetry cannot be deprecated if it leads to developing one's critical ability; but it is an unfortunate fact that this assiduous labour learning bears no fruit and one is completely at sea when one comes across a new or unseen passage somewhere and is called upon to interpret it. Why so?

3. **Wrong Approach** The answer is not far to seek. The fault lies with the student's wrong approach to the subject of his study. He and his teachers are to blame for starting at the wrong end. They never pause for a moment to think, as no appreciation of anything is possible without a thorough understanding of it. If they had not jumped to the top and had patiently started at the bottom they would have found themselves on surer ground whence with diligence they could have progressed on the road to literary appreciation. An understanding of the right shades of the meanings of words most widely used in a language gives such an insight into the ideas of the talented writer who weaves them into a pattern of beauty as is prerequisite to any kind of criticism. We must there-

fore begin with the beginning and initiate our study of English poetry with a bid to paraphrase it correctly.

4. **How to write it**. This leads us to the question. How to write a good paraphrase ? And the answer can be succinctly put in these words. *Have a command of English which will enable you to (a) clearly understand the original, and (b) express its meaning correctly.* The guidance is brief, yet it is sure to produce the best of results. We shall, however, try to lay down some practical rules for the student's guidance to good paraphrasing and ask him to watch the pitfalls in the way of this work.

5. **Requisites and Rules**. A paraphrase, according to the derivation of the word, is a placing of the phraseology or words of the poem beside their interpretation. The word is a compound of the Greek *para* (meaning beside or alongside of) and *phrazo* (meaning to utter words). The whole word thus combines in English to express the idea of *the restatement of the sense of a passage in other words,* as the O.E.D. (*Oxford English Dictionary*) defines it. The dictionary definition stresses the points brought out in the above discussion, *viz.*, (*i*) *the understanding of the sense of the original, and* (*ii*) *its restatement in words other than those used in the original.* It is, therefore, an exercise both in the writing of English and in sympathetic understanding of the poet's thoughts and ideas. As such it is not only an aid to the appreciation of English poetry but also to the mastery of style and composition in this language. But it is by no means just a substitution of one word for another if the new rendering is not imbued with the spirit of the original. Unless one catches the mood the poet was trying to express in his verses, the paraphrase will turn out to be an insipid composition devoid of its aim and failing in its purpose to elicit the examinee's command of English.

6. **Central Idea**. The first thing for the person setting out to paraphrase a given piece of English poetry is to put himself in the poet's place in order to get at the central idea of the passage and pose the question : (*i*) What is the writer trying to say ? (*ii*) What feelings is he trying to arouse in the reader's mind ? To get at the correct answers to these questions you must read the passage carefully over and over again. The next step is to jot down the main stages in the march of the poet's idea. These stages will serve as points for drawing a graph that may help to fix up in your mind the course adopted by the poet for the development of his thought and devices resorted to for expressing the intensity of his feelings. It is only then that you can turn to all the colourful details that have combined to give charm to this bare outline, and make it a thing of beauty.

7. **Practical Rules**. These practical rules are of such importance that we must recapitulate them before proceeding further. The rules, briefly stated, are :

(*i*) **Read the passage several times** ;

(*ii*) **Note down the main points** ;

(*iii*) **Find out the current of thought running through these points to get at the poet's central idea.**

These three rules are true and infallible guides to the first part of the work we have set ourselves, *viz.*, the understanding of the sense of the original.

8. **Poetical Phraseology**. This much as to the central idea of the poet. But before we can commence the second part of the work, *i.e.*, the actual writing of the paraphrase, we have to remove some more snags from our path. These lie in the poet's diction and are inherent in verse owing to the rigid discipline of metre and rhyme. Poetry has to resort to certain devices which one seldom, if ever, meets in ordinary prose. *The first thing a paraphraser has to do is to render all peculiarly poetic words into expressions employed by normal, everyday speech.* Such words are numerous but the commonest among them are not large in number, and it should be quite helpful to the paraphraser if, instead of getting baffled every time such a word occurs in a piece of poetry, he learns them all at once or at least gets quite familiar with them. Below is given a list of such poetic words with their equivalents, as used in prose writing :

Poetic Word	Prose Equivalent	Poetic Word	Prose Equivalent
Abide	Stay	*Byre*	Cowshed
Accents	Words	*Chanticleer*	Cock
Alack	Alas	*Cheer*	Joy
Albeit	Although	*Clad*	Clothed
Amain	Violently (Forcibly.)	*Clomb*	Climbed
An if	If	*Clove*	Cleft, cut
Anent	About	*Combat*	Battle
Anon	Presently	*Dale*	Valley
Aught	Anything	*Damsel*	Girl
Avaunt	Begone	*Darkling*	In the dark
Bade	Told	*Darksome*	Dark
Bale	Evil, Sorrow	*Dauntless*	Fearless, Brave
Bard	Poet	*Denizen*	Dweller
Behest	Command	*Dire*	Serious, horrible
Billow	Wave	*Dole*	Sorrow
Bliss	Happiness, Joy	*Doleful*	Sorrowful
Boot	Profit, remedy	*Doth*	Does
Brand / *Blade*	Sword	*Drave*	Drove
		Dread	Dreadful
Brave	Smart, good-looking	*Drear*	Dreary
		E'en	Even

Poetic Word	Prose Equivalent
E'er	Ever
Eke	Also
Ere	Before
Erewhile	Lately
Erst	Formerly
Eve	Evening
Fare	Go, be
Fair	Beautiful
Foe *Foeman*	Enemy
Fond	Foolish
Forlorn	Desolate, lonely
Full	Very
Fume	Smoke
'Gainst	Against
'Gin	Begin
Goblet	Cup
Goodly	Fine, good
Groom	Bridegroom
Guerdon	Reward
Guile	Deceit
Guileless	Harmless, innocent
Gyves	Bonds, fetters
Hap	Chance
Haply	By chance
Hapless	Unfortunate
Hard by	Near to
Hest	Command
Hie	Hasten
Hist	Hush
Hoar *Hoary*	White
Hue	Colour
Ingrate	Ungrateful
Irate	Angry
Ire	Anger
Isle	Island
Jocund	Pleasant
Joyless	Unhappy

Poetic Word	Prose Epuivalent
Ken	Sight, Perception
Lay	Song, poem
Lea	Meadow
List	Listen, wish
Locks	Hair
Lone *Lonesome*	Lonely
Lorn	Desolate
Lovesome	Lovely
Lowly	Humble
Lust	Will, pleasure
Maid	Girl
Main	Sea
Mansion	Dwelling, house
Marge	Margin, bank
Martial	Warlike
Mead	Meadow
Meed	Reward
Might	Strength, power
Mine	My
Morn	Morning
Mount	Mountain
Mute	Silent
Natheless	Nevertheles
Naught	Nothing
'Neath	Beneath
Ne'er	Never
Nor...nor	Neither...nor
Numbers	Verse
Nuptials	Marriage
Nymph	Girl
Obscure	Darken
O'er	Over
Of old *Of yore*	In former or ancient times
Or ere *Or ever*	Before
Pleasance	Garden
Plenteous	Plentiful

Poetic Word	Prose Equivalent	Poetic Word	Prose Equivalent
Pinion	Wing	*Tarry*	Stay
Quaff	Drink	*Tourney*	Tournament
Quenchless	Unquenchable	*Tryst*	Meet
Quest	Search	*'Tween*	Between
Quoth	Said	*'Twixt*	Between
Rathe	Early	*Trow*	Believe, trust
Realm	Kingdom	*Vale*	Valley
Reck	Care	*Verdant*	Green
Recreant	Unfaithful	*Warble*	Sing
Rend	Tear	*Ware*	Aware
Right	Very	*Warrior*	Soldier
Roseate	Rosy	*Wave*	Sea, river
Rue	Suffer	*Wax*	Grow
Ruth	Pity	*Ween*	Think, suppose
Scribe	Writer	*Whilom*	Former, formerly
Seer	Prophet		
Smite	Strike	*Winsome*	Attractive
Sore	Sorely	*Wist*	Knew
Speed	Hasten, prosper	*Withal*	With, moreover
Spouse	Husband, wife	*Wondrous*	Wonderful
Steed	Horse	*Wont*	Accustomed
Stilly	Still, quiet	*Wot*	Know
Stout	Strong, bold	*Wis*	Know
Swain	Peasant, lover, shepherd	*Wrath*	Anger
		Yeoman	Peasant, soldier
Swart	Swarthy, dark	*Yon*	That
Sylvan	Woody, rustic	*Yonder*	That
Ta'en	Taken		

9. **Normal Prose Idiom.** The second thing a paraphraser will have to do is to rearrange the words in the normal prose idiom. This is not quite the simple task it appears to be at first sight, since not only the words have to be put in their normal order doing away with all inversions, but the omissions necessitated by metre have also to be supplied and all compressions like poetic epithetics expanded. All these things must be done as the task we have set before ourselves basically consists of changing the poetic diction into the ordinary prose form and getting rid in this process of metre and rhyme. The next step is the reduction of metaphor to simile in order to make the whole thing easily understood. Apostrophe and personification along with other figures of speech must similarly be done away with as they are almost unknown to normal speech.

10. **Faithful Rendering.** Having stripped the poetic diction

not only of its metrical form but of all its rhetorical trappings, we can safely embark on the actual work of paraphrasing, keeping always in mind that we are called upon not merely to change a word here and a word there leaving the rest of the original untouched but to render the whole thing, as faithfully of course as possible, in simple, everyday idiom and remove all tl e snags in the way of lucid understanding that the uninitiate may come across in the original. *The result must be a well-written whole in which the argument is put forth in a logical (as distinct from rhetorical) order, yet the whole reproduces the atmosphere of the original piece of writing we have paraphrased.*

11. Comprehension of the Original. *We must bear in mind that our aim is to facilitate the comprehension of the original and not to mutilate its beauty.* We are only out to make more intelligible what, owing to its beauty or majesty, had been somewhat abstruse in the original. There the poet was trying to recreate in us the depth of his feelings beauty of his images and grandeur of his ideas and present the whole thing with an ear to the musical qualities of the whole piece. But our primary aim is lucidity rather than music and beauty. So we imbibe his thoughts and then express them in our own words. However, there is a pitfall to be avoided. *We must not include in our rendering such ideas as neither stated nor implied in the original.*

12. Free rendering. A few words about the second part of the words heading this chapter. Modern examinations, especially in higher stages, prefer asking the candidate to interpret the passage freely rather than paraphrase it closely. Questions like (1) Render in your own words, (2) Express in simple prose, (3) Express the thought conveyed in these verses, (4) Give the story of the following poem or, the commonest and most important of them, all call for a free rendering with some exposition of the poet's ideas. The answers to such questions are basically similar to paraphrasing; only they are more detailed and less close to the phraseology of the original. The candidate is given more latitude in free interpretation and is expected to restate the argument of the original and set out its major details with enough clarity to impress them upon the reader's mind.

13. Prose Passages. Questions are occasionally set in the examination requiring the candidates to paraphrase or summarize a given prose passage. The method to be adopted by the examinee answering such questions is in no wise different from what we have discussed in the case of poetry. One should first try to get at the central idea of the passage. Then bearing the idea in mind, one should rewrite the given passage in as simple a language as possible avoiding all rhetorical devices used in the original. One should take good care neither to leave out any idea contained in the original nor to incorporate any idea that was not there originally. It is further necessary to avoid all comment and all reference to the author, like saying, "The author (or the poet) is of the

opinion," or "The fact of the matter is that it is hard to agree with the author (or the poet) when he says......"

14. Resume. The points brought out in this discourse on paraphrasing and interpretation may thus be summed up.

(a) Paraphrasing forms quite an important part of presentday examinations in poetry ; but free interpretation is commoner even than close paraphrase ;

(b) The paraphraser or interpreter is called upon to restate clearly the sense and argument of the original, keeping sufficiently close to its phraseology.

The most important of the practical rules for paraphrasing are as follows :

(i) *Read through the whole passage a number of times so as to get the hang of it ;*

(ii) *Put the argument in logical order ;*

(iii) *Divest it of metre and figures of speech ;*

(iv) *Substitute common expressions of everyday speech for poetic diction ;*

(v) *Supply all omissions and remove every ambiguity ;*

(vi) *Rewrite the whole thing in simple words making it more intelligible without losing its force and beauty ;*

(vii) *Avoid the inclusion of such ideas as are neither stated nor implied in the original.*

15. Examples of Paraphrasing. A careful study of the following examples should help fix up in the student's mind the rules given above.

Example 1. Milton ! thou shouldst be living at this hour ;
England hath need of thee : she is a fen
Of stagnant waters : altar, sword, and pen,
Fireside, the heroic wealth of hall and bower,
Have forfeited their ancient English dower
Of inward happiness.

—Wordsworth

Paraphrase. Milton ! you should be living at this time as England has need of you. She is like a fen of stagnant waters (full of moral corruption, spiritual stagnation and waste). The clergy, the soldiers, the students, the English domestic life, the knights and ladies with their bravery and wealth, have all lost their old English heritage of inner happiness.

Example 2. This is the month, and this the happy morn,
Wherein the Son of Heaven's eternal king,
Of wedded Maid and Virgin Mother born,
Our great redemption from above did bring ;
For so the early sages once did sing......

—Milton

Paraphrase. This is the month and this is the happy morning on which the son of the eternal King of Heaven (Jesus Christ), born of the married Maid and Virgin Mother, brought from Heaven our great ransom. For thus did the sacred Hebrew prophets once sing.

Example 3. The glories of our blood and state
Are shadows, not substantial things ;
There is no armour against Fate ;
Death lays his icy hand on kings,
Sceptre and crown
Must tumble down,
And in the dust be equal made
With the poor crooked scythe and spade.

—Shirley.

Paraphrase. Nobility of birth and exalted rank of which men so proudly boast, are mere illusions, and quickly pass away. There is no protection against the common fate of all mankind—death. It does not spare even kings. Death is a great leveller ; it destroys all artificial distinctions of birth and rank by making the proud kings lie side by side with the humblest and poorest of their subjects in the grave.

Example 4. How happy is he born or taught,
That serveth not another's will ;
Whose armour is his honest thought,
And simple truth his highest skill ?
Whose passions not his masters are,
Whose soul is still prepared for death,
Untied unto the world with care
Of princes' grace or vulgar breath

—Henry Wotton.

Paraphrase. Happy is he who, because of inborn disposition or careful upbringing, does not serve the will of others. He who cherishes honest and sincere thoughts in his mind, is really happy because his sincere thoughts protect his mind from harbouring any evil ideas and thus act as a defensive armour against all evil thoughts entering his mind. Such a man takes pains to speak the plain and unvarnished truth and this is the greatest skill he possesses.

Happy is he who is not a slave to his passions, but exercises a perfect control over them. Happy is he who is always prepared to welcome death and for whom death has lost all its terrors. Happy is he who is not devoted too much to the world and its cares and anxieties. Truly happy is he who does not hanker after favours from princes and who does not pine for winning public fame or popular applause.

Example 5. If there were dreams to sell,
Merry and sad to tell,

And the crier rung the bell,
  What would you buy ?
A cottage lone and still,
  With bowers nigh,
Shadowy, my woes to still,
  Until I die.
Such pearl from Life's fresh crown
Fain would I shake me down,
Were dreams to have at will,
This would best heal my ill,
  This would I buy.

Paraphrase. If a pedlar rang his bell and offered dreams, happy as well as sad ones, for sale, what kind of dream would you buy ?

I would like to buy one dream. I would like to live in a retired cottage surrounded and enclosed by green, shady trees. There I would like to live till my death and soothe my grieved heart. The lonely cottage will act like a balm to my wounded heart. This is the precious gift I want from life. If I were to have dreams at will, this dream I would buy because it would heal my wounds and sweeten my life.

Example 6. Ah, love, let us be true
To one another ! for the world, which seems
To lie before us like a land of dreams,
So various, so beautiful, so new
Hath really neither joy, nor love, nor light,
Nor certitude, nor peace, nor help for pain ;
And we are here as on a darkling plain
Swept with the confused alarms of struggle and flight,
Where ignorant armies clash by night.

—Matthew Arnold.

Paraphrase. Let us be true to the spirit of Love, for the world which seems to lie before us is like a dream-land, fascinating but delusive, unreal and unrealisable. There is in the world, though it appears to be full of variety and beauty and freshness, neither everlasting joy nor unchangeable love. We find nothing of this world certain, our restless souls know neither peace nor help for suffering and agonies. In this world which is full of moral darkness, we are like the two armies that struggle and fight against each other knowing not friend from foe and filling the plain with their confused din.

Example 7. Dear is the memory of our wedded lives,
And dear the last embraces of our wives.
And their warm tears : but all hath suffered change ;
For surely now our household hearths are cold ;
Our sons inherit us, our looks are strange,
And we should come like ghosts to trouble joy.
Or else the island princes over-bold,
Have eat out substance and the minstrel sings

Before them of the ten-years' war in Troy,
And our great deeds, as half-forgotten things.
—Tennyson.

Paraphrase. The memory of our married lives is very dear to us. We think with affection of the last embraces of our wives and the salt tears which they shed at our parting. But things have changed now. Our people must have given us up for lost and there is no hope of any domestic happiness for us. Our sons have now become heads of the family. We have changed very much in our appearance and if we go back we shall simply disturb their happiness like so many ghosts of the dead ; or, it is likely the princes of the islands near our home have conquered our country and seized our possessions, and taking us for dead, the minstrel is perhaps singing before them of our triumphs and achievements at the battle of Troy, which are to them like things half-forgotten.

Example 8. O for a draught of vintage, that hath been
Cooled a long age in the deep delved earth.
Tasting of Flora and the country green,
Dance, and Provencal song, and sunburnt mirth !
O for a beaker full of the warm South,
Full of the true, the blushful Hippocrene,
With beaded bubbles winking at the brim,
And purple-stained mouth ;
That I might drink and leave the world unseen,
And with thee fade awas into the forest dim.
—Keats.

Paraphrase. How I wish for a drink of wine which has been left to mature for ages in some deeply dug underground cellar. Tasting this wine I hope to be reminded of Flora—the Roman goddess of Spring—and flowers whose festivities are celebrated with wine ; and of the village green where those festivities are held and of dances and songs and merriment of the South of France, which is the birth-place of both poetry and wine, and where the people are sunburnt on account of the warm sun. I long for a cup of this southern wine full to the brim and staining the mouth of the beaker red and with bubbles like beads rising and bursting at the brim which will be a true source of poetic inspiration like the magical water of the fountain Hippocrene. I long for this wine so that I may drink it and forget this world, and leaving it without being noticed melt away with you (the Nightingale) into the dim forest.

Example 9. *Duke Frederick.* What is thy name, young man ?
Orlando. Orlando, my liege ; the youngest son of Sir Rowland de Boys.

Duke Frederick. I would thou hadst been son to some man else ;
The world esteem'd thy father honourable,
But I did find him still mine enemy ;
Thou shouldst have better pleased me with this deed,

Hadst thou descended from another house.
But fare thee well, thou art a gallant youth ;
I wouldst thou hadst told me of another father.
—Shakespeare : *As You Like It.*

(*Note* : Here is a passage from a play. Such passages are easier than passages of poetry. One should bear in mind 'the point' of the speech delivered. In a paraphrase the point should be clearly brought out. One should not concentrate on the details).

Paraphrase. *Duke Federick.* What is your name, young man ?

Orlando. Orlando, my sovereign ; I am the youngest son of Sir Rowland de Boys.

Duke F. I wish you had been the son of somebody else. Your father was in the estimation of the world a man of honour, but I always found him to be my enemy. I should have been more pleased with your performance, if you had come from another family. However, farewell to you : you are a brave, spirited young fellow. I wish you had told me that somebody else were your father.

Example 10. *Jaques.* All the world's a stage.
And all the men and women merely players :
They have their exits and their entrances ;
And one man in his time plays many parts,
His acts being seven ages. At first the infant.
Mewling and puking in the nurse's arms,
And then the whining school-boy, with his satchel
And shining morning face, creeping like snail
Unwilling to school. And then the lover,
Sighing like furnace, with a woeful ballad
Made to his mistress' eyebrow. Then a soldier,
Full of strange oaths and bearded like a pard,
Jealous in honour, sudden and quick in quarrel,
Seeking the bubble reputation
Even in the cannon's mouth. And then the justice
In fair round belly with capon lined,
With eyes severe and beard of formal cut,
Full of wise saws and modern instances,
And so he plays his part. The sixth age shifts
Into the lean and slipper'd pantaloon
With spectacles on nose and pouch on side,
His youthful hose, well saved, a world too wide
For his shrunk shanks, and his big manly voice,
Turning again toward childish treble, pipes
And whistles in his sound. Last scene of all,
That ends this strange eventful history,
Is second childishness and mere oblivion,
Sans teeth, sans eyes, sans taste, sans everything.
—*As You Like It.*

Paraphrase. All the world is a stage, and the men and women are merely actors. They enter the stage and go out of it ; and one man in his lifetime appears in many roles, his life being a drama of seven acts. At first there is the infant crying and vomiting in the nurse's arms. And then comes the grumbling boy, who with his bag and face shining due to the early morning wash, creeps on unwillingly to school as slowly as a snail. Then there is the lover, heaving sighs like a furnace and writing a sad ballad in honour of the eyebrow of his mistress. We have then the soldier, uttering frequently monstrous oaths and wearing a beard like a leopard, very sensitive on the point of honour, apt to pick up a quarrel, and ready to risk life at the mouth of the cannon in search of a fleeting reputation. Next comes the judge who looks like a substantial man with his well-rounded belly, his income being well supplemented with bribes, who has a very severe expression in his eyes, and wears a well-trimmed beard, and is full of wise sayings and commonplace illustrations. There he plays his part. The sixth age transforms a man into a lean, shambling comic figure with spectacles on, and a pouch on one side ; the hose which he used in his youth being now utilized, though it is much too big for his withered legs ; and his sonorous manly voice, now sinking into the shrill accents of a child. The last scene of this wonderful, chequered career is the second childhood, attended by total forgetfulness of the past, and with all the senses, teeth, eyes, taste, everything decaying.

Example 11. Give thy thoughts no tongue,
Nor any unproportioned thought his act,
Be thou familiar, but by no means vulgar.
Those friends thou hast, and their adoption tried ;
Grapple them to thy soul with hoops of steel ;
But do not dull thy palm with entertainment
Of each new hatched, unfledged comrade. Beware
Of entrance to a quarrel ; but, being in,
Bear't that the opposed may beware of thee.
Give every man thy ear, but few thy voice ;
Take each man's censure, but reserve thy judgment.
Costly thy habit as thy purse can buy,
But not expressed in fancy : rich, not gaudy ;
For the apparel oft proclaims the man.
Neither a borrower nor a lender be ;
For loan oft loses both itself and friend,
And borrowing dulls the edge of husbandry.
This above all,—to thine own self be true,
And it must follow, as the night the day,
Thou canst not then be false to any man.

—Shakespeare : *Hamlet*.

Paraphrase. Be not too ready to utter your thoughts, and do not do anything without due deliberation. Mix freely and easily with your acquaintances ; but avoid the familiarity that breeds

contempt. Bind to your heart by the strongest ties the friends whom you have tried and found faithful, but be careful not to make your friendship too common by admitting everybody who shakes hands with you into the fold of your friendship. Be not easily provoked to take part in a quarrel, but if you do become entangled in one, conduct yourself in such a way that your opponent may beware of you. Listen attentively to what every one has to say, but tell your own secrets to few. Listen to each man's opinion, but be in no hurry to express your own. Dress as expensively as you can possibly afford, but without undue ostentation, your clothes being costly but not showy, for a man's character is often shown by his clothes. Be neither a borrower nor a lender. Lending money frequently results in the loss, both of the money lent and of the friend to whom it is lent, while getting into debt is one of the chief obstacles to economy. But most important of all—be true to yourself. Then, as surely as the night comes after the day, it will follow that you cannot be false to any man.

Example 12. The lunatic, the lover, and the poet,
Are of imagination all compact :
One sees more devils than vast hell can hold ;
That is the madman : the lover, all as frantic,
Sees Helen's beauty in a brow of Egypt :
The poet's eye, in a fine frenzy rolling,
Doth glance from heaven to earth, from earth to heaven.
And, as imagination bodies forth
The forms of things unknown, the poet's pen
Turns them to shapes, and gives to airy nothing
A local habitation and a name.
Such tricks hath strong imagination,
That, if it would but apprehend some joy,
It comprehends some bringer of that joy ;
Or in the night, imagining some fear,
How easy is a bush supposed a bear !

—Shakespeare : *A Midsummer Night's Dream.*

Paraphrase. There are three classes of people who seem to be entirely dominated by their imagination—madmen, poets and lovers. The madman has such a seething brain, that he sees more devils than the vast hell can hold ; the lover, quite as mad, finds (ideal) beauty in the dark face of a gipsy ; while the poet, rolling in the ecstasy of inspiration, gazes from heaven to earth and from earth to heaven, and just as our imagination calls up images of objects which we may never have seen, so his poems embody for us the conception of his quick and delicate fancies giving form and substance to those elusive images which are the creations of his romantic brain. Strong imagination possesses such feats of conjuring that if its intention is merely to conceive some joy, it necessarily conceives some particular form or person as the one who will bring that joy, or if it imagines terror, then imagination can fashion forms of dread from

the most innocent surroundings. The terrified mind will imagine a bear in every bush.

Example 13. It is not growing like a tree,
In bulk, doth makes Man better be:
Or standing long an oak, three hundred year
To fall a log at last, dry, bald, and sere ;
A lily of a day
Is fairer far in May,
Although it fall and die that night ;
It was the plant and flower of light.
In small proportions we just beauties see ;
And in short measures life may perfect be.

—Ben Jonson.

Paraphrase. A man is not like a tree. An oak tree grows to a huge size, and lives for hundreds of years, only to fall at last to the ground, a withered, dry and leafless log. Even so, a man may live for a long term of years without becoming noble in character ; he has acquired bodily strength, but has not become of better nature.

On the contrary, Nature shows us that the smallest of her creatures, though they are short-lived, may be perfect and beautiful in every way. A lily that blossoms in summer though it lives but for a few hours, is far more beautiful than the great oak and during its brief life, its radiant whiteness sheds joy and cheerfulness on all around. So men though they may live for a short period can make their lives beautiful and perfect by truly noble deeds.

Example 14. This was the noblest Roman of them all ;
All the conspirators, save only he,
Did what they did in envy of great Caesar :
He only, in a general honest thought
And common good to all, made one of them.
His life was gentle, and the elements
So mix'd in him that nature might stand up
And say at all the world 'This was a man !'

—Shakespeare : *Julius Caesar*.

Paraphrase. He was by far the best and most honourable Roman amongst them all. All the other conspirators were induced to do what they did by jealousy of Caesar's greatness. In his case it was not so. Real desire for the public good, and his own truthful simplicity of character and purpose, were the only reasons for his becoming associated with such men. His life was gentle and his character was so finely tempered (the various humours being in just proportion and forming a balanced whole) that nature might have proclaimed to all the world that he was a man indeed.

Example 15. I stood tiptoe upon a little hill,
The air was cooling, and so very still,
That the sweet buds, which with a modest pride
Pull droopingly, in slanting curve aside,

Their scanty-leaved and finely-tapering stems,
Had not yet lost their starry diadems
Caught from the early sobbing of the moon.
The clouds were pure and white as flocks new shorn,
And fresh from the clear brook; and sweetly they slept
On the blue fields of heaven, and then there crept
A little noiseless noise among the leaves
Born of the very sigh that silence heaves;
For not the faintest motion could be seen
Of all the shades that slanted o'er the green

—Keats.

Paraphrase. I stood very quiet and expectant on the top of a hill. The cool air was so still that the sweet-smelling flowers, which gently bend to one side and which had a few leaves and stems rising to a point, had not been able to shake off the diamond-like dew-drops which had fallen on them early in the morning. The clouds were as pure and white as sheep newly shorn and coming freshly washed from the clear stream. They seemed to be sleeping sweetly in the blue sky. The only noise that could be heard there was an inaudible whisper as if silence herself were sighing. Otherwise there was not the least motion and the shades that were cast by trees over the green meadow did not stir at all.

Example 16. What is this life, if full of care,
We have no time to stand and stare?
No time to stand beneath the boughs,
And stare as long as sheep or cows,
No time to see, when woods we pass,
Where squirrels hide their nuts in grass,
No time to see, in broad daylight,
Streams full of stars, like skies at night,
No time to turn at Beauty's glance,
And watch her feet, how they can dance.

—Walter de la Mare.

Paraphrase. It is but a dull and monotonous life if we are so engrossed in worldly cares and material pursuits that we can find no time to stand and look idly about us. Life is not worth much if we get no leisure to stand beneath a tree and enjoy the sight of the sheep and cows grazing in the pastures. Life is not worth living at all if, when we pass through a forest, we are not attracted by the squirrels hiding their nuts in grass, and charmed by the sight of the ripples upon a stream like the stars of night twinkling in the sky. If we are not overpowered by the looks of a beautiful woman, and do not feel overjoyed at the rhythmic dance of her movements, we have missed the glory of life.

Example 17. Just for a handful of silver he left us,
Just for a riband to stick in his coat—
Found the one gift of which fortune bereft us,

Lost all the others she lets us devote ;
They, with the gold to give, doled him out silver,
So much was theirs who so little allowed :
How all our copper had gone for his service !
Rags—were they purple, his heart had been proud !
We that had loved him so, followed him, honoured him
Lived in his mild and magnificent eye,
Learned his great language, caught his clear accents,
Made him our pattern to live and to die !

—Browning.

Paraphrase. He left us just for a paltry sum of money and meaningless titles. By going over to the other party he got money with which fortune had not favoured us. But he lost all other gifts such as the virtues of truthfulness, sincerity, patriotism, love and freedom, which animated our hearts. They, who had enough of gold to shower upon him, allowed him only an insignificant sum of money in the shape of silver because they did not appreciate his services highly. Wealth they had enough and to spare, but they gave him only little because he was not the idol of their hearts. But we had laid all—howsoever small the sum we possessed—at the service of our leader.

He ought to have felt proud of the rags we offered him. He ought to have regarded them as rich and gorgeous garments since we gave them with sincere hearts. We ever loved him, followed him and honoured him. We ever lived and prospered under his gentle and kindly influence. We learnt the magnificent language in which he expressed himself. We made him our ideal, and ever tried to imitate his example both in life and in death.

Example 18. O wild West Wind, thou breath of Autumn's being,
Thou from whose unseen presence the leaves dead
Are driven, like ghosts from an enchanter fleeing,
Yellow, and black and pale, and hectic red,
Pestilence-stricken multitudes ! O Thou
Who chariotest to their dark wintry bed
The winged seeds, where they lie cold and low,
Each like a corpse within its grave, until
Thine azure sister of the spring shall blow
Her clarion o'er the dreaming earth, and fill
(Driving sweet buds like flocks to feed in air)
With living hues and odours plain and hill
Wild Spirit, which art moving everywhere ;
Destroyer and preserver ; hear, O hear !

—Shelley.

Paraphrase. O you Wild West Wind, you are the omnipresent spirit of Autumn. By your unseen power the autumnal leaves are scattered, as ghosts fly before the wand of a magician. The dead leaves are of all colours—yellow, black, pale, and unhealthy

ed, and they run away like multitudes attacked by pestilence. It s you who convey the flying seeds to their cold resting places below the earth where they lie each like a corpse within its grave, till Spring, your azure sister, will come and the light e ist wind sound her shrill note over the sleeping earth, and drive the buds into the open air as flocks are driven by the shepherds, and fill plain and hill with living colours and odours. O wild spirit of the West Wind you who are present everywhere, and are at once the destroyer and preserver of life, O hear what I have to say.

16 **Prose Passages**. Here are some prose passages with their paraphrase :

Example 1 The nineteenth century's own ideals have not proved so worshipful as it imagined. If the press diffuses l ght, it can also diffuse darkness. If science as a maid-of-all-work is a success, science as an interpreter of the mystery of the universe is a dismal failure. Even her immense practical boons only serve to amplify our senses and increase our speed. They cannot increase our happiness. Giants suffer as well as dwarfs, and the soul may sit lonely and sad, surrounded by mechanical miracles.

Parapharase. Things for which the nineteenth century is praised have not proved to be unmixed blessings. Take the case of the press. If it is the vehicle of correct opinions, it can also disseminate falsehood. Again, if electricity can do everything for us and help a good deal in everyday life, it has not been successful in solving the mystery of life and death. Scientific discoveries have added to our material comforts, but have they bestowed mental peace on us ? Though surrounded by mechanical miracles, we are as much a prey to fears and doubts now as our forefathers were in days gone by. Though, in view of our scientific discoveries, we regard ourselves as giants and our forefathers as dwarfs yet our souls like theirs know no peace.

Example 2. Men, my dear, are very queer animals, a mixture of horse-nervousness, ass-stubbornness and camel-malice—with an angel bobbing about unexpectedly like an apple in the posset, and when they can do exactly as they please, they are very hard to drive. (*Panjab : B.A., B.Sc.*)

Paraphrase. Men are very strange creatures ; they are a cross between animals and angels. At times they are timid, obstinate and malignant, and in this respect they are no better than animals. But at other times they reveal their angelic nature. It is very difficult to force them to a particular line of action.

Example 3. The ethics of the commercial person bid him give as little as he can to the public, and take as much as he possibly can from them ; the ethics of the artist bid him put as much of himself as he can in every piece of goods he makes. The commercial person, therefore, is in this position, that he is dealing with a public of

enemies ; the artist, on the contrary, with a public of friends and neighbours. (*Panjab : B.A. B.Sc.*)

Paraphrase. It is the policy of the commercial person to give as little as possible to the public and get as much from the public as he can, to get the maximum of profit from the world with the minimum of outlay. The artist, on the contrary, gives his best to the public, gives all that he can in every article he makes. The business man thinks that the world is inhabited by his enemies, whom he has to exploit, while the artist thinks that the world consists of friends and neighbours whom it is his business to love. Thus exploitation is the watchword of the former ; sympathy the watchword of the latter.

EXERCISES

Note. In the following exercises the central ideas have been given for the facility of the students.

(*For* **Board** *Students*)

1. A slumber did my spirit seal ;
I had no human fears ;
She seem'd a thing that could not feel
The touch of earthly years.
No mention has she now, no force
She neither hears nor sees ;
Roll'd round in earth's diurnal course
With rocks, and stones, and trees ! —Wordsworth.

(**Central Idea**. The poet describes Lucy who is dead. Now she belongs to the dead, and is beyond all feelings and sufferings. She has become a part of the immutable scheme of things, and is rolling round the sun with rocks and stones and trees. Though the language of this passage is simple, the ideas are not so. We have to expand it in paraphrasing)

2. **Rubaiyat of Omar Khayyam of Naishapur**.

Iram indeed is gone with all its Rose,
And Jamshyd's Sev'n-ring'd Cup where no one knows ;
But still the Vine her ancient Ruby yields.
And still a Garden by the Water blows.

And David's Lips are lock't ; but in divine
High-piping Pehlevi, with 'Wine ! Wine ! Wine !'
'*Red* Wine !'—the Nightingale cries to the Rose
That yellow Cheek of hers to incarnadine.

Come, fill the Cup, and in the Fire of Spring
The Winter Garment of Repentance fling ;
The Bird of Time has but a little way
To fly—and Lo ! the Bird is on the Wing.

—FitzGerald.

(**Central Idea**. The poet describes how beautiful and glorious things pass away. Yet the wine remains, and the Nightingale

sings. Therefore, let us not care for the past or have regrets. Time is flying away. Let us make the most of it by drinking while we can).

3. The fountains mingle with the river,
   And the rivers with the ocean ;
The winds of heaven mix for ever
   With a sweet emotion ;
Nothing in the world is single ;
   All things by a law divine
In one another's being mingle :—
   Why not I with thine ?
See the mountains kiss high heaven,
   And the waves clasp one another ;
No sister flower would be forgiven,
   If it disdained its brother ;
And the sunlight clasps the earth,
   And the moonbeams kiss the sea :—
What are all these kissings worth,
   If thou kiss not me ?

(**Central Idea**. Nothing in the world is single. God has made everything mingle with another. The fountains mingle with the river which in its turn mixes with the sea, the winds constantly mix with one another, the waves embrace one another, the flowers kiss one another, the moonbeams touch the surface of the ocean. Let me, therefore, kiss you.)

4. Heaven from all creatures hides the book of fate,
All but the page prescribed, their present state :
From brutes what men, from men what spirits know;
Or who could suffer being here below ?
The lamb thy riot dooms to bleed to-day,
Had he thy reason, would be skip and play ?
Pleas'd to the last, he crops the flow'ry food,
And licks the hand just rais'd to shed his blood.
Oh, blindness to the furture ! kindly giv'n,
That each may fill the circle mark'd by Heav'n,
Who sees with equal eye, as God of all,
A hero perish, or a sparrow fall.

—Pope. *(Panjab : Inter.)*

(**Central Idea**. God in His mercy conceals the future from all His creatures. He hides from the animals what men know, and He hides from men what the angels know. For example, a lamb not gifted with human reason, plays and gambols merrily even on the day it is going to be sacrificed. It grazes contentedly in the flowery meadow and even licks the hand of the butcher. God has concealed from us the future so that we might fulfil our duty in that sphere of life to which He has appointed us.)

5. Benevolence is not in word and in tongue, but in deed and in truth. It is a business with men as they are, and with human

life as drawn by the rough hand of experience. It is a duty which you must perform at the call of principle, though there be no choice of eloquence to give splendour to your exertions, and no music of poetry to lead your willing footsteps through the bowers of enchantment. Benevolence is not merely a feeling, but a principle ; not a dream of rapture for the fancy to indulge in, but a business for the hand to execute.

Central Idea. Benevolence lies not in what one *feels*, but in what one *does*. It must proceed from one's knowledge and experience of human life, and from the principles of one's conduct. Thoughts and fine words are of no value unless they are followed by good deeds.

(*For* **University** *Students*).

1. Alas ! they had been friends in youth ;
But whispering tongues can poison truth,
And constancy lives in realms above,
And life is thorny, and youth is vain,
And to be wroth with one we love
Doth work like madness in the brain.
And thus it chanced, as I divine,
With Roland and Sir Leoline.
Each spake words of high disdain
And insult to his heart's best brother ;
They parted—ne'er to meet again !
But never either found another
To free the hollow heart from paining ;
They stood aloof, the scars remaining,
Like cliffs which had been rent asunder—
A dreary sea now flows between,
But neither heat nor frost nor thunder
Shall wholly do away, I ween,
The marks of that which once hath been.

—Coleridge : *Christabel*

Central Idea. The poet at first says that life is such that even the best friends may quarrel and part, and become bitter enemies. This is what happened with Sir Roland and Sir Leoline. Yet they felt the want of each other all through their lives. The simile of two cliffs rent by an avalanche is particularly effective.)

2. Plainness and clearness without shadow of stain,
Clearness divine !
Ye Heavens, whose pure dark regions have no sign
Of languor ; though so calm, and though so great
Are yet untroubled and unpassionate ;
Who, though so noble, share in the world's toil,
And though so task d, keep free from dust and soil ;
I will not say that your mild deeps retain
A tinge, it may be, of their silent pain
Who have long'd deeply once, and long'd in vain ;

But I will rather say that you remain
A world above man's head, to let him see
How boundless might his soul's horizons be,
How vast, yet of what clear transparency.
How it were good to sink there, and breathe free.
How high a lot to fill
Is left to each man still.

—Matthew Arnold.

(**Central Idea**. The poet looks up at the sky and finds it clear from all stains, serene and lofty. He imagines that the heavens above our head do not have even a tinge of human pain or want. The heavens are there above us to show us how lofty and boundless and clear our possibilities are.)

3. Rejoice we are allied
To That which doth provide
And not partake, effect and not receive!
A spark disturbs our clod;
Nearer we hold of God
Who gives, than of His tribes that take, I must believe.
Then, welcome each rebuff
That turns earth's smoothness rough,
Each sting that bids nor sit nor stand but go!
Be our joys three-parts pain!
Strive, and hold cheap the strain;
Learn, nor account the pang; dare, never grudge the throe!

—R. Browning.

(**Central Idea**. The poet wants us to rejoice in the fact that God is providing for us all the time. A spark from God kindles us to a strange ecstasy. We should then welcome all the toils and troubles of life. For all the strains that we suffer bring us nearer to our goal. They disturb us to exalt us.)

4. When I consider how my light is spent
Ere half my days, in this dark world and wide,
And that one Talent which is death to hide,
Lodg'd with me useless, though my soul more bent
To serve therewith my Maker, and present
My true account, lest He returning chide,
'Doth God exact day labour, light denied?'
I fondly ask. But Patience to prevent
That murmur, soon replies: God doth not need
Either man's work or His own gifts. Who best
Bear his mild yoke, they serve Him best. His state
Is kingly; thousands at His bidding speed,
and post o'er land or ocean without rest,
They also serve who only stand and wait.

—Milton.

(**Central Idea**. In the first eight lines Milton thinks that he may perhaps be punished by God when he returns to heaven for not having made proper use of the gift of sight bestowed upon him. He recalls the story of the Bible where the master who had given his servant Talents at his departure punished him on his return on finding that the servant had not increased the talents given to him. In the last six lines the poet says that God does not stand in need of man's services or any recompense for the talents bestowed upon him. Not only those people who can actively work serve Him, but also those who resign themselves patiently to the will of God.)

5. What though the field be lost ?
All is not lost—the unconquerable will,
And study of revenge, immortal hate,
And courage never to submit or yield ;
And what is else not to be overcome.
That glory never shall his wrath or might
Extort from me. To bow and sue for grace
With suppliant knee, and deify his power
Who, from the terror of this arm, so late
Doubted his Empire—that were low indeed :
That were an ignominy and shame beneath
This downfall —Milton : *Paradise Lost*.

(**Central Idea**. Satan is thus cheering Beelzebub in Hell. He was defeated by God and thrown into Hell. But he would never submit to God. That would be very base. Though his place in heaven was lost, his will was still unconquerable.)

6. The fowls of heaven,
Tamed by the cruel season, crowd around
The winnowing store, and claim the little boon
Which Providence assigns them. One alone,
The redbreast sacred to the household gods,
Wisely regardful of the embroiling sky,
In joyless fields and thorny thickets leaves
His shivering mates and pays to trusted man
His annual visit. Half-afraid, he first
Against the window beats ; then, brisk, alights
On the warm hearth : then, hopping o'er the floor,
Eyes all the smiling family askance
And pecks and starts and wonders where he is—
Till, more familiar grown, the table-crumbs
Attract his slender feet. —Thomson : *Winter*.

(**Central Idea**. In winter the birds have a very bad time. Usually they do not come near human dwellings. But one bird, Robin Redbreast trusts men. It enters the room and picks up the crumbs from the table, emboldened by the friendliness of the inmates. This is a simple passage. 'The embroiling sky' means 'the sky full of driving clouds.')

7. Great as man is, he may still be greater ; for he is capable of improvement to an extent of which he can form no adequate conception. The flowers that bloom in our gardens are not more beautiful than those that grew in Eden The sun does not shine more brightly on us than he did on Adam. The sea is not more grand now than it was when the old Phoenicians disturbed its stillness. 'All material things soon reach a point beyond which they cannot go. Instinct grows apace, and the animals are soon complete in all their faculties and powers. It is different with man : he goes on improving. Ten thousand monuments attest his progress. Heroes may sigh for more worlds to conquer, but the world of Mind is without limit. The more we learn, the less is our labour and the greater our progress.

(**Central Idea**. Man is capable of making progress, unlike all other things in nature which remain the same as they were long ago. The lower animals are not capable of improving their faculties ; but man goes on improving. He goes on, ever making progress. There is no limit to man's mental progress.

CHAPTER XXXVIII

EXPLANATION WITH REFERENCE TO THE CONTEXT

1. Explanation and Paraphrase. Though not falling within the purview of English Paper 'B,' explanations with reference to the context form an integral part of the papers on text. It is, therefore, in the fitness of things that the student should be given an idea of what is expected of him in answers to such questions. What must be made clear to him at the very outset is that an explanation is not the same thing as a mere paraphrase or unembellished interpretation. A paraphrase, as explained at length in the previous chapter, is just a faithful rendering of the original without any attempt to explain the why and wherefore of things stated therein. In a paraphrase we just say what the author had said in the original, leaving out nothing that he said and including nothing that he did not say. What is more, we cannot make even the mildest reference to the author of the original. But what is taboo in the paraphrase is just the *sine qua non* of explanation. And an explanation does not end at that. We have to supply information and add comments which go much further.

2. What constitutes an explanation? The explanation of a passage with reference to the context comprises three parts, none of which can be omitted without diminishing the value of the explanation. The three parts are:

(*a*) **Reference to the context**;

(*b*) **Explanation of the poet's central idea with suitable comments**;

(*c*) **Notes on phraseology.**

Following is an exposition of the requirements of each part.

(*a*) **Context**. The reference to the context does not mean a mere mention of the title of the poem, essay or book from which a particular excerpt is taken; what is necessary is to indicate the **context** in which it occurs. The word *context* is of Latin derivation. It denotes "what precedes and (or) follows a word or passage, especially as throwing light on its meaning." The dictionary definition of the term should make the student realize the nature of the work he may be called upon to undertake. He is expected to mention the general trend of the author's argument, point out what he was driving at in the lines immediately preceding it, and make a light reference to what he goes on to say in the lines that directly follow it.

☞ **The students must not lose sight of the fact that no explanation of a passage is worth the name without reference to**

the context in which that passage occurs. They are expected to give this reference, even when the examiner does not ask for it in so many words. They can drop this reference only at the cost of valuable marks. Here are some examples of such reference :

(*i*) Quips and Cranks and Wanton Wiles,
Nods and Becks and Wreathed Smiles,
Such as hang on Hebe's cheek,
And love to live in dimple sleek.
—Milton : *L'Allegro.*

Reference to the context. This passage is taken from Milton's *L'Allegro.* Here the poet is requesting the Goddess of Mirth to bring with her her constant companions in order to cheer him.

(*Note.* If we had simply given the *source*, that would not have been a full context.)

(*ii*) Time driveth onward past,
And in a little while our lips are dumb.
Let us alone. What is it that will last ?
All things are taken from us, and become
Portions and parcels of the dreadful past.
—Tennyson : *The Lotos-Eaters.*

Reference to the context. These lines occur in Tennyson's *Lotos-Eaters.* After describing the life of Nature which is full of peace and rest the Lotos-eaters contrast with it the misery and monotony of human life and argue that as death is the end of life and man dies soon, they should enjoy the peace of the Lotos-Land as long as they live, rather than court the dangers of the sea and the adventures of their daily life again.

(*Note.* Here the context is a little longer, because the arguments in the passage cannot be clearly explained unless the arguments preceding them are indicated.)

(*iii*) O for a beaker full of the warm South,
Full of the true, the blushful Hippocrene,
With headed bubbles winking at the brim,
And purple-stained mouth.
—Keats : *Ode to a Nightingale*

Reference to the context. These lines occur in Keats' *Ode to a Nightingale,* The song of the Nightingale makes the poet very happy. He longs for a cup of southern wine full of magical properties so that he may fade away with the Nightingale into the dim forest. In this place he describes the cup of wine he wishes to drink.

(*b*) **The Explanation Proper.** The main point distinguishing an explanation from the paraphrase is that whereas in the latter we refrain from comments and reference to the author, etc., in the former we make full use of them. In an explanation we elucidate

the author's central idea seasoning it with pertinent comments. To keep the elucidation and the comment distinct from each other, it sometimes becames necessary to refer to the author by saying, "The author holds such and such a view." Here are some examples of the explanation proper.

(*i*) I never felt the kiss of love,
Nor maiden's hand in mine,
More bounteous aspects on me beam.
Me mightier transports moves and thrill ;
So keep I fair thro' faith and prayer
A virgin heart in work and will.
—Tennyson : *Sir Galahad*.

Explanation. Though Sir Galahad is ever ready to take up arms on behalf of distressed damsels, he has never yet tasted earthly love. His life is dedicated to God, and he does not care for the transports of earthly passion He is moved and thrilled by visions of God's glory which give him more elevated joy than the earthly love of a woman can give. Through faith in the quest of the Holy Grail he lives in a state of spiritual exaltation. It is through this faith and prayer that he has been able to keep pure and blameless both in thought and action.

(*ii*) Yet, be it less or more, or soon or slow,
It shall be in strictest measure even
To that same lot, however mean or high,
Towards which Time leads me, and the will of Heaven ;
All is, if I have grace to use it so ;
As ever in my great Task-Master's eye.
—Milton : *On His Having Arrived at the Age of Twenty-three*

Explanation. The poet compares himself to a labourer in the vineyard described in the Bible. The story goes that the Master of the vineyard gave even those labourers who began work very late their full hire. The poet means to say that though, like some of the labourers in the vineyard, he may be called sooner or later, his lot will be in the strictest measure the right one. He may be more or le s, mean or high, it does not matter in the least. God, like the master of the vineyard, would give unto him what he deserves. All that concerns him is to use his powers as one who is conscious that God constantly sees and judges his work, and stern task-master as He is.

(*iii*) In everything that relates to science I am a whole Encyclopaedia behind the rest of the world. I should have scarcely cut a figure among the franklins, or country gentlemen, in King John's days. —Lamb : *The Old and the New Schoolmaster*.

Explanation. With his characteristic humour, Lamb describes his ignorance about science. He knows very little about science. Most of the people know more, much more than he. What Lamb does not know and what the rest of the world knows about science would fill up a whole encyclopaedia. His ignorance is like the ignorance of the country gentlemen in the reign of King John, that is to say, late twelfth century and early thirteenth century. In those days only the monks in the cloisters knew something about science, the country gentlemen were bissfully ignorant of it. So Lamb humorously says that he would not have cut a figure among them, he would not have been able to impress them by his knowledge of science.

(*iv*) *Oliver.* Marry, sir, be better employed, and be naught a while.

Orlando. Shall I keep your hogs, and eat husks with them? What prodigal portion have I spent, that I should come to such penury?

—Shakespeare : *As You Like It*.

Explanation. On Orlando's telling Oliver, his elder brother, that there was no occupation for him, Oliver asks him to do somethig better and be damned! Orlando is angry at these ungracious words of his brother who had always ill-treated him. He retorts if he should keep the hogs of Oliver and eat husks with them. He had not thrown away his money like the Prodigal son, and therefor there was no reason why he should be reduced to poverty.

The reference here is to the story of the Prodigal Son in the Holy Bible (Luke xv : 12-32). The Prodigal Son wasted the portion he received from his father in reckless living in a foreign country. He was reduced to such poverty that he had to work for a citizen of that country to eke out a living. His job was to go into the fields and feed swine, and he would fain have filled his belly with the husks that the swine did eat.

(*c*) **Annotation.** The last part of an explanation consists of notes on proper nouns and other difficult words. The words to which the examiner wants the candidate to append short notes are occasionally underlined in the given passage. But even if it is not done so, the examinee should make a selection of such words on his own and annotate them. He should take particular care to explain all proper nouns—names of persons as well as of places—that occur in the passage. In exceptional cases, however, where the language is very simple, notes may be dispensed with. Here are two examples :

(*a*) Towered cities please us then ;
And the busy hum of men,
Where throngs of knights and barons bold,
In *weeds of peace* ; high *triumphs* hold,

With store of ladies, whose bright eyes
Rain *influence*, and *judge the prize*
Of wit or arms, while both contend
To win her grace whom all commend.

—Milton : *L'Allegro*

Notes : *Weeds of peace*—'weeds' means 'garments.' The use of the word is now generally confined to 'a widow's weeds.' 'Weeds of peace' denotes civilian dress as opposed to 'weeds of war.'

Triumphs—Public entertainments like masques, pageants, processions, tournaments, etc. Such exhibitions were very popular in the latter half of the sixteenth and the earlier half of the seventeenth centuries.

Influence—Here the word has been used in its original sense, as a flowing in, something which comes from a source and flows into an object.

Judge the prize—adjudge or award the prize.

Of wit or arms—Formerly the ladies used to preside over the contests of wit, as in the 'Courts of Love' so popular in medieval France. The contests of arms may refer to the tournaments in which mounted knights fought to show their skill in arms, the victor generally receiving his prize at the hands of some fair lady.

(*ii*) Then felt I like some *watcher of the skies*
When a new planet swims into his *ken* ;
Or like *stout Cortez*, when with eagle eyes
He stared at the Pacific—and all his men
Look'd at each other with a wild surmise—
Silent, upon a peak of *Darien*.

Keats : *On First Looking into Chapman's Homer.*

Notes : *Watcher of the skies*—an astronomer who watches the skies through a telescope.

Ken—vision, sight.

Stout Cortez—Cortez conquered Mexico for Spain (1518-21). The word 'stout' is appropriate to the character and physique of Cortez. It was not, however, Cortez who discovered the Pacific, but Vasco Balboa. Tennyson first pointed out this inaccuracy of Keats.

Darien—in Central America.

3. Specimens. Here are two excerpts from the poems of Shelley and Wordsworth which have been explained on the lines indicated above :

(*i*) We look before and after,
And pine for what is not :
Our sincerest laughter
With some pain is fraught ;
Our sweetest songs are those that tell of saddest thought.

Reference to the context. This passage occurs in Shelley's poem, *To A Skylark.* The poet contrasts the happy spontaneous song of the skylark with the sad song of humanity. The skylark's life is full of a beauty and joy that man can never taste.

Explanation. In human life there is always a feeling of want. It is this which makes man unhappy. Man pines for things which he cannot get, and feels sad looking back upon the past, and looking forward into the future. This preoccupation with the past and future does not allow man to live happily in the present. Thus there is always a pain in man's laughter, always a sense of want in his moments of enjoyment. That is why the best poetry of man is the poetry of sorrow. It is a pain which brings out the deepest feelings of a man in song. In the case of the skylark it is pure, unalloyed joy that inspires its songs. Like all romantic poets Shelley was aware of a keen sense of contrast between the imperfection that is man's life and the perfection that is Nature's.

Notes : It is a simple passage which does not contain any peculiar words or allusions. So no word-notes are needed.

(*ii*) Dear child ! dear girl ! that walkest with me here,
If thou appear untouch'd by solemn thought
Thy nature is not therefore less divine :
Thou liest in Abraham's bosom all the year,
And worshipp'st at the Temple's inner shrine,
God being with thee when we know it.

Reference to the context. This passage is taken from Wordsworth's sonnet, *By the Sea.* The poet was greatly impressed by the calm beauty of the sea in the evening. His heart was touched with solemn thoughts. He then turns to the child who was with him and reassures her of her divinity.

Explanation. The child might not have been impressed by the sight of the sea as the poet was impressed. But that did not prove that spiritually the poet was more developed. Wordsworth believed that 'Heaven lies about us in our infancy.' It was the child who saw the light of heaven clearly, not the grown-up man. So, when a grown-up man may wonder at the child's apparent indifference to the solemn sights and sounds of nature, the child may all the time be in the presence of the Holy of Holies, of God.

Notes. *Dear child ! dear girl !*—It is opined that the child here was Wordsworth's daughter. When Wordsworth in his youth spent some time in France as an ardent republican, he fell in love with a French girl, and the child was the issue of their love.

Thou liest in Abraham's bosom—The reference here is to St. Luke xvi : 22. This was a common expression among the Jews to signify the blessedness of heaven, and was generally used of the dead. The imagery is that of a banquet at which the occupant of

the seat next the host would be said to be on his bosom. Abraham was a Jewish patriarch, the founder of Israel.

The Temple's inner shrine—The reference here is to the Temple of Solomon which is used symbolically of the most sanctified place of worship. The idea is that the child worships God in the closest and most intimate manner.

EXERCISES

Explain the following passages :

(*For* **Board** *Students*)

1. My heart leaps up when I behold
A rainbow in the sky :
So was it when my life began ;
So it is now I am a man ;
So be it when I shall grow old,
Or let me die !
The child is the father of the Man ;
And I could wish my days to be
Bound each to each by natural piety.
—Wordsworth : *My Heart Leaps Up.*

(**Hints** : The poet finds that he 'oves the rainbow even now as he used to love it in his childhood. He wishes that he should remain spiritually what he was as a child. By 'natural piety' is meant 'such reverent affection as is felt by the child for its parent.' The days of his mature life should be bound to those of his childhood by this piety.)

2. A Robin Readbreast in a cage
Puts all heaven in a rage.
A dog starved at his master's gate
Predicts the ruin of the State.
A gamecock clipped and armed for fight
Doth the rising sun affright.
A horse misused upon the road
Calls to Heaven for human blood.
—Blake : *Auguries of Innocence.*

(**Hints**. In this passage the poet is warning the men that for their acts of wanton cruelty to the dumb birds and beasts they would by punished by God. The poet has a great love for animals which are tortured and oppressed by his fellow men. An animal tortured is, according to him, an augury for the punishment that is bound to come.)

(*For* **University** *Students*)

1. Fade far away, dissolve and quite forget
What thou among the leaves hast never known,

The weariness, the fever, and the fret
Here, where men sit and hear each other groan ;
Where palsy shakes a few, sad, last grey hairs,
Where youth grows pale, and spectre-thin, and dies;
Where but to think is to be full of sorrow
And leaden-eyed despairs ;
Where Beauty cannot keep her lustrous eyes,
Or new Love pine at them beyond to-morrow.
—Keats : *Ode To A Nightingale*

(**Hints.** Here the poet means to say that with the help of a cup of wine 'full of the warm South,' he will escape from the sad world of reality and fade away with the Nightingale. He draws a gloomy picture of the world he would fain leave behind. This is the life that man leads. It is a life of weariness and gradual decay. Here even love and beauty do not last long.)

2. Make me thy lyre, even as the forest is :
What if my leaves are falling like its own ?
The tumult of thy mighty harmonies
Will take from both a deep autumnal tone,
Sweet though in sadness. Be thou, Spirit fierce,
My spirit ! Be thou me, impetuous one !
Drive my dead thoughts over the universe,
Like wither'd leaves, to quicken a new birth.
—Shelley : *Ode To The West Wind*

(**Hints.** After describing the course of the West Wind in the sky, on the land and at sea, the poet wants to identify himself with it. He imagines that if this identification be possible, his thoughts would reach the hearts of men sooner and bring forth a new order of things.)

3. With sloping masts and dipping prow,
As who pursued with yell and blow
Still treads the shadow of his foe.
And forward bends his head.
The ship drove fast, loud roar'd the blast,
And southward as we fled.
—Coleridge : *The Rime of the Ancient Mariner.*

(**Hints.** Here the poet describes the effect of the storm on the ship in which the Ancient Mariner and two hundred other sailors were sailing to a distant country. The comparison is between a thief running before his pursuers and the ship bending and flying at the fury of the storm.)

4. But I have seen,
Pointing her shapely shadows from the dawn
And image tumbled on a rose-swept bay,
A drowsy ship of some yet older day ;

And, wonder's breath indrawn,
Thought I—who knows—who knows—but in that same
(Fished up beyond Ææ, patched up new
—Stern painted brighter blue)
That talkative, bald-headed seaman came
(Twelve patient comrades sweating at the oar)
From Troy's doom-crimson shore,
And with great lies about his wooden horse
Set the crew laughing and forgot the course.

—James Elroy Flecker : *The Old Ships.*

(**Hints.** The poet is describing some very old ships. At the sight of one ship he imagines that it might have been the very ship in which Ulysses sailed from Troy. Add Notes on *Aeae*, *that talkative bald-headed seaman*, *Troy's doom-crimson shore*, *lies about his wooden horse*. The wooden horse is the one in which some Greek warriors were concealed. The horse was dragged into the city of Troy and at night the Greeks came out and set fire to the city.

CHAPTER XXXIX

EXPANSION

1. The Next Step. Expansion is one step further than explanation. While explaining a passage, we restrict ourselves to giving an exposition of the author's central idea along with slight comments of our own. But in expansion we turn the central idea round and round in our mind, till it sets us thinking. These ideas, then, we put in black and white in such a way as to form a well connected piece, all bearing on the original idea. In this way, expansion becomes a sort of miniature essay spreading over about a page of of the Board answer-books, and over about two pages of the University answer-books. It generally forms one long paragraph, but if it is conveniently possible to split it up into more than one paragraph, it will be all the more readable and attractive. Besides expansion, this process is also known as *amplification* and elaboration.

2. The Method. The passage set for expansion may either be a proverb, maxim, epigram or apophthegm, or be a small passage in itself. In either case the student's primary end should be to get the hang of it. He should bear in mind that though in many ways resembling an essay, an expansion basically differs from it as being the elaboration of a given passage. He has to amplify the central idea of a particular subject, and is not supposed to give free rein to his fancy on a particular topic.

3. How to proceed? We give below some important **do's** and **don't's** of expansion. Here is what you are to do:

(*i*) **Read the passage carefully and get its central idea.**

(*ii*) **Turn that central idea round and round in you mind, till you hit upon some apt illustration to elaborate it. Jot down hints.**

(*iii*) **Try to adduce arguments for proving the truth of that idea. Put them down.**

(*iv*) **Think of any particularly important ramifications of this central idea. Make a note of them.**

(*v*) **Arrange all these points in the proper order so that each one of them may logically lead to the next**

(*vi*) **Write down two to three sentences on each point in this order, keeping the central idea in the mind all the time.**

(*vii*) **Revise what you have written, correcting all errors of spelling, grammar and idiom.**

Bear in mind the following instructions :

(i) *Do not digress : cut down all irrelevant facts and unimportant details.*

(ii) *Don't deviate much from the suggested length.*

(iii) *Don't repeat ideas.*

(iv) *Don't develop the points in a jumbled fashion ; let them follow one from the other naturally.*

(v) *Don't broach the subject in a worn-out manner ; let you be a fresh approach to it.*

(vi) *Don't commit any mistake of spelling, grammar or idiom.*

☞ **These do's and don't's are the fundamentals of written composition. In fact no literary production has ev come into being by ignoring or even side-tracking any of the rules.** Let these do's pave the way for you. Let these don't be your danger-signal. It is only then that you can hope to wri anything worth the name, anything that could do you credit ev in the examination hall.

4. **Model Expansions**. The following are some expansions, t like of which are usually asked for in the examinations. Stu them carefully as models, and make an attempt to write out ne ones as good as these. The best course for you would be to analy the ideas couched in them before writing out fresh explanatio yourself.

A. (For Board Students)

1. "A thing of beauty is a joy for ever."

Expansion. Hazlitt has somewhere remarked that there is basic difference between Nature and Art. The beauties of art, sa a fine picture or a fine piece of sculpture, are subject to decay. It is true that men are at first sight drawn to them. But the beauties of nature are immortal. They know no change. Th are undying. The glory of the sunrise or the sunset never fade Thousands of poets have sung their glory. Again, the full blow. rose, the murmuring river and the hills clearly outlined again the blue sky are sources of joy to all men in the ages.

2. "Knowledge is power."

Expansion. In the twentieth century, our everyday life is co trolled by science. In the morning the electric spark is used the preparation of tea. Again at night in all seasons we read electric light. In summer, we work under the electric fan ; a again, when we relax ourselves after the day's labour, we sit the radio. All these amenities (conveniences) of life are the gi of science. Science gives us knowledge and yet greater knowledg and knowledge is the source of power. By means of scient knowledge we have been able to control the intractable for of Nature. The recent scientific knowledge of atomic energy l given man enormous power of destruction. At the same time, t